This is a special edition of an established title widely used by colleges and universities throughout the world. Pearson published this exclusive edition for the benefit of students outside the United States and Canada. If you purchased this book within the United States or Canada you should be aware that it has been imported without the approval of the Publisher or Author.

Pearson Global Edition

For these Global Editions, the editorial team at Pearson has collaborated with educators across the world to address a wide range of subjects and requirements, equipping students with the best possible learning tools. This Global Edition preserves the cutting-edge approach and pedagogy of the original, but also features alterations, customization, and adaptation from the North American version.

International Business
A Managerial Perspective
EIGHTH EDITION
Ricky W. Griffin • Michael W. Pustay
To the memory of my father, James P. Griffin, who provided encouragement and guidance in ways he never imagined.

R. W. G.

To the newest member of our family,
Quinlan Claire Murphy Pustay.

M. W. P.
Brief Contents

Maps 19
Preface 21
Acknowledgments 24
About the Authors 25

PART 1 The World’s Marketplaces 26
Chapter 1 An Overview of International Business 26
Chapter 2 Global Marketplaces and Business Centers 48
Chapter 3 Legal, Technological, Accounting, and Political Environments 78
Chapter 4 The Role of Culture 108
Chapter 5 Ethics and Social Responsibility in International Business 142

PART 2 The International Environment 176
Chapter 6 International Trade and Investment 176
Chapter 7 The International Monetary System and the Balance of Payments 208
Chapter 8 Foreign Exchange and International Financial Markets 236
Chapter 9 Formulation of National Trade Policies 260
Chapter 10 International Cooperation Among Nations 290

PART 3 Managing International Business 326
Chapter 11 International Strategic Management 326
Chapter 12 Strategies for Analyzing and Entering Foreign Markets 354
Chapter 13 International Strategic Alliances 386
Chapter 14 International Organization Design and Control 408
Chapter 15 Leadership and Employee Behavior in International Business 440

PART 4 Managing International Business Operations 470
Chapter 16 International Marketing 470
Chapter 17 International Operations Management 498
Chapter 18 International Financial Management 524
Chapter 19 International Human Resource Management and Labor Relations 558

Glossary 592
Name Index 606
Company Index 609
Subject Index 614
Contents

Maps 19
Preface 21
Acknowledgments 24
About the Authors 25

PART 1 The World’s Marketplaces 26

Chapter 1 An Overview of International Business 26
   The Business of the Olympics 27
What Is International Business? 28
   ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Borders Do Matter 29
Why Study International Business? 29
International Business Activities 31
   ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: The Early Era of International Business 31
      Exporting and Importing 32
      International Investments 32
      Other Forms of International Business Activity 33
The Contemporary Causes of Globalization 34
   Strategic Imperatives 36
      The Environmental Causes of Globalization 37
   ■ VENTURING ABROAD: Manchester City in Dubai 37
      Globalization and Emerging Markets 38
An Overview of the Contents of This Book 40
   Chapter Review 42 • Summary 42 • Questions for Discussion 42
   • Building Global Skills 43
   ■ CLOSING CASE: Demography Is Destiny 43
Endnotes 46

Chapter 2 Global Marketplaces and Business Centers 48
   The Northwest Passage 49
   The Marketplaces of North America 50
      The United States 50
      Canada 52
   ■ EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES: Classifying Countries by Income Levels 53
      Mexico 54
      Central America and the Caribbean 54
   ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: The Canals of Commerce 54
   The Marketplaces of Western Europe 55
   ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: The EU’s Growth Engine 57
   The Marketplaces of Eastern Europe and Central Asia 58
   The Marketplaces of Asia 61
      Japan 61
      Australia and New Zealand 61
      The Four Tigers 63
      China 65
      India 67
      Southeast Asian Countries 67
The Marketplaces of Africa and the Middle East  67
  Africa  68
  Middle East  68

The Marketplaces of South America  70
  ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Brazil Bolsters Its Families  72
Chapter Review  73  •  Summary  73  •  Questions for Discussion  74
  •  Building Global Skills  74
  ■ CLOSING CASE: Fracturing the Energy Market  75
Endnotes  77

Chapter 3  Legal, Technological, Accounting, and Political Environments  78
  ■ When Is an iPhone Not an iPhone?  79
  The Legal Environment  79
  ■ E-WORLD: Law and the Internet  80
  Differences in Legal Systems  80
  ■ VENTURING ABROAD: How Important Is the Rule of Law?  83
  Domestically Oriented Laws  84
  Laws Directly Affecting International Business Transactions  85
  Laws Directed against Foreign Firms  86
  The Impacts of MNCs on Host Countries  87
  Dispute Resolution in International Business  88
  The Technological Environment  89
  The Accounting Environment  92
  The Roots of National Differences  92
  ■ E-WORLD: The Sarbanes-Oxley Act  94
  Differences in Accounting Practices  95
  ■ VENTURING ABROAD: Chinese Accounting Buries Caterpillar’s Investment  95
  Impact on Capital Markets  97
  The Political Environment  98
  Political Risk  98
  Chapter Review  101  •  Summary  101  •  Questions for Discussion  102
  •  Building Global Skills  102
  ■ CLOSING CASE: Tiny Islands, Big Trouble  103
Endnotes  105

Chapter 4  The Role of Culture  108
  ■ Bollywood, Hollywood, and Nollywood  109
  Characteristics of Culture  110
  ■ E-WORLD: The Internet, National Competitiveness, and Culture  110
  Elements of Culture  111
  Social Structure  111
  ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Japan’s Demographic and Cultural Challenges  112
  Language  114
  Communication  118
  Religion  120
  ■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Islamic Finance  122
  Values and Attitudes  123
  Seeing the Forest, Not the Trees  125
  Hall’s Low-Context–High-Context Approach  125
  The Cultural Cluster Approach  126
  Hofstede’s Five Dimensions  127
  Social Orientation  127
Chapter 5 Ethics and Social Responsibility in International Business 142

Foxconn: Managing 1.5 Million Employees 143

The Nature of Ethics and Social Responsibility in International Business 144

Ethics in Cross-Cultural and International Contexts 146

How an Organization Treats Its Employees 146

How Employees Treat the Organization 148

How Employees and the Organization Treat Other Economic Agents 148

Managing Ethical Behavior Across Borders 149

Guidelines and Codes of Ethics 149

VENTURING ABROAD: Siemens Pays—and Pays and Pays 150

Ethics Training 150

Organizational Practices and the Corporate Culture 151

Corporate Social Responsibility in Cross-Cultural and International Contexts 151

The Economic Mission 152

Sustainability and the Natural Environment 152

PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS: Lions and Tigers and Bears, oh My! 153

General Social Welfare 154

Managing Social Responsibility Across Borders 156

Approaches to Social Responsibility 156

Managing Compliance 157

PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS: e-Waste 158

Informal Dimensions of Social Responsibility 159

Evaluating Social Responsibility 160

Difficulties of Managing CSR Across Borders 161

The Anglo-Saxon Approach 161

The Asian Approach 161

The Continental European Approach 161

Regulating International Ethics and Social Responsibility 162

EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES: Conflict Diamonds 163

Chapter Review 164 • Summary 164 • Questions for Discussion 165

Building Global Skills 165

CLOSING CASE: BP: Safety First or Profits First? 166

Endnotes 167

PART 1: CLOSING CASES: KFC in China 169

A Pipeline of Good Intentions 171

The Oil Curse 173

PART 2 The International Environment 176

Chapter 6 International Trade and Investment 176

Trade Is Blossoming 177

International Trade and the World Economy 178
Chapter 8  Foreign Exchange and International Financial Markets  236
  The Loonie Takes Flight  237
  The Economics of Foreign Exchange  238
  The Structure of the Foreign-Exchange Market  241
    The Role of Banks  241
    BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: A Brief Hint  243
    Spot and Forward Markets  244
    Arbitrage and the Currency Market  246
    BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: The Big Mac Index  248
  The International Capital Market  251
    VENTURING ABROAD: The Carry Trade  252
    Major International Banks  252
    The Eurocurrency Market  254
    The International Bond Market  254
    Global Equity Markets  255
    Offshore Financial Centers  255
Chapter Review  256  •  Summary  256  •  Questions for Discussion  257
  •  Building Global Skills  257
Endnotes  259

Chapter 9  Formulation of National Trade Policies  260
  Huawei Leads the Way  261
  Rationales for Trade Intervention  262
    Industry-Level Arguments  263
    National Trade Policies  266
  Barriers to International Trade  270
    Tariffs  270
    VENTURING ABROAD: Emirates Airline Expansion – The Case of the Canadian Market  270
    Nontariff Barriers  272
    BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: The Fight over Rare Earths  275
  Promotion of International Trade  278
    Subsidies  278
    Foreign Trade Zones  279
    PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS: Cotton Subsidies and World Poverty  280
    Export Financing Programs  281
  Controlling Unfair Trade Practices  281
    Countervailing Duties  282
    Antidumping Regulations  282
    Should Countries Enforce Their Unfair Trade Practice Laws?  283
    Safeguards  283
Chapter Review  284  •  Summary  284  •  Questions for Discussion  284
  •  Building Global Skills  285
  CLOSING CASE: Green Energy and Free Trade  285
Endnotes  287

Chapter 10  International Cooperation Among Nations  290
  Trade and Prosperity: The Case of Mexico  291
  The General Agreements on Tariffs and Trade and the World Trade Organization  292
    The Role of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade  292
    PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS: Protecting Endangered Species  293
    BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Most Nations Are Favored  294
    The World Trade Organization  295
# Contents

- **Emerging Opportunities: The Bottom of the Pyramid**  
  Evaluating Costs, Benefits, and Risks  
  Chapter Review  
  Endnotes

- **Choosing a Mode of Entry**

- **Exporting to Foreign Markets**  
  Forms of Exporting  
  Additional Considerations

- **Venturing Abroad: Dnata – Global Growth Strategy**

- **International Licensing**  
  Export Intermediaries

- **International Franchising**  
  Basic Issues in International Licensing

- **Specialized Entry Modes for International Business**  
  Contract Manufacturing  
  Management Contract  
  Turnkey Project

- **Emerging Opportunities: Business Process Outsourcing**

- **Foreign Direct Investment**  
  The Greenfield Strategy  
  The Acquisition Strategy  
  Joint Ventures

- **Chapter Review**  
  Summary  
  Questions for Discussion  
  Building Global Skills

- **Closing Case: The House of Tata**

- **Endnotes**

---

## Chapter 13 International Strategic Alliances

- **The European Cereal Wars**

- **International Corporate Cooperation**

- **Benefits of Strategic Alliances**  
  Ease of Market Entry  
  Shared Risk  
  Shared Knowledge and Expertise  
  Synergy and Competitive Advantage

- **Scope of Strategic Alliances**  
  Comprehensive Alliances  
  Functional Alliances

- **Venturing Abroad: Alliances in the Sky**

- **Implementation of Strategic Alliances**  
  Selection of Partners  
  Form of Ownership

- **Venturing Abroad: Learning by Doing**

- **People, Planet, and Profits: Alliances for Good**  
  Joint Management Considerations

- **Pitfalls of Strategic Alliances**  
  Incompatibility of Partners  
  Emerging Opportunities: Xi’s in Charge  
  Access to Information  
  Conflicts over Distributing Earnings  
  Loss of Autonomy  
  Changing Circumstances
Chapter 14  International Organization Design and Control  408

Lenovo Spreads Its Global Wings  409
The Nature of International Organizational Design  410
Global Organization Designs  411
Global Product Design  412
Global Area Design  413
Global Functional Design  414
Global Customer Design  416
Global Matrix Design  416

VENTURING ABROAD: Alshaya’s Matrix Design  418

Hybrid Global Designs  418
Related Issues in Global Organization Design  420
Centralization versus Decentralization  420
Role of Subsidiary Boards of Directors  420
Coordination in the Global Organization  421
The Control Function in International Business  422
Strategic Control  422
Organizational Control  425
Operations Control  427

PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS: Toward Zero Waste?  427
Managing the Control Function in International Business  428
Establishing International Control Systems  428
BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Ford Aims High  429
Essential Control Techniques  432
Behavioral Aspects of International Control  433

Chapter 15  Leadership and Employee Behavior in International Business  440

Leadership Issues at Toyota  441
Individual Behavior in International Business  442
Personality Differences Across Cultures  442
Attitudes Across Cultures  445
Perception Across Cultures  446
Stress Across Cultures  447

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Stressing Out in the Call Centers  447
Motivation in International Business  448
Needs and Values Across Cultures  448
Motivational Processes Across Cultures  449
Need-Based Models Across Cultures  449
Process-Based Models Across Cultures  450
The Reinforcement Model Across Cultures  451
Leadership in International Business  451
Contemporary Leadership Theory  451
The GLOBE Leadership Project  454
Decision Making in International Business  455
Models of Decision Making  455
CONTENTS

The Normative Model Across Cultures 456
The Descriptive Model Across Cultures 457

■ VENTURING ABROAD: Mixing and Matching in a Joint Venture 458

Groups and Teams in International Business 458
The Nature of Group Dynamics 458
Managing Cross-cultural Teams 459
Chapter Review 460  •  Summary 460  •  Questions for Discussion 460
•  Building Global Skills 461
■ CLOSING CASE: Ikea’s Transformational Leader 461
Endnotes 462

■ PART 3: CLOSING CASES: Reinventing Nissan 465
Slimline: Marching to a Different Drummer 467
Unilever Matches Strategy and Structure 468

PART 4  Managing International Business Operations 470

Chapter 16  International Marketing 470

International Marketing Management 472
International Marketing and Business Strategies 472
The Marketing Mix 474
■ EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES: Pretty Garlic 475
Standardization versus Customization 475

Product Policy 478
Standardized Products or Customized Products? 479
Legal Forces 479
Cultural Influences 479
Economic Factors 480
Brand Names 481

Pricing Issues and Decisions 481
Pricing Policies 482
Market Pricing 483

Promotion Issues and Decisions 485
Advertising 485
■ VENTURING ABROAD: Putting the Greek into Yogurt 486
■ E-WORLD: ¿Qué Pasa in the Ad Agency? 487
Personal Selling 488
Sales Promotion 488
Public Relations 489

Distribution Issues and Decisions 490
International Distribution 490
Channels of Distribution 491
Chapter Review 494  •  Summary 494  •  Questions for Discussion 494
•  Building Global Skills 494
■ CLOSING CASE: Novica Opens Doors Across National Boundaries 495
Endnotes 496

Chapter 17  International Operations Management 498

Racing to Market 499
The Nature of International Operations Management 500
The Strategic Context of International Operations Management 501
■ PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS: Asking for Government Regulation 502
Complexities of International Operations Management 502

Production Management 503
Supply Chain Management and Vertical Integration 503
Location Decisions 507
Chapter 18 International Financial Management 524
Singapore Airlines’s Worldwide Financial Management 525

Financial Issues in International Trade 525
Choice of Currency 526
Credit Checking 526
Method of Payment 526
Financing Trade 534
Managing Foreign Exchange Risk 534
Transaction Exposure 534
Translation Exposure 537
Economic Exposure 537
Management of Working Capital 540
Minimizing Working Capital Balances 540
Minimizing Currency Conversion Costs 541
Minimizing Foreign-Exchange Risk 542
International Capital Budgeting 543
Net Present Value 543
Internal Rate of Return 544
Payback Period 544
Sources of International Investment Capital 545
External Sources of Investment Capital 545
Internal Sources of Investment Capital 546
Strategic Use of Transfer Pricing 547

VENTURING ABROAD: Taxation of Foreign Subsidiary Income by the U.S. Government 549
EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES: Sun, Sand, and Shells 550
Tax Havens 550

Chapter Review 552 • Summary 552 • Questions for Discussion 553
Building Global Skills 553

Chapter 19 International Human Resource Management and Labor Relations 558
An Emerging Voice for Workers 559
The Nature of International Human Resource Management 560
Strategic Significance of HRM 560
International Managerial Staffing Needs 562
Scope of Internationalization 562
Centralization versus Decentralization of Control 563
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■ EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES: Thinking Globally but Hiring Locally 563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staffing Philosophy 564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Schlumberger Profits from Geocentric Staffing 565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recruitment and Selection 566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recruitment of Managers 567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection of Managers 568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expatriation and Repatriation Issues 569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training and Development 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessing Training Needs 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Training Methods and Procedures 571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developing Younger International Managers 572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Appraisal and Compensation 573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessing Performance in International Business 573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determining Compensation in International Business 573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS: Japanese Management Techniques in China 577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retention and Turnover 578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Resource Issues for Nonmanagerial Employees 579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recruitment and Selection 579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training and Development 580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensation and Performance Appraisal 580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor Relations 581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative Labor Relations 581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collective Bargaining 582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Union Influence and Codetermination 582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter Review 583 • Summary 583 • Questions for Discussion 584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ CLOSING CASE: The Chicago Food and Beverage Company 584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endnotes 586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Part 4: CLOSING CASES: The Aramco Advantage 587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Power of Microfinance: The Grameen Bank 588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nucor Navigates the New Global Economy 588</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary 592
Name Index 606
Company Index 609
Subject Index 614
# Maps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Map</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Map 1.1</td>
<td>China's Regional Challenges</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.1</td>
<td>North America</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.2</td>
<td>Western Europe</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.3</td>
<td>The Former Soviet Union</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.4</td>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.5</td>
<td>Australia and New Zealand</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.6</td>
<td>Africa and the Middle East</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.7</td>
<td>The Middle East</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2.8</td>
<td>South America</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 3.1</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 3.2</td>
<td>South China Sea</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 4.1</td>
<td>World Languages</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 4.2</td>
<td>Africa's Colonial Heritage</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 4.3</td>
<td>Major World Religions</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 4.4</td>
<td>A Synthesis of Country Clusters</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 5.1</td>
<td>Social Responsibility Hot Spots</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 5.2</td>
<td>Chad Pipeline</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 6.1</td>
<td>Key Industrial Clusters in Western Europe</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 7.1</td>
<td>The British Empire in 1913</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 8.1</td>
<td>A Day of Foreign-Exchange Trading</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 9.1</td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 9.2</td>
<td>An Effect of the Jones Act</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 9.3</td>
<td>Foreign Trade Zone on Mauritius</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 10.1</td>
<td>The European Union</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 10.2</td>
<td>Free Trade Agreements in Central and South America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 10.3</td>
<td>The ASEAN Members</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 10.4</td>
<td>Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation Initiative (APEC)</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 10.5</td>
<td>Free Trade Agreements in Africa</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 12.1</td>
<td>Turkey: The Gateway to the Central Asian Republics and the Caucasus</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 14.1</td>
<td>A Sampling of Nestlé's Global Holdings, Subsidiaries, and Affiliates</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 14.2</td>
<td>Kenyan Rainfall</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 18.1</td>
<td>Countertrade by Marc Rich</td>
<td>532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 18.2</td>
<td>Changes in Currency Values Relative to the U.S. Dollar, July 2013 versus July 2009</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 18.3</td>
<td>The Cayman Islands</td>
<td>551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 19.1</td>
<td>Global Cost of Living Survey</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19
Preface

We’ve taught International Business courses for 25 years and enjoyed every moment of the experience. From the instructor’s perspective, the joy and excitement of the course lies in its importance and dynamism. Its importance cannot be denied. The jobs, careers, and livelihoods of virtually every human being on the planet are affected by international commerce. For some, that commerce represents an opportunity; for others, a threat. Almost a third of the world’s economic activity is attributable to international trade, and foreign direct investment has surpassed $20 trillion. Nor can its dynamism be denied. Think of the changes that have occurred in the two years between the publication of the seventh edition and the eighth edition of this text: civil war in Syria, an incipient global currency war, a complete upheaval in world energy markets as a result of hydraulic fracturing, shifts in factory location decisions favoring Mexico over China, a new member joining the European Union, China’s aggressive search for natural resource security, Nokia’s shifting from mobile market leader to dead-in-the-water (at least in Wall Street’s view), to name but a few examples.

From the student’s perspective, however, this dynamism—and the sheer breadth of the subject matter—can be intimidating. We discuss every region of the world and draw on every business discipline—accounting, marketing, management, finance, supply chain management, MIS—and numerous liberal arts disciplines—economics, geography, anthropology, sociology, history, international relations, political science, and the law. It’s not surprising that students can feel overwhelmed by the magnitude of the course. We have striven to reduce students’ fears of not being able to master this extensive material by providing clear, concise discussions of the principle concepts and challenges of international business and by offering numerous examples of these issues in action.

Our vision in writing this book is to prepare students to be effective participants in the worldwide marketplace. That was the vision we laid out in the preface of the first edition of this book, and it remains so in the eighth. We noted that many of the existing textbooks are written in needlessly technical terms and seem to be concerned only with students who are specializing in international business. However, all students—even those who will never have an overseas assignment—need to be knowledgeable about the global economy.

That is why we feel so strongly about our vision for this book. We want students to attain “cultural literacy” in international business. We want them, for example, to be able to speak comfortably with a visiting foreign exchange student or to ask insightful questions of a visiting executive from a foreign-headquartered multinational corporation. For many students, this textbook and the course that it accompanies is just the first step in a long journey to being an effective businessperson and an informed citizen in a globalizing world. We hope in writing this textbook that that first step will be made a bit easier, a bit more informed, and a bit more exciting.

Like the previous seven editions, we have maintained our managerial approach to international business with an emphasis on skills development, emerging markets, and geographical literacy.

New To The Eighth Edition

The eighth edition features new cases, boxes, and analyses reflecting the latest challenges and opportunities confronting international businesses. More specifically, the following content is new or revised to reflect the latest global trends:

- The pressures on multinational organizations to consider the impact of their actions on the natural environment and on the general welfare of society continue to increase. We have introduced a new context box, “People, Planet, and Profits,” to address the challenges that international businesses face in promoting their triple bottom lines.
The international business course at most colleges and universities encompasses both the
external environment and the internal environment of international businesses. We have
introduced several new boxes and cases and updated others that focus on changes in the
external environment that create opportunities and challenges for firms competing in the
international market place. These new cases and boxes include discussions of territorial
disputes in the South China Sea, upheavals in the world energy market as a result of frack-
ing, the opening up of the fabled Northwest Passage, expansion of the Panama Canal, and
the impact of rising wages in China.

New and updated profiles of the challenges and opportunities provided international firms
as they confront and master the complexities of the international marketplace, including new
cases and boxes featuring Apple, Huawei, Anglo American PLC, Foxconn, and McDonalds,
and updated treatments of LVMH, Lenovo, Tata, Nokia, Disney, Telefónica, Unilever, and
Danone, among others.

New and updated analyses of the impact of globalization on competition within industries,
including the global wine industry, the global flower industry, the international cinema
market, Germany’s Mittelstand, and the international airline industry.

New and updated cases exploring how firms address cultural, legal, and technological
differences among countries. Students gain deeper and more nuanced understandings of the
politics, culture, and social problems of individual countries through in-depth examination
of issues such as Russia and the rule of law, the European Union’s implementation of the
Treaty of Lisbon, Brazil and poverty reduction, Japan and its cultural and demographic
challenges, the hidden role of the Communist Party in Chinese businesses, U.S. retailers
and Chinese consumers, Islamic finance, the GLOBE leadership project, and the growth of
unionization activity in China.

New and updated examples and cases assessing the ethical and social responsibilities of
international businesses and international businesspeople, including Foxconn, disposal of
e-waste, BP and the Gulf oil spill, green energy and free trade, DuPont’s quest for zero
waste, Maersk and pollution in Hong Kong harbor, the Chad pipeline, the Siemens bribery
scandal, and Grameen Bank.

New and updated examples of international trade and investment conflicts and the challenges
they present international business practitioners, including Huawei’s struggles to enter the
U.S. market, the global currency war, rare earths, tax shelters, jumbo jet subsidies, sovereign
wealth funds, and trade in counterfeit goods.

The eighth edition also provides up-to-date coverage of the impact of how recent natural
disasters and political upheavals have affected international business. Examples include
the earthquake and tsunami that shattered Japan and the resultant impact on global supply
chains, Toyota’s massive recalls and quality problems, and the political unrest that swept
through the Middle East beginning in 2011.

All data and other statistical information in the book have been thoroughly updated,
including international trade statistics, exchange rates, and expatriate costs of living in
various global business centers.

New assisted-graded questions that students can complete and submit via
MyManagementLab are provided at the end of each chapter.

New online, interactive simulations created just for international business courses
engage students and help them understand how international business concepts apply in
realistic situations. Topics include: globalization, international ethics, legal differences,
offshoring, global marketing, and tariffs, subsidies, and quotas. Simulations are accessible
in MyManagementLab.

Pedagogically, we have retained four content boxes that highlight coverage of current issues re-
lated to technology, entrepreneurship, and conducting business with a global perspective:

VENTURING ABROAD Exposes students to the opportunities and challenges of conducting
business outside their home country.

E-WORLD Provides insights into the impact of e-commerce on how business is conducted
internationally.
BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS  Helps students understand the historical, cultural, and political contexts of international business.

EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES  Highlights challenges and opportunities in emerging international markets.

With the addition of our new box, PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS, we offer our readers insights into many of the most important issues confronting international business practitioners today.

We also added a valuable new in-chapter feature called IN PRACTICE. You’ll find an IN PRACTICE at the end of each major section of every chapter. This feature consists of two concise major “take-away” points from the preceding section and a thought-provoking question for further consideration.

Instructor Supplements

Instructors can access downloadable supplemental resources by signing into the Instructor Resource Center at http://www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/Griffin/. To obtain access to the Instructor’s Resource Center contact your Pearson Sales Representative.

Need help?  Our dedicated Technical Support team is ready to assist instructors with questions about the media supplements that accompany this text. Visit http://247pearsoned.custhelp.com for answers to frequently asked questions and toll-free user support phone numbers. The following supplements are available to adopting instructors on the Instructors Resource Center.

- Instructor’s Manual
- Test Item File  More than 100 questions per chapter are tagged to the Learning Objectives and to the AACSB Learning Standards to help measure whether students are grasping the course content that aligns with AACSB guidelines.
- TestGen Software
- PowerPoint Slides
- Image Library

Video Library

Videos illustrating the most important subject topics are available at:

MyLab—available for instructors and students, provides round the clock instant access to videos and corresponding assessment and simulations for Pearson textbooks.

Contact your local Pearson representative to request access.

MyManagementLab

MyManagementLab (www.mymanagementlab.com) is an easy-to-use online tool that personalizes course content and provides robust assessment and reporting to measure individual and class performance. All of the resources that students need for course success are in one place—flexible and easily adapted for your students’ course experience.
Acknowledgments

The cover of this book identifies two authors by name. In reality, every edition represents a true team effort involving literally dozens of skilled professionals. Although any and all errors of fact, omission, and emphasis are solely our responsibility, we would be remiss if we did not acknowledge those who contributed to this and previous editions of this book.

We gratefully acknowledge the contributions of Robert McDonald who wrote the Instructor’s Manual and the Test Bank questions. To Ben Mammoun who prepared the PowerPoint Slides to accompany this book.

Thanks go also to our colleagues at other universities who reviewed the manuscript for this edition and previous ones, contributed suggestions, and helped us make this the best international business textbook for students and teachers:

Mohammad Ali University of Maryland, Eastern Shore
John C. Anderson University of Tennessee
Madan Annavarjula Northern Illinois University
Anke Arnaud University of Central Florida
George Barnes University of Texas—Dallas
Mack Bean Franklin Pierce University
Darryl Brown Indiana University
Dr. Sri Beldona University of Dallas
Robert Desman Kennesaw State University
Dante DiGreorio University of New Mexico
Norb Elbert Eastern Kentucky University
Allan Ellstrand California State University—Long Beach
Dan Fogel Wake Forest University
Tao Gao Hofstra University
George Gonzales University of Wisconsin
Basil J. Janavaras Mankato State University
Sara L. Keck Pace University
John A. Lehman University of Alaska—Fairbanks
Lynette Mathur Southern Illinois University
Roderick J. Matthews University of Wisconsin—Madison
James McFillen Bowling Green State University
Claudio Milman Rollins College
Peter Ping Li California State University—Stanislaus
Jaime Ortiz Florida Atlantic University
Christopher J. Robertson Northeastern University
Carol Sanchez Grand Valley State University
Michael Shaner Saint Louis University
Richard M. Steers University of Oregon
Gregory K. Stephens Texas Christian University
Precha Thavikulwat Towson University
William Walker University of Houston

Pearson would like to thank and acknowledge the following people for their work on the Global Edition:

Contributors
Assaad Farah and Shadi Abouzeid American University in Dubai, UAE
Diane and Jon Sutherland Writers, UK
Krish Saha Coventry University, UK
At Texas A&M University, we have had the good fortune to work with one of the finest groups of professional colleagues anyone could imagine. We also appreciate the support of other colleagues, past and present, whose expertise and insights have been incorporated into this manuscript. In addition, we would also like to express our appreciation to the fine team of professionals at Pearson who helped make this revision a reality. Kris Ellis-Levy, Sarah Holle, and Ann Pulido have all played major roles in this revision.

Finally, we would also like to acknowledge the contributions made by our families: Glenda and Dustin Griffin, Ashley and Mathew Hilgemeier, and Zandy, Scott, and Kat Pustay. They didn’t write a single word of the book or draw any of the maps or artwork, but their imprint can be found on everything we do. They support us, encourage us, and inspire us. They give our work—and our lives—meaning. It is with all our love and affection that we thank them.

About the Authors

**Ricky W. Griffin** holds the Blocker Chair in Business and is Distinguished Professor of Management in Mays Business School at Texas A&M University. He is serving as head of the Department of Management; he previously served as both Executive Associate Dean and Interim Dean. After receiving his Ph.D. from the University of Houston in 1978, he joined the faculty at the University of Missouri–Columbia before moving to Texas A&M University in 1981.

Professor Griffin teaches international management, organizational behavior, human resource management, and general management. He has taught both undergraduate and graduate students, participated in numerous executive training programs, and has lectured in London, Paris, Warsaw, Geneva, Berlin, Johannesburg, Tokyo, Hong Kong, and Sydney. A member of the Academy of Management, he has served as division chair of that group’s Organizational Behavior division.

Professor Griffin has written several successful textbooks, including *Management*, *Organizational Behavior* (with Greg Moorhead), and *Business Essentials* (with Ron Ebert). He is currently conducting research on workplace violence in Canada, job design differences and similarities among firms in Japan, Europe, and the United States, and equity employment practices in South Africa.

**Michael W. Pustay** holds the Anderson Clayton Professorship in Business Administration and is Professor of Management at Texas A&M University. He currently serves as associate director of the Center for International Business Studies and as associate director of the Center for International Business Education and Research at Texas A&M. Professor Pustay, who has taught international business for more than two decades, focuses his teaching and research efforts on international business and business–government relations. His work has appeared in professional journals such as the *Journal of Management*, *Southern Economic Journal*, Land Economics, and *Transportation Journal*. He is currently researching the role of regional trading blocs on the world economy and the impact of domestic economic policies on international competition.

Professor Pustay is a member of numerous professional organizations, including the Academy of International Business, the American Economic Association, the Association for Canadian Studies in the United States, and the Transportation Research Forum. He has served as a consultant for a variety of public and private organizations, including the U.S. Department of Transportation, the Small Business Administration, the Civil Aeronautics Board, and Reliant Energy.
PART 1 The World’s Marketplaces

CHAPTER 1

An Overview of International Business

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:
1. Discuss the meaning of international business.
2. Explain the importance of understanding international business.
3. Identify and describe the basic forms of international business activities.
4. Discuss the causes of globalization.
5. Comprehend the growing role of emerging markets in the global economy.

MyManagementLab®
 Improve Your Grade!
 More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs.
 Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
THE BUSINESS OF THE OLYMPICS

Every two years, the world’s attention turns to the Olympic Games. Given that international business and the global economy play such a dominant role in the world today, it is not surprising that the Olympics have come to reflect international business at its most intense. The games are governed by the International Olympic Committee (IOC), which is based in Switzerland. The IOC decides where the games will be held and which sports will be represented, and it oversees the selection of judges and referees. Each country that wants to send athletes to compete in the games establishes a national committee to organize its Olympic effort. These committees are supervised by and report to the IOC.

Potential host cities must give elaborate presentations to the IOC and make substantial commitments in terms of facilities, a volunteer workforce, and related organizational support. For example, as part of their winning bids, Japan promised to build a new high-speed rail line between Tokyo and Nagano, the site of the 1998 winter games, while Greece’s proposal featured a new ring road, subway system, and airport in Athens for the 2004 Summer Olympics. China invested more than $38 billion on a variety of projects, including 37 new or refurbished sports facilities, transportation improvements, and communications upgrades, for the 2008 Beijing games. The British government spent £9.3 billion to build Olympic facilities and improve the transportation network serving the 2012 games, while the Russian government has budgeted $50 billion for the 2014 Winter Olympics in Sochi.

The infighting among countries to be selected as the games’ host is vicious. French President Jacques Chirac’s pique over London’s selection instead of Paris as the host for the 2012 Summer Olympics intensified the squabbles between France and the United Kingdom over European Union (EU) policies dealing with agriculture, taxation, and foreign affairs. China threatened a trade war with the United States after the U.S. Senate passed a resolution that hurt Beijing’s chances to host the summer games in 2000, a prize eventually seized by Sydney, Australia. (Beijing was later awarded the 2008 games.) After Salt Lake City lost its bid for the 1998 games, the city’s local organizing committee launched a massive campaign to procure the 2002 games. Unfortunately, its efforts included widespread gift-giving and the lavish entertaining of IOC delegates, which crossed ethical boundaries. As these facts became public, they triggered a worldwide cry for reform of the IOC.

Why would a city want to host the Olympic Games? Most compete for the privilege because the games would thrust them into the international spotlight and promote economic growth. Further, the tourism benefits are long lived; for example, skiers, skaters, and snowboarders continue to enjoy the facilities at previous Olympic sites such as Turin, Nagano, Lillehammer, Calgary, Albertville, and Lake Placid, pouring money into the local economies long after the Olympic torch has been extinguished. The games also are frequently a catalyst for improving a city’s infrastructure. For instance, the high-speed rail line between Tokyo and Nagano halves the travel time between the two cities—a benefit that continues for local residents and for future visitors, as does Athens’s new ring road, airport, and subway system. London’s Olympic Village was converted to 2,800 apartments after the completion of the 2012 games, providing much-needed housing in one of the world’s most expensive real estate markets.

Because of the high cost of running the Olympics, both the IOC and national Olympic committees are always alert for ways to generate revenue. Television coverage provides one significant source of revenue. NBC paid $1.27 billion for the U.S. broadcast rights for the 2000 Sydney summer games and the 2002 Salt Lake City winter games. It then shelled out an additional $2.3 billion to lock up the U.S. broadcast rights for the 2004, 2006, and 2008 games and paid $2.2 billion for the 2010 and 2012 games—even though their sites had not yet been determined. The broadcaster followed a similar strategy in 2011, successfully offering $4.38 billion for rights to broadcast the 2014, 2016, 2018, and 2020 games in the United States. Broadcast rights for Europe, Australia, Asia, and the rest of the Americas sold for smaller but still breathtaking amounts to local broadcasters. NBC and these broadcasters, in turn, sold advertising time to companies eager to market their goods to Olympic fans throughout the world.

Not surprisingly, capturing viewers in emerging markets is an important part of the IOC’s growth strategy. CCTV, the state-owned TV network, paid $100 million for local broadcasting rights for the 2008 Beijing Olympics. Bidding for TV spots on Chinese television was intense. Yili, a Chinese milk producer, paid CCTV $2.7 million for four 15-second advertisements for the Chinese market; in comparison, NBC charged $800,000 for 30-second commercials in the U.S. market.

Another important source of revenue for the IOC and for national committees is corporate sponsors, who wish to capture the prestige and visibility of being associated with the games. The highest-profile level—and, at $60 to $80 million, the most expensive—is that of “worldwide partner,” a designation valuable to firms that market their products to consumers throughout the world, such as Coca-Cola, McDonalds, Acer, Panasonic, and Samsung. The primary benefit of worldwide partnership is that the partners get priority advertising space during Olympic broadcasts, if they choose to buy it. The worldwide partnership program generated $957 million during the 2009–2012 Olympic cycle.1
The millions of dollars spent on the Olympics by television networks and corporate advertisers reflect the internationalization of business—the result of the desire of firms such as Coca-Cola, Panasonic, and Samsung to market their products to consumers worldwide. The forces that have made the Olympics a growing international business are the same forces that affect firms worldwide as they compete in domestic and foreign markets. Changes in communications, transportation, and information technology not only facilitate domestic firms’ foreign expansion but also aid foreign companies in their invasion of the domestic market. These trends have accelerated during the past decade as a result of the explosive growth of e-commerce, the reduction in trade and investment barriers sponsored by organizations such as the World Trade Organization and the EU, and the growing importance of emerging markets such as China and India.

The global economy profoundly affects your daily life, from the products you buy to the prices you pay to the interest rates you are charged to the kind of job you hold. By writing this book, we hope to help you become more comfortable and effective in this burgeoning international business environment. To operate comfortably in this environment, you need to learn the basic ideas and concepts—the common body of knowledge—of international business. Further, you must understand how these ideas and concepts affect managers as they make decisions, develop strategies, and direct the efforts of others. You also need to be conversant with the fundamental mechanics and ingredients of the global economy and how they affect people, businesses, and industries. You need to understand the evolution of the global economy and the complex commercial and political relationships among Asia, Europe, North America, and the rest of the world.

To help ensure your future effectiveness in the international business world, we plan to equip you with the knowledge, insights, and skills that are critical to your functioning in a global economy. To that end, we have included hundreds of examples to help demonstrate how international businesses succeed—and how they sometimes fail. You also will read tips and extended examples about global companies in special features called “Bringing the World into Focus,” “E-World,” “Emerging Opportunities,” “People, Planet, and Profits,” and “Venturing Abroad,” and you will have the chance to practice your growing skills in end-of-chapter exercises titled “Building Global Skills.”

What Is International Business?

**International business** consists of business transactions between parties from more than one country. Examples of international business transactions include buying materials in one country and shipping them to another for processing or assembly, shipping finished products from one country to another for retail sale, building a plant in a foreign country to capitalize on lower labor costs, or borrowing money from a bank in one country to finance operations in another. The parties involved in such transactions may include private individuals, individual companies, groups of companies, or governmental agencies.

How does international business differ from domestic business? Simply put, domestic business involves transactions occurring within the boundaries of a single country, whereas international business transactions cross national boundaries. International business can differ from domestic business for a number of other reasons, including the following:

- The countries involved may use different currencies, forcing at least one party to convert its currency into another.
- The legal systems of the countries may differ, forcing one or more parties to adjust their practices to comply with local law. Occasionally, the mandates of the legal systems may be incompatible, creating major headaches for international managers.
- The cultures of the countries may differ, forcing each party to adjust its behavior to meet the expectations of the other.
- The availability of resources differs by country. One country may be rich in natural resources but poor in skilled labor, whereas another may enjoy a productive, well-trained workforce but lack natural resources. Thus, the way products are produced and the types of products that are produced vary among countries. (“Bringing the World into Focus” provides additional insights into these issues.)

In most cases, the basic skills and knowledge needed to be successful are conceptually similar whether one is conducting business domestically or internationally. For example, the need for marketing managers to analyze the wants and desires of target audiences is the same regardless
BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

BORDERS DO MATTER

A decade ago, many self-proclaimed business gurus announced the coming of the boundaryless global economy—one in which national borders were superfluous and irrelevant. It would be hard to find a concept more naïve or oblivious to the realities of doing business internationally. The simple truth is that boundaries and national borders do matter. Nations, defined by those boundaries, have different legal systems and different laws. They have different political systems and social structures. Cultural values differ among the citizens of different nations. Taxes, the price of labor, land, and other resources, and the requirements for establishing a business vary across nations. If we did not have borders, the need for a separate international business course would disappear. We could just study business.

The CAGE model developed by Pankaj Ghemawat, of IESE Business School in Barcelona, is a useful framework for understanding the operating challenges facing international businesses because of these national differences:

- **Cultural distance** (the “C” in CAGE) refers to differences in cultural, linguistic, religious, and social values that can affect the way firms do business within a country. Chapter 4 focuses on important elements of these cultural differences.
- **Administrative distance** refers to differences in the public administration of countries. It can be affected by past colonial ties, common legal heritages, use of a common currency, political alliances, or attitudes toward the proper balancing between the role of the private sector and the role of the public sector. Chapter 3 focuses on many of these differences.

- **Geographic distance** refers to the physical, communications, and transportation links between countries and how the geographic connectedness of countries affects economic integration. Chapter 2 focuses on the economic geography of the world marketplace.
- **Economic distance** refers to the differences in the economic resource bases of countries. Although natural resources are a component of economic distance, human resources, infrastructure, creation of new knowledge, and promotion of technological innovation are in fact much more important causes of economic distance. Chapter 6 analyzes how these economic differences affect the nature and level of countries’ participation in the global marketplace.

One of the primary challenges facing international business practitioners is formulating and implementing strategies that recognize and then use these differences to create competitive advantages for their firms. This may be as simple as purchasing labor-intensive inputs from countries where wages are low to reduce the costs of necessary components. It may be as complex as restructuring how the firm is organized or how it does business to benefit from global efficiencies while respecting and responding to local culture, laws, and social norms.


---

In Practice

- When doing business internationally, business persons must be aware of the differences between their home market and the host market.
- The CAGE model provides a useful framework for classifying these differences, or “distances,” as Ghemawat calls them.

For further consideration: Which element of “distance” is most important—cultural, administrative, geographic, or economic? Or does “importance” vary according to the issue at hand?

---

Why Study International Business?

There are many different reasons why today’s students need to learn more about international business. However, although the concepts may be the same, there is little doubt that the complexity of skills and knowledge needed for success is far greater for international business than for domestic business. International businesspeople must be knowledgeable about cultural, legal, political, and social differences among countries. They must choose the countries in which to sell their goods and from which to buy inputs. International businesses also must coordinate the activities of their foreign subsidiaries, while dealing with the taxing and regulatory authorities of their home country and all the other countries in which they do business.
Mexico, Uruguay, Canada, and the United States. A basic grasp of international business would help you understand more fully why the team was formed, what the company expects it to accomplish, and how you might most effectively interact with your colleagues. You also need to study international business because you may eventually work for a firm that is owned by a corporation headquartered in another country. For instance, 5.3 million U.S. citizens work for U.S. affiliates of foreign-owned corporations, and foreign subsidiaries of U.S. corporations employ 11.1 million Europeans, Asians, Africans, Australians, Canadians, and Latin Americans.\(^2\)

Small businesses also are becoming more involved in international business. If one day you start your own business, you may find yourself using foreign-made materials or equipment, competing with foreign firms, and perhaps even selling in foreign markets. The growth of e-commerce has also opened up new opportunities for small businesses. Previously, to enter foreign markets, firms often needed to painstakingly build distribution networks and brand recognition country by country, a process that many times favored large firms over small ones. Today, a well-developed website can transform the business of consumers throughout the world without the need to establish a physical presence in each country, making it easier for small businesses to participate in the international marketplace. The Internet may also help small businesses cut their costs, allowing them to better compete against their larger rivals. Consider the Lee Hung Fat Garment Factory, a family-owned Hong Kong manufacturer. It slashed its costs of communicating with its foreign customers by one-third by relying on the Internet rather than faxes and telephone calls. Instead of express mailing product samples to its customers, the company uses a digital camera to transmit photos of garment mock-ups over the Internet. Company managers estimate they save 15 to 20 percent in design costs using this technology.\(^3\)

Another reason for you to study international business is to keep pace with your future competitors. Business students in Europe have traditionally learned multiple languages, traveled widely, and had job experiences in different countries. Many of their programs require them to spend one or more semesters in different countries. Asian students, too, are actively working to learn more about foreign markets and cultures, especially those of North American and European countries. These students, training to become managers, will soon be in direct competition with you, either in jobs with competing companies or in positions within your own company. You need to ensure that your global skills and knowledge will aid your career, rather than allow their absence to hinder it.

You also need to study international business to stay abreast of the latest business techniques and tools because no single country has a monopoly on good ideas. For example, Japanese firms pioneered inventory management techniques such as just-in-time (JIT) systems. Under JIT, suppliers are expected to deliver necessary inputs just as they are needed. Similarly, European firms such as Volvo and Japanese firms such as Honda were among the first to experiment with such labor practices as empowerment, quality circles, autonomous work groups, and cross-functional teams to raise the productivity and satisfaction of their workforces. Managers who remain ignorant of the innovations of their international competitors are bound to fail in the global marketplace.

Finally, you need to study international business to obtain cultural literacy. As global cultures and political systems become even more intertwined than they are now, understanding and appreciating the similarities and differences of the world’s peoples will become increasingly important. You will more often encounter colleagues, customers, suppliers, and competitors from different countries and cultural backgrounds. Knowing something about how and where their countries and companies fit into the global economy can help you earn their respect and confidence as well as give you a competitive edge in dealing with them. Conversely, if you know little or nothing about the rest of the world, you may come across as provincial, arrogant, or simply inept. This holds true regardless of whether you are a manager, a consumer, or just an observer of world events.

**In Practice**

- Studying international business is critical if you want to be an effective manager. You need global skills and knowledge to compete successfully with peers inside and outside your organization.
- The growth of the Internet and e-commerce allows even the smallest business to compete in international markets, as well as to be vulnerable to foreign competition.

*For further consideration*: Can you think of a business or trade in your country that is not affected by international business activity?
International Business Activities

Historically, international business activity first took the form of exporting and importing (see “Bringing the World into Focus”). However, in today’s complex world of international commerce, numerous other forms of international business activity are also common.

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

THE EARLY ERA OF INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

International business originally consisted of international trade. Trade between nations can be traced back as far as 2000 B.C.E., when tribes in northern Africa took dates and clothing to Babylonia and Assyria in the Middle East and traded them for spices and olive oil. This trade continued to expand over the years, encompassing more regions and a growing list of resources and products. Even the Olympic Games have their roots in this early era, with the first games being held in Greece in 776 B.C.E. By 500 B.C.E. Chinese merchants were actively exporting silk and jade to India and Europe, and common trade routes were being established.

Success in international trade often led to political and military power. First Greece and then the Roman Empire prospered in part because of exploitation of international trade. Ancient wars were fought to maintain trade dominance. For example, the North African city of Carthage became an international business center that rivaled Rome in the third century B.C.E. By 500 B.C.E. Chinese merchants were actively exporting silk and jade to India and Europe, and common trade routes were being established.

During the Middle Ages, Italy became a focal point for international business because of its central location in what was then the world market. The political and military strength of Venice, Genoa, and Florence reflected their roles as major centers of international commerce and banking that linked trade routes between Europe and China. In 1453 these trade routes were severed when the Turks conquered Constantinople (now Istanbul) and gained control of the Middle East. Europe’s trade with China had been particularly profitable, so European governments became interested in finding new ocean routes to the Far East. Backed by the Spanish government, Christopher Columbus sailed west from Europe looking for such routes. His landing in the Caribbean islands served instead to identify an important new source of resources and, eventually, led to the colonization of the Americas by European countries.

As this colonization took place, new avenues of trade opened. Settlers throughout the Americas sold raw materials, precious metals, and grains to Europe in exchange for tea, manufactured goods, and other commodities. Most of the American territories eventually became independent countries and important contributors to the world economy.

Another phenomenon of great importance to international business developed during the colonial period and the subsequent Age of Imperialism: the growth of foreign direct investment (FDI) and multinational corporations (MNCs), both of which involve foreigners supplying and controlling investments in a host country. European capitalists from such imperialist powers as the United Kingdom, France, the Netherlands, Spain, Belgium, and Portugal nurtured new businesses in their colonial empires in the Americas, Asia, and Africa, establishing networks of banking, transportation, and trade that persist to this day. The earliest of these firms included the Dutch East India Company (established in 1600), the British East India Company (1602), and the Hudson’s Bay Company (1670). These and latter-day trading companies, such as Jardine Matheson Holdings, Ltd., owned copper mines, tea and coffee estates, jute and cotton mills, rubber plantations, and the like as part of their global trading empires.

During the nineteenth century, the invention and perfection of the steam engine, coupled with the spread of railroads, dramatically lowered the cost of transporting goods over land and thereby made larger factories more economical. This development in turn broadened the extent of FDI. The forerunners of such large contemporary MNCs as Unilever, Ericsson, and Royal Dutch Shell took their first steps on the path to becoming international giants by investing in facilities throughout Asia, Europe, and the Americas during this period. New inventions promoting technological change further stimulated FDI. For example, in 1852 Samuel Colt built a factory in Great Britain to produce his famous firearms, and later in the century Dunlop built factories in Belgium, France, and Japan to exploit its tire-making expertise.

During the twentieth century, the invention and perfection of the steam engine, coupled with the spread of railroads, dramatically lowered the cost of transporting goods over land and thereby made larger factories more economical. This development in turn broadened the extent of FDI. The forerunners of such large contemporary MNCs as Unilever, Ericsson, and Royal Dutch Shell took their first steps on the path to becoming international giants by investing in facilities throughout Asia, Europe, and the Americas during this period. New inventions promoting technological change further stimulated FDI. For example, in 1852 Samuel Colt built a factory in Great Britain to produce his famous firearms, and later in the century Dunlop built factories in Belgium, France, and Japan to exploit its tire-making expertise.

Exporting and Importing

Exporting is the selling of products made in one’s own country for use or resale in other countries. Importing is the buying of products made in other countries for use or resale in one’s own country. Exporting and importing activities often are divided into two groups. One group of activities is trade in goods—tangible products such as clothing, computers, and raw materials. Official U.S. government publications call this type of trade merchandise exports and imports; the British often refer to it as visible trade. The other group of activities is trade in services—intangible products such as banking, travel, and accounting activities. In the United States this type of trade is called service exports and imports; in the United Kingdom it is often called invisible trade.

Exports are often critical to a firm’s financial health. For example, in 2012, 54 percent of Boeing’s $81.7 billion in sales were to foreign customers, creating tens of thousands of jobs at the company and thousands more at the factories of its parts suppliers. International sales often are equally important to smaller firms, such as Task Force Tips, an Indiana manufacturer of fire hose nozzles, which exports one-third of its production.

Trade is important to countries as well. As Figure 1.1 shows, exporting accounts for more than three-quarters of the gross domestic products (GDP) of the Netherlands and Thailand, and over 30 percent of the GDPs of Canada, China, Germany, Mexico, and the United Kingdom.

International Investments

The second major form of international business activity is international investments—capital supplied by residents of one country to residents of another. Such investments are divided into two categories: foreign direct investments and foreign portfolio investments. Foreign direct investments (FDI) are investments made for the purpose of actively controlling property, assets, or companies located in host countries. (The country in which the parent company’s headquarters is located is called the home country; any other country in which the company operates is known as a host country.) An example of an FDI is the purchase of all the common stock of the UK’s Cadbury PLC by Kraft. After the purchase Kraft installed its own executives to oversee Cadbury’s operations and integrate them into Kraft’s global procurement and marketing programs.

FIGURE 1.1
Exports of Goods and Services as a Percentage of GDP for Some Key Countries (2011 data)

Foreign portfolio investments (FPI) are purchases of foreign financial assets (stocks, bonds, and certificates of deposit) for a purpose other than control. An example of a portfolio investment is the purchase of 1,000 shares of Sony’s common stock by a Danish pension fund. With this investment the pension fund is trying to raise the rate of return on its asset portfolio rather than control Sony’s decision making. For the same reason many investors in recent years have bought shares of mutual funds that specialize in foreign stocks and bonds.

Other Forms of International Business Activity
International business activity can also take other forms. Licensing, franchising, and management contracts are among the most important. International licensing is a contractual arrangement in which a firm in one country licenses the use of its intellectual property (patents, trademarks, brand names, copyrights, or trade secrets) to a firm in a second country in return for a royalty payment. The Walt Disney Company may permit a German clothing retailer to market children’s pajamas embroidered with Mickey Mouse’s smiling face in return for a percentage of the company’s sales. International franchising, a specialized form of international licensing, occurs when a firm in one country (the franchisor) authorizes a firm in a second country (the franchisee) to use its operating systems as well as its brand names, trademarks, and logos in return for a royalty payment. For example, McDonald’s Corporation franchises its fast-food restaurants worldwide. Finally, an international management contract is an arrangement wherein a firm in one country agrees to operate facilities or provide other management services to a firm in another country for an agreed-on fee. Management contracts are common, for instance, in the upper end of the international hotel industry. Hoteliers such as Marriott and Hilton often do not own the expensive hotels that bear their brand names throughout the world but rather operate them under management contracts.

A firm that engages in any of these types of transactions can be labeled an international business. More formally, we can define an international business as any organization that engages in cross-border commercial transactions with individuals, private firms, or public sector organizations. But note that we have also used the term international business to mean cross-border commercial transactions. Whenever you see this term, you need to determine, from the context in which it is being used, whether it is referring to a general process involving transactions across borders or to a single organization engaging in specific transactions across borders.

The term multinational corporation (MNC) is used to identify firms that have extensive involvement in international business. A more precise definition of an MNC is a firm “that engages in FDI and owns or controls value-adding activities in more than one country.” In addition to owning and controlling foreign assets, MNCs typically buy resources in a variety of countries, create goods or services in a variety of countries, and then sell those goods and services in a variety of countries. MNCs generally coordinate their activities from a central headquarters but may also allow their affiliates or subsidiaries in foreign markets considerable latitude in adjusting their operations to local circumstances. Because some large MNCs, such as accounting partnerships and Lloyd’s of London, are not true corporations, some writers distinguish between multinational corporations and multinational enterprises (MNEs). Further, not-for-profit organizations, such as the IOC and the International Red Cross, are not true enterprises, so the term multinational organization (MNO) can be used when one wants to refer to both not-for-profit and profit-seeking organizations. Table 1.1 lists the world’s largest corporations in 2012.

In Practice
- Trade between individuals, tribes, and then nations has occurred for thousands of years. Throughout the centuries, the desire to control trade and trade routes has often been the cause of conflict between countries.
- The most important modes of international commerce include international trade and international investing, as well as more specialized business activities like licensing, franchising, and management contracts.

For further consideration: Analyze the information in Table 1.1. How would you characterize the world’s largest corporations? How would you characterize the relative changes in their sizes?
The Contemporary Causes of Globalization

International business has grown so rapidly in the past decade that many experts believe we are living in the era of globalization. Globalization can be defined as “the inexorable integration of markets, nation-states, and technologies…in a way that is enabling individuals, corporations and nation-states to reach around the world farther, faster, deeper, and cheaper than ever before.”6

There is little doubt that international trade and international direct investment—the two primary vehicles for conducting international business—are becoming increasingly important in the world’s economy. Globalization has led to an intensification of the role of international trade in the economies of the world. As Figure 1.2 indicates, the ratio of international trade to economic activity has risen dramatically. (You may note the impact of the global recession: In 2009, trade volumes decreased more than the world’s GDP did, thus causing the ratio of trade to GDP to fall.) In 1950, merchandise trade accounted for about 1 percent of the total GDP of the world’s nations; by 2011, it represented 26 percent. International trade in services added another 6 percent to this total. Some of the rapid growth in international trade in services is the result of the development of the Internet and associated technologies, which makes international trade in such diverse industries as banking, consulting, education, retailing, and gambling more feasible. For example, many Canadian and U.S. companies have shifted their customer service and data entry operations to areas with lower labor costs in and outside North America. As long as the transaction can be performed electronically, the physical location of the facility is of little importance. India, for example, has a growing call-center business, providing customer care and troubleshooting services for customers of numerous MNCs throughout the world.

### Table 1.1 The World’s Largest Corporations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Corporation</th>
<th>2012</th>
<th>2002</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Royal Dutch Shell</td>
<td>481,700</td>
<td>179,431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walmart</td>
<td>469,162</td>
<td>246,525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exxon Mobil</td>
<td>449,886</td>
<td>182,466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinopec Group</td>
<td>428,167</td>
<td>44,503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China National Petroleum</td>
<td>408,603</td>
<td>44,864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>388,285</td>
<td>178,721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Grid</td>
<td>298,449</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toyota Motor</td>
<td>265,701</td>
<td>131,754</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volkswagen</td>
<td>247,613</td>
<td>82,203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>234,277</td>
<td>96,944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chevron</td>
<td>233,899</td>
<td>92,043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glencore Xstrata</td>
<td>214,436</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan Post Holdings</td>
<td>190,859</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung Electronics</td>
<td>187,800</td>
<td>47,606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.ON</td>
<td>169,756</td>
<td>44,941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phillips 66</td>
<td>169,551</td>
<td>58,384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENI</td>
<td>167,905</td>
<td>46,328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berkshire Hathaway</td>
<td>162,463</td>
<td>42,353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple</td>
<td>156,508</td>
<td>5,470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AXA</td>
<td>154,571</td>
<td>62,050</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Based on Fortune, July 22, 2013, p. F1; Fortune, July 21, 2003, p. 106; various corporate websites.
Another manifestation of globalization is the growing importance of FDI—investments made by citizens of one country to operate and control assets in another. As Figure 1.3 demonstrates, the importance of FDI in the world’s economy has risen significantly over time. In 1980, the stock of FDI was only 2.4 percent of the world’s GDP; by 2012, the stock of FDI was nearly 32 percent of that year’s GDP.

Source: Based on information obtained from World Trade Organization Web site: http://stat.wto.org/StatisticalProgram/WSDBViewData.aspx?Languages=E.

The growth of international business in recent years has been clear and dramatic, as depicted in Figures 1.2 and 1.3. But why has this growth occurred? And why is international business activity likely to continue to skyrocket during the next decade? There are two broad reasons: strategic imperatives, which motivate globalization, and environmental changes, which facilitate it.

**Strategic Imperatives**

Several basic motives have compelled firms to become more global in both their orientation and actions. These strategic imperatives include leveraging a firm’s core competencies, acquiring resources at low cost, expanding into new markets, and competing with industry rivals.

**TO LEVERAGE CORE COMPETENCIES** One major motive for globalization is the opportunity to leverage a core competency that a firm has developed in its home market. A core competency is a distinctive strength or advantage that is central to a firm’s operations. By using its core competency in new markets, the firm is able to increase its revenues and profits. Samsung, for example, developed cutting-edge cellular phone technology that was eagerly adopted by domestic consumers in South Korea. Samsung’s managers quickly recognized that the firm could increase its revenues and profits by expanding its operations and sales in other countries. Similarly, since its birth in 1972, Singapore Airlines has worked hard to develop award-winning standards of customer satisfaction and reliability that have drawn millions of Asian passengers to its flights. Believing that travelers in other markets would welcome the tender loving care for which the carrier is renowned, Singapore Airlines has deftly expanded its services to more than 60 cities in 30 countries throughout the world.

**TO ACQUIRE RESOURCES AND SUPPLIES** Another important reason for going international is to acquire resources such as materials, labor, capital, or technology. In some cases organizations must go to foreign sources because certain products or services are either scarce or unavailable locally. For example, North American grocery wholesalers buy coffee and bananas from South America; Japanese firms buy forest products from Canada; and firms worldwide buy oil from the Middle East and Africa. In other cases firms simply find it easier or more economical to buy from other countries. For instance, many U.S. advertising agencies shoot commercials overseas. Cape Town, South Africa, has become a popular site, for example, because production crews and equipment can be hired there for less than 40 percent of their cost in Los Angeles. As the chapter’s closing case, “Demography Is Destiny,” indicates, demographic changes will play a major role in the future resource acquisition strategies of MNCs.

**TO SEEK NEW MARKETS** Seeking new markets is also a common motive for international expansion. When a firm’s domestic market matures, it becomes increasingly difficult to generate high revenue and profit growth. For example, the market for toothpaste in Canada, the United States, and the EU can be classified as mature—most people there have had the financial resources for decades to regularly purchase toothpaste. Thus, firms like Procter & Gamble, Unilever, and Colgate-Palmolive cannot expect to achieve significant growth in sales from their toothpaste products in these markets and have aggressively moved into emerging markets like China, India, and Indonesia to seek greener pastures. Expansion into new markets carries with it two other benefits. First, a firm may be able to achieve economies of scale, lowering its average costs as its production increases. Second, such expansion diversifies a firm’s revenue stream. As it serves more countries, the firm becomes less dependent on its sales in any one country, thereby protecting itself should that country’s economy turn sour.

**TO BETTER COMPETE WITH Rivals** Finally, businesses sometimes enter foreign markets to better compete with industry rivals. For example, as Coca-Cola expands aggressively around the world, rival Pepsi-Cola has little choice but to follow and try to keep up. Should Pepsi allow Coca-Cola to dominate important markets, Coca-Cola could use profits from those markets to finance attacks on Pepsi in still other markets. Such thinking permeates industries such as earth-moving equipment, smartphones, and aircraft manufacturing, where the leading firms continually attack and counterattack each other in every region of the world to prevent their rivals from getting a stranglehold in any country.
The Environmental Causes of Globalization

These strategic imperatives provide firms with the motivation to internationalize their operations. However, firms would not have been able to expand their international activities to the extent we have observed during the post–World War II period without significant changes in two key areas: the political environment and the technological environment.

CHANGES IN THE POLITICAL ENVIRONMENT During the first half of the twentieth century, firms wishing to enter new markets were often frustrated by barriers against foreign trade and investment erected by national governments. After World War I, many countries, including the United States, France, the United Kingdom, and Germany, imposed tariffs and quotas on imported goods and favored local firms on government supply contracts. As a result, international trade and investment declined throughout the 1930s. However, after World War II these policies were reversed. The major trading powers negotiated reductions in tariffs and quotas and eliminated barriers to FDI within their borders. Many of the reductions were negotiated through the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) and its successor, the World Trade Organization (WTO). Regional accords, such as the EU, the Mercosur Accord, and the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), also have relaxed trade and investment barriers among their members.

TECHNOLOGICAL CHANGES Changes in governmental policies encouraged international business activity. Improvements in technology—particularly in communication, transportation, and information processing—made international business more feasible and more profitable. Think about the difficulties of conducting business internationally when the primary form of transportation was the sailing ship, the primary form of data processing was pencil and paper, and the primary form of communication was the letter delivered by a postman on horseback. Transportation improvements during the past 150 years—from sailing ship to steamship to seaplane to jet airliner—mean that a manager in London no longer needs to spend weeks traveling to confer with colleagues in New Delhi, Toronto, or New York. Advances in transportation also have stimulated growth in international tourism, which is the largest component of international trade in services. The increasing ability of computers to rapidly process vast quantities of information allows firms to manage offices and factories located in every corner of the globe. Exxon Mobil, for example, relies on its computers to continuously adjust the output of its refineries and the sailings of its tankers to meet changes in worldwide demand for its products. Changes in communications technology, such as the advent of electronic mail, smartphones, and

VENTURING ABROAD
MANCHESTER CITY IN DUBAI

It was the beginning of September 2008 and the usual excitement was mounting as the football transfer window was about to close. Suddenly, out of nowhere it seemed, came the Abu Dhabi United Group for Development and Investment. Headed by Dr. Sulaiman Al Fahim, a billionaire in his own right, the group bought the Premier League team, Manchester City, from the former Thailand Prime Minister, Thaksin Shinawatra. Negotiations had begun three weeks before and were completed late on Sunday August 31, at the Emirates Palace Hotel in Dubai. The group is believed to have bought the Premier League team, Manchester City, from the former Thailand Prime Minister, Thaksin Shinawatra. Negotiations had begun three weeks before and were completed late on Sunday August 31, at the Emirates Palace Hotel in Dubai. The group is believed to have

- $221 billion at their disposal. In a stroke, the club’s $147 million plus debt was paid off and they began to throw their new financial muscle into the transfer market. They snatched the Real Madrid Brazilian-born striker, Robinho, from the cash-rich Chelsea, which is backed by Russian billionaire Roman Abramovich.

- Apparently, so cash-rich is the doctor and his group that the money required to purchase Manchester City (calculated at around $295 million) was wired from reserves of the brother of the ruler of Abu Dhabi, Sheikh Mansour Bin Zayed Al Nahyan. To put the purchase of Robinho at $47.8 million into perspective, Abu Dhabi generates that amount in surplus revenue in five hours by pumping oil. The doctor intends to make $385 million available to the football club for transfer spending over the next two years. The key aim of acquiring Manchester City is not only to win football glory in the world, but also raise the profile of Abu Dhabi itself.

- Abu Dhabi has been trying to diversify their economy in recent years, specifically by making investments abroad in financial services and in tourism. Abu Dhabi’s oil reserves are estimated to be worth around $1 trillion.

tablet computers, enable a manager in Tokyo to receive reports from colleagues in Amsterdam, Abidjan, and Auckland in seconds rather than days. These technological advances make managing distant businesses far easier today than executives would have dreamed possible just a few decades ago and so have facilitated expansion into international markets.

**Globalization and Emerging Markets**

We noted that globalization has led to an intensification of international business activity. It is also marked by an expansion of such activity into new markets previously insulated from the international marketplace.

The political changes discussed previously have played a major role in this process. During the Cold War between the United States and the Soviet Union, many scholars divided the world into three regions: the First World, consisting of the rich, major trading nations from Western Europe, North America, Australia, and parts of Asia, most of which were allied diplomatically with the United States; the Second World, consisting of the Soviet Union and allied Communist states; and the Third World, consisting primarily of the low- to medium-income countries populating Latin America, Africa, and most of Asia. Most international business activity took place between members of the First World. The Second World walled itself off to commerce with the First World, while the Third World was primarily viewed as a supplier of raw materials and commodities to the First World countries.

This is no longer the case: The collapse of European Communism, the ideological and policy changes undertaken by China and India, and the reduction of trade barriers have transformed the global marketplace. Shakespeare once wrote, “All the world’s a stage.” Today savvy businesspersons recognize that business opportunities are no longer limited to the traditional markets of Western Europe, North America, or Japan. Indeed, today much of the attention of international businesses is focused on the so-called emerging markets, countries whose recent growth or prospects for future growth exceed that of traditional markets. Many companies are finding much of their sales and profit growth is attributable to emerging markets. For example, Burberry’s sales in China rose 20 percent in 2012. China now accounts for about 14 percent of this upscale retailer’s revenues.\(^8\)

There is no universally accepted definition of the countries to be included in the emerging markets category. Some scholars limit the term to the BRIC countries—Brazil, Russia, India, and China. Other researchers have used the term to describe the so-called Big Ten—Argentina, Brazil, China, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Poland, South Africa, South Korea, and Turkey.\(^9\) Other experts have a more expansive definition, including most non-high-income countries in Africa, Asia, Eastern Europe, and Latin America. Regardless of the definition, it is clear that international businesses that ignore the emerging markets do so at their own risk. Consider that two of these emerging markets, China (see Map 1.1) and India, together account for more than one-third of the world’s population. Their economies are growing significantly faster than that of the world as a whole, as Table 1.2 indicates.

While China’s economy has enjoyed double-digit annual growth in the past 20 years, China’s leaders need to develop policies to ensure that its large rural population shares in the country’s prosperity.
China’s Regional Challenges

China’s economy has grown rapidly in the past two decades. The government is concerned about rising income inequality between cities and the countryside and between coastal China and the country’s interior.

The Chinese government is particularly sensitive to any sign of political dissent in Xinjiang and Tibet. The cultural and religious traditions of Xinjiang’s dominant ethnic group, the Uighurs, differ from those of the Han, China’s largest ethnic group. Tibet was incorporated into the People’s Republic of China subsequent to the People’s Liberation Army’s defeat of the smaller Tibetan army in 1950.

Per Capita Income (in U.S. dollars)
- $2500–$4400
- $4401–$6000
- $6001–$9000
- $9001 and above

Labor and land costs are lower in China’s interior. Chongqing and Chengdu are rapidly becoming the world’s centers for computer production, having attracted new factories manufacturing for companies like Acer, Apple, Asustek, Dell, Hewlett-Packard, and Lenovo.

The coastal provinces have been the primary beneficiaries of China’s economic growth. Their high wage rates have caused producers of labor-intensive goods to migrate to inland China, Vietnam, and Bangladesh in search of lower-cost labor.


In Practice

- The growth of international business activity has been facilitated by political change and by technological change. Political change has opened more markets to international businesses; technological change has given them the ability to compete in those newly opened markets.
- As Figures 1.2 and 1.3 indicate, an increasing share of world economic activity is attributable to international business activity.

For further consideration: If you are looking for additional evidence of the globalized nature of the world’s economy, consider the impact of the global recession of 2008–2009 on the data reported in Figures 1.2 and 1.3. Why did the ratios in these two figures decline in those years?
An Overview of the Contents of This Book

In writing this book, we have started with the assumption that most readers will eventually work for or own a firm that is affected by international business activity. Our goal is to help them become more confident and effective managers in the competitive global marketplace. To do so, we provide our readers with the knowledge and skills necessary to succeed in international business.

We have structured the contents of the book to move from relatively macro, or general, issues to increasingly micro, or specific, issues that managers deal with regularly. Our rationale is that managers must fully understand the context of international business to work effectively within it. This broad, general context provides the backdrop within which all international business occurs. At each increasingly specific level within that context, the international manager is faced with specific and operational issues, problems, challenges, and opportunities.

Part 1 comprises Chapters 1 through 5. It provides an overview of the world’s marketplaces. Chapter 1 has supplied some background definitions and discussed the contemporary global business environment. Chapter 2 provides a wealth of economic and geographical information about the world’s major economies and business centers. Chapters 3 and 4 describe the national environments of international business—the more specific, country-level environmental context that affects and impacts business activity and opportunities. Chapter 5 addresses the social responsibility challenges that international businesses must address in the era of globalization.

Parts 2 through 4 follow a logical progression of topics, moving from the broad, general issues confronting international business to increasingly more specific, focused issues that managers face daily (see Figure 1.4). Part 2 discusses the international environment in more detail, addressing the overall context of international business and introducing many of the global forces and conditions that affect organizations and managers. Part 3 adopts the perspective of a
specific organization, focusing on general management issues such as international strategies, modes of entry into foreign markets, joint ventures and strategic alliances, organization design, organizational control, and organizational behavior in international business. Part 4 covers the management of specific international business functions: marketing, operations, finance, and human resource management.

Figure 1.4
Framework for This Book

- **The World’s Marketplaces**
  - Global marketplaces
  - Legal environment
  - Technological environment
  - Political environment
  - Cultural environment
  - Ethical environment

- **International Environment**
  - International trade and investment theory
  - Balance of payments
  - International financial markets and institutions
  - National trade policies
  - International cooperation among nations

- **Managing International Business**
  - International strategic management
  - Strategies for analyzing and entering foreign markets
  - International strategic alliances
  - Organizational design for international business
  - Managing behavior and interpersonal relations
  - Controlling the international business

- **Managing International Business Operations**
  - International marketing
  - International operations management
  - International financial management
  - International human resource management and labor relations
Summary

International business encompasses any business transaction that involves parties from more than one country. These transactions can take various forms and can involve individual companies, groups of companies, or government agencies. International business can differ from domestic business because of differences in currencies, legal systems, cultures, and resource availability.

Studying international business is important for several reasons. First, any organization you work for, even if small, is likely to be affected by the global economy. Second, someday you may work for a foreign-owned firm. Further, you need to keep pace with other managers who are learning to function in international settings. Finally, you need to be culturally literate in today’s world.

International business activity can take various forms. Exporting involves selling products made in one’s own country for use or resale in another country. Importing involves buying products made in other countries for use or resale in one’s own country. FDIs are investments made for the purpose of controlling property, assets, or companies located in foreign countries. Other common forms of international business activity include licensing, franchising, and management contracts.

An international business is one that engages in commercial transactions with individuals, private firms, or public sector organizations that cross national boundaries. Firms with extensive international involvement are called multinational corporations, or MNCs.

International business has grown dramatically in recent years because of strategic imperatives and environmental changes. Strategic imperatives include the need to leverage core competencies, acquire resources, seek new markets, and match the actions of rivals. Although strategic imperatives indicate why firms wish to internationalize their operations, significant changes in the political and technological environments have no doubt facilitated the explosive growth in international business activity that has occurred since World War II. The growth of the Internet and other information technologies is likely to redefine global competition and ways of doing international business once again.

Review Questions

1-1. How do country-specific reasons distinguish international business from domestic business?
1-2. Discuss the importance of the global economy in your life?
1-3. What are the differences between visible and invisible trade?
1-4. How do merchandise exports and imports differ from service exports and imports?
1-5. What is portfolio investment?
1-6. What are the basic reasons for the recent growth of international business activity?

Questions for Discussion

1-7. What is the impact of globalization on international business and its growth?
1-8. What are the driving forces behind global firms? How do emerging markets affect the ability of global firms in leveraging their core competencies? Explain your answer with examples.
1-9. Which markets are more important to international businesses—the traditional markets of North America, the EU, and Japan, or the emerging markets? Defend your answer.
1-10. What makes a firm truly ‘global’ in its outlook? Do you think technology, cultural and political changes affect the orientation of a firm?
1-11. What are some of the differences in skills that may exist between managers in a domestic firm and those in an international firm?
1-12. Would you want to work for a foreign-owned firm? Why or why not?
Building Global Skills

List different products you use on a regular basis, such as your alarm clock, camera, car, coffeemaker, computer, smartphone, television, tablet—perhaps even your favorite CD, shirt, fruit juice, ebook reader, or footwear. Determine which firms made these items. After you have developed your list, go to the library or surf the Internet to research the following for each item:

1-13. In which country is the firm headquartered?
1-14. What percentage of the firm’s annual sales comes from its home market? What percentage comes from other countries?
1-15. Where was the item most likely manufactured?
1-16. Why do you think it was manufactured there?

Follow up by meeting with a small group of your classmates and completing these activities:

1-17. Discuss the relative impact of international business on your daily lives.
1-18. Compile a list of the 10 most common products the average college student might use.
1-19. Try to identify the brands of each product that are made by domestic firms.
1-20. Try to identify the brands of each product that are made by foreign firms.
1-21. Does your list of 10 products include items with components that are both domestically made and foreign made?

CLOSING CASE

Demography Is Destiny

Recent newspaper headlines trumpeted stories of massive protests in Paris by students and workers denouncing pending labor market reforms; of teachers, policemen, and firefighters in Wisconsin protesting a bill that would truncate their collective bargaining rights; of marches by civil servants in Athens and London denouncing proposed cutbacks in their pensions and working conditions. Meanwhile, the Central Committee of the Communist Party announced new initiatives to promote economic development in China’s rural areas. Underlying each of these actions are dramatic demographic changes occurring in these countries.

Demography is the study of the structure of human populations—their size, age composition, gender mix, growth, and so on. Demographers often assert that demography is destiny. By that they mean that a country’s demography constrains and shapes the opportunities available to it. If so, then changes in the population, age structure, and gender mix of the world’s major economies suggest that significant changes are in store for the world economy.

A traditional way of examining a country’s demography is through the use of population pyramids (see Figure 1.5). In olden days, the normal structure of a country’s age distribution was a pyramid. Each layer of the pyramid consisted of the number of individuals in an age bracket. The pyramid shape resulted from the fact that the number of people aged 0–4 was slightly larger than the number aged 5–9; 5–9-year-olds slightly outnumbered 10–14-year-olds; and so forth. The declining size was the result of the cruel reality of death from disease, famine, and childbirth in a world without modern medicine. Fortunately, better health care, education, and

---

**FIGURE 1.5**
Population Pyramids for 2025

![Population Pyramids for 2025](image)

(Continued)
hygiene have freed many societies from this cruel reality, and
some population pyramids more closely resemble diamonds
or rectangles. But these societies now face the challenge of
dealing with graying populations. (The U.S. Census Bureau
presents population data for many of the world’s countries:
go to www.census.gov; then use the search box to locate the
international data base.)

These dramatic demographic changes portend ma-
jor shifts in economic power and competitiveness. The
populations of many major economic powers—including
Russia, Italy, Germany, South Korea, and Japan—are pre-
dicted to get older and smaller over the next two decades.
According to the Organisation for Economic Cooperation
and Development (OECD), the old-age dependency ratio
will rise dramatically over the next several decades (see
Figure 1.6). The old-age dependency ratio is the ratio of
the number of people 65 and older to the number of people
between the ages of 20 and 64. A rising old-age dependency
ratio indicates that the burden imposed on current workers
to support retirees will increase. This burden can take the
form of familial transfers or increased taxes. In either case,
the monies available to support the consumption of current
workers will decline.

The implications of these demographic changes for
companies and countries alike are profound. For many com-
panies, when retirees leave work on their last day, a lifetime
of experience and knowledge walks out the door as well.
Some companies recognize that they will have to change
their ways of doing business. For countries, graying of the
workforce suggests pressures on the public treasury to sup-
port older citizens. Japan is one of the first major economies
to face an aging, shrinking population. In 2008, Japan’s
population began to decline, by a modest 83,000 residents.
Japan’s population in 2013 was 127.3 million; by 2025, its
citizensry will shrink to 123.4 million. In 2013, 24.8 percent
of the population is 65 or older; by 2025, that percentage
will rise to 30.7 percent, thanks in part to the 84-year life
expectancy that its citizens enjoy. It is not surprising, then,
that Japanese companies are at the forefront of responding
to these changes. Toyota has begun to adapt its workstations

**Figure 1.5**

(Continued)

![Population Pyramids](image)

*Source: U.S. Census Bureau, International Data Base.*
to make them more comfortable for a workforce that is growing older. Although such changes will help, the reality is that companies operating in countries with shrinking populations are likely to face higher wage and salary costs as the supply of labor contracts. In countries with aging populations, firms are likely to face higher taxes as governments struggle to find revenues to support and care for older citizens. Moreover, an increasing portion of the labor force will be employed caring for retirees, shrinking the availability of labor for other sectors of the economy.

The structure of consumption will also change because the bundle of goods consumed by retirees differs dramatically from that of younger workers. Retirees demand more medical services, for example, whereas younger workers buy homes, furniture, household goods, and educational services. Japanese companies appear to be at the forefront of adapting new technologies to meet these demographic challenges. Synclayer, a Nagoya-based supplier of cable television and local area network technology, has developed a system to allow the elderly to self-administer basic medical measurements, which can then be transmitted over the local area network to their doctors. Zojirushi, a leading manufacturer of rice cookers and tea kettles, is equipping its wares with wireless transmitters that send a message to family or friends that the kitchen equipment has been used. Other manufacturers are busily developing service robots to help the elderly lift heavy objects or monitor their health. A government study predicts that the service robot market could reach $8.4 billion in a decade, thanks to the aging of the Japanese population.

The likely paths of the world’s two most populous nations, China and India, diverge. Currently the Chinese labor force is expanding as a result of dramatic declines in infant mortality that occurred in the 1960s and 1970s, providing a ready source of cheap labor for China’s manufacturing sector. However, China’s working age population will begin shrinking in 2016. Already the number of women between 18 and 35 is declining, as is the population between 20 and 24. These declines suggest that aggregate family formation will decrease within a decade, as will births. India’s population, which is much younger than China’s, will continue to grow. U.S. government demographers predict that by 2050, India’s population will be 1.657 billion (up from 1.22 billion in 2013), whereas China’s population, currently 1.349 billion strong, will peak in 2026 at 1.395 billion and then gradually decline to 1.303 billion by 2050. The median age of Indians in 2050 will be 37.2; Americans, 40.0; Chinese, 48.7. India will face the task of providing employment for these young workers, whereas China will face the same challenges of a graying population that today confront Japan and most of Western Europe, with two added problems. First, because of its “one-child” policy, which discouraged families from having more than one child, as
that one child enters the labor force and his or her parents subsequently retire, the child may need to provide financial support for both parents; and moreover, given the improvements in longevity in China, in some cases the child may also need to support four grandparents. Second, although saving rates in China are quite high, few companies provide pension benefits to their employees. Moreover, because of Chinese cultural values that favor male children, the one-child policy has created a conspicuous imbalance in the gender ratio between males and females, with unknown but likely significant impacts on the marriage market, family formation, and elder care. In a decade or two, consumption patterns in young, growing India are likely to diverge dramatically from those in a graying China. Suppliers of video games, big-screen TVs, and child car seat may flock to India, whereas purveyors of hypertension and anticholesterol medicines, bifocals, and retirement financial services will find China an attractive market.

Case Questions
1-22. What challenges do graying populations create for companies?
1-23. What opportunities do graying populations create for firms?
1-24. How will demographic changes affect the competitiveness of countries in the international marketplace?

1-25. What can countries do to counteract the impact of these demographic changes on their economic competitiveness?
1-26. What has been the impact of the one-child policy on China’s economic fortunes?
1-27. Go to the U.S. Census Bureau’s international data base at www.census.gov. Pick two countries and analyze their changing demographics. Which one faces the more favorable demographic future?


CHAPTER 2

Global Marketplaces and Business Centers

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Evaluate the impact of the political and economic characteristics of the world’s various marketplaces on the opportunities available to international businesses.
2. Appreciate the uses of national income data in making business decisions.
3. Discuss North America as a major marketplace and business center in the world economy.
4. Describe Western Europe as a major marketplace and business center in the world economy.
5. Discuss Asia as a major marketplace and business center in the world economy.
6. Assess the development challenges facing African, Middle Eastern, and South American countries.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

Shortly after voyages to the Americas by explorers such as Christopher Columbus, Vasco da Gama, and Amerigo Vespucci, European kings and merchants eagerly sought to discover the Northwest Passage, a rumored route that would allow them to access the riches of Asia by winding their way through the Arctic seas. Despite their best efforts, adventurers like John Cabot, Juan de Fuca, Martin Frobisher, Vitus Bering, James Cook, and Jacques Cartier found no such passage—the Arctic ice cap frustrated all such attempts.

Fast forward to the twenty-first century. To the alarm of scientists and environmentally concerned citizens, the Arctic ice cap has been rapidly shrinking as a result of global climate change. But the diminishing ice cap has raised the prospect that a Northwest Passage will now become feasible. At the current rate of thaw, some scientists believe the Arctic Ocean will be nearly free of summer ice by as early as 2020.

Two such Arctic routes may prove commercially feasible. The first, the famed Northwest Passage, hugs the northwestern North American coast, wends its way through the numerous Canadian Arctic islands, and then exits south of Greenland for the remaining voyage to Europe or the eastern coasts of the Americas. The second, the Northern Sea Route, follows the coastline of eastern Siberia and enters the Arctic Ocean through the Bering Strait. The Northern Sea Route then traverses northern Siberian waters until it reaches the famed ice-free port of Murmansk, easily accessible to the Atlantic Ocean and the busy ports of Europe.

Chinese researchers believe such polar routings could develop into the world’s most important trade corridors. For many cargo routings, the distance between Western European ports and East Asian ports could be cut by a third using the Northwest Passage or the Northern Sea Route. Major Asian trading nations like China, Japan, and South Korea are sinking money into icebreaker research and ice capable vessels to take advantage of this opportunity to decrease transport times and expenses to the European market.

The shrinking ice cap also has raised prospects of exploring and exploiting the mineral wealth of the waters cloaked by the ice. The U.S. Geological Survey believes the Arctic could contain as much as a quarter of the world’s undiscovered commercially recoverable reserves of oil and natural gas. This then heightens the importance of who owns the rights to these waters. Under the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS), countries are given control over navigation within 12 miles of their coastline, and an exclusive economic zone (EEZ) within 200 miles of their coastline. UNCLOS contains additional codicils dealing with the presence of islands affiliated with a coastline and with the treatment of continental shelves.

Historical claims to territory further complicate the definitions of these control rights.

Not surprisingly, as the ice cap has shrunk and made commercial exploitation of the area more feasible, countries have been more aggressive in staking out their Arctic claims. The Arctic Council, composed of countries with territorial claims to the Arctic (Canada, Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, Russia, Sweden, and the United States) is the primary international organization addressing the region’s issues. Founded in 1996, the Arctic Council is charged with developing rules and procedures for protecting the fragile Arctic environment, promoting sustainable development, and coordinating scientific research. China, India, Italy, Japan, Singapore, and South Korea were granted permanent observer status on the council in May 2013. But these applications did generate some political controversy. China, for example, diplomatically snubbed Norway after a Norway-based committee awarded the 2010 Nobel Peace Prize to a Chinese dissident pro-democracy activist, Liu Xiaobo. In response, Norway was slow to approve China’s request for permanent observer status on the Arctic Council. A hotel development project in Iceland by a Chinese entrepreneur stoked fears that it was a Trojan horse designed to further China’s claims to the Arctic, despite any evidence to support the concerns. Russia, the owner of roughly half of the Arctic coastline, was also reluctant to grant China’s request. And Canada blocked the EU’s application for observer status, concerned that EU environmentalists would gain more clout to meddle in the annual seal hunts conducted by indigenous Canadian natives.

Although the members of the Arctic Council are in general agreement about the scope of members’ territorial claims, some conflicts remain. Canada and Denmark are squabbling over ownership of some rocks claimed by Canada and by Greenland (a self-governing division of the Kingdom of Denmark). Canada also asserts that much of the Northwest Passage lies within its territorial waters, while the United States and the United Kingdom argue that they are international waters. Of greater concern is delimiting the boundaries of countries’ continental shelves. In 2007, a Russian submersible planted the Russian flag 4 kilometers below the surface of the North Pole, emphasizing its claim to an underwater ridge, thought to be rich with minerals and several billion barrels of oil deposits, also claimed by Denmark and Canada. Yet experts believe the conflict will be solved peacefully. All three countries have clear title to numerous commercially feasible development projects. Russia’s president, Vladimir Putin, recognizes the importance of the region to Russia’s economic growth and has promoted a policy of collaboration on the Arctic Council.1
The growing interest in the Arctic Ocean is but one example of the myriad opportunities created by globalization. Yet businesses trying to internationalize their operations often blunder because they fail to obtain information vital to their success. Ignorance of basic geography, market characteristics, culture, and politics may lead to lost profits or, in the extreme, doom a venture to failure. Linguistic and cultural ties, past political associations, and military alliances play significant roles in the world pattern of trade and investment and in shaping the opportunities available to businesses today. For example, London’s contemporary importance as a world financial center arises from the political and military power of the British Empire in the nineteenth century. Similarly, Austria serves as a bridge between Western and Eastern Europe because of transportation, educational, and cultural linkages that remain from the 600-year reign of the Hapsburg dynasty over the Austro-Hungarian Empire.

Providing an overview of the world economy is a challenge because of its vast size. Much of the world’s current economic activity—about 57 percent, as Figure 2.1 indicates—is concentrated in the developed countries of North America, the EU, and Japan. This is not to suggest that international managers can ignore other markets if they wish to compete successfully. The emerging markets we discussed in Chapter 1—particularly China and India—are responsible for much of the growth in the world economy. In the twenty-first century, the growth rates of China and India, 10.8 percent and 8.1 percent, respectively, have far outpaced Japan’s 0.7 percent, Germany’s 1.3 percent, or the United States’ 1.6 percent. Because astute international managers increasingly need a thorough and sophisticated understanding of the opportunities available in each of the six inhabited continents, we provide a brief overview of all the world’s marketplaces in this chapter.

The Marketplaces of North America
North America includes the United States, Canada, Mexico, Greenland, and the countries of Central America and the Caribbean. Home to 546 million people, these countries produce approximately 26 percent of the world’s output.

The United States
The United States has only the world’s third largest population and fourth largest land mass, yet it possesses the largest economy, accounting for 21 percent of the world’s $69.9 trillion GDP in 2011. As Map 2.1 shows, the United States enjoys a per capita income of over $48,000. The United States occupies a unique position in the world economy because of its size and political stability, accounting for about one-eleventh of world exports of goods.
## Map 2.1

### North America

MAP 2.1 shows the geographical layout of North America, including major cities, countries, and territories. Despite Greenland’s geographical placement in North America, it is affiliated politically with the Kingdom of Denmark.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Population (millions)</th>
<th>2011 GDP (billions)</th>
<th>GDP per capita</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CANADA</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>$1,736</td>
<td>$50,345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNITED STATES</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>$14,911</td>
<td>$48,111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEXICO</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>$1,158</td>
<td>$10,047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTRAL AMERICA</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>$166</td>
<td>$3,832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARIBBEAN</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>$344</td>
<td>$8,198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although Greenland is geographically in North America, it is affiliated politically with the Kingdom of Denmark.
and services and about one-eighth of world imports of goods and services. It is the prime market for lower-income countries trying to raise their standards of living through export-oriented economic development strategies. It is also the prime market for firms from higher-income countries trying to attract business from its large, well-educated middle class. (See “Emerging Opportunities.”)

The U.S. dollar serves as the **invoicing currency**—the currency in which the sale of goods and services is denominated—for about half of all international transactions and is an important component of foreign-currency reserves worldwide. Because of its political stability and military strength, the United States also attracts **flight capital**—money sent out of a politically or economically unstable country to one perceived as a safe haven. Citizens unsure of the value of their home country’s currency often choose to keep their wealth in dollars. The United States also is an important recipient of long-term foreign investment. Foreigners have invested $2.7 trillion in U.S. factories, equipment, and property as of 2012.

Although international trade has become increasingly more important during the past decade, it is a relatively small component of the U.S. economy. U.S. exports of goods and services in 2012 totaled $2.2 trillion but were only 14 percent of its GDP. However, this figure is somewhat misleading. Because of the country’s large size, trade that might be counted as international in smaller countries is considered domestic in the United States. For example, the money spent for a hotel room in neighboring Belgium by a Dutch motorist trapped in a thunderstorm 50 miles from home late at night is counted in the international trade statistics of both Belgium and the Netherlands. A similar expenditure by a Connecticut motorist stuck in New Jersey after watching a football game at the Meadowlands is a purely domestic transaction.

As discussed throughout this book, multinational corporations (MNCs) heavily influence international trade and investment. In 2012, the world’s 500 largest corporations had total sales of $30.3 trillion. Given the importance of the United States in the world economy, it should come as no surprise that 132 of these corporations, or 26 percent, are headquartered in the United States, including 32 of the largest 100 (see Figure 2.2). Royal Dutch Shell is currently the world’s largest company, with sales of $481.7 billion in 2012.

**Canada**

Canada has the world’s second largest land mass, although its population is only 34 million. Eighty percent of the population is concentrated within a 100-mile band along the country’s southern border with the United States. Exports are vital to the Canadian economy, accounting
EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES
CLASSIFYING COUNTRIES BY INCOME LEVELS

Often the single most important piece of information needed by international businesspeople about a country is its income level. Income levels provide clues to the purchasing power of residents, the technological sophistication of local production processes, and the status of the public infrastructure.

One important source of income statistics is the World Bank, which divides the world’s countries into high-income, middle-income, and low-income categories. High-income countries are those that enjoy annual per capita incomes of at least $12,476. (Per capita income is usually measured by dividing a country’s gross domestic product (GDP) or its gross national income (GNI) by its population. GDP is the total market value of all goods and services produced in a country during some time period, such as a year. GNI is GDP plus net income, such as dividends and interest received from residents of other countries minus those paid to residents of other countries.) The high-income group comprises three clusters of countries. The first cluster is drawn from the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), a group of 34 market-oriented democracies formed to promote economic growth. The OECD includes 25 Western European countries (the 15 EU members before its 2004 expansion plus the Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Iceland, Norway, Poland, the Slovak Republic, Slovenia, Switzerland, and Turkey), four Pacific Rim countries (Australia, Japan, New Zealand, and South Korea), and Canada, Mexico, the United States, Israel, and Chile. Thirty-one of the OECD’s 34 members fall in the high-income category. (The remaining members—Chile, Mexico, and Turkey—are classified as upper-middle income.) The second cluster comprises oil-rich countries such as Bahrain, Brunei, Kuwait, Qatar, Russia, Saudi Arabia, and the United Arab Emirates. The third cluster consists of smaller industrialized countries and island states, including Croatia, Latvia, Hong Kong, Singapore, Taiwan, Bermuda, the Bahamas, and the Cayman Islands.

Middle-income countries have per capita incomes of more than $1,025 but less than $12,476. The World Bank subdivides this group into lower-middle income (per capita income between $1,026 and $4,035) and upper-middle income (per capita income between $4,036 and $12,475). This category includes many of the former Soviet republics, which generally enjoyed high levels of development in the 1930s but fell behind the Western economies economically after World War II. Other countries in this category, such as Chile, Costa Rica, and Mauritius, have been undergoing successful industrialization and economic growth and may be elevated to the high-income category by the end of this decade.

Lower-income countries, often called developing countries, have per capita incomes of $1,025 or less. This category includes some countries, such as Cambodia and Rwanda, whose economies are growing substantially because of external aid, sound domestic economic policies, foreign direct investment (FDI), or exploitation of valuable natural resources. Officially labeled “underdeveloped” by the United Nations General Assembly in 1971, these countries have the potential for above-average economic growth. Other countries, designated “undeveloped” and “least developed” by the United Nations, have low literacy rates, per capita incomes, and economic growth. They are less attractive to international businesses because they offer less consumer demand and lack the public infrastructure necessary for reliable production and distribution of goods and services. A prime example of this latter category is Somalia, an East African country wracked by drought, civil war, and starvation.

Source: World Bank, World Development Indicators database.
Mexico

Now the world’s most populous Spanish-speaking nation, Mexico declared independence from its Spanish conquerors in 1810. Like the United States, Mexico is a federal system but one whose head of government, a president, is elected by popular vote every six years. For more than half a century the Mexican government implemented a program of economic nationalism under which Mexico discouraged foreign investment and erected high tariff walls to protect its domestic industries. During the past three decades, however, Mexico has abandoned these policies and opened its markets to foreign goods and investors. Mexico also reduced the government’s role in its economy by selling off many publicly owned firms, such as Aeroméxico and Teléfonos de México. In 1994, Canada, Mexico, and the United States initiated the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), which reduced barriers to trade among the three countries over a 15-year period. Thousands of foreign companies have established new factories in Mexico to take advantage of NAFTA, generating hundreds of thousands of new jobs in the process. In 1999, Mexico signed a similar agreement with the EU, hoping to create additional benefits for its citizens. In 2000, it signed free trade pacts with neighboring El Salvador, Guatemala, and Honduras, and, in 2004, with Japan and Uruguay.3 The role of trade in Mexico’s economy is explored further in Chapter 10’s opening case, “Trade and Prosperity: The Case of Mexico.”

Central America and the Caribbean

Besides the United States, Canada, and Mexico, the North American continent is occupied by two dozen other countries that are divided geographically into two groups: Central America and the island states of the Caribbean. Collectively their population equals 85 million—more than twice the population of Canada. However, their total GDP of $510 billion is a third of that of Canada. Several island states with vibrant offshore financing or tourism industries, such as Aruba, the Bahamas, the Cayman Islands, and Curaçao, have achieved high income status, while Costa Rica and Panama (see “Bringing the World into Focus”) are classified as upper-middle income. Unfortunately, the economic development of other countries in the region has suffered from a variety of problems, including political instability, chronic U.S. military intervention, inadequate educational systems, a weak middle class, economic policies that have created large pockets of poverty, and import limitations by the United States and other developed countries on Central American and Caribbean goods, such as sugar and clothing.

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

THE CANALS OF COMMERCE

The chapter’s opening case discusses the implications of opening an ice-free Arctic passage between eastern Asia and the Atlantic Ocean. For now, however, two canals play a major role in channeling ocean-borne trade between Asia and the Americas and Europe. The Suez Canal, a sea-level canal that cuts through Egypt, was constructed under the leadership of French developer Ferdinand de Lesseps. It opened for business in 1869. This canal played a major role in allowing the United Kingdom to control its Asian colonies, particularly British India. In 1956, Egyptian President Gamal Nasser seized control of and nationalized the canal. British, French, and Israeli troops formed an expedition to recapture it from the Egyptians, but diplomatic pressures from the Eisenhower administration squelched their effort. Today more than 20,000 vessels transit the Suez Canal annually, generating $5.3 billion in tolls.

The Panama Canal is the younger of the two canals. Serving more than 14,000 vessels a year and yielding $2.3 billion in tolls, the Panama Canal accounts for 5 percent of global commercial trade. After Spanish explorer Vasco Núñez de Balboa explored the Isthmus of Panama in 1513, entrepreneurs and dreamers for centuries sought to connect the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans at this narrowest point of the Americas. In 1881, France, under the leadership of de Lesseps, raised millions of dollars to do this. However, the French effort was frustrated by mudslides, malaria, and yellow fever, killing 22,000 workers. It was abandoned in 1893, after burning through $287 million. A second French company was formed, but sold its rights and equipment to a U.S. company in 1903. When the government of Colombia denied the United States rights to build the canal, the U.S. government backed the independence claim of Panama, thereby securing its building rights. Completed in 1914, the Panama Canal is one of the great engineering feats of the early twentieth century. A series of locks raise or lower ships 85 feet to accommodate the differences in the height of the two oceans. The Panama Canal is so crucial to the ocean-going trade that a standard class of ships are labeled Panamax, the maximum size vessel that can transit the canal. However, the locks of the Panama Canal are too narrow for many modern container ships; eager to expand its market share, the managers of the Panama Canal are in the process of building another set of locks to accommodate these larger ships, a project costing $5.2 billion that is expected to be finished in 2015.
The large two-way trade between the United States and Canada is a good example of the implications of the CAGE model discussed on page 29. “Distance” between the United States and Canada is small, which encourages trade.

Beginning in the mid-1980s, Mexico altered its inward-looking economic policies and embraced free trade. Mexico’s per capita GDP is now over $10,000.

For further consideration: The Panama Canal is constructing a new, wider set of locks capable of handling extremely large containerships. How vulnerable is this $5.2 billion investment if the Arctic ice cap continues to shrink?

The Marketplaces of Western Europe

Western European countries are among the world’s most prosperous, attracting the attention of businesses eager to market their products to the region’s wealthy consumers. These countries can be divided into two groups: members of the EU and other countries in the region (see Map 2.2).

The EU, which we discuss in greater detail in Chapter 10, comprises 28 countries that are seeking to promote European peace and prosperity by reducing mutual barriers to trade and investment. During the past two decades the EU has made tremendous strides in achieving this objective. With a 2011 GDP of $17.6 trillion and a population of 508 million, it is one of the world’s richest markets. EU members are free-market-oriented, parliamentary democracies. However, government intervention and ownership generally play a more important role in these countries’ economies than in the economy of the United States. Seventeen EU members have eliminated their national currencies, replacing them with a new common currency known as the euro (€). Latvia is expected to adopt the euro in 2014, becoming the eighteenth EU to do so.

From an economic perspective, Germany is the EU’s most important member. With a 2011 GDP of $3.6 trillion, it possesses the world’s fourth largest economy, after the United States,
As the EU’s leading voice favoring free trade, the United Kingdom provides a strong counterweight to France’s protectionist tendencies.

As the political leader of the EU, France has long been a strong advocate of strengthening human and workers’ rights in the EU.

The German central bank had de facto control over the monetary policies of EU members, but its role was taken over by the European Central Bank (ECB) in 1999. The ECB now controls monetary policy for countries using the euro.
China, and Japan. It is a major player in international business; in 2011 it was the world’s third largest exporter of goods (after China and the United States), some $1.5 trillion. “Bringing the World into Focus” provides additional insights into Germany’s exporting success. Because of the strength of the German economy and the government’s strict anti-inflation policies, Germany has played a major role in formulating the economic policies of the EU.

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

THE EU’S GROWTH ENGINE

During the 2008–2009 global recession, Germany’s economy suffered a deeper downturn but recovered more quickly and strongly than most developed countries. The German economy’s solid performance is attributable in part to the exporting prowess of the so-called Mittelstand, which are the backbone of Germany’s manufacturing sector. A typical Mittelstand firm is a small- to medium-sized, family-owned enterprise, often located in a small town or city. Many of the Mittelstand compete on quality, innovation, reliability, and craftsmanship, not price. German labor costs are high, but the labor force is well educated and quality oriented. The Mittelstand account for about 52 percent of Germany’s economic output and 39 percent of corporate sales.

Many Mittelstand firms specialize in product niches, but then aim to be the world’s best in that niche. Some of them make the machines that make things. For example, Kugler-Womako is a world leader in crafting the machines that make passports; Wirtgen specializes in manufacturing machines that make new tar roads out of old ones; Koenig & Bauer fabricates printing presses. Other Mittelstand firms focus on more mundane products. Tente produces casters for hospital beds, while Aeroxon is a leader in manufacturing flycatchers. The emphasis is on making durable, well-engineered products. Devotion to customer service is another hallmark of the Mittelstand, as is their export orientation. More than 90 percent of Koenig & Bauer’s revenue is generated from exporting, for example.

Much of the Mittelstand’s success is attributable to the German secondary education system. Germany provides three-year long, vocationally oriented programs for high-school students who are not interested in attending college. These vocational programs blend classroom training with on-the-job experience. Graduates of these programs supply the skilled craftsmen and technicians that underlie the enviable exporting performance of the Mittelstand.


Small- and medium-sized family-owned firms, known as the Mittelstand, are a critical element in Germany’s exporting success. Mittelstand firms rely on skilled German craftsmen to produce high-quality, well-engineered products that dominate many product niches.
Politically, France exerts strong leadership within the EU. The French government has been a leading proponent of promoting common European defense and foreign policies and strengthening human rights and workers’ rights in the EU. But French leaders have drawn criticism for promoting an agenda of economic nationalism, defending French corporations from takeover efforts by other European firms, contrary to the founding principles of the EU, and protecting the large subsidies paid to French farmers under the EU’s Common Agricultural Policy.

France’s positions have not gone unchallenged, however. The United Kingdom has resisted many of the initiatives to broaden the EU’s powers and, as a traditionally strong supporter of free trade, has provided an important counterweight to French protectionist tendencies. The United Kingdom’s capital city, London, is a major international finance center, employing more than 300,000 in its financial services sector. The United Kingdom is also a major exporter and importer of goods, an important destination for and source of foreign investment, and home to the headquarters or regional divisions of numerous MNCs.

Many of the newest EU members were either part of the Soviet Union (Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania) or allied with the Soviet Union politically and economically (Bulgaria, Czech Republic, Hungary, Poland, Slovakia, and Romania). (EU members Croatia and Slovenia declared their independence from communist Yugoslavia, but Yugoslavia was not part of the Soviet bloc.) After the Soviet bloc began dissolving in 1989 and the Soviet Union disintegrated in 1991, the regional trading system established by the Soviet Union broke down, and the former Soviet satellite states had to adjust to the loss of guaranteed export markets. They also had to restructure their economies from centrally planned communist systems to decentralized market systems and implement necessary political, legal, and institutional reforms, a process facilitated by their joining the EU. The Czech Republic, Croatia, Estonia, Hungary, Poland, Slovakia, and Slovenia are the furthest along in this process, already achieving high-income status according to the World Bank’s measures.

Rich Western European countries that are not EU members include Iceland, Norway, and Switzerland, plus several small, “postage stamp” countries such as Andorra, Monaco, and Liechtenstein. Classified as high income by the World Bank, these free-market-oriented countries collectively account for 2 percent of the world’s GDP. The economies of the Balkan countries of Albania, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Kosovo, Macedonia, Montenegro, and Serbia are classified as middle income by the World Bank. Their post–Cold War economic progress was slowed by the chaos that surrounded the disintegration of Yugoslavia in 1991. The economies of Serbia, Montenegro, and Bosnia were devastated by the brutal wars over control of Bosnia in the early 1990s and over Kosovo in the late 1990s. These conflicts, needless to say, discouraged most MNCs from investing there during those troubled times.

In Practice

- Germany is the EU’s largest and strongest economy, with a vibrant exporting sector led by the Mittelstand. Germany has taken a leadership role in formulating the EU’s response to its recent economic crises.
- The economic performance of the former Soviet bloc members who have joined the EU has been impressive. Joining the EU has allowed their exporters to access the rich consumer markets of Western Europe.

For further consideration: Chapter 1’s closing case discussed demographic change. The populations of many EU countries are expected to shrink and to get older in the coming decades. What impact will this have on the competitiveness of these countries?

The Marketplaces of Eastern Europe and Central Asia

No area of the world has undergone as much economic change in the past two decades as the countries carved out of the former Soviet Union (see Map 2.3), many of which are still dealing with the aftermath of the painful processes of converting from communism to capitalism and from totalitarianism to democracy. Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev’s 1986 reform initiatives of glasnost (openness) and perestroika (economic restructuring) triggered the region’s political, economic, and social revolutions.
The three Baltic republics were conquered by Soviet troops in 1940. They were among the first of the republics to claim their independence and are the only ones that did not join the Commonwealth of Independent States.

The Caucasus republics have suffered much political instability. Armenia and Azerbaijan have fought over their regional boundary; ethnic conflicts in Abkhazia and South Ossetia have led to military conflict between Georgia and Russia. That portion of Russia lying in the Caucasus (the land between the Black and the Caspian Seas) has had similar problems, most notably in Chechnya.

The five Central Asian republics are populated largely by Muslims, whose cultural heritage is very different from that of their former compatriots in Russia, Belarus, and Ukraine. The area is rich in natural resources such as oil and gas.
The area’s modern economic history begins with the creation of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union or USSR), which emerged from the disintegration of the Russian Empire that followed its defeat in World War I. In the chaos that ensued from the 1917 abdication of Czar Nicholas II, the Communist Party seized control of the Russian government and established the Soviet Union in the name of the workers and peasants. The communists outlawed the market system, abolished private property, and collectivized the country’s vast rich farmlands. By doing so, they succeeded in reducing the enormous income inequalities that had existed under czarist rule. Despite this success, the population’s standard of living increasingly fell behind that of the Western democracies.

Gorbachev’s economic and political reforms led to the Soviet Union’s collapse in 1991 and subsequent declarations of independence by the 15 Soviet republics, which are now often referred to as the Newly Independent States (NIS). In 1992, 12 of the NIS (all but the Baltic countries of Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania, which are now part of the European Union) formed the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS) as a forum to discuss issues of mutual concern. The most important of these new countries is the Russian Federation (Russia), which was the dominant republic within the former Soviet Union. As an independent state, Russia is the world’s largest country in land mass (6.5 million square miles) and the ninth largest in population (142 million people). The country is well endowed with natural resources, including gold, oil, natural gas, minerals, diamonds, and fertile farmland.

The transformation of the economies of Russia and many of the other NIS from communism to a free-market system was not easy, to say the least. Boris Yeltsin, Russia’s first democratically elected president, tried to privatize many of Russia’s state-owned firms. Although some newly privatized firms improved their productivity, many fell into the hands of individuals who were more concerned with looting corporate assets than restoring the companies’ economic health and performance. Under Yeltsin’s administration, Russia’s central government staggered from one financial crisis to another, burdened by an inability to collect taxes and a political need to subsidize the inefficient state-owned enterprises that it was unable to sell to private interests. August 1998 marked the economy’s low point: Yeltsin’s government was forced to devalue the ruble and imposed a 90-day moratorium on payments to foreign creditors.

Russia’s economy has rebounded smartly in the past decade. The country’s second president, Vladimir Putin, quickly overhauled the country’s taxation system, instituting a flat income tax of 13 percent. This initiative worked, and government revenues increased. Russia, which is the world’s second largest oil producer and exporter, has also benefited from the increased prices of oil and other raw materials occurring in the 2000s. The country’s GDP has grown at an annual rate of 4.8 percent per year since 2003. By early 2013, Russia had accumulated $526 billion in currency reserves, the fifth largest in the world after China, Japan, Saudi Arabia, and Switzerland, and its prospects for continued economic growth look strong.

The five Central Asian republics of the former Soviet Union—Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, and Kyrgyzstan—have much in common. One common feature is the importance of Russia in their recent political history. The five Central Asian republics were part of czarist Russia. Each became a Socialist Republic of the Soviet Union after the communists deposed the czars. When the Soviet Union dissolved in 1991, the five declared their independence. The Muslim faith is the dominant religion in all of them. Their languages share Turkic or Persian roots. All suffer from a scarcity of arable land; mountains and deserts dominate their landscapes. However, extensive fossil fuel reserves can be found throughout Central Asia, particularly in Kazakhstan and Turkmenistan. Per capita incomes among the five range from $934 in Tajikistan to $11,356 in oil-rich Kazakhstan.

In Practice

- The collapse of communism created a “lost decade” for Russia’s economic growth in the 1990s. Russia’s GDP, measured in U.S. dollars, fell by more than half.
- Because of religious and linguistic ties, Turkish companies are aggressively investing in the Central Asian republics.

For further consideration: Russia’s economy is heavily dependent on its production and export of oil and natural gas. How would Russia’s growth prospects change if the price of oil were to fall?
The Marketplaces of Asia

Asia is home to more than half the world’s population, yet it produces less than a third of the world’s GDP (see Map 2.4). Asia’s importance to international business cannot be overstated. The region is a source of both high-quality and low-quality products and of both skilled and unskilled labor. Asia is both a major destination for foreign investments by MNCs and a major supplier of capital to non-Asian countries. More important, its aggressive, efficient entrepreneurs have increasingly put competitive pressure on European and North American firms to improve their productivity and the quality of their products.

Japan

Japan, an island country of 128 million people, rose from the ashes of World War II to become one of the world’s economic superpowers, with a GDP of $5.9 trillion in 2011. For most of the post–World War II period, Japan’s GDP was second only to that of the United States. In 2010, China’s GDP surpassed that of Japan, relegating Japan to the number three position. Japan’s economic success during the past 60 years is in part the result of the partnership between its Ministry of International Trade and Industry (MITI) and its industrial sector. (In 2001, MITI was renamed the Ministry of Economy, Trade, and Industry.) MITI has used its formal and informal powers to guide the production and investment strategies of the country’s corporate elite. For example, immediately after World War II, MITI encouraged Japanese firms to concentrate their efforts on such basic industries as steel and shipbuilding. As other countries entered these industries, MITI and Japan’s MNCs shifted their focus to producing automobiles, consumer electronics, and machinery.

MITI has been aided by Japan’s concentrated industrial structure. Japanese industry is controlled by large families of interrelated companies, called keiretsu, that are typically centered on a major Japanese bank. The bank takes primary responsibility for meeting the keiretsu’s financing needs. The members often act as suppliers to each other, thus making it more difficult for outsiders to penetrate Japanese markets. Members are also protected from hostile takeovers by an elaborate system of cross-ownership of shares in which keiretsu members own shares in one another’s companies. Keiretsu members often rely on a sogo shosha, an export trading company, to market their exports worldwide. Typically the sogo shosha is also a keiretsu member.

Japan’s economic growth slowed in the 1990s, however. Since 2003, its GDP has grown at an annual rate of 0.7 percent, well below the 2.7 percent average growth in the world economy. Many experts are concerned that the Japanese political and economic systems have not been able to adjust quickly enough to the changes in the world economy created by the growth of e-commerce and the emerging markets. Moreover, Japan has received much international criticism because of the perception that it employs unfair trading practices to market its exports while using numerous nontariff barriers to restrict imports to its domestic market (we will discuss this further in Chapter 9). Perhaps Japan’s greatest challenge, however, is dealing with its growing demographic crisis: the aging of its population (see Chapter 1’s closing case, “Demography Is Destiny”).

Australia and New Zealand

Australia and New Zealand are the other traditional economic powers in Pacific Asia. Although they share a common cultural heritage, significant differences exist between the two countries, which are separated by 1,200 miles of ocean (see Map 2.5). Australia’s 23 million people live in an area of 2.97 million square miles. Because much of the continent is arid, most of the population is concentrated in the wetter coastal regions, with approximately 40 percent living in either Sydney or Melbourne. Australia is rich in natural resources but has a relatively small workforce. As a result, its merchandise exports, which in 2011 accounted for 20 percent of its $1,379 billion GDP, are concentrated in natural resource industries (such as gold, iron ore, and coal) and in land-intensive agricultural goods (such as wool, beef, and wheat).

New Zealand’s 4.4 million people live on two main islands—the more populous North Island and the more scenic but less temperate South Island. After systematically deregulating and privatizing its economy in the 1980s, New Zealand gained an international reputation...
China, India, and Indonesia are the first, second, and fourth most populous countries in the world; China alone is home to more than one-fifth of the human race.
as being in the forefront of the worldwide shift toward greater reliance on market-based policies. Merchandise trade is extremely important to the country; in 2011 exports constituted 24 percent of its $160 billion GDP. More than a third of New Zealand’s exports are attributable to its extensive pasture lands. These exports include dairy products, meat, and wool. Australia, China, Japan, and the United States purchase approximately half of New Zealand’s exports and imports.

The Four Tigers

Pacific Asia is one of the world’s most rapidly industrializing regions. South Korea, Taiwan, Singapore, and Hong Kong in particular have made such rapid strides since 1945 that they are collectively known as the “Four Tigers,” a reference to the Chinese heritage that three of the four countries share. They are also referred to as the newly industrialized countries (NICs) or the newly industrialized economies (NIEs). Although many publications still classify the Four Tigers as “emerging markets,” they have in fact already emerged, as indicated by their having achieved high-income classification by the World Bank for more than a decade.

SOUTH KOREA The Republic of Korea, more commonly known as South Korea, was born of the Cold War, which left the Korean peninsula divided into communist North Korea and capitalist South Korea. Since the end of the Korean War in 1953, South Korea has been one of the world’s
Part 1 • THE WORLD’S MARKETPLACES

fastest-growing economies. Merchandise exports accounted for 50 percent of its 2011 GDP of $1,116 billion. To promote economic development, Korea relied on tight cooperation between the government and 30 or so large, privately owned, and family-centered conglomerates that dominate the Korean economy. The most important of these conglomerates, or chaebol, were Samsung, Hyundai, Daewoo Group, and LG (formerly Lucky-Goldstar). In many ways the Korean government tried to follow the economic path established by the Japanese: discouragement of imports, governmental leadership of the economy, and reliance on large economic combines for industrialization.

Unfortunately, Korea’s growth came to a screeching halt as a result of the 1997–1998 Asian currency crisis, and many of the chaebol were plunged into financial difficulties. Some observers argued that their problems were the result of overexpansion and the poor lending practices of Korean banks. Many of the chaebol seemed to be more interested in size than profitability and borrowed money to enter industries already burdened by overcapacity, such as automobiles, computer chips, and steel manufacturing.

Some of the chaebol learned their lesson and emerged from the crisis as stronger and leaner competitors. Samsung, for example, narrowed its corporate focus. Its senior managers chose to concentrate the company’s resources in electronics. Samsung is now a market leader in smart mobile phones, flash memory, DRAM memory chips, flat-panel displays, and color laser printers. The process was painful, however, because Samsung was forced to lay off almost half its workforce and sell off noncore operations. Other chaebol struggle to regain their former glory, such as Ssangyong and Daewoo. Part of their empires were sold off to foreigners or allowed to die in bankruptcy courts.4

TAIWAN Taiwan, as the Republic of China is commonly known, is a small island country off the coast of mainland China that is home to 23 million people. It was born in the aftermath of the civil war between the nationalist forces led by General Chiang Kai-shek and the Chinese communists led by Mao Tse-tung. After their defeat on the mainland in 1949, Chiang’s army and government fled to Taiwan. Declaring the island “the Republic of China” and himself the rightful governor of the mainland, Chiang set about developing the Taiwanese economy to support a promised invasion of the mainland. Redistribution of land from large estate holders to peasants increased agricultural productivity. Reliance on family-owned private businesses and export-oriented trade policies has made Taiwan one of the world’s fastest-growing economies during the past three decades. Exports were $308 billion in 2011, or 67 percent of the country’s GDP of $466 billion.

Taiwan’s economic development has been so fast-paced that it can no longer compete as a low-wage manufacturing center. Consequently, Taiwanese businesses more recently have focused on high-value-added industries such as electronics and automotive products. However, the businesses still need low-wage workers. Despite the lack of diplomatic relations between Taiwan and China, Taiwanese businesses increasingly are investing in factories and assembly plants in China to access the low-wage workers they need. For instance, Taiwan’s Hon Hai Precision Industries, one of the world’s largest contract manufacturers, employs more than one million workers in its Chinese factories who produce mobile phones, laptops, and other electronics goods for firms like Apple, Cisco, Nokia, Sony, Vizio, Dell, Intel, and Hewlett-Packard.5

SINGAPORE The Republic of Singapore is a former British colony and a small island country off the southern tip of the Malay Peninsula. To combat the chronic unemployment that plagued the country when it became independent in 1965, Singapore’s government initially emphasized development of labor-intensive industries such as textiles. This economic policy proved so successful that Singapore shifted to higher-value-added activities, such as oil refining and chemical processing, and high-tech industries, such as computers and biotechnology. With a population of only 5.2 million, Singapore now suffers from a labor shortage. It can no longer compete with such countries as Honduras and Indonesia in the production of price-sensitive, labor-intensive manufactured goods.

In 2011, Singapore’s per capita income was $46,241 and its exports totaled $410 billion, or 171 percent of its GDP of $240 billion. That figure is not a misprint. Singapore thrives on reexporting. Singapore’s firms take advantage of the country’s excellent port facilities to import foreign goods and then reexport them to other countries (particularly neighboring Malaysia). Besides being an important port and center for oil refining, Singapore provides sophisticated
communications and financial services for firms in Pacific Asia and is well on its way to becoming the region’s high-technology center.

**HONG KONG**  Hong Kong was born of the “opium war” (1839–1842) fought between the United Kingdom and China. As a consequence of this war, Hong Kong was ceded to the British. In 1860 the British obtained possession of Kowloon on the Chinese mainland, and in 1898 they were granted a 99-year lease on an area of the mainland known as the New Territories. The lease expired on July 1, 1997. On that date China again assumed political control of Hong Kong and designated it a special administrative region (SAR). As an SAR, Hong Kong enjoys a fair degree of autonomy. It has its own legislature, economic freedom, free-port status, and a separate taxation system. Hong Kong will enjoy these privileges until 2047. However, China has made it clear that it will impose its own political will on Hong Kong.

Hong Kong’s attractiveness to international businesses lies in its deep, sheltered harbor and its role as an entry point to mainland China. Seven million people are packed into Hong Kong’s small land area. It offers highly educated, highly productive labor for industries such as textiles and electronics and provides banking and financial services for much of East Asia. As a result of common culture and geography, Hong Kong entrepreneurs often act as intermediaries for companies around the world that want to do business with China. Hong Kong has also traditionally served as a bridge between Taiwan and its political enemy, China. Accordingly, Hong Kong has thrived as an entrepôt for China, receiving goods from it and preparing the goods for shipment to the rest of the world, and vice versa. Export statistics for Hong Kong reflect its role as a reexporter. It exported $456 billion worth of goods in 2011, or 183 percent of its $249 billion GDP.

**China**

With 1.3 billion people, China is the world’s most populous country. It also is one of the world’s oldest, ruled by a series of emperors from 2000 B.C.E. until the early 1900s, when a republic was founded. A chaotic civil war facilitated a Japanese invasion in 1931. After the Japanese were expelled at the end of World War II, the civil war resumed. Finally, in 1949 the communist forces of Mao Tse-tung defeated the nationalist army led by General Chiang Kai-shek.

Communism in China under Mao went through several stages. The Great Leap Forward was a program undertaken from 1958 to 1960 to force industrialization through the growth of small, labor-intensive factories. The program’s failure led eventually to the Cultural Revolution in 1966, during which youthful communist cadres indiscriminately purged Communist Party members suspected of deviating from Mao’s doctrines. The political chaos that followed set back the
country’s economic progress because many of its most productive and educated members were exiled to the countryside to repent their ideological sins.

After Mao’s death in 1976, the government adopted limited free-market policies. Agriculture was returned to the private sector, and entrepreneurs were allowed to start small businesses such as restaurants and light manufacturing. Foreign companies were permitted to establish joint ventures with Chinese firms. As a result, FDI and economic growth soared, as did hopes for increased political freedom. However, Communist Party leaders were unwilling to relinquish their powers. The massacre of several thousand pro-democracy demonstrators in Beijing’s Tiananmen Square in June 1989 chilled economic and political relations between China and the developed countries for several years.

Nonetheless, China is following a unique path. It continues to adopt market-oriented economic policies under the Communist Party’s watchful eye, while seemingly abandoning the ideological principles of the party. China’s vibrant economy, which grew 10.8 percent a year from 2003 to 2011, has attracted the attention of firms worldwide. FDI in China has exploded since 1992, as Figure 2.3 indicates. Of particular note are the increased investments by overseas Chinese investors living in Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Singapore, who see China as a source of hard-working, low-cost labor, an increasingly scarce commodity in their own communities. Moreover, the country is undergoing the largest labor migration in the world’s history, as rural residents leave their farms to become factory workers. Not only do these factories consume raw materials, but the newly arrived workers must also be housed, fed, transported, and entertained, expanding the demand for apartments, automobiles, buses, roadways, electricity, police, restaurants, and every other product imaginable. The urbanization process further stimulates China’s growth. It has major impacts on goods and commodity markets. China is estimated to consume 47 percent of the world’s cement output, 37 percent of its cotton, 30 percent of its coal, 26 percent of its steel, and 21 percent of its aluminum. Its insatiable demand for raw materials has impacted commodity prices ranging from aluminum to zinc, creating economic benefits for natural resource-rich countries such as Australia, Brazil, Canada, Chile, Russia, and Zambia. Indicative of its changing role in the world economy, China’s outbound FDI has skyrocketed since 2005. Much of this FDI is focused on acquiring energy and natural resource deposits because China’s leaders believe the country’s national security rests on controlling the resources necessary for the country’s continued growth.

**FIGURE 2.3**
China’s Inward and Outward Foreign Direct Investment Flows, Annual, 1980–2011
Source: Based on United Nations Conference for Trade and Development Data Base.
India

India is the world’s second most populous country, having reached the 1 billion mark in 2000. It also is one of the poorest countries, with a per capita GDP of only $1,488. India was part of the British Empire until 1947, when the Indian subcontinent was partitioned along religious lines into India, where Hindus were in the majority, and Pakistan, where Muslims were dominant. The eastern part of Pakistan became the independent nation of Bangladesh in 1971. The new country of India adopted many aspects of British government, including the parliamentary system, a strong independent judiciary, and a professional bureaucracy. For most of its post–World War II history, the country relied on state ownership of key industries—including power, transportation, and heavy industry—as a critical element of its economic development efforts.

India’s bureaucracy can be cumbersome and slow to provide documents necessary to do business in the country. Until 1991, India discouraged foreign investment, limiting foreign owners to minority positions in Indian enterprises and imposing other onerous requirements. For example, as a condition for remaining in the country, the Coca-Cola Company was retroactively required in the 1970s to divulge its secret soft drink formula. Coca-Cola refused and chose to leave the market. Coca-Cola subsequently reentered the Indian market as a result of Prime Minister Rao’s 1991 market-opening reforms, which reduced trade barriers, opened the doors to increased FDI, and modernized the country’s financial sector.

These reforms have begun to pay off. (See Chapter 12’s closing case, “The House of Tata,” for a discussion of one company that has thrived as a result of these reforms.) India has attracted much FDI from MNCs based in developed countries, and its GDP growth has averaged 8.1 percent annually since 2003. However, problems remain. Corruption is widespread. The country’s infrastructure is overburdened. A lack of clarity in government policy has created enormous confusion for some foreign investors. The World Bank has warned that failure to trim red tape may threaten the flow of foreign capital into sectors that are crucial to India’s economic growth.

Southeast Asian Countries

Asia is home to numerous other countries with promising records of economic development. Of particular note are Thailand, Malaysia, and Indonesia, countries with low labor costs that have been recipients of significant FDI in the last three decades. As labor costs have risen in their homeland, many Japanese MNCs have built satellite plants in these three countries to supply low-cost parts to parent factories in Japan. U.S. and European MNCs have used these countries as production platforms as well. The Thai, Malaysian, and Indonesian economies have boomed as a result of exports generated by FDI, although their growth temporarily slowed as a result of the 1997 Asian currency crisis, which is discussed in Chapter 7. Vietnam, too, is becoming important to MNCs: Intel, for instance, built a billion-dollar chip testing and assembly factory in Ho Chi Minh City, which commenced operations in 2010.

In Practice

- Because of their size and rapid economic growth rates, China and India have served as growth engines for the world economy in the past decade. Their usage of natural resources such as oil, iron ore, and copper are carefully monitored by stock market and commodity analysts for clues about growth prospects for the world economy.
- Although Japan and South Korea have thrived since the end of the Second World War, they face severe demographic problems. Both countries’ populations are forecasted to become older and smaller, threatening their future global competitiveness.

For further consideration: China’s economy has grown at double-digit rates for several decades. How likely is it that China can continue this level of economic growth?

The Marketplaces of Africa and the Middle East

Africa covers approximately 22 percent of the world’s total land area and is rich in natural resources. Egypt occupies the northeastern tip of the African continent and represents the western boundary of what is commonly known as the Middle East.
Africa
The African continent, shown in Map 2.6, is home to 1.1 billion people and 55 countries. Most of Africa was colonized in the late nineteenth century by the major European powers (Belgium, France, Germany, Italy, Portugal, Spain, and the United Kingdom) for strategic military purposes or to meet domestic political demands. The tide of colonialism began to reverse in the mid-1950s, as one by one the European powers surrendered control of their colonies. Vestiges of colonialism remain in today’s Africa, however, affecting opportunities available to international businesses. For example, Chad, Niger, and the Côte d’Ivoire (Ivory Coast) retain close economic and cultural ties to France. They link their currencies to that of France and follow French legal, educational, and governmental procedures. Because of these ties, French manufacturers, financial institutions, and service-sector firms often dominate international commerce with these countries. Similarly, the public institutions of Kenya, Zimbabwe, and the Republic of South Africa are modeled along British lines, giving British firms a competitive advantage in these countries.

The commodity boom of the 2000s, triggered by the growth of China’s economy and the need to house the hundreds of millions of rural Chinese who have migrated to work in China’s coastal cities, has boosted the economies of many African countries. Algeria, Angola, Gabon, Libya, and Nigeria are major exporters of oil, while Zambia’s economy has been bolstered by the rising demand for copper and that of Botswana because of its rich diamond fields. The governments of these countries face the challenge, however, of leveraging the growth in their commodities sector to create broad-based economies capable of benefiting their entire populations. Agriculture also is important to many African countries. It accounts for more than 40 percent of the GDPs of the Central African Republic, Sierra Leone, Tanzania, and Rwanda, for example. Unfortunately, the population in many African countries is largely employed in subsistence farming; these countries include Burkina Faso, Gambia, Mozambique, Sierra Leone, Tanzania, and Zambia.

Many experts believe South Africa will be the dominant economic power and the continent’s growth engine during the twenty-first century. South Africa possesses fertile farmland and rich deposits of gold, diamonds, chromium, and platinum. Many MNCs used South Africa as the base for their African operations until the 1970s, when the United Nations imposed trade sanctions against the country because of the government’s apartheid policies, which called for the separation of blacks, whites, and Asians. As a result of these external pressures, the government extended voting rights to all its citizens in 1994. Nobel Peace Prize winner Nelson Mandela was elected president in May 1994 in the country’s first multiracial elections. In 2011 South Africa’s exports—primarily minerals—accounted for 24 percent of its $408 billion GDP.

Middle East
The Middle East includes the region between southwestern Asia and northeastern Africa (see Map 2.7). This area is called the “cradle of civilization” because the world’s earliest farms, cities, governments, legal codes, and alphabets originated there. The region was also the birthplace of several of the world’s major religions, including Judaism, Christianity, and Islam. The Middle East has had a history of conflict and political unrest; in the last half-century it has suffered through several Arab-Israeli wars, the Iran-Iraq war, and two Persian Gulf wars, all of which raised the risk of doing business in the region. In 2011, political unrest swept the area. Protests against the lack of democracy, poor employment opportunities, and high levels of income inequality led to the resignation of the long-time rulers of Egypt and Tunisia and to civil wars in Libya and Syria.

In 2011, Saudi Arabia, with a GDP of $577 billion, had the largest economy in the Middle East, but Israel enjoyed the highest per capita income at $31,282 per annum. The region is home to many oil-rich countries. In Saudi Arabia, for example, oil accounts for 45 percent of GDP and 90 percent of total export earnings. Some of the oil-rich nations of the Middle East are attempting to diversify their economies for “life after oil.” Dubai, which is one of the seven United Arab Emirates, offers foreign investors all the benefits of a foreign trade zone (discussed in Chapter 9), an excellent infrastructure, and an entry point for exports to the region.
The Sahara Desert divides Africa into two economic areas: the richer northern region and the poorer sub-Saharan region. Over the past 25 years, the desert has advanced southward because of overgrazing, overcultivation, and deforestation. Sub-Saharan economic development has been hindered by political instability, tribal rivalries, and corruption, but the region’s economic prospects have brightened with the booming market for natural resources.
Historically, Iran has been the region's military power, and the Islamic Republic of Iran has used its oil revenue to promote its political agenda throughout the region.

Civil war broke out in Syria in 2011, threatening to destabilize the entire region. Over 100,000 people have died in the conflict, and 2,000,000 Syrians have fled to neighboring countries to escape the violence.

Oil is a key element in Middle Eastern politics. Saudi Arabia, owner of one-quarter of the world's oil reserves, has used oil revenue to strengthen its regional power base.

In Practice

- Although many African countries have benefitted from rising commodity prices in the past decade, many Africans still engage in subsistence farming. A major task confronting African governments is wisely using the cash generated by commodity sales to improve the lives of their ordinary citizens.
- Many of the so-called petro-states, as well as some of the major Asian trading nations, such as China and Singapore, have constructed impressive state-controlled portfolios of foreign investments known as sovereign wealth funds. These sovereign wealth funds have grown so large that they have created significant political concerns.

For further consideration: This chapter’s closing case discusses the impact of hydraulic fracking on the world energy market. If you were the advisor to the government of an oil-rich country in Africa or the Middle East, what recommendations would you make as to how to respond to this technological change?

The Marketplaces of South America

South America’s 13 countries, shown in Map 2.8, share a common political history as well as many economic and social problems. A 1494 papal decree divided colonization privileges between Portugal, which was allocated Brazil, and Spain, which received the rest of the continent. Spanish and Portuguese explorers subjugated the native populations, exploited their gold and silver mines, and converted their fields to sugar cane, tobacco, and cacao plantations. By the end of the eighteenth century, the hold of the two European powers on their South American colonies had weakened. Led by such patriots as Simon Bolivar, one colony after another won its
During the late 1980s, many South American governments stimulated economic growth by adopting policies promoting free trade and private enterprise, thereby increasing the continent’s appeal to U.S., European, and Asian MNCs. Many South American countries have benefitted recently from the increased prices of raw materials such as copper, iron ore, and tin.

International business in South America is affected by its physical geography. The Andes Mountains make it difficult to transport goods between Pacific Coast countries and their inland neighbors. Other mountain ranges, as well as the dense forests of the Amazon River Basin, similarly limit transport of goods.

- Cities of 350,000 to 1 million
- Cities over 1 million
- Capitals
- Capitals over 1 million
independence. By 1825 the Spanish flag was flying over Cuba and Puerto Rico only. However, independence did not cure the continent’s problems. Many South American countries suffer from huge income disparities and widespread poverty among their peoples, leading to political instability and continual cries for reform.

For much of the post–World War II period, the majority of South American countries followed what international economists call import substitution policies as a means of promoting economic development. With this approach, a country attempts to stimulate the development of local industry by discouraging imports via high tariffs and nontariff barriers. (The opposite of import substitution is export promotion, whereby a country pursues economic growth by expanding its exports. This is the developmental approach successfully adopted by Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Singapore, as discussed previously in this chapter.) For most South American industries, however, the domestic market is too small to enable domestic producers to gain economies of scale through mass-production techniques or to permit much competition among local producers. Thus, prices of domestically produced goods tend to rise above prices in other markets. These policies benefit domestic firms that face import competition. However, they cripple the ability of a country’s exporters to compete in world markets because the companies must pay higher prices for domestically produced inputs than do their foreign competitors. Inevitably, the government must subsidize these firms and often nationalize them to preserve urban jobs. The high costs of doing this are passed on to taxpayers and to consumers through higher prices, but over time the government runs a budget deficit. The result is inflation and destruction of middle-class savings.

Many major South American countries—including Argentina, Brazil, and Chile—adopted these well-intentioned but ultimately destructive import substitution policies. In the late 1980s, however, the countries began to reverse their policies. They lowered tariff barriers, sought free trade agreements with their neighbors, privatized their industries, and positioned their economies to compete internationally. Chile, for example, is now one of the most free-market-oriented economies in the world. The continent’s economies boomed during the 1990s as a result of these policies. More recently, the increased demand for raw materials and foodstuffs triggered by China’s economic growth has benefited many South American firms, including purveyors of Argentine wheat, Bolivian tin, Brazilian iron ore and soy beans, and Chilean copper. The continent is still plagued, however, by an inability to create policies that bridge the chasm between the rich and the poor. The lack of economic and social mobility has trapped generations of South Americans in poverty and despair and created political instability in many of their countries. “Bringing the World into Focus” discusses how Brazil is attempting to address its poverty problem.7

**BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS**

**BRAZIL BOLSTERS ITS FAMILIES**

For most of its history, Latin America has been characterized by huge income inequalities. The rich have done well; the prospects for children born into poverty have been grim. The failure of Latin American politicians to address this problem has contributed to the region’s political instability, social unrest, and lost productivity.

One innovative and successful program is Brazil’s Bolsa Família, instituted by Brazil’s popular former President Luiz Inacio Lula da Silva in 2003. Bolsa Família built on similar programs instituted by Lula’s predecessor and by several Brazilian states. They, in turn, were patterned after Mexico’s Oportunidades program. These poverty-reduction programs involve conditional cash transfers (CCTs). CCT programs provide cash subsidies to poor families, but the cash comes with strings attached. Families receive payments from Bolsa Família only if their children attend school on a regular basis and participate in public health programs, such as keeping their vaccinations up to date. If the children’s school attendance falls below 85 percent, the family’s cash stipend is eliminated.

Families whose per capita income falls below the poverty line (140 reais a month) are eligible to receive a stipend of 22 reais a month per child, up to a maximum of three children. Families suffering from extreme poverty qualify for an additional allowance. Normally the monthly stipends are deposited on a special debit card that is mailed monthly to the female head of household. (Mothers are perceived to be more likely to spend the monies in the interests of their children.) The debit card allows the recipient to withdraw cash from the Caixa Economica Federal, a government-owned savings bank with 14,000 locations throughout the country. Some 12 million Brazilian families participate in the program. Bolsa Família costs about 0.4 percent of Brazil’s GDP and accounts for about 2.5 percent of the federal government’s budget.

By targeting these payments to the poorest families and incentivizing them to educate their children, Bolsa Família addresses both the short-term and long-term problems associated with poverty. In the short-run, it provides cash income to the family to improve the nutrition and health of their children. In the longer-run, with its focus on motivating parents to promote their children’s education, it improves...
the skills, training, and human capital of poor children, enhancing their future career and job prospects.

The program is not without its critics. Bolsa Família has been more successful in rural Brazil than in urban areas. In 2006, 41 percent of eligible rural families participated in the program, whereas only 17 percent in urban areas did. Fears that recipients would misuse or misspend the monies seem to have been overblown. Studies indicate that most recipients use the monies to buy food, school supplies, and clothing, as the Brazilian government had hoped.

Although poverty has not disappeared from Brazil’s rural areas or its urban favelas, the Bolsa Família has had significant impact in addressing poverty and income inequality. School attendance and educational performance among poor children has increased, and the incidence of child labor has declined. The cash subsidies have also improved the diets and health of the targeted children.


In Practice

- Brazil is by far the largest and most important economy in South America, accounting for nearly half of the continent’s GDP. Brazil has assumed a regional leadership role in such organizations as the World Trade Organization and the World Bank.
- Political elections in South America often revolve around the issue of addressing income inequality. In the past decade, Venezuela’s Hugo Chavez, Ecuador’s Rafael Correa, and Bolivia’s Evo Morales won the presidencies of their countries by promising a fairer deal for their countries’ poorer citizens.

For further consideration: Would Brazil’s Bolsa Família program work in your home country? Why or why not?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

To compete successfully in the international marketplace, managers need a basic understanding of the world’s markets and their interrelationships. Managers also need to assess opportunities available in these markets. A key indicator of a country’s desirability to international businesses is its per capita income, which provides information about its consumers and its value as a production site.

The rich developed countries of Japan, the EU, the United States, and Canada account for about 57 percent of the world’s economy. However, emerging markets such as China and India are equally attractive to international businesses, given their rapid economic growth rates.

The rich developed countries of Japan, the EU, the United States, and Canada account for about 57 percent of the world’s economy. However, emerging markets such as China and India are equally attractive to international businesses, given their rapid economic growth rates.

The North American market—Canada, Mexico, the United States, Central America, and the island countries of the Caribbean—is one of the world’s largest and richest markets. The United States and Canada have the largest bilateral trading relationship in the world. Mexico’s economic reforms, initiated in 1982, have made it a more important force in the world economy.

Another large, rich market for international businesses is Western Europe, particularly the 28-member EU. The EU members are free-market-oriented, parliamentary democracies. With the 1989 collapse of European communism, Eastern European and Central European countries have undergone a sometimes painful transition from communism to capitalism. Most have adopted market-oriented policies to stimulate economic growth. Their growth prospects and unmet consumer demand are attractive to many Asian, North American, and European MNCs.

Asia is home to several of the fastest-growing economies of the post–World War II period. Japan and the Four Tigers—South Korea, Hong Kong, Singapore, and Taiwan—have grown dramatically because of economic policies that focus on export promotion. But the emerging markets of China and India have
enjoyed even higher rates of growth during the past decade. Australia and New Zealand are also important economies in this region.

Many African countries regained their independence during the 1950s and 1960s. Their economies primarily rely on natural resources and agriculture. Middle Eastern countries have played an important role in the world economy thanks to their oil wealth, although their stability has been threatened by civil unrest and armed conflicts.

South American countries have been independent since the early nineteenth century. Although many of them are rich in natural resources and farmlands, the continent’s economic development since World War II has been hindered by chronic political unrest and import substitution policies. During the 1980s, however, key South American nations—including Argentina, Brazil, and Chile—shifted toward more market-oriented, export promotion growth strategies. Privatization, reduced governmental regulation, and booming commodity prices have intensified interest in the continent by international businesses.

### Review Questions

1. Describe the U.S. role in the world economy.
2. How do differences in income levels and income distribution among countries affect international businesses?
3. What role did MITI serve in the Japanese economy?
4. What is a keiretsu?
5. What role has reexporting played in the economies of Singapore and Hong Kong?
6. Define the terms glasnost and perestroika?
7. Discuss the role of ‘The Canals of Commerce’ in international trade.
8. How did import substitution policies affect the economies of Brazil and Argentina?

### Questions for Discussion

- **2-9.** Regional trading blocs, such as the EU and NAFTA, are growing in importance. What are the implications of these trading blocs for international businesses? Are they helpful or harmful? How may they affect a firm’s investment decisions?
- **2-10.** Discuss how heavy reliance on oil export combined with political unrest in the Middle East might impact major economies of the world. How can an economic policy dedicated towards “life after oil” shape the future?
- **2-11.** Ethnic ties, old colonial alliances, and shared languages appear to affect international trade. Why might this be so? If true, how does this affect international businesses’ strategies regarding which markets to enter?
- **2-12.** South Korea is prominently featured in many lists of “emerging markets.” (For example, see Table 1.2 on page 40.) Is South Korea an emerging market? Or has it already “emerged”? Defend your answer. How would you define an “emerging market”?
- **2-13.** South Korea, much like Japan, relied on a positive balance of trade, government leadership and chaebols for its economic development. How did overexpansion and poor lending practices impact Korean economy after the Asian currency crisis?

### Building Global Skills

Success in international business often depends on a firm obtaining information about foreign markets so that it can make exporting, importing, and investment decisions. Among the most useful sources are the following:

**Survey of Current Business**, published monthly by the U.S. Department of Commerce, is a basic source of statistical data on the U.S. economy. It provides detailed analyses of international trade and investment activities affecting the United States.

**The World Factbook** provides basic geographic, ethnic, religious, political, and economic information on all countries. It is put out by the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency and is particularly useful because it includes data about small, obscure, and politically controversial areas. For example, if you were an executive for Forum Energy PLC, a British company that was granted rights by the Philippine’s government to hunt for oil and gas around the Spratly Islands, *The World Factbook* is one of the few sources in which you could learn that the islands, many of which are under water at high tide, have no permanent population yet are claimed and garrisoned by five different countries—China, Malaysia, the Philippines, Taiwan, and Vietnam. Armed with this information, you would realize that Forum’s explorations would be extremely sensitive and possibly the target of political conflict.

**World Development Report** and **World Development Indicators**, published annually by the World Bank, present numerous tables detailing information about World Bank members, including population, income and income distribution, infrastructure, government expenditures, trade, production, living standards, health, education, and urbanization.

**International Trade Statistics Yearbook** is an annual United Nations report that provides detailed data on exports and imports, classified by country and by commodity. The report is an excellent source of minutiae—for example, the leading exporters and importers of propane and butane in 2009, 2010, and 2011. However, it is rather clumsy to use when time-series information is required—for example, Denmark’s total annual exports from 1986 to 2012.

**Balance of Payments Statistics, International Financial Statistics, and Direction of Trade Statistics** are reports

*World Investment Report* is produced annually by the United Nations Conference for Trade and Development. It is a primary source of statistics regarding FDI flows and stocks into and from countries. It also provides detailed information about the role of transnational corporations (the United Nations’ preferred term for MNCs) in FDI.

Go to your library or surf the Internet to examine each of these standard references. Then answer the following questions:

2-14. What was the total value of U.S. imports from Belgium last year? Of U.S. exports to Belgium?
2-15. What is the total level of U.S. investments in Belgium? Of Belgian investments in the United States?
2-16. Profile the economy of Belgium: What is its GDP? What is its per capita income? How fast is its economy growing? What are its major exports and imports? Who are its major trading partners?
2-17. Profile the people of Belgium: What languages do they speak? What is their average educational level? What is their life expectancy? How fast is the population growing?

---

**CLOSING CASE**

**Fracturing the Energy Market**

Joseph Schumpeter, an Austrian-born economist who emigrated to the United States in 1932, championed entrepreneurship and free markets. Schumpeter is perhaps best known for popularizing the phrase “creative destruction,” the concept that innovation—new technologies, new products, new ways of doing business—inevitably disrupts, supplants, and devalues the economic structure that preceded it. One such new technology—the hydraulic fracturing of shale and other rocks containing oil and natural gas deposits, popularly known as fracking—provides a perfect example of Schumpeter’s concept. Fracking holds the potential to turn world energy and industrial markets upside down, and to scramble geopolitical relations and alliances that have dominated the past half-century.

Fracking involves the injection of fluids at high pressure into rock formations containing hydrocarbon deposits such as oil and natural gas. The fracturing fluid cracks open new channels in the rock, creating pathways for oil and gas to flow and be captured by the driller. Although the technology was developed in 1947, it was little used until combined with modern horizontal drilling. Fracking became commercially significant in 1998, when it was applied to exploit the so-called “tight” gas formations in Texas’s huge Barnett Shale field. The potential reserves in such tight formations are enormous: China is estimated to have 1,275 trillion cubic feet of reserves; the United States, 862 trillion; Argentina, 774 trillion; and Mexico, 681 trillion. Even South Africa’s Karoo region, a semi-desert lying between Cape Town and Johannesburg, may contain shale-gas reserves as large as 485 trillion cubic feet, the fifth largest in the world.

Fracking is important—and disruptive, in the Schumpeterian framework—for at least four reasons. First, it promises new supplies of energy, lowering its cost. Second, it substantially shifts geopolitical power among the world’s nations. Third, it implies major changes in the competitiveness of nations and in the location of the production of energy-intensive goods. Finally, fracking has the potential to have major impacts on the environment and on the global quest to control the emission of greenhouse gases.

U.S.-based oil companies have been the most aggressive users of fracking technology, creating drilling booms in numerous areas, including North Dakota’s Bakken formation, Pennsylvania’s Marcellus shale, and Texas’s Barnett and Eagle Ford fields. The impact on the U.S. natural gas market, which accounts for 30 percent of U.S. electricity generation and heats half of U.S. homes, has been enormous. In 2008, natural gas was selling for $12 per million British Thermal Units (mBTU) at the Henry Hub, a Louisiana crossroad for gas pipelines that serves as the basis for pricing natural gas in the United States. The boom in exploration and production of shale-based gas drove the price below $2 per million BTU in 2012; the price has now risen above $3.60. U.S. production of shale-based oil has also increased, thereby reducing U.S. imports of crude oil by a third since 2008.

The current low price of natural gas in the U.S. market impacts the location decisions of firms producing energy-intensive products or who use natural gas as a feedstock for their petrochemical products, allowing them to underprice their foreign petrochemical rivals. Companies like Dow and Chevron Phillips Chemical Company are planning new multibillion-dollar chemical plant projects in Texas and Louisiana. Not surprisingly, some European and Asian chemical and petrochemical companies, such as BASF and Royal Dutch Shell, are considering building new facilities in the United States to take advantage of the cheap U.S. natural gas. Other energy-intensive factories also benefit. Nucor Corp., for instance, is constructing a $750 million facility in Louisiana to fabricate high-purity iron ore pellets, which are used as inputs in manufacturing steel, because of low natural gas prices. When completed the plant will produce 2.5 million tons of pellets a year, making it the world’s second...
largest. U.S. Steel and Austria’s Voestalpine are considering similar ventures, while Midrex Technologies Inc., the manufacturer of the furnaces used to make pellets, is expanding its capacity to take advantage of its customers’ growth.

Fracking also has geopolitical implications. Natural gas prices are much higher outside the United States. In Europe, spot prices average $12; spot prices in Asia often reach $20. Liquefying natural gas, transporting it in specially-designed ocean-going vessels, and then re-gasifying it can cost $3 to $5 per million BTU. Therefore, the potential profits for exporting U.S. natural gas are huge. The aggressive exploitation of tight shale fields in the United States suggests that the United States may become a net energy exporter within a decade or two, thereby reducing U.S. reliance on Middle Eastern oil. If so, the political clout of Middle Eastern petrostates may weaken. Moreover, should oil prices decline, the threat of domestic unrest may increase there. Some military experts believe that the United States will reduce its military presence in the area; conversely, European countries may have to become more concerned about protecting their energy security—currently they benefit from being under the U.S. military umbrella. China too may increase its regional military presence as Middle Eastern energy becomes more important to its economy. Yet China also has huge shale gas reserves—an estimated 1,275 trillion cubic feet. If these fields are developed, China becomes less vulnerable to its tankers transporting oil from the Middle East being harassed by the U.S. Pacific fleet.

Russia’s ability to influence Eastern and Central European politics may also lessen. Currently, Russia’s Gazprom, 38 percent owned by the Russian government, is the dominant supplier of natural gas to countries such as Poland and the Ukraine. At times, Russia has temporarily suspended its delivery of natural gas to these countries to demonstrate its displeasure with their diplomatic policies. Moreover, Gazprom has tied its foreign customers into long-term contracts that peg the price of natural gas to the price of oil. But the spot price of natural gas has fallen well below the equivalent price of oil, so Gazprom’s foreign customers are trying to renegotiate their contract terms. The threat to Gazprom’s gas flows and the geopolitical clout of Russia would grow should the United States choose to export significant volumes of liquefied natural gas.

Fracking impacts the quest to mitigate global climate change and the emission of greenhouse gases. On the one hand, by lowering its price, fracking encourages the use of natural gas to generate electricity in place of coal. Natural gas releases fewer greenhouse gases per unit of electricity produced than does coal. On the other hand, fracking requires a lot of water: 4 to 5 million gallons per well. In addition, oilfield service companies blend mixtures of special chemicals and thickening agents with water to create their fracking fluids. Environmentalists are concerned that these chemicals can damage water supplies, and the unwillingness of companies to disclose the chemicals used in their proprietary fracking formulas heightens their suspicions.

European voters remain divided over fracking. France and the Netherlands have a moratorium on fracking. In environmentally conscious Germany, citizens face an unhappy choice. Many Germans are concerned about the potential contamination of underground water, as are its world-famous breweries. Yet after the Fukushima nuclear reactor fiasco following the 2011 tsunami that battered northern Japan, Chancellor Angela Merkel decreed that Germany would gradually shutter all of its nuclear power plants and increase its reliance on solar and wind energy. By 2020, Germany will close 6 nuclear-powered facilities. To fill in the gaps, Germany is increasingly relying on coal-generated electricity, which is dirtier than natural gas. Accordingly, German carbon dioxide emissions have begun to rise, undercutting Germany’s commitment to reduce its greenhouse gas emissions. As a result of subsidies for solar and wind power, electricity prices have risen 40 percent in Germany since 2008 and are nearly 15 percent higher than in the rest of the EU, annoying residents and threatening the competitiveness of Germany firms. Poland, which has Western Europe’s largest reserves of shale gas, confronts similar tradeoffs. If developed, Poland would be freed from dependence on using coal for power generation, which currently accounts for 95 percent of its electricity. It would also reduce the country’s dependence on Russian natural gas. Yet Poles too are concerned about protecting the quality of their water supplies.

Fracking has created an unexpected beneficiary: Indian farmers who grow 85 percent of the world’s supply of guar. Because of its previously low price, guar beans were often fed to cattle or used as a thickening agent in ice cream and catsup. (It’s what makes catsup “gloopy.”) Guar, it turns out, is also a perfect thickening agent for fracking. When mixed with water, sand, and specialty chemicals, the resulting fluid can be injected under high-pressure to break up shale formations and allow the trapped hydrocarbons to escape. The U.S. oil industry consumed an estimated 300,000 tons of guar (about one-third of total guar production) in 2012, leading to a 15-fold increase in the price of guar beans to $11.36 a pound. These price increases have benefited poor Indian farmers in Rajasthan, who now can afford to construct new brick houses, after living in mud huts for decades, although it has disadvantaged Indian cows—at these high prices, few farmers are willing to feed guar beans to their herds. And catsup and toothpaste producers are busily seeking alternative thickeners.

Case Questions

2-18. Which industries gain and which industries lose from the availability of cheap natural gas produced from shale deposits?

2-19. Which countries gain and which countries lose from the availability of cheap natural gas?
2-20. Will the stability of the world’s economy increase or decrease as a result of the fracking revolution? What about the stability of the world from a political perspective?

2-21. What environmental concerns does widespread use of fracking create? What is the appropriate tradeoff between environmental concerns and economic growth?


MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

2-22. Discuss the changing role of China in the world economy. Does China’s rise help or hurt people in developed countries? What about people in other emerging markets?

2-23. Has globalization and increased international trade and investment helped or hurt the world’s poorest peoples and countries?

2-24. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


2. This chapter reports population, GDP, and per capita GDP data for the world’s countries. Most of the data are taken from the World Bank’s data base, accessible at www.worldbank.org.

3. “Mexico, 3 neighbors sign free trade pacts,” Houston Chronicle, May 12, 2000, p. 2C.


CHAPTER 3

Legal, Technological, Accounting, and Political Environments

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:
1. Describe the major types of legal systems confronting international businesses.
2. Explain how domestic laws affect the ability of firms to conduct international business.
3. List the ways firms can resolve international business disputes.
4. Describe the impact of the host country’s technological environment on international business.
5. Identify the factors that influence national accounting systems.
6. Explain how firms can protect themselves from political risk.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
WHEN IS AN IPHONE NOT AN IPHONE?

The global market offers numerous opportunities for companies large and small to boost their revenues and profits by introducing new, innovative products. Surprisingly, one of the most important and complex issues in launching such products globally is finding the right name, particularly if the firm wishes to use the same brand name to represent the new product in every market it serves. Care needs to be taken to avoid names that might inadvertently be sending the wrong message about the product. For instance, Clairol’s Mist Stick curling iron, Rolls-Royce’s Silver Mist, and Irish Mist liquor had problems entering the German market under their original names because mist is the German word for dung.

Although cultural or language issues have tripped up many would-be global brands, legal issues are equally troublesome. Consider the travails of Apple. The most valuable assets of many multinational corporations (MNCs) is their intellectual property—trademarks, brand names, patents, etc. These firms’ legal departments aggressively protect these assets by constantly monitoring markets around the world to make sure no one is infringing on their intellectual property. When Apple introduced the iPhone in 2007 and the iPad in 2010, its lawyers filed for trademark protection in every country Apple anticipated selling the products. Yet despite the sophistication of Apple’s lawyers, the company has run into a series of legal problems over the use of those names. In Mexico, for instance, iFone, a Mexican telecommunications company, filed for a trademark under that name in 2003. Apple sued iFone in 2009 to invalidate iFone’s trademark. iFone countersued; in 2012, a Mexican court found in its favor, reasoning that iFone trademark was validly granted four years before Apple sold its first iPhone. The Mexican company is now suing Apple for trademark infringement. Under Mexican law, it can ask for damages equivalent to 40 percent of Apple’s iPhone sales in Mexico.

Apple ran into similar problems in Brazil. IGB Eletronica SA, selling under the brand name Gradiente, applied for the iphone trademark in Brazil in 2000. Brazil’s National Institute of Industrial Property granted the application in 2008. Apple attempted to invalidate the trademark, but the effort proved unsuccessful. Under Brazilian law, Gradiente would lose the rights to the trademark if it went unused for five years; the Brazilian firm beat the deadline by one month, introducing the IPHONE Neo One in December 2012. To make matters worse, the Neo One uses the Android operating system, owned by Apple’s bitter rival Google. Needless to say, Apple’s ability to market its phones in the Brazilian market has been harmed.

Securing rights to the iPad trademark has also bedeviled Apple’s lawyers. A bankrupt Chinese firm, Proview Technology, sued Apple over use of the name iPad in China. Apple had purchased the right to use the iPad trademark in 10 countries from Proview’s Taiwanese subsidiary for $55,000. The Chinese parent, however, claimed that its Taiwanese subsidiary did not own, and therefore could not sell, the iPad trademark in China. Facing a ban on iPad sales in parts of China, Apple agreed to pay Proview Technology an additional $60 million for the rights to the iPad trademark in China.1

Virtually all decisions facing international managers—whom to hire, how to market their company’s goods in the host market, which technologies to adopt, and so forth—are affected by the national environment of the country in which the transaction occurs, as Apple painfully discovered. The goal of this and the next chapter is to understand the impact of the various dimensions of a country’s environment on the management of a firm’s international business. This chapter discusses the legal, technological, accounting, and political dimensions, and Chapter 4 focuses on the cultural.

The Legal Environment

A domestic firm must follow the laws and customs of its home country. An international business faces a more complex task: It must obey the laws not only of its home country but also the laws of all the host countries in which it operates. Both home and host country laws can critically affect the way international firms conduct their business. These laws determine the markets firms may serve, the prices they can charge for their goods, and the cost of necessary inputs such as labor, raw materials, and technology. The laws may also affect the location of economic activity. For example, some Internet companies have chosen to base their operations outside the People’s Republic of China because of the seemingly arbitrary rules imposed by its government. “E-World” discusses some additional effects the rapid growth of the Internet has had on the legal systems of various countries.
E-WORLD

LAW AND THE INTERNET

Most existing laws predate the World Wide Web. Adjusting these laws to the needs of the Internet age is a massive undertaking, to say the least. One basic issue is deciding which country’s laws should oversee e-commerce transactions. Activities sponsored by a website may be legal in its home country yet violate the laws of other countries. For example, Yahoo! Inc. was found guilty of allowing neo-Nazi paraphernalia to be sold on its websites in violation of a French law that prohibits the sale of anything that incites racism. Although Yahoo! had carefully excluded such goods from its French portal, it had not done so for its U.S. sites. Because French citizens had access to the U.S. websites over the Internet, Yahoo! was fined €2,800 and given two months to make the site inaccessible to French Internet users.

The responsibility for enforcing intellectual property rights is similarly unresolved. For example, in June 2008, in a lawsuit filed by Hermès a French court ruled that eBay participated in the fraudulent sale of counterfeit goods because it provided a variety of services that facilitated such transactions. Later that month, a different French court ordered eBay to pay LVMH Moët Hennessy Louis Vuitton €40 million in damages, after finding that eBay failed to take sufficient steps to prevent the sale of unauthorized or counterfeit products that damaged the company’s brand names. A month later, a U.S. court found in favor of eBay, in a similar lawsuit filed by Tiffany & Co. In August 2008, a Belgian court reached the same conclusion, siding with eBay in a suit filed by L’Oréal SA, as did a third French court and a British court in 2009. In 2011, the European Court of Justice added its opinion, ruling that if an online operator played an “active role” in sale of a fake product it could be held liable for trademark infringements.

National policies toward consumer privacy also need to be taken into account. Many U.S. companies routinely collect information from their customers that the companies then use internally to cross-sell other products or that they sell to third parties. For instance, many websites produce “cookies” that help facilitate repeat online transactions. Cookies allow an online travel vendor to remember customers’ frequent flyer numbers, whether the customers prefer an aisle or a window seat, and the billing addresses of their credit cards. However, European laws provide consumers with stronger privacy protection than do U.S. laws. The European Union (EU) regulates the ability of companies to use cookies without obtaining permission from customers. U.S.-based web companies must thus alter their marketing and information-gathering practices to accommodate European privacy laws. In a similar vein, Switzerland has demanded that Google obscure every face visible in its Street View mapping application to preserve individual’s privacy. In 2013, the EU launched an investigation to determine whether Google sufficiently discloses to consumers how the company uses personal data it has collected.

Another issue is what to do with “cybersquatters”—people or firms who try to register domain names of established organizations or famous people and then sell back the names to their owners at inflated prices. For example, when Apple launched the iPhone for the British market in 2007, it discovered that cybersquatters had claimed web addresses such as www.ukiphone.co.uk, which featured nothing more than pay-per-click advertisements for other companies’ products. The World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) operates an arbitration program to reduce this problem. Although victims are usually successful in reclaiming their property—they win about 85 percent of the cases adjudicated by WIPO—cybersquatting has not gone away. In 2010, for example, 2,696 complaints were filed with WIPO, up 80 percent from their 2006 level.

Differences in Legal Systems

National legal systems vary dramatically for historical, cultural, political, and religious reasons. The rule of law, the role of lawyers, the burden of proof, the right to judicial review, and, of course, the laws themselves differ from country to country. In the United States, for instance, in times of economic distress firms can lay off workers with minimal notice and severance pay. In Belgium, however, firms wishing to trim their workforces must provide each worker with three months’ notice, three months’ severance pay, or some combination of the two for every five years (or fraction of five years) the employee has worked for the firm. Brink’s, for example, ran afoul of these laws when its Belgian subsidiary declared bankruptcy as a result of its high labor costs. Affected unions promptly sued the company for failure to negotiate severance pay, as the
law required in such cases. Caterpillar had similar problems in trying to trim its Belgian workforce because high labor costs made its operations there uncompetitive.

Access to the legal system also may vary from country to country. In the United States, for example, easy availability of lawyers and nondiscriminatory access to its legal system are helpful to international businesses wishing to settle disputes with suppliers and customers. Conversely, the Indian court system has an estimated backlog of 30 million cases, so many attorneys advise their business clients to settle conflicts out of court rather than wait as long as 10 years to be heard in a court of law (see Map 3.1). Similarly, South Korea suffers from a shortage of lawyers because of its tough bar exam—less than 10 percent of the candidates taking it passed. Thus, many international businesses are forced to resolve disputes privately rather than use South Korea’s courts. South Korea has recently reformed its legal education system, which should lessen these problems over time.

MAP 3.1
India

Like China, the impact of India’s economic reforms have been positive but uneven, creating challenges for the government in New Delhi. India is the world’s largest democracy. India’s per capita income is about $1,488 per year.

Mumbai (formerly Bombay) is the center of the Indian film industry, as well as a thriving port and financial market.

Indian IT firms like Tata Consultancy, Wipro, and Infosys and cities like Hyderabad and Bangalore have benefited from the thousands of well-trained engineers produced each year by Indian universities.

Per Capita Income
- Less than $2 per day
- Between $2 and $3 per day
- Between $3 and $4 per day
- More than $4 per day
Brink’s ran afoul of Belgium’s labor laws after firing or reassigning 60 workers from its money-losing Belgium subsidiary in a cost-cutting move. After workers went on strike in protest, Brink’s chose to declare bankruptcy rather than negotiate. Brink’s is facing a drawn-out court battle, for workers’ rights are more strongly protected in Belgium than they are in Brink’s home, the United States.

**COMMON LAW** Common law is the foundation of the legal systems in the United Kingdom and its former colonies, including the United States, Canada, Australia, India, New Zealand, Hong Kong, Barbados, Saint Kitts and Nevis, and Malaysia. Common law is based on the cumulative wisdom of judges’ decisions on individual cases through history. These cases create legal precedents, which other judges use to decide similar cases.

Common law has evolved differently in each common law country. Thus, laws affecting business practices vary somewhat among these countries, creating potential problems for the uninformed international businessperson. For example, manufacturers of defective products are more vulnerable to lawsuits in the United States than in the United Kingdom as a result of evolutionary differences in the two countries’ case law. The UK’s libel laws are more plaintiff-friendly than U.S. law. In the United Kingdom, the defendant must prove that a published article is true, whereas in the United States the burden is on the plaintiff to demonstrate that the article is false and malicious to win a libel suit.4

In addition to evolutionary differences in case law, statutory laws—those enacted by legislative action—also vary among the common law countries. For example, many business transactions between firms and the British government are shielded from public scrutiny—and the prying eyes of competitors—by Britain’s Official Secrets Act. In contrast, more information about transactions between firms and the U.S. federal government is publicly available because of the U.S. Freedom of Information Act. Even the administration of law may vary. For instance, in the United States the plaintiff and the defendant in a lawsuit generally pay their own legal fees. Often, defendants agree to quick settlements regardless of the strength of their cases to avoid expensive litigation. In the United Kingdom, the losers in trials pay the legal expenses of both parties. Thus, the British have less incentive to file frivolous lawsuits.

**CIVIL LAW** Another common form of legal system, civil law, is based on a codification, or detailed listing, of what is and is not permissible. The civil law system originated in biblical times with the Romans, who spread it throughout the Western world. Its dominance was reinforced by the imposition of the civil law-based Napoleonic Code on territories conquered by French emperor Napoleon Bonaparte during the early nineteenth century.

One important difference between common law and civil law systems is apparent in the roles of judges and lawyers. In a common law system the judge serves as a neutral referee, ruling on various motions by the opposing parties’ lawyers. These lawyers are responsible for developing their clients’ cases and choosing which evidence to submit on their clients’ behalf. In a civil law system, the judge takes on many of the tasks of the lawyers, determining, for example, the scope of evidence to be collected and presented to the court.

**RELIGIOUS LAW** Religious law is based on the officially established rules governing the faith and practice of a particular religion. A country that applies religious law to civil and criminal conduct is called a theocracy. In Iran, for example, a group of mullahs, or holy men, determine legality or illegality through their interpretation of the **Koran**, the holy book of Islam.

Religious laws can create interesting problems for firms. Consider the teaching of the **Koran**, which denounces charging interest on loans as an unfair exploitation of the poor. Muslim firms...
and financial institutions have had to develop alternative financing arrangements to acquire and finance capital. Muslim businesses often rely on leasing arrangements, rather than borrowing money, to obtain long-term assets. In Iran banks often charge up-front fees that act as a substitute for loan interest payments, and owners of bank deposits receive shares of the bank’s profits rather than interest payments. Family-owned firms are often influential in countries in which legal systems are based on the Koran because members of an owner’s extended family may be the best available source of capital, given the costs of circumventing the prohibition on interest.

Countries relying on religious law often have other features, such as an absence of due process and appeals procedures, which should make outsiders cautious. In Saudi Arabia, for example, all foreign firms must have a local representative or sponsor, typically a government agency or a person well connected to the royal family. Should a commercial dispute arise between a foreign businessperson and the local representative, the local representative can have the foreigner detained by the local police. Because no independent judiciary exists in the country to protect the foreigner’s rights, the foreigner is in a weak bargaining position.

**BUREAUCRATIC LAW** The legal system in communist countries and in dictatorships is often described as bureaucratic law. **Bureaucratic law** is whatever the country’s bureaucrats say it is, regardless of the formal law of the land. Contracts can be made or broken at the whim of those in power. The collapse of Zairean dictator Mobutu Sese Seko’s government in 1997, for example, threatened the viability of all existing contracts signed by foreign companies and triggered a mad scramble to revalidate old contracts and negotiate new ones with the government of his successor. Protections that may appear in the country’s constitution—such as the right to an attorney and the right to hear witnesses against one—may be ignored if government officials find them inconvenient. For instance, the formalities of Ugandan law afforded Ugandans and foreigners little protection under dictator Idi Amin’s regime of terror during the 1970s. Similarly, the elaborate protections detailed in the constitution of the former Soviet Union offered little solace to the victims of Joseph Stalin’s political purges during the 1930s. “Venturing Abroad” discusses a contemporary example of this phenomenon.

**VENTURING ABROAD**

**HOW IMPORTANT IS THE RULE OF LAW?**

As the eminent scholar and jurist Richard Posner has defined it, the rule of law means “that judges decide cases ‘without respect to persons’, that is, without considering the social status, attractiveness, etc. of the parties or of their lawyers.” A well-functioning legal system with clearly defined rules and procedures often encourages foreign firms to invest in a country. But the opposite may also be true.

One country in which a lack of the rule of law appears to be affecting foreign direct investment (FDI) is Russia. Russian authorities are notorious for manipulating the Russian legal system to promote their personal agendas. For example, despite a constitutional guarantee for freedom of assembly, Russian officials arrested Brian Nemssov, a former deputy prime minister, for attending a rally promoting freedom of assembly on New Year’s Eve 2010. According to some human rights activists, the motive for his arrest was simply to demonstrate to political dissidents that the authorities could do what they wish.

Perhaps the most brazen example of the deficiency of the Russian rule of law is the second trial and conviction of former oil magnate Mikhail Khodorkovsky. He was the founder of OAO Yukos, once Russia’s largest oil company. Yukos was a creation of the privatization process that followed the collapse of the Soviet Union. The selling off of state-owned assets created much controversy because critics charged that favored insiders benefited from a lack of transparency that characterized this privatization process. Khodorkovsky, once the richest man in the new Russia and the most powerful of the new oligarchs (the term used to describe the business leaders made rich by the privatization process), committed the fatal mistake of making a political enemy of Vladimir Putin, the Russian Federation’s second president and its most powerful political force. Khodorkovsky provided financing for political parties not friendly to Putin and argued for a strong, independent media. Khodorkovsky was arrested in 2003, convicted in 2005 of tax evasion, and sentenced to eight years in a Siberian prison. After the conviction, Yukos was forced into bankruptcy. Most of its assets were sold off at bargain basement prices to state-owned companies controlled by political allies of Putin to pay for the alleged unpaid taxes.

As his release date from prison drew nearer, Khodorkovsky and his partner Platon Lebedev were charged with stealing all the oil that Yukos produced. Khodorkovsky was convicted in December 2010 and sentenced to another six years in prison. Many observers viewed this second trial as a clear case of double jeopardy. They also viewed it as logically inconsistent with the charges filed in his first trial. If Khodorkovsky stole the oil, then Yukos would not have had any profits in the first place and thus could not have underpaid its taxes. If Yukos was guilty of tax evasion, then it must have owned the oil and then Khodorkovsky could not have stolen the oil. The suspicion that his original and subsequent arrest were politically motivated was heightened when in February 2011 an assistant to the presiding judge in the second trial claimed that the judge was pressured by his superior to deliver a guilty verdict and a harsh sentence. The Obama

(Continued)
administration denounced the verdict as an “abusive use of the legal system for improper ends.”

Many Russian citizens viewed Khodorkovsky’s first conviction favorably. The oligarchs who rose to prominence in the 1990s after the breakup of the Soviet Union were perceived as benefiting from insider deals as state-owned assets were transferred to the private sector. But in the 2000s economic power appears to have been transferred from the oligarchs to bureaucrat-entrepreneurs, that is, government officials who used their government positions to enrich themselves and their friends. Administrative power, rather than property rights, became the basis of wealth. The concern is that firms, foreign and domestic, in such an environment will fail to make the long-term investments that are the basis of economic growth in developed economies. Other investors fear that if their investments become too profitable they will attract the attention of state authorities, who will then use their positions to loot those assets: Such a fate befell Hermitage Capital, a foreign-financed firm that at one time was the largest investor in the Russian stock market.


In countries relying on bureaucratic law, the ability of an international business to manage its operations is often compromised by bureaucrats. International managers are often confronted with arbitrary rules or decisions that have the force of law. This is often the case in China, for example. One study notes:

Chinese bureaucracies have sometimes been accused of selectively applying regulations. China has many strict rules that are usually ignored in practice until a person or entity falls out of official favor. Governmental authorities can wield their discretionary power to “crack down” on foreign or disfavored investors or make special demands on such investors simply by threatening to wield such power.6

Many international managers have learned the hard way that an unfortunate by-product of bureaucratic law is the lack of consistency, predictability, and appeal procedures.

International businesspeople must be aware of these general differences in legal systems to avoid costly misunderstandings. They should also rely on the expertise of local lawyers in each country in which they operate to help them comply with the specific requirements of local laws and to counsel them on substantive differences in due process, legal liabilities, and procedural safeguards.

Domestically Oriented Laws

The laws of the countries in which an international business operates play a major role in shaping the opportunities available to that firm. Some of these laws are primarily designed to regulate the domestic economic environment. Such laws affect all facets of a firm’s domestic operations: managing its workforce (recruitment, compensation, and labor relations laws); financing its operations (securities, banking, and credit laws); marketing its products (advertising, distribution, and consumer protection laws); and developing and using technology (patent, copyright, and trademark laws). Although such laws are primarily focused on the domestic marketplace, they may indirectly affect the ability of domestic firms to compete internationally by increasing their costs, thus reducing their price competitiveness relative to foreign firms. For example, labor costs for manufacturers in Germany, France, and Belgium are among the world’s highest as a result of government-mandated benefits packages. These manufacturers, therefore, find that their products are less price competitive in export markets; many of them that compete internationally stress their products’ quality rather than their price.

Domestically oriented laws may also inadvertently affect the business practices of foreign firms operating outside the country’s borders. Often firms whose products are geared to the export market alter their production techniques to meet the regulations of the importing countries, even though the firms’ operations are legal within their home country. For example, Grupo Herdez chose to alter its production processes in Mexico to sell its goods in the U.S. market. Grupo Herdez is one of Mexico’s largest producers of mole (pronounced mo-lay), a spicy but sweet sauce made from chocolate and chili peppers. The firm’s traditional way of preparing the chilies for production—laying them out to dry in the sun for several days—failed to meet hygiene standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). To receive the
necessary FDA approval and benefit from the growing U.S. market for Mexican foods, Grupo Herdez had to develop a new technology that uses electronic dryers to prepare the chilies for mole production.  

**Laws Directly Affecting International Business Transactions**

Other national laws are explicitly designed to regulate international business activities. Such laws are often politically motivated and designed to promote the country’s foreign policy or military objectives. A country may attempt to induce a second country to change an undesirable policy by imposing sanctions—restraints against commerce with that country. Sanctions may take many forms, such as restricting access to high-technology goods, withdrawing preferential tariff treatment, boycotting the country’s goods, and denying new loans. For instance, the United Nations imposed financial sanctions against Sierra Leone and Liberia to cut the flow of arms to their war-torn countries, and the United States levied sanctions against Sudan and Myanmar (Burma) for human rights violations and against Iran for nuclear proliferation policy violations.  

An embargo—a comprehensive sanction against all commerce with a given country—may be imposed by countries acting in unison or alone. For example, the United Nations embargoed all trade with Iraq after Iraq’s 1990 invasion of Kuwait. Most countries embargoed goods to or from South Africa during the 1980s to protest its apartheid policies. The United States has unilaterally embargoed trade with Cuba since 1961, when the attempted U.S.-supported overthrow of Fidel Castro died on the beaches of the Bay of Pigs.  

A particularly important form of export control involves high-technology goods. Many technologically advanced countries limit the export of so-called dual-use products that may be used for both civilian and military purposes. McDonnell Douglas ran afoul of U.S. dual-use controls when it sold sophisticated machine tools to the China National Aero-Technology Import and Export Company, which claimed that the equipment would be used to build civilian aircraft. However, the tools were instead shipped to a military factory that builds ballistic and cruise missiles. Similarly, Boeing agreed to pay a $15 million fine because it sold China 94 commercial airliners whose avionics systems contained a tiny gyrochip that could be used to guide air-to-surface missiles, without receiving an export license, in violation of the Arms Control Export Act.  

Countries may also attempt to regulate business activities that are conducted outside their borders, a practice known as extraterritoriality. For example, firms are vulnerable to U.S. antitrust lawsuits if they engage in activities outside the United States that diminish competition in the U.S. market. In one such case the United States successfully sued Pilkington PLC, the British owner of the most important patents for producing flat glass, for limiting the ability of its U.S. licensees to use the technology in international markets. U.S. authorities claimed that Pilkington’s policies hurt U.S. exports and reduced the incentive of U.S. flat glass producers to invest in research and development, thereby lessening competition.  

Antiboycott provisions in U.S. trade law also have extraterritorial reach. U.S. antiboycott law prohibits U.S. firms from complying with any boycott ordered by a foreign country that prohibits trade with a country friendly to the United States. This law is primarily directed against a 1954 resolution adopted by the League of Arab States that calls for a boycott of any firm that does business with Israel. Baxter International found itself in deep trouble after a U.S. grand jury investigated it for selling discounted hospital supplies to Syria, allegedly as a bribe for the Arab states terminating their boycott of the company. Baxter pleaded guilty to violating the antiboycott law and paid a fine of $6.6 million.  

The Helms-Burton Act is probably the most controversial application of extraterritoriality affecting international business today. This act is directed against international firms that “traffic” in the assets of U.S. companies that were confiscated by the Cuban government when Castro assumed control in 1959. Over time the Cuban government has leased or sold many of these confiscated assets to foreign companies. The Helms-Burton Act authorizes the U.S. government and the former U.S. owners of the confiscated assets to take action against their new foreign owners. The U.S. government can deny entrance to the United States of officers of companies that benefit from the use of these confiscated assets; such a fate has befallen executives of Canada’s Sherritt Corporation, which is producing nickel and cobalt from a mine formerly owned by Freeport McMoRan, a New Orleans–based natural resources company.
In the eyes of the U.S. government the Helms-Burton Act is simply designed to ensure that foreign companies do not profit from Cuban property that was stolen from U.S. owners. In the view of many other countries, such as Canada and the EU, the Helms-Burton Act is an ill-conceived policy of trying to bludgeon them into joining the U.S. anti-Castro crusade. By some estimates 85 percent of all foreign-owned private property in pre-Castro Cuba was owned by U.S. interests, so it is easy to see why the disposition of confiscated property in Cuba is more important to the United States than to other countries.\textsuperscript{13}

**Laws Directed against Foreign Firms**

On other occasions countries may pass laws that are explicitly directed against foreign-owned firms. Ownership issues are a particular area of concern. In most countries there is ongoing debate between the political left and right regarding the appropriate balance between governmental control of the economy and reliance on market forces to allocate resources. Often when leftist governments obtain power, they choose to transfer ownership of resources from the private to the public sector, a process known as **nationalization**. Most vulnerable to such actions are industries that lack mobility: natural resource industries such as crude oil production and mining, and capital-intensive industries such as steel, chemicals, and oil refining. For example, in 2008 Hugo Chávez, the then president of Venezuela, nationalized the steel and cement industries on grounds that they constituted “strategic sectors” of the economy. The previous year he nationalized private firms in the oil, power, and telecommunications industries.\textsuperscript{14} Similarly, Zimbabwe is mandating that foreign-owned mining companies must divest majority ownership of their local subsidiaries to government entities or employee-owned groups.\textsuperscript{15}

When the host government compensates the private owners for their losses, the transfer is called **expropriation**. When the host government offers no compensation, the transfer is called **confiscation**. Most governments, including that of the United States, recognize the right of other national governments to mandate the transfer of private property within their borders to the public sector, although nonhost governments do expect that foreign owners will receive suitable compensation for their lost property. For example, many Arab oil-producing countries nationalized the properties of Western oil firms after 1973. These countries, however, offered the Western firms a combination of compensation, continuing operating agreements, and future drilling rights that the firms found acceptable. Conversely, a key element in the U.S. conflict with Cuba is Cuba’s lack of compensation for assets seized from U.S. firms.

**Privatization** The conversion of state-owned property to privately owned property is called **privatization**. Although not strictly an issue of host country control, privatization is the opposite of nationalization and creates opportunities for international businesses. Most state-owned enterprises sold to the private sector are unprofitable, undercapitalized, and overstaffed. Nevertheless, they are often attractive to international businesses seeking to expand their operations into new markets located in key sectors of a national economy, such as telecommunications, transportation, and manufacturing.

Privatization, which gained momentum in the 1980s, stems from two primary forces: political ideology and economic pressure. Political ideology prompted Margaret Thatcher, the prime minister of the United Kingdom from 1979 to 1990, to call for diminishing the role of the state in the economy. During the 1980s the British government sold its interests in British Airways, British Telecom, the British Airport Authority, and British Petroleum. Brian Mulroney, head of Canada’s Progressive Conservative Party, followed a similar agenda during his tenure as Canada’s prime minister from 1984 to 1993, as did the leaders of Argentina, Brazil, Chile, Mexico, and many other countries during the 1990s.

Privatization has also resulted from competitive pressures that firms face in global markets. The telecommunications industry provides a perfect example of this phenomenon. That industry has benefited from rapid technological change, yet many national governments, facing enormous budgetary pressures and deficits, have found it difficult to raise the capital required to upgrade and expand state-owned telecommunications systems. As a result, countries such as Argentina, Mexico, Chile, and the United Kingdom have privatized telecommunications services.

**Constraints on Foreign Ownership** Many governments limit foreign ownership of domestic firms to avoid having their economies or key industries controlled by foreigners.
For example, Mexico restricts foreign ownership in its energy industry, believing that the benefits of its oil reserves, which it views as part of its “national patrimony,” should accrue only to its citizens. Canada effectively limits foreign ownership of newspapers to 25 percent as part of its program to protect the country’s culture from being inundated by its neighbor to the south. Foreign firms are often excluded from the radio and television broadcasting industries. For example, the United States limits foreigners to 25 percent ownership of U.S. television and radio stations. Similar rules exist in Europe.

Countries can also constrain foreign MNCs by imposing restrictions on their ability to repatriate (return to their home countries) the profits earned in the host country. Such restrictions were common in the 1980s, but many countries, such as Botswana and Ethiopia, abolished their repatriation controls during the 1990s as they adopted more free-market-oriented policies.

The Impacts of MNCs on Host Countries

Firms establishing operations beyond the borders of their home country affect and are affected by the political, economic, social, and cultural environments of the host countries in which the firms operate. To compete effectively in these markets and maintain productive relationships with the governments of the host countries, managers of MNCs must recognize how they and their firms should interact with the national and local environments.

ECONOMIC AND POLITICAL IMPACTS MNCs affect every local economy in which they compete and operate. Many of the effects are positive. For instance, as Western supermarket chains such as France’s Carrefour enter the Chinese market, they offer Chinese consumers greater selection, national brands, and high standards of hygiene. MNCs may make direct investments in new plants and factories, thereby creating local jobs. Such investments provide work for local contractors, builders, and suppliers. MNCs also pay taxes, which benefit the local economy and help to improve educational, transportation, and other municipal services. Technology transfer can also have positive local effects. An important benefit to the Shanghai Automotive Industry Corporation of its joint venture with Volkswagen was access to the latest German automotive technology. Similarly, General Electric raised the productivity of Hungary’s largest lightbulb manufacturer by transferring technological knowledge to the Hungarian firm.

MNCs may also have negative effects on the local economy. To the extent that MNCs compete directly with local firms, the MNCs may cause these firms to lose both jobs and profits. For instance, Carrefour’s entry into the Chinese market makes it more difficult for mom-and-pop operators in China’s open-air food markets to eke out a living. 16 Also, as a local economy becomes more dependent on the economic health of an MNC, the financial fortunes of the firm take on increasing significance. When retrenchment by an MNC is accompanied by layoffs, cutbacks, or a total shutdown of local operations, the effects can be devastating to a local economy.

MNCs also may have a significant political impact, either intentionally or unintentionally. Their sheer size often gives them tremendous power in each country in which they operate. Furthermore, there is always the possibility that this power may be misused. Even when it is not, MNCs are often able to counter efforts by host governments to restrict their activities. The MNCs simply threaten to shift production and jobs to other locations.

CULTURAL IMPACTS MNCs also can exert a major influence on the cultures in which they operate. As they raise local standards of living and introduce new products and services previously unavailable, people in the host cultures develop new norms, standards, and behaviors. Some of these changes are positive, such as the introduction of safer equipment and machinery, better health care and pharmaceuticals, and purer and more sanitary food products. Other changes are not positive. Nestlé, for example, has received much criticism for its promotion of infant formula in the world’s developing countries. Mothers in these countries were allegedly enticed into buying the formula but were not trained in its proper use. The mothers diluted the formula to make it go further and often were unable to follow adequate sanitation procedures. As a result, critics argue, infant mortality in these countries increased significantly.
Dispute Resolution in International Business

Disputes in international commerce can be complicated. Typically, four questions must be answered for an international dispute to be resolved:

1. Which country’s law applies?
2. In which country should the issue be resolved?
3. Which technique should be used to resolve the conflict: litigation, arbitration, mediation, or negotiation?
4. How will the settlement be enforced?

Many international business contracts specify answers to these questions to reduce uncertainty and expense in resolving disputes. The courts of most major trading countries will honor and enforce the provisions of these contracts, as long as they are not contrary to other aspects of the country’s public policy.

If a contract does not contain answers to the first two questions, each party to the transaction may seek to have the case heard in the court system most favorable to its own interests, a process known as forum shopping. Forum shopping allegedly places U.S. manufacturers at a disadvantage in international markets. Monetary awards are higher in U.S. courts, so many plaintiffs’ lawyers attempt to use these courts to adjudicate foreign lawsuits for product defects in U.S.-made goods sold internationally. In contrast, a foreign manufacturer of a good sold outside the United States would not face the threat of having to defend its product in a U.S. court because the manufacturer lacked a tie to that forum.

Whether a foreign court order is enforced is determined by the principle of comity. The principle of comity provides that a country will honor and enforce within its own territory the judgments and decisions of foreign courts, with certain limitations. For the principle to apply, countries commonly require three conditions to be met:

1. Reciprocity is extended between the countries; that is, country A and country B mutually agree to honor each other’s court decisions.
2. The defendant is given proper notice.
3. The foreign court judgment does not violate domestic statutes or treaty obligations.17

Because of the costs and uncertainties of litigation, many international businesses seek less expensive means of settling disputes over international transactions. Often business conflicts will be resolved through alternative dispute resolution techniques, such as arbitration. **Arbitration** is
the process by which both parties to a conflict agree to submit their cases to a private individual or body whose decision they will honor. Because of the speed, privacy, and informality of such proceedings, disputes can often be resolved more cheaply than through the court system. For example, a five-year-old conflict between IBM and Fujitsu over the latter’s unauthorized use of proprietary IBM software that was moving slowly through the U.S. judicial system was settled quickly with the help of two neutral arbitrators from the American Arbitration Association. Similarly, 16 francophone African nations have established a regional commercial arbitration court in Abidjan, Côte d’Ivoire. By providing a site for resolving commercial disputes independent of behind-the-scenes politicking or pressures from a host government, this court should encourage more international trade and investment in the 16 countries.

Another set of issues arises when an international business is in a dispute with a national government. The legal recourse available to international businesses in such disputes is often limited. For example, the U.S. Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976 provides that the actions of foreign governments against U.S. firms are generally beyond the jurisdiction of U.S. courts. Thus, if France chose to nationalize IBM’s French operations or to impose arbitrary taxes on IBM computers, IBM could not use U.S. courts to seek redress against the sovereign nation of France. However, the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act does not grant immunity for the commercial activities of a sovereign state. If the French government contracted to purchase 2,000 servers from IBM and then repudiated the contract, IBM could sue France in U.S. courts.

Countries often negotiate bilateral treaties to protect their firms from arbitrary actions by host country governments. These treaties commonly require the host country to agree to arbitrate investment disputes involving the host country and citizens of the other country. The United States and Jamaica have such a treaty. When the Jamaican government announced a tax increase on Alcoa’s aluminum refining plant despite a contract between the two parties that prohibited such an increase, Alcoa was able to force the Jamaican government to submit its decision to arbitration.

Laws and legal systems vary widely among the nations of the world. Savvy international business practitioners always seek local counsel to help them navigate the requirements of the host country’s laws. Because the Internet so easily spans national boundaries, e-commerce is particularly vulnerable to inadvertently violating local laws.

For further consideration: What could Apple have done to reduce its legal problems after deciding to market the iPhone and iPad using a global brand name?

The Technological Environment

Another important dimension of a country is its technological environment. The foundation of a country’s technological environment is its resource base. Some countries, such as Australia, Argentina, and Thailand, are blessed with much fertile agricultural land. Other countries, like Saudi Arabia, South Africa, and Russia, are endowed with rich natural resources such as oil, gold, and diamonds. Countries like Bangladesh and Indonesia have abundant labor supplies, whereas other countries, such as Iceland and New Zealand, do not. The availability or unavailability of resources affects what products are made in a given country. Because of their abundance of fertile land, Australia, Argentina, and Thailand are major exporters of agricultural goods. Similarly, the easy availability of low-cost labor allows firms in Bangladesh and Indonesia to produce labor-intensive products for the world market. Conversely, firms in Iceland and New Zealand are net importers of such products because these firms lack low-cost labor, which hinders their ability to manufacture labor-intensive goods profitably.

Countries may change or shape their technological environments through investments. Many countries, such as Canada, Germany, and Japan, have invested heavily in their infrastructures—highways, communications systems, waterworks, and so forth—to make producing and distributing products easier. Similarly, many countries have invested heavily in human capital.
By improving the knowledge and skills of their citizens, countries improve the productivity and efficiency of their workforces. Investments in infrastructure and human capital have allowed developed countries to continue prospering in world markets despite the high wages paid to workers in those countries.

Another means for altering a country’s technological environment is **technology transfer**, the transmittal of technology from one country to another. Some countries have promoted technology transfer by encouraging FDI. For instance, Hungary and Poland jump-started their transition from communism to capitalism by using tax and other incentives to entice firms such as General Electric and General Motors to build new factories there. Other countries have improved their technological base by requiring companies eager to access a country’s resources or consumers to transfer technology as a condition for operating in that country. Saudi Arabia, for example, mandated that oil companies wishing to extract its crude oil hire and train Saudi petroleum engineers, who then learned state-of-the-art exploration and extraction methods on the job. Similarly, the Chinese government approved General Motors’ request to build Buicks in Shanghai only after GM agreed to establish five research institutes in China that would train Chinese engineers and advance China’s technological know-how in such areas as fuel injection systems and power trains.

An important determinant of a country’s technological environment—and the willingness of foreign firms to transfer technology to the country—is the degree of protection that its laws offer to intellectual property rights. Intellectual property—patents, copyrights, trademarks, brand names, and so forth—is an important asset of most MNCs. It often forms the basis of a firm’s competitive advantage or core competency in the global marketplace. The value of intellectual property can quickly be damaged unless countries enforce ownership rights of firms. Countries that provide weak protection for intellectual property are less likely to attract technology-intensive foreign investments. Weak intellectual property protection also discourages local firms from developing intellectual property of their own.

Most countries have passed laws protecting intellectual property rights. Protection of such rights has also been promoted by numerous international treaties. Among these are the International Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property Rights (more commonly known as the Paris Convention), the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works, the Universal Copyright Convention, and the Trade-Related Intellectual Property Rights agreement (part of the Uruguay Round). On paper these laws and treaties would appear to provide adequate protection to owners of intellectual property. However, not all countries have signed the treaties. Further, their enforcement by many signatories is lax.

Weak protection for intellectual property rights can have high costs for international businesses. According to the Business Software Alliance, piracy of computer software cost its members $63.4 billion in revenues in 2011. Table 3.1 reports the loss to software piracy and the piracy rates for the 15 largest software markets. Although total losses to piracy are highest in the United States ($9.8 billion), the piracy rate is highest in China. The BSA reports that the average PC user in China buys just $8.89 of legal software, compared to $120 for an average PC user in the United States. Similarly, music and movie companies estimate that their losses resulting from illegal downloading and duplication of DVDs, CDs, and cassettes exceed $18 billion annually. Unfortunately for these companies, technology is allowing pirates to move faster than ever. For example, bootleg copies of Hollywood movies routinely appear on the streets of China, Hong Kong, and Indonesia within days of their debuts in theaters.21

Counterfeiting and intellectual property theft can cause companies and society problems beyond the mere loss of revenue. In many cases, a company’s most valuable asset is its brand name, and counterfeit goods can severely damage that reputation. One well-publicized incident involved a young welder in China who was killed when his Motorola cell phone exploded in his pocket; the presumed cause was that the phone’s battery was subjected to extreme heat. After the incident, Chinese regulators ruled that Motorola cell phone batteries failed to meet national safety standards. However, once Motorola examined the evidence, it determined that the battery was not genuine; rather, it was a counterfeit one sold by a Chinese distributor that had no connection to the company.

Colgate-Palmolive Company ran into a similar problem. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) discovered that “Colgate” toothpaste sold in four states contained diethylene glycol, a poisonous substance commonly used in antifreeze. Once again, the
product was a counterfeit made in China, but the damage to Colgate’s reputation was real. Thanks to the FDA’s action, tragedy was avoided. Such was not the case in Panama, where cough syrup imported from China, laced with diethylene glycol, was responsible for more than 40 deaths.

The growth in counterfeiting complicates the ability of overburdened regulators in importing countries to protect their citizens from unsafe products. For example, in 2007 alone the FDA opened up 31 new investigations involving imported counterfeit drugs and was forced to test all imported toothpaste made in China after the fake Colgate toothpaste was discovered. Such incidents also force firms to expend additional resources to monitor the reliability and the integrity of the complex supply chains that they have constructed to benefit from globalization.  

Differences in patent practices can also lead to conflicts. For example, Japanese firms tend to file numerous patents, each of which may reflect only a minor modification of an existing patent. Conversely, U.S. patent law requires that patentable inventions be novel, useful, and nonobvious. Accordingly, U.S. firms tend to file far fewer patents than Japanese companies. This has led to trade disputes between the United States and Japan over the use of so-called patent flooding by Japanese firms. With patent flooding, a company files a series of patent applications protecting narrow, minor technical improvements to a competitor’s existing patents. Patent flooding makes it difficult for the competitor to improve its own technology without infringing on the intellectual property of the patent flooder. CyberOptics, the small Minneapolis developer of LaserAlign (a software and laser-based technology that helps robots position miniature components on circuit boards), provides an example of a firm that believes it has been harmed by patent flooding by a much larger company. CyberOptics had worked closely with Yamaha for five years to incorporate CyberOptics technology on the pick-and-place robots Yamaha used to produce its motorcycles and other products. Both companies agreed that, without each other’s consent, neither would file for patent protection for technology they had developed jointly. However, CyberOptics discovered that Yamaha had filed 26 patent applications in Japan, Europe, and the United States for technology that CyberOptics believed was developed collaboratively based on the LaserAlign system. CyberOptics further discovered that Yamaha was allegedly warning potential CyberOptics customers that they might

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3.1 15 Largest Software Markets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Market (in billions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Korea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

be in violation of Yamaha’s patents if they purchased CyberOptics’ services. Consequently, the Minneapolis firm sued Yamaha for breach of contract and infringement of its patents. The case was later settled out of court.23

Registration of trademarks and brand names can also cause problems for international businesses. Generally, most countries follow a first-to-file approach, which often lends itself to abuses against foreigners. A firm may popularize a brand name or trademark in its home market, only to find, when it attempts to export its product to a second country, that an opportunistic entrepreneur has already applied for the intellectual property rights in that country. Some countries adopt a use-it-or-lose-it philosophy, which can prove troublesome to foreign firms. For example, J.C. Penney, which had registered its trademark in most markets to establish its first-to-file claim, lost the rights to its name in Singapore to a small entrepreneur who adopted the name “JC Penney Collections” for her two clothing stores. The High Court of Singapore, although acknowledging that J.C. Penney had validly registered its trademark in that country, determined that the U.S. firm had lost the right to its company name for failure to exercise its use in Singapore.24 And Starbucks’ entry into the Russian market was delayed for several years while it struggled to regain the rights to use its brand name from a trademark squatter. The delay allowed local and foreign rivals to gain a foothold in the Russian market and tie up the best sites for coffeehouses.25

Administrative delays may also hurt the rights of intellectual property owners. In Japan approval of a trademark application often takes four times as long for a foreign firm as for a Japanese firm. Approval of foreign patent applications may also take a long time. For example, three decades elapsed before Japanese courts recognized Texas Instruments’ (TI) original patents on integrated circuits in 1989, substantially reducing TI’s royalty payments from Japanese licensees. Some firms, such as Fujitsu, were able to avoid paying TI any royalties, arguing that Fujitsu’s circuit designs rely on newer, more improved technology rather than on TI’s original patents. In essence the slowness of Japan’s judicial process allowed companies like Fujitsu to benefit from TI’s technology during the early days of the semiconductor industry without having to compensate TI for its intellectual property.26

● Intellectual property is an important asset for most multinational companies. Protecting their rights to this property is thus a matter of the highest priority for firms from both legal and strategic perspectives.

● Laws protecting intellectual property vary dramatically from country to country, making it critical that international businesses deal with knowledgeable local attorneys to secure their rights in each country that they do or may want to do business in.

For further consideration: What can software firms do to reduce the piracy rate in developed markets? In emerging markets like China?

The Accounting Environment

Differences in the policies and procedures of national accounting systems can create significant operational and control problems for an international business, which must develop an accounting system that provides both the internal information required by its managers to run the firm and the external information needed by shareholders, lenders, investors, and government officials in all the countries in which the firm operates.

The Roots of National Differences

A country’s accounting standards and practices reflect the influence of legal, cultural, political, and economic factors, as Figure 3.1 indicates.27 Because these factors vary by country, the underlying goals and philosophy of national accounting systems also vary dramatically.

Consider first the difference between common law and code law countries. In common law countries such as the United Kingdom and the United States, accounting procedures normally
Differences among countries' accounting practices affect a firm's decisions on:
- Reported income and profits
- Valuations of assets and inventories
- Tax reporting
- Desire to operate in a given country
- Use of accounting reserves

FIGURE 3.1
Influences on a Country's Accounting System

Differences among countries’ accounting practices affect a firm’s decisions on:
- Reported income and profits
- Valuations of assets and inventories
- Tax reporting
- Desire to operate in a given country
- Use of accounting reserves

evolve via decisions of independent standards-setting boards, such as the United Kingdom’s Accounting Standards Board or the U.S. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). Each board works in consultation with professional accounting groups, such as the United Kingdom’s various Institutes of Chartered Accountants or the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Accountants in common law countries typically follow so-called generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) that provide a “true and fair” view of a firm’s performance based on the standards agreed on by these professional boards. Operating within the boundaries of these principles, accountants have leeway to exercise their professional discretion in reporting a true and fair depiction of a firm’s performance.

Conversely, countries relying on code law are likely to codify their national accounting procedures and standards. In these countries accounting practices are determined by the law, not by the collective wisdom of professional accounting groups like the FASB. For example, France’s code law system and long tradition of strong central government control over the economy are reflected in its imposition on French firms of a national uniform chart of accounts—the Plan Comptable Général. This accounting system, which dates to 1673, creates accounting records designed to serve as proof in legal procedures. To facilitate this legal role, all corporate accounting records must be officially registered with the government. Similarly, German accounting practices adhere strictly to requirements laid down by law or court decisions.

A country’s legal system also influences enforcement of accounting practices. Most developed countries rely on both private and public enforcement of business behavior, although the public and private mixture varies by country. Because French and German accounting procedures are laid down by law, the government plays a major role in monitoring accounting practices in those countries. Indeed, French accountants are legally compelled to report to French prosecutors any criminal acts the accountants uncover when auditing a company’s books. In contrast, the U.S. system relies to a greater extent on private litigation to enforce the accuracy and honesty of firms’ accounting practices. Any attempt to mislead investors or creditors in the United States is likely to prompt a lawsuit. Arthur Andersen’s fate is a stern reminder of this: Its failure to audit Enron properly led to a blizzard of lawsuits and the quick bankruptcy and collapse of the once venerable accounting firm.

A country’s accounting system also may reflect its national culture. The detailed accounting procedures laid down by the French government mirror France’s statist tradition. Larger French firms also must publish a “social balance sheet” detailing their treatment and compensation of their workforces. Strong anti-inflation biases are embedded in German accounting procedures, a reaction to the tragic hyperinflation of the early 1920s that wiped out much of the wealth of the German middle class and helped Adolf Hitler rise to the chancellorship in 1932.

International political ties are also important determinants of a country’s accounting procedures. Most members of the British Commonwealth have adopted the accounting principles and
procedures of the United Kingdom, whereas former colonies of France and the Netherlands have adopted those of their colonial rulers. Similarly, the accounting procedures of the Philippines follow those of the United States, which controlled that country from 1898 to 1946.

A country’s economic system also influences its accounting practices. In a centrally planned economy the accounting system is driven by the need to provide output-oriented information to the state planners. Such accounting systems focus on documenting how state funds are used and whether state-mandated production quotas are being met. In market-oriented systems, on the other hand, managers and investors require profit- and cost-oriented information.

Capital markets also may affect national accounting standards. U.S. firms historically have raised capital by relying on public investors. U.S. accounting standards therefore emphasize the provision of accurate and useful information to help outsiders—private shareholders and bondholders—make appropriate investment decisions. As part of this goal, publicly owned firms must satisfy all the disclosure regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). Unfortunately, these disclosure regulations were not perfect, as Enron’s bankruptcy demonstrates. To remedy the problems uncovered by the Enron debacle, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (see “Bringing the World into Focus”) imposes new corporate governance and financial reporting requirements on companies publicly traded in the United States. The SEC has also issued new regulations addressing these issues, with the goal of making the accounting statements and governance of these companies clearer and more understandable to investors. In contrast, in Germany the dominant role of a few large banks in providing capital results in accounting practices that focus on the needs of creditors, for example, by tending to undervalue

**BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS**

**THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT**

The accounting scandals surrounding Enron, Tyco, and WorldCom threatened more than the accounting profession. The U.S. Congress feared that investors could lose faith in the U.S. capital market if they no longer trusted public accountants or corporate accounting statements. If so, the cost to U.S. firms of acquiring capital could rise, which would lessen their competitiveness in world markets. To restore the public’s trust in the capital market, Congress passed the Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002, more commonly known as the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act has several objectives. First, it addresses perceived public accounting problems. The act establishes the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, which is tasked with developing and enforcing ethical and auditing standards for auditors of public companies. The act forbids accounting firms from providing certain consulting services to firms that they audit. This requirement is a direct response to conflicts of interest that arose between Arthur Andersen and Enron, for Arthur Andersen earned far more from Enron for providing consulting services than auditing services. Many critics believed that Arthur Andersen’s willingness to challenge Enron’s more dubious accounting practices was compromised by its fear of losing its lucrative consulting business with Enron.

Second, the act strengthens corporate governance of publicly owned corporations by imposing new requirements on corporate executives, auditors, and the company’s board of directors. No corporate executive can serve on the audit committee of the board of directors, and any disagreement over accounting procedures between the auditors and company executives must be reported to the audit committee. The chief executive officer (CEO) and chief financial officer (CFO) are required to certify that the corporation’s financial statements “fairly present, in all material respects, the operations and financial condition” of the corporation. This requirement is designed to eliminate the “I didn’t know” defense used by corporate officers in several recent high-profile court cases.

A critical component of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act is Section 404, which mandates that the managers of a publicly traded corporation must create “adequate internal control structure and procedures for financial reporting,” which must then be reviewed by the firm’s auditor. The CEO, the CFO, and the auditors are required to certify to the company’s shareholders and to the SEC their assessment of the quality and adequacy of the company’s internal controls.

The act has proven to be highly controversial, particularly because the high costs of complying with Section 404’s requirements fall more heavily on small companies than larger ones. The act’s passage has also negatively affected the competitiveness of U.S. stock exchanges. Many foreign firms are choosing not to list their shares in the U.S. public capital market, thereby avoiding the costs of complying with Sarbanes-Oxley. In 2000, for example, the New York Stock Exchange was capturing almost 90 percent of the market for new listings of foreign companies when competing against the London and Luxembourg stock exchanges. By 2005, 90 percent of the new listings were acquired by those rivals. The number of stocks listed on U.S. exchanges has fallen by 43 percent since 1997; during that span, listings outside the United States have more than doubled. Ironically, the main beneficiaries of the act—which was passed in part because of their poor performance—are the surviving Big Four accounting firms, whose business is booming because of the additional workload demanded by Sarbanes-Oxley.

assets and overvalue liabilities. This conservative approach is favored by the lending banks. The public capital market has been much less important in Germany than in the United States, and German accounting practices provide less information to public investors than do U.S. methods.31

The situation is similar in Japan. Most publicly traded Japanese firms are members of a keiretsu. They have relatively few public shareholders because of the pervasive cross-ownership of shares among keiretsu members and the extensive share ownership by banks and other financial institutions. Most Japanese firms also have large debt-to-equity ratios by Western standards. Thus, Japanese accounting standards are geared toward meeting the needs of a firm’s lenders and keiretsu partners, both of which already have privileged access to the firm’s financial records, rather than the needs of outside investors. However, the lack of transparent accounting standards often affects the ability of firms in less developed countries to raise capital.

Differences in Accounting Practices

Political, cultural, legal, and economic forces affect each country’s philosophy and attitude toward its accounting system. They also affect the way a country’s accountants treat different accounting issues. These different treatments in turn impact a firm’s reported profits, the value of its assets, its tax bill, and its decision to begin or continue operating in a country. International businesses that rely on foreign accounting records but fail to recognize these differences may make expensive, perhaps fatal, strategic errors and operating mistakes, as “Venturing Abroad” suggests. Let U.S. look at some of the more important national accounting differences that affect international business.

VALUATION AND REVALUATION OF ASSETS Most countries’ accounting systems begin with the assumption that a firm’s assets should be valued on a historical cost basis. That is, an asset is carried on the firm’s books according to the asset’s original cost, less depreciation. Because of inflation, however, the market value of an asset is often higher than its historical cost. The resolution of this problem differs among national accounting systems. Dutch firms are permitted to raise the value of such assets on their balance sheets to reflect the assets’ true replacement value. British accountants may exercise their professional discretion and value assets on a historical cost basis, a current cost basis, or a mixture of the two. Australia, an inheritor of British accounting philosophy, similarly grants a firm’s accountants a great degree of professional discretion. Australian firms may alter the value of long-term assets on their balance sheets to take into account inflation or improved economic conditions. In the United States and Japan, however,

VENTURING ABROAD

CHINESE ACCOUNTING BURES CATERPILLAR’S INVESTMENT

Caterpillar, a leading global provider of earth-moving equipment, excavators, and specialized mining vehicles, provides a vivid example of the costs of not understanding accounting differences among nations. Company executives were eager to increase Caterpillar’s presence in the booming Chinese market, which currently accounts for half of the world’s construction equipment market. Although world-renown for the quality and durability of its rugged equipment, Caterpillar found it hard to compete in the Chinese market, which emphasized low prices, political connections, and “good enough” products. To bolster its presence in China, in June 2012 it purchased ERA Mining Machinery Ltd, one of the leading domestic suppliers of roof support equipment for underground coal mines in China, for $700 million. But within nine months of the transaction, Caterpillar was forced to write off $580 million of its investment in ERA, attributing the action to the discovery of “deliberate, multiyear, coordinated accounting misconduct.” At issue were ERAs revenue recognition procedures and discrepancies between actual and reported inventory levels. At least one senior Caterpillar executive departed the company, presumably for failure to conduct appropriate levels of due diligence for the transaction. While the write-off of 83 percent of its investment is embarrassing enough for the Illinois-based company, even more troubling is the setback in Caterpillar’s plans to boost its market share in the China market. Currently, Caterpillar earns only 3 percent of its revenues from the huge Chinese market, despite having 23 factories, 4 R&D centers, and 15,000 employees in China.

such upward revaluations are illegal. These differences in asset revaluation procedures suggest the need for caution when comparing the strength of balance sheets of firms from different countries.

**VALUATION OF INVENTORIES**

Every introductory accounting course discusses the two principal methods for valuing inventories: last in, first out (LIFO) and first in, first out (FIFO). In times of inflation LIFO tends to raise the firm’s reported costs of goods sold, lower the book value of its inventories, and reduce its reported profits (and, presumably, its taxes) more than FIFO does, whereas FIFO produces a clearer estimate of the value of the firm’s existing inventories than does LIFO. Thus, in comparing the performance of two firms, one needs to know which technique each uses to value its inventories. There are significant international differences in the use of the two methods. U.S. and Canadian firms may use either approach. In China and India LIFO cannot be used, whereas in Japan LIFO is permitted. Firms in Brazil and the United Kingdom normally use only FIFO.32

**DEALING WITH THE TAX AUTHORITIES**

A firm’s accounting records form the basis for assessing its income tax burden. In Germany accounting procedures are detailed explicitly in the German Commercial Code and follow the requirements of German tax laws. A German firm’s taxable income is measured by the contents of the firm’s financial records. Normally no distinction is made between financial statements reported to shareholders and financial statements reported to German tax authorities. The United States follows a different approach. U.S. firms commonly report two different sets of financial statements—one to the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) and one to shareholders. Such conduct is authorized by U.S. law and allows firms to take advantage of special tax code provisions to reduce their taxable income. For example, U.S. firms often use accelerated depreciation for tax purposes but not for financial-reporting purposes. A German firm normally does not have this option. If it wants to use accelerated depreciation for tax-reporting purposes (to reduce its current-year taxes), the firm also must use accelerated depreciation in reporting to its shareholders (which reduces its reported income).

Forced to choose between higher taxes and lower reported income, most German firms opt for the latter. Managers and investors need to recognize that the reported profits of German firms are thus biased downward. The inflexibility of Germany’s accounting system seems to put German firms at a disadvantage in raising capital. However, German firms typically obtain most of their capital from large financial intermediaries like banks and insurance firms. These inside investors have access to more detailed information about the firm’s performance than is available in its public financial statements published in its annual report.

Tax laws also play a major role in French accounting practices, which follow well-defined procedures detailed by the French government in the national uniform chart of accounts. As in the German system, no deductions for tax purposes may be taken unless they have been entered into the firm’s annual accounting records. Because of the dominance of tax law in accounting judgments, French firms are likely to bias their reported earnings and net assets downward to reduce their tax burdens.

**USE OF ACCOUNTING RESERVES**

Another important difference in national accounting systems is in the use of accounting reserves, which are accounts created in a firm’s financial reports to record foreseeable future expenses that might affect its operations. An office supplies wholesaler, for example, might establish a reserve account for bad debts and for returned merchandise, knowing that when it ships merchandise, some retailers will ship the goods back and some will fail to pay their bills. The use of accounting reserves by U.S. firms is carefully monitored and limited by the IRS and the SEC. The IRS dislikes accounting reserves because charges to them reduce a firm’s taxable income. The SEC fears that firms might manipulate their accounting reserves to provide misleading pictures of their financial performance.

In contrast to the restrictive U.S. system, the German Commercial Code liberally permits German firms to establish accounting reserves for various potential future expenses, such as deferred maintenance, future repairs, or exposure to international risks. Because these reserves reduce reported income on which taxes are based, most German firms use them aggressively. In the 1990s, for example, Deutsche Bank admitted that its hidden reserves amounted to more than $14 billion.33
The use of such reserves hampers outside investors’ ability to assess German firms’ performance. Often these firms use reserve accounts to smooth out fluctuations in their earning flows by adding large sums to their reserves in good years and dipping into their reserves in poor years. Because of their use of accounting reserves, the reported earnings of German firms often fluctuate less than those of comparable U.S. firms, giving the misleading appearance that the former are less risky than the latter. These accounting differences complicate investors’ decision making regarding how to diversify their portfolios internationally to reduce overall investment risk.

OTHER DIFFERENCES Many other differences exist in the way countries treat accounting issues. The following are a few examples:

- **Capitalization of financial leases**: U.S., British, and Canadian firms must capitalize financial leases, whereas Swiss firms may do so but are not required to do so.
- **Capitalization of research and development (R&D) expenses**: Most countries permit firms to capitalize R&D expenses, but this practice is forbidden in the United States except in limited circumstances.
- **Treatment of goodwill**: A firm that acquires a second firm often pays more than the book value of the acquired firm’s stock. The excess payment is called goodwill. In the Netherlands firms typically amortize goodwill over a 5-year period, although they may write it off instantaneously or over a period of up to 20 years. UK firms also are allowed to choose between immediately writing off goodwill or capitalizing it on their balance sheets and amortizing it over a period of time. Japanese and French firms may amortize goodwill as well.

Impact on Capital Markets

The various national differences in accounting practices would be little more than a curiosity were it not for international businesspeople’s need for information to make decisions. These differences can distort the measured performance of firms incorporated in different countries. As already noted, the earnings of German and French firms often are understated because of the congruency between financial reporting and tax reporting. The price-to-earnings ratios of Japanese firms are frequently higher than those of U.S. firms, primarily because Japanese accounting practices often substantially reduce reported profits. For example, Japanese firms report depreciation expenses on an accelerated basis to their shareholders and are allowed to create generous reserve funds for future pension liabilities. The overall impact of these accounting differences is clear: Comparing the financial reports of firms from different countries is exceedingly complex, making it more difficult for international investors to assess the performance of the world’s businesses.

These differences can affect the global capital market in other ways. The New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), for example, is concerned about SEC-mandated accounting rules that must be followed by publicly traded corporations under the SEC’s jurisdiction. Those rules emphasize full and comprehensive disclosure of a firm’s financial performance information, and the NYSE fears that the rules discourage foreign firms from listing on the exchange, thereby threatening the exchange’s global competitiveness. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 has worsened this problem, as “Bringing the World into Focus” on page 94 indicated; increasingly, foreign firms are choosing to list their stocks on European or Asian stock exchanges, rather than the NYSE.

Consider the plight of Philips NV. As a Dutch company, it must first comply with Dutch accounting standards. To list its stock on the NYSE, Philips must then undergo the expense of reworking its financial statements to meet SEC requirements as well as comply with the requirements of Sarbanes-Oxley.

The information-laden accounting practices used by U.S. firms do offer them certain advantages, however. Many foreign bankers believe that the United States is the easiest foreign locale in which to lend because of U.S. public disclosure policies. Those policies result in reliable numbers for assessing the riskiness of potential loans. In contrast, the German accounting system, which allows firms to lump together various cost categories and establish a variety of reserves, is much less helpful for a potential foreign lender. As one investment manager has noted, “The poor quality of financial information available from many German companies makes it difficult for investors to buy a stock with confidence, since valuations cannot be clearly established.” In hopes of improving their standing with institutional investors, many German MNCs adopted either U.S. GAAP or the International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), an alternative...
transparent approach to financial reporting issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB). The FASB, which establishes U.S. accounting standards, and the IASB have been negotiating to standardize their treatment of accounting issues, but progress has been slow.38

In Practice

- Every nation establishes its own accounting standards and procedures. These differences complicate the tasks of interpreting and comparing the financial statements of firms domiciled in different countries.
- The U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission’s policies promote transparency in the financial statements of firms wishing to rely on the U.S. public capital markets. This transparency helps investors in evaluating the performance and riskiness of such firms.

For further consideration: The Sarbanes-Oxley Act has imposed new corporate governance and disclosure requirements on firms accessing the U.S. public capital market. What are the benefits of Sarbanes-Oxley? What are its costs? Should the law be modified or repealed?

The Political Environment

An important part of any business decision is assessing the political environment in which a firm operates. Laws and regulations passed by any level of government can affect the viability of a firm’s operations in the host country. Minimum-wage laws affect the price a firm must pay for labor; zoning regulations affect the way it can use its property; and environmental protection laws affect the production technology it can use as well as the costs of disposing of waste materials. Adverse changes in tax laws can slowly destroy a firm’s profitability. Civil wars, assassinations, or kidnappings of foreign businesspeople and expropriation of a firm’s property are equally dangerous to the viability of a firm’s foreign operations.

Political Risk

Most firms are comfortable assessing the political climates in their home countries. However, assessing the political climates in other countries is far more problematic. Experienced international businesses engage in political risk assessment, a systematic analysis of the political risks they face in foreign countries. Political risks are any changes in the political environment that may adversely affect the value of a firm’s business activities. Most political risks can be divided into three categories:

- Ownership risk, in which the property of a firm is threatened through confiscation or expropriation
- Operating risk, in which the ongoing operations of a firm or the safety of its employees are threatened through changes in laws, environmental standards, tax codes, terrorism, armed insurrection, and so forth
- Transfer risk, in which the government interferes with a firm’s ability to shift funds into and out of the country

As Table 3.2 shows, political risks may result from governmental actions, such as passage of laws that expropriate private property, raise operating costs, devalue the currency, or constrain the repatriation of profits. Political risks may also arise from nongovernmental actions, such as kidnappings, extortion, and acts of terrorism.

Political risks may affect all firms equally or focus on only a handful. A macropolitical risk affects all firms in a country; examples are the civil wars that tore apart Sierra Leone, Zaire, Bosnia, and Rwanda in the 1990s or the recent conflicts in Afghanistan, Iraq, Libya, and Syria. A micropolitical risk affects only a specific firm or firms within a specific industry. Saudi Arabia’s nationalization of its oil industry in the 1970s is an example of a governmentally imposed micropolitical risk, as is the Venezuelan government’s recent requirements that foreign oil companies renegotiate their contracts with the government. Nongovernmental micropolitical risks are also important. Disneyland Paris and McDonald’s have been the target of numerous
symbolic protests by French farmers, who view them as a convenient target for venting their unhappiness with U.S. international agricultural policies. In other instances, protests may turn violent, forcing firms to shut down their operations. For instance, Total SA, Royal Dutch Shell, and Chevron have been forced to temporarily suspend their operations in the Niger Delta several times in the past decade because of fighting between the Nigerian government and local ethnic communities who believe that they have not received a fair share of the wealth generated by the oil.40

Any firm contemplating entering a new market should acquire basic knowledge of that country, learning, for example, about its political and economic structures to control the firm’s political risks. The firm needs answers to such questions as:

- Is the country a democracy or a dictatorship? Is power concentrated in the hands of one person or one political party?
- Does the country normally rely on the free market or on government controls to allocate resources? How much of a contribution is the private sector expected to make in helping the government achieve its overall economic objectives? Does the government view foreign firms as a means of promoting or hindering its economic goals?
- Are the firm’s customers in the public or private sector? If public, does the government favor domestic suppliers? Are the firm’s competitors in the public or private sector? If public, will the government allow foreigners to compete with the public firms on even terms?
- When making changes in its policies, does the government act arbitrarily or does it rely on the rule of law?
- How stable is the existing government? If it leaves office, will there be drastic changes in the economic policies of the new government?

Most MNCs continually monitor the countries in which they do business for changes in political risk. Often the best sources of information are employees. Whether they are citizens of the home country or of the host country, employees possess firsthand knowledge of the local political environment and are a valuable source of political risk information. The views of local staff should be supplemented by the views of outsiders. Embassy officials and international

### Table 3.2 Examples of Political Risks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Impact on Firms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expropriation</td>
<td>Loss of future profits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confiscation</td>
<td>Loss of assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaigns against foreign goods</td>
<td>Loss of future profits, loss of sales, increased costs of public relations efforts to improve public image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory labor benefits legislation</td>
<td>Increased operating costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidnappings, terrorist threats, and other forms of violence</td>
<td>Disrupted production, increased security costs, increased managerial costs, lower productivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil wars</td>
<td>Destruction of property, lost sales, disruption of production, increased security costs, lower productivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation</td>
<td>Higher operating costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repatriation</td>
<td>Inability to transfer funds freely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currency devaluations</td>
<td>Reduced value of repatriated earnings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased taxation</td>
<td>Lower after-tax profits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
chambers of commerce are often rich sources of information. Governments themselves can supply vital information. Most governments signal their economic and political agendas during the political campaigns that lead to their elections or during the military campaigns that lead to the overthrow of their opponents; once in office, the governments continue to provide useful information about their current and future plans. Moreover, numerous consulting firms specialize in political risk assessment to help firms evaluate the risks of doing business in a particular country.

What and how much information a firm needs to assess political risk will depend on the type of business it is and how long it is likely to be in the host country. The greater and longer-lived a firm’s investment, the broader its risk assessment should be. A Singapore toy manufacturer that subcontracts with a Chinese firm to assemble toy trucks needs to know about politically influenced factors such as trends in exchange rates, reliability of customs procedures, and the legal recourse available to it should the Chinese subcontractor fail to deliver products that meet contract specifications and deadlines. If the Singapore toy manufacturer wants to build and operate its own toy factory in China, its political risk assessment must be broadened. It needs to scrutinize its vulnerability to changes in laws dealing with labor relations, environmental protection, currency controls, and profit repatriation. It also needs to weigh the likelihood of the Chinese government nationalizing foreigners’ property or splitting into warring factions and triggering a civil war.

Some degree of political risk exists in every country, although the nature and importance of these risks vary. The French farmers’ protests merely inconvenienced the managers of Disneyland Paris and McDonald’s, whereas the ethnic cleansing conducted by Serbian nationalists in Kosovo destroyed the economic viability of firms operating there. In political risk assessment, as in most business decisions, it is a matter of balancing risks and rewards. If a firm is considering an investment in a politically risky environment, it should be sure that it can obtain rates of return that are high enough to offset the risks of entering that market. Firms already operating in a high-risk country may choose to take steps to reduce their vulnerability. A firm can reduce its financial exposure by reducing its net investment in the local subsidiary, perhaps by repatriating the subsidiary’s profits to the parent company through dividend payments, by selling shares in the subsidiary to host country citizens, or by using short-term leases to acquire new capital equipment rather than purchasing it outright. Alternatively, a firm might build domestic political support in the host country by being a good corporate citizen; for example, the firm might purchase inputs from local suppliers where possible, employ host country citizens in key management and administrative positions, and support local charities. Alcoa, for example, has spent more than $37 million in Juruti, Brazil, building a hospital and a community water system and improving the technical skills of local residents. Alcoa is investing $1 billion to develop a bauxite mine located near this remote jungle town on the Amazon
River, so earning the goodwill of local residents is money well spent. Similarly, Vale and Rio Tinto agreed to support educational, agricultural, and infrastructure projects to ensure that Guinea’s newly elected president would honor the licenses granted by his predecessor allowing the two companies to mine the high-quality iron ore, worth an estimated $2.5 billion, found in Guinea’s Simandou field.

To reduce the risk of foreign operations, most developed countries have created government-owned or government-sponsored organizations to insure firms against political risks. For instance, the Overseas Private Investment Corporation (OPIC) insures U.S. overseas investments against nationalization, insurrections or revolutions, and foreign-exchange inconvertibility. In a typical transaction, OPIC sold Plant-Tech Concrete Solutions, a Maryland building supply company, $2.8 million of political risk insurance, allowing it to construct a facility producing low-cost concrete products in Angola. However, OPIC insurance is limited to firms operating in countries with which the United States has signed bilateral investment treaties. The Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (MIGA), a subsidiary of the World Bank, provides similar insurance against political risks. Private insurance firms, such as Lloyd’s of London, also underwrite political risk insurance.

**In Practice**

- The definition of political risk is broad. Political risk is everywhere, but some risks are manageable and foreseeable, others are not. Some political risks are mere annoyances; others threaten the viability of the firm.
- Firms have multiple sources of information about political risks. Employees, embassy officials, and political risk consultants are available to help firms manage their political risks.

*For further consideration:* Does the CAGE model (page 29) provide any insights into assessing and managing political risk?

---

**CHAPTER REVIEW**

**Summary**

The legal systems used by the world’s countries vary dramatically. The former British colonies follow the common law tradition of the United Kingdom, whereas most other Western countries use the civil law system that originated with the Romans. A few countries, such as Iran and Saudi Arabia, use religious law, while centrally planned economies use bureaucractic law.

Laws adopted by national governments can influence the global marketplace in many ways. A country can impose restrictions on the ability of firms to conduct business internationally and can indirectly affect their competitiveness by raising their costs of doing business. A country’s laws may also have extraterritorial reach, affecting transactions conducted beyond the country’s borders.

MNCs operating in a host country can influence the country’s economic, political, and cultural environments. Often these changes are positive. For example, FDI generates new employment opportunities and raises the productivity of local workers. MNCs can also impact the host country negatively by increasing competition for workers or by introducing products or practices incompatible with the local culture.

Resolution of international disputes is an important dimension of the legal environment. Because of the costliness
of international litigation, firms often attempt to resolve disputes through dispute resolution techniques such as arbitration. When U.S. MNCs are dealing with sovereign countries, however, their ability to resolve conflicts is often hindered by the terms of the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act.

The technological environment is an important facet of the national environment. A country’s natural resources, as well as its investments in physical and human capital, affect the country’s attractiveness as a location for international business activities. A country’s willingness (or unwillingness) to enforce intellectual property rights of foreign firms often plays a major role in their location decisions.

The accounting tasks international businesses confront are more complex than those faced by purely domestic firms. An international firm must meet the accounting requirements of both its home country and all the countries in which it operates. Unfortunately, significant philosophical and operational differences exist in the accounting standards and procedures of the world’s countries.

International businesses operating in foreign environments are subject to political risks. To protect themselves from changes in the political environment, firms should continually monitor the political situations in the countries in which they operate by consulting with local staff, embassy officials, and, where appropriate, firms specializing in political risk assessment.

Review Questions

3-1. Describe the four different types of legal systems with which international businesses must deal.

3-2. What is extraterritoriality?

3-3. How can an MNC affect its host country?

3-4. How do expropriation and confiscation differ?

3-5. Why do countries impose restrictions on foreign ownership of domestic firms?

3-6. How do restrictions on repatriation of profits affect MNCs?

3-7. What factors influence the accounting procedures a country adopts?

3-8. How do German firms use accounting reserves?

3-9. What is the impact of differing accounting standards on the international capital market?

3-10. What is political risk? What forms can it take?

3-11. What is OPIC’s role in promoting international business activity?

Questions for Discussion

3-12. What options do firms have when caught in conflicts between home country and host country laws?

3-13. What is the impact of vigorous enforcement of intellectual property rights on the world economy? Who gains and who loses from strict enforcement of these laws?

3-14. Does your country impose restrictions on the export of dual-use items? Have other countries imposed restrictions on your country importing dual-use items?

3-15. What is the impact on the global economy if governments fail to restore investors’ faith in firms’ accounting statements?

3-16. What impact would harmonization of national accounting standards have on international businesses?

3-17. What is meant by “aggressive accounting,” and is it used by any businesses in your own country?

Building Global Skills

Both government and competitors can have a marked impact on the ability of a new business to break into the market. There will be numerous regulatory controls and limitations imposed on a new business by different layers of government. The more complex the government structure, the more permissions and potential delays. At the same time, existing businesses will have a vested interest in preventing, or at least delaying, new potential competitors. They will have distinct advantages from being already established, but will also have existing contacts at various levels of government. If they feel threatened by the prospect of additional competition, they may use their leverage to influence decision-makers.

Problems such as these exist in varying degrees in different countries. As a group, choose either an existing, highly competitive market in your country or pick a business intending to manufacture or distribute products and services that could be conceived as being contentious. A good example would be an alcohol manufacturer in a country that has strict laws (or bans) on alcohol consumption. Alternatively, choose a business type that is concerned about its impact on the environment. Your group should aim to pick a type of business that is more likely to run into serious opposition, either from the levels of government, the competition or resistance from local communities, activists or other groups.

3-18. Identify the key groups or organizations that are likely to oppose the setting up of the business. How strong are they and what kind of influence do they exert?

3-19. What power and influence do the different branches of government have? Which is likely to be the most resistant?

3-20. Assess the probability that the right to establish the business is going to be denied, regardless of any safeguards you promise to make.

3-21. What are the existing regulations that could impact the potential setting up of the business? Can they be circumvented in some way?
The South China Sea has long been a critical waterway in international commerce. Stretching from the Straits of Taiwan in the north to Singapore and the Straits of Malacca in the south, its fecund waters yield a tenth of the world’s commercial fish catch. It is transited by vessels accounting for half the tonnage of ocean-borne intercontinental trade. Yet squabbling over three small island chains—the Spratly Islands, the Paracel Islands, and the Pinnacle Islands—and two submerged shoals and reefs—the Macclesfield Bank and the Scarborough Shoal—threaten to undermine trade relations and escalate political conflicts among Brunei, China, Japan, Malaysia, Taiwan, the Philippines, and Vietnam, which have staked claims to part or all of these areas (Map 3.2).

The size of the territory at stake is small: no more than 10 square miles of land spread throughout the 1.4-million-square-mile South China Sea. But the size of the islands underestimates their economic, strategic, and political importance. Under the 1982 United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS), a nation’s territorial waters consist of those within 12 nautical miles of its coastal shores. These territorial waters are considered to be part of its sovereign territory, although foreign vessels are permitted innocent passage through them. UNCLOS also grants a nation an exclusive economic zone (EEZ) extending a maximum of 200 nautical miles from its coastal shores. The presence of a continental shelf may also influence the boundaries of an EEZ. Each country controls all economic resources within its EEZ. However, Article 121 (3) of UNCLOS indicates that rocks “which cannot sustain human habitation or economic life of their own shall have no exclusive economic zone.” It is not obvious that the island groups in dispute meet this threshold.

The Macclesfield Bank, a series of submerged shoals and reefs, is claimed by Vietnam, China, and Taiwan. (To complicate matters, as we discussed in Chapter 2, China believes that Taiwan is part of its sovereign territory.) The Scarborough Shoal, an underwater formation claimed by China, Taiwan, and the Philippines, has triggered commercial conflicts between China and the Philippines. Incidents involving surveillance of Chinese fishing boats by the Philippine navy have led to boycotts of Chinese goods by Philippine consumers, alleged cyber attacks on Philippine universities by Chinese hackers, stricter regulations on Philippine banana exports to China, and suspension of Chinese tours to the Philippines.

The struggles over the disputed island chains are even more intense than over the two submerged formations. Ownership of the island chains impacts a country’s...
territorial waters and its EEZ, making ownership of these otherwise insignificant islands extremely valuable. The three island chains are blessed with abundant fish stocks. Moreover, geologists and petroleum engineers believe significant oil and gas reserves lie under the waters of the three chains. Estimated reserves vary widely, however. The Energy Information Administration, the statistical branch of the U.S. Department of Energy, believes the South China Sea contains 11 billion barrels of oil and 190 trillion cubic feet of natural gas; the Chinese National Offshore Oil Company’s (CNOOC) estimates are much higher, 125 billion barrels of oil and 500 trillion cubic feet of natural gas.

Vietnam, China, and Taiwan claim sovereignty over the Paracel Islands, which are roughly equidistant from Vietnam and China. French naval forces administered the area as part of France’s colony of Indochina. After France ceded control of its colony in 1954, the Paracels were administered by South Vietnam. In 1974, the Chinese navy ousted South Vietnam’s troops and took control of the Paracels. In 2012, the National Assembly of Vietnam reiterated the country’s claim over both the Paracel and Spratly Islands. China dismissed this action, asserting it has “indisputable sovereignty” over the islands. The diplomatic squabbles between Vietnam and China heated up in September 2012, when Vietnam charged that Chinese forces robbed and assaulted Vietnamese fishermen who sought refuge on a Paracel island during a violent storm. Vietnam has also protested plans by CNOOC, one of China’s state-owned oil companies, to call for bids for firms to drill for oil and gas on 19 blocks one mile from the Paracel Island chain.

The struggle over the Spratlys is equally contentious. By some estimates, the Spratlys’ oil and gas reserves are larger than those of Kuwait. Forum Energy PLC, a UK company, is exploring for oil in the region under rights granted by the Philippines. ONGC Videsh, a subsidiary of India’s state owned oil company, has been granted similar drilling rights by Vietnam. Excepting Brunei, all of the claimant countries garrison portions of the Spratlys, although one must pity the poor soldiers stationed there because many of the garrisoned islands are described as “naturally above water only at low tide.” To counteract the growing naval assertiveness of China, Vietnam and the Philippines have strengthened their military ties with the United States. The United States has also provided two former Coast Guard cutters to the Philippine navy.

But the hottest dispute is over five small islands and three barren rocks labeled on nineteenth-century British naval charts as the Pinnacle Islands. Totaling less than three square miles, the island group is known in Japan as the Senkaku Islands; the Chinese government declares them to be the Diaoyu Islands. The Taiwanese government prefers Tiaoyutai as their name. Both China and Taiwan agree that the Pinnacles belong to Taiwan; they disagree, of course, whether Taiwan is an independent nation, a territory of the People’s Republic of China, or the sovereign of mainland China. Conversely Japan believes that the Pinnacles are an extension of the Ryukyu Islands, which is an integral component of Japan.

Although technically located in the East China Sea, rather than the South China Sea, the problems surrounding the Pinnacles are similar to those involving the Paracel and the Spratly groups, except that they are more intense and more dangerous. Both Chinese and Japanese politicians have used the Pinnacle dispute to promote their domestic political agendas. The latest contretemps began in September 2012, when Yoshihiko Noda, Japan’s prime minister at the time, nationalized three of the islands for domestic political reasons. The Chinese media denounced the move as an insult to China’s dignity. Beijing refused to send its officials to International Monetary Fund (IMF) and World Bank meetings in Tokyo. Anti-Japanese riots quickly spread throughout China, causing damage to Japanese-owned property. For instance, Japanese retailer Aeon’s store in Qingdao suffered $9 million in damages. Chinese consumers also boycotted Japanese goods, particularly Japanese automobiles. Toyota’s September sales in China dropped by nearly a half, while those of Honda, Nissan, and Mazda fell by a third. Chinese businesspersons and tourists cancelled visits and vacations in Japan, hurting Japanese airlines and hotels. All Nippon Airlines suffered 46,000 seat cancellations, costing an estimated 10 billion yen in lost sales. Chinese factories shifted their orders for component parts from Japanese companies to their South Korean competitors. Japan’s GDP is estimated to have shrunk by 0.5 percent as a result of the boycotts.

China’s response was not limited to economic boycotts. The Chinese Communist Party was in the midst of a transfer of power, and wished to show no weakness to the world. Accordingly, the Chinese government intensified its presence in the waters surrounding the Pinnacle Islands, thereby reasserting its claims to the islands. Japan too was undergoing a political change, and Shinzo Abe, Noda’s successor, boosted Japan’s military budget and increased Japanese naval patrols around the Pinnacles. Chinese fishing boats in the area alleged harassment by the Japanese Coast Guard. In November 2012, Japan claimed that a Chinese frigate locked its fire-control radar on a Japanese destroyer, which is a first step to exchanging fire. The conflict then turned rhetorical: the China Daily declared that Japan is a “real danger and threat to the world.” Japanese Prime Minister Abe denounced China’s actions as “a unilateral, provocative act and extremely regrettable.”

The danger and threat to the world and the world economy will indeed be significant if cooler heads fail to prevail. The economic damage to the carefully calibrated supply chains created by multinational corporations would be significant, as would the damage to the Chinese economy, one of the main engines of world economic growth. About 1.5
million Chinese workers are employed in 4,600 Japanese-controlled factories. Should the Chinese market turn hostile to them, Japanese investors could redirect their investments to other parts of Asia, such as Vietnam or the Philippines. Moreover, the United States and Japan have a mutual defense treaty, which would escalate the significance of any armed conflict between China and Japan.

Resolving these territorial disputes will be complex. National pride may need to be balanced against the economic benefits of peaceful resolution. Philippine leaders have proposed that Association of Southeast Nations (ASEAN, discussed in more detail in Chapter 10) and China negotiate a binding code of conduct that would regulate commercial activities in the region. Others experts propose that the squabbling nations agree to binding arbitration under the aegis of the UNCLOS. China has rejected arbitration, preferring to engage in bilateral negotiations over the disputed areas. Cynics suggest that given the unequal economic and military power of China vis-à-vis its neighbors, bilateral negotiations will inevitably favor China.

Case Questions

3-22. Pick one of the island chains (Paracel, Spratly, Pinnacle/Senkaku/Diaoayu/Tiaoyutai) under dispute. Research the claims of the parties asserting ownership of the island chain. Prepare a short memo summarizing the ownership claims, the basis of those claims, and a possible solution to the dispute. Are bilateral negotiations, arbitration under UNCLOS, or a region-wide code of conduct the best way to resolve the conflicts? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each approach?

3-23. Suppose you are an executive for Forum Energy PLC, which was granted exploration rights in the Spratlys by the Philippines. What political risks do you face? What can you do to lessen these political risks?

3-24. Suppose you are an executive for Toyota, which has extensive FDI in China and has targeted the Chinese market as critical to the company’s future growth. What political risks do you face? What can you do to lessen these political risks?


MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

3-25. Discuss the differences in accounting systems and procedures adopted by countries. What are the primary influences on a country’s accounting system?

3-26. What is political risk? How can companies protect themselves from political risk?

3-27. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


CHAPTER 4

The Role of Culture

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Discuss the primary characteristics of culture.
2. Describe the various elements of culture and provide examples of how they influence international business.
3. Identify the means by which members of a culture communicate with each other.
4. Discuss how religious and other values affect the domestic environments in which international businesses operate.
5. Describe the major cultural clusters and their usefulness for international managers.
6. Explain Hofstede’s primary findings about differences in cultural values.
7. Explain how cultural conflicts may arise in international business.

MyManagementLab®

★ Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
BOLLYWOOD, HOLLYWOOD, AND NOLLYWOOD

What do Los Angeles, Mumbai (Bombay), and Lagos have in common? The surprising answer is that each can claim to be the world’s largest producer of movies. Hollywood movies garner the most revenue—$34.7 billion in 2012. Indian movies sold the most tickets—3.6 billion, roughly a billion more than Hollywood. Nigeria churned out the most movies—an estimated 200 per month. Moreover, each of these three centers of movie production is careful to incorporate the needs of the international market into their product planning.

Filmmaking has long been an international business. Hollywood movies have been playing to foreign markets since the 1920s. The ultimate profitability of a Hollywood movie increasingly depends on its foreign revenues: In 2012, Hollywood’s U.S. and Canadian box office sales reached $10.8 billion, while its ticket revenues elsewhere totaled $23.9 billion. Hollywood filmmakers have grown accustomed to tailoring their movies to foreign audiences even as they are being shot. Nudity is much more acceptable for general audiences in Europe than in the United States. Directors making films with nudity and strong sexual content often shoot two (or more) versions of some scenes. More extended and explicit scenes are edited into European versions, whereas shorter and less explicit scenes are used in the North American version. But even kids’ movies may be altered to meet the unique needs of each market. The first Harry Potter book, for example, was titled The Philosopher’s Stone in England but renamed The Sorcerer’s Stone in the United States because the publisher thought the original title sounded a bit bland. When the movie was made, the titles were similarly customized for the two markets.

The $3.5 billion Indian movie industry—often called Bollywood, although strictly speaking the term should be applied only to films produced in Mumbai, the port city in western Indian formerly known as Bombay—began in 1913, with the release of the silent movie Raja Harishchandra. Through the decades, the industry has produced tens of thousands of movies, some good, some bad, some dealing with complex social issues, some merely providing light entertainment for cinema patrons. What distinguishes a stereotypical Bollywood film from Hollywood- or European-made movies is the reliance on elaborate song-and-dance production numbers, which some experts believe are based on the traditions of ancient Sanskrit drama. Production values are equivalent to those of Hollywood, and multimillion-dollar budgets are common.

Bollywood movies are distributed globally, particularly in countries benefiting from the Indian diaspora, such as the United Kingdom, Canada, and Australia. Bollywood movies are also popular in South Asia and in Africa, in part because the modest behavior (little kissing, no nudity) of women in Bollywood movies matches the cultural norms of those countries. The appeal of Indian movies is also strong in parts of the former Soviet Union. During the Cold War, the Soviet Union banned Hollywood movies. But because India was politically neutral but supportive of the Soviet Union, Soviet TV broadcasts featured Indian movies, and old Bollywood classics are fondly remembered there. This Cold War relationship has spawned at least one new YouTube superstar: Baimurat Allaberiyev, a sheepherder known as “Tajik Jimmy,” whose specialty is singing Bollywood classics. He is busily pursuing a career in a Moscow nightclub as a result of his YouTube exposure. (If you wish to see his performances yourself, type in “Tajik Jimmy” on the YouTube home page.)

Many Hollywood studios have entered into production deals or ownership arrangements with Bollywood cinema companies and talent. For example, Disney acquired a 99 percent interest in UTV Software Communications, the parent corporation of the second largest Mumbai film studio. Prior to Disney’s purchase, Twentieth Century Fox teamed up with UTV to co-produce several movies, including The Namesake, starring Kal Penn, and M. Night Shyamalan’s The Happening. DreamWorks Animation enlisted two talented Bollywood veterans, A. R. Rahman (composer for Slumdog Millionaire) and Gurinder Chadha (director and writer of Bride & Prejudice and Bend It Like Beckham) to develop an animated feature based on the Ramayana, a classical Sanskrit story involving the abduction of Rama’s wife Sita by a demon king. And, as perhaps the ultimate sign of recognition of the importance of Bollywood, many of its stars are now featured at Madame Tussauds’ Wax Museum in London.

The third major source of motion pictures, Nollywood, is the youngest. Nollywood is the term commonly used to describe Nigeria’s thriving movie industry, which is centered around the country’s largest city, Lagos. The country’s movie industry got its start in 1992, when a Nigerian trader, Kenneth Nnebue, ordered a large shipment of blank videocassettes from a Taiwanese supplier. As the story goes, he had trouble selling the cassettes, until he hired a director to put a movie on them. The result was Living in Bondage, a story of a farmer who is haunted by his wife’s ghost, which sold more than a half million copies and spurred other Nigerian cinematic entrepreneurs to produce their own masterpieces.

The plots of most Nollywood movies are familiar and often moralistic—rural values triumph over the evils of the big city, the common man must stand up to corruption, stepmothers and mothers-in-law can cause trouble—and budgets are tiny by Hollywood and Bollywood standards. A big-budget film might reach $100,000. Most Nollywood films are filmed using digital cameras. Sets are often nonexistent: The streets, shops, and apartments of Lagos or the Nigerian countryside provide the backdrop for the films.

Nollywood, in terms of numbers of films made, has surpassed Hollywood and Bollywood. Nigerian filmmakers churn out 2,000...
to 2,500 movies a year. An estimated half million people are employed in the industry, which garners sales of $200 to $300 million a year. DVDs, not movie theaters, serve as the primary channel of distribution, and are sold for a dollar or two by street vendors. Nollywood producers gain most of their revenues within a week or two of their movies’ release. They must act fast because pirates quickly make their own copies of any new movie; most Nigerian producers use the cash flow from one movie to finance their next one.

Nigerian filmmakers are adapting their products to seek a broader, pan-African market. Most of the films are in English, rather than in one of Nigeria’s 510 living languages, to broaden their appeal throughout the continent. Casting and marketing are often intertwined. Hiring a Ghanaian actor or a Kenyan actress will likely boost sales in those countries. Such strategies have paid off, as Nollywood movies are available and popular throughout Africa. Satellite TV providers like South Africa’s MultiChoice have dedicated channels beaming Nollywood products to local audiences. The demand for Nollywood movies is transcending the continent as well: To serve the African expat community in the United Kingdom, British satellite TV provider BSkyB now features Nollywood movies on its Vox Africa channel.

Firms and businesspeople venturing beyond their familiar domestic markets soon recognize that foreign business customs, values, and definitions of ethical behavior differ vastly from their own. Firms that rely on their familiar home culture to compete in a new market can jeopardize their international success. Indeed, virtually all facets of an international firm’s business—including contract negotiations, production operations, marketing decisions, and human resource management policies—may be affected by cultural variations. Culture can even confer a competitive advantage—or disadvantage—on firms, as “E-World” suggests. This chapter highlights some of the cultural differences among countries and explains how understanding those differences is invaluable for international businesspeople.

**Characteristics of Culture**

Business, like all other human activities, is conducted within the context of society. Culture is the collection of values, beliefs, behaviors, customs, and attitudes that distinguish one society from another. A society’s culture determines the rules that govern how firms operate in the society. Several characteristics of culture are worth noting for their relevance to international business:

- Culture reflects *learned behavior* that is transmitted from one member of a society to another. Some elements of culture are transmitted intergenerationally, as when parents teach their children table manners. Other elements are transmitted intragenerationally, as when seniors educate incoming freshmen about a school’s traditions.

---

**E-WORLD**

**THE INTERNET, NATIONAL COMPETITIVENESS, AND CULTURE**

What does it take to succeed in the Internet age? According to some experts, a country needs “superliquid and vast capital markets, venture-capital networks, world-class universities, risk-taking culture, restructuring ethos, and high-tech talent pools.” The Internet, however, threatens to upset numerous culture norms. As you read this chapter, think about the requirements for success in the Internet age and the various elements of culture that are discussed. For example, you might consider the following questions:

- In some business cultures, pay is linked to seniority. Many small high-tech businesses, however, rely heavily on stock options to compensate their employees, and younger workers often have greater technical skills than older workers. How can such cultures reconcile these conflicting norms?

---

The elements of culture are interrelated. For example, Japan’s group-oriented, hierarchical society stresses harmony and loyalty, which historically translated into lifetime employment and minimal job switching.

Because culture is learned behavior, it is adaptive; that is, the culture changes in response to external forces that affect the society. For example, after World War II, Germany was divided into free-market-oriented West Germany and communist-controlled East Germany. Despite their having a common heritage developed over centuries, this division created large cultural differences between Ossis (East Germans) and Wessis (West Germans). The differences resulted from adaptations of the East German culture to the dictates of communist ideology regarding attitudes toward work, risk taking, and fairness of reward systems.

Culture is shared by members of the society and indeed defines the membership in the society. Individuals who share a culture are members of a society; those who do not are outside the boundaries of the society.

**In Practice**

- Culture is not something we are born with. It is something we learn from other members of our society.
- Culture may affect business opportunities and business procedures. Firms should make sure that they understand the local culture before entering a new host country.

*For further consideration: What types of cultures facilitate success in fast-moving industries like e-commerce?*

**Elements of Culture**

A society’s culture determines how its members communicate and interact with each other. The basic elements of culture (see Figure 4.1) are social structure, language, communication, religion, and values and attitudes. The interaction of these elements affects the local environment in which international businesses operate. They also affect the ability of countries to respond to changing circumstances, as “Bringing the World into Focus” suggests.

**Social Structure**

Basic to every society is its social structure, the overall framework that determines the roles of individuals within the society, the stratification of the society, and individuals’ mobility within the society.

**FIGURE 4.1**

Elements of Culture

[Diagram showing the interrelated elements of culture: Language, Communication, Religion, Values and Attitudes, Social Structure, and Culture at the center.]
The first cultural element that plays a major role in Japanese business practices is the hierarchical structure of Japanese society. The social hierarchy strictly defines how people deal with each other in their day-to-day lives.

A second cultural element is “groupism.” A person is identified as a member of a group rather than as an individual. This sense of belonging to one consensually integrated group is engrained in Japanese children. This strong group identity has been reinforced by Japan’s ethnic homogeneity, and its relative isolation from the rest of the world until the 1850s.

The third element of the Japanese culture is wa, or social harmony. The goal of each group member is to promote harmony, or consensus, within the group. Decisions are not made within Japanese organizations by upper-management because that would upset the wa. The need to preserve wa is one reason many Japanese firms encourage Japanese salarymen to socialize after work.

A fourth cultural element is obligation, or duty. The individual, once hired, becomes indebted to the firm. The debt owed to the firm for agreeing to employ the person is so great that the person can never repay it. The person owes everything to the firm, and the firm’s needs come first, even before personal and familial needs. The strong cultural disapproval of an employee moving to another firm stems from this facet of Japanese culture.

INDIVIDUALS, FAMILIES, AND GROUPS  All human societies involve individuals living in family units and working with each other in groups. Societies differ, however, in the way they define family and in the relative importance they place on the individual’s role within groups. The American view of family ties and responsibilities focuses on the nuclear family (father, mother, and offspring). In other cultures, the extended family is far more important. Arabs, for example, consider uncles, brothers, cousins, and in-laws as parts of their family unit to whom they owe obligations of support and assistance. Other societies use an even broader definition of family. For instance, Somalia’s society is organized in clans, each of which comprises individuals of the same tribe who share a common ancestor.

These differing social attitudes are reflected in the importance of the family to business. In the United States, firms discourage nepotism, and the competence of a man who married the boss’s daughter is routinely questioned by coworkers. In Arab-owned firms, however, family ties are crucial, and hiring relatives is a common, accepted practice. Similarly, in Chinese-owned firms, family members fill critical management positions and supply capital from personal savings to ensure the firms’ growth.2

Cultures also differ in the importance of the individual relative to the group. U.S. culture, for example, promotes individualism. Schools try to raise the self-esteem of each child and encourage each one to develop individual talents. Because respect for individual authority and responsibility is so strong in the United States, children are trained to believe that their destinies lie in their own hands. Conversely, in group-focused societies such as Japan, children are taught that their role is to serve the group. Virtues such as unity, loyalty, and harmony are highly valued in such societies. These characteristics often are more important in hiring decisions than are personal accomplishments or abilities.3 Accordingly, when the producers of the hit TV show The Apprentice tried to sell a Japanese version of the show to the major local TV networks, they ran into cultural barriers. Not only was there resistance to the public humiliation borne by those that would hear the dreaded words, “You’re fired,” but no high-profile CEO was willing to assume the Donald Trump role. Noted one expert, “Most Japanese companies are presented as the cumulative effort of many individuals rather than the creation of a single person.”4

SOCIAL STRATIFICATION  Societies differ in their degree of social stratification. All societies categorize people to some extent on the basis of their birth, occupation, educational achievements, or other attributes. However, the importance of these categories in defining how individuals interact with each other within and between these groups varies by society. In medieval Europe, for example, the roles and obligations of peasants, craftsmen, tradesmen, and nobles were carefully delineated by custom and law. The British class structure and the Indian caste system provide more recent examples of the same phenomenon, in which one’s social position may affect many facets of one’s dealings with other people. In other societies, social stratification is less important. For instance, an American bank president may haughtily bark orders at the janitorial staff when on the job yet willingly take orders from those same individuals when cleaning up after a church fund-raiser.

Multinational corporations (MNCs) operating in highly stratified societies often must adjust their hiring and promotion procedures to take into account class or clan differences among supervisors and workers. Hiring members of one group to do jobs traditionally performed by members of another group may lower workplace morale and productivity. In less stratified societies, firms are freer to seek out the most qualified employee, regardless of whether that person went to the right school, goes to the proper church, or belongs to all the best clubs. In highly stratified societies, advertisers must tailor their messages more carefully to ensure that they reach only the targeted audience and do not spill over to another audience that may be offended by receiving a message intended for the first group. In less stratified societies, such concerns may be less important.

Social mobility is the ability of individuals to move from one stratum of society to another. Social mobility tends to be higher in less stratified societies. It is higher in the United States, for example, than in the United Kingdom or India. Social mobility (or the lack thereof) often affects individuals’ attitudes and behaviors toward such factors as labor relations, human capital formation, risk taking, and entrepreneurship. The United Kingdom’s formerly rigid class system and relatively low social mobility created an “us versus them” attitude among many British industrial workers, causing them to eye suspiciously any management efforts to promote
workplace cooperation. Until relatively recently, some British working-class youth dropped out of school, believing that their role in society was preordained and thus investment in education was a waste of time. In more socially mobile societies, such as those of the United States, Singapore, and Canada, individuals are more willing to seek higher education or to engage in entrepreneurial activities, knowing that if they are successful, they and their families are free to rise in society.

Language

Language is a primary delineator of cultural groups because it is an important means by which a society’s members communicate with each other. Experts have identified some 3,000 different languages and as many as 10,000 distinct dialects worldwide (see Map 4.1).5

Language organizes the way members of a society think about the world. It filters observations and perceptions and thus affects unpredictably the messages that are sent when two individuals try to communicate. In one famous experiment in Hong Kong, 153 undergraduate students, bilingual in English and Chinese, were divided into two groups. One group was given a class assignment written in English; the other was given the same assignment written in Chinese. The professor in charge of the experiment took every precaution to ensure that the translations were perfect, yet the answers given by the two groups differed significantly, indicating that the language itself altered the nature of the information being conveyed.6

In addition to shaping one’s perceptions of the world, language provides important clues about the cultural values of the society and aids acculturation. For example, many languages, including French, German, and Spanish, have informal and formal versions of the word you, the use of which depends on the relationship between the speaker and the person addressed.7 Existence of these language forms provides a strong hint that one should take care in maintaining an appropriate level of formality when dealing with business people from countries in which those languages predominate.

The presence of more than one language group is an important signal about the diversity of a country’s population and suggests that there may also be differences in income, cultural values, and educational achievement. For instance, India recognizes 16 official languages, and approximately 3,000 dialects are spoken within its boundaries, a reflection of the heterogeneity of its society. In several mountainous countries of South America, including Bolivia, Paraguay, and Peru, many poor rural residents speak local Indian dialects and have trouble communicating with the Spanish-speaking urban elites. Generally, countries dominated by one language group tend to have a homogeneous society, in which nationhood defines the society. Countries with multiple language groups tend to be heterogeneous, with language providing an important means of identifying cultural differences within the country.

Savvy businesspeople operating in heterogeneous societies adapt their marketing and business practices along linguistic lines to account for cultural differences among their prospective customers. For example, market researchers discovered that English Canadians favor soaps that promise cleanliness, whereas French Canadians prefer pleasant- or sweet-smelling soaps. Thus, Procter & Gamble’s English-language Canadian ads for Irish Spring soap stress the soap’s deodorant value, while its French-language ads focus on the soap’s pleasant aroma.8 Generally, advertisers should seek out the media—newspapers, radio, cable television, and magazines—that allow them to customize their marketing messages to individual linguistic groups. For instance, in the United States the development of Spanish-language television networks such as Univision and Telemundo has allowed advertisers to more easily customize their advertisements to reach the Hispanic market, without confusing their marketing messages to the larger, English-speaking audience.

LANGUAGE AS A COMPETITIVE WEAPON Linguistic ties often create important competitive advantages because the ability to communicate is so important in conducting business transactions. Commerce among Australia, Canada, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, and the United States is facilitated by their common use of English. For example, when Giro Sport Design, a California-based manufacturer of bicycle helmets, decided to fabricate its products in Europe rather than export from the United States, the firm told its location consultants to find a plant site in an English-speaking country. Its president noted, “With all the problems you have in running a business abroad, we didn’t want to be bothered by language.”9 The firm located its
European production facilities in Ireland, where it enjoyed a plentiful supply of well-trained English-speaking labor, economic development incentives, and tax benefits.

Similarly, Spain’s Telefónica SA moved aggressively into Latin America as part of its internationalization strategy. Benefiting from the region’s privatization programs, it has bought controlling interests in the formerly state-owned telephone monopolies of Colombia and Peru. Spanish banks such as Banco Santander, Banco Bilbao Vizcaya, and Banco Central Hispano adopted a comparable approach, investing heavily in Argentina, Chile, Mexico, Peru, Puerto Rico, and Uruguay.10 Turkey is fast becoming the jumping-off point for doing business in the Turkic areas of the former Soviet Union, such as Azerbaijan, Kazakhstan, and Turkmenistan. The linguistic legacy of colonialism also affects international business, as Map 4.2 indicates.

LINGUA FRANCA To conduct business, international businesspeople must be able to communicate. As a result of British economic and military dominance in the nineteenth century and U.S. dominance since World War II, English has emerged as the predominant common language, or lingua franca, of international business. Most European and Japanese public school students study English for many years. Some countries that have multiple linguistic groups, such as India and Singapore, have adopted English as an official language to facilitate communication among the diverse groups. Similarly, firms with managers from many different countries may use English as the official corporate language. For example, Philips, the Dutch-based electronics MNC, has used English for intracorporate communications since 1983. Switzerland’s Brown Boveri and Sweden’s Asea adopted English as their corporate language after their merger in 1987, as did Luxembourg’s ArcelorMittal, even though less than 10 percent of its employers are native English-speakers.11 Even some French companies, such as Total, Air Liquide, and France Telecom, use English when their boards of directors meet.12

The use of English as a lingua franca does not eliminate all cross-cultural misunderstandings, however. In some cultures—British, Danish, and U.S., for example—self-deprecating humor is often used to show the speaker is neither pompous nor arrogant, whereas in others, such as France or Germany, it may convey a lack of seriousness. And cultural differences can affect the interpretation of the meaning of common words. A U.S. executive might say that she’d “like” something done by next Thursday. A U.S. colleague would interpret this to mean that
Thursday is the deadline, whereas a colleague in Thailand might view it as a preference rather than a demand.\textsuperscript{13}

The dominance of English seemingly gives an advantage in international commerce to people whose native language is English, particularly when transactions are done in Canada, the United Kingdom, or the United States. However, failure by native English speakers to learn a second language puts them and their firms at a decided disadvantage when negotiating or operating on foreign turf. For example, a few years ago Lionel Train Company moved its manufacturing facilities to Mexico to take advantage of lower labor costs, but it could not find enough bilingual managers to run the plant. As a result, the firm eventually shut down the plant and moved its operations back to the United States.\textsuperscript{14}

Because language serves as a window on the culture of a society, many international business experts argue that students should be exposed to foreign languages, even if they are unable to master them. Although mastery is best, even modest levels of language training provide students with clues about cultural norms and attitudes that prove helpful in international business.

**TRANSLATION** Of course, some linguistic differences may be overcome through translation. The process, however, requires more than merely substituting words of one language for those of another. Translators must be sensitive to subtleties in the connotations of words and focus on translating ideas, not the words themselves. Far too often, translation problems create marketing disasters. A classic case is KFC’s initial translation of “Finger Lickin’ Good” into Chinese, which came out as the far less appetizing “Eat Your Fingers Off.” Similarly, the original
translation of Pillsbury’s Jolly Green Giant for the Saudi Arabian market was “intimidating green ogre”—a different image from what the firm intended (although it still might encourage children to eat their peas).

Firms can reduce the chances that they are sending the wrong message to their customers by using a technique known as backtranslation. With backtranslation, one person translates a document, then a second person translates the translated version back into the original language. This technique provides a check that the intended message is actually being sent, thus avoiding communication mistakes.

When communications to non-native speakers must be made in the home country’s language, speakers and writers should use common words, use the most common meanings of those words, and try to avoid idiomatic phrases. Caterpillar is faced with the problem of communicating with the diverse international users of its products. It developed its own language instruction program called Caterpillar Fundamental English (CFE), which it uses in its overseas repair and service manuals. CFE is a simplified, condensed version of English that can be taught to non-English-speaking people in 30 lessons. It consists of 800 words that are necessary to repair Caterpillar’s equipment: 450 nouns, 70 verbs, 100 prepositions, and 180 other words. A similar approach developed by the European Association of Aerospace Industries, “Simplified English,” is required to be used in aircraft maintenance manuals written for its members. It has subsequently been adopted as an international standard in the industry.

**Saying No** Another cultural difficulty international businesspeople face is that words may have different meanings to persons with diverse cultural backgrounds. North Americans typically translate the Spanish word mañana literally to mean “tomorrow,” but in parts of Latin America, the word is used to mean “some other day—not today.”

Even the use of yes and no differs across cultures. In contract negotiations, Japanese businesspeople often use yes to mean “Yes, I understand what is being said.” Foreign negotiators often assume that their Japanese counterparts are using yes to mean “Yes, I agree with you” and are disappointed when the Japanese later fail to accept contract terms that the foreigners had assumed were agreed to. Misunderstandings can be compounded because directly uttering “no” is considered impolite or inhospitable in Japan, as well as in China, India, and the Middle East. In such cultures, negotiators who find a proposal unacceptable will, to be polite, suggest that it “presents many difficulties” or requires “further study.” Foreigners waiting for a definitive “no” may have to wait a long time. Such behavior may be considered evasive in U.S. business culture, but it is the essence of politeness in these business cultures.

**Communication**

Communicating across cultural boundaries, whether verbally or nonverbally, is a particularly important skill for international managers. Although communication can often go awry between people who share a culture, the chances of miscommunication increase substantially when the people are from different cultures. In such cases, the senders encode messages using their cultural filters and the receivers decode the same messages using their filters. The result of using different cultural filters is often a misunderstanding that is expensive to resolve. For example, a contract between Boeing and a Japanese supplier called for the fuselage panels for Boeing’s 767 aircraft to have a “mirror finish.” Labor costs for the part were higher than expected because the Japanese supplier polished and polished the panels to achieve what it believed to be the desired finish, when all Boeing wanted was a shiny surface.

**Nonverbal Communication** Members of a society communicate with each other using more than words. In fact, some researchers believe 80 to 90 percent of all information is transmitted among members of a culture by means other than language. This nonverbal communication includes facial expressions, hand gestures, intonation, eye contact, body positioning, and body posture. In the United States, for example, businesspersons often greet colleagues, customers, or suppliers with a handshake. In Brazil, hugs, backclasps, and cheek-kisses, as well
Chapter 4 • The Role of Culture

119

As handshakes, would be expected, depending on the gender, length of relationship, and level of trust between the two individuals. Although most members of a society quickly understand nonverbal forms of communication common to their society, outsiders may find the nonverbal communication difficult to comprehend. Table 4.1 lists some of the many common forms of nonverbal communication.

Because of cultural differences, nonverbal forms of communication often can lead to misunderstandings. For example, in the United States, people discussing business at a party typically stand 20 inches from each other. In Saudi Arabia, the normal conversational distance is 9 to 10 inches. A U.S. businessperson conversing with a Saudi counterpart at a party will respond to the Saudi’s polite attempts to move in closer by politely moving back. Each is acting politely within the context of his or her own culture—and insulting the other in the context of that person’s culture.

Differences in the meanings of hand gestures and facial expressions also exist among cultures. Nodding one’s head means “yes” in the United States but “no” in Bulgaria. Joining the thumb and forefinger in a circle while extending the remaining three fingers is the signal for “okay” in the United States; however, it symbolizes money to the Japanese, worthlessness to the French, male homosexuals to the Maltese, and a vulgarity in many parts of Eastern Europe. Needless to say, international businesspeople should avoid gesturing in a foreign culture unless they are sure of a gesture’s meaning in that culture.

Even silence has meaning. People in the United States tend to abhor silence at meetings or in private conversation, believing that silence reflects an inability to communicate or to empathize. In Japan silence may indicate nothing more than that the individual is thinking or that additional conversation would be disharmonious. U.S. negotiators have often misinterpreted the silence of their Japanese counterparts and offered contract concessions when none were needed, simply to end a lull in the discussion. Attitudes toward silence also affect management styles. In the United States good managers solve problems. Thus, U.S. managers often attempt to dominate group discussions to signal their competence and leadership abilities. In Japan good managers encourage their subordinates to seek solutions that are acceptable to all involved parties. A Japanese manager therefore will demonstrate leadership by silence, thereby encouraging full participation by subordinates attending a meeting and promoting group consensus.

**TABLE 4.1 Forms of Nonverbal Communication**

| Dress: fashionable, flashy, or conservative |
| Hand gestures |
| Facial expressions: smiles, frowns, nods, eye contact (or lack of it) |
| Hair styles |
| Greetings: bows, hugs, kisses, and handshakes |
| Perfumes and colognes |
| Physical contact: hand holding, pats on the back |
| Posture: formal or relaxed? |
| Time: arrive promptly, early, or late? |
| Waiting your turn: queue up? or not? |
| Walking: fast, slow; in group or single file; position of leader within group |


**GIFT-GIVING AND HOSPITALITY** Gift-giving and hospitality are important means of communication in many business cultures. Japanese business etiquette requires solicitous hospitality. Elaborate meals and after-hours entertainment serve to build personal bonds and group harmony among the participants. These personal bonds are strengthened by the exchange of gifts, which vary according to the occasion and the status of the giver and the recipient.
However, business gifts are opened in private so as not to cause the giver to lose face should the gift be too expensive or too cheap relative to the gift offered in return. Because the rules for gift-giving can be quite complicated, even to native Japanese, etiquette books that detail the appropriate gift for each circumstance are available.

Arab businesspeople, like the Japanese, are concerned about their ability to work with their proposed business partners; the quality of the people one deals with is just as important as the quality of the project. Thus, the business culture of Arab countries also includes gift-giving and elaborate and gracious hospitality as a means of assessing these qualities. Unlike in Japan, however, business gifts are opened in public so that all may be aware of the giver’s generosity.

Hospitality customs also differ. When wooing clients, power-lunching U.S. executives often seek the most conspicuous table in a fancy restaurant as a means of communicating their status and clout. Conversely, in China business banquets are an important mechanism for developing the personal relationships so important in that business culture. However, such events, which typically feature rounds of toasting interspersed with numerous courses of expensive delicacies, are normally located in a private dining room of an expensive restaurant. The U.S. executive’s “see and be seen” desire is the antithesis of the Chinese executive’s desire for privacy.

Norms of hospitality even affect the way bad news is delivered in various cultures. In the United States bad news is typically delivered as soon as it is known. In Korea it is delivered at day’s end so it will not ruin the recipient’s whole day. Further, in order not to disrupt personal relationships, the bad news is often only hinted at. In Japan maintaining harmony among participants in a project is emphasized, so bad news often is communicated informally from a junior member of one negotiating team to a junior member of the other team. Even better, a third party may be used to deliver the message to preserve harmony within the group.

**Religion**

Religion is an important aspect of most societies. It affects the ways in which members of a society relate to each other and to outsiders. Approximately 84 percent of the world’s 6.9 billion people claim some religious affiliation. As reflected in Map 4.3, 77 percent of the world’s population adheres to one of four religions: Christianity (31.5 percent), including Roman Catholics, Protestants, and Eastern Orthodox; Islam (23.2 percent); Hinduism (15.0 percent); and Buddhism (7.1 percent).

Religion shapes the attitudes its adherents have toward work, consumption, individual responsibility, and planning for the future. Sociologist Max Weber, for example, has associated the rise of capitalism in Western Europe with the Protestant ethic, which stresses individual hard work, frugality, and achievement as means of glorifying God. The Protestant ethic makes a virtue of high savings rates, constant striving for efficiency, and reinvestment of profits to improve future productivity, all of which are necessary for the smooth functioning of a capitalist economy.

In contrast, Hinduism emphasizes spiritual accomplishment rather than economic success. The goal of a Hindu is to achieve union with Brahma, the universal spirit, by leading progressively more ascetic and pure lives as one’s reincarnated soul goes through cycles of death and rebirth. The quest for material possessions may delay one’s spiritual journey. Thus, Hinduism provides little support for capitalistic activities such as investment, wealth accumulation, and the constant quest for higher productivity and efficiency.

Islam, although supportive of capitalism, places more emphasis on the individual’s obligation to society. According to Islam, profits earned in fair business dealings are justified, but a firm’s profits may not result from exploitation or deceit, for example, and all Muslims are expected to act charitably, justly, and humbly in their dealings with others. The Islamic prohibition against payment or receipt of interest, noted in Chapter 3, results from a belief that the practice represents exploitation of the less fortunate. Firms wishing to do business with Muslim customers must often adapt their policies and procedures even in non-Muslim countries, as “Bringing the World into Focus” demonstrates.

Religion affects the business environment in other important ways. Often religions impose constraints on the roles of individuals in society. For example, the caste system of Hinduism
Map 4.3

Major World Religions

Buddhist

Buddhist/Confucian

Eastern Orthodox

Hindu

Muslim

Mixed Christian

Protestant

Roman Catholic

Other

Major Religions

United States

Canada

Mexico

Greenland (Denmark)

Cuba

Belize

Guyana

Suriname

French Guiana

Uruguay

Honduras

Bahamas

Venezuela

Brazil

Colombia

Ecuador

Chile

Peru

Bolivia

Argentina

South Africa

Botswana

Angola

Zambia

Congo

Gabon

D.R. of the Congo

C.A.R.

Nigeria

Zimbabwe

Madagascar

Lesotho

Namibia

Malawi

Burundi

Rwanda

Democratic Republic of the Congo

Cameroon

Equatorial Guinea

Liberia

Sierra Leone

Guinea-Bissau

Gambia

Senegal

West Africa

Western Sahara

Iraq

Iran

India

Mongolia

China

Saudi Arabia

Jordan

Kuwait

Qatar

Oman

Yemen

U.A.E.

Pakistan

Tajikistan

Kyrgyzstan

Nepal

North Korea

Taiwan

Philippines

Bhutan

Myanmar

Thailand

Laos

Malaysia

Indonesia

Australia

Papua New Guinea

New Zealand

Cambodia

Vietnam

Brunei

Bangladesh

Japan

South Korea

Afghanistan

Turkmenistan

Uzbekistan

Kazakhstan

Lebanon

Israel

United Kingdom

Ireland

Spain

France

Italy

Switzerland

Austria

Hungary

Moldova

Ukraine

Poland

Belarus

Latvia

Estonia

Greece

Malta

Turkey

Cyprus

Bulgaria

Albania

Slovenia

Croatia

Bosnia

Serbia

Montenegro

Portugal

Belgium

Netherlands

Czech Republic

Slovakia

Russia

Denmark

Norway

Sweden

Finland

Germany

Syria

Georgia

Armenia

Syrian Arab Republic

United States

Canada

Mexico

Greenland (Denmark)

Cuba

Belize

Guyana

Suriname

French Guiana

Uruguay

Honduras

Bahamas

Venezuela

Brazil

Colombia

Ecuador

Chile

Peru

Bolivia

Argentina

South Africa

Botswana

Angola

Zambia

Congo

Gabon

D.R. of the Congo

C.A.R.

Nigeria

Zimbabwe

Madagascar

Lesotho

Namibia

Malawi

Burundi

Rwanda

Democratic Republic of the Congo

Cameroon

Equatorial Guinea

Liberia

Sierra Leone

Guinea-Bissau

Gambia

Senegal

West Africa

Western Sahara

Iraq

Iran

India

Mongolia

China

Saudi Arabia

Jordan

Kuwait

Qatar

Oman

Yemen

U.A.E.

Pakistan

Tajikistan

Kyrgyzstan

Nepal

North Korea

Taiwan

Philippines

Bhutan

Myanmar

Thailand

Laos

Malaysia

Indonesia

Australia

Papua New Guinea

New Zealand

Cambodia

Vietnam

Brunei

Bangladesh

Japan

South Korea

Afghanistan

Turkmenistan

Uzbekistan

Kazakhstan

Lebanon

Israel

United Kingdom

Ireland

Spain

France

Italy

Switzerland

Austria

Hungary

Moldova

Ukraine

Poland

Belarus

Latvia

Estonia

Greece

Malta

Turkey

Cyprus

Bulgaria

Albania

Slovenia

Croatia

Bosnia

Serbia

Montenegro

Portugal

Belgium

Netherlands

Czech Republic

Slovakia

Russia

Denmark

Norway

Sweden

Finland

Germany

Syria

Georgia

Armenia

Syrian Arab Republic

121
Islam, one of the great religions of the world, was nurtured within the trading traditions of the Arabian peninsula. The Prophet Mohammed was a trader, as was his immediate successor, Abu Bakr. Islamic traders dominated the critical trade routes between the Mediterranean and Asia from the mid-seventh century until the end of the fifteenth century, when Vasco da Gama’s voyages pioneered new sea routes that were soon controlled by European merchants and naval vessels.

The Prophet Mohammed emphasized that commerce must be conducted fairly and honestly. One important tenet of Islamic, or sharia law, forbids receipt or payment of interest, viewing such transactions as exploitation of the poor by the rich. Yet credit is an important component of modern commerce, and adherents of Islam are important contributors to the growth of world commerce. Islamic banking, sukuk (Islamic) bonds, and even hedge funds operating within Islamic tenets are growing leaps and bounds.

Sharia law may forbid interest payments, but it recognizes that it is appropriate that those who take risks be rewarded. Accordingly, sharia-compliant loans typically are structured as risk-sharing arrangements. Often the banker buys the property or item in question from the seller, takes title to the property, and then resells it to the borrower at a higher price. The mark-up charged by the banker is equivalent to the interest payments the banker would have received had the loan been drawn up by a Western bank. As in a traditional auto loan or home mortgage loan, the borrower makes periodic payments to the bank. The payments compensate for the use of the property (a rental payment) and purchase a portion of the lender’s ownership interest in the property. Once this occurs, the banker transfers the property title to the borrower. The payments are equivalent to what the bank would have received under a more traditional loan. Such a loan is acceptable, because the bank is earning its profit through trading, not interest.

Another common approach is to structure the purchase and loan as a lease-buyback transaction. The borrower makes a series of fixed payments to the lender for the use of the property over the agreed-on period of time. At the end of the contract, the borrower buys the good in question for a previously agreed-on price. The rental payments and the final price allow the lender to recoup the initial cost of the good plus a profit.

Some sharia lenders have pioneered a different model for financing home purchases. Conceptually, the lender and the borrower form a partnership to purchase the home. They then establish a fair rental value for the home. The rental payments that the borrower makes are split between the borrower and lender, in proportion to their equity share. The borrower also agrees to make periodic payments to buy out the lender’s equity ownership over time. This joint rental and equity payment, which sounds similar to the “principal and interest” payments made by millions of non-Muslim homeowners in Asia, Europe, and the Americas, is nonetheless compatible with the requirements of sharia law. (For more information on this technique, you might wish to visit the website of the largest sharia-compliant mortgage lender in the United States, American Finance House Lariba at www.lariba.com).


BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

ISLAMIC FINANCE
traditionally has restricted the jobs individuals may perform, thereby affecting the labor market and foreclosing business opportunities. Countries dominated by strict adherents to Islam, such as Saudi Arabia, limit job opportunities for women, in the belief that their contact with adult males should be restricted to relatives. Religion may also affect the way products are sold. In Nigeria, advertisements in the predominantly Christian south might feature attractive women mouthing double entendres, following the old Madison Avenue precept that “sex sells”; in the predominantly Muslim north that approach would not be beneficial.

Religion also affects the types of products consumers may purchase as well as seasonal patterns of consumption. In most Christian countries, for example, the Christmas season represents an important time for gift-giving, yet little business is done on Christmas Day itself. Although consumption booms during the Christmas holidays, production plummets as employees take time off to visit friends and family.

The impact of religion on international businesses varies from country to country, depending on the country’s legal system, its homogeneity of religious beliefs, and its toleration of other religious viewpoints. Consider Saudi Arabia, home of the holy city of Mecca, to which all Muslims are supposed to make a pilgrimage sometime in their lives. The teachings of the Koran form the basis of the country’s theocratic legal system, and 99 percent of the Saudi population is Muslim. Strong political pressure exists within the country to preserve its religious traditions. It is impossible to overstate the importance to foreign businesspeople of understanding the tenets of Islam as they apply to exporting, producing, marketing, or financing goods in the Saudi market. For example, work stops five times a day when the faithful are called to pray to Allah. A non-Muslim manager would be foolish to object to the practice even though it seemingly leads to lost production. Foreigners must also be considerate of their Saudi hosts during the holy month of Ramadan, when the Muslim faithful fast from sunrise to sunset. Female executives of Western firms face additional obstacles because of Saudi attitudes toward the appropriate roles for women, attitudes that stem from their religion. Even actions taken outside Saudi borders may affect commercial relations with the country. For example, McDonald’s made a major faux pas when it printed the flags of the 24 soccer teams participating in the World Cup finals, including that of Saudi Arabia, on its paper takeout bags. The Saudi flag includes a sacred inscription that reads, “There is no God but Allah, and Mohammed is His Prophet.” Muslims in Saudi Arabia and other countries were outraged, believing that Islam had been insulted by including the name of Allah on a container that would be thrown into garbage cans. McDonald’s quickly apologized and pledged to stop using the bags, thereby diffusing a controversy that would have affected its business in Saudi Arabia and other Muslim countries. Nike made a similar gaffe when Muslim groups protested that the logo designed for a line of athletic shoes it was introducing resembled the Arabic word for God, Allah. Nike quickly pulled the footwear from production and redesigned the offending logo.

In many other countries, however, religion, although important, does not permeate every facet of life. For example, in many South American countries most of the population is Roman Catholic. But other religions are also practiced, and tolerance of those religions is high. The Catholic Church is an important pillar of these societies, but only one of many institutions that affect and shape the daily lives of the citizens. Yet public holidays reflect Christian theology (Easter, Christmas), as does the workweek (Sunday is the day of rest). A firm operating in these countries thus needs to adjust its production and employee scheduling to meet the expectations of its workers and customers. Firms operating in Sweden, which is 97 percent Lutheran, must make similar adjustments.

Ironically, countries characterized by religious diversity may offer even greater challenges. Firms that operate in the cosmopolitan cities of London and New York, such as Barclays Bank, Hoffmann-LaRoche, and IBM, must accommodate the religious needs of their Jewish, Christian, Muslim, and Hindu employees and customers by taking into account differences in religious holidays, dietary restrictions or customs, and Sabbath days. Firms that fail to adjust to these needs may suffer from absenteeism, low morale, and lost sales.

Values and Attitudes
Culture also affects and reflects the secular values and attitudes of the members of a society. Values are the principles and standards accepted by the members; attitudes encompass the actions, feelings, and thoughts that result from those values. Cultural values often stem from deep-seated beliefs about the individual’s position in relation to his or her deity, the family, and
the social hierarchy that we discussed previously. Cultural attitudes toward such factors as time, age, education, and status reflect these values and in turn shape the behavior of and opportunities available to international businesses operating in a given culture.

**TIME** Attitudes about time differ dramatically across cultures. In Anglo-Saxon cultures, the prevailing attitude is “time is money.” Time represents the opportunity to produce more and to raise one’s income, so it is not to be wasted. Underlying this attitude is the Protestant ethic, which encourages people to better their positions in life through hard work, and the puritanical belief that “idle hands are the Devil’s workshop.” As a result, U.S. and Canadian businesspeople expect meetings to start on time, and keeping a person waiting is considered extremely rude.

In Latin American cultures, however, few participants would think it unusual if a meeting began 45 minutes after the appointed time. In Arab cultures, meetings not only often start later than the stated time, but they also may be interrupted by family and friends who wander in to exchange pleasantries. Westerners may interpret their host’s willingness to talk to these unscheduled visitors as a sign of rudeness and as a subtle device to undermine the Westerners’ dignity. Nothing could be further from the truth. This open-door policy reflects the hospitality of the host and the respect the host offers to all guests—just the sort of person with whom the Arab presumes the Westerners want to do business.

Even the content of business meetings can vary by country. If a meeting is scheduled for 2 p.m., U.S., Canadian, and British businesspeople arrive at 1:55 p.m. and expect the meeting to start promptly at 2 p.m. After exchanging a few pleasantries, they then get down to business, following a well-planned agenda that has been distributed in advance to the participants. At the meeting the positions of the parties are set forth and disagreement is common. In contrast, in Japan or Saudi Arabia the initial meeting often focuses on determining whether the parties can trust each other and work together comfortably, rather than on the details of the proposed business. This time, however, is not being wasted. Because these cultures value personal relationships so highly, time is being used for an important purpose—assessing the qualities of potential business partners.

**AGE** Important cultural differences exist in attitudes toward age. Youthfulness is considered a virtue in the United States. Many U.S. firms devote much time and energy to identifying young “fast-trackers” and providing them with important, tough assignments, such as negotiating joint ventures with international partners. In Asian and Arab cultures, however, age is respected and a manager’s stature is correlated with age. These cultural differences can lead to problems. For example, many foreign firms mistakenly send young, fast-track executives to negotiate with government officials of China. The Chinese, however, prefer to deal with older and more senior members of a firm, and thus may be offended by this approach.

In Japan’s corporate culture, age and rank are highly correlated, but senior (and, by definition, older) managers will not grant approval to a project until they have achieved a consensus among junior managers. Many foreign firms mistakenly focus their attention in negotiations on the senior Japanese managers, failing to realize that the goal should be to persuade the junior managers. Once the junior managers consent to a project, the senior managers will grant their approval as well.

**EDUCATION** A country’s formal system of public and private education is an important transmitter and reflection of the cultural values of its society. For instance, U.S. primary and secondary schools emphasize the role of the individual and stress the development of self-reliance, creativity, and self-esteem. The United States prides itself on providing widespread access to higher education. Research universities, liberal arts colleges, and community colleges coexist to meet the educational needs of students with disparate incomes and intellectual talents. In contrast, the United Kingdom, reflecting its past class system, has historically provided an elite education to a relatively small number of students. Germany has well-developed apprenticeship programs that train new generations of skilled craftspeople and machinists for its manufacturing sector. The Japanese and French educational systems share a different focus. Their primary and secondary schools concentrate on preparing students to take a nationwide college entrance exam. The top-scoring students gain entry to a handful of prestigious universities—such as Tokyo University or Kyoto University in Japan and the five grandes écoles
in France—which virtually guarantee their graduates placement in the most important corporate and governmental jobs in their societies.\textsuperscript{31}

**STATUS** The means by which status is achieved also vary across cultures. In some societies status is inherited as a result of the wealth or rank of one’s ancestors. In others it is earned by the individual through personal accomplishments or professional achievements. In some European countries, for example, membership in the nobility ensures higher status than does mere personal achievement, and persons who inherited their wealth look down their noses at the nouveau riche. In the United States, however, hard-working entrepreneurs are honored, and their children are often disdained if they fail to match their parents’ accomplishments.

In Japan a person’s status depends on the status of the group to which he or she belongs. Thus, Japanese businesspeople often introduce themselves by announcing not only their names but also their corporate affiliation. Attendance at elite universities such as Tokyo University or employment in elite organizations such as Toyota Motor Corporation or the Ministry of Finance grants one high status in Japanese society.

In India status is affected by one’s caste. The caste system divides society into various groups including Brahmans (priests and intellectuals), Kshatriyas (soldiers and political leaders), Vaishyas (businesspeople), Sudras (farmers and workers), and Dalits (untouchables), who perform the dirtiest and most unpleasant jobs. According to Hinduism, one’s caste reflects the virtue (or lack of virtue) that one exhibited in a previous life. Particularly in rural areas, caste used to affect every facet of life, from the way a man shaped his mustache to the food the family ate to the job a person could hold.\textsuperscript{32} However, the power of the caste system in rural areas is slowly eroding as a result of government affirmative action policies and the growing scarcity of high-skilled employees needed by India’s high-tech industries. Infosys, for example, has been forced to broaden its recruiting efforts to 700 colleges, many of which are located in semirural areas where lower-caste individuals often live, in order to acquire the talented workers it requires. A decade ago, the high-tech firm could meet its hiring needs by recruiting at 50 Indian universities, most of which were located in urban areas.\textsuperscript{33}

---

In Practice

- Communication is critical to avoiding business misunderstandings, so accordingly linguistic ties often facilitate commerce between countries.
- Religion often shapes attitudes toward hard work, investment, fairness, payment of interest, and treatment of others.

*For further consideration:* How would you characterize the values of your home country’s culture?

---

**Seeing the Forest, Not the Trees**

The various elements of national culture affect the behavior and expectations of managers and employees in the workplace. International businesspeople, who face the challenge of managing and motivating employees with different cultural backgrounds, need to understand these cultural elements if they are to be effective managers. To a beginning student in international business, however, this discussion of the elements of culture can be confusing. Moreover, many students and businesspeople panic at the thought of memorizing a bunch of rules—“the French do this,” “the Saudis do that,” and so on. Fortunately, numerous scholars have tried to make sense of the various elements of culture. Their efforts make it easier for international managers to understand the big picture regarding a country’s culture and how it affects their ability to manage their firms. In this section, we present the work of several of these scholars.

**Hall’s Low-Context–High-Context Approach**

One useful way of characterizing differences in cultures is the low-context–high-context approach developed by Edward and Mildred Hall.\textsuperscript{34} In a low-context culture, the words used by the speaker explicitly convey the speaker’s message to the listener. Anglo-Saxon countries,
such as Canada, the United Kingdom, and the United States, and Germanic countries are good examples of low-context cultures (see Table 4.2). In a high-context culture, the context in which a conversation occurs is just as important as the words that are actually spoken, and cultural clues are important in understanding what is being communicated. Examples are Arab countries and Japan.

Business behaviors in high-context cultures often differ from those in low-context cultures. For example, German advertising is typically fact oriented, whereas Japanese advertising is often more emotion oriented. High-context cultures place higher value on interpersonal relations in deciding whether to enter into a business arrangement. In such cultures preliminary meetings are often held to determine whether the parties can trust each other and work together comfortably. Low-context cultures place more importance on the specific terms of a transaction. In low-context cultures such as Canada, the United Kingdom, and the United States, lawyers are often present at negotiations to ensure that their clients’ interests are protected. Conversely, in high-context cultures such as Saudi Arabia, Japan, and Egypt, the presence of a lawyer, particularly at the initial meeting of the participants, would be viewed as a sign of distrust. Because these cultures value long-term relationships, an assumption by a potential partner that one cannot be trusted may be sufficient grounds to end the negotiations. Table 4.3 provides additional information about differences in negotiating styles across cultures.

### The Cultural Cluster Approach

The cultural cluster approach is another technique for classifying and making sense of national cultures. Similarities exist among many cultures, thereby reducing some of the need to customize business practices to meet the demands of local cultures. Anthropologists, sociologists, and international business scholars have analyzed such factors as job satisfaction, work roles, and interpersonal work relations in an attempt to identify clusters of countries that share similar cultural values that can affect business practices. Map 4.4 shows ten country clusters, synthesized from the work of several teams of researchers. A cultural cluster comprises countries that share many cultural similarities, although differences do remain. Many clusters are based on language similarities, as is apparent in the Anglo, Germanic, Latin American, and Middle East (excepting Turkey) clusters and, to a lesser extent, in the Nordic and Latin European clusters. Of course, one can disagree with some placements of countries within clusters. Spain and the countries of Latin America share many culture values, for example.

Many international businesses instinctively use the cultural cluster approach in formulating their internationalization strategies. U.S. firms’ first exporting efforts often focus on Canada and the United Kingdom. Hong Kong and Taiwanese firms have been successful in exploiting China’s markets. Similarly, many Spanish firms have chosen to focus their international expansion efforts on Spanish-speaking areas in the Americas.

Closeness of culture may affect the form that firms use to enter foreign markets. Researchers have found, for example, that Canadian firms are more likely to enter the British market by establishing joint ventures with British firms, whereas Japanese firms are more likely to enter the British market via a greenfield investment, that is, a brand-new investment. The likely reason for the difference? Because of the relative closeness of their national cultures, Canadian firms are more comfortable working with British partners than are Japanese firms.

### Table 4.2 Examples of Low and High Context Cultures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low-Context Cultures</th>
<th>High-Context Cultures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swiss</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austrian</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scandinavian</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S./Canadian</td>
<td>Arab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a high-context culture, the context in which a conversation occurs is just as important as the words that are actually spoken, and cultural clues are important in understanding what is being communicated. Examples are Arab countries and Japan.

Business behaviors in high-context cultures often differ from those in low-context cultures. For example, German advertising is typically fact oriented, whereas Japanese advertising is often more emotion oriented. High-context cultures place higher value on interpersonal relations in deciding whether to enter into a business arrangement. In such cultures preliminary meetings are often held to determine whether the parties can trust each other and work together comfortably. Low-context cultures place more importance on the specific terms of a transaction. In low-context cultures such as Canada, the United Kingdom, and the United States, lawyers are often present at negotiations to ensure that their clients’ interests are protected. Conversely, in high-context cultures such as Saudi Arabia, Japan, and Egypt, the presence of a lawyer, particularly at the initial meeting of the participants, would be viewed as a sign of distrust. Because these cultures value long-term relationships, an assumption by a potential partner that one cannot be trusted may be sufficient grounds to end the negotiations. Table 4.3 provides additional information about differences in negotiating styles across cultures.

The cultural cluster approach is another technique for classifying and making sense of national cultures. Similarities exist among many cultures, thereby reducing some of the need to customize business practices to meet the demands of local cultures. Anthropologists, sociologists, and international business scholars have analyzed such factors as job satisfaction, work roles, and interpersonal work relations in an attempt to identify clusters of countries that share similar cultural values that can affect business practices. Map 4.4 shows ten country clusters, synthesized from the work of several teams of researchers. A cultural cluster comprises countries that share many cultural similarities, although differences do remain. Many clusters are based on language similarities, as is apparent in the Anglo, Germanic, Latin American, and Middle East (excepting Turkey) clusters and, to a lesser extent, in the Nordic and Latin European clusters. Of course, one can disagree with some placements of countries within clusters. Spain and the countries of Latin America share many culture values, for example.

Many international businesses instinctively use the cultural cluster approach in formulating their internationalization strategies. U.S. firms’ first exporting efforts often focus on Canada and the United Kingdom. Hong Kong and Taiwanese firms have been successful in exploiting China’s markets. Similarly, many Spanish firms have chosen to focus their international expansion efforts on Spanish-speaking areas in the Americas.

Closeness of culture may affect the form that firms use to enter foreign markets. Researchers have found, for example, that Canadian firms are more likely to enter the British market by establishing joint ventures with British firms, whereas Japanese firms are more likely to enter the British market via a greenfield investment, that is, a brand-new investment. The likely reason for the difference? Because of the relative closeness of their national cultures, Canadian firms are more comfortable working with British partners than are Japanese firms.
CHAPTER 4 • THE ROLE OF CULTURE

Hofstede’s Five Dimensions

The most influential studies analyzing cultural differences and synthesizing cultural similarities are those performed by Geert Hofstede, a Dutch researcher who studied 116,000 people working for IBM in dozens of different countries. Although Hofstede’s work has been criticized for methodological weaknesses and his own cultural biases, it remains the largest and most comprehensive work of its kind. Hofstede’s work identified five important dimensions along which people seem to differ across cultures. These dimensions are shown in Figure 4.2. Note that these dimensions reflect tendencies within cultures, not absolutes. Within any given culture, there are likely to be people at every point on each dimension. Moreover, cultures can change over time, albeit usually slowly.38

Social Orientation

The first dimension identified by Hofstede is social orientation.39 Social orientation is a person’s beliefs about the relative importance of the individual and the groups to which that person belongs. The two extremes of social orientation, summarized in Table 4.4, are individualism and collectivism. Individualism is the cultural belief that the person comes first. Key values of individualistic people include a high degree of self-respect and independence. These people often put their own career interests before the good of their organizations, and they

### TABLE 4.3 Differences in Negotiating Styles across Cultures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>North American</th>
<th>Latin American</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hiding of emotions.</td>
<td>Dealing straightforwardly or impersonally.</td>
<td>Emotionally passionate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtle power plays; conciliation.</td>
<td>Litigation not as much as conciliation.</td>
<td>Great power plays; use of weakness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loyalty to employer. Employer takes care of its employees.</td>
<td>Lack of commitment to employer. Breaking of ties by either if necessary.</td>
<td>Loyalty to employer (who is often family).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group decision-making consensus.</td>
<td>Teamwork provides input to a decision maker.</td>
<td>Decisions come down from one individual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face-saving crucial. Decisions often made on basis of saving someone from embarrassment.</td>
<td>Decisions made on a cost-benefit basis. Face-saving does not always matter.</td>
<td>Face-saving crucial in decision making to preserve honor, dignity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision makers openly influenced by special interests.</td>
<td>Decision makers influenced by special interests but often this is not considered ethical.</td>
<td>Execution of special interests of decision maker expected, conditioned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not argumentative. Quiet when right.</td>
<td>Argumentative when right or wrong, but impersonal.</td>
<td>Argumentative when right or wrong; passionate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is down in writing must be accurate, valid.</td>
<td>Great importance given to documentation as evidential proof.</td>
<td>Impatient with documentation as obstacle to understanding general principles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step-by-step approach to decision making.</td>
<td>Methodically organized decision making.</td>
<td>Impulsive, spontaneous decision making.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good of group is the ultimate aim.</td>
<td>Profit motive or good of individual ultimate aim.</td>
<td>What is good for the group is good for the individual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultivate a good emotional social setting for decision making. Get to know decision makers.</td>
<td>Decision making impersonal. Avoid involvements, conflicts of interest.</td>
<td>Personalism necessary for good decision making.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Pierre Casse, Training for the Multicultural Manager: A Practical and Cross-Cultural Approach to the Management of People. Sietar International © 1982. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.
MAP 4.4
A Synthesis of Country Clusters

tend to assess decisions in terms of how those decisions affect them as individuals. Hofstede’s research suggested that people in the United States, the United Kingdom, Australia, Canada, New Zealand, and the Netherlands tend to be relatively individualistic. Collectivism, the opposite of individualism, is the belief that the group comes first. Societies that tend to be collectivistic are usually characterized by well-defined social networks, including extended families, tribes, and coworkers. People are expected to put the good of the group ahead of their own personal welfare, interests, or success. Individual behavior in such cultures is strongly influenced by the emotion of shame; when a group fails, its members take the failure personally and experience shame. In addition, group members try to fit into their group harmoniously, with a minimum of conflict or tension. Hofstede found that people from Mexico, Greece, Hong Kong, Taiwan, Peru, Singapore, Colombia, and Pakistan tend to be relatively collectivistic in their values.

International firms must be aware of differences in the social orientations of countries. Nepotism is often frowned on in individualistic cultures but may be a normal hiring practice in collectivistic cultures. In countries such as the United States, where individualism is a cultural norm, many workers believe they should be compensated according to their individual achievements. They judge the fairness of any compensation system by whether it achieves this objective. U.S. firms thus spend much time and resources assessing individual performance to link pay and performance. A firm that fails to do this will likely lose its more productive employees to firms that do. Conversely, in a group-oriented culture like Japan, a person’s compensation reflects the group to which he or she belongs, not personal achievements. Although some Japanese corporations have begun to abandon their group-oriented approaches in favor of more merit-oriented ones, individual-oriented approaches remain the exception, not the rule.
These cultural differences help to explain the widely publicized differences in chief executive officer (CEO) pay between the United States and Japan. In group-oriented Japan the CEO’s pay symbolically reflects the performance of the group. In the United States the CEO’s pay is presumed to measure the CEO’s contribution to the firm. Even the way the issue is framed reflects the cultural values of the United States: The question “How can President Smith of the XYZ Corporation be worth $10 million?” implicitly assumes that the CEO’s pay should measure his or her individual contribution to the organization.

A similar pattern characterizes the career progression and job mobility of employees. In individualistic societies a person’s career path often involves switching employers in search of higher-paying and more challenging jobs so that the person can prove his or her capabilities in new and changing circumstances. Indeed, in the United States a person’s failure to accept a better-paying job at another firm raises suspicions about the person’s ambition, motivation, and dedication to his or her career. However, in collectivistic cultures, such as Japan, changing jobs is often interpreted as reflecting disloyalty to the collective good (the firm) and may brand the person as unworthy of trust.40 Because of this stigma, job switchers traditionally have had difficulties finding appropriate jobs in other Japanese companies. Although this norm is changing because of the economic stresses Japan has undergone in the past two decades, job mobility is much lower in Japan than in the United States.

### Power Orientation

The second dimension Hofstede proposed is power orientation. **Power orientation** refers to the beliefs that people in a culture hold about the appropriateness of power and authority differences in hierarchies such as business organizations. The extremes of the dimension of power orientation are summarized in Table 4.5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Collectivism</th>
<th>Individualism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Children learn to think in terms of we; use of the word I is avoided</td>
<td>Children learn to think in terms of I; use of the word I is encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interdependent self</td>
<td>Independent self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education focuses on learning how to do</td>
<td>Education focuses on learning how to learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employer–employee relationship essentially moral, like a family relationship</td>
<td>Employer–employee relationship is a contract in the labor market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value standards differ for in-groups and out-groups: exclusionism</td>
<td>Same values apply to everyone: universalism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harmony should be maintained; avoid confrontation</td>
<td>An honest person speaks one’s mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship prevails over task</td>
<td>Task prevails over relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-context communication prevails</td>
<td>Low-context communication prevails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social network is primary source of information</td>
<td>Media is primary source of information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

They are willing to follow a leader when that leader is perceived to be right or when it seems to be in their own self-interest to do so but not because of the leader’s intangible right to issue orders. Hofstede’s work suggested that people in the United States, Israel, Austria, Denmark, Ireland, Norway, Germany, and New Zealand tend to be more power tolerant.

Persons from power-tolerant cultures believe that hierarchies exist to solve problems and organize tasks within organizations. Power-respecting business cultures, such as those in Indonesia and Malaysia, assume that hierarchies are developed so that everyone knows who has authority over whom. In approaching a new project, power-tolerating Americans would first define the tasks at hand and then assemble the project team. Conversely, power-respecting Indonesians would first determine who would be in charge and then assess whether the project would be feasible under that manager’s leadership. Such attitudes obviously have important consequences for international businesses. As “E-World” noted previously in this chapter, a power-tolerant culture may be more suited to the needs of Internet start-ups than a power-respecting one.

These cultural differences regarding the role of hierarchies were highlighted in a survey that asked international managers to respond to the following statement: “In order to have efficient work relationships, it is often necessary to bypass the hierarchical line.” Swedish, British, and U.S. managers agreed with the statement. They believe that superiors do not necessarily have all the information subordinates need to make decisions and that it is efficient for a subordinate to seek out the person who has the relevant information regardless of the firm’s formal hierarchy. Italian managers, on the other hand, disagreed: Bypassing a superior is a sign of insubordination, not efficiency, in the Italian business culture.41

Differing cultural attitudes toward power orientation can lead to misunderstandings in business. For example, when firms are negotiating with each other, a firm from a power-tolerant country will often send a team composed of experts on the subject, without concern for rank or seniority. However, a team composed of junior employees, no matter how knowledgeable they are about the problem at hand, may be taken as an insult by managers from a power-respecting culture, who expect to deal with persons of rank equal to their own. Also, the use of informalities by U.S. managers—for example, calling a counterpart by that person’s first name—may be misinterpreted by managers from power-respecting cultures as an insulting attempt to diminish another’s authority. Similarly, the willingness of U.S. managers to roll up their sleeves and pitch in on the factory floor during an emergency is likely to win praise from U.S. production workers. Conversely, Indian managers would find performing such menial tasks beneath their dignity. Worse, managers so lacking in self-respect would be deemed unworthy of respect or obedience from their peers and subordinates.42

At other times such cultural norms may lead to tragedy. During the late 1990s, for example, Korean Airlines (KAL) suffered an abnormally high number of fatal accidents. Some aviation safety experts attributed the problem to the power-respecting norms of Korean culture.
Behavioral scientists found that KAL first officers (the second-in-command pilots) were often unwilling to suggest to their captains that the captain might be making a mistake even if the mistake was putting the aircraft in danger. KAL’s reliance on ex-military pilots exacerbated the problem because military pilots have been trained to obey the orders issued by the chain of command. To remedy this problem, KAL changed its cockpit recruitment strategies, focusing on hiring foreign pilots and nonmilitary pilots who would be more likely to question the captain in case of emergency. It also altered its training strategies for pilots and first officers, forcing them to work as a team.43

We can gain additional perspectives on Hofstede’s dimensions by viewing them in combinations. For example, when social orientation and power orientation are superimposed, individualistic and power-tolerant countries seem to cluster, as do collectivistic and power-respecting countries (see Figure 4.3).

FIGURE 4.3
Power Distance Versus Individualism
Uncertainty Orientation

The third basic dimension of cultural differences Hofstede studied is uncertainty orientation. **Uncertainty orientation** is the feeling people have regarding uncertain and ambiguous situations. The extremes of this dimension are summarized in Table 4.6.

People in cultures characterized by **uncertainty acceptance** are stimulated by change and thrive on new opportunities. Ambiguity is seen as a context within which an individual can grow, develop, and carve out new opportunities. In these cultures certainty carries with it a sense of monotony, routineness, and overbearing structure. Hofstede suggested that many people from the United States, Denmark, Sweden, Canada, Singapore, Hong Kong, and Australia are uncertainty accepting.

In contrast, people in cultures characterized by **uncertainty avoidance** dislike ambiguity and will avoid it whenever possible. Ambiguity and change are seen as undesirable. These people tend to prefer a structured and routine, even bureaucratic, way of doing things. Hofstede found that many people in Austria, Japan, Italy, Colombia, France, Peru, and Belgium tend to avoid uncertainty whenever possible.

Uncertainty orientation affects many aspects of managing international firms. Those operating in uncertainty-avoiding countries, for example, tend to adopt more rigid hierarchies and more elaborate rules and procedures for doing business. Conversely, uncertainty-accepting cultures are more tolerant of flexible hierarchies, rules, and procedures. Risk taking (“nothing ventured, nothing gained”) is highly valued in uncertainty-accepting cultures such as that of the United States and Hong Kong, whereas preserving the status and prestige of the firm through conservative, low-risk strategies is more important in uncertainty-avoiding countries such as Spain, Belgium, and Argentina. Not surprisingly, uncertainty-accepting cultures may be more attuned with the needs of the new e-commerce economy than uncertainty-avoiding ones. And recent research suggests that firms operating in uncertainty-avoiding cultures, such as France or Germany, tend to rely on banks to raise capital, whereas firms in uncertainty-accepting cultures are more likely to rely on the stock market.44

The second-guessing that followed the 1998 crash of Swissair 111 off the coast of Nova Scotia provides a dramatic example of how uncertainty orientation influences business practices. Smoke suddenly filled the cabin of the plane as it was en route from New York to Geneva. The Swissair pilot swung the troubled aircraft out to sea to dump excess fuel before landing. Unfortunately, the plane plunged into the sea before it could reach safety. A controversy broke out over whether the pilot’s decision to circle and dump fuel before landing was correct. Some U.S. airline pilots interviewed by the media suggested that the pilot should have landed the plane as soon as possible once smoke was detected. Swissair officials defended their pilot, noting that the captain followed Swissair’s emergency procedures published in the carrier’s operating manual.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>TABLE 4.6 Extremes of Uncertainty Orientation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Uncertainty Acceptance</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comfortable with ambiguous situations and with unfamiliar risks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolerance for ambiguity and chaos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students prefer open-ended learning situations and are concerned with good discussions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers may say, “I don’t know”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers involve parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is different is curious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There should be no more rules than strictly necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top managers are concerned with strategy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The U.S. pilots retorted that in such emergencies pilots should exercise their independent judgment, regardless of what is contained in the company manual. Swissair officials countered that the procedures detailed in the manual reflected the state-of-the-art understanding of what to do in an emergency, and thus its pilots did the right thing in adhering to the manual. The “rules are there to be obeyed” viewpoint of Swissair’s officials reflects their country’s uncertainty-avoiding culture, whereas the “rules are made to be broken” attitude of U.S. pilots reflects the uncertainty-accepting norms of the United States.

It is interesting to consider uncertainty orientation along with the social orientation dimension. Job mobility is likely to be higher in uncertainty-accepting countries than in those characterized by uncertainty avoidance. Some Japanese firms have traditionally used lifetime employment practices partly in response to the uncertainty-avoiding and collectivistic tendencies of the Japanese culture. Because of the lifetime employment relationship, Japanese firms take considerable care in selecting employees and force job applicants to undergo rigorous testing and interviewing before being hired. Once hired, employees recognize that their jobs depend on the long-term survival of their employer and that their jobs are secure as long as the firm is secure.

However, lifetime employment—as well as the seniority-based pay and promotion policies traditionally used by Japanese firms—may not be an effective policy when transplanted to individualistic and uncertainty-accepting countries. For example, Japanese firms operating in uncertainty-accepting Canada and the United States have been forced to modify their pay and promotion policies because North American workers are more oriented toward an individualistic “pay me what I’m worth” attitude and are less worried about job security than are their counterparts in Japan.

Goal Orientation

Hofstede’s fourth dimension, goal orientation, is the manner in which people are motivated to work toward different kinds of goals. One extreme on the goal orientation continuum is aggressive goal behavior (see Table 4.7). People who exhibit aggressive goal behavior tend to place a high premium on material possessions, money, and assertiveness. At the other extreme, people who adopt passive goal behavior place a higher value on social relationships, quality of life, and concern for others.

According to Hofstede, cultures that value aggressive goal behavior also tend to define gender-based roles somewhat rigidly, whereas cultures that emphasize passive goal behavior do not. In cultures characterized by extremely aggressive goal behavior, men are expected to work and to focus their careers in traditionally male occupations; women are generally expected not to work outside the home and to focus on their families. If they do work outside the home, they are usually expected to pursue work in areas traditionally dominated by women. According to Hofstede’s research, many people in Japan tend to exhibit relatively aggressive goal behavior.

### TABLE 4.7 Extremes of Goal Orientation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive Goal Behavior</th>
<th>Aggressive Goal Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationships and quality of life are important</td>
<td>Challenge, earnings, recognition, and advancement are important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average student is the norm; praise for weak students</td>
<td>Best student is the norm; praise for excellent students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failing in school is a minor incident</td>
<td>Failing in school is a disaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job choice is based on intrinsic interest</td>
<td>Job choice is based on career opportunities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution of conflict through compromise and negotiation</td>
<td>Resolution of conflict by letting the strongest win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rewards based on equality</td>
<td>Rewards based on equity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People work to live</td>
<td>People live to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leisure time is preferred over money</td>
<td>Money is preferred over leisure time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

whereas many people in Germany, Mexico, Italy, and the United States exhibit moderately aggressive goal behavior. Men and women in passive goal behavior cultures are more likely both to pursue diverse careers and to be well represented within any given occupation. People from the Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and Finland tend to exhibit relatively passive goal behavior. Norway, for example, was the first country to mandate that at least 40 percent of corporate board directors be female. A minimum of 60 days of the 480 days of paid parental leave provided by Swedish law is reserved for the father; an estimated 85 percent of Swedish fathers take advantage of the paid leave. The program is credited with boosting women’s wages and reducing the country’s divorce rate.

These cultural attitudes affect international business practices in many ways. One study showed that decisions made by Danish managers (a passive goal behavior culture) incorporate societal concerns to a greater extent than decisions made by more profit-oriented U.S., British, and German executives (from more aggressive goal behavior cultures). Similarly, studies of the Swedish workforce indicate that the country’s egalitarian traditions, as well as workers’ desires to maintain comfortable work schedules, often make promotions less desirable than in other countries. Many Swedish workers prefer more fringe benefits rather than higher salaries.

Or consider the impact of the role of women in business. In Sweden the high proportion of dual-career families makes it difficult for many workers to accept a promotion if it entails moving. Not surprisingly, Swedish firms are among the world’s leaders in providing fringe benefits such as maternity and paternity leave and company-sponsored child care.

**Time Orientation**

Hofstede’s fifth dimension, time orientation, is the extent to which members of a culture adopt a long-term versus a short-term outlook on work, life, and other aspects of society. Some cultures, such as those of Japan, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and South Korea, have a long-term, future orientation that values dedication, hard work, perseverance, and thrift. Other cultures, including those of Pakistan, Nigeria, and the Philippines, tend to focus on the past and present, emphasizing respect for traditions and fulfillment of social obligations. Hofstede’s work suggests that the United States and Germany tend to have an intermediate time orientation.

**In Practice**

- In low-context cultures, addressing the task at hand is more important than building a relationship; in high-context cultures, the reverse is true.
- Hofstede’s framework identifies five important dimensions that distinguish one national culture from another.

*For further consideration:* How would you evaluate yourself on each of Hofstede’s dimensions?

**International Management and Cultural Differences**

Some experts believe the world’s cultures are growing more similar as a result of improvements in communication and transportation. Thanks to MTV and CNN, teenagers worldwide have been able to enjoy the wit and wisdom of JWoww, Snooki, and Pauly D, and their parents can learn about politics, scandals, disasters, and culture in other countries. Lower airfares generated by increased airline competition mean that more tourists can learn about other cultures firsthand. MNCs facilitate this process of cultural convergence, for better or worse, through their advertisements that define appropriate lifestyles, attitudes, and goals and by bringing new management techniques, technologies, and cultural values to the countries in which they operate.

**Understanding New Cultures**

Nonetheless, cultural differences do exist. When dealing with a new culture, many international businesspeople make the mistake of relying on the self-reference criterion, the unconscious use of one’s own culture to help assess new surroundings. A U.S. salesperson
who calls on a German customer in Frankfurt and asks about the customer’s family is acting politely according to U.S. culture—the salesperson’s reference point—but rudely according to German culture, thereby generating ill will and the potential loss of a customer. In behaving as is usual in the United States, the salesperson forgot the answer to a critical question: “Who is the foreigner?”

To be successful, international businesspeople traveling abroad must remember that they are the foreigners and must attempt to behave according to the rules of the culture at hand. There are numerous ways to obtain knowledge about other cultures to achieve cross-cultural literacy. The best and most common way, not surprisingly, is through personal experience that results from conducting business abroad—as part of either a business trip or a long-term assignment—or from nonbusiness travel. Many firms offer cross-cultural training programs to their employees headed for foreign assignments. Information about specific cultures can also be obtained from various published sources. For example, ProQuest provides a series of highly regarded Culturegrams on more than 200 countries, and the U.S. government publishes detailed descriptions and analyses of the economies, political systems, natural resources, and cultures of the world’s countries in a series of volumes called Country Studies.

Cross-cultural literacy is the first step in acculturation, the process by which people not only understand a foreign culture but also modify and adapt their behavior to make it compatible with that culture. Acculturation is of particular importance to home country managers who frequently interact with host country nationals—for example, a plant manager from the home country or a marketing director working overseas at a foreign subsidiary. “Venturing Abroad” discusses how McDonald’s obtains the local knowledge it needs to compete in each of the countries in which it operates.

To complicate matters further, many countries have more than one culture, although the level of such cultural diversity varies by country. Japan, with a population consisting of 99.4 percent ethnic Japanese, is extremely homogeneous. Conversely, the United States is culturally heterogeneous, with significant Caribbean, Latin American, Middle Eastern, Hispanic, African, and Asian communities complementing the dominant Anglo-Saxon culture. Successful international businesspeople must recognize the attributes of the primary national culture as well as any important subcultures in culturally heterogeneous societies.

VENTURING ABROAD

MCDONALD’S FITS IN

McDonald’s is one of the world’s most successful purveyors of fast food, with more than 34,000 restaurants in 119 countries. A key element of McDonald’s global success rests on its use of franchising. Originally McDonald’s relied on franchising to help its rapid domestic expansion—franchisers supplied much of the capital needed to roll out new stores. But franchisers also supplied a key ingredient to McDonald’s success—local knowledge. Corporate executives back in Oak Brook, Illinois, would find it difficult to learn whether local families would flock to McDonald’s before—or maybe after—the local Christmas parade or high-school football game. But the franchisee would know such details and could add staff and lay in additional supplies whenever an influx of customers was expected.

Franchising has also been critical to McDonald’s international success. Although McDonald’s has standardized its logos, branding, and commitment to quality, it encourages its franchisees to customize their product offerings to meet the local culture. In Japan, customers can purchase shrimp burgers and wash them down with Green Tea milkshakes. Instead of a sesame-seed bun, in Greece your burger can be wrapped in pita bread, whereas in Hong Kong it is available enveloped in rice cake patties, and in Northern Africa the McArabia is served on flatbread. Although you cannot get a Big Mac in India, you can get a Maharaja Mac (made of chicken) or a veggie burger. In Moslem countries, McDonald’s has taken pork off its menu to comply with the precepts of Islam. The company is also planning to open vegetarian-only outlets in India. No Big Macs will be sold, but plenty of McAloo Tikki burgers will be. These spicy potato-patty treats account for a quarter of McDonald’s sales in India. These simple adjustments are part of McDonald’s strategy of responding to the needs of the local culture.

A common mistake international business practitioners often make is to approach a new culture by assuming it is the same as their home culture. Fortunately, numerous sources can provide the information and training practitioners need to acculturate themselves to a new culture.

For further consideration: Have you ever relied on the self-reference criterion when dealing with a classmate or work colleague from another country? If so, did it create any problems?

In Practice

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

Understanding cultural differences is critical to the success of firms engaging in international business. A society’s culture affects the political, economic, social, and ethical rules a firm must follow in its business dealings within that society.

A society’s culture reflects its values, beliefs, behaviors, customs, and attitudes. Culture is learned behavior that is transmitted from one member of a society to another. The elements of culture are interrelated and reinforce each other. These elements are adaptive, changing as outside forces influence the society. Culture not only is shared by the society’s members but also defines the society’s membership.

A society’s culture comprises numerous elements. The social structure reflects the culture’s beliefs about the individual’s role in society and the importance of mobility within that society. Language is another important cultural element because it allows members of the society to communicate with each other. Approximately 84 percent of the world’s population claims some religious affiliation. Religion influences attitudes toward work, investment, consumption, and responsibility for one’s behavior. Religion may also influence the formulation of a country’s laws.

A society’s culture reflects and shapes its values and attitudes, including those toward time, age, status, and education. These affect business operations in numerous ways, such as in hiring practices, job turnover, and the design of compensation programs.

Researchers have grouped countries according to common cultural characteristics. Hall and Hall developed the low-context–high-context classification scheme, which focuses on the importance of context within a culture. To some extent, the existence of cultural clusters eases the difficulties of doing business internationally. Researchers have discovered that many countries share similar attitudes toward work roles, job satisfaction, and other work-related aspects of life. Often countries within a cultural cluster share a common language.

The pioneering research of Geert Hofstede has identified five basic cultural dimensions along which people may differ: social orientation, power orientation, uncertainty orientation, goal orientation, and time orientation. These differences affect business behavior in numerous ways and often lead to cross-cultural misunderstandings.

Review Questions

4-1. Briefly describe culture and its main elements.
4-2. What are the primary characteristics of culture?
4-3. List the major approaches to the study of culture, and use examples to illustrate their relevance in international marketing.
4-4. What are cultural clusters?
4-5. What are individualism and collectivism? How do they differ?
4-6. Discuss the differences in pay systems between U.S. and Japanese firms. To what extent are these differences culturally determined?
4-7. What is power orientation?
4-8. What is uncertainty orientation?
4-9. What are aggressive and passive goal behaviors? How do they differ?
4-10. What is the self-reference criterion?
Questions for Discussion

4-11. How can international businesspeople avoid relying on the self-reference criterion when dealing with people from other cultures?

4-12. U.S. law protects women from job discrimination, but many countries do not offer women such protection. Suppose several important job opportunities arise at overseas factories owned by your firm. These factories, however, are located in countries that severely restrict the working rights of women, and you fear that female managers will be ineffective there. Should you adopt gender-blind selection policies for these positions? Does it make a difference if you have good reason to fear for the physical safety of your female managers? Does it make a difference if the restrictions are cultural rather than legal in nature?

4-13. Under what circumstances should international businesspeople impose the values of their culture on foreigners with whom they do business? Does it make a difference if the activity is conducted in the home or the host country?

4-14. As International Business (IB) Manager of ABC Inc., your team is considering investing in a foreign country. List the attractiveness of top 25 countries in terms of FDI and your strategy. (Hint: Refer to the FDI Confidence Index to generate this report.)

Building Global Skills

This exercise will help give you insights into how cultural and social factors affect international business decisions. Your instructor will divide the class into groups of four or five people. Each group then picks any three products from the first column of the following list and any three countries from the second column. (Your instructor may instead assign each group three products and three countries.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Countries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>swimsuits</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD players</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desks and bookcases</td>
<td>Poland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>men’s neckties</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>women’s purses</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throat lozenges</td>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digital cameras</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assume that your firm already markets its three products in your home country. It has a well-known trademark and slogan for each product, and each product is among the market leaders. Assume further that your firm has decided to begin exporting each product to each of the three countries. Research the cultures of those three countries to determine how, if at all, you may need to adjust packaging, promotion, advertising, and so forth to maximize your firm’s potential for success. Do not worry too much about whether a market truly exists (assume that market research has already determined that one does). Focus instead on how your product will be received in each country given that country’s culture.

4-15. What were your primary sources of information about the three countries? How easy or difficult was it to find information?

4-16. Why are the following products popular in the global market? Do they relate to the culture of the countries they represent?
   1. Japanese Cars
   2. Malaysian Rubber
   3. Indian Cinema
   4. Kenyan Tea

4-17. Create a group on cultural dimension in class based on nationality, age, education and occupation. Discuss the effects of culture on businesses.

CLOSING CASE Quacking Up a Storm of Business

Fifteen years ago, most Americans had never heard of AFLAC, a $26-billion insurance company based in Columbus, Georgia. Thanks to AFLAC’s mascot, this is no longer the case. The company’s attention-grabbing advertising campaign, which began in 2000, features a helpful but frustrated duck that fails to get people to acknowledge his presence or the company’s name. Nonetheless, the duck’s efforts appear to be paying off. According to advertising surveys, 94 percent of Americans are now aware of the AFLAC brand; more importantly, policies in force have risen more than 50 percent and annual premiums have more than doubled since the duck commercials began in the United States. And the AFLAC duck has done more than simply increase the company’s American sales. AFLAC now sells the duck on its website and donates the proceeds to a children’s cancer center in Atlanta. During the Christmas season, AFLAC teams up with a major department store chain to sell special-edition AFLAC holiday ducks. To date, $3 million has been donated to 40 children’s hospitals around the country from their sale.
Despite the duck’s efforts, AFLAC is still a small player in the U.S. market. Its $5.6 billion of revenue in the United States is dwarfed by such insurers as AIG, Prudential, or MetLife. Such is not the case in Japan, where an estimated 25 percent of the populace has purchased AFLAC insurance. AFLAC does more than 75 percent of its business in Japan. Its assets in Japan are huge—$114 billion—compared to only $17 billion in the United States. Thus, AFLAC is a rarity among U.S. multinational corporations—its dominant market is Japan, not the United States.

AFLAC specializes in supplemental insurance—insurance that covers specific types of problems, such as cancer, disability, or accidents. The company was founded on a shoestring in 1955 as the American Family Life Assurance Company. The three founding brothers—Paul, Bill, and John Amos—scraped together $40,000 to launch the enterprise. In its early years the company struggled through many crises; once the Amos brothers were so short of cash they had to sell off the office furniture.

AFLAC’s big break came when John visited the Osaka World’s Fair in 1970. He noticed that many Japanese walked around in surgical masks to reduce the spread of respiratory infections. Amos believed that such health-conscious consumers would be prime candidates for supplemental insurance. Entering the Japanese market was no picnic, however. It took AFLAC four years to receive regulatory clearance to begin marketing its products there.

AFLAC initially focused on selling cancer life insurance in Japan. As its knowledge of the market grew, it added accident, nursing care, medical, and other specialty policies to its product line. It has enjoyed continual growth in the years it has operated in Japan. AFLAC’s competitive strength lies in its distribution network. Its products are sold by an army of licensed sales associates, some 125,000 strong, working through 18,400 independent insurance agencies. Ninety-one percent of the companies listed on the Tokyo Stock Exchange offer AFLAC products to their employees through payroll deduction programs.

AFLAC strives to deliver high-quality service to its customers. In 2010, the average claim was settled by AFLAC in four business days. The company has also adapted its operating procedures to the needs of the local market. Consider its human resource practices. When the company first ventured into Japan, it copied the lifetime employment and seniority-based pay and promotion policies then current in Japan. In the past several years, some Japanese companies have switched to job-based reward systems, in which salaries are based on the skill requirements and difficulties of the job. So too has AFLAC.

AFLAC has added some “made in U.S.A.” features to its Japanese operations. Nearly half of its Japanese employees have been granted stock options, reinforcing their commitment to the company’s future. It has funded AFLAC Parents’ House in Tokyo, providing a place to stay for families whose children have been sent to Tokyo to receive medical treatment for pediatric cancer and other life-threatening diseases. AFLAC also funds college scholarships for Japanese high school students who have lost a parent to cancer.

AFLAC is the largest provider of supplemental insurance in Japan. Its Japanese revenues reached $20 billion in 2012. Given the graying of the Japanese market—older folks tend to buy more insurance—the high profit margins of its product line, and an overburdened Japanese healthcare system that is shifting costs to consumers, AFLAC believes that the profitability of its Japanese operations will continue to grow.

AFLAC does face numerous challenges, of course. For many years it benefited from the Japanese government’s restrictive regulation of the country’s financial services sector, which discouraged competition and price-cutting. To combat Japan’s decade-long economic slump, the government relaxed its regulation of financial services, a process known as the Regulatory Big Bang. In 2001, the Ministry of Finance allowed additional firms to begin selling supplemental insurance, including domestic giants like Tokio Marine & Fire and Nippon Life. To date, the increased competition has not dethroned AFLAC from its market-leading perch. Its operating costs are less than those of its rivals. To maintain this edge, AFLAC has streamlined its operations, allowing sales agents to submit policy applications online and introducing new online billing techniques. To bolster its sales position, AFLAC stepped up its recruitment and training of sales agents and developed new products for them to sell. It entered into a strategic alliance with Dai-ichi Mutual Life, the second-largest life insurance company in Japan. Dai-ichi Mutual’s 50,000-person sales force helps market AFLAC’s supplemental policies to retail customers. In addition, AFLAC products are available at 372 Japanese banks and at 1,000 branches of Japan Post.

In 2001, AFLAC took another bold step—it brought the duck to Japan! The Japanese translation for “quack” is ga-ga, and Japanese consumers proved to be as “gaga” for the duck as Americans were. Surveys of Japanese consumers report that TV commercials featuring the AFLAC duck consistently rank first or second in popularity in the insurance category. In 2009, AFLAC tinkered with the duck’s design, blending it with the traditional maneki neko cat (the ceramic figurine of a cat with a raised paw) to create the maneki neko duck, which AFLAC now features in many of its advertisements for family-oriented insurance products. In other commercials, the familiar duck cavorts with a live-action version of the maneki neko cat. (You can see a sample of its Japanese ads by entering "AFLAC Japanese commercials" in YouTube’s search box. You will observe that they are more gentle and less “in your face” than the company’s U.S. commercials.)
One of the most influential schemes for analyzing cultural differences among countries was developed by the Dutch researcher Geert Hofstede. Discuss the various dimensions of culture that Hofstede developed. What are the anchor points of these dimensions? Where appropriate, give examples of how Hofstede’s analysis provides insights into differences in basic business behaviors like leadership, reward systems, job stability, decision-making, etc.

4-21. AFLAC is a rarity among U.S. companies inasmuch as the Japanese market accounts for more than 75 percent of its business. Does this reliance on the Japanese market create any special challenges for AFLAC? Does it present any unique opportunities for the company?


**MyManagementLab®**

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

4-22. Explain the high context-low context approach developed by Edward and Mildred Hall. What are the primary differences observed in business settings between high context and low context cultures?

4-23. One of the most influential schemes for analyzing cultural differences among countries was developed by the Dutch researcher Geert Hofstede. Discuss the various dimensions of culture that Hofstede developed. What are the anchor points of these dimensions? Where appropriate, give examples of how Hofstede’s analysis provides insights into differences in basic business behaviors like leadership, reward systems, job stability, decision-making, etc.

4-24. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

**Endnotes**


37. We have taken the liberty of changing some of the labels Hofstede applied to each of the dimensions. The terms we have chosen are more descriptive, simpler, and more self-evident in their meaning.
CHAPTER 5

Ethics and Social Responsibility in International Business

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:
1. Describe the nature of ethics.
2. Discuss ethics in cross-cultural and international contexts.
3. Identify the key elements in managing ethical behavior across borders.
4. Discuss social responsibility in cross-cultural and international contexts.
5. Identify and summarize the basic areas of social responsibility.
6. Discuss how organizations manage social responsibility across borders.
7. Identify and summarize the key regulations governing international ethics and social responsibility.

MyManagementLab®

 Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
FOXCONN: MANAGING 1.5 MILLION EMPLOYEES

Few consumers have ever heard of Foxconn Technology Group. Even fewer know the name of its parent organization, Taiwan’s Hon Hai Precision Industry Co. Yet Hon Hai is the world’s largest contract manufacturer of electronics goods, with 2012 sales of $109 billion. As a contract manufacturer, Foxconn fabricates and assembles products for other companies. Although Apple is its largest client, Foxconn’s customers constitute a who’s who of the industry: Sony, Toshiba, Hewlett-Packard, Dell, and Cisco, to name but a few. Foxconn assembly facilities are found in India, Mexico, Brazil, the Czech Republic, Hungary, Slovakia, and, most importantly, China, where the vast majority of Hon Hai’s 1.5 million employees toil. Foxconn’s operations in China are huge; for instance, its 2.5-square kilometer Longhua campus in Shenzhen employs an estimated 240,000 workers. As Chapter 8’s closing case discusses, wages in coastal China have skyrocketed, so Foxconn’s newest factories are in inland locations like Zhengzhou and Chengdu.

So important is Foxconn to the health of the Chinese and world economies that analysts often scrutinize Hon Hai’s financial statements for signals about future market trends. For example, after the Chinese Lunar New Year in 2013, Foxconn announced it would freeze its hiring in China because more workers returned to their jobs than normal. Analysts worriedly questioned whether this meant the Chinese economy was slowing down (job-hopping would decline in a poor job market), or did it portend weak iPhone 5 sales?

Workers can live in company-owned dormitories, eight workers to a room, and eat at company-sponsored canteens. The company provides a learning center at its larger factory complexes, allowing workers to improve their job skills and even earn a junior college or bachelor’s degree. An estimated 10 percent of the work force participates in such programs.

Foxconn has drawn much adverse publicity because of working conditions in its factories. Workers toiled long hours: 60-hour work weeks were common. Foxconn also bore much caustic criticism for its temporary solution to a rash of suicides that plagued the company in 2009: it installed safety nets outside its factories. Its longer-term response was more reasonable. Foxconn raised wages, improved safety standards, agreed to limit overtime, and encouraged audits by the Fair Labor Association. After receiving audit results in March 2012, Foxconn promised to improve its health, safety, and overtime standards. Regardless of the complaints leveled against Foxconn, most observers agree that the company is one of the better electronics companies to work for in China.

Workers are not necessarily supportive of all these changes. Perhaps most troublesome to Foxconn’s workforce is the company’s renewed commitment to obeying a near universally ignored Chinese law limiting employees to 9 hours a week of overtime. Interviews conducted by Western journalists with Foxconn workers surfaced their concerns that cuts in overtime will reduce their earning potential: these workers want more overtime, not less! They journeyed to coastal China from their rural villages to make and save money. Foxconn’s commitment to restricting overtime thus frustrates their objectives, and makes it more likely they will job-hop to nearby factories less sensitive to adverse press. Foxconn estimates the changes will raise its labor costs by $1.4 billion a year, without any signals from Apple or its other clients that they are willing to pay a higher price for Foxconn-manufactured goods.1

Globalization offers businesses, employers, and entrepreneurs myriad opportunities to seek new markets, broaden their product lines, and lower their cost of production, as Foxconn’s rapid growth and sprawling factory complexes bear witness. And the introduction of new products and new ways of doing business can bring major improvements into the lives of the world’s poorest people. But globalization also presents international businesses with new challenges, such as the need to define appropriate ethical standards and to operate in a socially responsible manner in all the markets and countries in which the firm does business.

One important issue is the firm’s responsibility to provide a safe working environment for its employees and diligent protection of the natural environment. Another issue is the appropriate response to the cost pressures that firms face as a result of globalization. It has long been common for firms to move production and low-skill jobs from their home country to other countries, often to capitalize on lower labor costs. But these practices sometimes result in unfavorable publicity and may even expose fundamental issues associated with potential human rights violations. For instance, for years large fruit juice distributors such as Minute Maid, Tropicana, and Nestlé bought fruit juices from suppliers in South America. Many of these suppliers relied heavily on child labor to harvest oranges, lemons, and other fruits. Children as young as nine years old were commonly taken out of school by their impoverished parents and put to work in the citrus groves. These parents often saw no problem with this behavior because they themselves had also picked fruit as children. A similar set of issues were raised regarding Nestlé’s, Cargillé’s, and Archer Daniels Midland’s purchasing of cocoa from West African plantations that employed 280,000 children, some of whom were allegedly treated no better than slaves.2
However, the issues may not be as clear as they might at first seem. For example, many people from developed countries would agree that it is unethical for a business to outsource production to an offshore factory that relies on child labor or that maintains unsafe working conditions. But people in that country might argue that as unattractive as they might seem to outsiders, those jobs are superior to the ones that would otherwise be available. And as the opening case suggested, high levels of overtime work may be viewed differently by workers in developing countries than by labor rights advocates from rich countries.

This chapter explores these and other issues from an international business perspective. We first examine the nature of ethics and social responsibility in international business. We then discuss ethics in cross-cultural and international contexts. Next, we describe how firms attempt to manage ethical behavior across borders. Social responsibility in cross-cultural and international contexts is then introduced and discussed. After describing the major areas of social responsibility, we discuss how firms manage social responsibility across borders. Finally, we conclude with a summary of some of the major laws that attempt to regulate international ethics and social responsibility.

**The Nature of Ethics and Social Responsibility in International Business**

The fundamental reason for the existence of a business is to create value (usually in the form of profits) for its owners. Furthermore, most individuals work to earn income to support themselves and their families. As a result, the goal of most of the decisions made on behalf of a business or an individual within a business is to increase income (for the business or the individual) or reduce expenses (again, for the business or the individual). In most cases businesspeople make decisions and engage in behaviors, for both their personal conduct and the conduct of their organizations, that are acceptable to society. But sometimes they deviate too much from what others see as acceptable.

In recent years, it seems that the incidence of unacceptable behaviors on behalf of businesses or people within businesses has increased. Regardless of whether this increase is real or only illusory, such high-profile and well-documented cases as Enron, WorldCom, Tyco, and Arthur Andersen have certainly captured the attention of managers, investors, and regulators everywhere. Nor has this been a distinctly U.S. problem. Businesses such as Satyam Computer Services (an Indian computer services firm engaged in wholesale accounting fraud), Royal Ahold NV (a Dutch grocery chain admitting to accounting irregularities), and Nestlé (a Swiss firm accused of violating World Health Organization codes controlling the marketing of infant formula in less-developed countries) have also caught their share of attention for improprieties, real or imagined.3 Hence, just as the business world is becoming increasingly internationalized, so too is the concern for ethical and socially responsible conduct by managers and the businesses they run.

We define *ethics* as an individual’s personal beliefs about whether a decision, behavior, or action is right or wrong.4 Hence, what constitutes ethical behavior varies from one person to another. For instance, one person who finds a 20-euro banknote on the floor of an empty room may believe that it is okay to simply keep it, whereas another may feel compelled to turn it in to the lost-and-found department and a third to give it to charity. Further, although ethics is defined in the context of an individual’s belief, the concept of *ethical behavior* usually refers to behavior that conforms to generally accepted social norms. *Unethical behavior*, then, is behavior that does not conform to generally accepted social norms.

An individual’s ethics are determined by a combination of factors. People start to form ethical frameworks as children in response to their perceptions of the behavior of their parents and other adults they deal with. As children grow and enter school, they are influenced by peers with whom they interact in the classroom and playground. Everyday occurrences that force the participants to make moral choices—a friend asking to copy homework, a father accidentally denting a parked car when the only witness is his child, or a child who sees his mother receive too much change from the supermarket cashier—shape people’s ethical beliefs and behavior as they grow into adulthood. Similarly, a person’s religious training contributes to his or her ethics. Some religious beliefs, for instance, promote rigid codes of behaviors and standards of conduct, whereas others provide for more flexibility. A person’s values also influence ethical standards.
Danone SA, France’s largest food conglomerate, has teamed with Bangladesh’s Grameen Bank to create Shoktidoi yogurt as a means of addressing the twin problems of malnutrition and rural poverty. The fortified yogurt provides children with 30 percent of their daily nutritional needs. The company is recruiting local villagers as distribution agents, thus providing a new source of employment for the rural population.

People who place financial gain and personal advancement at the top of their list of priorities, for example, will adopt personal codes of ethics that promote the pursuit of wealth. Thus, they may be ruthless in efforts to gain these rewards, regardless of the costs to others. In contrast, people who clearly establish their family or friends as their top priority will adopt different ethical standards.

A society generally adopts formal laws that reflect the prevailing ethical standards—the social norms—of its members. For example, because most people consider theft to be unethical, laws have been passed in most countries to make such behaviors illegal and to proscribe ways of punishing those who do steal. But although laws attempt to be clear and unambiguous, their application and interpretation still lead to ethical ambiguities. For example, most people would agree that forcing employees to work excessive hours, especially for no extra compensation, is unethical. Accordingly, laws have been passed in some countries to define work and pay standards. But applying that law to organizational settings can still result in ambiguous situations that can be interpreted in different ways. In Japan, for example, by custom a junior employee cannot leave the office until the more senior person departs, whereas in the United States the boss is often supposed to be the last to leave. These expectations are often more powerful in shaping behavior than the mere existence of a law.

These definitions suggest the following generalizations:

- Individuals have their own personal belief system about what constitutes ethical and unethical behavior. For example, most people will be able to readily describe simple behaviors (such as stealing or returning found property) as ethical or unethical.
- People from the same cultural contexts are likely to hold similar—but not necessarily identical—beliefs as to what constitutes ethical and unethical behavior. For example,
a group of middle-class residents of Brazil will generally agree with one another as to whether a behavior such as stealing from an employer is ethical or unethical.

- Individuals may be able to rationalize behaviors based on circumstances. For instance, the person who finds a 20-euro banknote and knows who lost it may quickly return it to the owner. But if the money is found in an empty room, the finder might justify keeping it on the grounds that the owner is not likely to claim it anyway.

- Individuals may deviate from their own belief systems based on circumstances. For instance, in most situations people would agree that it is unethical to steal and therefore they do not steal. But if a person has no money and no food, that individual may steal food as a means of survival.

- Ethical values are strongly affected by national cultures and customs. Values are the things a person feels to be important. As we discussed in Chapter 4, values often center on such things as time, age, education, and status. Culture has a direct impact on the value systems of the members of that culture. Values in turn affect how those individuals define ethical versus unethical behavior. For instance, in Japan status is often reflected by group membership. As a result, behavior that helps the group is more likely to be seen as ethical, whereas behavior that harms the group is likely to be viewed as unethical. For example, many Americans condoned the looting that occurred in New Orleans in the chaos that followed Hurricane Katrina in 2005, in the belief that an individual’s rights to survival superseded property rights. Yet under similar dire circumstances, looting was far less prevalent in Japan after its devastating 2011 earthquake and tsunami.

Members of one culture may view a behavior as unethical, whereas members of another may view that same behavior as perfectly reasonable. A U.S. businessman might report to the police a U.S. customs officer who requested $100 in an envelope to clear a shipment of imported goods, whereas his Kenyan or Indonesian counterparts would likely make the payment without even being asked. These differences can create worrisome ethical dilemmas for international business practitioners when the ethical standards of their home country differ from that of the host country. Nonetheless, we want to emphasize that ethics is a distinctly individual concept, rather than an organizational one. In general, the relationship between an organization and its environment revolves around the concept of social responsibility, a topic we address later in this chapter. But as we discuss ethics per se in the first part of the chapter, keep in mind that we are focusing on individuals in organizations, as opposed to the organization itself.

In Practice

- Ethics is defined as an individual’s personal beliefs about whether actions are right or wrong
- Ethical perspectives are often shaped by national customs and cultures

For further consideration: Talk to two or three of your classmates about what they would do if they found a $20 bill on the floor of an empty classroom. Did you all agree on the “right” thing to do? Did your own answer change as a result of your conversations?

Ethics in Cross-Cultural and International Contexts

A useful way to characterize ethical behaviors in cross-cultural and international contexts is in terms of how an organization treats its employees, how employees treat the organization, and how both the organization and its employees treat other economic agents. These relationships are illustrated in Figure 5.1.

How an Organization Treats Its Employees

One important area of cross-cultural and international ethics is the treatment of employees by the organization. At one extreme, an organization can strive to hire the best people, to provide ample opportunity for skills and career development, to offer appropriate compensation and benefits, and to generally respect the personal rights and dignity of each employee. At the
other extreme, a firm can hire using prejudicial or preferential criteria, can intentionally limit
development opportunities, can provide the minimum compensation allowable, and can treat
employees callously and with little regard to personal dignity.

In practice, the areas most susceptible to ethical variation include hiring and firing
practices, wages and working conditions, and employee privacy and respect. In some countries both
ethical and legal guidelines suggest that hiring and firing decisions should be based solely on
an individual’s ability to perform the job. But in other countries it is perfectly legitimate to give
preferential treatment to individuals based on gender, ethnicity, age, or other nonwork-related
factors. Consider the case of Daslu, a São Paulo high-fashion women’s clothing store catering
to the wealthiest of Brazil’s wealthy. Its sales staff is drawn exclusively from the same social
circles as its clientele. Daslu also hires a small army of assistants—colloquially known as
aventalzinhos, or “little aprons”—to aid the sales staff. The typical aventalzinho works longer
hours, gets paid less, has worked for the store more years, and is more knowledgeable about the
merchandise than the sales staff. Yet aventalzinhos are unlikely to be promoted to sales positions
because these individuals come from the wrong social class.⁵

Wages and working conditions, although regulated in some countries, are also areas for
potential controversy. A manager paying an employee less than he or she deserves, simply because
the manager knows the employee cannot afford to quit and so will not risk losing his or her job by
complaining, might be considered unethical. Similarly, in some countries people would agree that
an organization is obligated to protect the privacy of its employees. A manager spreading a rumor
that an employee has AIDS or is having an affair with a coworker is generally seen as an unethical
breach of privacy. Likewise, the manner in which an organization responds to and addresses issues
associated with sexual harassment also involves employee privacy and related rights.

Managers in international organizations face a number of clear challenges with regard to
these matters. The firm needs to recognize local, country-specific ethical norms in its treatment
of employees, but it must also be prepared to contend with international comparisons as well.
Consider the myriad ethical dilemmas posed by the practice of outsourcing production to over-
seas locations. From one perspective it can be argued that firms are ethically bound because of
their fiduciary responsibility to shareholders to move jobs wherever they can be performed for
the least cost. But some critics would argue that this practice is unethical because it devalues the
workers’ numerous contributions to the firm and ignores the hardships imposed on displaced
workers. In some countries, such as Japan, aggressive outsourcing that results in domestic layoffs
violates the firm’s implicit agreement to provide lifetime employment. The ethical issues facing
the firm’s managers do not end once the production is moved overseas or outsourced. MNCs
increasingly accept a responsibility for ensuring that their suppliers treat their workers fairly and
provide them with safe working conditions. For instance, after hundreds of Bangladeshi workers
perished in a garment factory collapse in 2013, Walmart, Gap Inc., Inditex, Hennes & Mauritz, Tesco, and other major North American and European clothing retailers committed to a five-year plan to promote worker safety in Bangladesh.6

How Employees Treat the Organization

Numerous ethical issues also relate to how employees treat the organization. The central ethical issues in this relationship include conflicts of interest, secrecy and confidentiality, and honesty. A conflict of interest occurs when a decision potentially benefits the individual to the possible detriment of the organization. Ethical perceptions of the importance of conflicts of interest vary from culture to culture. Consider the simple example of a supplier offering a gift to a company employee. Some companies believe that such a gift can create conflicts of interest. They fear that the employee will begin to favor the supplier that offers the best gifts, rather than the supplier whose product is best for the firm. To guard against such dangers, many companies have policies that forbid their buyers from accepting gifts from suppliers. Some U.S. newspapers and broadcast media, such as the New York Times, even refuse to allow their employees to accept free meals for fear that their journalistic judgments and integrity might be compromised. But in other countries exchanges of gifts between a company’s employees and its customers or suppliers is perfectly acceptable. In Japan, for instance, such exchanges are common (and expected) during the ochugen and oseibo gift-giving periods. Ochugen, which occurs in July, originally developed to pay homage to the spirit of one’s ancestors, although it has evolved to reflect one’s best wishes for summer. Oseibo gifts, which are offered in December, represent a token of gratitude for favors and loyalty shown throughout the year. Japanese department stores helpfully stock their shelves with appropriate goods at every price level during ochugen and oseibo. Well-defined cultural norms govern the level and appropriateness of the gifts to be exchanged by businesspersons, which depends on the nature of the business relationship, its length, and the amount of business transacted. Note, however, that determining an appropriate gift by the amount of business transacted is exactly the kind of behavior that arouses suspicion of conflict of interest in many North American and European companies.

China offers a similar set of challenges to firms wishing to control conflicts of interest. Much business in China is conducted through guanxi, which is based on reciprocal exchanges of favors. Because of the importance of guanxi, North American and European firms operating in China often face a difficult task in adapting to the norms of Chinese business culture while continuing to honor company policy regarding conflicts of interest. Typically one finds that in high-context, collectivist, and power-respecting cultures, gift exchanges are a more important part of the way business is done than in low-context, individualistic, and power-tolerant cultures.

Divulging company secrets is viewed as unethical in some countries, but not in others. Employees who work for businesses in highly competitive industries—electronics, software, and fashion apparel, for example—might be tempted to sell information about company plans to competitors. Consider the plight of Durawool, a U.S. steel-wool manufacturer. It was shocked to learn that Chinese law offered it little protection when one of its local employees left the company’s Chinese subsidiary and promptly started a rival firm using Durawool’s technology.7 Motorola and SI Group, a U.S. chemical manufacturer, are currently engaged in legal struggles with former Chinese managers they accuse of similar behavior.8

A third area of concern is honesty in general. Relatively common problems in this area include such things as using a business telephone to make personal long distance calls, stealing supplies, and padding expense accounts. In some business cultures, such actions are viewed as unethical; in others, employees may develop a sense of entitlement and believe that “if I am working here, then it is the company’s responsibility to take care of my needs.” The potential for conflict is clear when individuals from such divergent ethical perspectives work together.

How Employees and the Organization Treat Other Economic Agents

The third major perspective for viewing ethics involves the relationship between the firm and its employees with other economic agents. The primary agents of interest include customers, competitors, stockholders, suppliers, dealers, and labor unions. The behaviors between the organization and these agents that may be subject to ethical ambiguity include advertising and promotions, financial disclosures, ordering and purchasing, shipping and solicitations, bargaining and negotiation, and other business relationships.
For example, businesses in the global pharmaceuticals industry have been under growing criticism because of the rapid escalation of the prices they charge for their newest and most powerful drugs. These firms argue that they need to invest heavily in research and development programs to develop new drugs, and higher prices are needed to cover these costs. Yet given the extent of the public health crises that plague some areas of the world—such as HIV/AIDS in sub-Saharan Africa—some activists argue that the pharmaceutical manufacturers should lower their prices or relax their patent protection so that patients in poorer countries can afford to purchase the drugs needed to treat such diseases. Another growing concern in recent years involves financial reporting by businesses. Because of the complexities inherent in the finances of large MNCs, some of them have been aggressive in presenting their financial positions in a positive light. And in at least a few cases, some managers have substantially overstated their earnings projections or hidden financial problems so as to entice more investors.

Differences in business practices across countries create additional ethical complexities for firms and their employees. In some countries small bribes and side payments are a normal and customary part of doing business; foreign companies often follow the local custom regardless of what is considered an ethical practice at home. In China, for instance, local journalists expect their cab fare to be paid if they are to cover a business-sponsored news conference. In Indonesia the normal time for a foreigner to get a driver’s license is more than a year, but it can be “expedited” for an extra $100. And in Romania, building inspectors routinely expect a “tip” for a favorable review.

At times, however, the sums involved are not small. A U.S. power-generating company lost a $320 million contract in the Middle East because government officials demanded a $3 million bribe. A Japanese firm paid the bribe and won the contract. Enron allegedly had a big project in India canceled because newly elected officials demanded bribes. Although such payments are illegal under U.S. law (as well as the laws of several other countries), managers nonetheless dislike losing important contracts to less ethical rivals.

National cultures often view common business practices differently. A gift may be viewed as an appropriate acknowledgement of a business relationship in one culture but as a bribe in another culture. International businesses need to develop policies to deal with these differences in national cultures and then clearly communicate their expectations to their employees.

For further consideration: If a company purchases a vital component from a foreign supplier, is the company responsible for how that supplier treats its own employees?

Managing Ethical Behavior Across Borders

Ethics reside in individuals, but many businesses nevertheless endeavor to manage the ethical behavior of their managers and employees by clearly establishing the fact that they expect them to engage in ethical behaviors. They also want to take appropriate steps to eliminate as much ambiguity as possible about what the companies view as ethical versus unethical behavior. The most common ways of doing this are through the use of guidelines or codes of ethics, ethics training, and organizational practices and the corporate culture.

Guidelines and Codes of Ethics

Many large multinationals, including Toyota, Siemens, General Mills, and Johnson & Johnson, have written guidelines that detail how employees are to treat suppliers, customers, competitors, and other stakeholders. Others, such as Philips, Nissan, Daewoo, Whirlpool, and Hewlett-Packard, have developed formal codes of ethics—written statements of the values and ethical standards that guide the firms’ actions. However, the mere existence of a code of ethics does not ensure ethical behavior. It must be backed up by organizational practices and the company’s corporate culture. (See “People, Planet, and Profits,” Siemens Pays—and Pays and Pays.)
VENTURING ABROAD

SIEMENS PAYS—AND PAYS AND PAYS

The saga of Siemens AG, the €78 billion Munich-based manufacturer of steam turbines, telecommunications equipment, medical scanners, and other sophisticated technology, provides a morality tale for firms pondering whether they should offer under-the-table payments to win lucrative international contracts. In October 2007, a German court fined Siemens €201 million (at the time, $284 million) for paying bribes. According to German court records, at least 77 separate bribes, totaling €12 million, were made by managers of Siemens’ telecommunications equipment subsidiary to cabinet ministers and bureaucrats in Libya, Russia, and Nigeria. The court estimated the bribes generated €200 million in “unlawful economic advantages” for Siemens, which formed the basis for the magnitude of the fine. And previously that year, another German court fined Siemens €38 million for bribes paid to Italian officials in the company’s power generation subsidiary. Nor were the German prosecutors finished; in April 2008, they announced they were broadening their inquiries and contemplating criminal proceedings.

But the worst was not over for Siemens. The company was then investigated by the U.S. Justice Department and the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) for violation of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and securities regulations. The SEC alleged that “Siemens created elaborate payment schemes to conceal the nature of its corrupt payments, and the Company’s inadequate controls allowed the illicit conduct to flourish. The misconduct involved employees at all levels of the Company, including former senior management, and reveals a corporate culture that had long been at odds with the performance expectations.” The SEC uncovered 4,238 payments totaling $1.4 billion to bribe government officials in such countries as Venezuela, China, Israel, Bangladesh, Nigeria, Argentina, Vietnam, Russia, Mexico, and Iraq. In December 2008, Siemens agreed to pay the U.S. government $800 million to settle the charges against it: $350 million to the SEC for the securities charges and $450 million to the Department of Justice for the criminal charges. Siemens also paid an additional $569 million fine to the German government. In addition, the company also agreed to pay the World Bank $100 million and to forgo bidding on World Bank contracts for two years.

Acknowledging the extent of the problem, Siemens’ supervisory board replaced several of the firm’s top executives with outsiders. The company’s new general counsel, Peter Solmssen—like the new CEO Peter Löscher, he is a former General Electric executive—recognizes the challenges he and the company face. Notes Solmssen, “Corruption at Siemens was ‘systemic’ in recent years. There was a moral acceptance that this was the way to do business around the world, and we have to change that.” Among Löscher and Solmssen’s first acts was an overhaul of the company’s code of conduct and its compliance programs. In addition to transforming the firm’s corporate culture, they face the task of restoring the firm’s external reputation and credibility. And of course, they need to maintain Siemens’ competitiveness in the marketplace. No small trick, given the distraction of the company’s legal problems and the ensuing drain on managerial attention and company resources. There is little doubt that Siemens will continue to pay for its misdeeds for a long time.


A multinational firm must make a decision as to whether to establish one overarching code for all of its global units or to tailor each one to its local context. Similarly, if a firm acquires a new foreign subsidiary, it must also decide whether to impose its corporate code on that subsidiary or to tailor each one to its local context. In one classic folly, Enron’s board of directors was once presented with a potentially lucrative venture that contradicted the firm’s code of ethics. So what did the board do? It voted to set aside the code of ethics, approved the business venture, and then reinstated the code of ethics!

**Ethics Training**

Some MNCs address ethical issues proactively, by offering employees training in how to cope with ethical dilemmas. At Boeing, for example, line managers lead training sessions for other employees, and the company also has an ethics committee that reports directly to the board of directors. The training sessions involve discussions of different ethical dilemmas that employees might face and how they might best handle those dilemmas.

Again, one decision for international firms is whether to make ethics training globally consistent or tailored to local contexts. Regardless of which approach they use, though, most multinationals provide expatriates with localized ethics training to better prepare them for their foreign assignments. BP, for instance, prepares managers at its headquarters in London for
future assignments to Russia by having them undergo training in the Russian language as well as in local business customs and practices and ethics.

Organizational Practices and the Corporate Culture

Organizational practices and the corporate culture also contribute to the management of ethical behavior. If the top leaders in a firm behave in an ethical manner and violations of ethical standards are promptly and appropriately addressed, then everyone in the organization will understand that the firm expects them to behave in an ethical manner—to make ethical decisions and to do the right things. But if top leaders appear to exempt themselves from ethical standards or choose to ignore or trivialize unethical behaviors, then the opposite message is being sent—that it is acceptable to do something that is unethical if you can get away with it.

One recent survey sheds some interesting light on how these practices are implemented in various countries. The survey focused specifically on the acceptability of bribing officials when doing business in foreign countries. This survey found that Russian, Chinese, Taiwanese, and South Korean firms found bribery to be relatively acceptable. Among the countries that found bribery to be unacceptable were Australia, Sweden, Switzerland, Austria, and Canada. Italy, Japan, and the United States fell in between the extremes.12

Kenya is one of the countries in which bribery is almost a way of life. One study estimates that as many as two-thirds of individual and business involvements with Kenyan public officials involve paying a bribe. Bribery and corruption is so extensive in China that some studies estimate that the costs of corruption have wiped out the equivalent of 13 to 16 percent of the country’s gross domestic product (GDP).14 Many of the former Soviet republics face similar problems.

Yet firms should think twice—or more than twice—before engaging in such behavior, as “Venturing Abroad” indicated. Firms that gain reputations as bribe payers are asked to pay bribes; firms with the opposite reputation often are not. As one expert in the area notes:

Viable companies can say “no.”…[T]he U.S. electronics group Motorola not only refused a bribe request from a Latin American official but also said it would not conduct business in that country until the regime changed. Refusal of bribe requests requires a corporate culture that supports the refusal of such requests. One of the most effective means of doing this is with a simple corporate code for managers and employees, affiliates, and potential business partners. At a minimum, the code should refer to the laws that bind the company and prohibit bribery of foreign officials. The code should also describe the decision-making line for bribe requests and assure managers the company will back them when they refuse to pay a bribe.

Building this into the corporate culture…can bring competitive advantage. The leading oil company Texaco (now part of Chevron), for example, earned such a fearsome reputation for not acceding to bribe requests that even at remote African border crossings Texaco’s jeeps are sometimes waved through without any requests for a bribe.15

In Practice

- Most international businesses have adopted formal codes of conduct and systematically provide ethics training to their employees to help them prepare for overseas assignments.
- A strong commitment to ethical standards, in both word and deed, by company executives is critical to creating an ethical corporate culture.

For further consideration: Would you be willing to pay a bribe on behalf of your company? If so, why? Under what conditions? If not, why not?

Corporate Social Responsibility in Cross-Cultural and International Contexts

As we have discussed, ethics in business relate to individual managers and other employees and their decisions and behaviors. Organizations themselves do not have ethics but do relate to their environment in ways that often involve ethical dilemmas and decisions by individuals within the organization. These situations are generally referred to within the context of the
organization’s social responsibility. Specifically, corporate social responsibility (CSR) is the set of obligations a corporation undertakes to protect and enhance the society in which it functions. Although definitions of what constitutes CSR can vary from country to country and from organization to organization, the most commonly used framework for defining CSR is the **triple bottom line**, the notion that corporations must consider and balance three objectives in formulating and implementing their strategies and decisions:

- Fulfilling their economic mission, delivering profits for their shareholders and creating value for their stakeholders
- Protecting the natural environment
- Enhancing the general welfare of society

Some experts succinctly state the triple bottom line as consideration of “people, planet, and profits.”

**The Economic Mission**

In the traditional **shareholder model** of the corporation, a firm’s goal is to maximize the after-tax present discounted value of the profits flowing over time to shareholders. This is not an easy task in a highly competitive global economy. Firms can earn profits only by marketing products that consumers are willing to buy at a price they are willing to pay; moreover, they are pressured by their industry rivals to produce these products while using as few of society’s scarce resources as possible. However, in the past several decades, the stakeholder model of the corporation has gained prominence, which has made the task of delivering value to shareholders even more complex. Advocates of the **stakeholder model** argue that firms need to consider the interests of other stakeholders as well as shareholders in reaching decisions. Stakeholders are those individuals, groups, and organizations who may be affected by the corporation’s performance and decisions. **Primary stakeholders**—those individuals and organizations directly affected by the practices of the organization and that have an economic stake in its performance—include employees, customers, and investors. **Secondary stakeholders** are individuals or groups that may be affected by corporate decisions but are not directly engaged in economic transactions with the firm, such as news media, nongovernmental organizations (NGOs), or the community in which the firm operates.

Most firms understand the importance of treating their stakeholders—particularly their primary stakeholders—in a socially responsible manner. They strive to treat their customers fairly and honestly, pricing their products transparently, honoring product warranties, and standing behind the quality of the products they sell. They respect the dignity and basic human needs of their work forces and provide safe and healthy work environments for their employees. They recognize their fiduciary responsibilities to their shareholders, the ultimate owners of the firm. As part of this fiduciary responsibility, they strive to use corporate resources judiciously, follow appropriate accounting procedures and provide accurate and transparent financial statements, and avoid even the appearance of financial improprieties, such as stock price manipulation, insider trading, or bribery. Such socially responsible behaviors make good business sense because they encourage customers, employees, and investors to buy from, work for, and invest in the firm.

**Sustainability and the Natural Environment**

The second component of the triple bottom line is protecting the natural environment. Most nations have laws striving to protect and improve the quality of their waters, lands, and air. In some countries, enforcement of these laws is unfortunately weak or lacking. Companies sometimes viewed that following the law—no more, no less—fulfilled their obligations to the natural environment. For instance, when Royal Dutch Shell first explored the Amazon River Basin for potential drilling sites in the late 1980s, its crews ripped down trees and left a trail of garbage in their wake. Fortunately, in many instances companies themselves have become more socially responsible in their treatment of the environment. For example, when Shell launched its most recent exploration expedition into another area of the Amazon Basin, the group included a biologist to oversee environmental protection and an anthropologist to help the team more effectively interact with native tribes. Similarly, lumber retailers such as Home Depot and Wickes have agreed to sell only wood products certified as having been harvested using
environment-friendly techniques. Yet companies need to do more than “talk the talk.” BP, for example, spent millions of pounds touting its concerns for the environment in a series of ads that played off its former name of British Petroleum, claiming BP meant “beyond petroleum” and promising innovative efforts to develop green energy sources. As the chapter’s closing case suggests, Gulf Coast shrimpers, crabbers, and motel owners and the Inupiat people of northern Alaska might rightly be skeptical of BP’s environmental pledges.

In 1987 the United Nation’s World Commission on Environment and Development issued a report titled Our Common Future. (This report is commonly referred to as the Brundtland report, in honor of the Commission’s chairwoman, former Norwegian Prime Minister Gro Brundtland.) The Brundtland report emphasized the importance of sustainable development, which it defined as “development which meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.” Numerous firms, large and small, have embraced the challenge of developing sustainable business practices and policies. Procter & Gamble is an industry leader in using recycled materials for containers, and many German firms aggressively use recycled materials whenever possible. Hyatt Corporation established a new company to help recycle waste products from its hotels. Conservation Corporation of Africa, a game lodge firm based in Johannesburg, strives to make its lodges as environmentally friendly as possible. (“People, Planet, and Profits” explores the role of ecotourism in promoting the objectives of the Brundtland report.) In many cases, implementing sustainable business practices adds to the company’s bottom line by stripping out costs through re-engineering products and production processes. Of course, much remains to be done. Companies need to develop economically feasible ways to reduce acid rain and global warming; to avoid depleting the ozone layer; and to create alternative methods of handling sewage, hazardous wastes, and ordinary garbage. The Internet is also seen as potentially playing an important role in resource conservation because many e-commerce businesses and transactions reduce both energy costs and pollution.

### PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS

#### LIONS AND TIGERS AND BEARS, OH MY!

Sick of his advisors responding, “on the one hand...on the other hand...” President Harry S. Truman famously requested that someone should find him a one-armed economist. Truman would no doubt be frustrated by the answers he would receive if he asked whether globalization harms or aids the world’s threatened and endangered wildlife. On the one hand, critical habitat has been destroyed, turned into farm land, or paved over to build new factories to serve global markets. On the other hand, global concerns about greenhouse gas emissions and the rise of ecotourism have induced nations and local citizens to protect critical habitat.

The Nature Conservancy, a leading environmental NGO, defines ecotourism as “Environmentally responsible travel to natural areas, in order to enjoy and appreciate nature,...have low visitor impact, and provide for beneficially active socio-economic involvement of local peoples...[Ecotourism provides] sustainable benefits to local communities.” Successful ecotourist programs develop incentives for local residents, who are often desperately poor, to help protect habitat and the animals themselves. Consider the mountain gorillas of Rwanda, which were made famous by Dian Fossey and her book Gorillas in the Mist, later made into a movie of the same name starring Sigourney Weaver. The mountain gorilla population is threatened by loss of habitat by subsistence farmers encroaching on their territory and poachers who killed the animals for their skins, heads, and hands. The rise of ecotourism and the willingness of affluent foreigners to pay hundreds of dollars a day to see the animals in the wild have allowed outfitters to develop profitable business models that promote sustainability. One such effort, the creation of the Iby’Iwacu Cultural Village by a safari outfitter, hires former poachers to serve as guides, wardens, and staff for trips to gorilla habitat. The project has led to a 60 percent decrease in poaching and a 40 percent increase in ecotourist revenues.

In Kenya, safari operators are leasing land from the local Masai tribes and allowing the land to revert to traditional habitat, attracting wildebeest, zebras, lions, and other African wildlife and a flood of foreign tourists eager to observe them. To ensure that the local people benefit from the project, the safari operators then hire the local tribespeople as guides and game wardens at wages higher than they would earn as farmers. The staff of Sandibe, a safari lodge in Botswana, helped nearby villagers cultivate small plots of land and then taught them how to grow fruits and vegetables efficiently. The lodge buys most of what the villagers produce to serve to their guests, providing a sustainable source of revenue for the villagers and fresh “local grown” food for guests.

Less well-known but just as significant are Vietnam’s efforts to protect the country’s bears, who would otherwise be caged and “milked” for their bile, a traditional ingredient in Asian medicine. Similarly, Indonesia is using the revenues generated by ecotourists to protect its elephant population in northern Sumatra.

(Continued)
Ecotourism has helped protect Rwanda’s famous mountain gorillas and reduced poaching of the animals for their skins and other body parts. Outfitters hire local residents as guides, game wardens, and staff, thereby giving the local community an economic stake in protecting the gorillas and their habitat.

Ecotourism is by no means a panacea for protecting against the loss of critical habitat and species endangered by encroachment of human activity, however. Moreover, things are not all black-and-white. For instance, most respectable safari operators in the Serengeti maintain a safe distance between the animals and their guests and avoid doing anything to upset the animals or change their natural behaviors. But some low-cost tour operators have been known to offer food to animals to entice them closer to safari vehicles (and gain a bigger tip from their guests). This practice, though, changes the natural behaviors of the animals and is condemned by those who practice “true” ecotourism. Nonetheless, by giving members of the local community a stake in protecting critical habitat, ecotourism promises to be an important weapon in promoting global sustainability and in protecting vulnerable and endangered species.


General Social Welfare

Some people believe that in addition to treating their stakeholders and the environment responsibly, business organizations also should promote the general welfare of society. Examples include making contributions to charities, philanthropic organizations, and not-for-profit foundations and associations; supporting museums, symphonies, and public radio and television; and taking a role in improving public health and education. Some people also believe that corporations should act even more broadly to correct the political or social inequities that exist in the world. For example, these observers would argue that businesses should not conduct operations in countries with a record of human rights violations, such as North Korea or Sudan. Recent interest by U.S. firms in oil reserves in western and central Africa have sparked concerns about human rights issues in those areas as well, an issue discussed in one of Part I’s closing cases, “A Pipeline of Good Intentions”.

A related but distinct problem that also is receiving renewed attention is global poverty and the potential role of business in helping to address it. In Cambodia, for instance, 30 percent of the population lives below the poverty level; 42 percent lack clean drinking water; and 29 percent of children under 5 are malnourished. But there are also emerging signs that some countries are beginning to address poverty-related issues. Uganda, for example, is still a poor country; foreign aid constitutes a significant portion of its national budget. But since 1990 the percentage of its population living with HIV has dropped from 10.2 percent to 7.2 percent. Primary school enrollment has jumped from 58 percent in 1986 to more than 94 percent of school-age children today. And the proportion of its population living in poverty has fallen from 44 percent in 1996 to 24 percent.

Yet as illustrated in Map 5.1, numerous problem areas still exist.
Zimbabwe: Government mismanagement has led to high levels of unemployment and destroyed the productivity of the country's agriculture sector; 14.9 percent of the adult population lives with HIV/AIDS.

Botswana: Sound fiscal and economic policies have promoted economic growth; 95 percent of the population has access to clean water; 96 percent of children immunized against measles and DPT.

Costa Rica: Environmentally friendly timber practices introduced, aiding the rain forest's survival.

Uganda: While per capita income is only $510, life expectancy has been rising, access to clean water improving, and the poverty rate falling.

Afghanistan: Infant mortality: 73/1,000 live births; Life expectancy: 49 years; GNI per capita: $470.

Burma: Military government, in power since 1962, deprived citizens of basic civil and legal rights; inept economic policies crippled the growth of this resource-rich country. New government, formed in 2010, has allowed freer elections and released hundreds of political prisoners, creating hope for a brighter future.

New Zealand: Constructive positive working relationship between environmentalists and logging interests.

United States: Accounting fraud, corporate governance scandals, housing market collapse, debt ceiling crisis threaten country's economic reputation and trust in its capital markets.

Botswana and Tanzania: Merck donates 250 million doses of Mectizan to combat river blindness.

Uganda: Government mismanagement has led to high levels of unemployment and destroyed the productivity of the country's agriculture sector; 14.9 percent of the adult population lives with HIV/AIDS.

New Zealand: Constructive positive working relationship between environmentalists and logging interests.

Burma: Military government, in power since 1962, deprived citizens of basic civil and legal rights; inept economic policies crippled the growth of this resource-rich country. New government, formed in 2010, has allowed freer elections and released hundreds of political prisoners, creating hope for a brighter future.

Afghanistan: Infant mortality: 73/1,000 live births; Life expectancy: 49 years; GNI per capita: $470.

Costa Rica: Environmentally friendly timber practices introduced, aiding the rain forest's survival.

Uganda: While per capita income is only $510, life expectancy has been rising, access to clean water improving, and the poverty rate falling.

Botswana: Sound fiscal and economic policies have promoted economic growth; 95 percent of the population has access to clean water; 96 percent of children immunized against measles and DPT.

Zimbabwe: Government mismanagement has led to high levels of unemployment and destroyed the productivity of the country's agriculture sector; 14.9 percent of the adult population lives with HIV/AIDS.

Types of the map: Successful, Challenges remain.
Managing Social Responsibility Across Borders

As with attempts to manage ethical conduct, businesses usually make some effort to actively address social responsibility. The basic approach they adopt shapes how they manage issues of compliance, the informal dimensions of social responsibility, and the evaluation of their social responsibility efforts.

Approaches to Social Responsibility

Firms generally adopt one of four different basic approaches to social responsibility. The four stances, as shown in Figure 5.2, fall along a continuum ranging from the lowest to the highest degree of socially responsible practices.

**OBSTRUCTIONIST STANCE** Organizations that take what might be called an obstructionist stance to social responsibility usually do as little as possible to address social or environmental problems. When they cross the ethical or legal line that separates acceptable from unacceptable practices, their typical response is to deny or avoid accepting responsibility for their actions. For example, a few years ago top managers in several foreign affiliates of Astra, a Swedish firm, were accused of a host of improprieties ranging from sexual harassment to the diversion of company resources for personal use. When these problems first began to surface, top officials in Sweden denied any wrongdoing before they even bothered to conduct an investigation. Similarly, both Nestlé and Danone have been accused of violating international agreements signed in 1981 to control the marketing of infant formulas that serve as substitutes for breast milk. Those agreements stress the importance of breast-feeding. Nestlé and Danone allegedly provided mothers in West Africa with free samples of milk powder and violated labeling standards on infant formula in the countries of Togo and Burkina Faso. The firms, however, deny any such violations and argue that their actions were all technically within the parameters of the agreements. Moreover, both companies now believe that the treaties are outmoded as a result of the HIV/AIDS crisis, arguing that use of infant formulas may reduce the transmission of the virus from infected breast-feeding mothers to their infants.

**DEFENSIVE STANCE** One step removed from the obstructionist stance is the defensive stance, whereby the organization will do everything that is required of it legally but nothing more. This approach is often adopted by companies that are unsympathetic to the concept of social responsibility. Managers in organizations that take a defensive stance insist that their job is to generate profits. For example, such a firm would install pollution control equipment dictated by...
Tobacco companies take this position in their marketing efforts. In the United States, they are legally required to include warnings to smokers on their products and to limit their advertising to prescribed media. Domestically they follow these rules to the letter of the law but use stronger marketing methods in countries that have no such rules. In many African countries, for example, cigarettes are heavily promoted, contain higher levels of tar and nicotine than those sold in the United States, and carry few or no health warning labels.26 Firms that take this position are less likely to cover up wrongdoing than obstructionist firms and will generally admit to mistakes when they are identified and then take appropriate corrective actions.

**ACCOMMODATIVE STANCE** A firm that adopts an accommodative stance meets its legal and ethical requirements but will also go beyond these requirements in selected cases. Such firms voluntarily agree to participate in social programs, but solicitors have to convince the organization that the programs are worthy of their support. Some firms will match contributions made by their employees to selected charitable causes. Many organizations will respond to requests for donations to Little League baseball, youth football programs, and so forth. Vodafone’s local affiliate, for example, sponsors a youth cricket league in Pretoria, South Africa. The point, though, is that someone generally has to knock on the door and ask—the organizations do not proactively seek such avenues for contributing.

**PROACTIVE STANCE** The highest degree of social responsibility that a firm can exhibit is the proactive stance. Firms that adopt this approach take to heart the arguments in favor of social responsibility. They view themselves as citizens in a society and proactively seek opportunities to contribute. An excellent example of a proactive stance is the Ronald McDonald House program undertaken by McDonald’s. These houses, located close to major medical centers, can be used by families for minimal cost while their sick children are receiving medical treatment nearby. Likewise, Aquafinca, a Honduran subsidiary of Florida’s Regal Springs Tilapia, teamed up with the World Wildlife Foundation and two important U.S. distributors, Sysco and Costco, to become the first supplier of tilapia to meet the International Standards for Responsible Tilapia Aquaculture.27 These and related activities and programs exceed the accommodative stance—they indicate a sincere and potent commitment to improving general social welfare in a country and thus represent a proactive stance to social responsibility. Apple has similarly adopted a proactive policy of trying to minimize the impact of its products on the environment (“People, Planet, and Profits” discusses some of the issues of concern in this industry). As part of this effort, Apple prominently posts on its website environmental reports for each of its products. The Body Shop, Ben & Jerry’s, Patagonia, and Timberland are four other companies widely admired for their proactive stances regarding social responsibility.28

Remember that these categories are not discrete but merely define stages along a continuum of approach. Organizations do not always fit neatly into one category. The Ronald McDonald House program has been widely applauded, for example, but McDonald’s has also come under fire for allegedly misleading consumers about the nutritional value of its food products. And even though Astra took an obstructionist stance in the example cited previously, many individual employees and managers at the firm have no doubt made substantial contributions to society in a number of different ways.

**Managing Compliance**

The demands for social responsibility placed on contemporary organizations by an increasingly sophisticated and educated public grow stronger every day. As we have seen, there are pitfalls for managers who fail to adhere to high ethical standards and for companies that try to circumvent their legal obligations. Organizations, therefore, need to fashion an approach to social responsibility the same way that they develop any other business strategy. That is, they should view social responsibility as a major challenge that requires careful planning, decision making, consideration, and evaluation. They may manage social responsibility through both formal and informal dimensions. Formal organizational dimensions used to implement a firm’s social responsibility include legal compliance, ethical compliance, and philanthropic giving.

**LEGAL COMPLIANCE** Legal compliance is the extent to which the organization conforms to regional, national, and international laws. The task of managing legal compliance is generally
E-WASTE

Technological progress is one of the primary driving forces of globalization, as we noted in Chapter 1. Smartphones, high-definition flat screen TVs, desktop computers, laptops, and tablet computers speed information flows and enhance the productivity of workers, as well as the joy of sharing photos and texts with our friends and family. There is a downside to these devices, however: the growing problem of disposing of used or outmoded electrical devices, many of which contain toxic chemicals such as cadmium, lead, and mercury. If disposed of improperly, electronics goods can potentially release hazardous toxic fumes or contaminate ground water supplies. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), for example, estimates that electronic waste (e-waste) accounts for 70 percent of the heavy metals in a typical landfill.

E-waste is the fastest growing waste disposal problem facing both developed and developing countries. The European Union estimates that its members generate as much as 11 million tons of e-waste annually, clogging landfills and potentially endangering water supplies. A recent EPA study indicated that in a typical year Americans disposed of 2.4 million tons of electronic products, but that only 25 percent of these would be recycled. China’s annual e-waste has reached 2.3 million tons.

Most e-waste is both toxic and valuable because the innards of modern electronics contain metals such as gold, palladium, and silver in concentrations 40 to 50 times richer than the ores found in commercial mining ventures. Thus, discarded electronic goods can be valuable indeed. High-tech recyclers in developed countries, such as Switzerland’s Xstrata and Belgium’s Umicore, can recover up to 95 percent of these precious metals. However, often lower-tech, dirtier solutions can be more profitable. Guyu, a city in southern China, is renowned as the e-waste capital of the world. An estimated 150,000 workers are employed in the Guiyu region recycling e-waste through simple, labor-intensive means. Some workers use pliers or clippers to yank chips from memory boards or strip the insulation from cabling to reclaim the copper wire. Others leach out the metals by pouring acid on circuit boards that have been preheated by boiling. Lacking adequate safety equipment, workers—often children—are exposed to toxic fumes, carcinogens, and lead poisoning. Environmental studies indicate high levels of toxic heavy metals, carcinogens, and dioxins in the local air and water supplies. Nigeria and Ghana are home to similar electronic recycling ventures.

After an Italian firm was caught dumping 8,000 barrels of toxic trash in a Nigerian village, the Basel Convention of 1989 established controls over rich countries disposing of their toxic materials by shipping them to poorer countries. But dumping of e-waste is a continuing problem. In January 2013 Nigeria impounded a British vessel and imposed a $1 million fine on importers for trying to discard two containers of e-waste there.

A variety of solutions have been proposed. One approach is to strengthen the Basel agreement by a total ban on e-waste imports. Another solution is “eco-design,” encouraging firms to design and manufacture their products with easy salvage in mind. More aggressive encouragement of recycling is also helpful, an approach endorsed by major producers and retailers. Apple, Dell, and Best Buy, for example, have established recycling programs, agreeing to accept e-waste at company-owned or company-sponsored facilities.

the affluent U.S. market Merck charged $20 to $30 for a dose of the drug. But Merck scientists discovered that their heartworm medicine could also cure onchocerciasis, a disease more commonly known as river blindness. This parasitic disease, spread by biting black flies, causes maddening itching, muscle pains, and weakness. Half of its victims suffer impaired vision, and a sixth lose their eyesight entirely. Yet the people who inhabit the lands that are plagued by river blindness are among the world’s poorest. Merck decided to provide the drug, called Mectizan, for free. Since 1987, Merck has donated more than 2.5 billion doses of Mectizan to people in 33 countries, sparing an estimated 80 million people annually from this terrifying disease.30

Unfortunately, in this age of cutbacks, many corporations have also had to limit their charitable gifts over the past several years as they continue to trim their own budgets. And many firms that continue to make contributions are increasingly targeting them to programs or areas where the firm will get something in return. For example, firms today are more likely to give money to job training programs than to the arts than was the case just a few years ago. The logic is that they get more direct payoff from the former type of contribution—in this instance, a better trained workforce from which to hire new employees—than the latter.31

Informal Dimensions of Social Responsibility

In addition to these formal dimensions for managing social responsibility, there are also informal ones. Leadership, organization culture, and how the organization responds to whistle-blowers each helps shape and define people’s perceptions of the organization’s stance on social responsibility.

**Organization Leadership and Culture** Leadership practices and organization culture can go a long way toward defining the social responsibility stance an organization and its members will adopt.32 Consider Patagonia, a supplier of high-quality outdoor gear that started as a small specialist provider of mountain-climbing equipment. Its founder, Californian Yvon Chouinard, was a pioneer in the clean climbing movement, which sought to minimize the sport’s impact on the wilderness. Under Chouinard’s leadership, the firm has made an explicit and comprehensive commitment to environment protection. Its mission statement is straightforward: “Build the best products, cause no unnecessary harm, use business to inspire and implement solutions to the environmental crisis.” It has matched these words with deeds that send a clear message to its employees, customers, and suppliers. In 1989, it cofounded the Conservation Alliance with other firms in the outdoor industry to promote protection of the environment. Patagonia organizes workshops to train grassroots environmental groups, gives monies to environmental causes, and funds its employees who wish to serve internships in environmental groups. In 2010, for example 50 Patagonia employees interned for groups as diverse as Kenya’s Watamu Turtle Programme, Maine’s Friends of Casco Bay, and Guatemala’s Smithsonian Migratory Bird Center.33 By contrast, the message sent to BP employees regarding the trade-offs among costs, safety, and environmental protection communicated a different set of priorities, as we will discuss in the chapter’s closing case.

**Whistle-blowing** Whistle-blowing is the disclosure by an employee of illegal or unethical conduct on the part of others within the organization.34 How an organization responds to this
practice often indicates its stance toward social responsibility. In a typical North American company, whistle-blowers may have to proceed through a number of channels to be heard. Some have even been fired for their efforts, a fate that befell James Bingham, a former executive with Xerox. He attempted to blow the whistle on alleged financial mismanagement in several of the firm’s foreign subsidiaries. He claimed that the firm illegally set aside $100 million when it acquired a British firm to use those funds to boost future earnings. He also cited a corporate culture at Xerox that, in his words, “cut bookkeeping corners to make up for deteriorating business fundamentals and to maximize short-term results.” Shortly after he made his allegations, Bingham was fired.35

Many organizations, however, welcome the contributions of whistle-blowers. A person who observes questionable behavior typically first reports the incident to his or her boss. If nothing is done, the whistle-blower may then inform higher-level managers or an ethics committee if one exists. Eventually, the person may have to go to a regulatory agency or even the media to be heard.

Not surprisingly, attitudes toward whistle-blowing are affected by culture. Because of the traditional strong attachment of the individual to the organization in Japan, for instance, whistle-blowing is often viewed as an act of betrayal, rather than one of integrity. Back in the 1970s, one Japanese salesman discovered that his boss was engaging in price-fixing. He reported the incident to higher-ups in the organization, who told him to ignore the problem. The salesman persisted in his whistle-blowing efforts. The company’s response was to exile him to a remote subsidiary, where he continued to work in a tiny office—only nine square feet—without a telephone or a pay raise for 27 years. Although whistle-blowing has become more common in Japan in the past decade, it is still frowned on because it disturbs the harmony of the group, or wa, a value much prized in Japanese culture.36 One Japanese religious scholar notes, “Traditionally, betrayal is the biggest crime in Japan, almost worse than murder. The price was mura hachibu, or exile from the village.”37 In one well-publicized recent example, Michael Woodford, the newly appointed CEO of Olympus, a major Japanese camera manufacturer, was fired after he uncovered $1 billion of financial irregularities and reported them to Olympus’ board of directors. The apparent reason for his dismissal: his whistle-blowing was disharmonious.38

**Evaluating Social Responsibility**

Any organization that is serious about social responsibility must ensure that its efforts are producing the desired benefits. Essentially this requires applying the concept of control to social responsibility. Many organizations now require current and new employees to read their guidelines or code of ethics and then sign a statement agreeing to abide by it. An organization should also evaluate how it responds to instances of questionable legal or ethical conduct. Does it follow up immediately? Does it punish those involved? Or does it use delay and cover-up tactics? Answers to these questions can help an organization diagnose any problems it might be having in meeting its social responsibilities.

Many organizations choose to conduct formal evaluations of the effectiveness of their social responsibility efforts. Some organizations, for instance, routinely conduct corporate social audits. A **corporate social audit** is a formal and thorough analysis of the effectiveness of the firm’s social performance. The audit is usually undertaken by a task force of high-level managers from within the firm. It requires that the organization clearly define all its social goals, analyze the resources it devotes to each goal, determine how well it is achieving the various goals, and make recommendations about which areas need additional attention.

**In Practice**

- International businesses’ responses to addressing CSR range widely. Some adopt an obstructionist approach, doing as little as they can to further CSR, whereas other firms embrace CSR as an important part of their business model.
- Many firms routinely conduct corporate social audits to monitor their success in achieving their CSR objectives and to uncover areas of concern.

*For further consideration: What factors affect a firm’s approach to managing its CSR?*
Difficulties of Managing CSR Across Borders

Another challenge facing corporations in establishing their policy toward CSR is that the role of the corporation in society varies across countries. MNCs, which by definition operate in multiple political and legal jurisdictions, are continually attempting to find the proper balance between the roles and behaviors expected by their home government and those expected by all of the host governments in the countries in which they operate. This is particularly complex in the case of CSR because corporations play different roles in the political process of individual countries. How does an MNC please all of them? Indeed, companies are often criticized both for too much involvement in local politics and for not enough involvement. Many critics argue, for example, that oil companies play too large a role in the formulation of energy and environmental policies in the United States. Yet other critics have complained that these companies do too little to influence public policy in such countries as Nigeria or Myanmar. Shell’s official policy is to support CSR “within the legitimate role of business,” although that policy probably creates more questions than answers in interpreting what it means in practice.

A model developed by two Dutch CSR experts, Rob van Tulder and Alex van der Zwart, showcases this problem. Their approach suggests there are three main actors in the policy formulation process:

1. The state, which passes and enforces laws;
2. The market, which through the process of competition and the pricing mechanism acquires inputs and allocates outputs to members of the society; and
3. Civil society, which includes churches, charitable organizations, the Boy Scouts, labor unions, NGOs, and so on. Civil society in many ways manifests the cultural values of the citizens of the country.

The interplay among these three actors establishes public policy and the norms of social interaction, including, of course, accepted business behaviors. As is the case with culture, however, these social norms vary from country to country. Van Tulder and van der Zwart’s model develops stereotypical behaviors in three regions of the world.

The Anglo-Saxon Approach

In van Tulder and van der Zwart’s analysis, Anglo-Saxon countries view the state, the market, and civil society as separate, competitive, and antagonistic. Thus, when the government must contract with the private sector to purchase goods or services, such contracting should be done through an open and competitive bidding process. When business and government fail to maintain sufficient separation, Anglo-Saxons deem that failure as corruption. Similarly, when Americans look at the relationship between civil society and government, members of the former are labeled “special interest groups.” As articulated by James Madison in the Federalist Papers, democracy entails political competition among these special interest groups. So the U.S.–Anglo-Saxon approach focuses on competition, not cooperation, among the three groups as the means to promote social goals.

The Asian Approach

The relationship between these three actors is different in Asia. Many Asian countries—Japan, Korea, China, and Indonesia come to mind—rely on close cooperation between the private sector and the government. Indeed, the economic clout of Japan’s keiretsu and Korea’s chaebol rests on their willingness to do the government’s bidding and vice versa. Many Asian leaders view this cooperation as the linchpin of their successful development strategies—the so-called “Asian Way.” Note two things: First, from the perspective of the Anglo-Saxon approach, this symbiotic relationship between business and government is viewed as “crony capitalism,” a polite term for corruption. Second, civil society plays a minor role in this process.

The Continental European Approach

In the European Union—particularly in continental European countries such as Austria, Germany, France, and the Netherlands—the three actors have much more cooperative ways of
working with one another. In Germany, for example, large employer associations bargain with
umbrella labor organizations under the watchful supervision of the government. Similarly,
Germany’s codetermination policy gives workers a well-defined role in the governance of
large German businesses (see page 582). And, in general, the public policy process is based
on creating consensus among the three actors. Cooperation, not competition, is the hallmark
of this approach. Given this approach to the role of business in society, it is not surprising
that Continental Europe was the birthplace of the CSR movement and the stakeholder model
of capitalism.

Clearly each of the three approaches—continental European, Asian, and Anglo-Saxon—
conceptualizes the responsibilities of government, business, and civil society quite differently.
This leaves MNCs that operate in all three areas with the difficult and complex task of
triangulating between their own interests, the proper way of doing things according to the
perspective of their home society, and the proper way of doing things according to the
perspective of the society of the host countries in which they operate.

In Practice

- Expectations regarding a corporation’s role in society can vary widely from country
to country. The Anglo-Saxon approach distrusts cooperation between business and
government; the Continental Europe and Asian approaches embrace it.
- International businesses need to develop strategies and policies for dealing with these
different expectations.

For further consideration: What do you think is the proper relationship between the state,
the market, and civil society? Why?

Regulating International Ethics and Social Responsibility

Not surprisingly, there have been many attempts to mandate and regulate ethical and socially re-
sponsible behavior by businesspeople and businesses. A detailed analysis of the myriad laws and
regulations is beyond the scope of this discussion. However, we will describe a few of the more
important and representative regulations.

The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) was passed by the U.S. Congress in 1977. The
FCPA prohibits U.S. firms, their employees, and agents acting on their behalf from paying
or offering to pay bribes to any foreign government official to influence the official actions
or policies of that individual to gain or retain business. This prohibition applies even if the
transaction occurs entirely outside U.S. borders. The FCPA also applies to foreign companies
who have accessed the U.S. public capital market and become subject to SEC jurisdiction.
We already noted the fines paid by Siemens for violating the FCPA. Other examples abound.
For instance, a former executive of Mobil Oil was sentenced to a jail term after participating
in an agreement to pay $78 million to several government leaders in Kazakhstan in return for
control of the country’s giant Tengiz oil fields. Similarly, Baker Hughes, a Texas-based oil
field services provider, paid a $44 million fine to settle charges it violated the FCPA in Angola,
Indonesia, Nigeria, Russia, and Uzbekistan, as well as Kazakhstan. However, the FCPA does
not outlaw routine payments, regardless of their size, made to government officials to expedite
normal commercial transactions, such as issuance of customs documents or permits, inspection
of goods, or provision of police services.

In 2010, the British government passed the Bribery Act, which applies to corrupt actions
done anywhere in the world by firms with a business presence in the United Kingdom. In
many ways, this British law is more extensive and comprehensive than the FCPA. Like
the FCPA, it applies to transactions involving government officials. Unlike the FCPA, the
Bribery Act also applies to transactions between two businesses and it outlaws facilitation
payments.
EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES

CONFLICT DIAMONDS

According to Western custom, diamonds are a perfect way for a young man to demonstrate his undying love to his fiancée. But diamonds are also perfect for smuggling. They are small, easily concealed, and valuable relative to their bulk and weight. A nasty little secret of the diamond trade is that diamond smugglers have financed some of the world’s most vicious civil wars, including those that devastated Sierra Leone, Côte d’Ivoire, Congo, and Angola. Officials of NGOs that are trying to aid the victims of these wars, such as CARE, Médecins Sans Frontières, Global Witness, and the International Red Cross, realized that peace would be impossible unless trade in these so-called “conflict diamonds” ceased. They began publicizing the linkage between diamonds and these civil wars. Experts estimate that conflict diamonds constitute between 2 and 20 percent of the world’s trade in the precious stones.

The diamond industry quickly realized that they faced a public relations disaster, fearing that consumers might shun diamond earrings or bracelets if they knew that their glittery purchases were helping warlords to buy bullets and machine guns. In 2000, the major countries involved in the diamond trade as producers, traders, or consumers commenced the Kimberley Process (named after the famed South African mining town) to halt trade in conflict diamonds. Seventy-five countries have agreed that, beginning in 2003, trade in conflict diamonds will be limited to those stones that carry a certificate of origin from their country of production, guaranteeing that they were produced legally and outside the zones of conflict. However, the real problem is in enforcing the good intentions of the Kimberley Process. Some NGOs fear that smugglers will bribe corrupt officials to issue the certificates, or that they will devise other ways to circumvent the agreement. (The plot of a 2002 James Bond movie, Die Another Day, involved just such a scheme.)

Other countries believe that conflict over conflict diamonds gives them an opportunity to promote their own industry. Canada, for instance, now produces 6 percent of the world’s gem-quality diamonds, thanks to a discovery in the Northwest Territory in 1991. To demonstrate that their gems are produced in a conflict-free zone, one Canadian producer engravés a tiny polar bear in its diamonds, and another inscribes a maple leaf.

Numerous international agreements exist to regulate, monitor, and promote ethical business practices. Curbing bribery has been the focus of legislation in the United States and the United Kingdom, as well as an agreement among the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) nations.

For further consideration: Would you be willing to buy a diamond for a friend or loved one if you knew it was a “conflict diamond”?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

Ethics are an individual’s personal beliefs about whether a decision, behavior, or action is right or wrong. What constitutes ethical behavior varies from one person to another. But even though ethical behavior is in the eye of the beholder, it usually refers to behavior that conforms to generally accepted social norms. Unethical behavior is behavior that does not conform to generally accepted social norms. A society generally adopts formal laws that reflect the prevailing ethical standards—the social norms—of its members. Cultural differences often create ethical complications. Acceptable behavior in one culture may be viewed as immoral in another.

One important area of cross-cultural and international ethics is the treatment of employees by the organization. In practice, the areas most susceptible to ethical variation include hiring and firing practices, wages and working conditions, and employee privacy and respect. Numerous ethical issues also relate to how employees treat the organization. The central ethical issues in this relationship include conflicts of interest, secrecy and confidentiality, and honesty. A third major perspective for viewing ethics involves the relationship between the firm and its employees with other economic agents. The primary agents of interest include customers, competitors, stockholders, suppliers, dealers, and unions.

Although ethics reside in individuals, many businesses nevertheless endeavor to manage the ethical behavior of their managers and employees. They want to clearly establish the fact that they expect their managers and other employees to engage in ethical behaviors. They also want to take appropriate steps to eliminate as much ambiguity as possible in what the company views as ethical versus unethical behavior. The most common ways of doing this are through the use of guidelines or a code of ethics, ethics training, and organizational practices and the corporate culture.

Organizations need to define their policies toward corporate social responsibility—the set of obligations an organization has to protect and enhance the society in which it functions. Organizations may exercise social responsibility toward their stakeholders, toward the natural environment, and toward general social welfare. Some organizations acknowledge their responsibilities in all three areas and strive diligently to meet each of them, whereas others emphasize only one or two areas of social responsibility. And a few acknowledge no social responsibility at all.

As with attempts to manage ethical conduct, businesses usually make some effort to actively address social responsibility. This generally starts from their basic approach to social responsibility. It then extends to how they manage issues of compliance, the informal dimensions of social responsibility, and how they evaluate their efforts regarding social responsibility.

There have been many attempts to regulate ethical and socially responsible international business conduct. Five illustrative examples are the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, the Bribery Act, the Alien Tort Claims Act, the Anti-Bribery Convention of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, and the International Labor Organization.
Review Questions

5-1. Define business values.
5-2. Distinguish between ethical and unethical behavior.
5-3. Do national environments shape the ethical orientation of a firm?
5-4. How do organizations attempt to manage ethical behavior across borders?
5-5. What is social responsibility?
5-6. What is the difference between ethics and social responsibility?
5-7. Identify the major areas of social responsibility for international business.
5-8. What are the four general approaches a firm can take with regard to social responsibility?
5-9. Do sustainable ethical businesses exist?
5-10. Identify and briefly summarize representative laws and regulations that attempt to address international ethics and social responsibility.

Questions for Discussion

5-11. Although people from the same culture are likely to have similar views of what constitutes ethical versus unethical behavior, what factor or factors would account for differences within a culture?
5-12. Is it valid to describe someone as having “no ethics”? Why or why not?
5-13. What do you think would happen if an individual’s belief system conflicted with a global firm’s values?
5-14. Under what circumstances is a code of ethics most and least likely to be effective? Why?
5-15. What do you think is most likely to happen if the ethical behaviors and decisions of a new team of top managers of a firm are inconsistent with the firm’s long-entrenched corporate culture?
5-16. Do you think social responsibility for an MNC is something best managed locally or best managed globally?
5-17. Discuss how a firm’s global corporate strategy is shaped by its various local business environments.
5-18. What are the dangers or pitfalls that might be encountered if a multinational business attempts to be socially responsible, but only in ways that provide direct benefits to its profitability?
5-19. Under what circumstances, if any, might you see yourself as a whistle-blower? Under what circumstances, if any, might you keep quiet about illegal acts by your employer?
5-20. Do you think there should be more or fewer attempts to regulate international ethics and social responsibility? Why?
5-21. The oil industry has long been accused of degrading the natural resources of the countries it operates. Some aspects of this unethical behavior can be traced back to the governments in some countries that condone it, in the name of economic development. Do you think oil companies like Shell and BP should have an ethical business practice so as to protect the environment in the absence of specific government regulations or incentives in these markets? How does this impact oil companies since they seek to maximize their profits in a competitive market?
5-22. Are the ethics of gift-giving different between high-context and low-context cultures?
5-23. Consider the following scenarios:

• To assist the sale of your products in a particular foreign market, it is suggested that you pay a 10 percent commission to a “go-between” who has access to high-ranking government officials in that market. You suspect, but do not know, that the go-between will split the commission with the government officials who decide which goods to buy. Should you do it? Does it make a difference if your competitors routinely pay such commissions?

• You have a long-standing client in a country that imposes foreign exchange controls. The client asks you to pad your invoices by 25 percent. For example, you would ship the client $100,000 worth of goods but would invoice the client for $125,000. On the basis of your invoice, the client would obtain the $125,000 from the country’s central bank. The client then would pay you $100,000 and have you put the remaining $25,000 in a Swiss bank account in the client’s name. Should you do it? Would it make a difference if your client is a member of a politically unpopular minority and might have to flee the country at a moment’s notice?

Building Global Skills

Identify an industry that interests you personally and that has a number of major MNCs. Potential examples include energy, automobiles, and consumer electronics. Visit the websites of three firms in that industry and learn as much as possible about their stances regarding ethical conduct and social responsibility. Identify commonalities
and differences across the three firms. Next, develop observations about the likely effectiveness of the firms’ efforts to promote ethical conduct and social responsibility based on their websites. Finally, respond to the following questions:

5-24. Symbolically, what potential role does the Internet serve in helping to promote ethical conduct and social responsibility as evidenced by the websites you visited?

5-25. Which firm has the most effective website vis-à-vis ethics and social responsibility? In your opinion, what makes it the best?

5-26. Which firm has the least effective website vis-à-vis ethics and social responsibility? In your opinion, what makes it the worst?

5-27. How do the websites affect your view of each company from the standpoint of a potential investor? A potential employee? A potential supplier?

5-28. If asked, what advice might you offer to each company to improve its attention to ethical conduct and social responsibility as reflected by its website?

### CLOSING CASE BP: Safety First or Profits First?

On April 20, 2010, the Deepwater Horizon, a drilling rig operating in the Gulf of Mexico, exploded, killing 11 workers and injuring another 17. Investigators determined that the likely cause was a column of methane gas that rose through the borehole under extremely high pressure, expanded on reaching the surface, and then ignited, with catastrophic consequences. After burning for 36 hours, the rig collapsed and sank into the Gulf. It triggered one of the worst environmental disasters in recent U.S. history, devastated the tourism and fishing industries throughout the Gulf Coast, and raised serious questions about the efficacy of government regulation and the safety of deepwater drilling.

The Deepwater Horizon was owned and operated by Swiss-headquartered Transocean. Under contract to BP, it was in the final stages of completing an exploratory well in mile-deep water in the Macondo Prospect. Halliburton, an experienced oil well service company, had just finished cementing in the well. Later testimony indicated that the rig technicians had failed to react to a buildup of gas pressures in the well; they also ignored a critical test of the cement job itself. A few days after the explosion, Coast Guard officials noticed that oil was leaking from the drill site. Initial estimates provided by BP officials were 1,000 barrels a day; over time the estimate progressively rose to between 35,000 and 60,000 barrels per day. In total, about 5 million barrels of oil leaked into the Gulf before BP finally capped the well after 87 days on July 15.

Although officials of BP, Transocean, and Halliburton found fault with each other’s performance—and independent investigations indicated that all three made mistakes—ultimate responsibility lay with BP, as owner of the Macondo well. Investigators uncovered a series of decisions by BP officials that—at least in hindsight—suggested that the company was more worried about controlling costs than promoting safety. The Macondo project was $58 million over budget and six weeks behind schedule, and internal memos indicated that BP managers on the rig were under increasing pressure to complete the project quickly. The National Commission on the BP Deepwater Oil Spill and Offshore Drilling, a group of independent experts selected by President Barack Obama, concluded that “systematic failures in risk management…place in doubt the safety culture of the entire industry” (report at p. vii).

Unfortunately, the Deepwater Horizon tragedy was not the first time that BP’s commitment to safety was called into question. BP’s Texas City refinery suffered a fire in 2004; in 2005 a deadly explosion at the same plant killed 15 individuals and injured 170 workers. A U.S. Department of Energy study cited deficiencies in the safety culture at BP as the root cause of the incident. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) fined BP $87 million after conducting a safety audit of the refinery in 2009, despite BP’s claim that they had spent $1 billion improving the refinery. OSHA inspectors discovered problems with pressure-relief values during a 2006 inspection at BP’s refinery in Toledo, Ohio, that the company jointly owned with Husky Oil. When OSHA returned to the Toledo facility in 2009, its inspectors determined that BP had replaced the problem valves that OSHA had cited in the 2006 inspection, but not other valves that suffered from the same problem. BP’s safety performance at Prudhoe Bay in the Alaskan North Slope field has also raised concerns. In 2006, over 5,000 barrels of oil leaked from corroded pipelines there in two separate incidents; the leakage was attributed to poor maintenance and inadequate inspections. In 2011, BP agreed to settle a civil lawsuit over these spills for $25 million, after having previously paid a $20 million fine for violating the Clean Water Act.

To address these concerns, the BP Board of Directors replaced CEO John Browne with Tony Hayward in May 2007. Hayward was often quoted as saying he had two primary challenges, to cut costs and to improve the company’s safety record, both of which were below industry standards. However, BP continued to have problems. The Macondo spill was preceded by a small spill at its Atlantis platform in the Gulf of Mexico in 2008. The spill—only 193 barrels—was caused by a rupture in a piece of steel tubing, which was connected to a defective pump, which the
company had chosen not to repair to control costs. Company executives praised employees for the lean operations at the Atlantis operation—4 percent below budget—instead of criticizing them for the spill. Its North Slope operations also continued to experience problems. In September 2008, two segments of pipe flew 900 feet after a high-pressure natural gas pipeline ruptured. That pipeline had not been inspected for more than a decade. A two-foot gash in an oil pipeline in November 2009 resulted in a 1,000 barrel-spill of oil, gas, and water, damaging the tundra. Poor or deferred maintenance again appears to be the culprit.

BP’s commitment to safety was further called into question when it suspended Phil Dziubinski. BP’s ethics and compliance officer in Alaska—a position the company created as part of its renewed commitment to safety—the day after the Macondo well exploded. The company claimed the action was part of a corporate reorganization in which 200 of its professional staff were let go. Dziubinski believes he was drummed out of the company for pushing safety issues too aggressively. He was particularly concerned that the company’s heavy use of overtime was endangering safety because of worker fatigue. Dziubinski filed suit against BP for wrongful dismissal. The case was later settled out of court. Despite its safety performance, BP executives continue to assert that “BP’s absolute No. 1 priority is safe and reliable operations.”

Case Questions

5-29. BP replaced the deficient pressure-relief valves identified by OSHA during a 2006 inspection of its Toledo refinery. It did not replace valves suffering similar problems that OSHA inspectors did not identify. Was such a decision legal? Was such a decision ethical?

5-30. What would you have done if you were the manager of the Toledo refinery?

5-31. Suppose you (the manager of the Toledo refinery) had just received a memo from corporate headquarters that your plant operating costs were over budget. Would that affect your answer?

5-32. Should BP put safety first or profits first?

5-33. Some critics have argued that BP’s commitment to safety was inadequate, despite the company’s statements to the contrary. Suppose that critics were correct. If you were the new CEO of BP and were genuinely committed to improving safety, what steps would you take to do improve BP’s safety culture?


MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

5-34. Discuss the primary challenges facing international business in managing CSR across borders.

5-35. What is the triple bottom line? How should international businesses balance these three components? Is the balance point the same for all businesses?

5-36. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


4. See Norman Barry, Business Ethics (West Lafayette, IN: Purdue University Press, 1999).


24. World Bank, World Development Indicators database, June 24, 2013.


36. “A louder blast from Japan’s whistle-blowers,” Businessweek, September 2, 2002 (online).


KFC in China

KFC opened its first Western-style restaurant in Beijing in 1987. It has rapidly expanded using a blend of franchising and localization strategies. It has grown from small beginnings to become China’s largest foreign fast food chain. It has over 2,200 branches in 450 Chinese cities. It is a far bigger enterprise than any of the other multinational fast food chains that have tried to trade in the potentially high-risk Chinese market.

The first KFC store in China was opened close to Tiananmen Square. It is still the largest KFC outlet worldwide. Such has been the transition in fortunes for KFC and other multinational fast food outlets that initially, when they were opened, the most frequent customers were foreigners living in China. Local consumers could not afford to eat there. Yum Brands owns the KFC and Pizza Hut brands locally. It quickly discovered that it is not enough to rely on a well-known foreign brand name to ensure growth. Instead, it is important to adapt to local tastes and lifestyles. KFC has, therefore, adapted its menu by adding a variety of dishes that are familiar to the Chinese.

Year-on-year, Yum Brands’ sales in China have increased; it was the first foreign fast food company to move into China, and including the Pizza Hut stores, has 2,500 branches with annual sales of $2 billion. The closest multinational competitor is McDonald’s with just 900 branches. There is still considerable room for expansion. The branches offer traditional Chinese dishes. Initially, the novelty of KFC restaurants won over many Chinese customers. Fast food was considered to be exotic and Chinese consumers were curious. At first, KFC took advantage of the situation, charging relatively high prices. By the mid-1990s, there were about 100 fast food restaurants around Beijing. It quickly became obvious that the market was not growing fast enough, as many believed that the food was not as good as their own Chinese cuisine. During Chinese festivals traditional Chinese restaurants were full to bursting, while KFC restaurants and McDonald’s were almost empty. There were a number of reasons for this—some economic,
some social and others ideological—but culture played the most important role. The Chinese have a traditional culture of food and drinks and fast food could not compare with it. Once the curiosity of the new fast food restaurants had waned, Chinese people returned to their own cuisine. In order to first survive and then to prosper, KFC had to combine the elements of the two different cuisine cultures. In other words, it had to absorb elements of Chinese cuisine.

In 2001, KFC introduced Chinese food to their menus. They started with preserved Sichuan pickle and shredded pork soup. This was a success and mushroom rice, tomato and egg soup and Peking chicken rolls were also added to the menu. McDonald’s tried to follow suit by modifying the design of the restaurants, and adding distinctly Chinese-style soups to their menu. In effect, both KFC and McDonald’s had developed intercultural management. They had retained American business culture but supplemented it with Chinese traditional culture. The businesses had used localization strategies to reinterpret American business culture.

Why then, is KFC more popular in China than McDonald’s? Certainly, KFC has stressed that their own version of fast food is far healthier than other fast food options. In addition, China is an enormous consumer of fried chicken and customers prefer it to hamburgers. KFC also has a far more Chinese-specific menu than McDonald’s and, finally, KFC has made great use of deals and coupons and around 50 percent of their customers use these to purchase food from their branches.

On January 16, 2004, KFC had opened its one thousandth restaurant in China. The success of KFC was certainly linked to both its franchise policy and the scientific nature of its managerial operations. This was known as CHAMPS. It measures operational basics of Cleanliness, Hospitality, Accuracy, Maintenance, Product quality and Speed.

From the outset, KFC took advantage of the political changes in China and the different approach of the government that began to welcome Western investors. KFC certainly had a synergy with China from the very beginning. The poultry industry in China was one of the major priorities of the agricultural modernization plans and KFC, as a predominantly poultry food chain, gained enormous support from the Chinese government.

Financially, KFC’s entry into the Chinese market came at an ideal time. PepsiCo had only recently purchased the company and the business now had enormous financial muscle. The market potential in China was enormous and chicken was not only more popular, but cheaper and more widely available than beef. KFC also had the ideal image as far as the Chinese consumer was concerned; the clean branches were considered to be hygienic and KFC stressed the high levels of quality and service throughout all of their outlets.

There were, however, some weaknesses and potential threats. The Chinese government provides far more support to businesses that are bringing technology into their country and KFC was a service provider. The setting up of each new restaurant was a high-cost venture and initially KFC had problems in ensuring high-quality supplies from local producers. Human resource management was difficult in a culture where family contacts are often used to obtain sought-after jobs. There was also a lack of Chinese-speaking store outlet managers and initially there were problems with the management and local employees. KFC’s imposed quality standards were at variance with Chinese partners, who believed that they knew what Chinese customers wanted more than KFC.

In order to adapt and cater to the Chinese market, KFC’s strategy was to offer a blend of Western-style products, which would appeal to younger consumers eager to try foreign food, while at the same time developing traditional Chinese-style fast food. The net outcome was a mix of both East and West, with Chinese seafood and Hong Kong milk tea sitting alongside orange juice, fries and Western chicken burgers. The U.S. brand image was retained, which was consistent with KFC’s globalization policy, but the incorporation of Chinese side dishes was a key localization strategy.

One of the major cultural differences between the United States and China is the perceived gulf between American individualism and Chinese collectivism. Taking this into account, it was obviously a key influence on the advertising and on the strategies used by KFC in China. Individualism emphasizes achievement, freedom, competition, pleasure and independence. On the other hand, collectivism suggests security, hierarchy, cooperation, low competition and interdependence. Harmony and conformity are also a crucial element of collectivism. KFC, therefore, had to adapt its advertising, in order to communicate how their products would satisfy these customer needs. The first key aspect was to become family- and group-orientated. Commercials promoted the KFC bucket, which could be enjoyed by the whole family; this fitted well with the value systems in China. Big families with three generations and relatives were targeted in the advertisements. As far as groups were concerned, KFC commercials targeted friends and work colleagues having fun. KFC also used emotional appeal which would find resonance in the Chinese market. They focused on patriotism, respect for the elderly, cherishing the young, friendship and romantic love.

In December 2003, KFC made a major mistake when it promoted a new chicken wrap. It featured an empty Cantonese restaurant and a packed KFC outlet which led to a massive public outcry; KFC was accused of being arrogant and there was considerable backlash. KFC has since been extremely careful to avoid offending Chinese culture.

As with any foreign product or service, there is always the question of cultural imperialism and the fact that Western-style fast food can be seen as an invisible cultural invasion that is trying to overwhelm traditional Chinese culture. The Chinese were particularly concerned about the influence of fast food on the young and whether it would, in effect, separate the young from their own cultural heritage. Much of this attitude has changed, as China is no longer isolationist and...
there is no longer a fascination for fast food just because it is foreign. KFC is a prime example of how its convenience fits in with Chinese lifestyle and the fact that it has adapted to the fast pace of modern Chinese life. Understandably, there have also been health concerns and in China there was a belief that too much fast food would cause obesity and other health problems. So far, KFC has tried to mitigate any particular problems in relation to health issues by focusing on the nutritional value. KFC’s success in China has undoubtedly been a result of understanding the country and its culture. The company has recognized that the host culture is an important consideration and cannot be overwhelmed by standardized global marketing and advertising. Undoubtedly, KFC is the most popular international brand in China. The localization strategy has certainly worked. Yum Brands is also trying to replicate the success with KFC across their other brands. Sam Su, Vice Chairman of Yum Brands, believes that Pizza Hut will be the next major success story. China has rising incomes and economic growth – both key drivers in helping Pizza Hut to become a major brand.

Taco Bell is also being tested in the Chinese market, with a test restaurant in Shanghai. They hope the model will work across China and if it does it will be the next big success story.

**Case Questions**

P1-1. Real Kung Fu is a Chinese fast food chain with around 200 stores across China. What are their short-term growth plans, and possible problems?
P1-2. Where is Yum Brands based, and which countries does the Yum China’s division cover?
P1-3. When did KFC open its first ever drive-through restaurant, and how many Pizza Hut home delivery services are operating in mainland China?
P1-4. Yum Brands aims to replicate the success of KFC with Pizza Hut and Taco Bell. Suggest steps they might take to achieve this.


**A Pipeline of Good Intentions**

Development economists and poverty specialists often talk about the “oil curse,” a phrase reflecting the numerous instances when the discovery of oil in poor countries has paradoxically led to increases in poverty and social problems. When oil was discovered in the Doba basin in southern Chad in the 1990s, many predicted the oil curse would strike Chad as well. Chad, which is primarily desert with few natural resources, is one of the poorest countries on earth. With only a few hundred doctors to serve a population of 11 million, one-third of its children suffer from malnutrition. Since gaining independence from France in 1960, the country has been plagued by dictatorships and civil wars, as well as invasions by Libya and incursions by Sudanese rebel groups. Four times French troops have had to be sent to the former colony to restore a semblance of order.

Although the Doba basin was estimated to hold 2 billion barrels of oil, Chad is landlocked. To get the oil to market, an expensive, 650-mile (1,070-kilometer) pipeline would have to be built from Chad to a port in Cameroon, where the oil could then be shipped from the Gulf of Guinea to world markets (see Map 5.2). Despite a relatively low royalty rate to be paid to Chad’s government—one-eighth of the value...
of production—the consortium of foreign companies who had discovered the oil field—Exxon Mobil, PETRONAS of Malaysia, and Chevron—were hesitant to develop the Doba basin because of the political risks of operating in Chad, the costliness of the pipeline, and the low quality of the oil produced there.

The consortium members and the governments of Chad and Cameroon approached the World Bank to provide financing for the $4.1 billion project. In 1999, the World Bank agreed to provide $400 million of financing; the oil companies anted up $3.5 billion. Exxon Mobil, which operates the wells, supplied 40 percent; Chevron put up 25 percent; and PETRONAS of Malaysia, 35 percent. The remaining funds were supplied by the European Investment Bank. The pipeline itself was to be owned and operated by two joint-venture companies, one in Chad and one in Cameroon. The two governments owned minority interests in their respective companies, with a majority stake in both taken by the consortium of oil companies.

Although the World Bank’s share of the $4.1 billion cost was small, its participation in the deal was critical. Because the World Bank had other loans outstanding to Chad, Exxon Mobil and the other oil companies believed that its participation would lower their political risks, for Chad would be unlikely to jeopardize its relationship with this lending institution. However, two recent World Bank presidents, James Wolfensohn and Paul Wolfowitz, were growing increasingly concerned about corruption’s corrosive impact on economic development. This issue was certainly germane to Chad. Transparency International, an NGO that annually conducts surveys of corruption, ranks Chad’s government as one of the most corrupt in Africa. Facilitating corruption was the lack of accountability and transparency in the use of oil revenues by many governments. And the revenues generated by the pipeline would provide sufficient temptation; over its estimated 25-year life, the project was expected to yield $2 billion for Chad and $500 million for Cameroon.

Given these circumstances, the World Bank agreed to lend money for the project only if it received assurances that the revenues from the oil field would be devoted to alleviating the country’s poverty. To gain the World Bank’s approval for the loan, Chad agreed to enact the Petroleum Revenue Management Law. Under this law, Chad’s royalties were to be deposited in an escrow account at Citibank’s London branch. Ten percent of the royalties were to be put in a separate fund to benefit future generations of Chadians. The remaining royalty revenues were to be spent according to a formula—15 percent for general governmental needs, 80 percent for health and education services, and 5 percent in the oil-producing region, Doba.

For the first several years of the program, everything went according to plan. The oil companies drilled more than 200 wells in Doba, and soon oil was flowing through the pipeline. The pipeline boosted the local economy and the government’s coffers. The pipeline employs 7,300 people in Chad, 83 percent of whom are Chad nationals; the comparable numbers for Cameroon are 1,100 and 90 percent. The pipeline consortium also sponsored a variety of health initiatives, including anti-cholera, antimalaria, and HIV/AIDS awareness programs. Exxon has purchased more than $2 billion from local suppliers and refurbished 300 miles of local roads and bridges. The company also funded the construction of several local clinics, which treat more than 12,000 patients a year. In its first year of production, the pipeline generated $131 million for Chad’s government, about 42 percent of its budget. By mid-2006, Chad had earned $537 million from the pipeline. Of these monies, $295 million had been directed to the priority sectors of health, education, and road rehabilitation, and $19 million had been devoted to community-development projects in the Doba region, where the oil fields were located.

Unfortunately, Chad’s government began to suffer budget difficulties. President Idriss Déby argued that his government could no longer honor its deal with the World Bank, in part because of the rising costs of administering to the flood of refugees fleeing the conflict in the Darfur region of neighboring Sudan. In December 2005 Chad’s National Assembly voted to amend the Petroleum Revenue Management Law. The new amendments abolished the special fund that would preserve oil revenues for the benefit of future generations. In addition, the legislation doubled the percentage of oil revenues that the country could spend without outside oversight to 30 percent. It also added national security to the priority areas of education, health, and road rehabilitation.

The World Bank acted swiftly in response to this legislation, which it viewed as abandoning Chad’s obligations under the agreement. In January 2006, it suspended all new grants and loans to Chad and cut off additional disbursements under existing projects with Chad. The World Bank’s actions affected some $124 million in undisbursed funds in eight Bank-funded projects with Chad. To make matters worse, in April 2006, a rebel army, allegedly backed by the government of Sudan, attacked N’Djamena, Chad’s capital. Although this incursion was defeated, it heightened the resolve of President Déby to relax the constraints on the oil revenues.

The Exxon-led consortium was now caught in the middle. It decided to withhold all revenues until the dispute between the World Bank and Chad’s government was resolved. However, President Déby announced that if the consortium failed to deliver the funds to Chad’s government, he would demand that oil production cease in Doba. Ultimately, the consortium could lose its rights to operate in the country. However, if the consortium delivered the funds to the Déby government, it faced the wrath of the World Bank and various activist groups like Transparency International.
Case Questions

P1-5. What is the “oil curse”? Why do you think it develops?

P1-6. Why was the World Bank’s participation in the Chad-Cameroon pipeline critical?

P1-7. Does the World Bank have a right to demand that sovereign countries like Chad spend their oil revenues in ways the World Bank deems appropriate?

P1-8. If the World Bank and Chad’s government fail to settle their dispute over amendments to the Petroleum Revenue Management Law, what should the consortium do? Should they make funds available to Chad’s government in defiance of the World Bank’s wishes?

P1-9. Subsequent to the signing of the pipeline agreement, world oil prices have increased substantially. Given the abject poverty of Chad, should the oil companies offer to increase the royalties paid to Chad’s government once its dispute with the World Bank is settled?

P1-10. In September 2008, Chad repaid all of the World Bank’s loans, effectively nullifying all of the pledges it made to the bank regarding the use of its oil revenues. Had the various actors known that would happen when the project was first conceived, should they have proceeded in the first place?


The Oil Curse

Development economists and poverty specialists often view the discovery of oil as a curse rather than a blessing. Consider the case of Nigeria. Its 162 million citizens make it Africa’s most populous country. Declared a British protectorate in 1914, it is home to more than 250 ethnic groups, although four groups—the Hausa and Fulani in northern Nigeria (29 percent), the Yoruba in the southwest (21 percent), and the Igbo (Ibo) and Ijaw in the southeast (18 percent and 10 percent, respectively)—account for the majority of the population.

Oil was first discovered in the Niger Delta in 1958, shortly before Nigeria became an independent nation in 1960. In 1967 the Ibo and other ethnic groups in the southeastern coastal region attempted to secede from Nigeria, declaring their lands the Republic of Biafra. Biafra’s secession met with fierce opposition from the Hausa/Fulani and Yoruba leadership, who quickly realized that an independent Biafra would control the Niger Delta oil fields and the area’s primary source of revenue. Federal troops suppressed the secession attempt in a bloody, two-year war. A cease-fire was instituted in early 1970, and Biafra was reabsorbed into Nigeria.

The Nigerian oil industry, then as now, is centered on Port Harcourt in the Niger Delta. Capable of producing 2.4 million barrels of oil a day, Nigeria is Africa’s largest oil producer. Oil revenues account for 95 percent of the country’s exports, 20 percent of its gross domestic product (GDP), and 80 percent of the government’s revenues. However, the country remains poor, with an estimated per capita income of $1,280 and a life expectancy at birth of only 52.

Unfortunately, during its brief history Nigeria has been plagued by high levels of corruption, fueled in part by the misuse of its oil revenues. Nor has Nigeria been blessed with good governments. Among the worst was the military regime of Sani Abacha, a dictator who ruled the country from 1993 to 1998. One of the low points of Abacha’s reign was the sham trial and execution of Ken Saro-Wiwa, a political activist who fought to protect the environment and the human rights of the people in the Niger Delta. After 16 years of military government, in 1999 Olusegun Obasanjo was elected president of the country in what has been described as a relatively fair election by local standards. He was reelected in 2003. In 2007, he was succeeded by Umaru Musa Yar’Adua in an election that international observers characterized as tainted. Yar’Adua died in office in 2010; his vice-president, Jonathan Goodluck, became president and was subsequently elected as president in 2011 in a relatively clean election.

Local citizens in the Niger Delta have benefited little from the oil boom. Despite the wealth generated by the Niger Delta’s oil fields, much of the local population lives in desperate poverty, lacking adequate hospitals, schools, and electricity. Pollution from drilling operations and inevitable spills have despoiled the local mangrove swamps and harmed the fisheries and the fishing industry that depends on them.

Although Presidents Obasanjo, Yar’Adua, and Goodluck have tried to address the issues raised by community leaders
in the Niger Delta, violence is increasingly supplanting political dialogue. In 2002, hundreds of Nigerian women invaded Chevron’s oil processing facilities on Escravos Island, demanding that the company provide schools, clinics, and jobs for the local citizens; three months previously a Chevron offshore drilling platform was the target of a similarly motivated raid.

In 2004, a rebel group called the Niger Delta People’s Volunteer Force demanded that foreign oil companies terminate their operations in the area or face the threat of all-out war. Armed militias clashed with government forces in Port Harcourt and the surrounding Rivers State, leading to the deaths of several hundred Nigerians and making it more difficult for Shell, Chevron, and other oil companies to maintain and repair their facilities and produce and transport their products. The group’s stated aim is to liberate the local Ijaw people from control of the central government and allow the Ijaws to benefit from the oil wealth that their region generates. The Nigerian government dismissed such claims, scoffing that the group was nothing more than a front for oil thieves.

There is little doubt that much oil thievery takes place in the Niger Delta. Armed gangs divert as much as 5 percent of the oil through a practice called bunkering, maneuvering small boats at night to siphon off oil from lightly guarded pipelines in remote areas. Shell estimates it loses 60,000 barrels a day from such thefts, and that total thefts may reach 150,000 barrels a day—some $6 billion in lost revenue a year. The stolen oil eventually reaches the international market, first passing through layers of middlemen. Human rights activists, however, claim the problem is not limited to local thugs, alleging that the army, the police, local politicians, and even the oil companies participate in bunkering schemes. Such lawlessness costs more than money. In 2006, nearly 200 villagers were killed when a gasoline pipeline exploded in Inagbe, a fishing community 30 miles east of Lagos. Officials believe the explosion occurred because of the common practice of puncturing the pipeline to siphon off gasoline.

The security situation continued to deteriorate. In early 2006, the commander of another group, the Movement for the Emancipation of the Niger Delta (MEND), declared total war on foreign oil operations. MEND demanded the return of control of Nigeria’s oil wealth to the region where it is produced and the release of two ethnic Ijaw leaders being held by the central government on money laundering and treason charges. To further its goals, it sabotaged oil-pumping stations, attacked transport barges, and kidnapped foreign oil workers, snatching them from offshore drilling rigs. MEND’s actions have cut production in the Niger Delta by 455,000 barrels a day, costing the government, the industry, and the country billions of dollars of lost revenues. Shell, for example, abandoned one field in the southern Niger Delta producing 115,000 barrels per day, citing safety concerns for its employees.

Nor is the violence limited to MEND. In May 2006, three expatriate employees of ENI, the Italian oil company, were kidnapped in Port Harcourt, and a U.S. employee of Baker Hughes was murdered in that city. In June 2006 eight foreign oil workers were kidnapped from an oil rig located 40 miles offshore operated by a subsidiary of Norway’s Fred Olsen Energy Company. The eight were released a day later. MEND claimed it was not responsible for the murder or the kidnappings, alleging that another group had done so, motivated by the lure of ransom money. However, later in the week, MEND, the Niger Delta People’s Volunteer Force, and another group, the Martyrs Brigade, launched a coordinated, 10-boat-strong attack on an oil facility in Port Harcourt, destroying a drilling rig, sinking two naval vessels, killing several soldiers, and abducting five South Korean workers. Six Chevron employees were kidnapped victims in May 2007; fortunately they were released a month later unharmed. In 2008, MEND launched an assault on Shell’s Bonga oil platform, located about 75 miles (120 kilometers) offshore, thereby serving notice that no oil facility was safe from its attacks. In 2009, MEND and the government agreed to an amnesty. Although violence has diminished, other rebel groups, some led by former MEND officials, rejected the peacemaking initiative. For example, in November 2010, seven workers were kidnapped off an Exxon offshore oil platform, while an onshore oil rig owned by Italy’s AGIP was bombed in March 2011.

As if this operating environment were not difficult enough, the reputation of the oil companies operating in the region has also come under attack. Royal Dutch Shell has drawn the bulk of the blame by Western activists and local citizens, although other Western companies, such as Chevron, have been targeted as well. Environmental groups and NGOs such as Global Exchange and Essential Action have argued that the oil companies are taking advantage of lax enforcement of environmental laws to pollute the area and ignore the damage caused by oil and gasoline spills. Other activists have argued that Shell has alleged sabotage of the pipelines to cover up spills resulting from the company’s lack of maintenance. Human rights activists claim the foreign oil companies are complicit in human rights violations by the Nigerian government as it attempts to suppress political dissent and insurgent activity in the region.

Case Questions

P1-11. Assess the political risks facing foreign oil companies operating in the Niger Delta. Should they shut down operations in the area until security improves?

P1-12. What is the responsibility of Western oil companies such as Royal Dutch Shell and Chevron to the local community?
P1-13. What responsibility does a drilling company such as Fred Olsen Energy have to its employees? In the case of kidnappings motivated by profit, should a company pay ransom?

P1-14. Is the discovery of oil a blessing or a curse?

PART 2  The International Environment

CHAPTER 6

International Trade and Investment

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:
1. Understand the motivation for international trade.
2. Summarize and discuss the differences among the classical country-based theories of international trade.
3. Use the modern firm-based theories of international trade to describe global strategies adopted by businesses.
4. Describe and categorize the different forms of international investment.
5. Explain the reasons for foreign direct investment.
6. Summarize how supply, demand, and political factors influence foreign direct investment.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
TRADE IS BLOSSOMING

Did you ever wonder where those red roses you gave or received on Valentine's Day came from? If you are a North American, they probably were grown on a mountainside in Colombia or Ecuador. If you are European, they might have come from Ethiopia or Kenya. And if you are Asian, their origin may be Kunming, a city in the rural province of Yunnan, China. Although most recipients of floral bouquets give little thought to where their beautiful blooms are grown, they are beneficiaries of the blossoming international trade in flowers and plants. Once the domain of small mom-and-pop growers focused on serving local markets, the globalization of the floriculture industry is driven by the forces we discussed in Chapter 1: technological change, trade liberalization, the desire to leverage core competencies, and the need to respond to new competitors. The supply chains and technology needed to bring fresh cut roses or mums to a loved one are no less sophisticated than those used by high-tech manufacturers of smartphones, personal computers, and big-screen TVs.

The Netherlands has long been the center of the international commercial flower industry. Dutch farmers began to use greenhouses to grow fruits, flowers, and vegetables during medieval times. Its universities, growers, and floral research centers have been leaders for centuries in developing new breeds of plants. The Dutch remain the most important exporters of flowers and plants, with about 65 percent of the world export market. Much of the country’s prominence is attributable to FloraHolland, the most important flower auctioneer in the world. Structured as a cooperative owned by its 5,000 members (primarily growers), FloraHolland was created in 2008 through the merger of six of the country’s flower auction markets, the largest of which was Aalsmeer (near Schipol Airport), followed by Naaldwijk and Rijnsburg. In 2011, FloraHolland auctioned more than 12.5 billion plants and flowers worth €4.2 billion. Cut flowers accounted for about 57 percent of these revenues. Not surprisingly, roses were the most important flower, with auction sales valued at €761 million, followed by chrysanthemums and tulips. Most of its cut flowers are destined for European Union (EU) markets; potted plants and bulbs, being less fragile, have a wider market. For example, the U.S. market absorbs about a quarter of Dutch bulb exports.

Such statistics, however, do not tell the whole story of FloraHolland’s significance. Its large trading volumes have allowed it to create a futures market in tulips, roses, and other flowers. By purchasing a flower future, large flower wholesalers can advertise and market flowers for delivery to their clients over the coming months without fear that unexpected changes in flower prices might wipe out their profits when they actually take delivery and pay for the flowers. The availability of flower futures attracts more buyers and sellers to the FloraHolland exchanges, thus increasing their transaction volumes and the liquidity of the market.

To expand its influence beyond the regional market, the flower exchange has integrated e-commerce into its auction system. Now buyers from Germany, France, and other European countries can monitor tulip, rose, and chrysanthemum auctions from their home computers without having to travel to Aalsmeer. The auction’s website can also be used to place orders. By melding new technologies with its traditional auction methods, FloraHolland is ensuring that it will continue to play a critical role in the international flower market.

These adaptations are important, because Dutch growers face high labor and land costs, which have created opportunities for growers in other countries. Colombian farmers have benefited from their lower costs, geographic location, and favorable climates to become the primary source of cut flowers to the North American market, accounting for more than half of the flowers imported by U.S. flower wholesalers and retailers. Neighboring Ecuador specializes in roses, which its climate favors. Kenya and Ethiopia are becoming important providers for the European market. China—particularly the city of Kunming in Yunnan province—is growing as a supplier to the Asian market. The Chinese government has encouraged the growth of the industry through low interest loans on greenhouses and refrigerated trucks. Dutch, Korean, and Japanese companies have started to invest in the area, believing it provides a lower cost source of flowers for the Asian market. The domestic Chinese market is also expanding rapidly, in line with the growth of the country’s middle class.

The growing international trade in flowers and plants has impacted other industries. The airline industry has been quick to adapt to the changing needs of the floricultural industry. Flowers are perishable, so the reliability of scheduled air service is critical to the buyers’ needs. Moreover, most passenger carriers have unused cargo space after accommodating travelers’ baggage. Flowers also have a high value-to-weight ratio and are packed in small boxes that easily fit into the cargo hold of a modern jet airliner. And once the flowers arrive at their destination airport, specialized transporters are needed to ensure that flowers are kept refrigerated from the airport to the wholesaler or retailer, creating new opportunities for innovative trucking companies and providers of logistics services to prosper.1
FloraHolland and its members are prime examples of the firms throughout the world who have used technology, knowledge, and the resources at their disposal to compete successfully in the global marketplace. In this chapter we analyze the underlying economic forces that shape and structure the international business transactions conducted by firms in the floriculture industry and in thousands of other industries. We discuss the major theories that explain and predict international trade and investment activity. These theories help firms sharpen their global business strategies, identify promising export and investment opportunities, and react to threats posed by foreign competitors. As they introduce you to the economic environment in which firms compete, the theories help you understand why Dutch floriculture firms, despite their high labor costs, have proved to be so successful in international markets.

**International Trade and the World Economy**

*Trade* is the voluntary exchange of goods, services, assets, or money between one person or organization and another. Because it is voluntary, both parties to the transaction must believe they will gain from the exchange or else they would not complete it. *International trade* is trade between residents of two countries. The residents may be individuals, firms, not-for-profit organizations, or other forms of associations.

Why does international trade occur? The answer follows directly from our definition of trade: Both parties to the transaction, who happen to reside in two different countries, believe they benefit from the voluntary exchange. Behind this simple truth lies much economic theory, business practice, government policy, and international conflict—topics we cover in this and the next four chapters.

As Figure 6.1 indicates, world trade has grown dramatically in the more than half-century since the end of World War II. Total international merchandise trade in 2012 was $18.4 trillion, or approximately 26 percent of the world’s $71.7 trillion gross domestic product (GDP); trade in services that year amounted to $4.4 trillion. The EU, the United States, Canada, and Japan accounted for 46.8 percent of the world’s merchandise exports (see Figure 6.2); China,
Trade benefits both parties to the transactions. If not, why would each agree to the deal?

International trade in goods and services has grown rapidly in the past three decades. For further consideration: How does international trade affect your standard of living?

Classical Country-Based Trade Theories

The first theories of international trade developed with the rise of the great European nation-states during the sixteenth century. Not surprisingly, these early theories focused on the individual country in examining patterns of exports and imports. As we discuss in more detail later in this chapter, these country-based theories are particularly useful for describing trade in commodities—standardized, undifferentiated goods such as oil, sugar, or lumber that are typically bought on the basis of price rather than brand name. However, as multinational corporations (MNCs) rose to power in the middle of the twentieth century, scholars shifted their attention to the firm’s role in promoting international trade. The firm-based theories developed after World War II are useful in describing patterns of trade in differentiated goods—those such as automobiles, consumer electronics, and personal care products, for which brand name is an important component of the customer’s purchase decision. In this section, we examine the classical country-based theories of international trade; in the next section, we explore the more modern firm-based theories.

Mercantilism

Mercantilism is a sixteenth-century economic philosophy that maintains that a country’s wealth is measured by its holdings of gold and silver. According to mercantilists, a country’s goal should be to enlarge these holdings by promoting exports and discouraging imports. The logic was transparent to sixteenth-century policymakers: If foreigners buy more goods from you...
than you buy from them, then the foreigners have to pay you the difference in gold and silver, enabling you to amass more treasure. Mercantilist terminology is still used today, for example, when television commentators and newspaper headlines report that a country suffered an “unfavorable” balance of trade—that is, its exports were less than its imports.

At the time mercantilism seemed to be sound economic policy. Large gold and silver holdings meant the reigning monarchs could afford to hire armies to fight other countries and thereby expand their realms. Politically, mercantilism was popular with many manufacturers and their workers. Export-oriented manufacturers favored mercantilist trade policies, such as those establishing subsidies or tax rebates, which stimulated sales to foreigners. Domestic manufacturers threatened by foreign imports endorsed mercantilist trade policies, such as those imposing tariffs or quotas, which protected the manufacturers from foreign competition. These businesses, their workers, their suppliers, and the local politicians representing the communities in which the manufacturers had production facilities all praised the wisdom of the monarchs’ mercantilist policies.

Most members of society, however, are hurt by such policies. Governmental subsidies of the exports of certain industries are paid by taxpayers in the form of higher taxes. Governmental import restrictions are paid for by consumers in the form of higher prices because domestic firms face less competition from foreign producers. During the age of imperialism, governments often shifted the burden of mercantilist policies onto their colonies. For example, under the Navigation Act of 1660 all European goods imported by the American colonies had to be shipped from Great Britain. The British prohibited colonial firms from exporting certain goods that might compete with those from British factories, such as hats, finished iron goods, and woolens. To ensure adequate supplies of low-cost inputs for British merchants, the British required some colonial industries to sell their output only to British firms. This output included rice, tobacco, and naval stores (forest products used in shipbuilding). This particular mercantilist strategy ultimately backfired—it contributed to the grievances that led to the overthrow of the British Crown in the American colonies.

Because mercantilism does benefit certain members of society, mercantilist policies are still politically attractive to some firms and their workers. Modern supporters of such policies, called neomercantilists or protectionists, include such diverse U.S. groups as the American Federation of Labor–Congress of Industrial Organizations, textile manufacturers, steel companies, sugar growers, and peanut farmers.

Protectionist attitudes are not limited to the United States. North Americans and Europeans have long complained that Japan limits the access of foreign goods to its market. For instance, it took 40 years of negotiations before Japan grudgingly agreed in the 1990s to allow the importation of foreign rice, and even then it limited rice imports to less than 10 percent of its market. Asian and North American firms criticize the Europeans for imposing barriers against imported goods such as beef, bananas, and other agricultural products. Such finger-pointing is amply justified: Nearly every country has adopted some neomercantilist policies to protect key industries in its economy.

**Absolute Advantage**

Neomercantilism has superficial appeal, particularly to patriots who want to strengthen their country’s economy. Why should a country not try to maximize its holdings of gold and silver? According to Adam Smith, the Scottish economist who is viewed as the father of free-market economics, mercantilism’s basic problem is that it confuses the acquisition of treasure with the acquisition of wealth. In *An Inquiry into the Nature and Causes of the Wealth of Nations* (1776), Smith attacked the intellectual basis of mercantilism and demonstrated that it actually weakens a country because it robs individuals of the ability to trade freely and to benefit from voluntary exchanges. Moreover, in the process of avoiding imports at all costs, a country must squander its resources producing goods it is not suited to produce. The inefficiencies caused by mercantilism reduce the wealth of the country as a whole, even though certain special interest groups may benefit.

Smith advocated free trade among countries as a means of enlarging a country’s wealth. Free trade enables a country to expand the amount of goods and services available to it by specializing in the production of some goods and services and trading for others. But which goods and services should a country export and which should it import? To answer this question, Smith developed the **theory of absolute advantage**, which suggests that a country should export those goods and services for which it is more productive than other countries are and import those goods and services for which other countries are more productive than it is.
Absolute advantage can be demonstrated through a numerical example. Assume, for the sake of simplicity, that there are only two countries in the world, France and Japan; only two goods, wine and clock radios; and only one factor of production, labor. Table 6.1 shows the output of the two goods per hour of labor for the two countries. In France one hour of labor can produce either two bottles of wine or three clock radios. In Japan one hour of labor can produce either one bottle of wine or five clock radios. France has an absolute advantage in the production of wine: One hour of labor produces two bottles in France but only one in Japan. Japan has an absolute advantage in the production of clock radios: One hour of labor produces five clock radios in Japan but only three in France.

If France and Japan are able to trade with each other, both will be better off. Suppose France agrees to exchange two bottles of wine for four clock radios. Only 1 hour of French labor is needed to produce the two bottles of wine bound for Japan. In return, France will get four clock radios from Japan. These four clock radios would have required 1.33 hours of French labor had France produced them rather than buy them from Japan. By trading with Japan rather than producing the clock radios itself, France saves 0.33 hour of labor. France can use this freed-up labor to produce more wine, which in turn can be consumed by French citizens or traded to Japan for more clock radios. By allocating its scarce labor to produce goods for which it is more productive than Japan and then trading them to Japan, France can consume more goods than it could have done in the absence of trade.

Japan is similarly better off. Japan uses 0.8 hour of labor to produce the four clock radios to exchange for the two bottles of French wine. Producing the two bottles of wine itself would have required 2 hours of labor. By producing clock radios and then trading them to France, Japan saves 1.2 hours of labor, which can be used to produce more clock radios that the Japanese can consume themselves or trade to France for more wine.

**Comparative Advantage**

The theory of absolute advantage makes intuitive sense. Unfortunately, the theory is flawed. What happens to trade if one country has an absolute advantage in both products? The theory of absolute advantage incorrectly suggests that no trade would occur. David Ricardo, an early-nineteenth-century British economist, solved this problem by developing the theory of **comparative advantage**, which states that a country should produce and export those goods and services for which it is relatively more productive than other countries are and import those goods and services for which other countries are relatively more productive than it is.3

The difference between the two theories is subtle: Absolute advantage looks at absolute productivity differences; comparative advantage looks at relative productivity differences. The distinction occurs because comparative advantage incorporates the concept of opportunity cost in determining which good a country should produce. The **opportunity cost** of a good is the value of what is given up to get the good. Most of us apply the principles of comparative advantage and opportunity cost without realizing it. Consider a brain surgeon who is better at both brain surgery and lawn mowing than her neighbor’s teenaged son is. If the surgeon is comparatively better at surgery than at lawn mowing, she will spend most of her time at the operating table and pay the teenager to mow her lawn. The brain surgeon behaves this way because the opportunity cost of mowing the lawn is too high: Time spent mowing is time unavailable for surgery.

Let us return to the example in Table 6.1 to contrast absolute and comparative advantage. Recall that France has an absolute advantage in wine and Japan has an absolute advantage in clock radios. The theory of absolute advantage says that France should export wine to Japan.
and Japan should export clock radios to France. As Table 6.1 shows, France also has a comparative advantage in wine: With 1 hour of labor it produces 2 times as much wine as Japan does but only 0.6 times as many clock radios. Thus, France is relatively more productive in wine. Japan has a comparative advantage in clock radios: With 1 hour of labor it produces 1.67 times as many clock radios as France does but only 0.5 times as much wine. So Japan is relatively more productive in clock radios. The theory of comparative advantage says that France should export wine to Japan and Japan should export clock radios to France. For the example in Table 6.1, the theory of absolute advantage and the theory of comparative advantage both yield the same outcome.

Now let us change the facts. Suppose productivity stays the same in Japan but doubles in France as the result of new job training programs. Table 6.2 shows this new situation. France now can produce four bottles of wine or six clock radios per hour of labor. France now has an absolute advantage in both wine and clock radios: For each hour of labor, France can produce three more bottles of wine (four minus one) or one more clock radio (six minus five) than Japan can. According to the theory of absolute advantage, no trade should occur because France is more productive than Japan in producing both goods.

The theory of comparative advantage, on the other hand, indicates that trade should still occur. France is 4 times better than Japan is in wine production but only 1.2 times better in clock radio production. (Alternatively, Japan is only 0.25 times as good as France in wine production but 0.83 times as good in clock radio production.) France is comparatively better than Japan in wine production, whereas Japan is comparatively better than France in clock radio production.

By the theory of comparative advantage, France should export wine to Japan and Japan should export clock radios to France. If they do so, both will be better off. In the absence of trade, one bottle of wine will sell for 1.5 clock radios in France and for 5 clock radios in Japan. If Japan offers to trade 2 clock radios for one bottle of wine, France will be better off—even though France has an absolute advantage in clock radio production. Without trade, sacrificing one bottle of wine domestically would yield France only 1.5 clock radios in increased production. With trade, France could get 2 clock radios by giving up one bottle of wine to Japan. France gets more clock radios per bottle of wine given up by trading with Japan than by producing the clock radios domestically.

Japan also gains. Without trade, Japan has to give up five clock radios to get one more bottle of wine. With trade, Japan has to give up only two clock radios to obtain one more bottle. Japan gets more wine per clock radio given up by trading with France than by producing the wine domestically. Even though France has an absolute advantage in both wine and clock radio production, both countries gain from this trade. It is comparative advantage that motivates trade, not absolute advantage. For another insight into comparative advantage and the problems inherent in neomercantilism, see “Bringing the World into Focus.”

**Comparative Advantage with Money**

The lesson of the theory of comparative advantage is simple but powerful: You are better off specializing in what you do relatively best. Produce (and export) those goods and services you are relatively best able to produce, and buy other goods and services from people who are relatively better at producing them than you are.

Of course, Tables 6.1 and 6.2 are both simplistic and artificial. The world economy produces more than two goods and services and is made up of more than two countries. Barriers to trade may exist, someone must pay to transport goods between markets, and inputs other than labor are necessary to produce goods. Even more important, the world economy uses money as
Vietnam’s low labor costs, coupled with fertile soil and abundant rainfall, grant it a comparative advantage in growing rice. Vietnam is the second-largest exporter of rice, after Thailand.

Table 6.3 introduces money into our discussion of trade and incorporates the following assumptions:

1. The output per hour of labor in France and Japan for clock radios and wine is as shown in Table 6.2.
2. The hourly wage rate in France is 12 euros (€).
3. The hourly wage rate in Japan is 1,000 yen (¥).
4. One euro is worth 125 yen.

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

THE LINCOLN FALLACY

Foreign trade policy has been debated by politicians, pundits, and professors for centuries. Proponents of free trade see little distinction between domestic trade and foreign trade: If the voluntary exchange of goods, services, and assets between two residents of the same country is to be encouraged because it benefits both parties to the transaction, the same logic should hold true for voluntary exchanges between a domestic resident and a foreigner. But other groups argue that government policy should favor domestic producers over foreign producers. In their view, foreign trade builds up the economies of foreign countries while weakening the domestic economy. Abraham Lincoln, for example, endorsed this position with his characteristic clarity: “I know this much. When we buy goods manufactured abroad, we get the goods and the foreigner gets the money. When we buy goods manufactured at home, we get both the goods and the money.”

Although Lincoln’s statements may seem like common sense to patriots concerned about strengthening their nation’s economy and promoting job opportunities for their fellow citizens, trade experts find his argument misleading and incomplete. Lincoln is correct in asserting that buying goods from foreign producers sends our money abroad, whereas buying goods from domestic producers keeps our money in our country. What his argument fails to consider is the resources—the factors of... (Continued)
production—needed to create the goods. When we buy goods produced domestically, domestic factors of production, such as labor, land, and natural resources, must be consumed and thus are unavailable for other uses. When we buy goods produced by foreigners, foreign resources are used, leaving the domestic factors of production available to be used for other purposes. That, of course, is the benefit of free trade in the eyes of proponents like Adam Smith and David Ricardo: it allows a country to allocate its domestic resources to produce goods for which the country has a comparative advantage.

Thus, a more complete and appropriate analysis would be: “When we buy goods from domestic producers, we (or our countrymen) get the goods and the money, but to do so we have to consume some of our country’s resources that could have been used to make other goods. When we buy goods from foreign producers, we get the goods and we get to keep the resources that would otherwise be needed to produce those goods domestically; the foreigners get our money, but they have to consume their resources to make the goods they sold to us.” If we use those freed resources to specialize in the production of goods for which we have a comparative advantage—and so do our foreign trading partners—both we and our foreign trading partners will have more goods to consume after we engage in international trade.

The gains from specialization and trade are reflected in how most of us spend our daily lives. As producers, we spend our workweek specializing in providing a single service, whether it is unblocking a drain as a plumber or writing code as a computer programmer. As consumers, we buy almost everything we consume from other specialists. To obtain food, we trade money for groceries from the supermarket; to obtain clothing, we trade money for jeans or shirts from the clothing retailer. It is certainly true that when we purchase our food from the grocer, we get the food and the grocer gets our money, but both of us benefit from this transaction. If we had to grow our own food, we would have to devote more of our time and energies to that task and less time to our own productive specialty, be it computer programming or plumbing. Most of us quickly determine that our standard of living will be higher if we focus our energies on our productive specialty and then trade for goods and services produced by others. This concept applies to countries as well as individuals. By specializing in products for which they have a comparative advantage and trading freely, countries’ productivity increases and, therefore, their citizens have more to consume and a higher standard of living than they would if trade were restricted by tariffs, quotas, and other barriers.

Given these assumptions, in the absence of trade, a bottle of wine in France costs €3, the equivalent of ¥375, and clock radios cost €2, the equivalent of ¥250. In Japan a bottle of wine costs ¥1,000 (€8), and clock radios cost ¥200 (€1.60).

In this case, trade will occur because of the self-interest of individual entrepreneurs (or the opportunity to make a profit) in France and Japan. Suppose buyers for Galeries Lafayette, a major Paris department store, observe that clock radios cost €2 in France and the equivalent of only €1.60 in Japan. To keep their cost of goods low, these buyers will acquire clock radios in Japan, where they are cheap, and sell them in France, where they are expensive. Accordingly, clock radios will be exported by Japan and imported by France, just as the law of comparative advantage predicts. Similarly, wine distributors in Japan observe that a bottle of wine costs ¥1,000 in Japan but the equivalent of only ¥375 in France. To keep their cost of goods as low as possible, buyers for Japanese wine distributors will buy wine in France, where it is cheap, and sell it in Japan, where it is expensive. Wine will be exported by France and imported by Japan, as predicted by the law of comparative advantage.

Note that none of these businessmen needed to know anything about the theory of comparative advantage. They merely looked at the price differences in the two markets and made their business decisions based on the desire to obtain supplies at the lowest possible cost. Yet they benefit from comparative advantage because prices set in a free market reflect a country’s comparative advantage.

TABLE 6.3 The Theory of Comparative Advantage with Money: An Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Cost of Goods in France</th>
<th>Cost of Goods in Japan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>French Made</td>
<td>Japanese Made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wine</td>
<td>€ 3</td>
<td>€ 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock radios</td>
<td>€ 2</td>
<td>€ 1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>¥375</td>
<td>¥1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>¥250</td>
<td>¥200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For example, one hour’s worth of French labor can produce four bottles of wine at a total cost of €12 or an average cost of €3 per bottle. At an exchange rate of 125 yen per euro, a bottle of French-made wine will cost ¥375 (375 = 3 × 125).
Relative Factor Endowments
The theory of comparative advantage begs a broader question: What determines the products for which a country will have a comparative advantage? To answer this question, two Swedish economists, Eli Heckscher and Bertil Ohlin, developed the theory of relative factor endowments, now often referred to as the Heckscher-Ohlin theory. These economists made two basic observations:

1. Factor endowments (or types of resources) vary among countries. For example, Argentina has much fertile land, Saudi Arabia has large crude oil reserves, and Bangladesh has a large pool of unskilled labor.

2. Goods differ according to the types of factors that are used to produce them. For example, wheat requires fertile land, oil production requires crude oil reserves, and apparel manufacturing requires unskilled labor.

From these observations, Heckscher and Ohlin developed their theory: A country will have a comparative advantage in producing products that intensively use resources (factors of production) it has in abundance. Thus, Argentina has a comparative advantage in wheat growing because of its abundance of fertile land; Saudi Arabia has a comparative advantage in oil production because of its abundance of crude oil reserves; and Bangladesh has a comparative advantage in apparel manufacture because of its abundance of unskilled labor.

The Heckscher-Ohlin theory suggests a country should export those goods that intensively use those factors of production that are relatively abundant in the country. The theory was tested empirically after World War II by economist Wassily Leontief using input-output analysis, a mathematical technique for measuring the interrelationships among the sectors of an economy. Leontief believed the United States was a capital-abundant and labor-scarce economy.
Therefore, according to the Heckscher-Ohlin theory, he reasoned that the United States should export capital-intensive goods, such as bulk chemicals and steel, and import labor-intensive goods, such as clothing and footwear.

Leontief used his input-output model of the economy to estimate the quantities of labor and capital needed to produce “bundles” of U.S. exports and imports worth $1 million in 1947 (see Figure 6.3). (Each bundle was a weighted average of all U.S. exports or imports in 1947.) He determined that in 1947 U.S. factories used $2.551 million of capital and 182.3 person-years of labor, or $13,993 of capital per person-year of labor, to produce a bundle of exports worth $1 million. He also calculated that $3.093 million of capital and 170.0 person-years of labor, or $18,194 of capital per person-year of labor, were used to produce a bundle of U.S. imports worth $1 million in that year. Thus, U.S. imports were more capital-intensive than U.S. exports. Imports required $4,201 ($18,194 – $13,993) more in capital per person-year of labor to produce than exports did.

These results were not consistent with the predictions of the Heckscher-Ohlin theory: U.S. imports were nearly 30 percent more capital-intensive than were U.S. exports. The economics profession was distraught. The Heckscher-Ohlin theory made such intuitive sense, yet Leontief’s findings were the reverse of what was expected. Thus was born the **Leontief paradox**.

During the past 60 years numerous economists have repeated Leontief’s initial study in an attempt to resolve the paradox. The first such study was performed by Leontief himself. He thought trade flows might have been distorted in 1947 because much of the world economy was still recovering from World War II. Using 1951 data he found that U.S. imports were 6 percent more capital-intensive than U.S. exports were. Although this figure was less than that in his original study, it still disagreed with the predictions of the Heckscher-Ohlin theory.

Some scholars argue that measurement problems flaw Leontief’s work. Leontief assumed there are two homogeneous factors of production: labor and capital. Yet other factors of production exist, most notably land, human capital, and technology—none of which were included in Leontief’s analysis. Failure to include these factors might have caused him to mismeasure the labor intensity of U.S. exports and imports. Many U.S. exports are intensive in either land (such as agricultural goods) or human knowledge (such as computers, aircraft, and services). Consider the products sold by one of the leading U.S. exporters, Boeing. Leontief’s approach measures the physical capital (the plants, property, and equipment) and the physical labor used to construct Boeing aircraft but fails to gauge adequately the role of human capital and technology in the firm’s operations. Yet human capital (the well-educated engineers who design the aircraft and the highly skilled machinists who assemble it) and technology (the sophisticated management techniques that control the world’s largest assembly lines) are more important to Boeing’s success than mere physical capital and physical labor. Leontief’s failure to measure the role that these other factors of production play in determining international trade patterns may account for his paradoxical results.
Modern Firm-Based Trade Theories

Since World War II, international business research has focused on the role of the firm rather than the country in promoting international trade. Firm-based theories have developed for several reasons: (1) the growing importance of MNCs in the postwar international economy; (2) the inability of the country-based theories to explain and predict the existence and growth of intraindustry trade (defined in the next section); and (3) the failure of Leontief and other researchers to empirically validate the country-based Heckscher-Ohlin theory. Unlike country-based theories, firm-based theories incorporate factors such as quality, technology, brand names, and customer loyalty into explanations of trade flows. Because firms, not countries, are the agents for international trade, the newer theories explore the firm’s role in promoting exports and imports.

Product Life Cycle Theory

Product life cycle theory, which originated in the marketing field to describe the evolution of marketing strategies as a product matures, was modified by Raymond Vernon of the Harvard Business School to create a firm-based theory of international trade (and, as we will see, of international investment). International product life cycle theory traces the roles of innovation, market expansion, comparative advantage, and strategic responses of global rivals in international production, trade, and investment decisions. According to Vernon’s theory, and as illustrated in Figure 6.4, the international product life cycle consists of three stages: new product, maturing product, and standardized product.

In stage 1, the new product stage, a firm develops and introduces an innovative product, such as a photocopier or a personal computer, in response to a perceived need in the domestic market. Because the product is new, the innovating firm is uncertain whether a profitable market for the product exists. The firm’s marketing executives must closely monitor customer reactions to ensure that the new product satisfies consumer needs. Quick market feedback is important, so the product is likely to be initially produced in the country where its research and development occurred, typically a developed country such as Japan, Germany, or the United States. Further, because the market size also is uncertain, the firm usually will minimize its investment in manufacturing capacity for the product. Most output initially is sold in the domestic market, and export sales are limited.

For example, during the early days of the personal computer industry the small producers that populated the industry had their hands full trying to meet the burgeoning demand for their product. Apple Computer typified this problem. Founded on April Fool’s Day in 1976, its initial assembly plant was located in the garage of cofounder Steve Jobs. The first large order for its homemade computers—50 units from a local computer hobbyist store—almost bankrupted the firm because it lacked the financing to buy the necessary parts. Apple survived because of the nurturing environment in which it was born, California’s Silicon Valley. Home to major electronics firms such as Hewlett-Packard, Intel, and National Semiconductor, Silicon Valley was full of electrical engineers who could design and build Apple’s products and venture capitalists who were seeking the “next Xerox.” It was the perfect locale for Apple’s sales to grow from zero in 1976 to $7.8 million in 1978 and $156 billion in 2012.

In stage 2, the maturing product stage, demand for the product expands dramatically as consumers recognize its value. The innovating firm builds new factories to expand its capacity and satisfy domestic and foreign demand for the product. Domestic and foreign competitors begin...
to emerge, lured by the prospect of lucrative earnings. In the case of Apple, the firm introduced a hand-assembled version of its second model, the Apple II, at a San Francisco computer fair in the spring of 1977. Within three years Apple had sold 130,000 units and expanded its production facilities beyond Jobs’ garage. To serve domestic and foreign customers, Apple IIs were manufactured in California and Texas and distributed from warehouses in the United States and the Netherlands.
In stage 3, the standardized product stage, the market for the product stabilizes. The product becomes more of a commodity, and firms are pressured to lower their manufacturing costs as much as possible by shifting production to facilities in countries with low labor costs. As a result, the product begins to be imported into the innovating firm’s home market (by either the firm or its competitors). In some cases, imports may result in the complete elimination of domestic production.

The personal computer industry has entered the standardized product stage. Chinese computer companies like Lenovo and Taiwanese manufacturers such as Asustek, Hon Hai, Tatung, Mitac International, and First International—none of them household names in the United States—annually export to the United States and to other countries millions of personal computers, many of which are produced under contract for leading PC vendors like Apple, Dell, and Hewlett-Packard. Such an arrangement is typical in this stage of the product life cycle: the production of the good shifts to lower-cost manufacturing sites, but the branding and marketing functions remain in the innovating country.\(^5\)

According to the international product life cycle theory, domestic production begins in stage 1, peaks in stage 2, and slumps in stage 3. Exports by the innovating firm’s country also begin in stage 1 and peak in stage 2. By stage 3, however, the innovating firm’s country becomes a net importer of the product. Foreign competition begins to emerge toward the end of stage 1, as firms in other industrialized countries recognize the product’s market potential. In stage 2, foreign competitors expand their productive capacity, thus servicing an increasing portion of their home markets and perhaps becoming net exporters. As competition intensifies in stage 2, however, the innovating firm and its domestic and foreign rivals seek to lower their production costs by shifting production to low-cost sites in less-developed countries. Eventually, in stage 3, the less-developed countries may become net exporters of the product.

### Country Similarity Theory

Country-based theories, such as the theory of comparative advantage, do a good job of explaining interindustry trade among countries. **Interindustry trade** is the exchange of goods produced by one industry in country A for goods produced by a different industry in country B, such as the exchange of French wines for Japanese clock radios. Yet much international trade consists of **intraindustry trade**, that is, trade between two countries of goods produced by the same industry. For example, Japan exports Toyotas to Germany, and Germany exports BMWs to Japan. Intraindustry trade accounts for approximately 40 percent of world trade, and it is not predicted by country-based theories.

Swedish economist Steffan Linder sought to explain the phenomenon of intraindustry trade. Linder hypothesized that international trade in manufactured goods results from similarities of preferences among consumers in countries that are at the same stage of economic development. In his view, firms initially manufacture goods to serve the firms’ domestic market. As they explore exporting opportunities, they discover that the most promising foreign markets are in countries where consumer preferences resemble those of their own domestic market. The Japanese market, for example, provides BMW with well-off, prestige- and performance-seeking automobile buyers similar to the ones who purchase its cars in Germany. The German market provides Toyota with quality-conscious and value-oriented customers similar to those found in its home market. As each company targets the other’s home market, intraindustry trade arises. Linder’s country similarity theory suggests that most trade in manufactured goods should be between countries with similar per capita incomes and that intraindustry trade in manufactured goods should be common. This theory is particularly useful in explaining trade in **differentiated goods** such as automobiles, expensive electronics equipment, and personal care products, for which brand names and product reputations play an important role in consumer decision making. (Undifferentiated goods, such as coal, petroleum products, and sugar, are those for which brand names and product reputations play a minor role at best in consumer purchase decisions.)

### New Trade Theory

The so-called **new trade theory** developed by Elhanan Helpman, Paul Krugman,\(^6\) and Kelvin Lancaster,\(^7\) in the 1970s and 1980s extends Linder’s analysis by incorporating the impact of economies of scale on trade in differentiated goods. **Economies of scale** occur if a firm’s
average costs of producing a good decrease as its output of that good increases. Suppose
automobile manufacturing and marketing benefits from economies of scale. If both BMW and
Toyota are able to expand their sales beyond their home market, each will benefit from lower
average costs and each will improve its competitiveness vis-à-vis smaller firms. In industries in
which economies of scale are important, we would expect firms to be particularly aggressive in
expanding beyond their domestic markets.

Like Linder’s approach, the new trade theory predicts that intraindustry trade will be
commonplace. It also suggests MNCs within the same industry, such as Caterpillar and Komatsu,
Unilever and Procter & Gamble, and Airbus and Boeing, will continually play cat-and-mouse
games with one another on a global basis as they attempt to expand their sales to capture scale
economies. Often they seek to harness some sustainable competitive advantage they enjoy as a
means of leveraging their own strengths and neutralizing those of their rivals.

Firms competing in the global marketplace have numerous ways of obtaining a sustainable
competitive advantage. The more popular ones are owning intellectual property rights, investing
in research and development (R&D), achieving economies of scope, and exploiting the
experience curve. We discuss each of these options next.

OWNING INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS A firm that owns an intellectual property right—
a trademark, brand name, patent, or copyright—often gains advantages over its competitors. For
instance, owning prestigious brand names enables Ireland’s Waterford Wedgwood and France’s
LVMH Moët Hennessy Louis Vuitton to charge premium prices for their upscale products. And
Coca-Cola and PepsiCo compete for customers worldwide on the basis of their trademarks and
brand names.

INVESTING IN R&D R&D is a major component of the total cost of high-technology products.
For example, Airbus has spent more than $12 billion developing its superjumbo jet, the A380.
Firms in the computer, pharmaceutical, and semiconductor industries also spend large amounts
on R&D to maintain their competitiveness. Because of such large “entry” costs, other firms
often hesitate to compete against established firms. Thus, the firm that acts first often gains a
first-mover advantage.

However, knowledge does not have a nationality. Firms that invest up front and secure the
first-mover advantage have the opportunity to dominate the world market for goods that are
intensive in R&D. Thus, national competitiveness and trade flows may be determined by which
firms make the necessary R&D expenditures. Why is the EU a large exporter of commercial
aircraft? Because Airbus is one of the few firms willing to spend the large sums of money
required to develop new aircraft and because it is headquartered in Europe.

Firms with large domestic markets may have an advantage over their foreign rivals in
high-technology markets because these firms often are able to obtain quicker and richer
feedback from customers. With this feedback the firms can fine-tune their R&D efforts, en-
abling the firms to better meet the needs of their domestic customers. This knowledge can then
be used to serve foreign customers. For example, U.S. agricultural chemical producers such
as Monsanto and Eli Lilly have an advantage over Japanese rivals in developing soybean pes-
ticides because the U.S. market for such pesticides is large but the Japanese market is small.
Knowledge gained in the U.S. pesticide market can be readily transferred to meet the needs of
Japanese farmers.

ACHIEVING ECONOMIES OF SCOPE Economies of scope offer firms another opportunity to
obtain a sustainable competitive advantage in international markets. Economies of scope occur
when a firm’s average costs decrease as the number of different products it sells increases.
Firms that are able to achieve economies of scope enjoy low average costs, which give the firms
a competitive advantage over their global rivals. Consider the e-retailer Amazon, which has
benefited from both economies of scale and scope. It has spent enormous sums developing and
maintaining its website and building its customer base. Because many of these costs are fixed,
the company’s average costs per sale decline as the company expands its sales. In its quest to
capture the volume-driven economies of scale, Amazon has been expanding its operations into
the international marketplace. Moreover, the marginal cost of adding an additional product line
to its website is relatively small. Accordingly, Amazon has expanded from books to compact discs to DVDs to myriad other goods to capture such economies of scope.

**EXPLOITING THE EXPERIENCE CURVE** Another source of firm-specific advantages in international trade is exploitation of the experience curve. For certain types of products production costs decline as the firm gains more experience in manufacturing the product. Experience curves may be so significant that they govern global competition within an industry. For instance, in semiconductor chip production, unit cost reductions of 25 to 30 percent with each doubling of a firm’s cumulative chip production are not uncommon. Any firm attempting to be a low-cost producer of so-called commodity chips—such as DRAM memory chips—can achieve that goal only if it moves further along the experience curve than its rivals do. Both U.S. and Asian chip manufacturers have often priced their new products below current production costs to capture the sales necessary to generate the production experience that will in turn enable the manufacturers to lower future production costs. Because of their technological leadership in manufacturing and their aggressive, price-cutting strategies, Asian semiconductor manufacturers such as Samsung and Hynix dominate the production of low-cost, standardized semiconductor chips. Similarly, innovative U.S. semiconductor firms such as Intel and Advanced Micro Devices use the experience curve to maintain leadership in the production of high-priced, proprietary chips that form the brains of newer microcomputers.

**Porter’s Theory of National Competitive Advantage**

Harvard Business School professor Michael Porter’s theory of national competitive advantage is the newest addition to international trade theory. Porter believes that success in international trade comes from the interaction of four country- and firm-specific elements: factor conditions; demand conditions; related and supporting industries; and firm strategy, structure, and rivalry.

**FACTOR CONDITIONS** A country’s endowment of factors of production affects its ability to compete internationally. Although factor endowments were the centerpiece of the Heckscher-Ohlin theory, Porter goes beyond the basic factors—land, labor, and capital—considered by the classical trade theorists to include more advanced factors such as the educational level of the workforce and the quality of the country’s infrastructure. His work stresses the role of factor creation through training, research, and innovation.

**DEMAND CONDITIONS** The existence of a large, sophisticated domestic consumer base often stimulates the development and distribution of innovative products as firms struggle for dominance in their domestic markets. In meeting their domestic customers’ needs, however, firms continually develop and fine-tune products that also can be marketed internationally. Thus, pioneering firms can stay ahead of their international competitors as well. For example, Japanese consumer electronics producers benefit internationally because of the willingness of Japan’s large, well-off middle class to buy the latest electronic creations of Sony, Toshiba, and Matsushita. After being fine-tuned in the domestic market, new models of Japanese digital cameras, big-screen TVs, and Blu-ray players are sold to eager European and North American consumers. A similar phenomenon is occurring in the telecommunications market, where the rapid adoption of the Internet, tablets, and smartphones by North American consumers and companies has created a fertile climate for companies such as Twitter, Facebook, eBay, and Amazon to develop and tailor new products to meet the needs of this market domestically and internationally.

**RELATED AND SUPPORTING INDUSTRIES** The emergence of an industry often stimulates the development of local suppliers eager to meet that industry’s production, marketing, and distribution needs. An industry located close to its suppliers will enjoy better communication and the exchange of cost-saving ideas and inventions with those suppliers. Competition among these input suppliers leads to lower prices, higher-quality products, and technological innovations in the input market, in turn reinforcing the industry’s competitive advantage in world markets. For example, Hollywood’s dominance of the world film industry is based in part on the local availability of specialist input suppliers, such as casting directors, stunt coordinators, costume and set designers, demolition experts, animators, special-effects firms, and animal wranglers.
The domestic environment in which firms compete shapes their ability to compete in international markets. To survive, firms facing vigorous competition domestically must continuously strive to reduce costs, boost product quality, raise productivity, and develop innovative products. Firms that have been tested in this way often develop the skills needed to succeed internationally. Further, many of the investments they have made to succeed in the domestic market (for example, in R&D, quality control, brand image, and employee training) are transferable to international markets at low cost. Such firms have an edge as they expand abroad. Thus, according to Porter’s theory, the international success of Japanese automakers and consumer electronics manufacturers and of Hollywood film studios is aided by intense domestic competition in these firms’ home countries.

Porter holds that national policies may also affect firms’ international strategies and opportunities in more subtle ways. Consider the German automobile market. German labor costs are high, so German automakers find it difficult to compete internationally on the basis of price. As most auto enthusiasts know, however, there are no speed limits on many stretches of Germany’s famed autobahns. So German automakers such as Daimler-Benz, Porsche, and BMW have chosen to compete on the basis of quality and high performance by engineering chassis, engines, brakes, and suspensions that can withstand the stresses of high-speed driving. Consequently, these firms dominate the world market for high-performance automobiles.

Porter’s theory is a hybrid: It blends the traditional country-based theories that emphasize factor endowments with the firm-based theories that focus on the actions of individual firms. Countries (or their governments) play a critical role in creating an environment that can aid or harm the ability of firms to compete internationally, but firms are the actors that actually participate in international trade. Some firms succeed internationally; others do not. Porsche, Daimler-Benz, and BMW successfully grasped the opportunity presented by Germany’s decision to allow unlimited speeds on its highways and captured the high-performance niche of the worldwide automobile industry. Conversely, Opel chose to focus on the broader middle segment of the German automobile market, ultimately limiting its international options.

In summary, no single theory of international trade explains all trade flows among countries. The classical country-based theories are useful in explaining interindustry trade of homogeneous, undifferentiated products, such as agricultural goods, raw materials, and processed goods like The Netherlands’ rich farmland and favorable climate makes it the world’s largest producer of tulip and daffodil bulbs—an estimated 9 billion per year. Dutch producers in turn benefit from sophisticated supporting industries and trade associations, such as the Dutch Flower Council, the Association of Dutch Flower Growers Research Groups, and the FloraHolland flower auctions, which facilitate the competitiveness of Dutch flower growers.
steel and aluminum. The firm-based theories are more helpful in understanding intraindustry trade of heterogeneous, differentiated goods, such as Samsung smartphones and Caterpillar bulldozers, many of which are sold on the basis of their brand names and reputations. Further, in many ways, Porter’s theory synthesizes the features of the existing country-based and firm-based theories. It also explains another important phenomenon of international competition, the regional clustering of firms within an industry, which is discussed in “Venturing Abroad.” Figure 6.5 summarizes the major theories of international trade.

MAP 6.1
Key Industrial Clusters in Western Europe
VENTURING ABROAD

BIRDS OF A FEATHER FLOCK TOGETHER

Although important for the development of trade theory, Porter’s theory of national competitive advantage also explains the existence of another phenomenon of international business activity, the regional clustering of firms within an industry resulting from agglomeration economies. Agglomeration economies occur when a firm’s costs of production decline as the number of firms in that industry increase within a given area. Such growth attracts additional input suppliers to the areas, which then increases price competition and innovation among those suppliers. As their customer base increases, suppliers can specialize, developing unique abilities that benefit the cluster as a whole. Clusters also promote innovation and entrepreneurship. Competition is intense, and firms must continually improve their products and productivity to survive. Entrepreneurs can tap into sophisticated local knowledge networks. Moreover, local bankers and financiers understand the ins-and-outs of the local industry and thus are better able to recognize good ideas when entrepreneurs request loans or capital. Firms within the cluster thus enjoy significant advantages when competing with a firm from outside the cluster. Map 6.1 depicts some key industrial clusters in Western Europe.

Consider three California industries, filmed entertainment, centered in Los Angeles; premium wines, centered in Napa and Sonoma counties; and personal computing, centered in the Silicon Valley. Each industry no doubt started and benefited from supportive factor endowments and demand conditions. But as area firms began to prosper, other firms within the same industry were attracted to the region seeking to replicate the pioneering firms’ success. The expanding number of customers thus induced supplier firms to relocate as well. Over time, the cluster becomes so strong that firms not in the cluster are at a significant disadvantage. Film studios requiring the best directors, cinematographers, screenwriters, casting agents, and such are likely to find them in Hollywood. Suppliers of specialized services like pyrotechnics, animal wrangling, special effects, and set design are readily available as well. Similarly, firms seeking the latest vineyard management techniques or viticulture science are likely to find them in Napa or Sonoma counties or at the nearby University of California at Davis. Firms specializing in making or supplying wine-making and grape-harvesting equipment, barrels, corks, bottles, and label design have proliferated there as well, benefiting and strengthening the area’s vineyards. Or consider the move of Facebook from Cambridge, Massachusetts, to the Silicon Valley as portrayed in the movie The Social Network. There are plenty of smart people in Cambridge. However, Facebook founder Mark Zuckerberg realized that Facebook needed to access the specialized resources and talent that the Silicon Valley could best provide if it were to dominate the social networking market.

Porter argues that clusters play an important role in promoting international competitiveness. Such competition is being transformed from a firm-versus-firm basis to a cluster-versus-cluster basis. In wine, for example, we often think of competition as being between a French vineyard such as Chateau Lafite Rothschild or a California grower like Chateau Montelena. From a cluster perspective, however, the nature of competition changes: California’s Sonoma and Napa Valley vintners compete against vintners from France’s Burgundy and Champagne provinces and from growers in Australia’s Barossa Valley. In Porter’s view, a wise government institutes policies that allow the cluster to flourish, perhaps by funding research at local universities or providing infrastructure improvements that benefit the cluster as a whole.


In Practice

- The firm-based trade theories highlight the importance of multinational corporations in international trade and international investment flows.
- Regional clustering of firms within an industry can be an important source of competitive advantage to firms and to countries.

For further consideration: What percentage of your budget do you spend on undifferentiated goods? On differentiated goods?

FIGURE 6.5
Theories of International Trade

Country-Based Theories
- Country is unit of analysis
- Emerged prior to World War II
- Developed by economists
- Explain interindustry trade
  - Mercantilism
  - Absolute advantage
  - Comparative advantage
  - Relative factor endowments
    (Heckscher-Ohlin)

Firm-Based Theories
- Firm is unit of analysis
- Emerged after World War II
- Developed by business school professors
- Explain intraindustry trade
  - Country similarity theory
  - Product life cycle
  - New trade theory
  - National competitive advantage
An Overview of International Investment

Trade is the most obvious but not the only form of international business. Another major form is international investment, whereby residents of one country supply capital to a second country.

Types of International Investments

International investment, as discussed in Chapter 1, is divided into two categories: foreign portfolio investment (FPI) and foreign direct investment (FDI). The distinction between the two rests on the question of control: Does the investor seek an active management role in the firm or merely a return from a passive investment?

Foreign portfolio investments (FPI) represent passive holdings of securities such as foreign stocks, bonds, or other financial assets, none of which entails active management or control of the securities’ issuer by the investor. Modern finance theory suggests that FPI will be motivated by attempts to seek an attractive rate of return as well as the risk reduction that can come from geographically diversifying one’s investment portfolio. Sophisticated money managers in New York, London, Frankfurt, Tokyo, and other financial centers are well aware of the advantages of international diversification. In 2012, for example, private U.S. citizens purchased $1.45 trillion worth of foreign securities, bringing their total holdings of such securities to $7.5 trillion. Foreign official and private investors purchased $764 billion worth of U.S. corporate, federal, state, and local securities, raising their total holdings of such securities to $12.5 trillion.

Foreign direct investment (FDI) is acquisition of foreign assets for the purpose of controlling them. U.S. government statisticians define FDI as “ownership or control of 10 percent or more of an enterprise’s voting securities or the equivalent interest in an unincorporated business.” FDI may take many forms, including purchase of existing assets in a foreign country, new investment in property, plant, and equipment, and participation in a joint venture with a local partner. Perhaps the most historically significant FDI in the United States was the $24 billion that Dutch explorer Peter Minuit paid local Native Americans for Manhattan Island. The result: New York City, one of the world’s leading financial and commercial centers. “Venturing Abroad” discusses the growing importance of sovereign wealth funds in global capital markets.

VENTURING ABROAD

THE NEW PLAYER IN GLOBAL CAPITAL MARKETS: SOVEREIGN WEALTH FUNDS

Sovereign wealth funds (SWFs) are one of the newest, and perhaps most controversial, sources of capital in the world economy. Sovereign wealth funds, which are government-controlled pools of capital, are estimated to possess $5 trillion in assets in 2012.

Most of the SWFs are owned by oil-rich governments. The Abu Dhabi Investment Authority is currently the largest, with $627 billion in assets, followed by the Government Pension Fund of Norway with $611 billion. Other SWFs are owned by governments of countries enjoying large balance of payments surpluses, such as the China Investment Corporation ($440 billion), Temasek Holdings of Singapore ($157 billion), and the Government of Singapore Investment Corporation ($248 billion).

China, for example, has accumulated foreign exchange reserves totaling $3.4 trillion as a result of its balance of payments surpluses. The government transferred $200 billion of these reserves to the China Investment Corporation (CIC) to manage in hopes of improving the government’s rate of return on its investments. One of the first investments made by the CIC was a $3 billion equity position in the Blackstone Group, a U.S. private equity firm.

The rise of the SWFs reflects the growing role of emerging markets in the global economy. Their ownership of the world’s productive assets has grown in conjunction with their increasing share of the world’s GDP. SWFs have invested in a variety of industries. For example, Dubai International Capital, owned by the ruler of Dubai, owns stakes in European Aeronautic Defense & Space (the parent of Airbus), Sony, and HSBC Holdings. It has also purchased ownership stakes in the London Stock Exchange, the Nasdaq Stock Market, and OMX AB, which controls seven stock exchanges in Scandinavia and the Baltic region. The Qatar Investment Authority holds major positions in Volkswagen, Porsche, Total, Barclays, J Sainsbury, and Harrods. Similarly, Temasek purchased a controlling interest in Shin Corporation, the largest provider of mobile telephone service in Thailand.

The SWFs were particularly important in shoring up the balance sheets of international banks, hedge funds, and private equity firms hurt by the chaos in the U.S. mortgage market during the global recession of 2008–2009. UBS, which lost $37 billion in the crisis, received $9.7 billion in new equity from the Government of Singapore Investment Corporation, and an additional $1.8 billion from an unidentified strategic investor from the Middle East. The Singapore SWF owns about 9 percent of the Swiss bank as a result of this investment. The China Investment Corporation invested $5 billion in Morgan Stanley, while the Abu Dhabi Investment Authority purchased a 4.9 percent stake in Citigroup for $7.5 billion and a 7.5 percent share of the Carlyle Group for $1.35 billion.

Most of the investments made by SWFs to date have been passive in nature, seeking to earn financial returns rather than actively

(Continued)
control assets. Many have purchased equity stakes in investment banks and private equity firms, allowing the SWFs to tap into the sophisticated knowledge of these concerns without having to develop the expertise themselves. They are also attractive to the firms because to date they have not concerned themselves with corporate governance issues or proven to be activist investors. Their investments typically do not entitle the SWF to a board seat, allowing them to avoid political problems and national investment control laws like the Exon-Florio Act. (This act allows the president of the United States to reject certain investments made by foreign nationals for national security reasons.)

Nonetheless, the growth of SWFs has made politicians in many countries uneasy. As a result, the International Monetary Fund is trying to develop a voluntary code of conduct for SWFs. The primary objective of the code is to ensure that investments made by SWFs are solely for commercial purposes, rather than a backdoor means of promoting the political goals of the governmental owner of the SWF.

The Growth of FDI

The growth of FDI during the past 30 years has been phenomenal. As Figure 6.6 indicates, in 1980 the total stock (or cumulative value) of FDI received by countries worldwide was $689 billion. Worldwide FDI as of 2011 topped $20.4 trillion. This stunning growth in FDI—and its acceleration beginning in the 1990s—reflects the globalization of the world’s economy. As you might expect, most FDI comes from developed countries. Surprisingly, most FDI also goes to developed countries. We discuss later in this chapter reasons for this explosive growth in FDI.

**FIGURE 6.6**

Stock of Foreign Direct Investment, by Recipient (in trillions of dollars)

We can gain additional insights into FDI by looking at individual countries. Consider the stock of FDI in the United States, which totaled $2.7 trillion (measured at historical cost) at the end of 2012 (see Table 6.4[a]). The United Kingdom was the most important source of this FDI, accounting for $488.8 billion, or 18 percent, of the total. The countries listed by name in Table 6.4(a) account for 87 percent of total FDI in the United States.

The stock of FDI by U.S. residents in foreign countries totaled $4.5 trillion at the end of 2012 (see Table 6.4[b]). Most of this FDI was in other developed countries, particularly the Netherlands ($645.1 billion) and the United Kingdom ($597.8 billion). The countries listed by name in Table 6.4(b) account for 76 percent of total FDI from the United States.

Looking at Table 6.4, you may wonder why Bermuda, the Bahamas, and other small Caribbean islands are so important. They serve as offshore financial centers, which we will discuss in Chapter 8. Many U.S. companies set up finance and other subsidiaries in such centers to take advantage of low taxes and business-friendly regulations. Similarly, many

### Table 6.4 Stock of FDI for the United States, end of 2012 (billions of dollars)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a. Sources of FDI in the United States</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>488.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>308.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>274.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>225.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>209.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>204.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>202.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>199.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>88.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bermuda, The Bahamas, and other Caribbean Islands</td>
<td>68.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>47.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other European Union countries</td>
<td>137.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other countries</td>
<td>197.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2650.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b. Destination of FDI from the United States</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>645.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>597.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bermuda, The Bahamas, and other Caribbean Islands</td>
<td>537.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>383.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>351.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>203.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>138.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>134.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>132.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>130.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>121.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other European Union countries</td>
<td>288.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other countries</td>
<td>788.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>4453.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on data from *Survey of Current Business*, July 2013, pp. 40 and 42.
financial services companies from other countries establish such subsidiaries as the legal owners of their U.S. operations.

During the past decade outward FDI has remained larger than inward FDI for the United States (see Figure 6.7), but both categories have roughly doubled in size. Although inward and outward flows of FDI are not perfectly matched, the pattern is clear: Most FDI is made by and destined for the most prosperous countries. In the next section we discuss how this pattern suggests the crucial role MNCs play in FDI.

**FIGURE 6.7**
Outward and Inward U.S. FDI, 1982–2012
International Investment Theories

Why does FDI occur? A sophomore taking his or her first finance course might answer with the obvious: Average rates of return are higher in foreign markets. Yet given the pattern of FDI between countries that we just discussed, this answer is not satisfactory. Canada and the United Kingdom are both major sources of FDI in the United States and important destinations for FDI from the United States. Average rates of return in Canada and the United Kingdom cannot be simultaneously below that of the United States (which would justify inward U.S. FDI) and above that of the United States (which would justify outward U.S. FDI). The same pattern of two-way investment occurs on an industry basis. By the end of 2012, for example, U.S. firms had invested $11.0 billion in the chemical industry in the Netherlands, whereas Dutch firms had invested $27.6 billion in the U.S. chemical industry. This pattern cannot be explained by national or industry differences in rates of return. We must search for another explanation for FDI.

Ownership Advantages

More powerful explanations for FDI focus on the role of the firm. Initially researchers explored how firm ownership of competitive advantages affected FDI. The ownership advantage theory suggests that a firm owning a valuable asset that creates a competitive advantage domestically can use that advantage to penetrate foreign markets through FDI. The asset could be, for example, a superior technology, a well-known brand name, or economies of scale. This theory is consistent with the observed patterns of international and intraindustry FDI discussed previously in this chapter. Caterpillar, for example, built factories in Asia, Europe, Australia, South America, and North America to exploit proprietary technologies and its brand name. Its chief rival, Komatsu, constructed plants in Asia, Europe, and the United States for the same reason.

Internalization Theory

The ownership advantage theory only partly explains why FDI occurs. It does not explain why a firm would choose to enter a foreign market via FDI rather than exploit its ownership advantages internationally through other means, such as exporting its products, franchising a brand name, or licensing technology to foreign firms. For example, McDonald’s has successfully internationalized by franchising its fast-food operations outside the United States, whereas Boeing has relied on exporting to serve its foreign customers.

Internalization theory addresses this question. In doing so, it relies heavily on the concept of transaction costs. Transaction costs are the costs of entering into a transaction, that is, those connected to negotiating, monitoring, and enforcing a contract. A firm must decide whether it is better to own and operate its own factory overseas or to contract with a foreign firm to do this through a franchise, licensing, or supply agreement. Internalization theory suggests that FDI is more likely to occur—that is, international production will be internalized within the firm—when the costs of negotiating, monitoring, and enforcing a contract with a second firm are high. For example, Toyota’s primary competitive advantages are its reputation for high quality and its sophisticated manufacturing techniques, neither of which is easily conveyed by contract. As a result, Toyota has chosen to maintain ownership of its overseas automobile assembly plants.

Conversely, internalization theory holds that when transaction costs are low, firms are more likely to contract with outsiders and internationalize by licensing their brand names or franchising their business operations. For example, McDonald’s is a premier expert in the United States in devising easily enforceable franchising agreements. Because McDonald’s is so successful in reducing transaction costs between itself and its franchisees, it has continued to rely on franchising for its international operations.

Dunning’s Eclectic Theory

Although internalization theory addresses why firms choose FDI as the mode for entering international markets, the theory ignores the question of why production, by either the company or a contractor, should be located abroad. In other words, is there a location advantage to producing abroad? This issue was incorporated by John Dunning in his eclectic theory, which combines ownership advantage, location advantage, and internalization advantage to form
a unified theory of FDI. This theory recognizes that FDI reflects both international business activity and business activity internal to the firm. According to Dunning, FDI will occur when three conditions are satisfied:

1. **Ownership advantage.** The firm must own some unique competitive advantage that overcomes the disadvantages of competing with foreign firms on their home turfs. This advantage may be a brand name, ownership of proprietary technology, the benefits of economies of scale, and so on. Caterpillar, for example, enjoys all three of these advantages in competing in Brazil against local firms.

2. **Location advantage.** Undertaking the business activity must be more profitable in a foreign location than undertaking it in a domestic location. For example, Caterpillar produces bulldozers in Brazil to enjoy lower labor costs and avoid high tariff walls on goods exported from its U.S. factories.

3. **Internalization advantage.** The firm must benefit more from controlling the foreign business activity than from hiring an independent local company to provide the service. Control is advantageous, for example, when monitoring and enforcing the contractual performance of the local company is expensive, when the local company may misappropriate proprietary technology, or when the firm’s reputation and brand name could be jeopardized by poor behavior by the local company. All of these factors are important to Caterpillar.

In Practice

- International investments can take the form of portfolio investments or of direct investments. The distinction between the two forms rests on whether the investment is for purposes of control.
- Dunning’s eclectic theory argues that ownership, location, and internalization advantages determine whether firms will use FDI when entering a foreign market.

*For further consideration:* Does foreign direct investment affect you or your community? If so, how?

**Factors Influencing FDI**

Given the complexity of the global economy and the diversity of opportunities that firms face in different countries, it is not surprising that numerous factors may influence a firm’s decision to undertake FDI. These can be classified as supply factors, demand factors, and political factors (see Table 6.5).

**Supply Factors**

A firm’s decision to undertake FDI may be influenced by supply factors, including production costs, logistics, availability of natural resources, and access to key technology.

**TABLE 6.5 Factors Affecting the FDI Decision**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supply Factors</th>
<th>Demand Factors</th>
<th>Political Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Production costs</td>
<td>Customer access</td>
<td>Avoidance of trade barriers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>Marketing advantages</td>
<td>Economic development incentives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource availability</td>
<td>Exploitation of competitive advantages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to technology</td>
<td>Customer mobility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRODUCTION COSTS Firms often undertake FDI to lower production costs. Foreign locations may be more attractive than domestic sites because of lower land prices, tax rates, commercial real estate rents, or because of better availability and lower cost of skilled or unskilled labor. For example, Intel built a new chip fabrication facility in Chengdu in China’s inland Sichuan province because labor and land costs were much lower than in Shanghai, where the company already operates three facilities. Similarly, Nokia built a $275-million mobile phone assembly plant in northern Vietnam to take advantage of the area’s low labor costs.

LOGISTICS If transportation costs are significant, a firm may choose to produce in the foreign market rather than export from domestic factories. For example, Heineken has used FDI extensively as part of its internationalization strategy because its products are primarily water. Brewing its beverages close to where its foreign consumers live is cheaper for Heineken than transporting the beverages long distances from the company’s Dutch breweries. International businesses also often make host-country investments to reduce distribution costs. For example, Citrovita, a Brazilian producer of orange juice concentrate, operates a storage and distribution terminal at the Port of Antwerp rather than ship to European grocery chains directly from Brazil. Citrovita can take advantage of low ocean-shipping rates to transport its goods in bulk from Brazil to the Belgian port. The company then uses the Antwerp facility to repackage and distribute concentrate to its customers in France, Germany, and the Benelux countries.

AVAILABILITY OF NATURAL RESOURCES Firms may use FDI to access natural resources that are critical to their operations. For instance, because of the decrease in conventional onshore domestic oil production, many U.S.-based oil companies made significant investments worldwide to obtain new oil reserves. Often international businesses negotiate with host governments to obtain access to raw materials in return for FDI. For example, the China National Petroleum Company created a $10 billion joint venture with state-owned Petróleos de Venezuela to extract, refine, and transport 1 million barrels of oil a day from Venezuela’s Orinoco basin.

ACCESS TO KEY TECHNOLOGY Another motive for FDI is to gain access to technology. Firms may find it more advantageous to acquire ownership interests in an existing firm than to assemble an in-house group of research scientists to develop or reproduce an emerging technology. For instance, many Swiss pharmaceutical manufacturers have invested in small U.S. biogenetics companies as an inexpensive means of obtaining cutting-edge biotechnology. Similarly, Korea’s Doosan Infracore paid $4.9 billion for the Bobcat division of Ingersoll-Rand to benefit from Bobcat’s superior technology, outstanding distribution network, and skilled management team. Starbucks recently purchased a 600-acre plot in Costa Rica as an experiment station for developing new coffee varieties and new coffee-growing secrets.

Demand Factors
Firms also may engage in FDI to expand the market for their products. The demand factors that encourage FDI include customer access, marketing advantages, exploitation of competitive advantages, and customer mobility.

CUSTOMER ACCESS Many types of international business require firms to have a physical presence in the market. For example, fast-food restaurants and retailers must provide convenient access to their outlets for competitive reasons. KFC cannot supply its freshly prepared fried chicken to Japanese customers from its restaurants in the United States; it must locate outlets in Japan to do so. Similarly, IKEA’s success in broadening its customer base beyond its home market in Sweden is the result of its opening a number of new stores worldwide.

MARKETING ADVANTAGES FDI may generate several types of marketing advantages. The physical presence of a factory may enhance the visibility of a foreign firm’s products in the host market. The foreign firm also gains from “buy local” attitudes of host country consumers. For example, through ads in such magazines as Time and Sports Illustrated, Toyota has publicized the beneficial impact of its U.S. factories and input purchases on the U.S. economy. Firms may
also engage in FDI to improve their customer service. Taiwan’s Delta Products, which makes battery packs for laptop computers, was concerned that it could not respond quickly and flexibly enough from its factories in China and Thailand to meet the changing needs of its U.S. customers. As one of its executives noted, if you “build in the Far East, you’re too far away. You can’t do a last-moment modification while the product is on the ocean.” Accordingly, Delta shifted some of its production to a Mexican factory just across the border from Nogales, Arizona, to better serve its U.S. customers.18

**EXPLOITATION OF COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGES** FDI may be a firm’s best means to exploit a competitive advantage that it already enjoys. An owner of a valuable trademark, brand name, or technology may choose to operate in foreign countries rather than export to them. Often this decision depends on the product’s nature. For instance, companies such as Procter and Gamble, Nestlé, and Unilever often choose to site factories in the countries in which they sell their products. By so doing, they enhance their ability to customize their products to meet local tastes while still benefitting from the power of their brand names and manufacturing prowess.

**CUSTOMER MOBILITY** A firm’s FDI also may be motivated by the FDI of its customers or clients. If one of a firm’s existing customers builds a foreign factory, the firm may decide to locate a new facility of its own nearby, thus enabling it to continue to supply its customers promptly and attentively. Equally important, establishing a new facility reduces the possibility that a competitor in the host country will step in and steal the customer. For example, Japanese parts suppliers to the major Japanese automakers have responded to the construction of Japanese-owned automobile assembly plants in the United States by building their own U.S. factories, warehouses, and research facilities. Their need to locate facilities in the United States is magnified by the automakers’ use of just-in-time (JIT) inventory management techniques; JIT minimizes the amount of parts inventory held at an assembly plant, putting a parts-supply facility located in Japan at a severe disadvantage. Likewise, after Samsung decided to construct and operate an electronics factory in northeast England, six of its Korean parts suppliers also established factories in the vicinity.19

**Political Factors**

Political factors may also enter into a firm’s decision to undertake FDI. Firms may invest in a foreign country to avoid trade barriers by the host country or to take advantage of economic development incentives offered by the host government.

**AVOIDANCE OF TRADE BARRIERS** Firms often build foreign facilities to avoid trade barriers. For example, in 2011 Hon Hai Precision Industries, a leading Taiwanese contract manufacturing firm, announced it would build a new electronics manufacturing plant in Brazil to avoid that country’s high tariffs on imported consumer electronics goods. Other types of government policies may also impact FDI. Microsoft, for example, located a software development center in Richmond, British Colombia, in part to avoid limitations placed by the U.S. government on the number of highly skilled immigrant workers who can obtain H-1B work visas in any given year.20

**ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT INCENTIVES** Most democratically elected governments—local, state, and national—are vitally concerned with promoting the economic welfare of their citizens, many of whom are, of course, voters. Many governments offer incentives to firms to induce them to locate new facilities in the governments’ jurisdictions. Governmental incentives that can be an important catalyst for FDI include reduced utility rates, employee training programs, infrastructure additions (such as new roads and railroad spurs), and tax reductions or tax holidays. Often MNCs benefit from bidding wars among communities eager to attract the companies and the jobs they bring. For instance, the Kentucky Economic Development Finance Authority agreed to provide Toyota $145 million in tax concessions in return for the company investing $531 million to expand the capacity of its Georgetown, Kentucky, assembly facility. The new investments will allow Toyota to build 60,000 new Lexus ES sedans starting in 2015, creating 750 new jobs at the site.21
FDIs can be motivated by supply, demand, and political factors. Countries often provide economic development incentives to encourage FDI and the jobs that FDI creates.

For further consideration: Do you think that providing economic development incentives is a wise use of government revenues?

In Practice

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

International trade is an important form of international business—$22.8 trillion of goods and services were traded among residents of different countries in 2012. International trade affects domestic economies both directly and indirectly. Exports stimulate additional demand for products, thus generating income and employment gains. Imports lower consumer prices and pressure domestic firms to become more efficient and productive.

Because of the importance of trade to businesses and governments worldwide, scholars have offered numerous explanations for its existence. The earliest theories, such as absolute advantage, comparative advantage, and relative factor endowments, relied on characteristics of countries to explain patterns of exports and imports. These country-based theories help explain trade in undifferentiated goods such as wheat, sugar, and steel.

Coincident with the rise of MNCs, post–World War II research focused on firm-based explanations for international trade. Product life cycle, country similarity, and new trade theories focus on the firm as the agent for generating trade and investment decisions. These firm-based theories help explain intragroup and trade in differentiated goods such as automobiles, personal care products, and consumer electronics goods.

International investment is the second major way in which firms participate in international business. International investments fall into two categories: FPI and FDI. FDI has risen in importance as MNCs have increased in size and number.

Dunning’s eclectic theory suggests that FDI will occur when three conditions are met: (1) the firm possesses a competitive advantage that allows it to overcome the disadvantage of competing on the foreign firm’s home turf; (2) the foreign location is superior to a domestic location; and (3) the firm finds it cheaper (because of high transaction costs) to produce the product itself rather than hire a foreign firm to do so.

Numerous factors can influence a firm’s decision to undertake FDI. Some FDI may be undertaken to reduce the firm’s costs. Such supply factors include production costs, logistics, availability of natural resources, and access to key technology. The decision to engage in FDI may be affected by such demand factors as developing access to new customers, obtaining marketing advantages through local production, exploiting competitive advantages, and maintaining nearness to customers as they internationalize their operations. Political considerations may also play a role in FDI. Often firms use FDI to avoid host country trade barriers or to capture economic development incentives offered by host country governments.

Review Questions

6-1. What is international trade? Why does it occur?
6-2. Which kind of international trade is explained by the theory of comparative advantage?
6-3. What is intragroup trade?
6-4. How useful are country-based theories in explaining international trade?
6-5. How do intergroup and intragroup trade differ?
6-6. Explain the impact of the product life cycle on international trade and international investment.
6-7. What are the primary sources of the competitive advantages firms use to compete in international markets?
6-8. Illustrate the Porter’s Diamond of national competitive advantages by selecting a country or a sector of your choice.
6-9. Why has FDI become so important in international business?
6-10. What are the three parts of Dunning’s eclectic theory?
6-11. How do political factors influence international trade and investment?
Questions for Discussion

6-12. In our example of France trading wine to Japan for clock radios, we arbitrarily assumed that the countries would trade at a price ratio of one bottle of wine for two clock radios. Over what range of prices can trade occur between the two countries? (Hint: In the absence of trade, what is the price of clock radios in terms of wine in France? In Japan?) Does your answer differ if you use Table 6.2 instead of Table 6.1?

6-13. In the public debate over ratification of the North American Free Trade Agreement, Ross Perot said he heard a “giant sucking sound” from U.S. jobs headed south because of low wage rates in Mexico. Using the theory of comparative advantage, discuss whether Perot’s fears were valid.

6-14. Why is intraindustry trade not predicted by country-based theories of trade?

6-15. Hyundai decided to build a new automobile assembly plant in Alabama.
   a. What factors do you think Hyundai considered in selecting Alabama as the site for the factory?
   b. Who benefits and who loses from the new plant in Alabama?
   c. Is the firm’s decision to build the new plant consistent with Dunning’s eclectic theory?

6-16. Why are clusters established, and why are they important in international trade? Illustrate your answer with examples.

Building Global Skills

The U.S. market for computers is dominated by domestic firms such as Dell, Hewlett-Packard, and Apple. The U.S. market for consumer electronics is dominated by Japanese firms and brands such as Sony, JVC, Panasonic, Mitsubishi, and Toshiba. However, the U.S. automobile market includes both domestic firms such as Ford and General Motors and formidable Japanese competitors such as Toyota and Honda.

Your instructor will divide the class into groups of four or five and assign each group one of the three industries just noted. To begin, discuss within your group your individual views on why different patterns exist for these industries.

Next, analyze the industry assigned to your group from the standpoint of each country-based and firm-based theory of international trade discussed in this chapter. Try to agree on which theory is the best predictor and which is the worst predictor of reality for your specific industry.

Now reconvene as a class. Each group should select a spokesperson. Each spokesperson should indicate the industry that the person’s group discussed and identify the best and worst theories selected. Note the points on which the groups who analyzed the same industries agree.

Finally, separate again into your small groups and discuss the areas of common disagreements. Also discuss the following questions:

6-17. Do some theories work better than others for different industries? Why?

6-18. Discuss one of the patterns presented in the initial paragraph with reference to a specific industry.

6-19. Do the same theories work as well in making predictions for those industries?

6-20. Based on what you know about the Japanese market, decide whether the same pattern of competitiveness that exists in the United States for the computer, consumer electronics, and automobile industries also holds true for the Japanese market. Why or why not?

CLOSING CASE The Growing Trade in Growing Grapes

Wine is one of mankind’s oldest and most important industries. Archaeological evidence of wine production dates back to 6000 B.C.E. Hieroglyphics from 3000 B.C.E. depict Egyptians enjoying celebratory cups of wine. The Bible records Jesus’ first miracle, turning water into wine at the wedding feast at Cana.

Today, some 18.5 million acres of land are devoted to vineyards, which yield 26 billion liters of wine annually. The EU produces about 60 percent of this output, with France, Italy, and Spain accounting for the bulk of the EU’s production. The United States, Argentina, and Australia are the largest non-European producers.

Until the 1980s, French vineyards were the dominant force in the global wine trade, with Italy, Spain, and Germany trailing behind them. These Old World producers benefitted from centuries of tradition and their reputations
for quality and sophistication. The mystique of French wine was in part attributable to the belief by oenophiles (a fancy word for wine experts) that terroir and the character of the grape itself contributed to the creation of unique characteristics for each vineyard’s wine. (Terroir means “a sense of place” and includes numerous factors that convey character to the wine, including soil chemistry, topography, and the microclimate of an individual plot of land.) So critical is terroir to the French wine industry that in the nineteenth century French officials assessed the quality of the wine produced in each French vineyard and established an elaborate schema for categorizing the wines according to their location and quality—Grand cru, Premier cru, etc. Known today as the Appellation d’origine contrôlée (AOC) (controlled designation of origin) system, effectively the French government provided a quality assurance and consumer protection program for lovers of French wine. Under the AOC system, for example, the only wines that can bear the label “Champagne” must be fermented from grapes grown in the Champagne region of northeastern France. Grand cru champagne must originate from lands specifically designated as such by the AOC system. The Italian and the German governments established similar programs.

The Old World producers, although dominant, were not invulnerable to global competition, particularly after the so-called “Judgment of Paris” in 1976, when a British wine merchant living in Paris organized a blind taste-testing competition between French and Californian wines. To the surprise of nearly everyone, the judges rated California wines as superior to those of French wines in the two contested categories. (Bottle Shock, a 2008 movie starring Alan Rickman, dramatizes the events surrounding the Judgment of Paris.) Nonetheless, French wines command a price premium in the export market, averaging more than $6.00 a liter compared to only $3.00 for wines from Australia, Argentina, Chile, or the United States.

The AOC system, although conferring some marketing advantages, does have some disadvantages. It requires that consumers have a fair degree of knowledge to make wise wine purchases. Moreover, individual vineyards are vulnerable to the vagaries of the weather. If Mother Nature fails to cooperate, a vineyard might receive too much or too little rainfall or sunshine in a growing season; thus, the quality of its grapes could vary from year to year. This may raise the snob appeal of the Old World wines—you can impress your friends with your expertise by recommending one vintage over another. However, many consumers, particularly first-time buyers, found that downright confusing. Because the AOC system tied the wine label to the land on which the grape was grown, Old World vintners were also limited in their ability to benefit from technological changes and economies of scale. If someone invented a machine to facilitate grape harvesting, you could not necessarily buy out your neighbor to capture economies of scale—his land might have a different terroir, and perhaps a different government cru classification. As a result, the average size vineyard in France is only 7.4 acres and 1.3 acres in Italy, compared to 167 acres in Australia and 213 acres in the United States.

Driven by the Judgment of Paris and changes in consumption patterns, wine production grew steadily during the 1970s, 1980s, 1990s, and into the new century in New World countries such as the United States, Chile, Argentina, Australia, and South Africa. The New World wine makers differentiated their wines primarily by grape variety—pinot noir, cabernet sauvignon, etc.—rather than by the specific vineyard or chateau where the grapes were grown. Moreover, the New World wine makers relied on branding, rather than vineyard names, to market their products. This had several advantages. First, it simplified the purchase decision for unsophisticated buyers—remembering a brand name like Columbia Crest or Yellowtail was often easier than recalling that of an obscure, small French vineyard. Second, New World vintners were able to blend grapes from various vineyards to create a wine with consistent taste from year to year, regardless of random changes in the weather. Third, they were able to market large volumes of wine under that brand name, allowing them to distribute their products more easily through mass-market retailers like Tesco, Marks & Spencer, Kroger, and Walmart. As a result, New World vintners are much larger than their Old World rivals and are more able to capture economies of scale from use of the latest technological breakthroughs and labor-saving mechanization. The four largest firms in the United States, for example, control 56 percent of U.S. sales; for Australia, 62 percent; and Chile, 82 percent. In France, the four largest firms are responsible for only 16 percent of sales; Spain, 21 percent, and Italy, 10 percent.

Export markets are vitally important to both Old World and New World vineyards. About 4 billion liters of wine are traded in a typical year. The EU accounts for 36 percent of the export market and the United States for 10 percent, primarily from California. Because both are major consumers of wine, the bulk of their production is consumed domestically. Such is not the case for Australia and Chile, each of which export 700 million liters of wine annually. Australia, for example, accounts for 5 percent of global production but 15 percent of global wine exports.

Case Questions

6-21. Both Old World vineyards and New World vineyards compete in the global market place. What are the competitive advantages and disadvantages of the Old World vineyards? Of the New World vineyards?

6-22. Why are French wines able to command a price premium in export markets?
6-23. Should the French government relax its AOC system, allowing French vintners to expand the size of their châteaux to capture economies of scale? Why or why not?

6-24. Should the U.S. government adopt an AOC system to ensure the quality of U.S. wines destined for export markets?

6-25. “Bottle shops”—small retail outlets specializing in selling fine wines—might purchase a case or two of a specific wine when placing an order. (A case typically consists of a dozen 750-milliliter bottles.) Buyers for large multistore firms such as Tesco or Walmart often order thousands of cases at a time. Which type of retailer is likely to specialize in Old World wines? In New World Wines? Give a reason for your answer.


Endnotes


10. The investment statistics for this section are taken from the Survey of Current Business, July 2013, pp. 14ff.


CHAPTER 7

The International Monetary System
and the Balance of Payments

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Discuss the role of the international monetary system in promoting international trade and investment.
2. Explain the evolution and functioning of the gold standard.
3. Summarize the role of the World Bank Group and the International Monetary Fund in the post–World War II international monetary system established at Bretton Woods.
4. Explain the evolution of the flexible exchange rate system.
5. Describe the function and structure of the balance of payments accounting system.
6. Differentiate among the various definitions of a balance of payments surplus and deficit.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
A GLOBAL CURRENCY WAR?

Some experts fear that a global war has erupted in the aftermath of the Global Recession of 2008–2009. The goal of such a war is not to spread an ideological agenda or to expand the size of the realm but to promote jobs and domestic economic growth. This war is not being fought with guns, but with exchange rates. Exchange rates—the value of a country’s currency in terms of a second country’s currency—have become the weapon of choice because they affect the competitiveness of a country’s exporters, the intensity of threats to domestic firms vulnerable to foreign imports, and even a country’s ability to attract foreign direct investment (FDI).

Politicians have long been concerned that foreign nations might manipulate the value of their currencies to the detriment of their home country. China, for instance, has long been accused of artificially lowering the value of the yuan. Such a policy would make Chinese goods more attractive for foreign consumers, foreign goods less attractive to Chinese consumers, and building factories in China more attractive, thereby creating more job opportunities for Chinese workers.

As a result of the Global Recession of 2008–2009, many governments adopted policies to try to reinvigorate their domestic economies. The United States ran trillion-dollar budget deficits to increase aggregate demand, and the U.S. Federal Reserve Bank pushed interest rates to near zero through its aggressive quantitative easing programs. The Bank of England and the European Central Bank both adopted similar easy money policies. One impact of low interest rates, however, is that it exerts downward pressure on a country’s exchange rate. Low interest rates motivate investors to redeploy their capital to markets paying higher interest rates. As they do so, they sell off their holdings of investments in the low-interest rate countries (driving down the price of those currencies) and raising the demand for the currencies of countries with high interest rates. Brazil’s government, for example, has criticized the quantitative easing policies of the Federal Reserve Bank. Brazil competes with the United States in many agricultural markets, so a fall in the U.S. dollar relative to the Brazilian real makes it easier for U.S. producers of goods such as orange juice, soybeans, and cotton to compete against their South American rivals. Yet it also raises the fears of creating new assets bubbles, such as the ones in the U.S., Spanish, and Irish housing markets, which contributed to the recent global recession. The Swiss National Bank, for instance, has imposed new capital requirements on its domestic mortgage market, fearing that foreign investors seeking a safe harbor for their monies in Switzerland will overwhelm the Swiss housing market.

Shinzo Abe, the prime minister of Japan’s new government elected in December 2012, adopted similar approaches to address the long-term stagnation of the Japanese economy. Abe believed that Japan’s domestic demand was being hurt by deflation. (If consumers think prices will fall in the future, then they will tend to postpone their purchases.) Abe thus wanted monetary easing so as to create mild inflation in Japan, thereby encouraging Japanese consumers to buy goods now rather than later. Gao Xiqing, head of China Investment Corp. (a sovereign wealth fund with $440 billion of assets), promptly admonished Abe, warning “Treating the neighbors as your garbage bin and starting a currency war would not only be dangerous for others but eventually be bad for yourself.” He added, “I would hope that it doesn’t do that as a responsible government.” German Chancellor Angela Merkel also criticized Japan’s actions, arguing “central banks are not there to clean up bad policy decisions and a lack of competitiveness.” The U.S. Treasury chimed in with similar concerns, urging Japan not to suppress the value of the yen to stimulate Japanese exports. The new head of the Bank of Japan, Haruhiko Kuroda rejected the charges, asserting “BOJ’s monetary policy is not at all targeted at pushing down the currency. By taking a bold monetary easing policy and exiting deflation as soon as possible, that’s good not only for Japan, but for the economies of Asia and the rest of the world.”

Japan’s actions put pressure on China, South Korea, and Taiwan, who compete with Japanese-made electronics goods in world markets. Russian and South Korean leaders have suggested that they are considering weakening their currencies in response to Japan’s actions.

Central bankers and finance ministers may be caught between a rock and a hard place. The easy-money policies are designed to promote economic growth, which they all want. The easy-money policies may also trigger a currency war, which none of them want. Finding the right balance is one of the primary challenges they now face.

As we discuss in this chapter, this is not the first time a global currency war had threatened the world’s economy. The 1930s were marked by similar economic conflicts. Many international economists believe that the manipulation of their currencies’ values by the United States, the United Kingdom, France, Switzerland, and Belgium deepened and elongated the Great Depression of that decade. Avoiding a currency war and ensuring that the international monetary system functions efficiently to promote world commerce is thus of great importance to world leaders, central bankers, and business people.

The international monetary system exists because most countries have their own currencies. A means of exchanging these currencies is needed if business is to be conducted across national boundaries. The international monetary system establishes the rules by which countries value
and exchange their currencies. It also provides a mechanism for correcting imbalances between a country’s international payments and its receipts. Further, the cost of converting foreign money into a firm’s home currency—a variable critical to the profitability of international operations—depends on the smooth functioning of the international monetary system.

International business people also monitor the international monetary system’s accounting system, the balance of payments. The balance of payments (BOP) accounting system records international transactions and supplies vital information about the health of a national economy and likely changes in its fiscal and monetary policies. BOP statistics can be used to detect signs of trouble that could eventually lead to governmental trade restrictions, higher interest rates, accelerated inflation, reduced aggregate demand, and general changes in the cost of doing business in any given country.

History of the International Monetary System

Today’s international monetary system can trace its roots to the ancient allure of gold and silver, both of which served as media of exchange in early trade between tribes and in later trade between city-states. Silver, for example, was used in trade among India, Babylon, and Phoenicia as early as the seventh century B.C.E. As the modern nation-states of Europe took form in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, their coins were traded on the basis of their relative gold and silver content.

The Gold Standard

Ancient reliance on gold coins as an international medium of exchange led to the adoption of an international monetary system known as the gold standard. Under the gold standard, countries agree to buy or sell their paper currencies in exchange for gold on the request of any individual or firm and, in contrast to mercantilism’s hoarding of gold, to allow the free export of gold bullion and coins. In 1821 the United Kingdom became the first country to adopt the gold standard. During the nineteenth century, most other important trading countries—including Russia, Austria-Hungary, France, Germany, and the United States—did the same.

The gold standard effectively created a fixed exchange rate system. An exchange rate is the price of one currency in terms of a second currency. Under a fixed exchange rate system, the price of a given currency does not change relative to each other currency. The gold standard created a fixed exchange rate system because each country tied, or pegged, the value of its currency to gold. The United Kingdom, for example, pledged to buy or sell an ounce of gold for 4.247 pounds sterling, thereby establishing the pound’s par value, or official price in terms of gold. The United States agreed to buy or sell an ounce of gold for a par value of $20.67. The two currencies could be freely exchanged for the stated amount of gold, making £4.247 = 1 ounce of gold = $20.67. This implied a fixed exchange rate between the pound and the dollar of £1 = $4.867, or $20.67/£4.247.

As long as firms had faith in a country’s pledge to exchange its currency for gold at the promised rate when requested to do so, many actually preferred to be paid in currency. Transacting in gold was expensive. Suppose Jardine Matheson, a Hong Kong trading company, sold £100,000 worth of tea to Twining & Company, a London distributor of fine teas. If it wanted to be paid in gold by Twining & Company on delivery of the tea, Jardine Matheson had to bear the costs of loading the gold into the cargo hold of a ship, guarding it against theft, transporting it, and insuring it against possible disasters. Moreover, because of the slowness of sailing ships, Jardine Matheson would be unable to earn interest on the £100,000 payment while the gold was in transit from London to Hong Kong. However, if Jardine Matheson was willing to be paid in British pounds, Twining could draft a check to Jardine Matheson and give it to the firm’s London agent. The London agent could then either immediately deposit the check in Jardine Matheson’s interest-bearing London bank account or transfer the funds via telegraph to the firm’s account at its Hong Kong bank.

From 1821 until the end of World War I in 1918, the most important currency in international commerce was the British pound sterling, a reflection of the United Kingdom’s emergence from the Napoleonic Wars as Europe’s dominant economic and military power. Most firms worldwide were willing to accept either gold or British pounds in settlement of transactions. As a result, the
international monetary system during this period is often called a **sterling-based gold standard**. The pound’s role in world commerce was reinforced by the expansion of the British Empire. The Union Jack flew over so many lands (see Map 7.1)—for example, present-day Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Hong Kong, Singapore, India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Kenya, Zimbabwe, South Africa, Gibraltar, Bermuda, and Belize—that the claim was made that “the sun never sets on the British Empire.” In each colony British banks established branches and used the pound sterling to settle international transactions among themselves. Because of the international trust in British currency, London became the dominant international financial center in the nineteenth century, a position it still holds. The international reputations and competitive strengths of such British firms as Barclays Bank, Thomas Cook, and Lloyd’s of London stem from the role of the pound sterling in the nineteenth-century gold standard.

**The Collapse of the Gold Standard**

During World War I, the sterling-based gold standard unraveled. With the outbreak of war, normal commercial transactions between the Allies (France, Russia, and the United Kingdom) and the Central Powers (Austria-Hungary, Germany, and the Ottoman Empire) ceased. The economic pressures of war caused country after country to suspend their pledges to buy or sell gold at their currencies’ par values. After the war, conferences at Brussels (1920) and Genoa (1922) yielded general agreements among the major economic powers to return to the prewar gold standard. Most countries, including the United States, the United Kingdom, and France, readopted the gold standard in the 1920s despite the high levels of inflation, unemployment, and political instability that were wracking Europe.

The resuscitation of the gold standard proved to be short-lived, however, as a result of the economic stresses triggered by the worldwide Great Depression. The Bank of England, the United Kingdom’s central bank, was unable to honor its pledge to maintain the value of the pound. On September 21, 1931, it allowed the pound to **float**, meaning that the pound’s value would be determined by the forces of supply and demand and the Bank of England would no longer redeem British paper currency for gold at par value.

After the United Kingdom abandoned the gold standard, a “sterling area” emerged as some countries, primarily members of the British Commonwealth, pegged their currencies to the pound and relied on sterling balances held in London as their international reserves.
MAP 7.1
The British Empire in 1913

British Empire in 1913
Other countries tied the value of their currencies to the U.S. dollar or the French franc. The harmony of the international monetary system degenerated further as some countries—including the United States, France, the United Kingdom, Belgium, Latvia, the Netherlands, Switzerland, and Italy—engaged in a series of competitive devaluations of their currencies. By deliberately and artificially lowering (devaluing) the official value of its currency, each nation hoped to make its own goods cheaper in world markets, thereby stimulating its exports and reducing its imports. Any such gains were offset, however, when other countries also devalued their currencies. (If two countries each devalue their currency by 20 percent, neither gains an advantage because each currency’s value relative to the other remains the same.) Most countries also raised the tariffs they imposed on imported goods in the hope of protecting domestic jobs in import-competing industries. Yet as more and more countries adopted these beggar-thy-neighbor policies, international trade contracted, hurting employment in each country’s export industries. More ominously, this international economic conflict was soon replaced by international military conflict—the outbreak of World War II in 1939.

The Bretton Woods Era

Many politicians and historians believe the breakdown of the international monetary system and international trade after World War I created economic conditions that helped bring about World War II. Inflation, unemployment, and the costs of rebuilding war-torn economies created political instability that enabled fascist and communist dictators to seize control of their respective governments. Determined not to repeat the mistakes that had caused World War II, Western diplomats desired to create a postwar economic environment that would promote worldwide peace and prosperity. In 1944 the representatives of 44 countries met at a resort in Bretton Woods, New Hampshire, with that objective in mind. The Bretton Woods conference agreed to renew the gold standard on a greatly modified basis. They also agreed to the creation of two new international organizations that would assist in rebuilding the world economy and the international monetary system: the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Monetary Fund.

THE INTERNATIONAL BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT

The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) is the official name of the World Bank. Established in 1945, the World Bank’s initial goal was to help finance reconstruction of the war-torn European economies. With the assistance of the Marshall Plan, the World Bank accomplished this task by the mid-1950s. It then adopted a new mission—to build the economies of the world’s developing countries.

As its mission has expanded over time, the World Bank has created three affiliated organizations:

1. The International Development Association
2. The International Finance Corporation
3. The Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency

Together with the World Bank, these constitute the World Bank Group (see Figure 7.1). The World Bank, which currently has $134 billion in loans outstanding, is owned by its 188 member countries. In reaching its decisions, the World Bank uses a weighted voting system that reflects the economic power and contributions of its members. The United States currently controls the largest block of votes (15.0 percent), followed by Japan (8.8 percent), Germany (4.7 percent), the United Kingdom (4.2 percent), France (4.2 percent), and China (3.2 percent). From time to time the voting weights are reassessed as economic power shifts or as new members join the World Bank. To finance its lending operations, the World Bank borrows money in its own name from international capital markets. Interest earned on existing loans it has made provides it with additional lending power. The World Bank made $20.6 billion in new loan commitments in 2012.

According to its charter, the World Bank may lend only for “productive purposes” that will stimulate economic growth within the recipient country. An example of such a loan is the $200 million provided to Indonesia to modernize its national highways and improve traffic safety. The World Bank cannot finance a trade deficit, but it can finance an infrastructure project, such as a new railroad or harbor facility, that will bolster a country’s economy. It may lend only
The hard loan policy was severely criticized in the 1950s by poorer countries, which complained it hindered their ability to obtain World Bank loans. In response, the World Bank established the International Development Association (IDA) in 1960. The IDA offers soft loans, loans that bear some significant risk of not being repaid. IDA loans carry low or zero interest rates, although the IDA may collect a small service charge (currently 0.75 percent) from borrowers. The loans also have long maturities (normally 35 to 40 years), and borrowers are often granted a 10-year grace period before they need to begin repaying their loans. The IDA’s lending efforts focus on the least-developed countries. A typical loan is the $25 million provided to Guinea to reduce water pollution and lessen waterborne diseases. The IDA obtains resources from the initial subscriptions its members make when joining it, from transferred World Bank profits, and from periodic replenishments contributed by richer countries. In 2012, the IDA made new loan commitments amounting to $14.8 billion.

The two other affiliates of the World Bank Group have narrower missions. The International Finance Corporation (IFC), created in 1956, is charged with promoting the development of the private sector in developing countries. Acting like an investment banker, the IFC, in collaboration with private investors, provides debt and equity capital for promising commercial activities. For example, the IFC provided Bangladesh’s Lafarge Surma Cement Ltd. with $10 million in equity and $35 million in loans to help it build a $60-million plant capable of producing 1.2 million tons of cement annually. The IFC is also interested in helping small entrepreneurs. In total the IFC provided $15.5 billion of financing in 2012.

The other World Bank affiliate, the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (MIGA), was set up in 1988 to overcome private sector reluctance to invest in developing countries because of perceived political riskiness—a topic covered in Chapter 3. MIGA encourages direct investment in developing countries by offering private investors insurance against noncommercial risks. For example, MIGA issued $18 million of political risk insurance to Société Nationale de Télécommunications du Sénégal to protect its investment in Ikatel SA, a Mali telephone company, and $115 million in support of the Bujagali hydropower plant in Uganda. In 2012, MIGA underwrote a total of $2.7 billion in political risk insurance.

Paralleling the efforts of the World Bank are the regional development banks, such as the African Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, and the Inter-American Development Bank. These organizations promote the economic development of the poorer countries in their
respective regions. The most recently created regional development bank is the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development. It was established by the Western countries to assist in the reconstruction of Central Europe and Eastern Europe after the regions’ communist regimes collapsed. The regional development banks and the World Bank often work together on development projects. For example, in 2012 the Asian Development Bank provided $63 million to finance two water projects in Uzbekistan and $165 million for a 75 kilometer railroad link in Afghanistan as part of the Central Asia Regional Economic Cooperation program, a program supported by the World Bank.3

THE INTERNATIONAL MONETARY FUND The Bretton Woods attendees believed that the deterioration of international trade during the years after World War I was attributable in part to the competitive exchange rate devaluations that plagued international commerce. To ensure that the post–World War II monetary system would promote international commerce, the Bretton Woods Agreement called for the creation of the International Monetary Fund (IMF) to oversee the functioning of the international monetary system. Article I of the IMF’s Articles of Agreement lays out the organization’s objectives:

1. To promote international monetary cooperation
2. To facilitate the expansion and balanced growth of international trade
3. To promote exchange stability, to maintain orderly exchange arrangements among members, and to avoid competitive exchange depreciation
4. To assist in the establishment of a multilateral system of payments
5. To give confidence to members by making the general resources of the IMF temporarily available to them and to correct maladjustments in their balance of payments
6. To shorten the duration and lessen the degree of disequilibrium in the international balance of payments of members

Membership in the IMF is available to any country willing to agree to its rules and regulations. As of 2013, 188 countries were members. To join, a country must pay a deposit, called a quota, partly in gold and partly in the country’s own currency. The quota’s size primarily reflects the global importance of the country’s economy, although political considerations may also have some effect. The size of a quota is important for several reasons:

1. A country’s quota determines its voting power within the IMF. Currently the United States controls 16.8 percent of the votes in the IMF, Japan 6.2 percent, and Germany 5.8 percent, followed by France and the United Kingdom (4.3 percent), China (3.8 percent), Italy (3.2 percent), Saudi Arabia (2.8 percent), Canada (2.6 percent), and Russia (2.4 percent). However, these voting powers are in the process of changing: In 2010 the IMF’s Executive Board agreed to shift 6 percent of the organization’s voting power from developed countries to the emerging and developing countries in recognition of their growing importance in the world economy.4

2. A country’s quota serves as part of its official reserves (we discuss official reserves later in this chapter).

3. The quota determines the country’s borrowing power from the IMF. Each IMF member has an unconditional right to borrow up to 25 percent of its quota from the IMF. IMF policy allows additional borrowings contingent on the member country’s agreeing to IMF-imposed restrictions—called IMF conditionality—on its economic policies. For example, in return for an IMF loan of $21 billion during the Asian currency crisis, South Korea agreed to undertake major economic reforms, including permitting foreign banks to take over their Korean counterparts, closing insolvent merchant banks, reducing government favoritism toward the larger chaebols, and lowering tariffs on many goods. The IMF consented to lend Indonesia $10 billion after that country pledged to scrap state monopolies controlling certain foodstuffs, reform its banking industry, and cut trade barriers directed against imported goods.5 Local politicians and interest groups often bitterly protest the IMF’s conditionality requirements, arguing that foreigners, working through the IMF, are taking advantage of the country’s short-term problems to extract changes favorable to the foreigners. At times, the situation can turn uglier. For example, Indonesia was wracked by rioting after prices and unemployment soared as a result of the austerity measures demanded by the IMF, and longtime President Suharto was forced to resign his office.
A DOLLAR-BASED GOLD STANDARD  The IMF and the World Bank provided the institutional framework for the post–World War II international monetary system. The Bretton Woods participants also addressed the problem of how the system would function in practice. All countries agreed to peg the value of their currencies to gold. For example, the par value of the U.S. dollar was established at $35 per ounce of gold. However, only the United States pledged to redeem its currency for gold at the request of a foreign central bank. Thus, the U.S. dollar became the keystone of the Bretton Woods system. Why this central role for the U.S. dollar? During the early postwar years, only the U.S. and Canadian dollars were convertible currencies, that is, ones that could be freely exchanged for other currencies without legal restrictions. Countries had faith in the U.S. economy and so were willing to accept U.S. dollars to settle their transactions. As the British pound sterling had been in the nineteenth century, the U.S. dollar became the preferred vehicle for settling most international transactions. The effect of the Bretton Woods conference was thus to establish a U.S. dollar–based gold standard.

Because each country established a par value for its currency, the Bretton Woods Agreement resulted in a fixed exchange rate system. Under the agreement each country pledged to maintain the value of its currency within ±1 percent of its par value. If the market value of its currency fell outside that range, a country was obligated to intervene in the foreign-exchange market to bring the value back within ±1 percent of par value. This stability in exchange rates benefited international businesses because the Bretton Woods system generally provided an assurance that the value of each currency would remain stable.

Note the use of the qualifier generally. Under extraordinary circumstances the Bretton Woods Agreement allowed a country to adjust its currency’s par value. Accordingly, the Bretton Woods system is often described as using an adjustable peg because currencies were pegged to gold, but the pegs themselves could be altered under certain conditions. Under the system, for example, the British pound’s par value was first set at $2.80. (Technically, the par value was pegged to an ounce of gold, which then could be translated into dollars at a rate of $35.00 per ounce. Most businesspeople ignored this technicality, however, and focused on the implicit par value of a currency in terms of the U.S. dollar.) Thus, the Bank of England was obligated to keep the pound’s value between $2.772 and $2.828 (±1 percent of $2.80). In the event that pessimism about the British economy caused the pound’s market price to fall to $2.76, the Bank of England would be required to defend the value of the pound by selling some of its gold or U.S. dollar holdings to buy pounds. This move would increase the demand for pounds, and the market price would return to within the legal range—from $2.772 to $2.828.

The End of the Bretton Woods System

This arrangement worked well as long as pessimism about a country’s economy was temporary, but if a country suffered from structural macroeconomic problems, major difficulties could arise. For example, in the 1960s, Labour governments striving for social justice dominated British politics, and British unions secured higher wages, better working conditions, and protective work rules. At the same time, however, British productivity decreased relative to that of its major international competitors, and the pound’s value weakened. The Bank of England had to intervene continually in the foreign currency market, selling gold and foreign currencies to support the pound. In so doing, however, the bank’s holdings of official reserves, which were needed to back up the country’s Bretton Woods pledge, began to dwindle. International currency traders began to fear the bank would run out of reserves. As that fear mounted, international banks, currency traders, and other market participants became unwilling to hold British pounds in their inventory of foreign currencies. They began dumping pounds on the market as soon as they received them. A vicious cycle developed: As the Bank of England continued to drain its official reserves to support the pound, the fears of the currency-market participants that the bank would run out of reserves worsened.

The situation resembles a run on a bank. Banks never have enough cash on hand to honor all their liabilities. However, as long as people trust that their bank will give them their money if they need it, no one worries. If people lose that trust and withdraw more of their money than the bank has on hand, the bank could be in trouble. The Bretton Woods system was particularly susceptible to speculative “runs on the bank” because there was little risk in betting against a currency in times of doubt. For example, speculators distrustful of the Bank of England’s ability to honor the UK’s Bretton Woods pledge could convert their pounds into dollars. If they guessed
right and the pound was devalued, they could make a quick financial killing. If they guessed wrong and the Bank of England maintained the pound’s par value, the speculators could always reconvert their dollar holdings back into pounds with little penalty.

The United Kingdom faced this type of bank run in November 1967. The Bank of England could not counter the flood of pounds dumped on the market by speculators and was forced to devalue the pound by 14.3 percent (from $2.80 to $2.40 per pound). France faced a similar run in 1969 and had to devalue the franc. These devaluations tested the international business community’s faith in the Bretton Woods system. But the system faced its true Waterloo when the dollar came under attack in the early 1970s.

These runs on the British and French central banks were a precursor to a run on the most important bank in the Bretton Woods system—the U.S. Federal Reserve Bank. Ironically, the reliance of the Bretton Woods system on the dollar ultimately led to the system’s undoing. Because the supply of gold did not expand in the short run, the only source of the liquidity needed to expand international trade was the U.S. dollar. Under the Bretton Woods system, the expansion of international liquidity depended on foreigners’ willingness to continually increase their holdings of dollars. Foreigners were perfectly happy to hold dollars as long as they trusted the integrity of the U.S. currency, and during the 1950s and 1960s the number of dollars held by foreigners rose steadily.

As foreign dollar holdings increased, however, people began to question the ability of the United States to live up to its Bretton Woods obligation. This led to the Triffin paradox, named after the Belgian-born Yale University economist Robert Triffin, who first identified the problem. The paradox arose because foreigners needed to increase their holdings of dollars to finance expansion of international trade, but the more dollars they owned, the less faith they had in the ability of the United States to redeem those dollars for gold. The less faith foreigners had in the United States, the more they wanted to rid themselves of dollars and get gold in return. If they did this, however, international trade and the international monetary system might collapse because the United States did not have enough gold to redeem all the dollars held by foreigners.

As a means of injecting more liquidity into the international monetary system while reducing the demands placed on the dollar as a reserve currency, IMF members agreed in 1967 to create special drawing rights (SDRs). IMF members can use SDRs to settle official transactions at the IMF. Thus, SDRs are sometimes called “paper gold.” IMF members currently hold approximately 204 billion SDRs. (About 90 percent of these SDRs were created in 2009 by the IMF to address the global recession.) An SDR’s value is currently calculated daily as a weighted average of the market value of four major currencies—U.S. dollar, euro, Japanese yen, and British pound sterling—with the weights revised every five years. As of July 2013, the SDR was worth $1.50 in U.S. dollars.

Although SDRs did provide new liquidity for the international monetary system, they did not reduce the fundamental problem of the glut of dollars held by foreigners. By mid-1971, the Bretton Woods system was tottering, the victim of fears about the dollar’s instability. During the first seven months of 1971, the United States was forced to sell one-third of its gold reserves to maintain the dollar’s value. It became clear to the marketplace that the United States did not have sufficient gold on hand to meet the demands of those who still wanted to exchange their dollars for gold. In a dramatic address on August 15, 1971, President Richard M. Nixon announced that the United States would no longer redeem gold at $35 per ounce. The Bretton Woods system was ended. In effect, the bank was closing its doors.

After Nixon’s speech most currencies began to float, their values being determined by supply and demand in the foreign-exchange market. The value of the U.S. dollar fell relative to most of the world’s major currencies. The nations of the world, however, were not yet ready to abandon the fixed exchange rate system. At the Smithsonian Conference, held in Washington, D.C., in December 1971, central bank representatives from the Group of Ten (see Table 7.1) agreed to restore the fixed exchange rate system but with restructured rates of exchange between the major trading currencies. The U.S. dollar was devalued to $38 per ounce but remained inconvertible into gold, and the par values of strong currencies such as the yen were revalued upward. Currencies were allowed to fluctuate around their new par values by ±2.25 percent, which replaced the narrower ±1.00 percent range authorized by the Bretton Woods Agreement.
Performance of the International Monetary System Since 1971

Free-market forces disputed the new set of par values established by the Smithsonian conference. Speculators sold both the dollar and the pound, believing they were overvalued, and hoarded currencies they believed were undervalued, such as the Swiss franc and the German mark. The Bank of England was unable to maintain the pound’s value within the ±2.25 percent band and in June 1972 had to allow the pound to float downward. Switzerland let the Swiss franc float upward in early 1973. The United States devalued the dollar by 10 percent in February 1973. By March 1973 the central banks (see Table 7.2 for a list of the most important of today’s central banks) conceded they could not successfully resist free-market forces and so established a flexible exchange rate system. Under a flexible (or floating) exchange rate system, supply and demand for a currency determine its price in the world market. Since 1973, exchange rates among many currencies have been established primarily by the interaction of supply and demand. We use the qualifier primarily because central banks sometimes try to affect exchange rates by buying or selling currencies on the foreign-exchange market. Thus, the current arrangements are often called a managed float (or, more poetically, a dirty float) because exchange rates are not determined purely by private sector market forces. “Bringing the World into Focus” discusses other differences between fixed and flexible exchange rates.

The new flexible exchange rate system was legitimized by an international conference held in Jamaica in January 1976. According to the resulting Jamaica Agreement, each country was free to adopt whatever exchange rate system best met its own requirements. The United States adopted a floating exchange rate. Other countries adopted a fixed exchange rate by pegging their money to the dollar or another country’s currency. The new flexible exchange rate system was legitimized by an international conference held in Jamaica in January 1976. According to the resulting Jamaica Agreement, each country was free to adopt whatever exchange rate system best met its own requirements. The United States adopted a floating exchange rate. Other countries adopted a fixed exchange rate by pegging their money to the dollar or another country’s currency.

Table 7.2: Key Central Banks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Bank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Bank of Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European Union (members using the euro)</td>
<td>European Central Bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Bank of Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>Bank of England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Federal Reserve Bank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The Group of 10 has 11 members.
currencies to the dollar, the French franc, or some other currency. Still others used crawling pegs, allowing the peg to change gradually over time.

Of particular note is the strategy adopted by European Union (EU) members in the belief that flexible exchange rates would hinder their ability to create an integrated European economy. In 1979 EU members created the European Monetary System (EMS) to manage currency relationships among themselves. Most EMS members chose to participate in the EU’s exchange rate mechanism (ERM). ERM participants pledged to maintain fixed exchange rates among their currencies within a narrow range of ±2.25 percent of par value and a floating rate against the U.S. dollar and other currencies. The exchange rate mechanism facilitated the creation of the EU’s single currency, the euro, in 1999, a topic we will cover more thoroughly in Chapter 10.

The current international monetary system is an amalgam of fixed and flexible exchange rates. For example, as just discussed, most members of the EU have adopted a common currency, whereas other countries have voluntarily adopted a fixed exchange rate against the U.S. dollar, the euro, or some other currency. Still other countries, such as Canada, Japan, the United Kingdom, and the United States, have chosen to let their currencies float. Accordingly, under the current international monetary system, the currencies of one country grouping float against the currencies of other country groupings. For example, the U.S. dollar and currencies fixed to the U.S. dollar float against the euro and currencies fixed to it. The U.S. dollar and the euro in turn float against numerous independently floating currencies, such as the Canadian dollar, the Australian dollar, the British pound, and the Swiss franc.

OTHER POST–WORLD WAR II CONFERENCES The international monetary system that has grown out of the Jamaica Agreement has not pleased all of the world’s central banks all the time. Since 1976, the central banks have met numerous times to iron out policy conflicts among themselves. For example, U.S. complaints that an overvalued dollar was hurting the competitiveness of U.S. exports and allowing cheap imports to damage U.S. industries prompted finance ministers of the Group of Five (see Table 7.1) to meet in September 1985 at the Plaza Hotel in New York City. The meeting led to the Plaza Accord, in which the central banks agreed to let the dollar’s value fall on currency markets—and fall it did. From its peak in February 1985 the dollar plummeted almost 46 percent against the German mark and 41 percent against the yen by the beginning of 1987. Fearing that continued devaluation of the dollar would disrupt world trade, finance ministers from the Group of Five met again, this time at the Louvre in Paris in February 1987. The Louvre Accord signaled the commitment of these five countries to stabilizing the dollar’s

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

FIXED VERSUS FLEXIBLE EXCHANGE RATES

The important difference between fixed and flexible exchange rate systems is the way they reach equilibrium. Under the fixed exchange rate system, such as the gold standard (1821 to 1914) and the Bretton Woods system (1945 to 1971), each country pledges to maintain the value of its currency against some standard, such as gold or another currency. If the value of the country's currency falls below par value, the country's central bank boosts the currency's price by buying it in the foreign-exchange market, selling off its gold reserves or stock of convertible currencies in the process. If the currency's value rises above par value, the central bank sells the currency in the foreign-exchange market, acquiring additional gold or foreign currency in the process. Long-run equilibrium is supposed to occur through the deflationary or inflationary impact of changes in the country's money supply attributable to the central bank's actions in the foreign-exchange market.

Although this automatic adjustment process worked reasonably well under the nineteenth-century gold standard, it did not work well under the Bretton Woods system. In practice, the adjustment process under the Bretton Woods system was asymmetric. A country with a BOP surplus did not need to do anything, provided it was willing to accumulate foreign exchange or gold. A country suffering a BOP deficit saw a continuing decrease in its official reserves. It had to cure its BOP problems well before it ran out of reserves. If the country did nothing, other countries (and investors), seeing its reserves dwindling, would begin to distrust the country's ability to honor its pledge to maintain its currency's par value. These foreigners would rush to sell their holdings of the currency, thereby worsening the drain on the country's reserves. Ultimately, the government would have to renegotiate on its promise to convert at the fixed rate and would resort to devaluing its currency. This is what happened to the United Kingdom in 1967, France in 1969, and the United States in 1971.

Conversely, under a flexible exchange rate system, the exchange rate is determined by the forces of supply and demand for each currency. Assuming a country's central bank is willing to live with the outcome of these market forces, its official reserves need not be depleted because consumers and investors are determining the currency's value through their self-interested transactions.
value. However, the foreign-exchange market was once again thrown into turmoil in 1990, this time by the onset of the Persian Gulf hostilities. The values of key currencies continued to fluctuate through the end of the century. Figure 7.2 shows changes in the dollar’s value against the Japanese and German currencies since the collapse of the Bretton Woods system.

These fluctuations in currency values are of great importance to international businesses. When the value of their domestic currency increases in the foreign-exchange market, firms find it harder to export their goods, more difficult to protect their domestic markets from the threat of foreign imports, and more advantageous to shift their production from domestic factories to foreign factories. A decrease in the domestic currency’s value has the opposite effect. Savvy international businesspeople are mindful of the impact of these currency fluctuations on their business opportunities. For example, Dutch flower growers find it easier to export their goods and services when the value of the euro falls in the foreign exchange market. Conversely, increases in the value of the euro make it harder for Dutch and other euro-based firms to compete with rivals from North America or Asia. The problems caused by these exchange rate fluctuations have motivated some experts to call for a restoration of the Bretton Woods system (see “Bringing the World into Focus”).

THE INTERNATIONAL DEBT CRISIS The flexible exchange rate system instituted in 1973 was immediately put to a severe test. In response to the Israeli victory in the Arab-Israeli War of 1973, Arab nations imposed an embargo on oil shipments to countries such as the United States and the Netherlands, which had supported the Israeli cause. As a result, the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) succeeded in quadrupling world oil prices from $3 a barrel in October 1973 to $12 a barrel by March 1974. This rapid increase in oil prices caused inflationary pressures in oil-importing countries. For example, in the United States inflation rose from 6.1 percent in 1973 to 11.1 percent in 1974. In 1974 alone $60 billion in wealth was transferred from oil-importing countries to oil-exporting countries. The new international monetary arrangements absorbed some of the shock caused by this upheaval in the oil market, as exchange rates adjusted to account for changes in the value of each country’s oil exports or imports. In general, the currencies of the oil exporters strengthened, while those of the oil importers weakened.
This enormous transfer of wealth raised many economic concerns. The higher oil prices acted as a tax on the economies of the oil-importing countries. Some economists feared that worldwide depression would develop as consumer demand fell in the richer countries. Other economists worried that because trade in oil was denominated in dollars, international liquidity would dry up as dollars piled up in OPEC bank accounts. Neither of these fears was realized. Many of the oil-exporting countries went on spending sprees, using their new wealth to improve their infrastructures or to invest in new facilities (such as petroleum refineries) to produce wealth for future generations. The unspent petrodollars were deposited in banks in international money centers such as London and New York City. The international banking community then recycled these petrodollars through its international lending activities to help revive the economies damaged by rising oil prices.

Unfortunately, the international banks were too aggressive in recycling these dollars. Many countries borrowed more than they could repay. Mexico, for example, borrowed $90 billion, while Brazil took on $67 billion in new loans. The financial positions of these borrowers became precarious after the oil shock of 1978–1979, which was triggered by the toppling of the Shah of Iran from power. The price of oil skyrocketed from $13 a barrel in 1978 to over $30 a barrel in 1980, triggering another round of worldwide inflation. Interest rates on these loans rose, as most carried a floating interest rate, further burdening the heavily indebted nations. The international debt crisis formally began when Mexico declared in August 1982 that it could not service its external debts. Mexico requested a rescheduling of its debts, a moratorium on repayment of principal, and a loan from the IMF to help it through its debt crisis. Mexico was soon joined by Brazil and Argentina. In total more than 40 countries in Asia, Africa, and Latin America sought relief from their external debts. Negotiations among the debtor countries, creditor countries, private banks, and international organizations continued through the rest of the 1980s.

Various approaches were used to resolve the crisis. The 1985 Baker Plan (named after then U.S. Treasury Secretary James Baker) stressed the importance of debt rescheduling, tight IMF-imposed controls over domestic monetary and fiscal policies, and continued lending to debtor countries in hopes that economic growth would allow them to repay their creditors. In Mexico’s case the IMF agreed to provide a loan package only if private foreign banks holding Mexican debt agreed to reschedule their loans and provide Mexico with additional financing. However, the debtor nations made little progress in repaying their loans. Debtors and creditors alike agreed that a new approach was needed. The 1989 Brady Plan (named after the first Bush administration’s treasury secretary, Nicholas Brady) focused on the need to reduce the debts of the troubled countries by writing off parts of the debts or by providing the countries with funds to buy back their loan notes at below face value.

The international debt crisis receded during the 1990s as the debt-servicing requirements of debtor countries were made more manageable via a combination of IMF loans, debt rescheduling, and changes in governmental economic policies (see the discussion of economic reforms in Mexico, Argentina, and Brazil in Chapter 2). The impact of the crisis cannot be overstated. Many experts consider the 1980s the “lost decade” for economic development in Latin America.

The Asian currency crisis erupted in July 1997, when Thailand, which had pegged its currency to a dollar-dominated basket of currencies, was forced to unpeg its currency, the baht, after investors began to distrust the abilities of Thai borrowers to repay their foreign loans and of the Thai government to maintain the baht’s value. Not wanting to hold a currency likely to be devalued, foreign and domestic investors converted their baht to dollars and other currencies. The Thai central bank spent much of its official reserves desperately trying to maintain the pegged value of the baht. After Thailand was forced to abandon the peg on July 2, the baht promptly fell 20 percent in value. As investors realized that other countries in the region shared Thailand’s overdependence on foreign short-term capital, their currencies also came under attack and their stock markets were devastated. Indonesia was hit the worst by the so-called Asian contagion. The value of the Indonesian rupiah fell by 73 percent and its stock market plunged by more than 80 percent. Aftershocks of the crisis spread to Latin America and Russia, and the Russian government effectively defaulted on its foreign debts. All told, the IMF and the developed countries pledged more than $100 billion in loans to help restore these countries to economic health.
The latest financial crisis to plague the international capital market began with the so-called subprime meltdown, which resulted from the bursting of the U.S. housing bubble. The financial problems created by this collapse affected financial markets throughout the world and led to the Global Recession of 2008–2009. The incipient global currency war discussed in the chapter’s opening case is the result of countries trying to resuscitate their economies in the aftermath of the global recession.

These crises did not come as a surprise to the analysts who had been monitoring the affected countries’ BOP accounts for danger signs. The BOP accounting system provided clear warning of the deteriorating performance of the countries in crisis and the increasing riskiness of their overextended external debt positions. A careful reading of BOP statistics could have protected international bankers from bad investments and risky loans. Because the BOP accounting system provides such valuable economic intelligence information, the next section discusses it in detail.

**In Practice**

- There are two primary types of exchange rate systems, flexible exchange rate systems and fixed exchange rate systems.
- After the collapse of the Bretton Woods system, both types of exchange rate systems are in use.

_For further consideration:_ Would you rather invest in a country that uses a fixed exchange rate or a flexible exchange rate?

**The BOP Accounting System**

Each year countries purchase trillions of dollars of goods, services, and assets from each other. The BOP accounting system is a double-entry bookkeeping system designed to measure and record all economic transactions between residents of one country and residents of all other countries during a particular time period. It helps policymakers understand the performance of each country’s economy in international markets. It also signals fundamental changes in the competitiveness of countries and assists policymakers in designing appropriate public policies to respond to these changes.
International businesspeople need to pay close attention to countries’ BOP statistics for several reasons, including the following:

1. BOP statistics help identify emerging markets for goods and services.
2. BOP statistics can warn of possible new policies that may alter a country’s business climate, thereby affecting the profitability of a firm’s operations in that country. For example, sharp rises in a country’s imports may signal an overheated economy and portend a tightening of the domestic money supply. In this case attentive businesspeople will shrink their inventories in anticipation of a reduction in customer demand.
3. BOP statistics can indicate reductions in a country’s foreign-exchange reserves, which may mean that the country’s currency will depreciate in the future, as occurred in Thailand in 1997. Exporters to such a country may find that domestic producers will become more price competitive.
4. As was true in the international debt crisis, BOP statistics can signal increased riskiness of lending to particular countries.

Four important aspects of the BOP accounting system need to be highlighted:

1. The BOP accounting system records international transactions made during some time period, for example, a year.
2. It records only economic transactions, those that involve something of monetary value.
3. It records transactions between residents of one country and residents of all other countries. Residents can be individuals, businesses, government agencies, or nonprofit organizations, but defining residency is sometimes tricky. Persons temporarily located in a country—tourists, students, and military or diplomatic personnel—are still considered residents of their home country for BOP purposes. Businesses are considered residents of the country in which they are incorporated. Firms often conduct international business by locating either a branch or a subsidiary in a foreign country. A branch, which by definition is an unincorporated operation and thus not legally distinct from its parent corporation, is a resident of the parent’s home country. A subsidiary, which by definition is a separately incorporated operation, is a resident of the country in which it is incorporated. In most cases the subsidiary is incorporated in the host country to take advantage of legally being a resident of the country in which it is operating.
4. The BOP accounting system is a double-entry system. Each transaction produces a credit entry and a debit entry of equal size. In most international business dealings the first entry in a BOP transaction involves the purchase or sale of something—a good, a service, or an asset. The second entry records the payment or receipt of payment for the thing bought or sold. Figuring out which is the BOP debit entry and which is the BOP credit entry is not a skill that most people are born with. Many experts compare a BOP accounting statement to a statement of sources and uses of funds. Debit entries reflect uses of funds; credit entries indicate sources of funds. Under this framework, buying things creates debits, and selling things produces credits.

The Major Components of the BOP Accounting System

The BOP accounting system can be divided conceptually into four major accounts. The first two accounts—the current account and the capital account—record purchases of goods, services, and assets by the private and public sectors. The official reserves account reflects the impact of central bank intervention in the foreign-exchange market. The last account—errors and omissions—captures mistakes made in recording BOP transactions.

CURRENT ACCOUNT The current account records four types of transactions among residents of different countries:

1. Exports and imports of goods (or merchandise)
2. Exports and imports of services
3. Investment income
4. Gifts (or unilateral transfers)
Table 7.3 summarizes debit and credit entries for transactions involving the current account. For example, to Germany the sale of a Mercedes-Benz automobile to a doctor in Marseilles is a *merchandise export*, and the purchase by a German resident of Dom Pérignon champagne from France is a *merchandise import*. (The British use the term *trade in visibles* to refer to merchandise trade.) The difference between a country’s exports and imports of goods is called the *balance on merchandise trade*. The United States, which has been importing more goods than it has been exporting, has a *merchandise trade deficit*; China, which has been exporting more goods than it has been importing, has a *merchandise trade surplus*.

The services account records sales and purchases of such services as transportation, tourism, medical care, telecommunications, advertising, financial services, and education. The sale of a service to a resident of another country is a *service export*, and the purchase by a resident of a service from another country is a *service import*. (The British use the term *trade in invisibles* to denote trade in services.) For example, for Germany a German student spending a year studying at the Sorbonne in Paris is an import of services, and the telephone call home that an Italian tourist makes during the Oktoberfest in Munich represents a service export. The difference between a country’s exports of services and its imports of services is called the *balance on services trade*.

The third type of transaction recorded in the current account is investment income. Income German residents earn from their foreign investments is viewed as an *export of the services of capital* by Germany. This income takes the form of either interest and dividends earned by German residents on their investments in foreign stocks, bonds, and deposit accounts, or profits that are repatriated back to Germany from incorporated subsidiaries in other countries that are owned by German firms. Of course, foreigners also make investments in Germany. Income
earned by foreigners from their investments in Germany is viewed as an **import of the services of capital** by Germany. This income includes interest and dividends paid by firms in Germany on stocks, bonds, and deposit accounts owned by foreign residents, as well as profits that are repatriated by foreign-owned incorporated subsidiaries in Germany back to their corporate parents.

The fourth type of transaction in the current account is **unilateral transfers**, or gifts between residents of one country and another. Unilateral transfers include private and public gifts. For example, Pakistani-born residents of Kuwait who send part of their earnings back home to their relatives are engaging in private unilateral transfers. In contrast, governmental aid from the United Kingdom used for a flood control project in Bangladesh is a public unilateral transfer. In both cases, the recipients need not provide any compensation to the donors.

The **current account balance** measures the net balance resulting from merchandise trade, service trade, investment income, and unilateral transfers. It is closely scrutinized by government officials and policymakers because it broadly reflects the country’s current competitiveness in international markets.

**CAPITAL ACCOUNT.** The second major account in the BOP accounting system is the **capital account**, which records capital transactions—purchases and sales of assets—between residents of one country and those of other countries. (The U.S. BOP accounting system makes a distinction between the capital account and the financial account. To simplify our discussion, we will combine the two.) Capital account transactions (summarized in Table 7.4) can be divided into two categories: foreign direct investment (FDI) and foreign portfolio investment (FPI).

FDI is any investment made for the purpose of controlling the organization in which the investment is made, typically through ownership of significant blocks of common stock with voting privileges. Under U.S. BOP accounting standards, control is defined as ownership of at least 10 percent of a company’s voting stock. FPI is any investment made for purposes other than control. FPIs are divided into two subcategories: short-term investments and long-term investments. **Short-term foreign portfolio investments** are financial instruments with maturities of one year or less. Included in this category are commercial paper; checking accounts, time deposits, and certificates of deposit held by residents of a country in foreign banks or by foreigners in domestic banks; trade receivables and deposits from international commercial customers; and banks’ short-term international lending activities, such as commercial loans. **Long-term foreign portfolio investments** are stocks, bonds, and other financial instruments issued by private and public organizations that have maturities greater than one year and that are held for purposes other than control. For example, when IBM invests excess cash balances overnight in a Paris bank to earn a higher interest rate than it could earn in New York, it is making a short-term portfolio investment. When the California Public Employees’ Retirement System Pension Fund buys stock in British Airways, it is making a long-term portfolio investment. When Kraft purchases all of the common stock of Cadbury PLC, it is making an FDI.

Current account transactions often affect the short-term component of the capital account. Why? As noted previously in this chapter, the first entry in the double-entry BOP accounting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Maturity</th>
<th>Motivation</th>
<th>Typical Investments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portfolio (short term)</td>
<td>One year or less</td>
<td>Investment income or facilitation of international commerce</td>
<td>Checking account balances, Time deposits, Commercial paper, Bank loans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portfolio (long term)</td>
<td>More than one year</td>
<td>Investment income</td>
<td>Government notes and bonds, Corporate stocks and bonds, Foreign subsidiaries, Foreign factories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Direct Investment</td>
<td>Indeterminate</td>
<td>Active control of organization (own at least 10 percent of voting stock)</td>
<td>International joint ventures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
system records the purchase or sale of something—a good, a service, or an asset. The second entry typically records the payment or receipt of payment for the thing bought or sold. In most cases this second entry reflects a change in someone’s checking account balance, which in the BOP accounting system is a short-term capital account transaction. (“Building Global Skills” at the end of this chapter walks you through this linkage between the current account and the capital account in more detail.)

Capital inflows are credits in the BOP accounting system. They can occur in two ways:

1. Foreign ownership of assets in a country increases. An example of a capital inflow into the United States is the purchase of Cephalon, a Pennsylvania-based biopharmaceutical company, by Teva Pharmaceuticals, an Israeli generic drug manufacturer, for $6.8 billion. A capital inflow also occurs if a foreign firm deposits a check in a U.S. bank. In this case, the asset being purchased is a claim on a U.S. bank, which of course is all that a checking account balance represents.

2. Ownership of foreign assets by a country’s residents declines. When the Ford Motor Company sold its Jaguar and Land Rover brands to India’s Tata Motors for $2.5 billion, the United States experienced a capital inflow. Similarly, when IBM pays a Japanese flash drive supplier with a check drawn on IBM’s account at a Tokyo bank, IBM’s Japanese checking account balance declines and the United States experiences a capital inflow because IBM is partially liquidating its ownership of foreign assets.

Capital outflows are debits in the BOP accounting system. They also can occur in two ways:

1. Ownership of foreign assets by a country’s residents increases. Pepsi’s $1.4 billion purchase of 74 percent of the shares of Russian beverage company OAO Lebedyansky represented a capital outflow from the United States. A U.S. capital outflow also occurs when Delta Air Lines deposits a check from a London businessperson into an account it holds in an English bank.

2. Foreign ownership of assets in a country declines. A German mutual fund that sells 100,000 shares of GM common stock from its portfolio to a U.S. resident causes a capital outflow from the United States. A U.S. capital outflow also occurs if Japan Air Lines writes a check drawn on its account at a Hawaiian bank to pay its fuel supplier at Honolulu Airport. In both cases foreigners are liquidating a portion of their U.S. assets.

Table 7.5 summarizes the impact of various capital account transactions on the BOP accounting system.

OFFICIAL RESERVES ACCOUNT The third major account in the BOP accounting system, the official reserves account, records the level of official reserves held by a national government.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 7.5 BOP Entries, Capital Account</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Debit (Outflow)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Portfolio (short term)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receiving a payment from a foreigner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buying a short-term foreign asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buying back a short-term domestic asset from its foreign owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selling a short-term foreign asset acquired previously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Portfolio (long term)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buying a long-term foreign asset (not for purposes of control)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buying back a long-term domestic asset from its foreign owner (not for purposes of control)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selling a domestic long-term asset to a foreigner (not for purposes of control)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selling a long-term foreign asset acquired previously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selling a foreign asset previously acquired for purposes of control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These reserves are used to intervene in the foreign-exchange market and in transactions with other central banks. Official reserves comprise four types of assets:

1. Gold
2. Convertible currencies
3. SDRs
4. Reserve positions at the IMF

Official gold holdings are measured using a par value established by a country’s treasury or finance ministry. Convertible currencies are currencies that are freely exchangeable in world currency markets. The convertible currencies most commonly used as official reserves are the U.S. dollar, the euro, and the yen. The last two types of reserves—SDRs and reserve positions (quotas minus IMF borrowings) at the IMF—were discussed previously in this chapter.

**ERRORS AND OMISSIONS** The last account in the BOP accounting system is the errors and omissions account. One truism of the BOP accounting system is that the BOP must balance. In theory the following equality should be observed:

\[ \text{Current Account} + \text{Capital Account} + \text{Official Reserves Account} = 0 \]

However, this equality is never achieved in practice because of measurement errors. The errors and omissions account is used to make the BOP balance in accordance with the following equation:

\[ \text{Current Account} + \text{Capital Account} + \text{Official Reserves Account} + \text{Errors and Omissions} = 0 \]

The errors and omissions account can be quite large. In 2012, for example, the U.S. errors and omissions account totaled $5.9 billion. Experts suspect that a large portion of the errors and omissions account balance is the result of the underreporting of capital account transactions. Such innovations as instantaneous, round-the-clock foreign-exchange trading, sophisticated monetary swaps and hedges, and international money market funds have made it difficult for government statisticians to keep up with the growing volume of legal short-term money flowing between countries in search of the highest interest rate.

Sometimes, errors and omissions are due to deliberate actions by individuals who are engaged in illegal activities such as drug smuggling, money laundering, or evasion of currency and investment controls imposed by their home governments. Politically stable countries, such as the United States, are often the destination of flight capital, money sent abroad by foreign residents seeking a safe haven for their assets, hidden from the sticky fingers of their home governments. Given the often illegal nature of flight capital, persons sending it to the United States often try to avoid any official recognition of their transactions, making it difficult for government statisticians to record such transactions. Residents of other countries who distrust the stability of their own currency may also choose to use a stronger currency, such as the dollar or the euro, to transact their business or keep their savings, as “Bringing the World into Focus” suggests.

Some errors may crop up in the current account as well. Statistics for merchandise imports are generally thought to be reasonably accurate because most countries’ customs services scrutinize imports to ensure that all appropriate taxes are collected. This scrutiny generates paper trails that facilitate the collection of accurate statistics. However, few countries tax exports, so customs services have less incentive to assess the accuracy of statistics concerning merchandise exports. Statistics for trade in services also may contain inaccuracies. Many service trade statistics are generated by surveys. For example, U.S. tourism exports are measured in part by surveying foreign tourists on how many days they spent in the United States and how many dollars they spent per day. If tourists underestimate their daily spending, then U.S. service exports are underestimated. To help you gain a better understanding of the BOP accounts, we next review the international transactions of the United States in 2012.

**The U.S. BOP in 2012**

The first component of the current account is merchandise (goods) exports and imports. As shown in Table 7.6, U.S. merchandise exports totaled $1,561.2 billion in 2012. Figure 7.3(a)
BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

BEN FRANKLIN, WORLD TRAVELER

Who is the most well-known American outside the borders of the United States? Barack Obama? Brad Pitt? Beyoncé? A good argument can be made for Ben Franklin, whose face adorns the U.S. $100 bill. Economists and accountants at the U.S. Federal Reserve Bank (Fed) estimate that $454 billion of U.S. currency is held by foreigners. Most of this foreign-held currency is in $100 bills; U.S. consumers prefer to use smaller denomination bills.

Tracking down the total number of dollars held overseas is rather complex and is based on a mixture of sophisticated economic modeling, consumer surveys, and educated guesswork. A 1995 Fed survey of U.S. households could account for only 3 percent of the $100 bills printed by the U.S. government. Fed staffers also know that the Los Angeles and New York City branches of the Fed distribute enormous numbers of $100 bills relative to the other branches. From 1990 to 1996 these two branches accounted for 84 percent of the new $100 bills placed in circulation. Experts believe that most of this currency flows to citizens of countries where economic or political unrest is high. For instance, because of their country's struggle with inflation, Vietnam residents hold an estimated $5 billion in U.S. currency secreted under floorboards or hidden in closets. Russia, other former Soviet Republics, the Middle East, and Latin America are also important destinations for U.S. dollar bills.

Another contributing factor is the increasing “dollarization” of Latin America. On New Year’s Day 2001, El Salvador made the U.S. dollar legal tender there. El Salvador’s Central Reserve Bank purchased $450 million worth of U.S. currency to implement this change. Ecuador adopted a similar policy in mid-2000, and Guatemala has taken steps to dollarize its economy as well. These foreign holdings of U.S. paper currency provide an important benefit to the U.S. Treasury and ultimately to the U.S. taxpayer because they effectively serve as an interest-free loan. Normally, to fund the U.S. debt, the U.S. Treasury must float loans in the form of bonds, notes, and bills. Currency holdings substitute for such loans and reduce the amount the treasury must borrow. If 30-year treasury bonds bear an interest rate of 5 percent, then the U.S. Treasury saves $22.7 billion (5 percent times $454 billion) in interest payments annually as a result of foreign holdings of U.S. currency. This is one of the benefits U.S. citizens receive as a result of the country’s economic and political stability. Other countries—particularly those members of the EU using the euro—also benefit from large holdings of their paper currencies by residents of other countries.


presents a more detailed picture of the leading U.S. exports. Automobiles and auto parts were the largest component of U.S. merchandise exports, generating $146.1 billion in sales. Of U.S. automobile exports, 40 percent were to Canada, a reflection of the integrated nature of North American automobile production that resulted from the 1965 Auto Pact between the United States and Canada. (Canada—meaning primarily GM, Ford, and Chrysler plants that are located in Canada—exported $64.7 billion in automobiles and auto parts to the United States.) The six industries shown in Figure 7.3(a) accounted for 45 percent of U.S. merchandise exports in 2012.

From Table 7.6, you can see that U.S. merchandise imports totaled $2,302.7 billion in 2012. From Figure 7.4(b) you can see that the leading import was petroleum products, at $433.9 billion, or 19 percent of imports. Six industries accounted for $1,226 billion, or 53 percent of total U.S. merchandise imports.

The second component of the current account is trade in services. U.S. exports of services totaled $649.3 billion in 2012, with travel and tourism being the largest portion ($165.6 billion). U.S. service imports equaled $442.5 billion, with travel and tourism again being the largest portion ($118.1 billion). The United States had a positive balance on services trade of $206.8 billion (see Table 7.6).

Figure 7.4 shows exports and imports for the major trading partners of the United States and includes trade in both goods and services. From this figure, you can see that the United States tends to import more goods from its major trading partners than it exports to them; you can also see that the United States tends to export more services to its trading partners than it imports from them.

The third component of the current account is investment income (see Table 7.6). In 2012 U.S. residents received $776.4 billion from foreign investments and paid out $552.4 billion to foreigners for a net balance on investment income of $224.0 billion. The United States had a net deficit of $129.7 billion in the fourth component of the current account, unilateral transfers. Summing up the four components yielded a 2012 current account deficit of $440.4 billion.

The capital account is the second major BOP account (see Table 7.6). In 2012 new U.S. FDI abroad (outflows) totaled $388.3 billion, and new FDI in the United States (inflows) totaled $166.4 billion. New U.S. long-term international portfolio investments were $176.1 billion in 2012, while new foreign long-term portfolio investments in the United States were
### TABLE 7.6 U.S. BOP, 2012 (in billions of dollars)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current Account</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Goods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exports</td>
<td>1561.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imports</td>
<td>-2302.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance on Merchandise Trade</td>
<td>-741.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Services</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exports</td>
<td>649.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imports</td>
<td>-442.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance on Services Trade</td>
<td>206.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investment Income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received</td>
<td>776.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paid</td>
<td>-552.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance on Investment Income</td>
<td>224.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral Transfers (net)</td>
<td>-129.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance on Current Account</td>
<td>-440.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capital Account</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portfolio, Short Term (Net Inflow)</td>
<td>141.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Foreign Investment in United States</td>
<td>707.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New U.S. Investment Abroad</td>
<td>-176.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Direct Investment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New FDI in United States</td>
<td>166.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New U.S. FDI Abroad</td>
<td>-388.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance on Capital Account</td>
<td>450.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Reserves Account</td>
<td>-4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors and Omissions</td>
<td>-5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net Balance</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 7.3**

Leading U.S. Merchandise Exports and Imports, 2012

$707.7 billion. There was also a net inflow of short-term portfolio investment to the United States, totaling $141.1 billion. The capital account balance was $450.8 billion in 2012, as foreigners bought more U.S. assets than U.S. residents bought foreign assets.

U.S. official reserves account transactions were −$4.5 billion. If the BOP statistical data net were perfect, the current account balance plus the capital account balance plus the official reserves account balance should equal zero. Any discrepancy is put into the errors and omissions account. In 2012, there was a discrepancy of −$5.9 billion. Therefore, for the U.S. BOP in 2012 the following equation applies:

\[
\text{Current Account} + \text{Capital Account} + \text{Changes in Official Reserves} + \text{Errors and Omissions} = 0
\]

\[
(−$440.4 \text{ billion}) + (+$450.8 \text{ billion}) + (−$4.5 \text{ billion}) + (−$5.9 \text{ billion}) = 0
\]

**Defining BOP Surpluses and Deficits**

Every month the federal government reports the performance of U.S. firms in international markets when it releases the monthly BOP statistics. In most months during the past decade, newscasters have solemnly reported on the evening news that the U.S. BOP is in deficit.

What do the newscasters mean? We just said that the BOP always balances (equals zero), so how can there be a BOP deficit? In reality when knowledgeable people (or even newscasters) talk about a BOP surplus or deficit, they are referring only to a subset of the BOP accounts. Most newscasters are in fact reporting on the balance on trade in goods and services. When a country exports more goods and services than it imports, it has a trade surplus. When it imports more goods and services than it exports, it has a trade deficit.
Because the balance on trade in goods and services is readily understandable and quickly available to the news media, it receives the most public attention. However, other balances also exist, such as the balance on services, the balance on merchandise trade, and the current account balance. Another closely watched BOP balance is the official settlements balance. The official settlements balance reflects changes in a country’s official reserves; essentially, it records the net impact of the central bank’s interventions in the foreign-exchange market in support of the local currency.

Which of these BOP balances is the BOP? That is really a trick question. There is no single measure of a country’s global economic performance. Rather, as in the parable of the blind men touching the elephant, each balance presents a different perspective on the nation’s position in the international economy. Knowing which BOP concept to use depends on the issue confronting the international businessperson or government policymaker. The balance on merchandise trade reflects the competitiveness of a country’s manufacturing sector. The balance on services reflects the service sector’s global competitiveness. Although the balance on merchandise trade often receives more publicity, the balance on services is growing in importance because of the expansion of the service sector in many national economies. The balance on goods and services reflects the combined international competitiveness of a country’s manufacturing and service sectors. The current account balance shows the combined performance of the manufacturing and service sectors and also reflects the generosity of the country’s residents (unilateral transfers) as well as income generated by past investments. The official settlements balance reflects the net quantity demanded and supplied of the country’s currency by all market participants, other than the country’s central bank.10

Figure 7.5 shows the U.S. BOP since 1969 according to these various measures.

In Practice

- The BOP records economic transactions between residents of one country with all other countries.
- The BOP can serve as an early warning system for potential changes in a country’s economic policies.

For further consideration: Is it good or bad for a country if it is running a balance of trade deficit?
myManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

In their normal commercial activities, international businesses often deal with currencies other than those of their home countries. For international commerce to thrive, some system for exchanging and valuing different currencies, preferably at low cost, must exist. The international monetary system accomplishes this by establishing the rules for valuing and exchanging different currencies.

The economic growth of the nineteenth century is attributable in part to the success of the gold standard in providing a stable, reliable international monetary system based on fixed exchange rates. However, the gold standard broke down during World War I and could not be satisfactorily revived in the years between the two world wars.

The Bretton Woods Agreement of 1944 structured the post–World War II international monetary system. In addition to creating the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (the World Bank) and the IMF, the agreement reinstated a fixed exchange rate system, with the U.S. dollar playing a key role in international transactions. As the number of dollars held by foreigners increased, however, the marketplace began to distrust the ability of the United States to redeem its currency at $35 per ounce of gold as required by the agreement. After fending off waves of speculation against the dollar, the United States abandoned the Bretton Woods Agreement in August 1971.

Since then, the international monetary system has relied on a combination of fixed and flexible exchange rate systems. Some countries have allowed their currencies to float; others, such as the EU members, have attempted to maintain fixed exchange rates among their currencies. The system has proven responsive to major shocks to the world economy, such as the shift of wealth from oil-consuming to oil-producing countries after the 1973–1974 oil embargo, the 1980s international debt crisis, the 1997–1998 Asian currency crisis, and the Global Recession of 2008–2009.

The BOP accounting system, which is used to record international transactions, is important to international businesses. The BOP system provides economic intelligence data about the international competitiveness of a country’s industries, likely changes in its fiscal and monetary policies, and its ability to re-pay its international debts.

The BOP accounting system comprises four accounts. The current account reflects exports and imports of goods, exports and imports of services, investment income, and gifts. The capital account records financial and capital transactions among countries and includes FDI and portfolio investments. Portfolio investments in turn can be divided into long-term...
and short-term investments. The official reserves account is a record of changes in a country’s official reserves, which include central bank holdings of gold, convertible currencies, SDRs, and reserves at the IMF. The errors and omissions account captures statistical discrepancies that often result from transactions that participants want to hide from government officials.

There are numerous ways to measure a balance of payments surplus or deficit. Each presents a different perspective on a country’s global economic performance. The balance on merchandise trade measures the difference between a country’s exports and imports of goods. The balance on services, as well as net investment income and gifts. The official settlements balance shows changes in a country’s official reserves.

The merchandise trade balance reflects both trade in goods and trade in services. The current account balance reflects both trade in goods and services, as well as net investment income and gifts. The official settlements balance shows changes in a country’s official reserves.

Questions for Discussion

7-11. What parallels exist between the role of the British pound in the nineteenth-century international monetary system and that of the U.S. dollar since 1945?

7-12. Did the key role that the dollar played in the Bretton Woods system benefit or hurt the United States?

7-13. Give an example of currency devaluation for achieving trade gains.

Building Global Skills

This exercise explains how U.S. governmental statisticians account for international transactions. You may want to refer to Tables 7.3 and 7.5 and to the definitions of capital inflows and outflows on page 226.

Example 1

Suppose Walmart imports $1 million worth of Blu-ray players from the Sony Corporation of Japan. The debit entry is a merchandise import of $1 million.

Here is the tough part. What is the offsetting credit entry? The answer is a capital inflow affecting the short-term portfolio account. Recall that a capital inflow occurs because of either an increase in foreign-owned U.S. assets or a decrease in U.S.-owned foreign assets. If Walmart pays Sony with a $1 million check that Sony deposits in its U.S. bank, foreign ownership of assets in the United States increases, which is a short-term capital inflow. If Walmart pays Sony yen by drawing down a Walmart checking account balance at a Tokyo bank, a decrease of U.S.-owned assets in foreign countries occurs, which is also a short-term capital inflow. Either way, a short-term capital inflow occurs because the Blu-ray players are being exchanged for a change in a checking account balance.

What if Walmart pays Sony with a $1 million check, but Sony wants yen? Sony will take the check to its U.S. bank and ask the bank to convert the $1 million check to yen. The U.S. bank can accommodate Sony in one of two ways:

- a. Give Sony yen that the U.S. bank already owns—this represents a decrease in U.S.-owed foreign assets.
- b. Pass along the check to a Japanese bank that keeps the $1 million but gives Sony the equivalent in yen—this represents an increase in U.S. assets owned by foreigners (the Japanese bank).

In either case, a capital inflow occurs. Thus, Walmart’s purchase of the Blu-ray players from Sony enters the U.S. BOP accounts as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Merchandise imports account</td>
<td>$1 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-term portfolio account</td>
<td>$1 million</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The merchandise import account is debited to reflect a use of funds. The payment itself is credited because effectively a foreigner has purchased a U.S. asset (either an increase in foreign claims on the United States or a decrease in U.S. claims on foreigners). Note the linkage between the current account and the capital account.

Example 2

A North Korean restaurant owner in Los Angeles who escaped her homeland smuggles $1,000 in cash back to her relatives in Pyongyang. The U.S. BOP accounts should record this transaction as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Merchandise imports account</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The merchandise import account is debited to reflect a use of funds. The payment itself is credited because effectively a foreigner has purchased a U.S. asset (either an increase in foreign claims on the United States or a decrease in U.S. claims on foreigners). Note the linkage between the current account and the capital account.
The transaction involves a unilateral transfer because the $1,000 is a gift. Because the gift is being given by a U.S. resident, it is a debit. The capital account is credited because foreigners have increased their claims on the United States. (A country’s currency reflects a claim on its goods, services, and assets.) Had the restaurant owners sent a $1,000 stereo system instead of cash, the credit entry would have been a merchandise export.

Note the use of the qualifier should in the first paragraph. If U.S. governmental statisticians were omniscient, the transaction would be recorded as just explained. However, if the restaurant owner wished to hide her transaction from the government, it is unlikely U.S. statisticians would ever learn of it. When you consider the widespread usage of the dollar in countries suffering political turmoil, it is not surprising that the errors and omissions account is as large as it is.

**Example 3**

Mitsubishi buys 51 percent of Rockefeller Center for $846 million from a Rockefeller family trust. This transaction will be recorded in the U.S. BOP accounts as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral transfer</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-term portfolio</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this transaction two assets are being exchanged. Japan is buying a long-term asset—Rockefeller Center—for purposes of control, and the United States is buying a short-term asset called an “increase of claims on foreigners or a decrease of foreign claims on the United States.” The U.S. BOP is credited with a long-term FDI capital inflow of $846 million because foreign ownership of U.S. assets (for purposes of control) has increased. However, the actual payment of the $846 million is debited as a short-term capital outflow: Either Japanese-owned checking account balances in the United States declined by $846 million or U.S.-owned checking account balances in Japan rose by $846 million.

Unlike Examples 1 and 2, this transaction does not involve a current account entry and a capital account entry. Both the debit entry and the credit entry affect the capital account. However, a balance in someone’s checking account is affected by this transaction, as was the case in Example 1.

Do the following exercises on your own. How will the following transactions be recorded in the U.S. BOP accounts?


7-19. Ford Motor Company (U.S.) pays $2.5 billion to purchase all the common stock of the Jaguar Motor Co. (UK).

7-20. The U.S. government gives Rwanda $500 million worth of food to feed starving refugees.

**Recent U.S. BOP Performance: Is the Sky Falling?**

During the past decade the U.S. BOP performance could be characterized as follows:

- The U.S. current account recorded large annual deficits.
- The U.S. capital account recorded large annual surpluses of roughly the same magnitude as the current account deficits.
- Changes in the official reserves account were small relative to the magnitude of the current account deficits.

Two scenarios can be developed from the facts just cited:

- The sky is falling. U.S. industries are uncompetitive in international markets (as indicated by the first fact), and foreigners are taking over the country by buying up valuable U.S. assets and transforming the country into the largest debtor in international history (as indicated by the second fact).
- Everything is wonderful. Foreigners are so enthralled with the future prospects of the U.S. market, which is a showcase of economic democracy, that they are eagerly investing in the United States (the second fact). The only way they can do so, however, is by running a current account surplus with the United States (the first fact).

Needless to say, these two scenarios conflict, even though both are consistent with the data. They reflect a policy war that is occurring between protectionists and free traders, between unions and MNCs, between liberals and conservatives, and between firms threatened by foreign imports and export-oriented firms.

People who believe the sky is falling argue that the United States must reduce its balance of trade deficit. They argue that U.S. firms are increasingly uncompetitive in global markets and must be strengthened via aggressive government policies, such as those calling for worker-training programs, increased investment in infrastructure, and tax credits for R&D and investment expenditures. These people assert that U.S. firms are victimized by the unfair trade practices of foreign firms and governments. They propose stiffer tariffs and quotas on imported goods and believe that the federal government should do more to promote U.S. exports and restrict foreign ownership of U.S. assets.

People who believe everything is wonderful say the best policy is to continue to make the United States an attractive economy in which to invest. By keeping tax rates low and governmental regulation modest, the United States
will attract foreign capital. U.S. industries, consumers, and workers will then benefit from increased capital investment and the enhancements in productivity that will ensue from this investment. U.S. consumers will benefit from the availability of low-priced, high-quality imported goods and services. Moreover, U.S. firms will become “leaner and meaner” as they respond to foreign competitors.

A variant of this “everything is wonderful” argument has been offered by the late Nobel laureate Milton Friedman, the provocative free-market advocate from the University of Chicago. Friedman argued that foreign companies have been busily producing Blu-ray players, luxury automobiles, and smartphones in return for dollar bills from U.S. consumers. If these companies are happy voluntarily exchanging their goods for pieces of paper (that is, dollar bills), and U.S. citizens are happy voluntarily exchanging pieces of paper for goods, why should anyone worry?

As you ponder these divergent perspectives, recognize that they have developed because of two different views of what represents a BOP deficit. The “sky is falling” crowd is focusing on the balance on merchandise trade and assessing whether U.S. firms are able to sell as many goods to foreigners as foreigners sell to Americans. The “everything is wonderful” folks are focusing on voluntary transactions in the marketplace. In their view, if U.S. citizens find that being net buyers of foreign goods is in their self-interest and foreigners find that being net buyers of U.S. assets is in their self-interest, then what is the problem?

Because BOP statistics affect the ongoing domestic political battle over international trade policy, they are important to virtually every U.S. firm. Export-oriented firms and workers benefit from the free trade policies promoted by the “everything is wonderful” crowd, as do communities that benefit from jobs created by inward FDI. Firms and workers threatened by imported goods or by the output of new domestic factories built by foreign competitors are more likely to support the “sky is falling” view.

### Case Questions

7-21. What is more important to an economy—exports or foreign capital inflows?

7-22. What is the connection between the U.S. current account deficit and capital account surplus?

7-23. Which of the following groups are likely to endorse the “sky is falling” view of the U.S. BOP?

- Import-threatened firms such as textile producers
- Textile workers
- A cash-starved California biotechnology company
- Merrill Lynch
- Boeing Aircraft, one of the country’s largest exporters
- Consumers

## Endnotes


7. In the U.S. accounting system, the Capital Account measures transfers of capital assets between foreign residents and U.S. residents. The Financial Account measures changes in the level of financial claims between foreign residents and U.S. residents.


AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Describe how demand and supply determine the price of foreign exchange.
2. Discuss the role of international banks in the foreign-exchange market.
3. Assess the different ways firms can use the spot and forward markets to settle international transactions.
4. Summarize the role of arbitrage in the foreign-exchange market.
5. Discuss the important aspects of the international capital market.
THE LOONIE TAKES FLIGHT

There’s an old adage: Be careful of what you ask for. For many years, Canadian citizens bemoaned the fact that the Canadian dollar sold at a discount from the U.S. dollar. But in September 2007, the Canadian dollar reached parity with its southern neighbor’s: one Canadian dollar equaled one U.S. dollar. By November, it took U.S. $1.10 to buy a loonie—the affectionate nickname for the Canadian one-dollar coin, which features a loon on one side. All told, in 2007, the loonie soared 24 percent against the U.S. dollar. With the exception of 2008–2009, when currency markets were impacted by the Global Recession, the U.S. dollar/Canadian dollar exchange rate has subsequently fluctuated ±5 percent around parity. In July 2013, for instance, it took $1.04 in Canadian money to buy $1.00 in U.S. money.

This was not always the case. In 2002, Canadians had to hand over 1.61 Canadian dollars to buy a U.S. dollar. But in the following five years the loonie rose to parity with the U.S. dollar. Much of the loonie’s ascent is the result of the boom in commodity prices resulting from China’s economic growth, which has benefited producers of raw materials such as Canada. And high oil prices have attracted enormous investments in Alberta’s Athabascan tar sands, which contain an estimated 1.6 trillion barrels of oil, of which 350 billion barrels are judged to be recoverable. When commodity prices softened in the Global Recession of 2008–2009, the loonie fell in value against the U.S. dollar. Renewed global economic growth restored the loonie’s luster. The value of the currencies of other commodity-rich countries, such as the Australian dollar, the Brazilian real, and the Chilean peso, have exhibited similar correlation with commodity prices.

The rising value of the loonie affects numerous individuals, firms, and markets on both sides of the border. Canadian consumers pay lower prices for goods made in the United States, and Canadian vacationers enjoy lower costs on their winter trips to Florida and Arizona. The increased value of the loonie may even affect who wins the World Series and the Stanley Cup. When the U.S. dollar was riding high, Canadian baseball and hockey teams were at a disadvantage because their ticket revenues were denominated in Canadian currency while their player costs were tied to the U.S. dollar. With the value of the loonie rising, this drawback is disappearing. The Toronto Blue Jays’ costs, for example, are reduced U.S. $600,000 for every one cent rise in the value of the Canadian dollar, allowing them to bid more aggressively for free agents and offer higher salaries to retain key starters. Similarly, the seven Canadian teams in the National Hockey League had been at a decided disadvantage because of the low value of the Canadian dollar. Its recent rise, however, has allowed these teams to improve their locker rooms, offices, and training facilities to better match those of U.S.-based hockey teams, as well as compete for talented players.

But the high value of the loonie has a downside. As Chapter 2 noted, Canada’s economy is export-oriented, and the vast majority of its exports are destined for the United States. Some economists estimate that Canada could lose 150,000 jobs as a result of declining exports to the United States. Ontario’s manufacturing sector has been particularly hard hit. Companies such as Collins & Aikman, Crane Valves, Siemens—even the province’s leading pickle company, Bick’s Pickle—have shuttered their Canadian operations, often in favor of new locations south of the border. Fewer Americans are frequenting Windsor’s casinos, and Canadian retailers in border towns are losing customers to U.S. shops. The Retail Council of Canada believes that the rise in the number of Canadians heading south to take advantage of now-cheaper U.S. goods has trimmed retail sales in Canada by 5 percent. Many Canadian retailers have slashed their prices to stop this hemorrhaging of customers, but these price cuts harm their profit margins. Canadian auto dealers have been particularly vulnerable to this bargain-seeking behavior. And companies such as Dofasco, a steel manufacturer in Hamilton, Ontario, are hurt because their sales are denominated in U.S. dollars but their costs are in Canadian currency. The loonie’s soaring value has cut deeply into such export-oriented firms’ profit margins. And pty Canada’s Christmas tree growers. They normally greet the yuletide season with a hearty, “Merry Christmas,” exporting in a typical year some 2.5 million trees to the United States. But the loonie’s rise has changed that to “Bah, humbug,” as Canadian Christmas tree exports to the United States have fallen by 20 percent, forcing some firms, such as Kirk Forest Products of Nova Scotia, out of business and slashing the profits of most other Canadian growers.1

One factor that obviously distinguishes international business from domestic business is the use of more than one currency in commercial transactions. If Marks and Spencer, one of the United Kingdom’s leading department stores, purchases kitchen appliances from a British supplier, that is a domestic transaction that will be completed entirely in pounds. However, if Marks and Spencer chooses to purchase the appliances from Michigan-based Whirlpool Corporation, this international transaction will require some mechanism for exchanging pounds (Mark and Spencer’s home currency) and U.S. dollars (Whirlpool’s home currency). The foreign-exchange market exists to facilitate this conversion of currencies, thereby allowing firms to conduct trade more efficiently across national boundaries. The foreign-exchange market also facilitates international investment and
capital flows. Firms can shop for low-cost financing in capital markets around the world and then use the foreign-exchange market to convert the foreign funds they obtain into whatever currency they require. But changes in exchange rates also affect the prices that consumers pay, the markets in which they shop, and the profits of firms, as the opening case indicates.

The Economics of Foreign Exchange

Foreign exchange is a commodity that consists of currencies issued by countries other than one’s own. Like the prices of other commodities, the price of foreign exchange—given a flexible exchange rate system—is set by demand and supply in the marketplace.

Let us look more closely at what this means by using the market between U.S. dollars and Japanese yen as an example. Figure 8.1 presents the demand curve for Japanese yen. Economists call this demand curve a derived demand curve because the demand for yen is derived from foreigners’ desire to acquire Japanese goods, services, and assets. To buy Japanese goods, foreigners first need to buy Japanese yen. Like other demand curves, it is downward sloping, so as the price of the yen falls, the quantity of yen demanded increases. This is shown as a movement from point A to point B on the demand curve.

Figure 8.2 presents the supply curve for yen. Underlying the supply curve for yen is the desire by the Japanese to acquire foreign goods, services, and assets. To buy foreign products, Japanese need to obtain foreign currencies, which they do by selling yen and using the proceeds to buy the foreign currencies. Selling yen has the effect of supplying yen to the foreign-exchange market. As with other goods, as the price of the yen rises, the quantity supplied also rises; you can see this when you move from point A to point B along the supply curve in Figure 8.2. The supply curve for the yen thus behaves like most other supply curves: People offer more yen for sale as the price of the yen rises. Figure 8.3 depicts the determination of the equilibrium price.
Numerous artists, including Picasso, van Gogh, Monet, Dali, Modigliani, and Mondrian established studios in Montmartre, perched on one of Paris’ highest hills. Today the area attracts tourists, who can have their portraits sketched or purchase the works of yet-to-be discovered artists. The ability of tourists to enjoy the views and shops of Montmartre is facilitated by the efficiency of the foreign exchange market, which allows them to convert their home currencies into euros at low cost.

As in other markets, the intersection of the supply curve (S) and the demand curve (D) yields the market-clearing, equilibrium price ($0.009/yen in this case) and the equilibrium quantity demanded and supplied (200 million yen). Recall from Chapter 7 that this equilibrium price is called the exchange rate, the price of one country’s currency in terms of another country’s currency.

Although Figure 8.3 illustrates the dollar-yen foreign-exchange market, a similar figure could be drawn for every possible pair of currencies in the world, each of which would constitute a separate market, with the equilibrium prices of the currencies determined by the supply of and demand for them. Foreign-exchange rates are published daily in most major newspapers worldwide. Figure 8.4 presents rates for July 17, 2013. These rates are quoted in two ways. A direct exchange rate (or direct quote) is the price of the foreign currency in terms of the home currency. For instance, from the perspective of a U.S. resident, the direct exchange rate between the U.S. dollar and the yen (¥) on Wednesday, July 17, was $0.010043/¥1. An indirect exchange rate (or indirect quote) is the price of the home currency in terms of the foreign

"FIGURE 8.3
The Market for Yen"
currency. From the U.S. resident’s perspective, the indirect exchange rate on Wednesday, July 17, was ¥99.58/$1. Mathematically, the direct exchange rate and the indirect exchange rate are reciprocals of each other. By tradition—and sometimes for convenience—certain exchange rates are typically quoted on a direct basis and others on an indirect basis. Common U.S. practice is to quote British pounds on a direct basis but Japanese yen on an indirect basis.

If you get confused about which is the direct rate and which is the indirect rate, just remember that you normally buy things using the direct rate. If you go to the store to buy bread, it is typically priced using the direct rate: A loaf of bread costs $2.89. The indirect rate would be .346 loaves of bread per dollar. “Bringing the World into Focus” provides additional hints for under-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/currency</th>
<th>U.S. Dollar Equivalent</th>
<th>Currency per U.S. Dollar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wednesday July 17, 2013</td>
<td>Tuesday July 16, 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina peso</td>
<td>0.1839</td>
<td>0.1840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian dollar</td>
<td>0.9238</td>
<td>0.9253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-mos forward</td>
<td>0.9218</td>
<td>0.9231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-mos forward</td>
<td>0.9174</td>
<td>0.9193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-mos forward</td>
<td>0.9123</td>
<td>0.9136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahraini dinar</td>
<td>2.6355</td>
<td>2.6519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolivian boliviano</td>
<td>0.1447</td>
<td>0.1447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British pound</td>
<td>0.4497</td>
<td>0.4457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canadian dollar</td>
<td>0.9610</td>
<td>0.9643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chile peso</td>
<td>0.02009</td>
<td>0.01993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China yuan</td>
<td>0.163</td>
<td>0.1618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colombia peso</td>
<td>0.00530</td>
<td>0.005319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa Rica colón</td>
<td>0.02005</td>
<td>0.02005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech Rep. koruna</td>
<td>0.05066</td>
<td>0.05080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danish krona</td>
<td>0.1760</td>
<td>0.1765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecuadorian dollar</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt pound</td>
<td>0.1428</td>
<td>0.1434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euro area euro</td>
<td>1.3125</td>
<td>1.3163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong dollar</td>
<td>0.1289</td>
<td>0.1289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian forint</td>
<td>0.03464</td>
<td>0.04497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian rupee</td>
<td>0.0458</td>
<td>0.04568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesian rupiah</td>
<td>0.000096</td>
<td>0.0000970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron rial</td>
<td>0.000807</td>
<td>0.0008144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israeli shekel</td>
<td>0.2796</td>
<td>0.2809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese yen</td>
<td>0.010403</td>
<td>0.010090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-mos forward</td>
<td>0.010044</td>
<td>0.010092</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-mos forward</td>
<td>0.010047</td>
<td>0.010095</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-mos forward</td>
<td>0.010055</td>
<td>0.010104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jordan dinar</td>
<td>1.4119</td>
<td>1.4115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya shilling</td>
<td>0.01151</td>
<td>0.01151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuwaiti dinar</td>
<td>3.5057</td>
<td>3.5063</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon pound</td>
<td>0.0006614</td>
<td>0.0006642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaysia ringgit</td>
<td>0.3132</td>
<td>0.3136</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For further consideration: Look at the exchange rate between the dollar and the yen in Figure 8.4. Is it easier to use the direct quote or the indirect quote?
The Structure of the Foreign-Exchange Market

The foreign-exchange market comprises buyers and sellers of currencies issued by the world’s countries. Anyone who owns money denominated in one currency and wants to convert that money to a second currency participates in the foreign-exchange market. Pakistani tourists exchanging rupees for British pounds at London’s Heathrow Airport use the foreign-exchange market, as does Toyota when it exports automobiles to Canada from its factories in Japan, and the British government when it arranges a multimillion-pound loan to rebuild the monsoon-ravaged economy of Bangladesh. The world wide volume of foreign-exchange trading is estimated at $5.3 trillion per day. Foreign exchange is being traded somewhere in the world every minute of the day (see Map 8.1). The largest foreign-exchange market is in London, followed by New York, Singapore, and Tokyo. As Figure 8.5 indicates, approximately 87 percent of the transactions involve the U.S. dollar, a dominance stemming from the dollar’s role in the Bretton Woods system. Because the dollar is used to facilitate most currency exchange, it is known as the primary transaction currency for the foreign-exchange market.

The Role of Banks

The foreign-exchange departments of large international banks such as JPMorgan Chase, Barclays, and Deutsche Bank in major financial centers such as New York, London, Tokyo, Singapore, and Hong Kong play a dominant role in the foreign-exchange market. These banks stand ready to buy or sell the major traded currencies. They profit from the foreign-exchange market in several ways. Much of their profits come from the spread between the bid and ask prices for foreign exchange. Suppose JPMorgan Chase buys 10 million Swiss francs (SwFr) from one customer at a price of SwFr 1.649/$1 and sells those Swiss francs to a second customer at SwFr 1.648/$1; JPMorgan Chase makes $3,679.78. (Get out your calculator and do the arithmetic! JPMorgan Chase buys the Swiss francs for 10,000,000 ÷ 1.649, or $6,064,281.38, and sells them for 10,000,000 ÷ 1.648, or $6,067,961.16, thereby earning a profit of $3,679.78.) Sometimes international banks act as speculators, betting that they can guess in which direction exchange rates are headed. Such speculation can be enormously profitable, although it is always risky. And, as discussed later in this chapter, banks also may act as arbitrageurs in the foreign-exchange market.

International banks are key players in the wholesale market for foreign exchange, dealing for their own accounts or on behalf of large commercial customers. Interbank transactions, typically involving at least $1 million (or the foreign currency equivalent), account for a majority of foreign-exchange transactions. Corporate treasurers, pension funds, hedge funds, and insurance companies are also major players in the foreign exchange market. Banks and institutional investors in one market are in constant contact with their counterparts in other markets to seek the best currency prices. Online currency trading is a growing component of this market, as is the role of institutional investors like hedge funds and mutual funds. International banks also play a key role in the retail market for foreign exchange, dealing with individual customers who want to buy or sell foreign currencies in large or small amounts. Typically, the price paid by retail customers for foreign exchange is the prevailing wholesale exchange rate plus a premium. The size of the premium is in turn a function of the size of the transaction and the importance of the customer to the bank. A Danish music store chain that needs $50,000 to pay for 10,000 compact discs of Lady Gaga’s or M.I.A.’s latest release will pay a higher premium for its foreign currency than will General Motors when it needs £20 million to repay British investors. And of course, foreign tourists cashing in a traveler’s check for local currency at a bank or exchange office or using an automatic teller machine pay an even higher premium.

The clients of the foreign-exchange departments of banks fall into several categories:

- **Commercial customers** engage in foreign-exchange transactions as part of their normal commercial activities, such as exporting or importing goods and services, paying or receiving dividends and interest from foreign sources, and purchasing or selling foreign assets and investments. Some commercial customers may also use the market to hedge, or reduce, their risks as a result of potential unfavorable changes in foreign-exchange rates for moneys to be paid or received in the future.

- **Speculators** deliberately assume exchange rate risks by acquiring positions in a currency, hoping that they can correctly predict changes in the currency’s market value. Foreign-exchange speculation can be lucrative if one guesses correctly, but it is also extremely risky.
Traditionally, the trading day begins in Auckland, New Zealand, which lies just west of the international date line. As the earth rotates, foreign-exchange markets open in other cities, including Sydney, Tokyo, Hong Kong, Singapore, Bahrain, Frankfurt, Zurich, Paris, London, New York, Chicago, and San Francisco.
Arbitrageurs attempt to exploit small differences in the price of a currency between markets. They seek to obtain riskless profits by simultaneously buying the currency in the lower-priced market and selling it in the higher-priced market.

Countries’ central banks and treasury departments are also major players in the foreign-exchange market. As discussed in Chapter 7, under the gold standard and the Bretton Woods system, a country’s central bank was required to intervene in the foreign-exchange market to ensure that the market value of the country’s currency approximated the currency’s par value. Countries that have chosen to peg their currencies to that of another country must do the same. And, of course, central banks of countries that allow their currencies to float are free to intervene in the foreign-exchange market to influence the market values of their currencies if they so desire.

Active markets exist for relatively few pairs of currency other than those involving the U.S. dollar, the euro, the British pound, and the Japanese yen. Suppose a Swedish knitting mill needs New Zealand dollars to pay for 100,000 pounds of merino wool. The foreign-exchange market between the Swedish krona and the New Zealand dollar is small—in fact, no active market exists for the direct exchange of these two currencies. Usually, the U.S. dollar would be used as an intermediary currency to facilitate this transaction. The knitting mill’s Swedish banker would obtain the necessary New Zealand dollars by first selling Swedish krona to obtain U.S. dollars and then selling the U.S. dollars to obtain New Zealand dollars. Such transactions are routine for international banks.

Domestic laws may constrain the ability to trade a currency in the foreign-exchange market. Currencies that are freely tradable are called convertible currencies. Also called hard currencies, these include the euro, the British pound, the Swedish krona, the Canadian dollar, the Australian dollar, the Swiss franc, the Japanese yen, and the U.S. dollar. Currencies that are not

---

**BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS**

**A BRIEF HINT**

Not everyone reading this book is a finance major. Some readers may have difficulty with the concept of using money to buy money and what is meant by a currency’s value rising or falling. If you are having trouble with this, here is a simple trick. In Figure 8.3 replace the currency that is being bought and sold with the phrase “loaf of bread” (or the name of any other tangible good). If you do this, then the vertical axis is the price in dollars of one unit of bread and the horizontal axis is the quantity of bread sold—a standard supply and demand graph that you encountered in your basic economics course. Nothing has changed in the supply and demand graph except the label. Think about this until you feel comfortable with the notion that yen are merely a good, like bread or widgets.

As you read the rest of this book, if you get confused about what is up and what is down when we say a currency is rising or falling in value, you can use the same trick. For example, suppose on Monday the British pound is worth $2.01 and on Tuesday it is worth $2.02. From Monday to Tuesday the pound rose in value, whereas the dollar fell in value. If that is obvious to you, fine. If it is not, substitute “a loaf of bread” for “pound.” A statement about this example would then read, “On Monday a loaf of bread is worth $2.01, and on Tuesday a loaf of bread is worth $2.02.” The conclusion is that a loaf of bread has gone up in value because more dollars are needed to buy it on Tuesday. Conversely, you can say the dollar has gone down in value because each dollar on Tuesday buys less bread.
freely tradable because of domestic laws or the unwillingness of foreigners to hold them are called *inconvertible currencies* or *soft currencies*. The currencies of many developing countries fall in the soft category.

**Spot and Forward Markets**

Many international business transactions involve payments to be made in the future. Such transactions include lending activities and purchases on credit. Because changes in currency values are common, such international transactions would appear to be risky in the post–Bretton Woods era. How can a firm know for sure the future value of a foreign currency? Fortunately, in addition to its geographic dimension, the foreign-exchange market also has a time dimension. Currencies can be bought and sold for immediate delivery or for delivery at some point in the future. The *spot market* consists of foreign-exchange transactions that are to be consummated immediately. *(Immediately is normally defined as two days after the trade date because of the time historically needed for payment to clear the international banking system.)* Spot transactions account for 38 percent of all foreign-exchange transactions.

The *forward market* consists of foreign-exchange transactions that are to occur sometime in the future. Prices are often published for foreign exchange that will be delivered one month, three months, and six months in the future. For example, on Wednesday, July 17, 2013, the spot price of the British pound was $1.5212, whereas the forward price for pounds for delivery in one month was $1.5209 and for delivery in six months was $1.5196.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Currency</th>
<th>U.S. $ equiv. per U.S. $</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Britain (Pound)</td>
<td>1.5212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-month Forward</td>
<td>1.5209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-month Forward</td>
<td>1.5203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-month Forward</td>
<td>1.5196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many users of the forward market engage in swap transactions. A *swap transaction* is a transaction in which the same currency is bought and sold simultaneously, but delivery is made at two different points in time. For example, in a typical “spot against forward” swap, a U.S. manufacturer borrowing £10 million from a British bank for one month but needing dollars will
sell the £10 million in the spot market to obtain U.S. dollars and simultaneously buy £10 million (plus the number of pounds it owes in interest payments) in the one-month forward market to repay its pound-denominated loan.

Normally, an international business that wants to buy or sell foreign exchange on a spot or forward basis will contract with an international bank to do so. The bank will charge the firm the prevailing wholesale rate for the currency, plus a small premium for its services. Because of the bank’s extensive involvement in the foreign-exchange market, it is typically willing and able to customize the spot, forward, or swap contract to meet the customer’s specific needs. For example, if Siemens expects to receive 10.7 million francs from Swiss customers in 42 days, its bank will usually agree to enter into a forward contract to buy those Swiss francs from Siemens with delivery in 42 days.

The foreign-exchange market has developed two other mechanisms to allow firms to obtain foreign exchange in the future. Neither, however, provides the flexibility in amount and in timing that international banks offer. The first mechanism is the currency future. Publicly traded on many exchanges worldwide, a currency future is a contract that resembles a forward contract. However, unlike the forward contract, the currency future is for a standard amount (for example, ¥12.5 million or SwFr 125,000) on a standard delivery date (for example, the third Wednesday of the contract’s maturity month). As with a forward contract, a firm signing a currency-future contract must complete the transaction by buying or selling the specified amount of foreign currency at the specified price and time. This obligation is usually not troublesome, however; a firm wanting to be released from a currency-future obligation can simply make an offsetting transaction. In practice, 98 percent of currency futures are settled in this manner.

The second mechanism, the currency option allows, but does not require, a firm to buy or sell a specified amount of a foreign currency at a specified price on a specified date. A call option grants the right to buy the foreign currency in question; a put option grants the right to sell the foreign currency. Currency options are publicly traded on organized exchanges worldwide. For example, put and call options are available for Canadian dollars on the Chicago Mercantile Exchange (in contract sizes of Can $100,000) and on the Philadelphia Exchange (in contract sizes of Can $50,000). Because of the inflexibility of publicly traded options, international bankers often are willing to write currency options customized as to amount and time for their commercial clients.

The forward market, currency options, and currency futures facilitate international trade and investment by allowing firms to hedge, or reduce, the foreign-exchange risks inherent in international transactions. Suppose Best Buy purchases Sony PlayStation game consoles for ¥800 million for delivery three months in the future, with payment due at delivery. Rather than having to buy yen today and hold them for three months, Best Buy can simply go to its bank and contract to buy the ¥800 million for delivery in three months. The firm’s bank will in turn charge Best Buy for those yen based on the yen’s current price in the three-month forward wholesale market. Best Buy could also protect itself from increases in the yen’s price by purchasing a currency future or a currency option. (We discuss the advantages and disadvantages of these different hedging techniques more thoroughly in Chapter 18.)

The forward price of a foreign currency often differs from its spot price. If the forward price (using a direct quote) is less than the spot price, the currency is selling at a forward discount. If the forward price is higher than the spot price, the currency is selling at a forward premium. For example, as Figure 8.4 indicates, the spot price of the British pound on July 17, 2013, was $1.5212. On the same day the three-month forward price was $1.5203, indicating that the pound was selling at a forward discount. The annualized forward premium or discount on the pound can be calculated by using the following formula:

$$\text{Annualized forward premium or discount} = \frac{P_f - P_s}{P_s} \times n$$

where, using our example,

- \(P_f\) = three-month forward price = $1.5203
- \(P_s\) = spot price = $1.5212
- \(n\) = the number of periods in a year = 4
Part 2 • The International Environment

(Because the example calls for a three-month forward rate, \( n \) equals 4; there are 4 three-month periods in a year.) Thus,

\[
\text{Annualized forward premium or discount} = \frac{\$1.5203 - \$1.5212}{\$1.5212} \times 4
\]

\[
= -0.0024 = -0.24\%
\]

Because the equation results in a negative number, the pound is selling at a forward discount. Had the forward price of the pound been higher than the spot price (using the direct quote), the sign of the equation would have been positive and the formula would have yielded the annualized forward premium for the pound.

The forward price represents the marketplace’s aggregate prediction of the spot price of the exchange rate in the future. Thus, the forward price helps international businesspeople forecast future changes in exchange rates. These changes can affect the price of imported components as well as the competitiveness and profitability of the firm’s exports. If a currency is selling at a forward discount, the foreign-exchange market believes that the currency will depreciate over time. Firms may want to reduce their holdings of assets or increase their liabilities denominated in such a currency. The currencies of countries suffering balance of payment (BOP) trade deficits or high inflation rates often sell at a forward discount. Conversely, if a currency is selling at a forward premium, the foreign-exchange market believes the currency will appreciate over time. Firms may want to increase their holdings of assets and reduce their liabilities denominated in such a currency. The currencies of countries enjoying BOP trade surpluses or low inflation rates often sell at a forward premium. Thus, the difference between the spot and forward prices of a country’s currency often signals the market’s expectations regarding that country’s economic policies and prospects.

Arbitrage and the Currency Market

Another important component of the foreign-exchange market is arbitrage activities. Arbitrage is the riskless purchase of a product in one market for immediate resale in a second market to profit from a price discrepancy. We explore two types of arbitrage activities that affect the foreign-exchange market: arbitrage of goods and arbitrage of money.

ARBITRAGE OF GOODS—PURCHASING POWER PARITY

Underlying the arbitrage of goods is a simple notion: If the price of a good differs between two markets, people will tend to buy the good in the market offering the lower price, the “cheap” market, and resell it in the market offering the higher price, the “expensive” market. Under the law of one price, such arbitrage activities will continue until the price of the good is identical in both markets (excluding transactions costs, transportation costs, taxes, and so on). This notion induced purchasing agents for Galeries Lafayette to buy clock radios in Japan and export them to France in the example in Chapter 6.

The arbitrage of goods across national boundaries is represented by the theory of purchasing power parity (PPP). This theory states that the prices of tradable goods, when expressed in a common currency, will tend to equalize across countries as a result of exchange rate changes. PPP occurs because the process of buying goods in the cheap market and reselling them in the expensive market affects the demand for, and thus the price of, the foreign currency, as well as the market price of the good itself in the two product markets in question. For example, assume the exchange rate between U.S. and Canadian dollars is U.S. $0.80 = Can $1. Suppose Levi’s jeans sell for U.S. $48 in the United States and Can $60 in Canada. PPP would exist in this case. At the existing exchange rate

\[
\frac{\text{U.S. } $0.80}{\text{Can } $1} \times \text{Can } $60 = \text{U.S. } $48.
\]

Thus, the Levi’s jeans are the same price in both markets (expressed in either U.S. or Canadian dollars), and neither U.S. nor Canadian residents would have any reason to cross their shared border to purchase the jeans in the other country.

Now suppose Canadian firms decide to increase their investments in Mexico as a result of opportunities created by the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA). As Canadians sell their currency to buy Mexican pesos, they increase the supply of Canadian dollars in the foreign-exchange market, causing the value of the Canadian dollar to fall. Suppose the new exchange rate between U.S. and Canadian dollars is U.S. $0.60 = Can $1. PPP would no longer exist. At this
new exchange rate U.S. residents could cross the border, exchange U.S. $36 for Can $60, and buy their Levi’s in Canada, thereby saving themselves U.S. $12.

This arbitrage process affects three markets: the foreign-exchange market between U.S. and Canadian dollars; the market for Levi’s in the United States; and the market for Levi’s in Canada. First, by buying their jeans in Canada, U.S. residents increase the supply of U.S. dollars in the foreign-exchange market, thereby raising the value of the Canadian dollar relative to the U.S. dollar. Second, the behavior of the U.S. residents reduces the demand for Levi’s in the United States, lowering their price there. Third, the actions of the U.S. residents increase the demand for Levi’s in Canada, thereby raising their price there. This arbitrage behavior will continue until the law of one price is met—the price of Levi’s jeans, stated in either Canadian dollars or U.S. dollars, is the same in both countries. This will occur through some combination of changes in the exchange rate and changes in the two product markets.

Does this really happen? Obviously, teenagers from Miami, Florida, do not fly to Calgary, Alberta, just to save U.S. $12 on a pair of jeans. However, for residents of Sault Ste. Marie, Ontario, and Sault Ste. Marie, Michigan; Calais, Maine, and St. Stephen, New Brunswick; and Seattle, Washington, and Vancouver, British Columbia, the border is but a short trip away, making arbitrage-driven cross-border shopping feasible. Spring-break skiers and snowboarders may choose Whistler Mountain over Crested Butte or Tremblant over Killington, depending on the exchange rate between Canadian and U.S. dollars.

Of course, the Canadian-U.S. exchange rate is determined by much more than the relative price of jeans in the two countries, border trade between cities like the two Sault Ste. Maries, or spring-break skiers. Nonetheless, if PPP does not exist in the two countries for jeans (or any other tradable good), people will buy the good in the cheap market and transport it to the expensive market, thereby affecting prices in the two product markets, as well as supply and demand in the foreign-exchange market. That is why the PPP theory states that prices of tradable goods will tend to equalize.

International economists use PPP to help them compare standards of living across countries. Consider, for example, Germany and Japan. Converting Germany’s 2011 per capita income measured in euros into U.S. dollars using the average 2011 exchange rate between the euro and the dollar would yield $44,270. Japan’s per capita income in 2011, when converted to U.S. dollars, was $44,900. These figures suggest that the average Japanese citizen enjoys a slightly higher income than the average German. However, this comparison fails to take into account differences in price levels between the two countries. After adjusting for purchasing power, Germany’s per capita income falls to $40,230, whereas Japan’s falls to $35,330, indicating that the average German is much better off than the average Japanese citizen. Because of such distortions resulting from price levels, international businesspeople who use international income data to make decisions, such as which market to enter or how to position a product, must pay close attention to whether the data are reported with or without PPP adjustments.

Foreign-exchange analysts also use the PPP theory to forecast long-term changes in exchange rates. The analysts believe that broad purchasing power imbalances between countries signal possible changes in exchange rates. As a quick and dirty way of assessing misalignments in exchange rates, the British business weekly The Economist periodically reports the prices of McDonald’s Big Macs around the world (see “Bringing the World into Focus”). Although not a perfect indicator—the price of a Big Mac is affected by taxes and nontraded inputs such as local rents—the Big Mac index has proven to provide helpful signals whether a currency is overvalued or undervalued in the foreign-exchange market.

**ARBITRAGE OF MONEY** Although we do not want to diminish the long-run importance of the arbitrage of goods, its impact on the foreign-exchange market is dwarfed by that of the short-term arbitrage of money. Much of the $5.3 trillion in daily trading of foreign exchange stems from financial arbitrage. Professional traders employed by money market banks and other financial organizations seek to profit from small differences in the price of foreign exchange in different markets. Although not all the volume in currency markets reflects arbitrage activities, the importance of financial activities relative to real activities (purchases of goods and services) in foreign-exchange markets is indicated by the ratio of daily foreign currency trading ($5.3 trillion) to daily international trade ($62 billion).

Whenever the foreign-exchange market is not in equilibrium, professional traders can profit through arbitraging money. Numerous forms of foreign-exchange arbitrage are possible, but we discuss three common examples: two-point, three-point, and covered interest.
## THE BIG MAC INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Price of a Big Mac in local currency</th>
<th>Price of a Big Mac in U.S. dollars</th>
<th>Implied exchange rate for PPP to exist</th>
<th>Actual exchange rate July 22, 2013</th>
<th>Under (−) or over (+) valuation versus the U.S. dollar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>$4.56</td>
<td>$4.56</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Peso 21</td>
<td>3.85</td>
<td>4.61</td>
<td>5.46</td>
<td>−16%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>AU$5.04</td>
<td>4.66</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Real 12</td>
<td>5.37</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>£2.69</td>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>−9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>CS$5.53</td>
<td>5.35</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>17%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chile</td>
<td>Peso 2000</td>
<td>3.97</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>−13%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Yuan 16</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>3.51</td>
<td>6.14</td>
<td>−43%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colombia</td>
<td>Peso 8600</td>
<td>4.57</td>
<td>1886.0</td>
<td>1882.3</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa Rica</td>
<td>Colones 2150</td>
<td>4.31</td>
<td>471.5</td>
<td>498.6</td>
<td>−5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech Republic</td>
<td>Koruna 70.45</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>15.45</td>
<td>19.66</td>
<td>−21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>DK 28.50</td>
<td>5.04</td>
<td>6.25</td>
<td>5.66</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Pound 16.75</td>
<td>2.39</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>−48%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euro area</td>
<td>€ 3.62</td>
<td>4.78</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>HK$ 17</td>
<td>2.19</td>
<td>3.73</td>
<td>7.76</td>
<td>−52%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Forint 860</td>
<td>3.85</td>
<td>188.6</td>
<td>223.1</td>
<td>−15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>Rupee 90</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>19.74</td>
<td>59.73</td>
<td>−67%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>Rupiah 27939</td>
<td>2.78</td>
<td>6127</td>
<td>10065</td>
<td>−39%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Shekel 17.50</td>
<td>4.90</td>
<td>3.84</td>
<td>3.57</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>¥320</td>
<td>3.21</td>
<td>70.18</td>
<td>99.67</td>
<td>−30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>Lats 1.69</td>
<td>3.18</td>
<td>0.371</td>
<td>0.532</td>
<td>−30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>Litas 8.60</td>
<td>3.29</td>
<td>1.886</td>
<td>2.617</td>
<td>−28%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td>Ringgit 7.30</td>
<td>2.30</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>3.18</td>
<td>−50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Peso 37</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>8.11</td>
<td>12.50</td>
<td>−35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>NZ$5.50</td>
<td>4.38</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>−4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>Kroner 46</td>
<td>7.75</td>
<td>10.09</td>
<td>5.93</td>
<td>70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td>Rupee 300</td>
<td>2.98</td>
<td>65.8</td>
<td>100.6</td>
<td>−35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>Sol 10</td>
<td>3.61</td>
<td>2.193</td>
<td>2.767</td>
<td>−21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippines</td>
<td>Peso 115.21</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>25.27</td>
<td>43.24</td>
<td>−42%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Zloty 9.20</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>2.02</td>
<td>3.19</td>
<td>−37%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Ruble 87</td>
<td>2.69</td>
<td>19.08</td>
<td>32.34</td>
<td>−41%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Riyal 10</td>
<td>2.67</td>
<td>2.19</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>−42%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>S$4.70</td>
<td>3.73</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>−18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>Rand 18.33</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>4.02</td>
<td>9.81</td>
<td>−59%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>Won 3900</td>
<td>3.49</td>
<td>855.3</td>
<td>1118.9</td>
<td>−24%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td>Rupee 370</td>
<td>2.81</td>
<td>81.14</td>
<td>131.5</td>
<td>−38%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>SKr 41.61</td>
<td>6.41</td>
<td>9.13</td>
<td>6.49</td>
<td>41%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>SFr 6.50</td>
<td>6.94</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>52%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>NTS 79</td>
<td>2.64</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>29.9</td>
<td>−42%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Baht 89</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>30.9</td>
<td>−37%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Lira 8.50</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>1.86</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>−2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAE</td>
<td>Dirhams 12</td>
<td>3.27</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>−28%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukraine</td>
<td>Hryvnia 19</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>4.17</td>
<td>8.14</td>
<td>−49%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>Peso 105</td>
<td>5.02</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>Bolivar 45</td>
<td>7.09</td>
<td>9.87</td>
<td>6.35</td>
<td>55%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two-point arbitrage, also called geographic arbitrage, involves profiting from price differences in two geographically distinct markets. Suppose £1 is trading for $2.00 in New York City and $1.80 in London. A profitable arbitrage opportunity is available. A foreign-exchange trader at JPMorgan Chase could take $1.80 and use it to buy £1 in London’s foreign-exchange market. The trader could then take the pound she just bought and resell it for $2.00 in New York’s foreign-exchange market. Through this two-point, or geographic, arbitrage, the trader at JPMorgan Chase transforms $1.80 into $2.00 at no risk whatsoever.

Of course, currency traders at other banks will also note the opportunity for quick profits. As arbitrageurs sell dollars and buy pounds in London, the dollar falls in value relative to the pound in the London market. As arbitrageurs sell pounds and buy dollars in New York, the pound falls in value relative to the dollar in that market. This process will continue until the pound-dollar exchange rate is identical in both markets. Only when there is no possibility of profitable arbitrage will the foreign-exchange market be in equilibrium.

We add one caveat: If the costs of making an arbitrage transaction were large, there could be differences in the exchange rates in the two markets that reflected the size of the transaction costs. However, for major currencies foreign exchange is sold in large amounts by large, well-known, and trustworthy international banks. Accordingly, transaction costs are extremely small, and two-point arbitrage generally will cause exchange rates between any two major currencies to be identical in all markets.

Consider another example. Suppose that £1 can buy $2 in New York, Tokyo, and London, $1 can buy ¥120 in those three markets, and £1 can buy ¥200 in all three. Because the exchange rate between each pair of currencies is the same in each country, no possibility of profitable two-point arbitrage exists. However, profitable three-point arbitrage opportunities exist. Three-point arbitrage is the buying and selling of three different currencies to make a riskless profit. Figure 8.6 shows how this can work:

Step 1: Convert £1 into $2.
Step 2: Convert the $2 into ¥240.
Step 3: Convert the ¥240 into £1.2.

Through these three steps, £1 has been converted into £1.2, for a riskless profit of £0.2 (see Figure 8.6).

Professional currency traders can make profits through three-point arbitrage whenever the cost of buying a currency directly (such as using pounds to buy yen) differs from the cross rate of exchange. The cross rate is an exchange rate between two currencies calculated through the use of a third currency (such as using pounds to buy dollars and then using the dollars to buy yen). Because of the depth and liquidity of dollar-denominated currency markets, the U.S. dollar
Part 2 • THE INTERNATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

is the primary third currency used in calculating cross rates. In the previous example, the direct quote between pounds and yen is £1/¥200, while the cross rate is

\[
\frac{\text{£1}}{\$2} \times \frac{\$1}{¥120} = \frac{£1}{¥240}
\]

The difference between these two rates offers arbitrage profits to foreign-exchange market professionals. The market for the three currencies will be in equilibrium only when arbitrage profits do not exist, which occurs when the direct quote and the cross rate for each possible pair of the three currencies are equal.

The real significance of three-point arbitrage is that it links together individual foreign-exchange markets. Changes in the pound/dollar market will affect both the yen/pound market and the dollar/yen market because of the direct quote–cross rate equilibrium relationship. These changes will in turn affect other markets, such as the dollar/euro market, the yen/euro market, and the pound/euro market. Because of three-point arbitrage, changes in any one foreign-exchange market can affect prices in all other foreign-exchange markets.

The third form of arbitrage we discuss is covered-interest arbitrage. Covered-interest arbitrage is arbitrage that occurs when the difference between two countries’ interest rates is not equal to the forward discount/premium on their currencies. In practice, it is the most important form of arbitrage in the foreign-exchange market. It occurs because international bankers, insurance companies, and corporate treasurers are continually scanning money markets worldwide to obtain the best returns on their short-term excess cash balances and the lowest rates on short-term loans. In doing so, however, they often want to protect, or cover (hence, the term covered-interest arbitrage), themselves from exchange rate risks.

A simple example demonstrates how covered-interest arbitrage works. Suppose the annual interest rate for three-month deposits is 12 percent in London and 8 percent in New York. New York investors will be eager to earn the higher returns available in London. To do so, they must convert their dollars to pounds today to invest in London. However, the New York investors ultimately want dollars, not pounds, so they must reconvert the pounds back to dollars at the end of three months. But what if the pound’s value were to fall during that period? The extra interest the New Yorkers will earn in London might then be wiped out by losses suffered when they exchange pounds for dollars in three months.

The New York investors can capture the higher London interest rates but avoid exchange rate dangers by covering in the forward market their exposure to potential drops in the pound’s value. Suppose they have $1 million to invest, the spot pound is selling for $2.00, and the three-month forward pound is selling for $1.99. They have two choices:

1. They can invest their money in New York at 8 percent interest.
2. They can convert their dollars into pounds today, invest in London at 12 percent interest, and in three months liquidate their London investment and convert it back to dollars.

If the New York investors choose the first option and invest their funds in the New York money market for three months at 8 percent annual interest (or 2 percent for three months), at the end of the three months their investment will be

\[\$1,000,000 \times 1.02 = 1,020,000\]

Or they can invest their money in London for three months. To do so, they first convert their $1,000,000 into £500,000 at the spot rate of $2.00/£1. At the 12-percent annual interest rate available in London (or 3 percent for three months), their investment will grow in three months to

\[\£500,000 \times 1.03 = \£515,000\]

If they want to avoid exposure to exchange rate fluctuations, they can sell the £515,000 today in the three-month forward market at the current three-month forward rate of $1.99/£1, which, at the end of three months, yields

\[\£515,000 \times 1.99/\£1 = \$1,024,850\]

The New Yorkers thus earn more money by investing in London than they would at home ($24,850 versus $20,000). Covered-interest arbitrage allows them to capture the higher interest rate in London while covering themselves from exchange rate fluctuations by using the forward market. So short-term investment money, seeking the higher covered return, will flow from New York to London.
What happens in the two lending markets and the foreign-exchange market when such arbitrage occurs? When funds are transferred from New York to London, interest rates will rise in New York because the supply of lendable money in New York decreases. Interest rates will fall in London because the supply of lendable money increases there. In the spot market the demand for pounds increases, thereby raising the spot price of pounds. In the three-month forward market the supply of pounds increases, thereby lowering the forward price of pounds. Lendable funds will continue to flow from New York to London until the return on the covered investment is the same in London as it is in New York. Only then will all possibilities for profitable covered-interest arbitrage be exhausted. (“Venturing Abroad” discusses the growing role of uncovered interest arbitrage, known as the carry trade.)

Returns to international investors will be equal—and arbitrage-driven, short-term international capital flows will end—when the interest rate difference between the two markets equals the three-month forward discount on the pound. Said another way, covered-interest arbitrage will end if the gains investors capture from the higher interest rates in the London market are just offset by the exchange rate losses they suffer from the conversion of their dollars to pounds today and reconversion of their pounds back to dollars in three months. (Note that the pound’s forward discount measures in percentage terms the exchange rate loss on this “spot against forward” swap transaction.)

The short-term capital flows that result from covered-interest arbitrage are so important to the foreign-exchange market that, in practice, the short-term interest rate differential between two countries determines the forward discount or forward premium on their currencies.

This last statement raises another question: Why should interest rates vary among countries in the first place? Addressing this question in 1930, Yale economist Irving Fisher demonstrated that a country’s nominal interest rate reflects the real interest rate (which he assumed to be constant across countries) plus expected inflation in that country. National differences in expected inflation rates thus yield differences in nominal interest rates among countries, a phenomenon known as the international Fisher effect. Because of the international Fisher effect and covered-interest arbitrage, an increase in a country’s expected inflation rate implies higher interest rates in that country. This in turn will lead to either a shrinking of the forward premium or a widening of the forward discount on the country’s currency in the foreign-exchange market. Because of this linkage between inflation and expected changes in exchange rates, international businesspeople and foreign currency traders carefully monitor countries’ inflation trends. The connection between inflation and exchange rates also affects the international monetary system. For example, a fixed exchange rate system functions poorly if inflation rates vary widely among countries participating in the system.

In summary, arbitrage activities are important for several reasons. Arbitrage constitutes a major portion of the $5.3 trillion in currencies traded globally each working day. It affects the supply and demand for each of the major trading currencies. It also ties together the foreign-exchange markets, thereby overcoming differences in geography (two-point arbitrage), currency type (three-point arbitrage), and time (covered-interest arbitrage). Arbitrage truly makes the foreign-exchange market global.

**In Practice**

- Large international banks play a critical role in both the wholesale and retail components of the foreign exchange market.
- Much of the enormous daily turnover ($5.3 trillion a day) in the foreign exchange market is the result of arbitrage activities.

*For further consideration:* What would be the impact on international trade if the foreign exchange market became inefficient and costly to use?

**The International Capital Market**

Not only are international banks important in the functioning of the foreign-exchange market and arbitrage transactions, but they also play a critical role in financing the operations of international businesses, acting as both commercial bankers and investment bankers. As commercial bankers, they finance exports and imports, accept deposits, provide working capital loans, and
VENTURING ABROAD

THE CARRY TRADE

Although covered-interest arbitrage is an important component of the foreign-exchange market, uncovered-interest arbitrage—the so-called carry trade—is a growing phenomenon. The carry trade tries to exploit differences in the interest rates between countries. Because Japan’s interest rates have been among the lowest of the major trading nations, the yen is a favorite currency of the carry trade. The strategy is simple: Borrow yen at a low interest rate, and use the borrowed yen to buy bonds, notes, or certificates of deposit denominated in currencies that are paying higher interest rates, such as the Australian dollar or the New Zealand dollar. The strategy is risky: If the yen rises in value relative to the second currency, the carry trader can lose lots of money very quickly. Some experts have compared it to picking up nickels in front of a moving steamroller—easy money, as long as nothing goes wrong. In their view, the carry trade is high risk, low reward.

Nonetheless, investors and speculators are often seduced by the lure of the carry trade, particularly in times of low volatility in the foreign-exchange market. FX Concepts, a $13 billion New York–based hedge fund, often invests in the carry trade. A few years ago, it borrowed yen, paying an interest rate of less than 1 percent, and invested them in Australian- and New Zealand-dollar based securities yielding 6 to 8 percent. But the carry trade has also enticed less professional investors as well. Trying to escape the low interest rates offered by Japanese banks, tens of thousands of Japanese married women, who by custom manage their households’ finances, routinely trade currencies and engage in carry trade transactions using online trading platforms. A cottage industry of investing clubs, books, and online blogs has mushroomed to aid these legions of housewife currency traders. All told, private Japanese investors were estimated to account for 30 percent of the spot trading in the yen, 5 percent of trading in the Australian dollar, and 4 percent in the British pound in a recent year.

Volatile currency markets are poisonous to the carry trade. For instance, as the problems with subprime mortgages became more widely known during the summer of 2007, the currency and capital markets became increasingly skittish. During one week in August 2007, the yen rose 4 percent versus the U.S. dollar, 9 percent against the Australian dollar, and 11 percent relative to the New Zealand dollar. When the yen began to rise, many carry traders tried to cut their losses by buying yen to close out their open positions. The sudden deluge of buy orders elevated the yen’s value, worsening the squeeze on the carry traders. Private online Japanese currency traders lost an estimated $2.5 billion that month.


Major International Banks

The international banking system is centered in large money market banks headquartered in the world’s financial centers—Japan, the United States, and the European Union. These banks are involved in international commerce on a global scale (see Table 8.1).

International banking takes many forms. Originally, most international banking was done through reciprocal correspondent relationships among banks located in different countries. A correspondent relationship is an agent relationship whereby one bank acts as a correspondent, or agent, for another bank in the first bank’s home country, and vice versa. For example, a U.S. bank could be the correspondent for a Danish bank in the United States, while the Danish bank could be the U.S. bank’s correspondent in Denmark. Services performed by correspondent banks include paying or collecting foreign funds, providing credit information, and honoring letters of credit. To facilitate these transactions, each bank maintains accounts at the other bank denominated in the local currency.

As the larger banks have internationalized their operations, they have increasingly provided their own overseas operations, rather than using correspondent banks, to improve their ability to compete internationally. A bank that has its own foreign operations is better able to access new sources of deposits and profitable lending opportunities. Equally important, as its domestic clients internationalize, the bank can better meet those clients’ international banking needs. Thus, it retains the international business of its domestic clients and reduces the risk that some other international bank will steal them away.
An overseas banking operation can be established in several ways. If it is separately incorporated from the parent, it is called a **subsidiary bank**; if it is not separately incorporated, it is called a **branch bank**. Sometimes an international bank may choose to create an **affiliated bank**, an overseas operation in which it takes part ownership in conjunction with a local or foreign partner.

### COMMERCIAL BANKING SERVICES

International banks and their overseas operations are important providers of international commercial banking services. Exporters and tourists use such banking services when they exchange their home currency or traveler's checks for local currency. Although the physical exchange of one country’s paper currency for another’s is part of international banking operations, a far more important part entails financing and facilitating everyday commercial transactions. For example, when Hallmark orders ¥100 million worth of Hello Kitty merchandise from its Japanese manufacturer Sanrio, with payment due in 90 days, Hallmark may require any of the following banking services:

- Short-term financing of the purchase
- International electronic funds transfer
- Forward purchases of Japanese yen
- Advice about proper documentation for importing and paying for the goods

The international department of the firm’s bank will provide any or all of these services as part of its normal commercial banking operations.

### INVESTMENT BANKING SERVICES

In addition to commercial banking services, most international banks provide investment banking services. Investment banking services are also furnished by large securities firms like Nomura, Morgan Stanley, Goldman Sachs, and Merrill Lynch. Corporate clients hire investment bankers to package and locate long-term debt and equity funding and to arrange mergers and acquisitions of domestic and foreign firms. Competition has forced investment bankers to globalize their operations to secure capital for their clients at the lowest possible cost.

---

**TABLE 8.1 The World’s 20 Largest Banks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Revenues ($ Bil)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Industrial &amp; Commercial Bank of China</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>133.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ING</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>128.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>BNP Paribas</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>123.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>China Construction Bank</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>113.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>JPMorgan Chase &amp; Co</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>108.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Banco Santander</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>106.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>HSBC Holdings</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>105.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Société Générale</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>105.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Agricultural Bank of China</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>103.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Bank of America</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>100.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Bank of China</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>98.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Crédit Agricole</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>95.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Wells Fargo</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>91.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Citigroup</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>90.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Lloyds Banking Group</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>86.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Banco do Brasil</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>72.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Deutsche Bank</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>67.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Groupe BPCE</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>67.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Mitsubishi UFJ Financial Group</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>57.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Banco Bradesco</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>56.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Based on Fortune, July 22, 2013, p. F1ff; annual reports, various companies.*
The Eurocurrency Market

Another important facet of the international financial system is the Eurocurrency market. Originally called the Eurodollar market, the Eurocurrency market originated in the early 1950s when the communist-controlled governments of Central Europe and Eastern Europe needed dollars to finance their international trade but feared that the U.S. government would confiscate or block their holdings of dollars in U.S. banks for political reasons. The communist governments solved this problem by using European banks that were willing to maintain dollar accounts for them. Thus, Eurodollars—U.S. dollars deposited in European bank accounts—were born. As other banks worldwide, particularly in Canada and Japan, began offering dollar-denominated deposit accounts, the term Eurodollar evolved to mean U.S. dollars deposited in any bank account outside the United States. As other currencies became stronger in the post–World War II era—particularly the yen, the pound, and the German mark—the Eurocurrency market broadened to include Euroyen, Europounds, and other currencies. Today a Eurocurrency is defined as a currency on deposit outside its country of issue.

The Euroloan market has grown up with the Eurocurrency market. The Euroloan market is extremely competitive, and lenders operate on razor-thin margins. Euroloans are often quoted on the basis of the London Interbank Offer Rate (LIBOR), the interest rate that London banks charge each other for short-term Eurocurrency loans. The Euroloan market is often the low-cost source of loans for large, creditworthy borrowers, such as governments and large multinational enterprises (MNEs), for three reasons. First, Euroloans are free of costly government banking regulations, that are designed to control the domestic money supply but that drive up lending costs. Second, Euroloans involve large transactions, so the average cost of making the loans is lower. Third, because only the most creditworthy borrowers use the Euroloan market, the risk premium that lenders charge also is lower.

During the 1970s, U.S. banks complained that reserve requirements and other expensive regulations imposed by the Federal Reserve Board prevented them from competing with European and Asian banks in issuing dollar-denominated international loans, which at the time accounted for more than half of the Euroloan market. Foreign banks lending in Eurodollars were not subject to the regulations. To counter this problem, in 1981 the Federal Reserve Board authorized the creation of international banking facilities. An international banking facility (IBF) is an entity of a U.S. bank that is legally distinct from the bank’s domestic operations and that may offer only international banking services. IBFs do not need to observe the numerous U.S. domestic banking regulations. Of course, the Federal Reserve Board has issued various regulations to ensure that IBFs do not engage in domestic banking services. For example, IBFs may accept deposits from or make loans to only non-U.S. residents. Nonetheless, IBFs enable U.S. banks to compete with other international bankers on a more equal footing in the critical Euroloan market.

The International Bond Market

The international bond market represents a major source of debt financing for the world’s governments, international organizations, and larger firms. This market has traditionally consisted of two types of bonds: foreign bonds and Eurobonds. Foreign bonds are bonds issued by a resident of country A but sold to residents of country B and denominated in the currency of country B. For example, the Nestlé Corporation, a Swiss resident, might issue a foreign bond denominated in yen and sold primarily to residents of Japan. A Eurobond is a bond issued in the currency of country A but sold to residents of other countries. For example, American Airlines could borrow $500 million to finance new aircraft purchases by selling Eurobonds denominated in dollars to residents of Denmark and Germany. The euro and the U.S. dollar are the dominant currencies in the international bond market (see Figure 8.7).

As the global capital market has evolved, the international bond market has grown increasingly sophisticated. Syndicates of investment banks, securities firms, and commercial banks put together complex packages of international bonds to serve the borrowing needs of large, creditworthy borrowers, such as major MNEs, national governments, and international organizations. The global bond is one such innovative financial instrument. A global bond is a large, liquid financial asset that can be traded anywhere at any time. Its use was pioneered by the World Bank, which simultaneously sold $1.5 billion of U.S. dollar-denominated global bonds in North America,
Europe, and Japan and succeeded in lowering its interest costs on the bond issue by about 0.225 percentage point. Although 0.225 percentage point may not seem like much, multiplying that amount by $1.5 billion reveals that the bank reduced its annual financing costs by $3,375,000.

Attracted by the World Bank’s success, many other large organizations, such as Matsushita Electric, the Province of Ontario, Citicorp, and Household Finance, have also issued global bonds. Other innovative opportunities exist in the bond market. For example, at the borrower’s option, bond interest may be paid in one currency and the principal paid in another currency. Or the borrower may secure a lower interest rate by offering inflation protection that pegs the principal repayment to the value of gold or special drawing rights.

Like the Euroloan market, the international bond market is highly competitive, and borrowers are often able to obtain funds on favorable terms. Large transaction sizes, creditworthy borrowers, and freedom from costly regulations imposed on domestic capital markets all help to lower the interest rates charged on such loans.

**Global Equity Markets**

The growing importance of multinational operations and improvements in telecommunications technology has also made equity markets more global. Start-up companies are no longer restricted to raising new equity solely from domestic sources. For example, Swiss pharmaceutical firms are a major source of equity capital for new U.S. biotechnology firms. Established firms also tap into the global equity market. When expanding into a foreign market, a firm may choose to raise capital for its foreign subsidiary in the foreign market. The Walt Disney Company, for example, initially sold 51 percent of its Disneyland Paris project to French investors. Numerous MNEs also cross-list their common stocks on multiple stock exchanges. Toyota, for instance, is listed on the Tokyo, London, and New York stock exchanges, thereby enabling Asian, European, and U.S. investors to purchase its shares conveniently. Another innovation is the development of country funds. A country fund is a mutual fund that specializes in investing in a given country’s firms.

The globalization of equity markets has been facilitated by the globalization of the financial services industry. Most major financial services firms, such as Merrill Lynch, Daiwa Securities, and Deutsche Bank, have expanded operations from their domestic bases into the major international financial centers. These financial services firms are eager to raise capital, provide investment advice, offer stock market analyses, and put together financing deals for clients anywhere around the world.

**Offshore Financial Centers**

Offshore financial centers focus on offering banking and other financial services to nonresident customers. Many of these centers are located on island states, such as the Bahamas, Bahrain, the Cayman Islands, Bermuda, Curaçao, and Singapore. Luxembourg and Switzerland, although not islands, are also important “offshore” financial centers.

MNEs often use offshore financial centers to obtain low-cost Eurocurrency loans. Many MNEs locate financing subsidiaries in these centers to take advantage of the benefits they offer: political stability, a regulatory climate that facilitates international capital transactions, excellent communications links to other major financial centers, and availability of legal, accounting, financial, and other expertise needed to package large loans. The efficiency of offshore financial centers in attracting deposits and then lending these funds to customers worldwide is an important factor in the growing globalization of the capital market.
Tourists flock to explore the picture postcard-pretty streets of Willemstad, the capital of Curacao. But Curacao is also an important offshore financial center, providing quick and efficient service to individuals and companies seeking to open offshore bank accounts that feature tax efficiency and confidentiality.

In Practice

- Large international banks play a major role in the globalization of capital markets. Firms seeking to raise capital in the global bond or global equity markets often rely on the expertise of these banks.
- Eurocurrencies have facilitated growth in the euroloan market, which is often the best source of low cost loans for credit-worthy borrowers.

For further consideration: Analyze Table 8.1. Are you surprised by the nationalities of the banks in this list? If so, why?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

A currency’s price in the foreign-exchange market is determined by the interaction of the demand for and supply of the currency. Underlying the demand for a particular currency is the desire of foreigners to buy goods, services, and assets of the issuing country. Underlying the supply is the desire of residents to purchase goods, services, and assets owned by foreigners.

Major international banks in financial centers such as London, Hong Kong, Singapore, Tokyo, and New York City...
play a critical role in the functioning of the foreign-exchange market. Key players in the wholesale market, these banks account for the vast majority of foreign-exchange transactions. In serving their clients’ needs, the banks are also an important component of the retail market. They assist commercial customers, speculators, and arbitrageurs in acquiring foreign currency on both the spot and forward markets.

An important feature of the foreign-exchange market is its time dimension. International businesses may buy currency in the spot market for immediate delivery or in the forward market for future delivery. The forward market, currency futures, and currency options enable firms to protect themselves from unfavorable future exchange rate movements.

Arbitrage activities affect the demand for and supply of foreign exchange. The theory of purchasing power parity states that the prices of tradable goods will tend to equalize among countries. Arbitrage of foreign exchange itself is even more important. Two-point arbitrage implies that the exchange rate between two currencies will be the same in all geographic markets. Three-point arbitrage links individual foreign-exchange markets together. Covered-interest arbitrage causes geographic differences in interest rates to equal differences between spot and forward exchange rates.

The international capital market is growing in sophistication as a result of technological advances in telecommunications and computers. Major international banks may still use their traditional correspondent relationships with other banks but are also increasingly engaged in overseas bank operations themselves. The Eurocurrency market allows banks of any country to conduct lending operations in whatever currencies their clients require. MNEs now commonly raise capital, both debt and equity, on a global basis, wherever its cost is lowest.

Review Questions
8-1. What determines the demand for any given currency in the foreign-exchange market?
8-2. What determines the supply of any given currency in the foreign-exchange market?
8-3. How are prices established in the foreign-exchange market?
8-4. What is the role of international banks in the foreign-exchange market?
8-5. Explain the different techniques that firms can use to protect themselves from future changes in exchange rates.
8-6. Discuss the major types of arbitrage activities that affect the foreign-exchange market.
8-7. Explain what hedging is, and why it is commonly used by companies in international business.
8-8. What is arbitrage? Give examples.
8-9. Explain the function of Eurocurrency and its use in international transactions.

Questions for Discussion
8-10. The European Central Bank is in charge of Euro’s interest rates. How does its policy affect the European economy?
8-11. How important are communications and computing technologies to the smooth functioning of the foreign-exchange market? If the technological advances of the past four decades were eliminated—for example, no PCs or satellite telecommunications—how would the foreign-exchange market be affected?
8-12. Do you expect the U.S. dollar to maintain its position as the dominant currency in the foreign-exchange market or will the euro or the Chinese yuan supplant it? Explain your answer.
8-13. Suppose the spot pound and the three-month forward pound are both selling for $2.00, while U.S. interest rates are 10 percent and British interest rates are 6 percent. Using covered-interest arbitrage theory, describe what will happen to the spot price of the pound, the three-month forward price of the pound, interest rates in the United States, and interest rates in the United Kingdom when arbitrageurs enter this market.
8-14. How important is the creation of international banking facilities to the international competitiveness of the U.S. banking industry?
8-15. What would be the impact on world trade and investment if there were only one currency?

Building Global Skills
Please refer to Figure 8.4 to answer the following questions:
8-16. What is the spot rate for the British pound on Wednesday in terms of the U.S. dollar? (Or, stated differently, how many dollars does a pound cost? Or, from the U.S. perspective, what is the direct quote on pounds?)
8-17. What is the spot price for the dollar on Wednesday in terms of the Swiss franc? (Or, from the U.S. perspective, what is the indirect rate on Swiss francs?)
8-18. Calculate the cross rate of exchange between the British pound and the Swiss franc.
8-19. Calculate the annualized forward premium or discount on six-month forward yen.

8-20. What are the decisions that need to be made when buying a currency? Illustrate your answer with examples.

8-21. According to the covered-interest arbitrage theory, is the United States or Japan expected to have higher interest rates?

8-22. According to the covered-interest arbitrage theory, what is the expected difference between interest rates in the United States and Japan?

8-23. What is the equation linking interest rates and inflation in a country? Discuss an example.

8-24. Did the value of the Canadian dollar rise or fall between Tuesday and Wednesday?

**CLOSING CASE What Is Next for Chinese Manufacturing?**

China’s successful industrialization and remarkable economic development in the decades following Mao-Tse Tung’s death in 1976 provides a wonderful example of the theory of competitive advantage and the Heckscher-Ohlin theorem discussed in Chapter 6. The economic policies championed by Deng Xiaoping and his successors have unleashed the entrepreneurial talents of Chinese busineespeople and unshackled millions of Chinese peasants from the chains of rural poverty.

This economic miracle was in large part due to the low wages that were paid to Chinese workers and the adoption of foreign technology, often transferred through foreign direct investment. The low wages in turn resulted from the migration of millions of rural Chinese, eager to escape the back-breaking labor and low incomes earned in farming, to urban areas. With so many people living in rural areas, a typical plot of land was too small to benefit from mechanized labor; every stage of the crop cycle, from planting to weeding to fertilizing to harvest, was done by hand. When Deng liberalized China’s economic policies, residents of rural inland China, particularly teenagers and young adults despairing of being condemned to eke out a living from the land like their parents and grandparents, migrated first to the new economic zones in Shenzhen and Xiamen and later to coastal cities such as Tianjin and Qingdao to seek work in the new factories sprouting up. Each year, thousands of new factories were built, and each year millions of rural Chinese journeyed to them in hopes of a new life. All told, the journeys of rural Chinese to the cities of coastal China represented the largest internal migration in the history of the world—some 250 million people. Because the flow of new labor matched the needs of the new factories, the price of labor stayed low.

As the theory of comparative advantage suggests, China had a comparative advantage in the production of goods requiring low-cost, unskilled labor. Indeed, a common buzzword used by CEOs and business gurus a decade ago was the “China price”—a phrase suggesting that if a potential supplier wanted to sell components, they had to match or beat what it would cost to fabricate in China. Many companies in Europe and North America discovered they could not match the China price from their domestic factories. As a result, they outsourced production to a Chinese supplier, built their own factory in China, or simply lost the business to a Chinese rival.

One of the reasons economics is often called the dismal science is because economic success often breeds economic failure. In China’s case, the factors that led it to becoming so successful in the 1990s and 2000s are now creating problems for the country’s continued economic growth. Demographic conditions have changed (see Chapter 1’s closing case): China’s working age population, which was growing rapidly in the previous two decades, has now begun to shrink, as a result of the country’s one-child policy. Demographers estimate in 2005, 121 million Chinese were in the 15–19 age cohort; by 2010, that cohort had shrunk to 105 million; by 2015, it will fall to 95 million. The rapidly growing coastal cities suffer from congestion, raising the costs of doing business. And, as surplus rural labor has migrated to the cities, the wages of those remaining in the rural areas has increased. Moreover, to continue to attract rural migrants, employers in coastal China have been forced to raise wage rates. Turnover is a problem because workers will quit jobs and move to a new factory for small raises, more opportunities for overtime, or even better food in the factory canteen.

In the first six months of 2012, for example, wage incomes for urban workers rose 13 percent and 14.9 percent for rural workers. This is on top of annual increases in labor costs of 12 to 14 percent a year during the decade of the 2000s. Consider two of China’s largest private employers. The wage rates Hon Hai Precision Industry Co. (see Chapter 5’s opening case) paid its 1 million workers rose 10 percent in 2012, while the wage rates Yum Brands’ fast food restaurants paid to their 400,000 employees rose 17 percent. Boston Consulting Group argues that Chinese labor costs are now above those of Mexico, after adjusting for differences in labor productivity. Moreover, Mexico benefits from its geographic relationship to the large North American market. Not only are transportation costs less, but firms selling fashion-sensitive or custom-designed goods benefit from shorter supply lines. Foxconn, for example, assembles standardized laptops in China, but customized ones—some 35,000 a day—in its facility in Ciudad Juárez, across the border from El Paso. Flextronics, the huge Singapore-based contract manufacturer, estimates its average labor cost in China is $2.50 an hour (up from $0.60 in 2000), compared to $3.50 an hour in Mexico.

Wage increases are not the only concern. As industrial complexes in coastal areas have sprouted, congestion costs, land prices, environmental and safety regulations, and taxes have climbed as well. Of even greater concern is the rising value of the yuan. We noted in Chapter 7’s opening case that U.S. and European politicians believe that China is suppressing the value of its currency to protect its factories from these cost
pressures. Should the yuan rise in value, the pricing advantages that Chinese exporters once enjoyed will erode further vis-à-vis Mexico or Asian rivals with low labor costs, such as Vietnam and Bangladesh. Because of the wide disparities in income levels between rural and urban China, Communist Party officials fear that a drying up of China’s exports could lead to social unrest and possible challenges to their right to govern.

Producing and sourcing in China still remains attractive in many industries. Chinese factories are well-situated to service China’s booming domestic market. Producers of end products in China benefit from complex clusters of near-by factories designing and fabricating component parts. The ensuing supply chain benefits are not easily duplicable in other countries. Manufacturers in China are increasingly adopting labor-saving technologies to battle escalating wage rates. Still, many firms are adopting a China+1 strategy—build a new plant in a country such as Vietnam, Cambodia, Indonesia, or Bangladesh, which enjoy lower wage costs than contemporary China.

Case Questions

8-25. China’s economic miracle rested on its abundance of low-cost unskilled labor. What type of goods would China likely export, given the predictions of the Heckscher-Ohlin theorem? Why?

8-26. China faces a cruel problem. The factors that were the foundation for its economic success will no longer work. What should China do?

8-27. Why is China trying to keep the value of its currency from rising? What would be the impact on the Chinese economy, Chinese workers, and Chinese consumers if the yuan were to rise in value?

8-28. If you were a representative of the Vietnamese or Bangladeshi government, would you support the efforts of U.S. and European diplomats to pressure China to raise the value of its currency? Why?

8-29. Suppose you are an official with Mexico’s economic development agency. Write a one-page memo detailing why firms selling to North American customers should relocate their Chinese factories to Mexico.

8-30. Some experts suggest that China will need to transition from its export-manufacturing based economy to an economy based on domestic consumption and an enhanced service sector. To make this transition, what changes in China’s economic and other public policies need to be made?


MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

8-31. Discuss the various techniques that firms can use to lock in the price that they will pay for foreign exchange for transactions that will occur in the future.

8-32. What are the primary forms of arbitrage that affect the foreign exchange market?

8-33. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


2. To simplify the exposition, we assumed the foreign-exchange supply curve is upward sloping like most supply curves. Unfortunately, foreign-exchange supply curves may bend backward, a complication that can be left for graduate students in economics and finance to deal with.


CHAPTER 9

Formulation of National Trade Policies

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Present the major arguments in favor of and against governmental intervention in international trade.
2. Identify the advantages and disadvantages of adopting an industrial policy.
3. Analyze the role of domestic politics in formulating a country's international trade policies.
4. Describe the major tools countries use to restrict trade.
5. Specify the techniques countries use to promote international trade.
6. Explain how countries protect themselves against unfair trade practices.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
HUAWEI LEADS THE WAY

Huawei (pronounced hwah-way) can lay claim to being China’s most successful multinational corporation. Headquartered in Shenzhen, the company employs 140,000 workers in 140 countries. In 2012, Huawei’s sales reached $35 billion, and it captured the title of being the world’s largest telecommunications equipment manufacturer, displacing Sweden’s Ericsson from that perch. It is a major supplier of mobile and fixed broadband networking equipment. It is the third-largest seller of smartphones, although its presence in this market in the United States is relatively small. It, along with Haier, the world’s largest white goods manufacturer, and Lenovo, a leading PC manufacturer, is at the vanguard of Chinese companies that have enjoyed multinational success.

Huawei was founded in 1987 by Ren Zhengfei, who began his career as an engineer in the People’s Liberation Army (PLA). After leaving the army, he sold private branch switching equipment for a Hong Kong manufacturer. He soon turned to manufacturing such equipment under the Huawei name. Ren built his company by producing high-quality products that sell for low prices. Huawei initially focused on serving smaller cities and rural areas in inland China, where competition was less intense. It then expanded into larger Chinese cities. By 1992, Huawei had developed its own digital telephone switch for the mainstream telecommunications market. Two years later Huawei branched into long-distance transmission equipment. Ten years after its founding, Huawei went international, marketing landline networking equipment to Hong Kong’s Hutchinson Whampoa. Huawei built a research and development (R&D) center in India in 1999, in Sweden in 2000, and four in the United States shortly thereafter. In the 2000s it established R&D joint ventures with 3Com Communications, Siemens, Motorola, and Symantec. To maintain its position in the fiercely competitive and highly innovative telecom equipment market, Huawei ploughed $4.8 billion of its revenues into R&D in 2012. Huawei’s strategies seem to be working: executives forecast revenue growth of 10 percent a year for the next five years, driven in part by the LTE mobile phone networks that China Mobile, China Telecom, and China Unicom, the three largest Chinese mobile operators, will be rolling out. With a billion customers, their LTE upgrades will provide a lucrative new stream of revenues for Huawei.

Although triumphant in its domestic market, Huawei has also successfully competed in international markets, with 70 percent of the company’s revenues generated outside of China. However, Huawei’s efforts to enter additional new market niches have been increasingly hindered by trade and investment barriers erected by governments in host countries. Australia stymied Huawei’s proposed collaboration in the construction of a nationwide high-speed broadband network. India has limited Huawei’s expansion there as well. Canada’s government excluded Huawei’s participation in the building of a secure government communications network. Huawei has been effectively banned from many U.S. markets on national security grounds as well.

Some of these governments are suspicious of Ren’s links to the PLA. Huawei’s growing presence in providing critical elements of the information infrastructure has generated concerns about cybersecurity. Critics have raised fears that Huawei could embed computer code in its telecommunications equipment that would facilitate industrial espionage and cyberattacks. In 2012 the U.S. House Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence released a report suggesting that hackers with ties to the PLA were responsible for systematic cyberattacks on numerous U.S. military, commercial, and journalistic organizations. The congressional report argued that Huawei should be banned from doing business in the United States because of these security issues. A UK parliamentary committee examining Huawei raised similar cybersecurity concerns.

Huawei is fighting other battles as well. In 2003 Cisco sued Huawei, claiming that the Chinese rival had infringed its patents and stolen the source code that controlled its switchers and routers. Motorola filed similar complaints in 2010. Both lawsuits were settled out of court, and confidentiality agreements have cloaked the settlements. The European Commission (see Chapter 10) has launched an investigation into whether Huawei has unfairly benefitted from subsidies—low-interest loans and favorable export credits—granted by the Chinese government. Huawei denies these charges, arguing that it is not a state-owned enterprise (SOE). But Huawei’s secretive nature and its opaque ownership structure make it vulnerable to such attacks. Company spokespersons report that Ren owns 1.4 percent of Huawei’s shares, with most of the rest owned by company employees. However, Huawei has disclosed little information about key corporate governance issues, such as selection procedures for its board of directors, share ownership by the board, or the transferability of its shares. Huawei has rejected these criticisms, dismissing them as protectionist arguments. Cathy Meng, Ren’s daughter and the company’s chief financial officer, notes “Whenever trade protectionism intervene with competition in the market, it is the consumer who suffers in the end.”

Huawei is not the only Chinese company facing difficulties in its international expansion strategy. President Barack Obama rejected the application of a Chinese firm attempting to purchase an Oregon wind farm, deeming it too close to a military base. The re-emergence of SOEs as key drivers of China’s economic growth and their often opaque ties to the Chinese Communist Party and the PLA raises concerns that diplomatic, political, and economic agendas may drive their decisions as much as commercial opportunities. Critics claim that the SOEs have benefitted from favorable governmental
In today’s global economy, many firms benefit from international trade, finding foreign markets a rich source of additional customers. Exports generate domestic jobs, so many national governments promote the success of their countries’ domestic firms in international markets. But at times, firms believe that their foreign competitors have gained an unfair advantage because of policies adopted by their governments. As a result, as is the case in the telecommunications market, a firm may ask its national government for protection against the foreigners. In this chapter, we discuss the development of national trade policies that protect domestic firms from foreign competition and help promote the country’s exports. We also explore the rationale for these policies and the means by which governments implement them.

**Rationales for Trade Intervention**

Politicians, economists, and businesspeople have been arguing for centuries over government policy toward international trade. Two principal issues have shaped the debate on appropriate trade policies:

1. Whether a national government should intervene to protect the country’s domestic firms by taxing foreign goods entering the domestic market or constructing other barriers against imports
2. Whether a national government should directly help the country’s domestic firms increase their foreign sales through export subsidies, government-to-government negotiations, and guaranteed loan programs

In North America, the trade policy debate has recently focused on the issue of whether the government should promote “free” trade or “fair” trade. **Free trade** implies that the national government exerts minimal influence on the exporting and importing decisions of private firms and individuals. **Fair trade**, sometimes called **managed trade**, suggests that the national government should actively intervene to ensure that domestic firms’ exports receive an equitable share of foreign markets and that imports are controlled to minimize losses of domestic jobs and market share in specific industries. Some fair traders also argue that the government should ensure a “level playing field” on which foreign and domestic firms can compete on equal terms. Although sounding reasonable, the level playing field argument is often used to justify policies that restrict foreign competition.

The outcome of the debate is critical to international managers. The policies individual countries adopt affect the size and profitability of foreign markets and investments, as well as the degree to which firms are threatened by foreign imports in their domestic markets. Governments worldwide are continually pressured by successful and efficient firms that produce goods for export, as well as by the firms’ labor forces and the communities in which their factories are located, to adopt policies supporting freer trade. Companies such as Huawei, Samsung, Volkswagen, and Caterpillar gain increased sales and investment opportunities in foreign markets when international trade barriers are lowered. At the same time, governments are petitioned by firms beleaguered by foreign competitors, as well as by these firms’ labor forces and the communities in which their factories are located, to raise barriers to imported goods by adopting fair-trade policies because they gain increased sales opportunities in their domestic markets when international trade barriers exist.

The debate also affects consumers in every country, influencing the prices they pay for automobiles, clothing, televisions, and thousands of other goods. Barriers erected by the U.S. government against free trade in textiles and sugar, for example, raise the prices that parents must pay to clothe and feed their children.
Industry-Level Arguments

The argument for free trade follows Adam Smith’s analysis outlined in Chapter 6: Voluntary exchange makes both parties to the transaction better off and allocates resources to their highest valued use. In Smith’s view the welfare of a country and its citizens is best promoted by allowing self-interested individuals, regardless of where they reside, to exchange goods, services, and assets as they see fit. However, many businesspeople, politicians, and policymakers believe that, under certain circumstances, deviations from free trade are appropriate. In this section, we review the primary arguments against free trade and for government intervention, and we discuss trade policies that focus on the needs of individual industries. In the next section, we explore broader, national-level policies.

THE NATIONAL DEFENSE ARGUMENT National defense has often been used as a reason to support governmental protection of specific industries. Because world events can suddenly turn hostile to a country’s interests, the national defense argument holds that a country must be self-sufficient in critical raw materials, machinery, and technology or else be vulnerable to foreign threats. For instance, the vulnerability of Japan’s supply lines was demonstrated by the extensive damage done to its merchant marine fleet by Allied submarines during World War II. After the war, Japan banned the importation of rice as a means of promoting domestic self-sufficiency in the country’s dietary staple. Similarly, the United States, to retain shipbuilding skills and expertise within the country in case of war, has developed numerous programs to support its domestic shipbuilding industry. For example, all U.S. naval vessels must be built in U.S. shipyards, and ocean transportation between U.S. ports must be conducted by U.S.-built ships. Many of the jobs in the U.S. shipbuilding industry would be lost without these federal protections because U.S. shipyards are not competitive with those of Korea, Norway, China, or Vietnam. And, as noted in the chapter’s opening case, Huawei’s ability to expand its presence globally has been limited by government officials concerned about cybersecurity and cyberattacks.

The national defense argument appeals to the general public, which is concerned that its country will be pushed around by other countries that control critical resources. Many special-interest groups have used this politically appealing argument to protect their industries from foreign competition. The U.S. mohair industry, for example, produces wool that was once used in military uniforms. It benefited from federal subsidies after passage of the 1954 National Wool Act, which protected the industry purportedly in the country’s strategic interest. Even though the military had long since replaced mohair with synthetic fabrics, the subsidy remained in effect for more than 40 years. Other U.S. industries receiving favorable treatment for national defense reasons include steel, electronics, machine tools, and the merchant marine.2

To ensure that critical technology and skills remain in the country, the United States government requires that all American naval vessels be built in American shipyards, such as this guided missile destroyer constructed at the Bath Iron Works in Maine.
THE INFANT INDUSTRY ARGUMENT

Alexander Hamilton, the first U.S. secretary of the treasury, articulated the infant industry argument in 1791. Hamilton believed that the newly independent country’s infant manufacturing sector possessed a comparative advantage that would ultimately allow it to thrive in international markets. He feared, however, that the young nation’s manufacturers would not survive their infancy and adolescence because of fierce competition from more mature European firms. Hamilton thus fought for the imposition of tariffs on numerous imported manufactured goods to give U.S. firms temporary protection from foreign competition until they could fully establish themselves. His philosophy has been adopted by countries worldwide. Japan has been particularly effective in nurturing its domestic industries. Since the end of World War II, Japan has developed thriving metal fabrication industries (iron and steel, aluminum, copper, and zinc) despite its lack of significant natural resources. Japan has done this by eliminating tariffs on imports of raw ores and ore concentrates while imposing high tariffs on processed and fabricated metals. For instance, in 1970 no tariff was imposed on copper ore imported in Japan, but fabricated copper products bore tariffs as high as 22 percent. As its metal fabrication industry matured, Japan reduced the level of import protection. Today its tariffs on copper products are negligible.3

Governmental nurturing of domestic industries that will ultimately have a comparative advantage can be a powerful economic development strategy, as Japan’s postwar economic success indicates. However, determination of which industries deserve infant industry protection is often done on a political rather than an economic basis. Firms, workers, and shareholders are not shy about using the infant industry argument to bolster support for import protection or export subsidies for their industries. Moreover, once an industry is granted protection, it may be reluctant to give it up. Many infant industries end up being protected well into their old age.

MAINTENANCE OF EXISTING JOBS

Well-established firms and their workers, particularly in high-wage countries, are often threatened by imports from low-wage countries. To maintain existing employment levels, firms and workers often petition their governments for relief from foreign competition. Government officials, eager to avoid the human and economic misery inflicted on workers and communities when factories are shut down, tend to lend a sympathetic ear to such pleas. Assistance may come in the form of tariffs, quotas, or other barriers, which we discuss in more detail in the next section. The assistance may be temporary, as was the case when Harley-Davidson received tariff protection from Japanese imports for five years in the mid-1980s to allow the firm to revamp its operations and restore its image in the marketplace. Conversely, the assistance may be long lived, as in the case of governmental protection of the U.S. commercial shipbuilding industry, which has extended that industry’s life by more than 40 years.

STRATEGIC TRADE THEORY

When firms and labor union officials plead for government intervention to help them compete internationally, their efforts are usually criticized by economists, who claim that such intervention ultimately harms the economy. The economists base this claim on the theoretical predictions of the classical trade theories—absolute advantage and comparative advantage—discussed in Chapter 6. These trade theories, however, assume that firms operate in perfectly competitive markets of the sort that exist only in economics textbooks. The theories also assume that each country’s consumers are able to buy goods and services at the lowest possible prices from the world’s most efficient producers. According to the classical theories, any governmental intervention that denies consumers these buying opportunities will make the country as a whole worse off, although it could make certain groups within the society better off.

In the early 1980s, however, new models of international trade—known collectively as strategic trade theory—were developed. These models provide a new theoretical justification for government trade intervention, thereby supporting firms’ requests for protection. Strategic trade theory makes different assumptions about the industry environment in which firms operate than do the classical theories. Strategic trade theory applies to those industries capable of supporting only a few firms worldwide, perhaps because of high product development costs or strong experience curve effects. A firm can earn monopoly profits if it can succeed in becoming one of the few firms in such a highly concentrated industry. Strategic trade theory suggests that a national government can make its country better off if it adopts trade policies that improve the competitiveness of its domestic firms in such oligopolistic industries.
Consider the potential market for a new nuclear power plant design, one that could safely and cheaply supply electrical energy. Assume that because of economies of scale, the market will be extremely profitable if one—and only one—firm decides to enter it. Further assume that only two firms, France’s Areva and Japan’s Toshiba, have the engineering talent and financial resources to develop the new plant design and that both are equally capable of successfully completing the project. Figure 9.1 shows the payoff matrix for the two firms. If Toshiba decides to develop the plant design and Areva decides not to (see the lower left-hand corner of the figure), Toshiba profits by $10 billion, whereas Areva makes nothing. If Areva decides to develop the plant design and Toshiba does not, Areva profits by $10 billion, and Toshiba makes nothing (see the upper right-hand corner of the figure). If neither firm chooses to develop the design, they both make nothing (see the lower right-hand corner of the figure). If both decide to develop the design, both will lose $1 billion because the market is too small to be profitable for both of them. Neither firm has a strategy that it should follow regardless of what its rival does.

Now suppose the French government learns of the large profits that one of its country’s firms could earn if that firm were the sole developer of the new plant design. If France were to offer Areva a subsidy of $2 billion to develop the new nuclear technology, the payoff matrix would change to that shown in Figure 9.2. Because of the subsidy, Areva’s payoff is increased by $2 billion if and only if it develops the technology (see the first row of the figure). With the subsidy, Areva will develop the technology regardless of what Toshiba does because Areva makes more money by developing than by not developing. If Toshiba chooses to develop, Areva makes nothing if it does not develop and $1 billion if it does develop. If Toshiba does not develop, Areva makes nothing if it does not develop and $12 billion if it does develop. Thus, Areva will always choose to develop. But if Toshiba knows that Areva will always choose to develop, then the best strategy for Toshiba is not to develop.
What has the French government accomplished with its $2 billion subsidy?

1. It has induced Areva to develop the new nuclear power plant technology.
2. It has induced the Japanese firm to stay out of the market.
3. It has succeeded in allowing a French firm to make a $12 billion profit at a cost to French taxpayers of only $2 billion.

By adopting a strategic trade policy in a market where monopoly profits are available, the French government has made French residents as a group better off by $10 billion ($12 billion in profits minus $2 billion in subsidies).

However, strategic trade theory applies only to markets that are incapable of supporting more than a handful of firms on a worldwide basis. (One industry that may meet the requirements of strategic trade theory is the commercial aircraft industry; see the part-closing case following Chapter 10, “Jumbo Battle over Jumbo Jets.”) Most global industries are more competitive than this. A country’s wholesale adoption of strategic trade policies to cover a broad group of industries may actually reduce the country’s overall international competitiveness because favoring certain industries inevitably hurts others. For example, if the French government chooses to subsidize the nuclear power industry, the demand for and the salaries paid to the mechanical engineers, computer programmers, and systems analysts needed by the nuclear power industry will rise, thereby reducing the international competitiveness of other French industries requiring such skilled personnel. Further, the benefit of the subsidy could be neutralized if another country adopts a similar strategy. If Japan responded to France’s $2 billion subsidy by giving a $3 billion subsidy to Toshiba, the payoff matrix would change: Toshiba would be encouraged to develop the power plant as well. Any anticipated monopoly profits might be dissipated if the two countries engaged in an all-out subsidy war.

National Trade Policies

The policies just discussed address the needs of individual industries. A national government may also develop trade policies that begin by taking an economy-wide perspective. After assessing the needs of the national economy, the government then adopts industry-by-industry policies to promote the country’s overall economic agenda.

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS An important policy goal of many governments, particularly those of developing countries, is economic development. International commerce can play a major role in economic development programs. Countries that depend on a single export often choose to diversify their economies to reduce the impact of, say, a bad harvest or falling prices for the dominant export. For example, the West African country of Ghana, which once depended heavily on cocoa, began an industrialization program to protect itself from fluctuations in cocoa prices. Dubai chose to diversify away from its heavy dependency on oil sales, electing to do so by making the emirate a business center and aviation hub. Dubai’s international airport, already the world’s third largest, is on track to handle 160 million passengers a year once its expansion program, worth $8 billion, is completed.4

As discussed in Chapter 2, some countries, such as Singapore, South Korea, and Taiwan, based their post–World War II economic development on heavy reliance on exports. According to this export promotion strategy, a country encourages firms to compete in foreign markets by harnessing some advantage the country possesses, such as low labor costs. Other countries, such as Australia, Argentina, India, and Brazil, adopted an import substitution strategy after World War II; such a strategy encourages the growth of domestic manufacturing industries by erecting high barriers to imported goods. Many multinational corporations (MNCs) responded by locating production facilities within these countries to avoid the costs resulting from the high barriers. In general, the export promotion strategy has been more successful than the import substitution strategy, as Chapter 2 indicated.

INDUSTRIAL POLICY In many countries, the government plays an active role in managing the national economy. Often an important element of this task is determining which industries should receive favorable governmental treatment. Bureaucrats within Japan’s Ministry of International Trade and Industry (MITI), for example, identify emerging technologies and products and through subsidies, public statements, and behind-the-scenes maneuvering encourage Japanese firms to enter those markets. (In 2001, MITI’s name was changed to the Ministry of Economy,
During the 1950s and 1960s, MITI actively diverted scarce credit and foreign exchange from low-value-added, labor-intensive industries such as textiles into high-value-added, capital-intensive heavy industries such as steel and automobiles. During the 1970s and 1980s, MITI targeted industries with high growth potential, such as semiconductors, aerospace, biotechnology, and ceramics. The South Korean government patterned its economic development strategies after the successful Japanese model.

Because of the post–World War II economic successes of Japan and South Korea, the governments of many countries have debated whether to adopt industrial policy, by which the national government identifies key domestic industries critical to the country’s future economic growth and then formulates programs that promote their competitiveness. Ideally, industrial policy assists a country’s firms in capturing large shares of important, growing global markets, as MITI has done for Japanese MNCs.

Many experts, however, do not view industrial policy as a panacea for improving the global competitiveness of a country’s firms. They argue that government bureaucracies cannot perfectly identify the right industries to favor under such a policy. As an example, they cite France, in which postwar industrial policies targeting automobiles, computers, military and commercial aircraft, and telecommunications created some spectacularly unprofitable enterprises that required large government subsidies. These industries became a drag on the French economy rather than a generator of new wealth. Similarly, Argentina created a vibrant electronic goods manufacturing center in Tierra del Fuego by doubling its value-added tax and tightening import-licensing controls on imported electronic goods, as well as slashing taxes on assemblers of such goods in that remote province—but Argentina’s consumers often pay twice as much for electronics goods as their counterparts in neighboring Chile (see Map 9.1). Even Japan has not been infallible. During the early 1980s, MITI bureaucrats encouraged domestic consumer electronics firms to develop high-definition television (HDTV), which relied on Japan’s lead in analog-based TV technology. Unfortunately, the technical transmission standards for HDTV adopted by U.S. and European regulators relied on more sophisticated digital technology being developed by Western firms rather than the dated analog technology imposed on Japanese firms by MITI. Consequently, the multibillion-dollar investment of the leading Japanese consumer electronics firms in analog-based HDTV turned out to be a total loss.

Opponents of industrial policy also fear that the choice of industries to receive governmental largesse will depend on the domestic political clout of those industries, rather than on their potential international competitiveness. Instead of selecting future winners in the international marketplace, opponents say, industrial policy will become a more sophisticated-sounding version of pork-barrel politics.

At the heart of the industrial policy debate is the question of what is the proper role of government in a market economy. Not surprisingly, in the United States recent Republican administrations have rejected formally adopting an industrial policy, on the grounds that the government should limit its role in the economy. Conversely, Democratic administrations believe that improving the global competitiveness of the country’s firms was too important to be left to the private sector. To further this belief, the Clinton administration designated five emerging technologies that would receive increased federal research and development (R&D) support: genetics, health care information systems, electronics, automobiles and highway systems, and computer software. Similarly, the Obama administration has promoted the development of renewable energy and electric cars through tax credits, R&D support, and accommodative regulatory policies.

**PUBLIC CHOICE ANALYSIS** Although many arguments favoring governmental trade intervention are couched in terms of national interest, such intervention typically helps some special-interest groups but invariably hurts other domestic interests and the general public. For example, President George W. Bush’s decision to impose tariffs on imported steel during his first term in office helped U.S. steel producers but jeopardized the more numerous steel-using domestic firms. It also reduced the work available to dockworkers who unload foreign steel in Baltimore, New York, Houston, Long Beach, and other port cities and raised the prices that U.S. consumers pay for automobiles, refrigerators, and other goods made of steel. Similarly, Argentina’s industrial policy helps manufacturers and workers in Tierra del Fuego’s electronic goods sector but harms domestic consumers.
Why do national governments adopt public policies that hinder international business and hurt their own citizenry overall, even though the policies may benefit small groups within their societies? According to public choice analysis, a branch of economics that analyzes public decision making, the special interest will often dominate the general interest on any given issue for a simple reason: Special-interest groups are willing to work harder for the passage of laws favorable to their interests than the general public is willing to work for the defeat of laws unfavorable to its interests. For example, under the 1920 Jones Act, the United States restricts foreign ships from providing transportation services between U.S. ports. This restriction is supported by owners of U.S. oceangoing vessels, who gain increased profits estimated at $630 million per year. However, the Jones Act is also estimated to increase the transportation costs that consumers pay by $10.5 billion annually, or $35 per person. Further, like other restrictions on free trade, the Jones Act has had unintended consequences, as Map 9.2 suggests.

Public choice analysis suggests that few consumers will be motivated to learn how the Jones Act impacts them or to write or call their elected officials to save a trivial sum like $35. Plant workers can earn $2,500 a month, good wages in this remote area. But Argentine consumers pay higher prices for their electronics goods because of Tierra del Fuego’s high production and distribution costs.
special-interest groups and will not be rewarded by the general public if they repeal the Jones Act, members of Congress will rationally vote with the special interests on this issue.

According to public choice analysis, domestic trade policies that affect international business stem not from some grandiose vision of a country’s international responsibilities but rather from the mundane interaction of politicians trying to get elected. And who elects the politicians? The people in their legislative districts. Hence, former Speaker of the House of Representatives Tip O’Neill’s brilliant insight: “All politics is local.” A good example is Japan’s unwillingness to open its markets to imported rice because of the need of Japan’s ruling party in the Diet (Japan’s parliament) to retain the votes of local farmers. The impact of this policy on Texas rice farmers, the port of Houston, or the world economy is of little concern to the domestic politicians.

Savvy international businesspeople recognize these political realities. Often a foreign firm needs to find domestic political allies to run interference for it. For example, Nissan and Toyota received much criticism for the size of their exports to the U.S. market, so in the 1980s they began building new factories in the United States. The congressional delegations of the states where factories are located can now be expected to support the firms legislatively to protect the jobs of their constituents working for the Japanese firms. Clearly, Toyota and Nissan understand that “all politics is local.”

In Practice

- The trade policy debate centers on whether governments should promote “free” trade or “fair” trade.
- The infant industry argument, the national defense argument, maintenance of existing jobs, and strategic trade theory are among the primary arguments offered for government intervention in international trade.

For further consideration: Characterize the firms that are likely to be in favor of free trade.
Barriers to International Trade

We have seen that domestic politics often causes countries to try to protect their domestic firms from foreign competitors by erecting barriers to trade. Such forms of government intervention can be divided into two categories: tariffs and nontariff barriers. Countries have been erecting trade barriers since the creation of the modern nation-state in the sixteenth century in hopes of increasing national income, promoting economic growth, or raising their citizens’ standard of living. Sometimes, as you just read, national trade policies that benefit special-interest groups are adopted at the expense of the general public or society at large.

Tariffs

A tariff is a tax placed on a good that is traded internationally. Some tariffs are levied on goods as they leave the country (an export tariff) or as they pass through one country bound for another (a transit tariff). Most, however, are collected on imported goods (an import tariff). Three forms of import tariffs exist:

1. An ad valorem tariff is assessed as a percentage of the market value of the imported good. For example, in Table 9.1 (which is drawn from the existing U.S. tariff code) a 2.1 percent ad valorem tariff is levied against imported pineapples preserved by sugar.
2. A specific tariff is assessed as a specific dollar amount per unit of weight or other standard measure. As Table 9.1 shows, imported citrus fruit preserved by sugar bears a specific tariff of 6 cents per kilogram.
3. A compound tariff has both an ad valorem component and a specific component. Imported cherries preserved in sugar are levied a 6.4 percent ad valorem tariff and a 9.9 cents per kilogram specific tariff.

In practice, most tariffs imposed by developed countries are ad valorem. The tariff applies to the product’s value, which is typically the sales price at which the product enters the country. Suppose Target buys a large shipment of canned pineapples preserved by sugar from a Philippine food processor at $400 a ton. When the pineapples are delivered to the Port of Los Angeles, to Canada’s action, the UAE government placed restrictions on several Canadian firms dealing with the UAE (which is ranked the seventeenth largest export market for Canada) and removed it from the Visa Waiver Program, thus forcing all its citizens to obtain an entry visa to the UAE prior to traveling.

Emirates argued that increasing the current frequency and adding more cities to its network would create 2,800 jobs in Canada, while keeping its share to just under 2 percent of the country’s international airline services. On the other hand, Air Canada is facing increasing criticism from customers relating to bad service, despite it being supported with millions of dollars provided by the Canadian government.

Currently, Emirates Airline’s expansion efforts into the Canadian market seem to rely on a change in Canada’s airline protection policies. As a result, Emirates has launched multiple campaigns that portray the benefits that Canada could obtain from such an endeavor and focused its energy on further expansion within other North and South American countries. To that end, starting in January 2012, Emirates has been flying to six U.S. cities, some of them at the rate of two and three flights per day. Thus, it remains to be seen if Asian customers would start using Emirates routes to the United States as connection to Canadian cities.
Target will have to pay the U.S. Customs Service a duty of 2.1 percent of $400, or $8.40, for each ton it imports, a cost Target will pass on to its customers.

Most countries have adopted a detailed classification scheme for imported goods called the harmonized tariff schedule (HTS). Because of its complexity, the HTS can sometimes be difficult to use. The first problem facing an importer is anticipating what customs officials will decide is the appropriate tariff classification for an imported good. For example, leather ski gloves imported into the United States are assessed a 5.5 percent ad valorem tariff, but if the gloves are specifically designed for cross-country skiing, then the ad valorem tariff is only 3.5 percent.

The tariff code is complex, and an importer’s expected profit margin on a transaction can shrink or disappear if a customs official subjects the imported good to a higher tariff rate than the importer expected. To reduce this risk, U.S. importers can request an advance tariff classification on prospective importations by writing the U.S. Customs Service. Importers who ignore this advice often find themselves embroiled in costly litigation.

Tariffs historically have been imposed for two reasons:

1. Tariffs raise revenue for the national government. Tariff revenues account for a significant portion of government revenues of developing countries such as Ghana, Togo, Benin, and Ethiopia. Such countries often depend heavily on subsistence agriculture and so find it difficult to collect significant tax revenues from domestic sources. Customs duties, however, are reasonably easy to collect. Further, imported goods tend to be purchased by the wealthier members of society, so heavy reliance on import tariffs adds progressivity to the domestic tax system. Conversely, taxes on international trade form a relatively small percentage of government revenues in more developed countries that have broader tax bases such as Thailand, Egypt, and Mexico.

2. A tariff acts as a trade barrier. Because tariffs raise the prices paid by domestic consumers for foreign goods, they increase the demand for domestically produced substitute goods.

Tariffs affect both domestic and foreign special-interest groups. For example, suppose the U.S. government imposes a $2,000 specific tariff on imported SUVs. Foreign producers of SUVs will be forced to raise their U.S. prices, thereby reducing their U.S. sales. However, foreign-made SUVs and U.S.-made SUVs are substitute goods. Thus, the higher prices of foreign SUVs will increase the demand for U.S.-made SUVs. This is shown in Figure 9.3 by the shift in the demand for U.S.-made SUVs from $D_0$ to $D_1$, resulting in more domestic vehicles being sold at higher prices. The $2,000 specific tariff creates both gainers and losers.
Gainers include GM, Ford, and Chrysler dealerships selling domestic SUVs; suppliers to domestic producers; workers at domestic GM, Ford, and Chrysler SUV assembly plants; and the communities in which domestic SUV factories are located. Domestic consumers are losers because they pay higher prices for both domestic and foreign SUVs. Foreign producers also lose, as do people and firms that depend on them, including Toyota and Mazda dealerships in the United States, workers and suppliers in Japan, and communities in Japan in which the SUVs are manufactured.

Nontariff Barriers

Nontariff barriers are the second category of governmental controls on international trade. Any government regulation, policy, or procedure other than a tariff that has the effect of impeding international trade may be labeled a nontariff barrier (NTB). In this section we discuss three kinds of NTBs: quotas, numerical export controls, and other NTBs.

**QUOTAS** Countries may restrain international trade by imposing quotas. A quota is a numerical limit on the quantity of a good that may be imported into a country during some time period, such as a year. Quotas have traditionally been used to protect politically powerful industries, such as agriculture, automobiles, and textiles, from the threat of competition, as in the use of quotas to limit imports of rice by Japan, Korea, Taiwan, and the Philippines. However, as a result of trade agreements such as the Uruguay Round (see Chapter 10), many countries have replaced quotas with tariff rate quotas. A tariff rate quota (TRQ) imposes a low tariff rate on a limited amount of imports of a specific good; above that threshold, a TRQ imposes a prohibitively high tariff rate on the good. This situation is depicted in Figure 9.4, where the first 100,000 widgets imported into a country are subjected to a low tariff rate, $T_L$; all widgets after the first 100,000 are subjected to the high tariff rate, $T_H$. Canada, for example, has substituted a TRQ for its previous quotas on imports of eggs, dairy products, and poultry. Imports of these goods above the threshold may carry tariffs as high as 350 percent. Japan imposes a 341-yen tariff on imported rice in excess of the quota, the equivalent of a 400-percent tariff. Korea imposes tariffs of 243 percent on over-quota honey and 304 percent on over-quota potatoes. In the short run, such high tariffs have the same effect as a quota: They normally limit imports of a good to the threshold level. However, at least in concept, exporters are allowed to increase their sales to the country as long as they are willing to pay the high tariff. And because tariffs are more visible than quotas, most experts believe that converting quotas to TRQs makes it easier to eliminate this type of trade barrier over time through trade negotiations.

A quota or TRQ helps domestic producers of the good in question but invariably hurts domestic consumers. Consider the impact on the U.S. market of the TRQ on sugar. The U.S. government normally restricts the amount of foreign sugar that can be imported to less than 2 million tons annually by slapping a 17-cent specific tariff on each pound of sugar imported into the United States above that amount. (Domestic producers normally produce about
8 to 9 million tons per year.) The price of sugar is higher in the United States than elsewhere in the world because the TRQ prevents more imports from flowing into the U.S. market to equalize the prices. In September 2013, for instance, the U.S. price for sugar was 21¢ per pound, whereas the world price was only 16¢ per pound.

Who gains from the TRQ? Domestic sugar producers, such as sugarcane growers in Louisiana and sugar beet growers in North Dakota, benefit because domestic production is increased and the price that domestic suppliers receive rises. Producers of sugar substitutes, such as Archer Daniels Midland, the largest domestic producer of corn-based fructose sweeteners, and Corn Belt farmers who supply the corn for the fructose sweeteners also gain as manufacturers of sweetened products substitute lower-cost fructose sweeteners for sugar. Losers from the policy include domestic candy manufacturers and soft-drink makers, which must pay higher prices for sugar, as well as U.S. consumers, who pay a higher price—an estimated $1.5 billion in a typical year—for all goods containing sugar. U.S. firms, such as San Francisco’s Ghirardelli Chocolate Company (premium chocolates) or Corsicana, Texas’ Collin Street Bakery (fruitscakes), which export goods with high sugar content, become less competitive in world markets because the sugar quota increases the cost of their ingredients.

A Department of Commerce study in 2006 suggests that more than 10,000 Americans working for confectionary companies lost their jobs between 1997 and 2002 because of the sugar quota.

Anyone with the right to import sugar into the United States within the 2-million-ton threshold also gains because the holder of such a right can buy sugar at the lower world price and resell it in the United States at the higher U.S. price. For this reason, the U.S. government uses such rights as instruments of foreign policy and foreign aid. Countries that are politically sympathetic to the United States or that the United States is trying to woo often receive generous rights, whereas countries hostile to the United States find their rights reduced or eliminated.

**NUMERICAL EXPORT CONTROLS** A country also may impose quantitative barriers to trade in the form of numerical limits on the amount of a good it will export. A voluntary export restraint (VER) is a promise by a country to limit its exports of a good to another country to a prespecified amount or percentage of the affected market. Often this is done to resolve or avoid trade conflicts with an otherwise friendly trade partner. For example, since 1982 the United States and Canada have been squabbling over whether Canada has been subsidizing its lumber industry by charging low stumpage fees (rights to harvest timber) in government-owned forests. To bring a truce to the conflict, in 1996 Canada agreed to adopt a VER for five years, limiting its annual exports to the United States of softwood lumber from Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, and Quebec to 14.7 billion board feet. Canada also pledged to levy a substantial tax on any exports above that level bound for the United States. After the five-year window expired, however, the United States imposed a 27-percent duty on Canadian softwood lumber imports,
which it later reduced to 10 percent. Canada filed a variety of complaints against the United States before tribunals sponsored by the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) and the World Trade Organization (WTO); although its positions were generally upheld, Canada was disappointed by the U.S. response. In 2006 the United States and Canada negotiated yet another settlement. The United States eliminated the tariff on Canadian softwood lumber exports and returned most of the monies it had collected to Canada. In return, Canada once again agreed to a VER, limiting its producers to a 34-percent share of the U.S. softwood lumber market. Given the contentious and long-term nature of the softwood lumber dispute, it is not surprising that the two countries have continued to squabble over the implementation of the 2006 agreement, which is scheduled to expire in 2015.12

Export controls may also be adopted to punish a country’s political enemies. An embargo—an absolute ban on the exporting (or importing) of goods to a particular destination—is adopted by a country or international governmental authority to discipline another country. After Iraq invaded Kuwait in 1990, for example, the United Nations imposed an embargo on trade with Iraq, and the United States has had an embargo on trade with Cuba since the 1960s.

Numerical export controls may also be used to promote a country’s industrial policy or to promote the competitiveness of other of its industries. Russia limits the export of logs and round wood to stimulate its wood-processing industry: The export controls lower the price paid by Russian wood processors but raise the input costs of their foreign competitors. For similar reasons, China restricts exports of many minerals, such as antimony, bauxite, and fluorspar. For many of these minerals, China is one of the world’s largest suppliers.14 “Bringing the World into Focus” discusses the impact of China’s export controls on the market for rare earths.

OTHER NONTARIFF BARRIERS Countries also use various other NTBs to protect themselves from foreign competition. Some NTBs are adopted for legitimate domestic public policy reasons but have the effect of restricting trade. Most NTBs, however, are blatantly protectionist. As we discuss in Chapter 10, international negotiations in the post–World War II era have reduced the use of tariffs and quotas. For this reason, nonquantitative NTBs have now become major impediments to the growth of international trade. These NTBs are more difficult to eliminate than tariffs and quotas because they often are embedded in bureaucratic procedures and are not quickly changeable. Among the most common forms of nonquantitative NTBs are the following:

- Product and testing standards
- Restricted access to distribution networks
- Public-sector procurement policies
- Local-purchase requirements
- Regulatory controls
- Currency controls
- Investment controls

We discuss these in the following sections.

PRODUCT AND TESTING STANDARDS A common form of NTB is a requirement that foreign goods meet a country’s product standards or testing standards before the goods can be offered for sale in that country. Foreign firms often claim that these standards discriminate against their products. Brazil, for instance, requires that new pharmaceutical products undergo clinical testing in Brazil, even though they may have already undergone similar trials elsewhere and received approval from foreign regulators, such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Korea requires that its National Intelligence Service certify any telecommunications network equipment incorporating encryption technology, while Russia similarly limits the importation of any product using encryption technology.

RESTRICTED ACCESS TO DISTRIBUTION NETWORKS Restricting foreign suppliers’ access to the normal channels of distribution may also function as an NTB. China requires that imported sugar and petroleum be distributed only by state-owned trading enterprises, while Indonesia granted exclusive rights to import rice to a state agency. Foreign films may occupy only one-third of the screen time in Chinese movie theaters, a restriction that reduces the revenues of foreign
China restricts the number of foreign films that can be shown in its movie theaters, limiting them to no more than one-third of total screening time. It also regulates the share of the box office revenues allocated to the foreign films’ owners. Hollywood movie studios complain that such practices facilitate piracy of their products and restrict their ability to compete in the large and growing Chinese market.

movie studios and stimulates the widespread counterfeiting of DVDs. Indonesia similarly limits the screen time of foreign films to 60 percent in its movie theaters.19

India has historically limited foreign participation in its retailing sector, fearing that competition from Western chains such as Carrefour, Marks & Spencer, and Walmart would devastate the country’s army of small mom-and-pop retailers. India has been pressured to eliminate these restrictions by its trading partners. The government has responded cautiously: In 2006, it relaxed the restrictions against single-brand stores, allowing foreign investors to own

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

THE FIGHT OVER RARE EARTHS

Most trade conflicts arise from a country’s erecting barriers against the importation of goods. In 2010, China decided to tighten its export controls on rare earths, announcing a 35-percent reduction in exports in 2011 from their 2010 levels. The intensity of the ensuing battle triggered over these obscure minerals reflects the globalization of supply chains and China’s desire to transition its economy from manufacturing low-value-added goods to producing higher-value-added ones.

Rare earths is a term used to denote 17 different minerals that are critical for the production of many high-tech products, such as smartphones, computer chips, and batteries for hybrid cars. For example, cerium oxide is used to polish hard drives, while less than a penny’s worth of neodymium allows cell phones to vibrate. Despite their name, rare earths are not that rare. However, they are expensive to produce, and environmental damage can ensue if the toxic chemicals used in their refining are not carefully handled. Moreover, bringing a new mine into production can take years.

China currently accounts for more than 90 percent of the world’s rare-earth production, although it possesses only one-third of global reserves. It exported almost $1 billion of these minerals in 2010. China’s dominance in the market is attributed to the low prices its mines charged starting in the 1990s. As prices fell, foreign producers closed their mines, unable to compete with the “China price.”

China has claimed its export controls are motivated by its desire to protect the environment, save energy, and protect national resources. Critics in Europe, North America, and Japan see less benign reasons. They fear that the export controls are designed to boost Chinese production of high-tech goods by driving up the costs of key inputs to foreign users and encouraging foreign high-tech firms to relocate production facilities to China. They note that a 2009 policy paper issued by the country’s Resource Ministry stressed that the quotas would enable the ministry to promote the government’s industrial policy and influence the demand-supply relationships in the market, allowing China to boost the prices it receives for its exports of rare earths. Moreover, it has announced plans to stockpile these minerals and has assured foreigners that any factories located in China will continue to have access to the rare earths they need.

China’s policies have caused firms to seek to diversify their sourcing of rare earths. Japan is the largest importer of them, accounting for about 20 percent of annual usage. Its government is promoting recycling and funding R&D efforts in such areas as robotic deep-sea mining to lessen its dependence on Beijing. In late 2010,

(Continued)
Japan's Toyota Tsusho Corporation signed an agreement with Indian Rare Earths Ltd. to construct a new rare-earths processing plant in India. Several companies, such as U.S.-based Molycorp, Australia's Lynas Corp., and Brazil's Vale, have announced plans to open or reopen rare-earth mines that had been closed as a result of low prices charged by Chinese competitors in the 1990s.

Free trade advocates fear that this overt manipulation of the rare-earths market by the Chinese government will cause other countries to retaliate, imposing their own quotas on critical resources or subsidizing new rare-earth mines and then raising trade barriers to rare-earth imports to reduce their dependence on Chinese mines. In their worst case scenario, they fear protectionists around the world will seize on China's rare-earths quotas as a justification for raising barriers to trade in goods they view as vital for their nations' economic security.

In 2012, it delegated discretion to India’s states to determine if foreigners could own up to 51 percent of multibrand stores.20

PUBLIC-SECTOR PROCUREMENT POLICIES Public-sector procurement policies that give preferential treatment to domestic firms are another form of NTB. In the United States, “Buy American” restrictions are common at the federal, state, and local levels. The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, for instance, requires that any iron, steel, and manufactured goods purchased using funds provided by the act to build or repair a public building or public work must be produced in the United States. The federal government generally requires that international air travel purchased with U.S. government funds occur on U.S. airlines; China imposes similar restrictions on many employees of SOEs.

Public-sector procurement policies are particularly important in countries that have extensive state ownership of industry and in industries in which state ownership is common. If a national government adopts procurement policies that favor local firms, then foreigners are locked out of much of the market. Egypt gives SOEs a 15-percent bidding preference on public contracts, and Argentina grants domestically owned firms a 5- to 7-percent preference; Turkey, a 15-percent preference; Thailand, 7 percent; and Paraguay, 20 percent.21 Russia grants local firms a 15-percent preference on pharmaceutical contracts, and Kenya’s Public Procurement and Disposal Act requires that certain government contracts be given only to Kenyan citizens.22

LOCAL-PURCHASE REQUIREMENTS Host governments may hinder foreign firms from exporting to or operating in the host countries by requiring the firms to purchase goods or services from local suppliers. Indonesia encourages pharmaceutical companies to manufacture locally if they wish their drugs to be approved for sale.23 China requires that all travel agents and Chinese airlines use China’s state-owned reservation service when booking flights.24 Kazakhstan mandates that oil companies purchase any necessary services from Kazakh-owned companies.25 The Philippines charges lower excise taxes on distilled spirits made from local raw materials.26 Egypt requires that 60 percent of the managers of new over-the-air TV stations be Egyptian in origin; for cable stations, a majority of the programs must qualify as Canadian, as must 35 percent of the music played by radio stations.28 No more than 20 percent of the shows broadcast by Korean TV stations can be of foreign origin.29 The Canadian government requires that at least 50 percent of the programs broadcast by over-the-air TV stations be Canadian in origin; for cable stations, a majority of the programs must qualify as Canadian, as must 35 percent of the music played by radio stations.28 No more than 20 percent of the shows broadcast by Korean TV stations can be of foreign origin.29 The French government requires local TV services, such as TF1 or Canal Plus, to show French-made films at least 40 percent of the time and European-made films at least 60 percent of the time, thus restricting the market available to non-European films. Such quotas exist

in radio broadcasting as well. During prime time, at least 40 percent of the songs played on France’s 1,700 AM and FM stations must be written or sung by French or Francophone artists. The European Union (EU), Malaysia, and Australia have similar requirements for broadcasters. The U.S. government has strongly protested such requirements, arguing that they are designed to restrict competition from U.S. music, movie, and television producers.

**REGULATORY CONTROLS** Governments can create NTBs by adopting regulatory controls, such as conducting health and safety inspections, enforcing environmental regulations, requiring firms to obtain licenses before beginning operations or constructing new plants, and charging taxes and fees for public services that affect the ability of international businesses to compete in host markets. For instance, Singapore uses a tiered tax system based on engine displacement, which hurts the sales of large motorcycles. Taiwan’s transportation ministry has been slow to issue regulations that would allow motorcycles with engines larger than 500cc to travel on its highways throughout the day, whereas Thailand has an outright ban of motorcycles on its highways. To enforce its consumer privacy rules, Korea mandates that financial services firms locate their computer servers in Korea, thereby foreclosing the market to cloud-computing companies operating elsewhere. Brazil requires that producers of health and fitness equipment, processed food, and cosmetics register their products with the Ministry of Health; approvals routinely take three to six months. China’s requirement that goods in numerous product categories—accounting for about one-fifth of U.S. exports to China—receive the China Compulsory Certification mark prior to their sale discourages importers. Typically such certifications may only be done in Chinese facilities, which are often backlogged. The additional expense and time delays reduce the competitiveness of imported goods in the Chinese market.

**CURRENCY CONTROLS** Many countries, particularly developing countries and those with centrally planned economies, raise barriers to international trade through currency controls. Exporters of goods are allowed to exchange foreign currency at favorable rates so as to make foreign markets attractive sales outlets for domestic producers. Importers are forced to purchase foreign exchange from the central bank at unfavorable exchange rates, thus raising the domestic prices of foreign goods. Tourists may be offered a separate exchange rate that is designed to extract as much foreign exchange as possible from free-spending foreigners.

For example, Venezuela imposed currency controls to protect its currency reserves in 2003. It currently uses a dual-exchange rate system, whereby certain favored transactions can obtain foreign exchange at the official exchange rate; the remaining transactions receive a less favorable rate. The controls make it more expensive for importers of nonessential goods to acquire foreign exchange. Similarly, the National Bank of Ethiopia often makes it difficult for importers to obtain scarce foreign exchange, although SOEs or firms controlled by the ruling party normally have no such problems.

**INVESTMENT CONTROLS** Controls on foreign investment and ownership are common, particularly in key industries such as broadcasting, utilities, air transportation, defense contracting, and financial services. Such controls often make it difficult for foreign firms to develop an effective presence in such markets. The Philippines restricts foreign ownership in advertising to 30 percent and in telecommunications to 40 percent, while foreigners can own no more than 49 percent of local accounting firms in Thailand and 50 percent of Korean power generators. Thailand and Kazakhstan cap foreign ownership of telecommunication companies at 49 percent, while foreigners may own no more than 49 percent of Peruvian broadcasters and 20 percent of South African broadcasters. Indonesia limits foreign ownership in its telecommunications, film and video distribution, and construction industries. The United States similarly constrains foreign ownership of airlines and broadcast stations.

These NTBs are now more important impediments to international trade than tariffs are. And because they are sometimes imposed for sound domestic policy reasons but affect the competitiveness of foreign firms, NTBs can quickly cause intense international conflicts.
We have just explored some techniques that governments use to restrict foreign business activity. In this section, we discuss government policies that promote international business, including subsidies, establishment of foreign trade zones, and export financing programs. Typically, these programs are designed to create jobs in the export sector or to attract investment to economically depressed areas.

**Subsidies**

Countries often seek to stimulate exports by offering subsidies designed to reduce firms’ costs of doing business. Brazil, for example, provides a variety of tax, tariff, and financing incentives to spur exports, while Jordan exempts profits generated by exporting from income taxation in many industries. The Turkish Grain Board lowers the cost of wheat to Turkish exporters of pasta and flour. Our opening case detailed the concerns expressed by U.S. and European politicians that Huawei has benefited from subsidies granted by the Chinese government.

National, state, and local governments often provide economic development incentives—another type of subsidy—to entice firms to locate or expand facilities in their communities to provide jobs and increase local tax bases. These incentives may be in the form of property tax abatements, free land, training of workforces, reduced utility rates, new highway construction, and so on. Competition among different localities can be fierce. For instance, Georgia agreed to provide Kia Motors with $400 million in incentives to capture that firm’s first U.S. plant and the 2,500 jobs it was estimated to produce. Similarly, the U.S. Virgin Islands pledged to spend $100 million to help expand Fortune Brand’s rum distillery on St. Croix and to build a new wastewater treatment facility for it.

Because subsidies reduce the cost of doing business, they may affect international trade by artificially improving a firm’s competitiveness in export markets or by helping domestic firms.
fight off foreign imports. Subsidies, however, can grow so large as to disrupt the normal pattern of international trade. The shipbuilding, wheat, and butter industries are notorious examples of markets in which trade is distorted because of the high level of subsidies. The big losers in the subsidy wars are efficient producers in countries that lack large-scale subsidies, such as Australia’s wheat industry or New Zealand’s dairy industry. “People, Planet, and Profits” discusses the impact of subsidies on the market for cotton.

**Foreign Trade Zones**

A foreign trade zone (FTZ) is a geographic area in which imported or exported goods receive preferential tariff treatment. An FTZ may be as small as a warehouse or a factory site (such as Caterpillar’s diesel engine facility in Mossville, Illinois) or as large as the entire city of Shenzhen, China (which neighbors Hong Kong). FTZs are used by governments worldwide to spur regional economic development. For example, an FTZ has played a key role in the economic development of the small African island nation of Mauritius (see Map 9.3). Through the use of an FTZ, a firm typically can reduce, delay, or sometimes totally eliminate customs duties. Generally, a firm can import a component into an FTZ, process it further, and then export the processed good abroad and avoid paying customs duties on the value of the imported component.

The maquiladora system represents another example of the use of FTZs. A maquiladora is a factory located in an FTZ in Mexico; most are situated near the U.S. border. These factories import unfinished goods or component parts, further process the goods or parts, and re-export them. The goods produced by maquiladoras enjoy preferential customs and tax treatment. Mexico levies no customs duties on unfinished goods imported by a maquiladora, provided the goods are re-exported after having been further processed in Mexico. Machinery imported into Mexico and used by a maquiladora is also exempt from customs duties. U.S. customs duties on maquiladoras’ exports are applied only to the value of the processing performed in Mexico. Today the maquiladora industry is the second-largest sector of the Mexican economy (after oil production) and the second-largest source of Mexico’s foreign-exchange earnings. However, as a result of NAFTA, many tariff advantages once enjoyed only by the maquiladoras are now available to factories throughout Mexico. Thus, interior cities such as Monterrey and Saltillo have been put on a more even footing with border communities such as Nuevo Laredo and Matamoros in terms of attracting new plants to serve the North American market.

**MAP 9.3**

*Foreign Trade Zone on Mauritius*

Mauritius, which was once a French naval base, is a tropical island, roughly 10\(\frac{1}{2}\) times the area of Washington, D.C. For much of its history, Mauritius’ 1.3 million residents depended on sugarcane, and even today 90 percent of its cultivated land is devoted to this crop.

Mauritius has created a foreign trade zone (FTZ) to diversify its economy and encourage manufacturing. Today the country exports over $1.6 billion worth of textiles, apparel, and other goods to Europe and the United States. Because of the FTZ’s success, the country’s economy has enjoyed 5 percent annual growth during the last decade.
PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS

COTTON SUBSIDIES AND WORLD POVERTY

For years the United States and the European Union (EU) have poured money into subsidizing their agricultural sectors. These subsidies have been criticized by the Cairns Group, an organization of efficient agricultural producers who believe the U.S. and EU subsidies are distorting trade in agricultural goods. These critics have recently been joined by advocates concerned about alleviating poverty in developing countries; these advocates include nongovernmental organizations (NGOs) such as Oxfam and U2’s lead singer, Bono, who believe these subsidies contribute to the impoverishment of farmers in less-developed countries. Oxfam estimates that EU subsidies depress world butter prices by 20 percent, while its sugar subsidies cost Thailand $150 million and Brazil $500 million a year.

Cotton provides another example of this phenomenon. In a complaint filed with the WTO, Brazil argued that the $3 billion-a-year subsidies paid to U.S. farmers increase U.S. cotton production by 29 percent, thereby depressing world cotton prices by 12.6 percent. Brazilian officials estimate these U.S. subsidies cost Brazilian farmers $600 million in lost sales. After the WTO found in Brazil’s favor, the two countries negotiated a settlement requiring the U.S. government to provide $147 million in annual subsidies to Brazilian cotton farmers.

This settlement did not alleviate the impact of the U.S. cotton subsidies on parts of Central and Western Africa that are heavily dependent on cotton production. Thousands of farmers in Benin, Burkina Faso, Chad, and Mali, many living below the poverty line, make their living farming cotton. Oxfam estimates that the subsidies paid to U.S. cotton farmers cost these countries $300 million a year and reduce their exports by a tenth. And the subsidies often neutralize whatever aid Western countries provide them. In a typical year Oxfam estimates that U.S. cotton subsidies cost Mali $43 million, offsetting the $38 million in foreign aid the United States provided that country.

The United States is not the only country that subsidizes its cotton farmers. China provides an estimated $1.2 billion in subsidies to its farmers, and the EU subsidizes its cotton growers, primarily in Spain and Greece, to the tune of $700 million a year. China and the United States produce about 45 percent of the world’s cotton.

Export Financing Programs

For many big-ticket items such as aircraft, offshore drilling rigs, and large construction projects, success or failure in exporting depends on a firm’s producing a high-quality product, providing reliable repair service after the sale, and—often the deciding factor—offering an attractive financing package. For example, Boeing competes with Airbus to sell Air Canada 200-seat short-range aircraft. When Air Canada is deciding which firm’s aircraft to buy, it carefully weighs price, after-sale technical support, aircraft operating costs, and financing expenses. All other things being equal, the financing terms offered to Air Canada may be critical in its decision of which firm wins the contract.

Because of the importance of the financing package, most major trading countries have created government-owned agencies to assist their domestic firms in arranging financing of export sales, both large and small. The Export-Import Bank of the United States (Eximbank) provides financing for U.S. exports through direct loans and loan guarantees; in 2012 it supplied financing for almost 3,800 export transactions worth $35.8 billion. Large firms such as Boeing are important clients, but the Eximbank also services small U.S. exporters. For example, it guaranteed $9.4 million in bank loans that helped three Midwestern companies, including two small businesses, to export equipment needed to construct a hydroelectric dam in Turkey. Another U.S. government–sponsored organization, the Overseas Private Investment Corporation (OPIC), provides a different type of insurance—political-risk insurance, a subject covered in Chapter 3. If a foreign country confiscates an insured firm’s goods or assets, OPIC will compensate the firm for its losses. Most major trading countries have similar organizations that provide export financing, commercial insurance, and political-risk insurance. In China, state-owned banks play a key role in supporting the growth of China’s exports by offering such services. Other countries, such as Malaysia, rely on their central bank to provide low-cost export financing.

In Practice

- Governments often promulgate policies that expand the role of domestic firms in international commerce to create jobs or to attract investment to economically depressed regions.
- These policies can include subsidies, establishment of foreign trade zones, and export financing programs.

*For further consideration: Although these government policies benefit some firms, are they unfair to other firms who do not benefit from the policies?*

Controlling Unfair Trade Practices

With governments around the world adopting programs designed to protect domestic industries from imports and other programs to promote their exports, it should not be surprising that competitors often cry foul. In response to these complaints, many countries have implemented laws protecting their domestic firms from unfair trade practices.

In the United States, complaints from firms affected by alleged unfair trade practices are first investigated by the International Trade Administration (ITA), a division of the U.S. Department of Commerce, which determines whether an unfair trade practice has occurred. The Department of Commerce transfers confirmed cases of unfair trading to the U.S. International Trade Commission (ITC), an independent government agency. If a majority of the six ITC commissioners decide that U.S. producers have suffered “material injury,” the ITC will impose duties on the offending imports to counteract the unfair trade practice. The ITC, like the Canadian International Trade Tribunal and other similar government agencies worldwide, focuses on two types of unfair trade practices: government subsidies that distort trade and unfair pricing practices.
Countervailing Duties

Most countries protect local firms from foreign competitors that benefit from subsidies granted by their home governments. A countervailing duty (CVD) is an ad valorem tariff on an imported good that is imposed by the importing country to counter the impact of foreign subsidies. The CVD is calculated to just offset the advantage the exporter obtains from the subsidy. In this way, trade can still be driven by the competitive strengths of individual firms and the laws of comparative advantage, rather than by the level of subsidies that governments offer their firms. For instance, the EU and the United States each imposed CVDs on high-end glossy paper imported from China, in the belief that Chinese producers had benefited from cheap governmental financing and land sales.48

Not all government subsidies give a foreign firm an unfair advantage in the domestic market. Most countries impose CVDs only when foreign subsidization of a product leads to a distortion of international trade. For example, the U.S. government, in administering its CVD rules, tries to determine whether a particular subsidy is generally available to all industries in a country, in which case CVDs will not be applied, or whether the subsidy is restricted to a specific industry, in which case CVDs may be imposed. If a foreign government grants a tax credit to all employers for training handicapped workers, a CVD will not be applied because the tax credit is available to all the country’s firms. If the tax credit is restricted to the footwear industry, however, a CVD may be imposed on imported footwear equal to the value of the tax credit.

CVD complaints are often triggered by some governmental action designed to overcome some other governmental action. For example, the EU’s common agricultural policy has had the effect of raising the prices paid to European grain farmers. Unfortunately, the high cost of feed grains raised the costs of European swine producers and made their meat products uncompetitive in world markets. To undo the damage caused to swine producers by high grain prices, the EU agreed to provide an export subsidy for canned hams and other processed meat products. With the aid of this subsidy Danish and Dutch pork processors were able to capture 25 percent of the Canadian canned ham and canned luncheon meat market. As a result, Canadian pork-packing houses successfully petitioned the Canadian International Trade Tribunal to impose a CVD on Danish and Dutch canned pork products.

Antidumping Regulations

Many countries are also concerned about their domestic firms being victimized by discriminatory or predatory pricing practices of foreign firms, such as dumping. There are two types of dumping. Dumping can occur when a firm sells its goods in a foreign market at a price below what it charges in its home market. This type of dumping is a form of international price discrimination. The second type of dumping involves the firm’s selling its goods below cost in the foreign market, in which case the dumping is a form of predatory pricing. The concern with predatory pricing is that a foreign company may lower its prices in the host country, drive host country firms out of the market, and then charge monopoly prices to host country consumers once competitors have been eliminated. Antidumping laws protect local industries from dumping by foreign firms.

Determining whether the first type of dumping—price discrimination—has actually occurred is not always easy. For example, many Western politicians incorrectly accuse Japanese companies of dumping, noting that Japanese goods often retail for higher prices in Tokyo than in New York City. Retail prices, however, are irrelevant in determining whether dumping has occurred. The comparison should be made between the prices charged foreign customers and domestic customers at the factory gate; these prices are often difficult to obtain. The high retail prices in Tokyo might reflect the inefficient Japanese distribution system or high costs of retailing there rather than dumping by the manufacturer.

In the second type of dumping—predatory pricing—defining costs is complicated, particularly when dealing with a large, multidivisional MNC such as Toyota or Nissan. For example, when the ITA is determining the “cost” of a Toyota Sienna minivan, should it measure cost as the marginal cost of producing one more Sienna? Should it include some of
Toyota’s minivan-related R&D expenses, or should it simply recognize that these R&D costs would have been incurred whether or not the U.S. market existed? Should it include charges for Toyota’s corporate overhead? Foreigners’ guilt or innocence in dumping cases often turns on the answers to such accounting questions.

**Should Countries Enforce Their Unfair Trade Practice Laws?**

It may be surprising to learn that many economists argue for abolishing unfair trade practice laws. Who, after all, would support promoting unfair trade? Advocates of abolishing unfair trade practice laws generally agree with the objectives of these laws:

- Promote global efficiency by encouraging production in those countries that can produce a good most efficiently.
- Ensure that trade occurs on the basis of comparative advantage, not the size of government subsidies.
- Protect consumers from predatory behavior.

However, abolition advocates assert that in practice these laws do more harm than good. Much of their concern rests on how the laws are enforced. Foreign firms alleged to have dumped goods in the United States must provide comprehensive documentation of their pricing and cost-accounting procedures, in English, using U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Firms failing to comply with the short deadlines for supplying these documents find themselves at a disadvantage in defending themselves before the ITC. Moreover, critics of unfair trade practice laws argue that the ITC’s costing methodology is flawed and biased toward finding dumping when none exists. New Zealand kiwi fruit was subjected to high dumping duties in the U.S. market for nearly a decade, for example, on what many experts consider to be flimsy evidence. Indeed, most major trading countries believe that U.S. enforcement of its unfair trade practice laws is based on politics, not the law, and thus the laws serve as a protectionist trade barrier.

Some economists go even further in their disdain for unfair trade practice laws. They believe the laws make no sense, either in theory or in practice, because of the harm they cause consumers. These economists are skeptical of the predatory pricing argument, contending that decades of economic research have failed to find many real-world examples of such behavior. With regard to international price discrimination or government subsidization, the economists argue that if foreigners are kind enough (or dumb enough) to sell their goods to our country below cost, why should we complain?

**Safeguards**

The previous sections refer to unfair trade practices. International trade law also allows countries to protect themselves from sudden surges in imported goods, even if the goods were traded fairly, to allow them time to adjust to the changed economic environment. Such actions use “safeguard clauses” or “escape clauses.” In U.S. trade law, Section 201 of the Trade Act of 1974 permits the imposition of temporary tariffs, quotas, or other trade barriers by the federal government if the ITC finds that U.S. firms have been seriously harmed by increased imports and if the president approves the ITC’s findings.

For instance, in 2009, President Obama imposed temporary tariffs for three years on tires imported from China after the ITC ruled that U.S. tire producers were harmed by rapid increases in imports, causing them to trim their workforces by 5,000 employees. Between 2004 and 2008, the ITC found that the U.S. market share of Chinese tires rose from 4.7 percent to 16.7 percent, and that four U.S. tire factories had shuttered their gates as a result. Obama chose to levy a 35-percent tariff on Chinese tires for one year. The president determined that the tariff should decline to 30 percent in the second year and to 25 percent in the final year. While the United Steelworkers, who filed the original complaint, were delighted by the president’s decision, many U.S. tire wholesalers, who rely on imports to keep their costs down, were not.
Formulating trade policies that advance the economic interests of their citizens is an important task facing most national governments. Although some policymakers suggest that free trade is the most appropriate policy, numerous firms, government bureaucrats, and other interested parties argue for active governmental intervention in international trade.

Some rationales for governmental intervention focus on the specific needs of an industry (national defense, infant industry, maintenance of existing jobs, and strategic trade arguments), whereas others focus on the country’s overall needs (economic development and industrial policy).

Over the centuries, governments have developed a variety of trade barriers. Import tariffs raise revenues for the government as well as help domestically produced goods compete with imported goods. Quotas and VERs place a numerical limitation on the amount of a good that can be imported or exported. Other NTBs may also disadvantage foreign products in the market. These barriers include product and testing standards, restricted access to distribution systems, public-sector procurement policies that favor local firms, local-purchase requirements, regulatory powers, and currency and investment controls.

National governments also seek to promote the interests of domestic firms in international trade through other programs. The governments may subsidize local production of goods and services to make them more competitive in international markets. They also may authorize the establishment of FTZs to help domestic firms export goods. Export financing programs have been developed to assist exporters in marketing their goods.

National governments protect local producers from unfair foreign competition by enacting unfair trade laws. CVDs are imposed on foreign products that benefit from government subsidies that distort international trade. Antidumping laws protect domestic producers from being victimized by predatory pricing or price discrimination policies of foreign firms.

**Review Questions**

9-1. How does free trade benefit the consumer?
9-2. What is the national defense argument?
9-3. What are the different types of tariffs?
9-4. Why is it useful for an importer to seek out an advance tariff classification from the U.S. Customs Service?
9-5. Why might a country adopt a VER?
9-6. What are the major forms of NTBs?
9-7. What are subsidies?
9-8. What is the role of OPIC?
9-9. What is the purpose of a CVD?
9-10. What are the two definitions of dumping?

**Questions for Discussion**

9-11. What are the advantages and disadvantages of an industrial policy?
9-12. Because of Japan’s success in competing in international markets, it has been the target of numerous complaints that it restricts foreign access to its local markets. As Japan reduces its barriers to imported goods, who is likely to gain from lowered barriers? Who is likely to lose from them?
9-13. In your opinion, what are the main disadvantages of adopting the strategic trade theory? In your answer, list and briefly explain at least three disadvantages.

9-14. Refer back to Figure 9.2 on page 265. What would happen if Japan offered Toshiba a subsidy of $1.5 billion after it learns that France granted Areva a subsidy of $2 billion?

9-15. Canada places a non-tariff barrier (NTB) on Emirates Airline (Dubai flagship carrier) flights by limiting the landing rights of this foreign carrier within Canadian airports. If the Canadian government removes this NTB what would be the implications of this decision on Canadian firms (including Air Canada, the national airline) and the Canadian economy?

9-16. Should we worry if foreigners sell us goods cheaply?

Building Global Skills
Assessing Trade Barriers

The ability of firms to market their products in foreign countries is often affected by trade barriers imposed by individual countries. Your assignment is to pick an industry or product and report on the barriers to trade or investment that five countries impose on it. Because the members of the EU have common trade policies, only one of the five countries can be an EU member.

Fortunately, there are numerous sources of useful information available in published form and on the Internet. The Office of the U.S. Trade Representative publishes annually an analysis of trade barriers imposed by other nations titled the National Trade Estimate Report on Foreign Trade Barriers. This study also provides a detailed description of the evolution of current trade conflicts between the United States and its trading partners. The European Commission provides similar information for the EU in the Trade section of its website (see http://ec.europa.eu/trade/). The U.S. Customs Service’s website provides information on tariffs imposed by the United States. Other groups, such as the WTO and industry trade associations, also publish useful information.

Green Energy and Free Trade

The trauma of the Global Recession of 2008–2009 motivated politicians around the world to seek new ways of rejuvenating their struggling economies. Many of them focused on the promotion of green energy as a critical element of their economic recovery programs. (Green energy encompasses power generated by sustainable, renewable sources, such as solar, wind, waves and tide, geothermal deposits, biomass, and low-impact hydroelectric power.) In 2008, then presidential candidate Barack Obama proposed a “New Energy for America” initiative, which sought to invest $150 billion over 10 years to promote clean energy, reduce dependence on foreign oil, lower greenhouse gas emissions, and create five million new jobs. By stimulating new green energy technologies, candidate Obama believed that the United States would become a dominant exporter in the green energy markets of the future. During his 2010 election campaign, British Prime Minister David Cameron pledged to create a £20 billion green homes program. German Chancellor Angela Merkel announced her Nine-Point Program designed to increase over a 40-year period the role of renewable sources in generating Germany’s electricity. For 2020, Merkel established a goal of having renewable sources provide 35 percent of Germany’s electricity needs. The Canadian province of Ontario’s Green Energy and Green Economy Act of 2009 promised to stimulate green energy production and to increase energy efficiency. Similar green energy programs were announced by the governments of China (with a price tag of $220 billion), South Korea ($60 billion), and Japan ($35 billion).

These green energy initiatives typically had dual goals: rejuvenate stagnating economies and address the global climate change problem. The Kyoto Protocol, the result of a 1997 enclaves, and the Copenhagen Accord, the product of the 2009 United Nations Climate Change Conference, highlighted the need to reduce greenhouse gas emissions. Although these two international meetings were less successful than many climate experts wished—the United States did not ratify the Kyoto Protocol and the Copenhagen Accord was not framed as a legally binding treaty—national leaders recognized the magnitude of the global climate change threat.

The dual goals of these well-intentioned and politically appealing green energy initiatives have created numerous problems for the world’s trade officials, however. As we will discuss in detail in the next chapter, most countries are members of the WTO and have pledged to reduce barriers to international trade. Yet many of these green energy initiatives contain provisions that are contrary to
countries’ obligations to the WTO. For example, to reduce its reliance on coal-fired electricity generation, Ontario’s Green Energy and Green Economy Act mandates increased power generated by solar and wind. Unfortunately, the cost of producing electricity using solar panels or wind turbines is more expensive than by burning coal. To overcome this obstacle, Ontario requires electrical utilities to buy power produced by renewable providers at an above-market price.

Such “feed-in tariffs” are a common feature in laws promoting green energy use. Essentially they guarantee green energy producers a market for their expensive energy. The level of the feed-in tariff can be manipulated to promote other policy objectives. Spain’s system, for example, offers higher tariffs for electricity generated by small suppliers than by large ones. Of course, by raising the average cost of producing electricity, they raise the price paid by users, both industrial and home, of electricity. Supporters of feed-in tariffs argue that in the short-run higher prices are necessary to induce investors to build green energy production facilities; in the long-run, they hope that by expanding the size of the green energy market, producers of green energy goods will capture economies of scale, thereby making green energy more cost competitive with coal-fired generators.

Feed-in tariffs do create political problems, however. They raise the cost of electricity to voters. They also raise the cost of electricity to local manufacturers, who may have to shut down if they no longer can compete with goods produced by distant rivals unaffected by the feed-in tariff. To address these concerns, Ontario mandated that 25 to 50 percent of the cost of the green energy facilities benefiting from the feed-in tariffs be locally sourced. In that way, although electricity costs might rise, local jobs would also be created. Indeed, Samsung, Siemens, SunEdison, and Celestica announced that they would build plants in Ontario to take advantage of the 2009 law.

Other countries have adopted local content rules in their green energy programs as well. China’s wind energy program used a 70-percent local content rule. (It withdrew this requirement in 2009 under diplomatic pressure from U.S. trade officials.) India’s Jawaharlal Nehru National Solar Mission envisions the country will add 20,000 megawatts of solar power by 2022. The government’s $20 billion in subsidies include a 30-percent local content requirement. Unfortunately, such local content provisions may be contrary to the rules of the WTO.

Many of the national programs promoting green energy provide subsidies for suppliers or consumers. The Indian government subsidizes homeowners 30 percent of the cost of installing rooftop solar panels. The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 provided tax breaks for Americans who made their homes more energy efficient or purchased electric vehicles. The Chinese government subsidized local companies who entered the solar panel supply business by providing cheap credit from state-owned banks, as well as subsidizing solar-equipment purchases and generation of solar power. Total subsidies by China to its solar panel manufacturers are an estimated $30 billion. One Massachusetts solar panel factory, which had received $43 million in state subsidies, moved its production to China because China’s subsidies were too attractive to ignore, costing 800 U.S. jobs.

Such subsidies raise concerns for the WTO and advocates of free trade. Direct subsidies to the manufacturers of goods embodying green technologies give recipients a competitive advantage in export markets and make it more difficult for manufacturers in countries who offer no subsidies to compete both domestically and internationally. For example, China has become the world’s largest producer of solar panels, due in part to the subsidies offered producers by the Chinese government.

Indeed, the first round of trade disputes is winding its way through the legal processes of countries and the WTO. In 2012, the U.S. International Trade Commission found that U.S. solar panel manufacturers were victimized by dumping by Chinese producers and imposed antidumping duties exceeding 30 percent on Chinese solar panels. In 2013, the European Commission came to the same conclusion, slapping a 47 percent antidumping duty on Chinese-fabricated panels. The United States petitioned the WTO to declare India’s local content rules in violation of WTO rules, and Japan filed a complaint with the WTO against Canada’s. China has asked the WTO to investigate solar power rules adopted by Greece and Italy, while the U.S. and the EU have launched similar proceedings against China.

Another concern of free trade advocates involves proposed border tax adjustments (BTAs), or tariffs, on imported goods that have benefited from the regulatory “race to the bottom.” Suppose country A requires its domestic manufacturers to adopt expensive technologies to reduce their greenhouse gas emissions and country B does not. Country A’s manufacturers might argue that production and firms will move to country B where costs are cheaper. Country B then benefits from the “race to the bottom.” To deter countries from lowering their environmental regulations to attract new investment and industries, some countries, including the United States and the EU, are proposing to impose BTAs on goods imported from countries whose environmental standards are lower than theirs. One study commissioned by the World Bank suggested that a $50 a ton tax on carbon dioxide would be equivalent to a 10-percent tariff on a typical Chinese import. Development specialists fear that BTAs of this magnitude could cripple the ability of small manufacturers, which form the backbone of China’s manufacturing sector, to compete in developed markets. Environmental specialists conversely fear that attempts to control greenhouse gas emissions will come to naught unless such small manufacturers also comply with higher environmental standards.
Case Questions

9-17. Why have so many governments chosen to subsidize green energy initiatives? Can all of these programs be successful?

9-18. China has passed the United States as the largest emitter of greenhouse gases, which displeases environmentalists concerned about global climate change. China has subsidized its green energy manufacturers, allowing them to dominate key industries, such as solar panels, which displeases advocates of free trade. What would you recommend China do? Should it accommodate its critics? Should it ignore them?

9-19. What is the rationale for BTAs? Under what conditions, if any, should countries be allowed to impose BTAs?

9-20. What is the appropriate trade-off between promoting free trade and promoting green energy? Should the WTO rules be suspended when dealing with green energy?


MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

9-21. Discuss the primary barriers that countries erect to protect domestic firms from foreign competition. Who benefits from the erection of these barriers? Who loses?

9-22. The enforcement of antidumping laws is controversial. Discuss why this is so. Should nations enforce their antidumping laws? Defend your answer.

9-23. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


4. “Climbing through the clouds,” _The Economist_, July 9, 2011 (online).
33. Office of the U.S. Trade Representative, _National Trade Estimate Report on Foreign Trade Barriers 2013_, p. 239.
CHAPTER 10
International Cooperation Among Nations

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Explain the importance of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) and the World Trade Organization (WTO) to international businesses.
2. Contrast the different forms of economic integration among cooperating countries.
3. Analyze the opportunities for international businesses created by completion of the European Union’s internal market.
4. Describe the other major trading blocs in today’s world economy.

MyManagementLab®
★ Improve Your Grade!
More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs.
Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
TRADE AND PROSPERITY: THE CASE OF MEXICO

Is trade or aid the best means of promoting economic development? For Mexico, the answer is clear: trade. From 1917 to 1982, Mexico relied on inward-looking economic policies: high tariffs to discourage imports; restrictions on foreign direct investment (FDI) to reduce foreign presence in its economy; government ownership of key industries; and powerful, conservative bureaucracies that strangled entrepreneurship and innovation. Although the Mexican economy grew during this time span, its performance did not match that of export-driven economies such as those of Hong Kong, Taiwan, or South Korea. The last six presidents of Mexico have reversed these policies, in the process lowering tariffs, encouraging FDI, privatizing state-owned enterprises, and joining the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) and the World Trade Organization (WTO). Under their leadership, Mexico signed a series of free trade agreements with 44 countries, including the United States and Canada, the European Union (EU), Israel, Japan, Chile, and five of its Central American neighbors.

The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) is the big story. Its implementation in 1994 opened up the U.S. and Canadian markets to factories located in Mexico, allowing them to take advantage of Mexico’s lower labor costs. Although most newspaper headlines focused on NAFTA’s impact on big industries such as autos or textiles, Mexican entrepreneurs were quick to spot new opportunities. For example, a $100-million-a-year dental supply business sprang up in Mexico as a result of NAFTA, producing labor-intensive products such as buccal tubes (the straps that bind braces to teeth), endodontic files (stainless steel corkscrews used in root canals), and dental wax (a gummy paste used as a mold for crowns). The Mexican service sector also benefitted, as companies located call centers, data-processing facilities, and other customer support services there. For example, Seagate Technology’s Reynosa facility provides after-sales support for its North American customers. In 2012, Mexico’s exports of such business services to the United States exceeded $3.3 billion.

Unfortunately, China’s joining the WTO, coupled with a slowdown in the U.S. economy in 2001, put a damper on Mexico’s export surge. Many manufacturers of low-margin, low-value-added products, such as toys and apparel, and those requiring labor-intensive assembly migrated to China to take advantage of its low labor costs.

The economic advantage of producing such goods in China has atrophied in the past several years, however, as we noted in Chapter 8’s closing case, “What’s Next for Chinese Manufacturing?”. Wages in China have been rising annually at double-digit rates for a decade. The average hourly manufacturing wage is estimated to be $3.00 in China and $3.50 in Mexico, but labor productivity is higher in Mexico. As a result, some companies are relocating their manufacturing activities back to Mexico to take advantage of its proximity to the U.S. market and its integration into the supply chains of North American corporations. For instance, manufacturers of flat panel high-definition TVs, such as Samsung, Sony, and Vizio, find Mexico a convenient location to assemble their products for delivery to North American consumers. Contract manufacturer Hon Hai Precision Industries (see Chapter 5’s opening case) now assembles custom-order computers for Dell in Ciudad Juárez, while continuing to churn out standardized models in its Chinese factories. Querétaro, a colonial-era city in the country’s central highlands, is becoming a hub for aerospace firms. General Electric employs 1,300 engineers at its Querétaro research and development (R&D) center designing engines for Airbus and Boeing wide-body jets, while Bombardier’s 1,600 workers are constructing the fuselage, electrical systems, and horizontal and vertical stabilizers for the company’s newest line of corporate jets. The Mexican auto industry is also booming. It is now the world’s fourth-largest exporter of automobiles—2.1 million vehicles in 2012. And the industry’s success has induced auto-parts suppliers to invest heavily in the country. Pirelli sank $400 million in a tire plant in Silao to service Mexican auto-assembly plants. Similarly, Germany’s Bosch, Japan’s Akebono Brake Industry and Nippon Steel, and the United States’ Delphi have made major investments to feed the country’s production lines.

Mexico still faces many challenges, of course. The escalation of violence among rival drug gangs has scared off some foreign investors. For instance, Electrolux AB, the giant Swedish appliance manufacturer, chose to locate its newest factory in Memphis, Tennessee, rather than Mexico, in part because of security concerns. Mexican exporters are vulnerable to downturns in the U.S. economy—some 80 percent of Mexico’s exports are destined for its northern neighbor. Moreover, Mexican officials recognize that they have to raise the productivity of their workforce and improve the country’s infrastructure if Mexico is to continue to compete successfully in the global economy.1

In Chapter 9 we explored the ways in which national governments intervene in international trade and investment. When a country adopts restrictions on international commerce, it can benefit at least some of its producers and workers. But other countries may retaliate with similar restrictions, thinking that they too will gain. As restrictions proliferate, international trading opportunities decline, and all countries end up losing. They often then realize that each is better off if they cooperate and agree to forswear trade restrictions. Such policy changes underlie the transformation of the Mexican economy, as we just noted.
International cooperative agreements form a major part of the economic environment in which international businesses operate. To be successful, international businesspeople must be knowledgeable about these agreements and use them to create business opportunities for their firms and counteract competitors’ actions. Of particular importance is the growth of regional trading blocs, such as the Mercosur Accord and the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), which are designed to reduce trade barriers among their members. By far the boldest of these regional economic integration efforts is that of the European Union (EU), most of whose members have replaced or are planning to replace their national currencies with a single currency, the euro.

The General Agreements on Tariffs and Trade and the World Trade Organization

The collapse of the international economy during the Great Depression between World Wars I and II has been blamed partly on countries’ imposing prohibitive tariffs, quotas, and other protectionist measures on imported goods. Trading and investment opportunities for international businesses dried up as country after country adopted such “beggar-thy-neighbor” policies. By raising tariff and quota barriers, each nation believed that it could help its own industries and citizens, even though in doing so it might harm the citizens and industries of other countries. For example, in 1930 the United States sought to protect domestic industries from import competition by raising tariffs under the Smoot-Hawley Tariff Act to an average of 53 percent. However, as other countries, such as the United Kingdom, Italy, and France, constructed similarly high tariff walls, none gained a competitive advantage over another, and as international trade declined, all suffered from the contraction of export markets.

To ensure that the post–World War II international peace would not be threatened by such trade wars, representatives of the leading trading nations met in Havana, Cuba, in 1947 to create the International Trade Organization (ITO). The ITO’s mission was to promote international trade; however, the organization never came into being because of a controversy over how extensive its powers should be. Instead the ITO’s planned mission was taken over by the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), which had been developed as part of the preparations for the Havana conference. From 1947 to 1994, the signatories to the GATT (the GATT was technically an agreement, not an organization) fought to reduce barriers to international trade. The GATT provided a forum for trade ministers to discuss policies and problems of common concern. In January 1995, it was replaced by the World Trade Organization, which adopted the GATT’s mission.

The Role of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade

The GATT’s goal was to promote a free and competitive international trading environment benefiting efficient producers, an objective supported by many multinational corporations (MNCs). The GATT accomplished this by sponsoring multilateral negotiations to reduce tariffs, quotas, and other nontariff barriers (NTBs). Because high tariffs were initially the most serious impediment to world trade, the GATT first focused on reducing the general level of tariff protection. It sponsored a series of eight negotiating “rounds,” generally named after the location where each round of negotiations began (see Table 10.1), during its lifetime. The cumulative effect of the GATT’s eight rounds was a substantial reduction in tariffs. Tariffs imposed by the developed countries fell from an average of more than 40 percent in 1948 to approximately 3 percent in 2005. As Figure 6.1 demonstrated (see page 178), the GATT negotiations have led to dramatic growth in world trade since the end of World War II. (See “People, Planet, and Profits” for a counterexample: an international agreement to reduce trade.)

To help international businesses compete in world markets regardless of their nationality, the GATT sought to ensure that international trade was conducted on a nondiscriminatory basis. This was accomplished through use of the most favored nation (MFN) principle, which requires that any preferential treatment granted to one country must be extended to all countries. (See “Bringing the World into Focus” for further discussion of MFN.) Under GATT rules, all members were required to use the MFN principle in dealing with other members. For example, if the United States cut the tariff on imports of British trucks to 20 percent, it also had to reduce its tariffs on imported trucks from all other members to 20 percent. Because of the MFN principle, multilateral, rather than bilateral, trade negotiations were encouraged, thereby strengthening the GATT’s role.
Table 10.1 GATT Negotiating Rounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Round</th>
<th>Dates</th>
<th>Number of Participants</th>
<th>Average Tariff Cut (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td>1947</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annecy</td>
<td>1949</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torquay</td>
<td>1950–1951</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td>1956</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dillon</td>
<td>1960–1962</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kennedy</td>
<td>1964–1967</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokyo</td>
<td>1973–1979</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>1986–1994</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS

PROTECTING ENDANGERED SPECIES

Although most trade agreements are designed to promote trade, some trade agreements are designed to eliminate or suppress trade, such as the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). CITES, as its name suggests, is a 1973 agreement among 178 countries to control international trade in endangered species. The CITES registry now includes 33,000 species (28,000 flora, 5,000 fauna) for which trade is banned or limited. The most publicized problems involve elephants, rhinoceros, and tigers. Elephants are poached for their ivory, while rhino horns and tiger bones are prized for their medicinal values in many Asian cultures, most notably China’s. Unfortunately, CITES has had little impact on reducing the killing of these animals. An estimated 25,000 elephants are poached each year in Africa, about 5 percent of their total population on that continent. The population of wild tigers has been halved in the past two decades, despite a trade ban imposed in 1975. In 2012 alone, some 668 rhinos were killed by poachers, although trade in rhino horns has been illegal since 1976.

Ironically, the ban on trade in these animals may be contributing to the problem. High prices create great rewards for law-breakers. Ivory can sell for $800 a pound, while a tiger skin or pound of rhino horn can command 20 times as much. Kenyan officials report that international crime gangs, motivated by the high prices of ivory, are using helicopters and sophisticated weapons to hunt down their prey. They are urging an intensified international effort to stamp out trade in these animals. Yet other experts believe that improved monitoring and creation of limited legal trade is the better approach. In their view, by creating a controlled market, they will incentivize people to protect endangered species.

(Continued)
species. For instance, an estimated 5,000 tigers are being farmed in China to provide tiger bones for the treatment of rheumatism, reducing the incentive to poach wild tigers. Ivory taken from elephants that died of natural causes can be auctioned off, with the revenues ploughed back into conservation and protection efforts. Such monies are critical in underdeveloped countries facing severe budgetary constraints and many competing uses for available government resources. Yet wildlife conservation nongovernmental organizations (NGOs) point out that this approach has not worked in the past. CITES members agreed in 1997 and then again in 2007 to allow limited legal sales of ivory. The NGOs believe the legal sales stimulated poaching, allowing the poachers to dispose of their illegal ivory by claiming it as legally obtained. They note that less than half of the 35 African nations signing the CITES agreement imposed workable controls on the ivory trade.


There are two important exceptions to the MFN principle:

1. To assist poorer countries in their economic development efforts, the GATT permitted members to lower tariffs to developing countries without lowering them for more developed countries. Such reduced rates offered to developing countries are known as the generalized system of preferences (GSP). Each country is free to choose those developing countries to which it will apply GSP treatment. For instance, during the Cold War the United States granted access to the lower GSP tariff rates to countries that were diplomatically allied with it against the Soviet Union. Obviously, by reducing these tariffs, the GSP increases the pressures on domestic firms that are vulnerable to import competition from the developing countries. In contrast, MNCs can reduce their input and production costs by locating factories and assembly facilities in countries benefiting from the GSP.

2. The second exemption is for comprehensive trade agreements that promote economic integration, such as the EU and NAFTA.

Although the GATT’s underlying principles were noble, its framers recognized that domestic political pressures often forced countries to retreat from pure free trade policies. The GATT permitted countries to protect their domestic industries on a nondiscriminatory basis, although under GATT rules, countries were supposedly restricted to the use of tariffs only. Quotas and other NTBs can often be applied discriminatorily, and they are less “transparent”—that is, it is often harder to judge their impact on competition. However, there were loopholes in these rules, so many countries adopted quotas and other NTBs yet remained in compliance with the GATT. For example, U.S. quotas restricting imports of peanuts, sugar, and other agricultural products that were granted a “temporary” waiver from GATT rules in 1955 remained in effect for decades. Countries were allowed exemptions to preserve national security or to remedy balance of payments problems. The GATT also permitted countries in certain circumstances to protect themselves against “too much” foreign competition.

The eighth, and final, round of GATT negotiations began in Uruguay in September 1986. Ratified by GATT members in Morocco in March 1994, the Uruguay Round agreement took effect in 1995. Like its seven predecessors, the Uruguay Round cut tariffs on imported goods—in this case, from an average of 4.7 percent to 3 percent. As average tariff rates declined, however,

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

MOST NATIONS ARE FAVORED

As part of the rules of membership in the GATT and the WTO, each member must grant every other member MFN status. However, members are also free to grant nonmembers MFN status as well. The United States, for example, grants MFN status to nearly all countries. The few countries excluded are those considered diplomatically hostile to it, such as Cuba and North Korea.

The Clinton administration decided to adopt the term normal trade relations (NTR) to replace MFN. It had two reasons for doing so. The public reason was that NTR was a more accurate description; if almost all countries receive such treatment, then the practice is “normal” rather than “most favored.” There was also a political reason. The administration was in a battle to secure permanent MFN status for China as part of the administration’s agreement to allow China to join the WTO. President Clinton judged that it would be easier to sway public opinion and win the vote in Congress if the United States were perceived to be treating China normally, rather than providing it favorable treatment. Hence, MFN became NTR in U.S. trade documents.
most countries recognized that NTBs had become a more important impediment to the growth of world trade, so the Uruguay Round addressed them as well. For example, the participants made substantial progress in abolishing quotas by encouraging countries to convert existing quotas to tariff rate quotas (see Chapter 9). More importantly, Uruguay Round participants agreed to create the WTO. They established its initial agenda and granted it more power to attack trade barriers than the GATT had possessed.

The World Trade Organization

The World Trade Organization (WTO) came into being on January 1, 1995. Headquartered in Geneva, Switzerland, the WTO includes 159 member and 24 observer countries. Members are required to open their markets to international trade and to follow the WTO’s rules. The WTO has three primary goals:

1. Promote trade flows by encouraging nations to adopt nondiscriminatory, predictable trade policies. (Figure 10.1 details the WTO’s principles for the world trading system.)
2. Reduce remaining trade barriers through multilateral negotiations. During the first several years of its existence, the WTO emphasized negotiations focused on specific sectors of the world economy. For example, the WTO sponsored the 1996 Information Technology Agreement to eliminate tariffs on such products as computers, software, fax machines, and pagers. Similar agreements covering financial services and telecommunications were signed in 1997. In 2001, the WTO initiated the Doha Round of trade negotiations. The Doha negotiations were supposed to be completed by January 2005. The talks deadlocked over several troublesome issues. Although reducing tariffs on manufactured goods exported to developing countries and loosening restrictions on trade in services proved to be stumbling blocks, the most contentious issue facing the Doha negotiators was freeing trade in agricultural goods, a problem that also stymied the GATT. Trade in many agricultural products has been distorted by export subsidies, import restrictions, and other trade barriers. The Cairns Group, a group of major agricultural exporters led by Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Canada, and Thailand, has pressured other WTO members to ensure that the Doha Round significantly reduces barriers to agricultural trade but has been unable as yet to structure terms that satisfy China, India, Japan, and many other countries. Although the Doha negotiations have not yet been terminated, few trade experts expect any significant breakthroughs in the near term.
3. Establish impartial procedures for resolving trade disputes among members.

The WTO was clearly designed to build on and expand the successes of the GATT; indeed, the GATT agreement was incorporated into the WTO agreement. The WTO differs from the

![FIGURE 10.1](image-url)

The WTO’s Principles of the Trading System

Source: Based on “About the WTO.”

WTO’s Trading System Principles

- **Without Discrimination**: Members should not discriminate between their trading partners (all are granted “most favored nation status”) nor discriminate between their own and foreign products, services, or nationals (who receive “national treatment”).
- **Freer**: Members lower trade barriers through negotiations.
- **Predictable**: Members agree not to arbitrarily raise trade barriers (including tariffs and nontariff barriers) against foreign companies, investors, and governments.
- **More Competitive**: The WTO discourages “unfair” practices such as export subsidies and dumping products below cost to gain market share.
- **Beneficial for Less-Developed Countries**: The WTO gives less-developed nations more time to adjust, greater flexibility, and special privileges.
GATT in two important dimensions. First, the GATT focused on promoting trade in goods, whereas the WTO’s mandate is much broader: It is responsible for trade in goods, trade in services, international intellectual property protection, and trade-related investment. Second, the WTO’s enforcement powers are much stronger than those possessed by the GATT.

**THE GENERAL AGREEMENT ON TRADE IN SERVICES** Another challenge facing the WTO is reducing barriers to trade in services. The Uruguay Round developed a set of principles under which such trade should be conducted. For instance, government controls on service trade should be administered in a nondiscriminatory fashion. One nondiscriminatory approach is the use of national treatment, whereby a country treats foreign firms the same way it treats domestic firms. If, for example, national insurance regulators require domestic firms to maintain reserves equal to 10 percent of their outstanding policies, then the identical requirement should be imposed on foreign firms operating in that country. Service industries are diverse, however, and few concrete agreements regarding specific service industries were included in the Uruguay Round. The WTO members began negotiating a new general agreement on trade in services (GATS) in 2000, but progress has been slow.

**AGREEMENT ON TRADE-RELATED ASPECTS OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS** Entrepreneurs, artists, and inventors have been hurt by inadequate enforcement by many countries of laws prohibiting illegal usage, copying, or counterfeiting of intellectual property. These problems are particularly widespread in the music, filmed entertainment, and computer software industries. On paper, the Uruguay Round agreement substantially strengthened the protection granted to owners of intellectual property rights and developed enforcement and dispute settlement procedures to punish violators. Unfortunately, many owners of intellectual property believe that intellectual property theft has become more blatant and widespread subsequent to the Uruguay Round, in large part because of lax enforcement of their property rights by many governments and those governments’ unwillingness to live up to their Uruguay Round commitments.

**TRADE-RELATED INVESTMENT MEASURES AGREEMENT** WTO members are well aware of the relationship between trade and investment: Approximately one-third of the $22.8 trillion of annual trade in goods and services is between subsidiaries of a parent organization. However, the developing countries believe that FDI can be an important mechanism for promoting economic growth, technology transfer, and industrialization and thus were unwilling to yield much control over it. Accordingly, the trade-related investment measures (TRIMS) agreement in the Uruguay Round is but a modest start toward eliminating national regulations on FDI that may distort or restrict trade. The TRIMS agreement affects:

- **Trade-balancing rules**: Countries may not require foreign investors to limit their imports of inputs to an amount equal to their exports of local production.
- **Foreign-exchange access**: Countries may not restrict foreign investors’ access to foreign exchange.
- **Domestic sales requirements**: Countries may not require the investor to sell a percentage of a factory’s output in the local market.3

Under certain circumstances, however, developing countries are able to waive these requirements.

**ENFORCEMENT OF WTO DECISIONS** The enforcement power of the GATT was notoriously weak. A country found to have violated its GATT obligations by an arbitration panel was in effect asked, “Is it okay if we punish you?” Most countries, as you might expect, answered “no,” and there the matter ended. Under WTO rules, a country failing to live up to the agreement—for example, by imposing an NTB contrary to the WTO agreement—may have a complaint filed against it. If a WTO panel finds the country in violation of the rules, the panel will likely ask the country to eliminate the trade barrier. If the country refuses, the WTO will allow the complaining country to impose trade barriers on the offending country equal to the damage caused by the trade barrier. Furthermore, the offending country is not allowed to counter-retaliate by imposing new trade barriers against the complainant. For instance, the WTO allowed Brazil to impose $248 million in trade sanctions on Canada after finding that Canada provided low-interest loans in violation of WTO rules that allowed Bombardier, a Canadian manufacturer of regional jets, to beat out Brazilian rival Embraer for a $1.7 billion order.4 Similarly, the WTO will likely
authorize trade sanctions to be imposed against the countries who subsidized their green energy industries contrary to WTO rules, as discussed in Chapter 9’s closing case, once they have exhausted the WTO’s appeal process.

Although barriers to international trade and investment remain, no one believed they would come tumbling down like the walls of Jericho as soon as the WTO arrived on the scene. Most trade experts give the WTO good marks for its accomplishments during its first decade of existence, such as the sectoral agreements in telecommunications, information technology, and financial services. However, the failure of the WTO to break the deadlock over the Doha Round negotiations has raised some concerns about future reductions in trade barriers and the future effectiveness of the WTO. Moreover, the growing importance of the WTO has attracted opposition to its actions. Environmentalists and human rights activists, for instance, believe that the WTO needs to incorporate more sensitivity to environmental and human needs in its decision making. Labor unions and workers’ groups fear that the WTO’s decisions weaken their bargaining power and threaten their members’ job security.

In Practice

- The GATT and its successor, the WTO, have promoted freer trade in goods and services post–World War II.
- The WTO’s powers are stronger and its agenda is broader than that of the GATT.

For further consideration: What is the appropriate tradeoff between freer trade and protecting human rights and the environment?

Regional Economic Integration

Regional alliances to promote liberalization of international trade are an important feature of the post–World War II international landscape. More than 200 such agreements are in existence, although not all have had much practical impact. They present international businesses with myriad opportunities and challenges. The past decade in particular has seen a rise in the number of trading blocs, as countries seek to integrate their economies more closely to open new markets for their firms and lower prices for their consumers.

Forms of Economic Integration

Regional trading blocs differ significantly in form and function. The characteristic of most importance to international businesses is the extent of economic integration among a bloc’s members because it affects exporting and investment opportunities available to firms from member and nonmember countries. There are five different forms of regional economic integration: free trade area, customs union, common market, economic union, and political union. We discuss these next in order of ascending degree of economic integration.

- **Free Trade Area** A free trade area encourages trade among its members by eliminating trade barriers (tariffs, quotas, and other NTBs) among them. An example of such an arrangement is NAFTA, which reduces tariffs and NTBs to trade among Canada, Mexico, and the United States.

  Although a free trade area reduces trade barriers among its members, each member is free to establish its own trade policies against nonmembers. As a result, members of free trade areas are often vulnerable to the problem of trade deflection, in which nonmembers reroute (or deflect) their exports to the member nation with the lowest external trade barriers. Canada, for example, may use high tariffs or quotas to discourage imports of a given product from nonmembers, whereas the United States may impose few restrictions on imports of the same good from nonmembers. Taking advantage of the latter’s low barriers, nonmembers may deflect their Canada-destined exports by first shipping the good to the United States and then re-exporting it from the United States to Canada. To prevent trade deflection from destroying their members’ trade policies toward nonmembers, most free trade agreements specify rules of origin, which detail the conditions under which a good is classified as a member good or a nonmember good.
For example, under NAFTA rules of origin, most goods qualify for preferential treatment as a North American product only if they undergo substantial processing or assembly in Mexico, Canada, or the United States.

CUSTOMS UNION A customs union combines the elimination of internal trade barriers among its members with the adoption of common external trade policies toward nonmembers. Because of the uniform treatment of products from nonmember countries, a customs union avoids the trade deflection problem. A firm from a nonmember country pays the same tariff rate on exports to any member of the customs union.

Historically, the most important customs union was the Zollverein, created in 1834 by several independent principalities in what is now Germany. The eventual unification of Germany in 1871 was hastened by this customs union, which tightened the economic bonds among the Germanic principalities and facilitated their political union. A more contemporary example of a customs union is the Mercosur Accord, an agreement initially signed by Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay to promote trade among themselves. In 2010, Russia, Belarus, and Kazakhstan similarly agreed to create a customs union.

COMMON MARKET A common market is a third step along the path to total economic integration. As in a customs union, members of a common market eliminate internal trade barriers among themselves and adopt a common external trade policy toward nonmembers. A common market goes a step further, however, by eliminating barriers that inhibit the movement of factors of production—labor, capital, and technology—among its members. Workers may move from their homeland and practice their profession or trade in any of the other member nations. Firms may locate production facilities, invest in other businesses, and use their technologies anywhere within the common market. Productivity within the common market is expected to rise because factors of production are free to locate where the returns to them are highest. An example of a common market is the European Economic Area, which is an agreement by EU members and several other European countries to promote the free movement of labor, capital, and technology among them.

ECONOMIC UNION An economic union represents full integration of the economies of two or more countries. In addition to eliminating internal trade barriers, adopting common external trade policies, and abolishing restrictions on the mobility of factors of production among members, an economic union requires its members to coordinate their economic policies (monetary policy, fiscal policy, taxation, and social welfare programs) to blend their economies into a single entity. The members of the EU who have adopted the euro as their domestic currency are in the process of creating an economic union among themselves.

POLITICAL UNION A political union is the complete political as well as economic integration of two or more countries, thereby effectively making them one country. An example of a political union is the integration of the 13 separate colonies operating under the Articles of Confederation into a new country, the United States of America. Figure 10.2 summarizes the five forms of economic integration.

The Impact of Economic Integration on Firms
From the viewpoint of an individual firm, regional integration is a two-edged sword. Consider elimination of internal trade barriers, a feature common to all five forms of economic integration. Lowering tariffs within the regional trading bloc opens the markets of member countries to all member country firms. Firms can lower their average production and distribution costs by capturing economies of scale as they expand their customer base within the trading bloc. The lower cost structure will also help the firms compete internationally outside the trading bloc. For instance, many Canadian manufacturers supported their country’s free trade agreements with the United States. They believed that improved access to the large U.S. market would allow longer production runs in Canadian factories, thereby lowering their average costs and making Canadian goods more competitive in international markets inside and outside the free trade area. However, elimination of trade barriers also exposes a firm’s home market to competition from firms located in other member countries, thus threatening less-efficient firms.
A regional trading bloc may also attract FDI from nonmember countries as firms outside the bloc seek the benefits of insider status by establishing manufacturing facilities within the bloc. Most non-European MNCs, including General Mills, Toyota, and Samsung, have invested heavily in the EU to take advantage of Europe’s increased economic integration. These investments bolster the productivity of European workers and increase the choices available to European consumers, but threaten established European firms such as Unilever, Renault, and Siemens.

Typically, each form of economic integration confers benefits on the national economy as a whole but often hurts specific sectors and communities within that economy. As a result, negotiating any form of economic integration is not easy. Special-interest groups that feel they will be harmed by an agreement will lobby against it. For example, U.S. and Canadian autoworkers lobbied against NAFTA, fearing that Ford, GM, and Chrysler would shift production to Mexico to take advantage of its lower-cost labor. As a result of such internal political pressures, few economic integration treaties are “pure”; most contain some exemptions to quiet politically powerful domestic special-interest groups.

### In Practice

- There are five forms of regional economic integration: free trade area, customs union, common market, economic union, and political union.
- The complexity of negotiating a regional economic integration agreement increases dramatically as we move from one form to the next.

_For further consideration:_ Regional economic integration usually helps consumers. Competitive, efficient firms benefit as well, but uncompetitive, inefficient firms can suffer from an influx of new competition when a regional economic integration agreement is implemented.

### The European Union

The most important regional trading bloc in the world today is the EU. The EU’s 28 member countries, with a combined population of 508 million, compose one of the world’s richest markets, with a total gross domestic product (GDP) of $17.6 trillion, or about 25 percent of the world economy. (See Table 10.2 and Map 10.1.)

Like the International Monetary Fund (IMF), the World Bank, and the GATT, the creation of the EU was motivated by the desires of war-weary Europeans to promote peace and
prosperity through economic and political cooperation. To further this objective, six European nations—France, West Germany, Italy, and the Benelux nations (Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg)—signed the Treaty of Rome in 1957. The Treaty of Rome established the European Economic Community (EEC) and called for the development of a common market among the six member states.

Over the ensuing five decades, the EEC changed its name twice and expanded its membership dramatically. During the 1970s, the United Kingdom, Denmark, and Ireland joined the EEC, which became commonly referred to as the European Community (EC). During the 1980s, Greece, Portugal, and Spain entered the EC, bringing its membership to 12 countries. In 1993, the 12 EC members signed the Treaty of Maastricht; as a result of this agreement, the EC became known as the EU. In 1995, Austria, Finland, and Sweden joined the EU. Cyprus, the Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Malta, Poland, Slovakia, and Slovenia became EU members in 2004. Bulgaria and Romania joined the EU in 2007 and Croatia in 2013, bringing its total membership to 28.

### TABLE 10.2 The European Union, 2011

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Total Population (millions)</th>
<th>Total GDP (billions)</th>
<th>GDP per Capita*</th>
<th>Date of Entry</th>
<th>Votes in Council</th>
<th>Votes in Parliament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>49,608</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>46,662</td>
<td>1957</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>7,158</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croatia</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>14,180</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30,670</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech Republic</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>20,759</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>334</td>
<td>59,852</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonia</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>16,553</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>263</td>
<td>48,823</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>65.4</td>
<td>2,773</td>
<td>42,377</td>
<td>1957</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>3,601</td>
<td>44,059</td>
<td>1957</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>25,621</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>14,043</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>48,423</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>60.8</td>
<td>2,194</td>
<td>36,102</td>
<td>1957</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>12,726</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>13,339</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>114,508</td>
<td>1957</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>21,209</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>836</td>
<td>50,076</td>
<td>1957</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>38.2</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>13,462</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>22,315</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romania</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>8,405</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovakia</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>17,645</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenia</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>24,141</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>46.2</td>
<td>1,477</td>
<td>31,942</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>540</td>
<td>57,091</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>62.6</td>
<td>2,445</td>
<td>39,038</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>508</strong></td>
<td><strong>17,639</strong></td>
<td><strong>352</strong></td>
<td><strong>748</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In U.S. dollars.

Sources: Based on data from World Bank, World Development Indicators data base, accessed July 14, 2013; European Union website, accessed July 14, 2013.
\textbf{MAP 10.1}

The European Union

\begin{itemize}
\item Original six members
\item Entrants in 1970s and 1980s
\item Entrants in 1995
\item Entrants in 2004
\item Entrants in 2007
\item Entrant in 2013
\end{itemize}

\section*{Governing the EU}

The EU is a unique institution. Its members are sovereign nations that have agreed, sometimes begrudgingly, to cede certain of their powers to the EU. The EU can be characterized both as an “intergovernmental government” (because it is a government of national governments) and as a “supranational government” (because it exercises power above the national level). The EU is governed by five organizations that perform its executive, administrative, legislative, and judicial functions:

\begin{itemize}
\item The European Council (meets in Brussels, Belgium)
\item The Council of the European Union (headquartered in Brussels, Belgium)
\item The European Commission (also based in Brussels)
\item The European Parliament (normally meets in Strasbourg, France)
\item The European Court of Justice (sitting in Luxembourg)
\end{itemize}

Because most of the EU’s employees are located in Brussels, many Europeans refer to the EU’s government as “Brussels,” the same way many Canadians refer to their national government as “Ottawa” or many Americans refer to theirs as “Washington.”

\textbf{THE EUROPEAN COUNCIL} The \textbf{European Council} consists of the heads of government or of state of each of the member states, the President of the European Council, and the President of the European Commission. The EU’s High Representative of the Union for Foreign Affairs and Security Policy also participates in its meetings. Normally convening twice every six months, the European Council shapes the EU’s political priorities and policy agendas. The European Council’s decisions are usually based on consensus, unless the EU treaties require a different voting rule. In reaching these decisions, only the heads of government may vote. Although it has met informally beginning in 1974, the European Council became an official EU institution only in 2009, when the Treaty of Lisbon entered into force.

\textbf{THE COUNCIL OF THE EUROPEAN UNION} The \textbf{Council of the European Union} (previously named the Council of Ministers) is composed of 28 representatives, each selected directly by and responsible to his or her home government. Which representative a country sends to a Council meeting depends on the Council’s agenda. For example, if the Council is dealing with farm policies, each country typically sends its minister of agriculture. The Council presidency rotates among the members every six months. In most Council decisions, a weighted voting
system is used. France, Germany, Italy, and the United Kingdom have the most votes, 29 each, and tiny Malta has the fewest, 3. The allocation of votes is in rough proportion to the population and economic importance of the members.

The Council is the EU’s most powerful decision-making body. Each representative pursues the interests of his or her home government. The Council’s strong powers reflect the reluctance of the member states to surrender power to Brussels on issues they view as vital to their national interests. As a result, some Council decisions require unanimous approval—entry of new members, taxation, foreign and security policy initiatives, and amending EU treaties. On matters perceived to be less threatening to national interests, Council decisions require only a qualified majority (260 yes votes of a possible 352 votes, or 73.9 percent) for passage, subject to two other conditions: a majority of member states must approve (in some cases, two-thirds must approve) and this majority must represent at least 62 percent of the EU’s population. (These rules are effective until November 2014, when new rules governing Council majorities mandated by the Treaty of Lisbon are implemented.) However, the EU strives to create consensus on all issues and often slows its deliberations to develop compromises amenable to all the members, even when unanimity is not required. As a result, an overwhelming percentage of Council decisions are made unanimously, regardless of the voting rules.

THE EUROPEAN COMMISSION The European Commission is composed of 28 people, one from each member state, selected for five-year terms. Once these individuals are in office, however, their loyalty is to the EU itself, not to their home countries. The Commission’s primary mandate is to be the “guardian of the Treaties.” The Commission also acts as the EU’s administrative branch and manages the EU’s €134 billion annual budget. Its functions include the following:

- It proposes legislation to be considered by the Council.
- It implements the provisions of the Treaty of Rome and other EU treaties.
- It protects the EU’s interests in political debates, particularly in Council deliberations.
- It has extensive powers in implementing the EU’s customs union, the Common Agricultural Policy (CAP), and the completion of the internal market.
- It administers the EU’s permanent bureaucracy, which employs about 38,000 people—popularly known as “Eurocrats”—two-thirds of whom work at Commission headquarters in Brussels. Because the EU has 24 official languages, its translation budget is more than $1 billion a year. It employs 1,750 linguists, who cumulatively are capable of translating any official language into any other official language—a possible 276 combinations.

THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT The European Parliament currently comprises 748 representatives elected in national elections to serve five-year terms. Seats are allocated in rough proportion to a country’s population, although the smaller states (Malta, Cyprus, Luxembourg) are overrepresented on that basis. For example, Germany has 99 seats; France, Italy, and the United Kingdom are allocated 72 seats each; Cyprus and Luxembourg have 6 seats, and Malta, 5 (refer to Table 10.2). Of the EU’s governing bodies, the Parliament was originally the weakest. Initially it had only a consultative role in EU policymaking. However, it has used its budgetary powers to enlarge its influence within the EU’s governing institutions, and it also gained additional powers under the Maastricht, Amsterdam, Nice, and Lisbon treaties, as discussed later in this chapter.

The most telling example of the growing importance of the European Parliament was the mass resignation of all of the EU commissioners in 1999, after a Parliamentary inquiry uncovered fraud, inept management, favoritism, and a lack of accountability in several Commission-administered programs. Because many Europeans are concerned about the lack of accountability in the EU’s programs and the lack of democracy in its decision-making processes, the role of the European Parliament is likely to continue to expand and its powers grow over time.

THE EUROPEAN COURT OF JUSTICE The European Court of Justice consists of 28 judges who serve six-year terms. The judges are selected jointly by the governments of the member states. The Court interprets EU law and ensures that members follow EU regulations and policies. Because national governments carry out the EU’s policies, many cases reaching the European Court are referred from national courts asking it to interpret EU law. For example, the Court declared Germany’s 450-year-old beer purity law regulating beer additives illegal, ruling that
The European Parliament was originally the weakest of the EU’s governing bodies, but has gained increased powers as new agreements have amended the Treaty of Rome. It shares responsibility for adopting the EU’s budget with the European Commission, and can dismiss the Commission with a vote of censure that obtains a two-thirds majority.

The law unreasonably restricted imports into Germany. Also, as discussed later in this chapter, its ruling in the Cassis de Dijon case smoothed the way for the creation of the common market called for in the Treaty of Rome.

**THE LEGISLATIVE PROCESS** The legislative process in the EU has never been simple, although it was once understandable, as captured in the catch phrase “the Commission proposes, the Parliament advises, and the Council disposes.” As the Parliament has gained increased powers, the complexity of passing legislation has increased exponentially, as Figure 10.3, which depicts decision making under the co-decision procedure, shows. The co-decision procedure is used for settling most issues, including education, environmental protection, health, consumer policy, and free movement of workers. On issues in which the co-decision process is not used, the process is simpler and the Parliament’s power is weaker.

Because the EU prefers to develop a strong consensus on issues among its members before it adopts new legislation, transforming a Commission proposal into an EU law and then implementing that law into national legislation often takes years. The complicated governance
The Co-Decision Procedure (Article 189b of the Treaty on European Union)

The European Commission offers a proposal to the European Parliament and the Council of the European Union.

Parliament produces an opinion.

The Council, by qualified majority, sets a common position.

Parliament, which always has the option of rejecting a proposal, examines the Council’s common position.

Parliament, by an absolute majority, expresses its intent to reject the common position.

The Council can convene the Conciliation Committee, which consists of Council members or their representatives and the same number of representatives from Parliament.

The Commission delivers a positive opinion.

The Council does not approve Parliament’s amendments. Both the Council President and the President of Parliament convene the Conciliation Committee. The Commission takes part in the work.

The Conciliation Committee reaches agreement and Parliament and the Council, by absolute and qualified majority, respectively, adopt the instrument. If either of the two institutions does not agree, the instrument is not accepted.

The Commission delivers a negative opinion.

The Conciliation Committee does not reach agreement. The Council may, by qualified majority, confirm the common position, where applicable, with the amendments proposed by Parliament.

The Conciliation Committee does not reach agreement. The Council adopts the instrument in line with its common position.

The Conciliation Committee renews the instrument, which is then not accepted.

The Commission delivers a positive opinion.

The Council approves the amendments by qualified majority and adopts the instrument.

The Council approves the amendments unanimously and adopts the instrument.

Parliament, by an absolute majority, proposes amendments to the position.

Parliament, by an absolute majority, rejects the proposal, which is then not accepted.

Parliament approves the common position and takes no action.

The Council adopts the instrument in line with its common position.

The Council does not approve Parliament’s amendments. Both the Council President and the President of Parliament convene the Conciliation Committee.

The Commission participates in the work.

arrangements of the EU reflect the ongoing struggle between the members’ desire to retain their national sovereignty and their wish to create a supranational government with an international political and economic stature equal to those of the United States, China, and Japan. As “Venturing Abroad” suggests, many MNCs exploit this power struggle to their benefit. The debate over national sovereignty versus supranational government is manifested in another way: Although the EU may formulate policies, in most circumstances they are implemented by members at a national level, giving the member states additional flexibility to tailor the policies to their unique circumstances.

The Struggle to Create a Common Market

The Treaty of Rome’s goal of creating a common market was indeed visionary. Unfortunately, for the first 35 years of the EU’s existence, it was nothing more than a cruel mirage. To establish a common market that would permit the free flow of goods, services, labor, capital, and technology, each EU member had to agree to change thousands of its national laws, product standards, and regulations to ensure that they were compatible with those of other EU members. In practice, the member nations moved cautiously because of political pressures from domestic special-interest groups.

As a result, conflicting national regulations, which affected nearly every good and service purchased by Europeans, hindered trade and the completion of the common market. For example, Spain required that keyboards sold within its borders contain a “tilde” key, an accent mark commonly used in the Spanish language. Other EU countries had no such requirement. Italy required pasta to be made of durum wheat, a requirement not decreed by other EU members. The EU initially relied on a process of harmonization to eliminate such conflicts. The EU encouraged member countries to voluntarily adopt common, EU-wide (“harmonized”) regulations affecting intra-EU trade in goods and services and movement of resources. The harmonization process moved slowly, however, because domestic political forces within the member states resisted change. For example, to protect the purity of its language, Spain refused to yield on the tilde issue. EU producers spent an estimated $260 billion (in 1988 dollars) annually to comply with different national regulations. These increased costs raised the prices paid by European consumers and reduced the global competitiveness of European manufacturers.

Progress toward eliminating conflicting product standards was so slow that some pessimists believed the EU would disintegrate. In 1979, however, the European Court of Justice heard the now famous Cassis de Dijon case. Rewe Zentral AG, a German wholesaler, wished to import Cassis de Dijon, a French liqueur made from black currants, into Germany. Cassis de Dijon failed to meet German regulatory standards, though—its alcohol content was too low. Rewe Zentral sued, arguing that Germany violated its obligations under the Treaty of Rome to promote the free movement of goods. The European Court of Justice found for the German wholesaler. In so doing, the Court created the concept of mutual recognition: if one member state determines that a product is appropriate for sale, then all other EU members are also obliged to do so under the provisions of the Treaty of Rome. Because France had determined Cassis de Dijon to be a legitimate liqueur, Germany was obligated to allow its sale as well.

Although the Court’s findings contained some loopholes, the implications of the Cassis de Dijon case were profound. Adopting the concept of mutual recognition meant that the slow harmonization process could be bypassed, and conflicting product standards would no longer serve as barriers to trade among EU members. The timing of the case was also fortunate: Many European economic and political leaders were becoming increasingly concerned about the competitiveness of European firms in world markets. Their concerns reinvigorated the EU’s commitment to completing the common market called for in the Treaty of Rome.

In 1985 the European Commission issued its White Paper on Completing the Internal Market. The White Paper called for accelerated progress on ending all trade barriers and restrictions on the free movement of goods, services, capital, and labor among members. Accepting the vision of the White Paper, in 1986 the members signed the Single European Act, which took effect on July 1, 1987. The act was intended to help complete the formation of the internal market (the term developed by the Eurocrats to mean “common market”) by December 31, 1992. Under the Single European Act, 279 broad regulatory changes had to be made to complete the internal market. Although not all these changes were fully implemented by the 1992 deadline,
VENTURING 2 • THE INTERNATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

LOBBYING THE EUROPEAN UNION

The government of the EU is engaged in many activities that affect international businesses, such as regulating payments to bumped passengers on overbooked airline flights or defining accounting standards. Because of the impact of the EU’s decisions on the opening or closing of the enormous European market to international businesses, most countries maintain diplomatic relationships with the EU to ensure that it does not disregard their economic interests. The United States, for example, maintains a United States Mission to the European Union, led by a senior State Department official with ambassadorial status.

Savvy international businesses, however, do not rely solely on their home governments to protect them from adverse EU regulations. Indeed, an estimated 15,000 lobbyists work in Brussels, seeking to influence EU policy and decisions. A key to their success is understanding the power relationships within the EU—particularly between the Council of the European Union, which defends national interests, and the European Commission, which promotes the interests of an integrated Europe. Firms threatened by pending EU regulations can adopt two strategies:

1. They may lobby the Commission and its elaborate bureaucracy to adopt regulations more beneficial to their interests. Because the Commission must continually balance the often diverse interests of EU members, firms can often influence the Commission to add their interests to the long list of other factors that it will consider in proposing legislation to the Council. Also, because of the Commission’s commitment to completing the EU’s internal market, firms have found that arguments promoting increased European integration are particularly well received by Eurocrats. For example, the Commission dropped proposed franchising regulations after U.S. firms convinced its staff that the pending regulations would hinder European integration.

2. Firms may lobby an ally on the Council. For example, remembering that “all politics is local,” Japanese automakers that built assembly plants in the United Kingdom were able to enlist the help of the British representative on the Council—who was interested in preserving jobs in his country—when French and Italian automakers were urging the EU to adopt regulations prejudicial to those UK assembly plants.


sufficient progress was made that many experts believed the Treaty of Rome’s goal of creating a common market was close to being realized—but it took 35 years to do so! Still, if you think of the magnitude of the challenge—getting so many governments to cooperate peacefully on such a broad range of activities—perhaps 35 years is a remarkably short period of time.

The benefits of creating the common market are substantial to European firms, economies, and workers. The common market offers firms the opportunity to sell their goods in a large, rich market free from barriers to trade. However, although firms in EU member countries have gained improved access to a larger market, they also face increased competition in their home markets from other members’ firms. This increased competition benefits consumers throughout the EU. Marketing, production, and R&D costs have been reduced because firms generally have to comply with only one, EU-wide set of regulations instead of 28 separate sets of national regulations. Many firms have been able to restructure their European manufacturing operations to capture economies of scale and lower their production costs. And the EU has been a magnet for new investment from other foreign firms eager to enter the lucrative European market and benefit from its common market. U.S. FDI in the EU has risen from $84 billion in 1985, when the White Paper was first issued, to $2.2 trillion in 2012. Similarly, more than 500 Japanese companies have established operations in the EU since 1985. More recently, Chinese firms have targeted the EU. From 2008 to 2010, Chinese companies invested $44 billion in the EU, seeking to access the area’s rich consumer market and sophisticated technologies.7

From Common Market to European Union

The EU members were justifiably proud of the progress made under the Single European Act. As the necessary changes were being finalized, the Cold War ended. The Soviet Union dissolved, the countries of Eastern Europe and Central Europe abandoned communism, and the threat of nuclear war diminished. The United States stood alone as the world’s remaining superpower. Some European politicians believed that Europe should reassert itself on the world’s stage and free itself from geopolitical domination by the United States. Meanwhile,
many EU economists were arguing that European firms remained at a competitive disadvantage with regard to their North American and Asian rivals because of the risks and costs associated with doing business in so many different currencies. Addressing these concerns, the EU’s Council of Ministers met in the Dutch city of Maastricht in December 1991 to discuss the EU’s economic and political future. The result was a new treaty that amended the Treaty of Rome; this new treaty was known formally as the Treaty on European Union and informally as the Maastricht Treaty. After ratification by the then 12 EU members, the Maastricht Treaty came into force on November 1, 1993.

The Maastricht Treaty rests on three “pillars” designed to further Europe’s economic and political integration:

1. A new agreement to create common foreign and defense policies among members
2. A new agreement to cooperate on police, judicial, and public safety matters
3. The old familiar European Community, with new provisions to create an economic and monetary union among member states

After the treaty was implemented, the European Community became commonly known as the European Union in recognition of the increasing integration of Europe. The Maastricht Treaty granted citizens the right to live, work, vote, and run for election anywhere within the EU and strengthened the powers of the EU’s legislative body, the European Parliament, in budgetary, trade, cultural, and health matters. The treaty also created a new cohesion fund, a means of funneling economic development aid to countries whose per capita GDP is less than 90 percent of the EU average. The initial recipients of cohesion funds included Spain, Portugal, Greece, and Ireland, although Ireland’s access to this aid terminated in 2004 because its then booming economy elevated Ireland’s per capita income above the average for the EU; the 13 newest members of the EU also qualify for aid from the cohesion fund.

Without a doubt, the most important aspect of the Maastricht Treaty is the establishment of the economic and monetary union (EMU). Its major task is to create a single currency, called the euro, to replace the existing national currencies. As of 2013, 17 EU countries use the euro. Of the first 15 EU members, Denmark and the United Kingdom opted not to become members of the single-currency bloc, and Sweden had not yet met the convergence criteria necessary to do so. Of the most 13 recent members, Cyprus, Estonia, Malta, Slovakia, and Slovenia have adopted the euro as their national currency, Latvia is expected to do so in 2014, and the others have not yet met the convergence criteria.

The convergence criteria were developed because the architects of the EMU believed that convergence of the economic policies of its members was needed if the union was to be successful. Accordingly, any EU member wishing to adopt the euro has to meet five convergence criteria:

1. A country’s inflation rate must be no more than 1.5 percentage points higher than the average of the three EU countries with the lowest inflation rates.
2. A country’s long-term interest rates must be no more than 2 percentage points higher than that of the average of the three EU countries with the lowest long-term interest rates.
3. A country must have been a member of the EU’s revised exchange-rate mechanism (ERM II) for two years, which commits the country to maintaining the value of its currency against the euro within a ±15-percent band, and it must not have devalued its currency during that time span.
4. A country’s government budget deficit must be no more than 3 percent of its GDP.
5. A country’s outstanding government debt must be trending toward no more than 60 percent of its GDP.

The euro came into being on January 1, 1999. On that date, the participants irrevocably fixed the value of their national currencies to the euro. However, euro coins and bank notes did not become immediately available. During a three-year transition period (1999 to 2001), the euro existed only as a bookkeeping currency to settle transactions among participating EU governments and banking systems. On New Year’s Day 2002, euro coins and bills were placed into circulation, allowing ordinary citizens to use euros to transact their daily business. After a two-month transition period, the national currencies were withdrawn from circulation and no longer accepted as legal tender.
Eurozone consumers have benefited from the creation of the euro. A single currency makes pricing comparisons easier and eliminates currency conversion costs and hedging expenses among the eurozone countries.

The creation of the euro reduced the exchange rate risks and currency conversion costs of firms doing business in the eurozone. Before the advent of the euro, firms conducting cross-border business within Europe were forced to pay fees to bankers typically ranging from 0.4 percent to 2 percent of the transaction amount anytime the firms wished to convert French francs into Belgian francs, Dutch guilders into Austrian schillings, and so on. Moreover, firms bore exchange rate risks in such transactions, as Chapter 8 discussed. Although the foreign-exchange market developed a variety of techniques to reduce (or hedge) this risk, these techniques nonetheless entailed paying fees to bankers or brokers. EU officials estimated that the creation of the euro saved Europeans $25 to $30 billion annually in currency conversion and hedging costs.

Creation of a single currency was not without controversy, however. Participating members lost control over their own domestic money supplies and economic destinies. The newly created European Central Bank is now responsible for controlling the eurozone’s money supply, interest rates, and inflation. Moreover, under the terms of the Stability and Growth Pact, eurozone participants have agreed to limit their annual government deficits to no more than 3 percent of their GDPs, thus severely curtailing their ability to use fiscal policy to promote economic growth. In 2003, for instance, the German government raised taxes to comply with the 3-percent rule, despite the anemic growth of Germany’s economy at the time—only 0.25 percent. As a result, national governments have become vulnerable to losing elections because of short-term pocketbook issues. Other critics fear that a one-size-fits-all monetary policy for the entire eurozone will generate economic problems whenever the national economies of the eurozone countries are at different stages of the business cycle. In the mid-2000s, for example, the Irish economy was overheating, whereas the Italian, French, and German economies were stagnating. Irish government officials would have preferred that the European Central Bank aggressively raise interest rates in the hope of cooling down Ireland’s economy, while officials from the other countries argued for more expansionary monetary policies. The ensuing Irish housing bubble—and bursting of the housing bubble—contributed to the EU’s bailout crisis of 2010–2011.

The Treaty for Europe (more popularly known as the Treaty of Amsterdam) furthered the process of European integration. The most important components of the Treaty of Amsterdam, which was signed in 1997, include:

- A strong commitment to attack the EU’s chronic high levels of unemployment, particularly among younger citizens
● A plan to strengthen the role of the European Parliament by expanding the number of areas that require use of the co-decision procedure
● Establishment of a two-track system, allowing groups of members to proceed with economic and political integration faster than the EU as a whole

The Treaty of Nice, which became effective in February 2003, continued the integration process by making modest adjustments in the EU’s governance arrangements. For instance, to reduce the risk of political gridlock as the number of members increased, the treaty reduced the number of areas in which unanimity is required for Council approval. The number of votes assigned to each Council member in determining a qualified majority was also adjusted.

European leaders acknowledged that more significant steps needed to be taken to reform the EU’s decision-making processes: a governance structure designed for six members no longer met the needs of an enlarged EU. Some members believed the powers of the Council, which protects national interests, should be weakened, and the powers of the Commission, which represents Europe as a whole, strengthened. Other members resisted this proposal, fearing the loss of national sovereignty. The EU members agreed to establish a European Convention to resolve these conflicts.

The Convention, which began its deliberations in 2002, drafted a proposed Constitution, which was endorsed by the leaders of the EU’s member states in 2004. The proposed Constitution then had to be approved unanimously by the member states, with each government determining its own approval process. Some governments chose to have their parliaments ratify the Constitution; others opted for voter referendums. France and the Netherlands decided to hold referendums on the issue. In May 2005, French voters rejected the Constitution, as did Dutch voters a week later, effectively killing the Constitution.

After a two-year “period of reflection” following the demise of the proposed Constitution, the EU member states agreed to support the Treaty of Lisbon—the so-called Reform Treaty— which adopted many of the governance changes proposed by the Constitutional Convention. The Treaty of Lisbon entered into force in December 2009. The most important of these changes include creating a full-time President of the European Council with a 30-month term in office (with a possibility of a second term); designating a High Representative of the Union for Foreign Affairs and Security Policy, charged with representing the EU on the world stage in these areas; changing the voting rules governing Council decisions starting in 2014; permitting a reduction in the size of the European Commission to make it more manageable; and strengthening the powers of the European Parliament by extending the co-decision process to more areas, including justice and home affairs issues. The Treaty of Lisbon also grants national legislatures the formal right to voice concerns about proposed EU legislation. If some minimum number object to draft legislation (in most cases, one-third; one-quarter of the legislatures in the case of justice and home affairs legislation), then the Commission must re-examine the proposed legislation in light of the national legislatures’ concerns.

FUTURE EU CHALLENGES The members of the EU have made remarkable progress in implementing the goals of the Treaty of Rome. Political conflicts still remain, of course (see “Venturing Abroad”). One divisive issue is state aid to industry. Under EU rules, national governments may not provide subsidies to firms that “distort” competition. Yet many governments are loath to let domestic firms go bankrupt, especially if local jobs are threatened. This became a particular problem during the recent global recession when national governments implemented programs to lessen domestic bank failures. Subsidies or programs designed to support local banks inevitably help them compete against banks from other EU countries, contrary to the spirit of the Treaty of Rome and the single market. Some national governments, including those of France, Italy, Poland, and Spain, have tried to protect their domestic corporations from unwanted takeovers by firms headquartered in other EU countries, contrary to the goal of the Treaty of Rome of creating an EU-wide capital market. France and the United Kingdom continue to squabble over the EU’s Common Agricultural Policy, which disproportionately benefits French farmers to the detriment of British interests and hurts European MNCs by poisoning the EU’s relationships with the United States, the WTO, and the Cairns Group. Other countries are concerned about the paucity of democracy and lack of accountability within the EU. They believe more power should be given to the EU’s only directly elected governing body, the European Parliament. The challenges facing the EU are more thoroughly explored in this chapter’s closing case.
Other Regional Trading Blocs

The EU’s success in enriching its members through trade promotion has stimulated the development of other regional trading blocs. Every inhabited continent now contains at least one regional trading group. Europe, for example, has many other smaller trading blocs, such as the European Free Trade Association. Its members are Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, and Switzerland. The first three of these countries have joined with the EU to create a common market known as the European Economic Area, which promotes the free movement of goods, services, labor, and capital among its members. Russia, Belarus, and Kazakhstan formed a customs union in 2010, with a goal of creating a common market in 2012.

The North American Free Trade Agreement

Another important example of regional economic integration is NAFTA. Implemented in 1994 to reduce barriers to trade and investment among Canada, Mexico, and the United States, NAFTA builds on the 1988 Canadian–U.S. Free Trade Agreement. Canada and the United States enjoy the world’s largest bilateral trading relationship, with two-way trade totaling $715 billion in 2012. The United States is Mexico’s largest trading partner, while Mexico is the third-largest trading partner of the United States (after Canada and China). Trade between Canada and Mexico, which totaled $35.4 billion in 2012, has increased more than sixfold since the signing of NAFTA.

NAFTA increased the integration of the North American economies. Over a 15-year time span, tariff walls were lowered, NTBs reduced, and investment opportunities increased for firms located in the three countries. However, some industries received special treatment in the agreement. Negotiators from all three countries recognized the political sensitivity of certain issues and industries and chose to compromise on their treatment within NAFTA to ensure the agreement’s
ratification. For example, because Canada fears being dominated by U.S. media, NAFTA allows Canada to limit foreign investments in its culture industries (publishing, music, television, radio, cable, and film). Similarly, Mexico may restrain foreign investments in its energy sector, and the United States may bar foreign ownership in its airline and broadcasting industries.

U.S. and Canadian negotiators also were concerned that firms from nonmember countries might locate so-called screwdriver plants in Mexico as a means of evading U.S. and Canadian tariffs. A **screwdriver plant** is a factory in which little transformation of a product is undertaken. Speaking metaphorically, in such factories the only tool workers need is the screwdriver they use to assemble a product. Therefore, the negotiators developed detailed rules of origin that defined whether a good was North American in origin and thus qualified for preferential tariff status. In the automobile industry, for example, U.S. and Canadian labor unions worried that European and Asian automakers would exploit the treaty by producing major components elsewhere and then establishing a North American factory merely to assemble motor vehicles, thereby causing the loss of jobs at Canadian and U.S. parts-producing factories. To diminish this problem, NAFTA specifies that for an automobile to qualify as a North American product, 62.5 percent of its value must be produced in Canada, Mexico, or the United States. Similarly, to protect textile industry jobs, clothing and other textile products must use North American–produced fibers to benefit from NAFTA’s preferential tariff treatment.

Most experts believe that NAFTA has benefited all three countries, although the gains have been more modest in Canada and the United States than most NAFTA advocates expected. NAFTA’s overall impact on the Mexican economy has been dramatic, as the chapter’s opening case indicated.

**Other Free Trade Agreements in the Americas**

Many other countries are negotiating or implementing free trade agreements on a bilateral or multilateral basis. For example, Mexico has negotiated free trade pacts with five of its Central American neighbors—Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua.

**THE CARIBBEAN BASIN INITIATIVE** In 1983 the United States established the **Caribbean Basin Initiative (CBI)** to facilitate the economic development of the countries of Central America and the Caribbean Sea. The CBI overlaps two regional free trade areas: the Central American Common Market and the Caribbean Community and Common Market (their members are listed in Table 10.3 and shown in Map 10.2). The CBI, which acts as a unidirectional free trade agreement, permits duty-free import into the United States of a wide range of goods that originate in Caribbean Basin countries, or that have been assembled there from U.S.–produced parts. However, some politically sensitive goods were excluded from the CBI. Through this pattern of duty-free access to the U.S. market, the United States hopes to stimulate investment by domestic, U.S., and other foreign firms in new industries in the Caribbean Basin countries.

**THE CENTRAL AMERICA–DOMINICAN REPUBLIC FREE TRADE AGREEMENT** This agreement among the United States, five Central American countries (Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua), and the Dominican Republic was signed in 2004. The Central America–Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR) calls for the reduction of tariffs, NTBs, and investment barriers in commerce among its members. Approximately 80 percent of U.S. exports to and imports from these countries were immediately duty-free as a result of CAFTA-DR or other existing trade treaties. The remaining tariffs are to be phased out over a 10-year period.

**THE MERCOSUR ACCORD** In 1991, the governments of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay signed the Mercosur Accord, an agreement to create a customs union among themselves. They agreed to establish common external tariffs and to cut, over four years, their internal tariffs on goods that account for 85 percent of intra-Mercosur trade. Full implementation of the customs union began in 1995. Bolivia, Chile, Colombia, Ecuador, Peru, and Venezuela later joined Mercosur as associate members, allowing them to participate in the accord’s free trade area component. Venezuela became a full member in 2012. Firms from the 10 countries have preferential access to a combined market of 394 million people and a total GDP of $4.2 trillion.

The Mercosur Accord is a direct response to the growth of other regional trading blocs. It is also a key element of the free-market-oriented economic reforms adopted by the Argentine
and Brazilian governments elected in 1989 to revitalize their stagnating economies. Since its founding, Mercosur has been successful in stimulating trade among its members. In 2011, about 15 percent of the members’ $354 billion in merchandise trade was to other Mercosur members. Mercosur—particularly Brazil—has proven to be a magnet for FDI, driven in part by the booming demand for raw materials caused by China’s rapid growth and urbanization and by the expansion of the country’s automobile manufacturing sector. The stock of FDI in Brazil rose from $122 billion in 2000 to $670 billion in 2011.10
ANDEAN COMMUNITY The Andean Community resulted from a 1969 agreement to promote free trade among five small South American countries—Bolivia, Chile, Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru—to make them more competitive with the continent’s larger countries. Venezuela joined the pact in 1973, but Chile dropped out in 1976. During its first 20 years, the agreement was not successful; trade among members totaled only 5 percent of their total trade. Geography played a role in this failure: The Andes mountain range, from which the agreement got its name, makes land transportation of goods between some members costly. More importantly, most members adopted protectionist, import substitution policies that hindered trade.

In response to the threat posed by the Mercosur Accord, in 1991 the Andean Community members agreed to reinvigorate their agreement. A year later the members established a customs union that provided for phased elimination of tariffs among themselves on most goods, a common external tariff, and harmonized regulations on capital movements, immigration, and agriculture. The new approach has had modest success: In 2011, about 7 percent of members’ $134 billion in merchandise exports were purchased by other Andean Community members. Yet the liberalization has not gone smoothly. Creation of a common external tariff was stalled by political squabbling over the appropriate tariff level and structure. Peru suspended its membership in the group after judging that the customs union agreement permitted too many loopholes that allowed members to subsidize local firms and erect barriers to imported goods. In 2005, the Andean Community negotiated a cooperative agreement with Mercosur. As part of this agreement, Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay joined the Andean Community as associate members, and the nations of the Andean Community became associate members of Mercosur. However, in 2006, Venezuela withdrew from the Andean Community in protest of Colombia’s and Peru’s signing trade promotion agreements with the United States.

Trade Arrangements in the Asia-Pacific Region
Trade groups are also growing in importance in the Asia-Pacific region. One of the longest standing is governed by the Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement between Australia and New Zealand. More recently, the Association of Southeast Asian Nations has initiated a free
Part 2 • The International Environment

The Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) have begun to reduce trade barriers among themselves as well.

**The Australia–New Zealand Agreement** For most of their histories, Australia and New Zealand have been trade rivals because they are both commodities producers. As members of the British Commonwealth, both enjoyed preferential access to the UK market. After the United Kingdom joined the EU, however, both countries lost their privileged status in the British market. This change was particularly damaging to their agricultural sectors.

The ensuing poor performance by both the New Zealand and Australian economies during the 1970s, and the flow of human capital from the more depressed New Zealand to Australia, led to calls for closer economic ties between the two countries. The **Australia–New Zealand Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement**, known as **ANZCERTA** or more simply as the CER, took effect on January 1, 1983. Over time, it eliminated tariffs and NTBs between the two countries. The CER also strengthened and fostered links and cooperation in fields as diverse as investment, marketing, movement of people, tourism, and transport. Although some areas have been excluded from the CER, such as broadcasting, postal services, and air traffic control, most analysts believe the CER has been one of the world’s most successful free trade agreements.

**Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN)** was established in August 1967 to promote regional political and economic cooperation (see Map 10.3). Its founding members were Brunei, Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, and Thailand. Cambodia, Laos, Myanmar, and Vietnam joined during the 1990s. These countries are by no means homogeneous: Oil-rich Brunei had a 2011 per capita income of $40,300 whereas Vietnam’s was only $1,400.

To promote intra-ASEAN trade, members established the **ASEAN Free Trade Area (AFTA)**, effective January 1, 1993. AFTA members promised to slash their tariffs to 5 percent or less on most manufactured goods by 2003 and on all goods by 2010. To qualify for the preferential tariff, at least 40 percent of the value added for the good must be performed within AFTA.\(^{11}\) As with the Mercosur Accord and the Andean Community, creation of the ASEAN trading bloc stems from two factors: a decrease in governmental control of national economies that has stimulated local entrepreneurs and attracted FDI and a defensive response to the growth of other regional trading blocs such as the EU and NAFTA.

Intra-ASEAN trade currently represents about 25 percent of the group’s $1.2 trillion in merchandise trade and has grown substantially as a result of AFTA. Recent meetings of ASEAN country ministers have addressed trade in services, removal of NTBs, and the

**MAP 10.3**

The ASEAN Members

The ASEAN economy has been developing rapidly because its poorer members provide large pools of low-cost labor, receive preferential tariff rates under the U.S. generalized system of preferences and those of other WTO members, and have attracted significant Japanese, European, and North American direct investment.
creation of an ASEAN Free Investment Area. ASEAN increased its importance in the world market in 2003 by signing a free trade pact with China, with the first set of tariff cuts commencing in 2004. As with other new trading blocs, firms have reacted quickly to take advantage of opportunities created by AFTA. Shortly after the agreement was negotiated, for instance, Philippine brewer San Miguel, which controls 90 percent of its home market, purchased Jakarta-based Delta brewery, which controls 40 percent of the Indonesian beer market. By moving rapidly, San Miguel hoped to dominate the entire ASEAN market before the fall of tariff rates triggered by AFTA.

**THE ASIA-PACIFIC ECONOMIC COOPERATION INITIATIVE**  
Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) includes 21 countries from both sides of the Pacific Ocean (see Map 10.4). It was founded in 1989 in response to the growing interdependence of the Asia-Pacific economies. A 1994 APEC meeting in Indonesia led to a declaration committing members to achieve free trade in goods, services, and investment among members by 2010 for developed economies and by 2020 for developing economies. This objective was furthered at APEC’s 1996 meeting in Manila, where many countries made explicit pledges to reduce barriers to Asia-Pacific trade. In 2011, merchandise exports from APEC members were valued at more than $8.7 trillion and represented about 47 percent of total world merchandise exports.

**African Initiatives**

Many African countries have also established regional trading blocs. As shown in Table 10.3 and Map 10.5, the most important of these groups are the **Southern African Development Community (SADC)**, the **Economic and Monetary Community of Central Africa (CEMAC)**, and the **Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS)**. Although these groups were established during the 1970s and early 1980s, they have not had a major impact on regional trade. This is due to inadequate intraregional transportation facilities and the failure of most domestic governments to create economic and political systems that encourage significant regional trade. Intra-Africa trade to date accounts for less than 11 percent of the continent’s total exports.
Every inhabited continent is home to at least one regional economic integration agreement. The ASEAN and APEC agreements hold the promise of becoming the largest and most important regional economic integration agreements because of the rapid growth and vast size of the Asian market, but gaining agreement of their diverse memberships to implement bold actions has not been easy.

For further consideration: Do you think the growth of regional economic integration agreements is good or bad?
economic integration by abolishing trade barriers among their members. Members of a customs union carry regional economic integration a step farther by adopting common external trade barriers as well as abolishing internal barriers to trade. A common market combines the characteristics of a customs union with the elimination of controls on the free movement of labor, capital, and technology among its members. An economic union adds the coordination of economic policies to the features of a common market. A political union involves complete political as well as economic integration of two or more countries.

The most important example of a regional trading bloc is the EU, a market of 508 million consumers and a combined GDP of $17.6 trillion. Spurred by the passage of the Single European Act of 1987, EU members dismantled most of the physical, technical, and fiscal trade barriers among themselves. Under the Maastricht Treaty, many EU members have adopted a common currency and are attempting to create a true economic union, an effort that goes beyond the common market originally envisioned by the 1957 Treaty of Rome.

A second but much newer regional integration effort occurred in North America. The United States, Mexico, and Canada instituted NAFTA, which went into effect in January 1994. NAFTA’s implementation signaled a commitment to tightening the economic bonds among the North American countries.

The development of regional trading blocs in Europe and North America stimulated efforts to promote regional economic integration on other continents. South America is home to the Mercosur Accord and the Andean Community. The chances of their future success have been increased by the economic reforms many South American countries have adopted, reforms that have increased the competitiveness of the countries’ products in international markets. Australia and New Zealand and the ASEAN countries have similarly created free trade areas to promote regional economic integration. Several regional economic integration agreements negotiated by various African countries have yet to show much promise.

Review Questions

10-1. What does most favored nation (MFN) mean?
10-2. Under what conditions can WTO members not use MFN when dealing with one another?
10-3. How does the WTO differ from the GATT?
10-4. What are the differences between Free Trade Agreement and Common Markets?
10-5. Why do free trade areas develop rules of origin?
10-6. What was the goal of the Treaty of Rome?
10-7. Why is the EU a unique example of regional association?
10-8. What kind of economic integration is ASEAN?
10-9. What is the Caribbean Basin Initiative? What is its goal?
10-10. What efforts have South American countries made to regionally integrate their economies?

Questions for Discussion

10-11. Consider the opening case in this chapter. How has Mexico’s success affected the Canadian and U.S. economies?
10-12. Suppose you are deciding whether to locate a factory in China or in Mexico to serve the U.S. market. What factors would influence your location decision? Suppose the price of oil suddenly rises. What impact would this have on your decision?
10-13. How does the WTO affect the operations of large MNCs? Did MNCs benefit from the successful completion of the Uruguay Round?
10-14. Discuss Free Trade Agreements in terms of trade creation and trade diversion.
10-15. What strategies can North American and Asian firms adopt to ensure access to the enormous EU market?
10-16. Is the abandonment of import substitution policies by South American governments a necessary condition for the success of the Andean Community and the Mercosur Accord?
10-17. Of what importance are rules of origin to international businesses?
10-18. Why does the MFN principle promote multilateral, rather than bilateral, negotiations among WTO members?

Building Global Skills

The United States and the EU have agreed to negotiate a new Transatlantic Free Trade Agreement (TAFTA). Advocates have lauded the initiative as creating major new market opportunities for U.S. and European businesses; opponents have criticized it as harmful to workers and farmers by subjecting them to increased competition. This exercise will help you learn more about the effects of TAFTA on various firms.

Your instructor will divide the class into groups of four to five students each. Working with your group members, identify four products made by firms in each of the two regions (United States and the EU) that would be part of TAFTA. The four products should include two that would seem to benefit from TAFTA and two that would seem to face increased threats from competitors in the other region as a result of TAFTA.
For example, identify two U.S.-made products that have considerable market potential in the EU and two U.S.-made products that would seem to face new competition from European firms. Each group should identify a total of 8 different products.

Next, work with your group members to determine and assess the appeal of each product in the TAFTA market. Investigate for each the current market share, domestic competitors, foreign competitors, and so forth. Discuss how TAFTA may potentially affect each product.

10-19. Why will TAFTA significantly affect world trade when it is finally signed?
10-20. Explain with examples the ways in which the rules of origins will be applied in TAFTA.
10-21. Do you think the effects of TAFTA on each product you selected will be consistent with what advocates or critics of TAFTA might have predicted?

As we noted in this chapter, the members of the EU have made remarkable progress in creating a common market and in promoting peace and prosperity throughout the 28-nation community. The EU, unfortunately, has hit a rough patch subsequent to the Global Recession of 2008–2009, facing some of the most vexing and contentious issues that have arisen in its six decades of existence. Some of its problems are structural in nature, others are political.

The EU faces a demographic challenge. As we noted in Chapter 1’s closing case, the population of many EU countries is shrinking and aging, elevating their old-age dependency ratios (the ratio of people of retirement age to people of working age). Because many members also have extensive social safety networks, these demographic changes suggest that taxes need to be raised on younger workers to support retired workers. Retired workers need to suffer a contraction of their standards of living, or countries need to encourage immigration. All three of these options are normally politically unpopular, and any officeholder campaigning in support of them has a high probability of becoming an ex-officeholder. As famously stated by Luxembourg’s Prime Minister, Jean Claude Juncker, “We all know what to do, we just don’t know how to get re-elected after we have done it.” A fourth alternative, of course, is to encourage higher birth rates through tax breaks and public subsidies. However, such incentives are usually small relative to the costs of raising a child and have not proven to be successful. Sweden is a notable exception. In Sweden’s case, parents of a new child receive generous parental leaves, but the program is structured to encourage both the father and the mother to use the leave. As a result, Sweden’s fertility rate is 1.94 children born per woman, in comparison to Germany’s 1.41 and Italy’s 1.40.

The second set of challenges is ideological in nature. The member states have fundamental disagreements on the role of government in the economy. The United Kingdom, particularly when controlled by Conservative governments, argues for free markets for goods and services and labor markets using employment-at-will principles. Denmark, Ireland, and the Netherlands similarly emphasize the importance of perfecting the EU’s internal market, facilitating the free flow of products, capital, and technology throughout the EU. Other countries, such as France, believe governments should actively intervene to promote economic and social justice, and that workers should be given strong job rights and protections. For instance, France’s President François Hollande threatened to nationalize automaker PSA Peugeot Citroën if the company proceeded with its plans to lay off 8,000 employees and shutter an assembly plant near Paris. Germany and Austria promote a social market system, which blends market capitalism with extensive social insurance and strong protection of union bargaining rights. Accordingly, the EU is riven by philosophical conflicts over economic policy. Should governments be able to bail out financially threatened firms to protect workers jobs… or is that a betrayal of the Treaty of Rome’s common market ideals? Should the EU adopt common policies toward maternal and paternal leave and the rights of part-time workers, or is this decision best left to the national governments? Often such issues favor one group of countries but harm the economic interests of other countries. (See, for example, the discussion of the Tobin Tax on page 310; consider the implications for London’s or Luxembourg’s competitiveness in the global financial market if the tax were adopted.) To complicate matters further, big rifts exist on the appropriate size of the EU’s budget, with wealthy countries, such as the United Kingdom, Germany, Sweden, and the Netherlands, trying to curb Brussels’ spending, whereas poorer southern, eastern, and central European countries lobby for the EU’s regional development expenditures and other subsidy programs to expand.

A third challenge is institutional in nature. The EU lacks EU-wide institutions to deal with economic crises. Consider the Global Recession of 2008–2009. The Bush and Obama administrations created programs such as the Troubled Asset Relief Program and the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act to address the crisis. The Federal Reserve Bank responded with its quantitative easing programs to assure liquidity and stimulate bank lending. Conversely, the EU had no such institutions in place. Financial assistance to governments in distress resulted from a series of contentious ad hoc negotiations among the affected governments and other EU members. The European Central Bank and the Bank of England separately developed policies for restoring liquidity and faith in European banking institutions.

10-22. Do you think the European Union meets the criteria that we suggested to be necessary for an organization to become a true international community? Why or why not?
The EU also lacks interregional stabilizers that ease economic conflicts among members. Consider what happens when states or regions of the United States confront different phases of the business cycle. Suppose Texas is booming because of high oil prices, whereas Michigan is suffering because those high oil prices are hurting demand for cars built in Michigan. As a result, unemployment is low in Texas but high in Michigan. What happens? Slowly but surely, some Michiganders will leave their homes and move to the Lone Star State. The result: unemployment falls in Michigan and rises in Texas. Will the two unemployment rates equalize? Not necessarily, but the flow of workers and families between the two states helps push their economies into sync with one another. Can the same thing happen within the EU? If Germany is booming and Greece is suffering, will Greeks move to Germany to seek employment? They can legally do so as a result of the Treaties of Rome and Maastricht, but they are likely to do so at a lesser rate than Michiganders because the cultural and linguistic barriers of moving from Greece to Germany are much higher than the cultural and linguistic barriers of moving from Michigan to Texas. A second interregional stabilizer is the tax system. If Texas is booming and Michigan is suffering, then the federal income taxes paid by Texans will rise and those paid by Michiganders will fall. Moreover, subsidies, tax breaks, unemployment insurance, and similar programs sponsored by the federal government have the effect of transferring monies from Texas to Michigan, again moving the two states to similar phases of the business cycle. Use of tax transfers as an interregional stabilizer will not work in the EU, however. German citizens are unlikely to agree to raise their own taxes to aid their Greek brethren.

The fourth challenge the EU faces revolves around governance issues. As the EU has expanded in size, the governance structure, which was designed for the six-member EEC under the 1957 Treaty of Rome, has become unwieldy. At European Council meetings, it would take more than two hours if every member of the Council spent just five minutes introducing himself or herself and briefly outlining his or her country’s position on the issue at hand. Hammering out agreements that can gain a qualified majority often consumes months, even years, of painstaking negotiations. Many proposals to streamline the EU’s governance procedures involve weakening the role of the Council of the European Union, which in turn weakens the role of the member states and strengthens the power of the Eurocrats. Many countries, led by the United Kingdom, find that resolution unacceptable.

An ancillary issue is the lack of democracy within EU institutions. The only EU officials that a citizen of an EU member state can influence decisions taken by are MEP candidates. Moreover, EU citizens have no ability to influence the selection of other powerful EU officeholders, such as the President of the European Union, the High Representative of the Union for Foreign Affairs and Security Policy, the President of the European Commission, or even the members of the European Commission.

**Case Questions**

10-22. What are the economic implications of a rising old-age dependency ratio?

10-23. Italy’s old age dependency ratio in 2012 is 0.28; by 2050, it is expected to rise to 0.68. Would you be willing to build a new factory in Italy in 2050? Will Italian teenagers in 2050 be motivated to study hard in school if they fear that their future earnings will be subject to high income taxes?

10-24. In 2012, Peugeot announced that it would shutter its factory in Aulnay-sous-Blois, costing 8,000 workers their jobs. President Hollande immediately denounced the proposed downsizing and pressured the company to change its plans and business strategy. He offered the company’s finance subsidiary €7 billion in credit guarantees if Peugeot would rethink its plant closure plans and add representatives of the workers and of the state to its board of directors. Do you agree with his actions? Are his actions consistent with France’s obligations under the Treaty of Rome to promote a common market?

10-25. Suppose the European Commission is considering an EU-wide policy mandating that workers be entitled to a one-month vacation every year. To promote a common market, is it necessary that all EU members have the same policies toward annual vacations? Or should this decision be left to the member states?

10-26. List the various ways that a citizen (or groups of citizens) of your country can influence decisions taken by your national government. List the various ways that a citizen (or a group of citizens) of an EU member state can influence decisions taken by his or her national government. Now list the ways that a citizen of an EU member state can influence decisions taken by the EU. What similarities and differences are there between your three lists?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

10-27. What are the five forms of regional economic integration? How do they differ from one another?

10-28. Discuss the history of the EU. What are the major challenges the EU has had to overcome to reach its current preeminence?

10-29. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


PART 2 CLOSING CASES

Twenty-First Century Pirates

Most economists would agree that intellectual property rights (IPR) are critical components of a well-functioning market system. They encourage inventors to develop new technologies to benefit consumers or lower production costs and motivate firms to develop products and brand names that consumers can trust. For many firms, ownership of IPR forms the basis on which they compete in world markets. Yet one of the unexpected consequences of globalization is increased levels of product piracy, which threaten the profitability and sometimes the existence of firms that have invested heavily in intellectual property. A pharmaceutical company that spends 20 percent of its revenues on R&D, for example, is at a cost disadvantage to a rival who steals its innovations and invests nothing itself in R&D.

The Business Software Alliance believes that $63 billion of software is illegally sold by pirates each year. Piracy of recorded music and illegally duplicated DVDs is estimated to cost recording studios and movie studios $18 billion a year. Counterfeit drugs yearly cost legitimate pharmaceutical manufacturers $37 billion in sales. The fake Rolex watches, Louis Vuitton luggage, Prada handbags, and other faux luxury goods peddled on the streets of Asia, Europe, and the Americas amount to additional untold billions of losses for the companies whose intellectual property has been stolen.

China appears to be the home of many of the worst offenders. A recent study by the United Nations indicated that China is the source of two-thirds of the counterfeit goods sold around the world. According to the Business Software Alliance, 77 percent of the software sold in China has been pirated, as is an estimated 85–90 percent of recorded music. Movie studios lose an estimated $280 million annually to Chinese counterfeiters. Entertainment firms have adopted a variety of approaches to try to cut their losses. Warner Brothers slashed the prices it charges in China for DVDs featuring its newest movies to $2 to $4, in hopes of reducing the street trade for illegal copies, which normally sell for $1. The company also altered the release schedules of its movies, opening them simultaneously in China and in the United States, to reduce the ability of the pirates to illegally tape movies in U.S. theaters for duplication and distribution in China. Electronic Arts, the California-based developer and marketer of video games, decided to shift its distribution strategy in China to combat pirates. Instead of distributing its games on easily copied CDs or DVDs, the California company decided to focus on online, live multiplayer games, which is already a $540 million business in China.

The problem is not limited to entertainment products. Some Chinese firms manufacture counterfeit drugs, which threaten public safety and the reputation of companies should they contain contaminants or improper dosages of their active ingredients. For instance, in 2012, Angolan officials seized 1.4 million doses of fake Coartem, an antimalarial drug developed by Novartis, that were traced to an exporter based in Guangzhou. The counterfeit product contained none of the active ingredient necessary to combat malaria, a disease that kills nearly a million people a year.

One Indiana company, Abro Industries, which sells adhesive products such as epoxies, glues, and sticky tape, did not have just its products pirated; the company seemingly was pirated as well. A Chinese company with no connection to Abro, Hunan Magic Power Industrial Company, marketed and distributed more than 40 different products bearing the Abro brand; the chief executive officer of Hunan even used business cards with Abro’s logo. Abro has spent more than $600,000 suing Hunan Magic Power and other pirates, but has been frustrated by the Chinese legal system. To date, the total penalty imposed by Chinese authorities on Hunan for its actions is a fine of $600. IKEA, Apple, Dairy Queen, and Subway have faced a different problem: local entrepreneurs have constructed their own versions of these companies’ stores, providing customer service comparable to the real stores.

This is not to say that Chinese authorities never enforce IPR. For example, the Intermediate Court of Nantong (a city near Shanghai) sentenced two men to jail terms of three and four years and fined them a total of $105,000 for shipping counterfeit versions of luxury perfumes made by LVMH Moët Hennessy Louis Vuitton. However, such sentences are rare. A report issued in 2006 by the Office of the U.S. Trade Representative noted, “In the IPR area, while China has made noticeable improvements to its framework of laws and regulations, the lack of effective IPR enforcement remains a major challenge” (p. 93). The same report went on to say, “Counterfeiting and piracy in China remain at epidemic levels and cause serious economic harm to U.S. businesses in virtually every sector of the economy” (p. 121). Most local firms who are prosecuted face minor fines in administrative courts, which they write off as a cost of doing business. The risk of serious punishment for IPR violations is small: In 2004, less than 200 trademark or copyright infringement cases investigated by Chinese officials—out of a total of more than 60,000—were forwarded to criminal courts. Many of the major violators, particularly counterfeiters of CDs and DVDs, are allegedly owned by companies linked to the state, government officials, or the military. Not surprisingly, local officials are oftentimes unwilling to aggressively prosecute firms that are so well connected politically.

The problem of counterfeit goods is not limited to China, of course. North Korea, for instance, is a primary source of counterfeit cigarettes—an estimated 2 billion
packs a year. Major tobacco companies believe that the North Korean government is earning $80 to $160 million annually in payoffs from the crime gangs that control this trade. But China has attracted the most attention for IPR violations because of its growing presence in the world economy. Some experts fear that China will not truly protect intellectual property until the issue becomes important for local firms. To this end, Microsoft, one of the largest victims of Chinese intellectual property theft, decided to help build a Chinese software industry, in hopes that local entrepreneurs would encourage the government to more aggressively attack intellectual property thieves. For example, it created a Shanghai-based joint venture, Wicresoft, which provides customer support for other Chinese software firms.

In 2006, Chinese officials once again agreed to reinvigorate their pursuit of intellectual property thieves. They pledged to increase fines for IPR violations, lower the hurdles for prosecuting IPR violations in criminal rather than civil courts, and establish new offices in 50 cities to handle IPR complaints. Another important step involves computer operating systems. Bowing to government pressure, China’s three largest manufacturers of PCs—Lenovo, Founder, and Tsinghua Tongfang—have agreed to ship their products with preinstalled operating systems. Previously, most PCs sold in China came without an operating system; consumers simply loaded a pirated copy of Windows 7 or similar product onto their computers, which they could buy from a street vendor for a dollar or two. This policy ensures that software companies such as Microsoft will be compensated for the use of their intellectual property.

**Case Questions**

P2-1. How important is intellectual property to the world economy?

P2-2. Should the average consumer concern himself or herself with theft of intellectual property? What about the average citizen? The average worker?

P2-3. Does intellectual property theft undermine the workings of the free-market system?

P2-4. What is the impact of China’s lack of aggressive enforcement of IPR on its economic development in the short run? If the long run?


**Jumbo Battle over Jumbo Jets**

Since its initial commercial flight in 1969, the Boeing 747 benefited from its status as the world’s largest commercial aircraft. Its costs per seat mile were lower than that of any other aircraft available, largely because the 747 can seat as many as 495 people. Although its low costs were attractive on transatlantic and transcontinental routes, they were of particular importance in charter, transpacific, and freighter operations. Boeing’s monopoly in the jumbo jet market gave it an advantage over Airbus in selling smaller aircraft as well. Spare parts can often be used for different models of aircraft produced by the same manufacturer, which sometimes is enough of an advantage to sway an airline to purchase a Boeing product over the comparable one manufactured by Airbus.

Airbus targeted the 747 for years. In 2000, its engineers finalized the plans for a 650-seat aircraft, the A380, which dwarfs the 747. The A380 then underwent extensive design, testing, and certification procedures. In October 2007, Singapore Airlines offered the first commercial flight of an A380, from Singapore to Sydney.

Airbus executives believe this aircraft will destroy the lucrative monopoly that the Boeing 747 held in the jumbo jet market. Airbus calculates the A380’s costs per seat mile are 17 percent less than those of the 747. However, R&D costs for the A380 are estimated to have run between $12 billion and $16 billion. To help finance these up-front costs, Airbus obtained $3.5 billion in low-cost loans—called “launch aid”—from the German, French, and British governments. (Airbus’ original investors were from France, Germany, Spain, and the United Kingdom.) Boeing officials asserted these loans to Airbus were nothing more than government subsidies and should be barred under international trade law. Moreover, Boeing believed that Airbus officials vastly overestimated the size of the market. Airbus judged the market for superjumbo jets will reach 1,500 in the next 20 years, and thus the A380 has a bright future. Boeing argued that the true market is only one-quarter to one-third of that estimate, and thus the A380 will be a financial disaster. Should Boeing be correct, it fears that the government loans to its rival will be forgiven. Worse, the A380 would then continue in production, dragging down the profitability of Boeing’s 747 operations.
The EU and the United States have fought over this issue before. The U.S. government has argued that previous European loans to Airbus have been written off as worthless, thereby providing the airframe manufacturer with illegal subsidies. For example, in early 1999 the German Finance Ministry relieved DaimlerChrysler Aerospace AG of an obligation to repay $750 million in loans to design Airbus’ A330 and A340 jets. EU officials respond that Boeing’s commercial aircraft division has benefited from hidden subsidies from the U.S. government. EU officials believe that Boeing has been able to develop new aircraft technologies by winning U.S. Defense Department contracts that are limited to U.S. firms. Having acquired that technology from its defense contracts, Boeing then can transfer the technology to its commercial aircraft operations.

A 1992 agreement between the EU and the United States led to a truce in this verbal war. That accord limited the amount of indirect subsidies the United States could grant Boeing through military contracts, while European governments were allowed to provide limited loans to Airbus for development of new aircraft. However, this agreement predates the WTO and the new obligations imposed on members of that organization (see Chapter 10’s discussion of the WTO). In 2004, U.S. officials withdrew from the 1992 accord and filed a complaint with the WTO, arguing that the A380 has indeed benefited from illegal subsidies. The EU quickly filed a counter complaint against Boeing. In 2010 the WTO ruled that the EU’s launch aid for the A380, as well as for the A300, A310, A320, A330, and A340 series of Airbus aircraft violated its rules. In total, the WTO deemed a total of some $20 billion in government loans an improper export subsidy because they offered terms to Airbus unavailable in normal commercial lending markets. In 2011, the WTO ruled that Boeing received $5.3 billion in subsidies through contracts awarded by the U.S. Department of Defense and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration. Both parties have appealed the WTO’s decisions, but most expert observers believe the United States and the EU will ultimately have to negotiate a settlement because the monies involved are so large.

Case Questions

P2-5. Why does the EU offer aid to Airbus? Why does the United States offer aid to Boeing?

P2-6. Who benefits from this aid? Who loses?

P2-7. If the U.S. government’s aid to Boeing and the EU’s aid to Airbus just cancelled each other out, would there be any winners or losers from these aid programs?

P2-8. In 2013, Delta Airlines filed a lawsuit against the Export-Import Bank of the United States, alleging that the bank’s offering low interest rates loans to foreign companies who buy Boeing aircraft hurts Delta’s competitiveness. The Air Line Pilots Association (ALPA), a union representing 47,000 pilots at 28 U.S. airlines, supported Delta’s lawsuit. What is the logic behind Delta’s lawsuit? Do you agree with Delta and ALPA?


Will Whirlpool Clean Up in Europe?

For years, international businesses looked forward to the EU’s emergence as a single, integrated market. Among these firms are ones that produce so-called white goods, or appliances such as refrigerators, dishwashers, ovens, washers, and dryers. (In the past kitchen and laundry room appliances mostly came in white, hence, the industry’s name. Consumer electronics such as radios, televisions, and stereos came in brown, so these consumer durables are called “brown goods.” Today’s widespread use of color in appliances makes these labels somewhat anachronistic.)

The emergence of a single market in Europe has changed the way white-goods manufacturers do business. Previously, they had to customize their products to meet the often conflicting requirements of the EU’s 28 national governments. Fortunately, the Single European Act promoted harmonized product standards, thus allowing the manufacturers to cut product development and production costs. Reduced barriers to intra-EU trade allow them to concentrate production in one factory that can serve markets throughout the EU. Reduced impediments to cross-border advertising make it easier to develop pan-European brands, which in turn reduce marketing and distribution costs. Elimination of physical barriers at border crossing points and of restrictions on trucking competition by national governments leads to productivity gains in logistics and physical distribution management.
One of the most aggressive firms seeking to conquer the European market is Whirlpool, one of the world’s largest white-goods manufacturers. The firm’s managers have a clearly defined view of this market:

Among the truths about the European home-appliance market, there are two whose net effect Whirlpool has a particular interest in: first, consumers in Europe spend up to twice as many days of household income for appliances as do their U.S. counterparts, creating a consumer “value gap”; second, industry profit margins in the region are traditionally much lower than those of North American manufacturers. The reason for this truth is cultural: historically, the industry was organized to do business in individual, national markets, an approach with inherent cost inefficiencies. Now, however, with barriers to pan-European business disappearing, Whirlpool believes that it can use its unique regional position to deliver greater home-appliance value to customers and, in turn, establish a competitive advantage for itself. A strategy to do so suggests that the opportunity to eliminate costs which do not add to consumers’ perceptions of value—and invest some of the savings into product and service characteristics that do add perceived value—will be substantial.15

For the past decade Whirlpool’s managers have been attacking the European white-goods market by translating these words into concrete actions. One key element of the firm’s strategy was the purchase of the appliance business of Philips Industries, the large Netherlands-based MNC; this gave Whirlpool control over Philips’ European white-goods production facilities and distribution systems. Whirlpool has also sought many other operating and marketing economies:

• It produces and markets three well-established pan-European brands: Bauknecht, a premium upscale product; Whirlpool, for the broad middle segment of the white-goods market; and Ignis, its low-price “value” brand aimed at price-sensitive consumers. This comprehensive product strategy allows Whirlpool to fully utilize its European production facilities and distribution systems and market its goods to Europeans at all income levels.
• It consolidated 13 separate national sales offices for these three product lines into five regional operations to cut costs, coordinate pan-European promotional campaigns, and enhance the productivity of its sales force.
• It centralized Whirlpool Europe’s logistics, information technology, and consumer services operations to ease the task of warehousing products and distributing them throughout the EU.

• It has redeployed its manufacturing capacity to take advantage of the elimination of national trade barriers. For example, it concentrates its production of refrigerators for its European customers in Trento, Italy, and that of automatic washers in Schondorf, Germany, thus allowing it to achieve significant manufacturing economies of scale. Similarly, its factory in Wroclaw, Poland—completed in 2005—produces cook top and oven appliances for the entire European market.
• It has encouraged technology transfer between its European and North American operations, a task made easier by the centralization of its European operations. For example, Whirlpool Europe now produces a line of clothes dryers that features easier loading and unloading and gentler treatment of clothes, features first developed by Whirlpool’s division in Marion, Ohio. Conversely, European engineers are helping Whirlpool’s U.S. engineers adapt energy-efficient, horizontal-axis washing machines (which are common in Europe) for the North American market to meet federal energy-efficiency standards.

Whirlpool is targeting two important segments of the European market: the emerging markets of Central and Eastern Europe, dominated by price-sensitive customers, and the richer countries of Western Europe, whose residents are willing to pay premium prices for premium products. To implement its European strategy, Whirlpool spent $3 billion to expand its manufacturing and distribution capabilities. In addition to upgrading and modernizing its European factories, Whirlpool also made strategic acquisitions. For example, Whirlpool acquired Polar SA, a Polish appliance manufacturer, which offers a low-cost production platform that can serve the entire EU market. In 2007, it introduced its upscale Kitchen Aid line of appliances to the European market to increase its share of this high-margin, fast-growing market segment.

Of course, Whirlpool’s EU competitors have not stood still while Whirlpool has invaded their home markets. Germany’s Bosch Siemens Hausgeräte, for example, has poured money into R&D to maintain the innovativeness of its appliances. It has dramatically increased the efficiency of its dishwashers, reducing their energy usage by 62 percent and their water usage by 34 percent compared to the machines it made two decades ago. It has also spent $350 million automating its production facilities in Germany and built new factories in Poland, Spain, and the Czech Republic to reduce its dependence on high-cost German labor. Sweden’s Electrolux purchased the appliance business of AEG Hausgeräte from Daimler AG. Already controlling a 20 to 25 percent market share in Europe, Electrolux increased its market share by about 6 percentage points through this acquisition. Electrolux is also aggressively
moving to control its costs by closing 25 factories and reducing its payrolls by 12,000.

Despite this intensified competition, Whirlpool remains optimistic that its European strategy will be successful. It has already established itself as the number-three white-goods manufacturer in Europe. In 2012, Europe generated $2.8 billion in revenue for Whirlpool, or 16 percent of its global sales revenue of $18.1 billion. And new product innovations, coupled with the increased penetration of the Whirlpool brand, have increased the company’s market share and raised its profit margins in Europe.

Case Questions

P2-9. What are the advantages of consolidating production of product lines at single factories in the EU? What are the disadvantages?

P2-10. Should Whirlpool continue to produce and market in Europe its three product lines (Bauknecht, Whirlpool, and Ignis), which span the entire white-goods market, or should it focus on one market niche?

P2-11. What benefits will Whirlpool gain by broadening the Whirlpool brand name from a North American brand to a global one?

P2-12. In light of the aggressive responses of Electrolux and Bosch Siemens Hausgeräte, should Whirlpool revise or abandon its European strategy?

P2-13. Do you think it is possible to design and sell the same basic appliance around the world?

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:
1. Characterize the challenges of international strategic management.
2. Assess the basic strategic alternatives available to firms.
3. Distinguish and analyze the components of international strategy.
4. Describe the international strategic management process.
5. Identify and characterize the levels of international strategies.

MyManagementLab®

!* Improve Your Grade!*

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs.
Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
GLOBAL MICKEY

Mickey Mouse is every bit as popular around the globe as Coca-Cola’s soft drinks and McDonald’s burgers. But the Walt Disney Company has done a surprisingly poor job of capitalizing on the global potential for its various products. In 2012, for instance, 75 percent of Disney’s $42.3 billion in revenues came from the United States and Canada, which account for only 5 percent of the world’s population. This contrasts markedly with Coca-Cola and McDonald’s, which each derive about two-thirds of their revenue from outside the United States.

Perhaps Disney’s most public effort at internationalization has been its theme park operations. Its first theme park, Disneyland, opened in Anaheim, California, in 1955 and was soon generating huge profits. The 1971 debut of the firm’s next major theme park development, Florida’s Walt Disney World, was also a major success. Given the enormous popularity of Disney characters abroad, the firm saw opportunities to expand theme park operations to foreign markets. Its first international venture, Tokyo Disneyland, opened in 1983. The Japanese have long been Disney fans, and many Japanese tourists visit Disneyland and Disney World each year. To limit its risk, though, the firm did not invest directly in the park—a decision Disney managers would eventually come to regret. Instead, a Japanese investment group called the Oriental Land Company financed and entirely owns Tokyo Disneyland. Disney oversaw the park’s construction and manages it but receives only royalty income from it. Tokyo Disneyland has been an enormous success from the day it opened its gates: It greeted its 100 millionth visitor after only eight years, a milestone that Disneyland took twice as long to reach. And Tokyo Disneyland remains one of Japan’s top tourist attractions.

The success of Tokyo Disneyland inspired the firm to seek other foreign market opportunities. After evaluating potential sites throughout Europe, the firm narrowed its choice to one in France just outside Paris. This time, though, Disney decided to participate more fully in both the park’s ownership and its profits. Although the French government decreed that Disney’s ownership in the new venture would be limited to no more than 49 percent (with the remaining 51 percent made available for trade on European stock exchanges), Disney eagerly accepted this ownership structure. The French government’s offer of numerous economic incentives also played a role in Disney’s decision. The government sold the land for the park to Disney at bargain-basement prices and agreed to extend the Parisian rail system to the proposed park’s front door. But as Euro Disney took shape, storm clouds loomed. Farmers protested the manner in which the French government condemned their land so that it could be sold to Disney. The cultural elite in Paris lambasted the project as an affront to French cultural traditions. Disney found itself defending its conservative employee dress codes, regimented training practices, and plans to ban alcohol from park facilities. Finally, a recession swept through Europe in 1992 just as the park was opening, forcing Disney to drop its plan to reduce its debt by selling land it owned near the park to local developers.

Disney did learn some things from its start-up problems in Europe. When the Disney Studios theme park adjacent to Disneyland Paris premiered in 2002, Disney made some small but significant changes in its operations. The voices of European actors such as Jeremy Irons, Nastassja Kinski, and Isabella Rossellini were featured on Disney Studios’ tram rides, rather than those of U.S. actors like Bruce Willis. Disneyland Paris originally offered only French sausages, upsetting German, Italian, and British visitors who preferred those of their own country. Disney Studios Paris’ food outlets, however, offer a broader array of sausages. The setting of the park’s featured stunt show is modeled after St. Tropez, rather than a Hollywood back lot. Small matters, perhaps, but such details are designed to make visitors to the theme park feel more at home.

In 2005, Disney’s next major international foray came to fruition when Disneyland Hong Kong made its debut. Opening-day festivities included a traditional parade comprising mainly Disney characters coupled with a few local touches—fireworks, Chinese lion dancers, and clanging cymbals. The company received a 43 percent equity stake in the $3.6 billion project in exchange for an investment of only $314 million. The local government, in turn, invested more than $2.9 billion in low-interest loans, land, and infrastructure improvements for the remaining 57-percent share. Disney was careful to incorporate feng shui concepts into the design of the Hong Kong park.

But as in Europe, Disney had to go back to the drawing boards and revise its approach to running Disneyland Hong Kong because attendance and spending fell below the company’s projections. Disney had again failed to understand its market. The Chinese were less familiar with many Disney characters and classic attractions than the company expected, and many visitors felt the park was too “foreign” for their tastes. To compensate, Disney systematically reduced the presence of some of its traditional characters and replaced them with more Chinese figures such as Cai Shen Ye, the bearded Chinese god of wealth. It also changed the costuming of mainline favorites such as Mickey and Minnie Mouse, putting the venerable characters into red Chinese New Year garb. And the iconic daily Disney parade has been changed to include such traditional Chinese favorites as dragons and puppets of birds, fish, and flowers. These efforts have worked; in 2011, Disney began a multiyear expansion of the Hong Kong park. The first addition was Toy Story Land, featuring Buzz Lightyear, Woody, and friends.

Disney is nothing if not persistent. In addition to tinkering with Disneyland Hong Kong, the company established a branch office in Shanghai to coordinate its efforts in the 1.3-billion customer market. The Disney Channel and Disney cartoons are now broadcast throughout China, and “Disney Corners” featuring Disney-branded merchandise are available in more than 1,800 department stores in China. Disney operates 15 learning centers.
To survive in today’s global marketplace, firms must be able to quickly exploit opportunities presented to them anywhere in the world and respond to changes in domestic and foreign markets as they arise. This requires a cogent definition of the firm’s corporate mission, a vision for achieving that mission, and an unambiguous understanding of how the company intends to compete with other firms. To obtain this understanding, firms must carefully compare their strengths and weaknesses to those of their worldwide competitors; assess likely political, economic, and social changes among their current and prospective customers; and analyze the impact of new technologies on their ways of doing business.

Disney’s decisions to build Tokyo Disneyland, Disneyland Paris, Disney Studios Paris, and Hong Kong Disneyland are consistent with its strategy to be a global entertainment firm. So, too, are its efforts to increase worldwide licensing of its characters and expand its audience for the Disney Channel to other countries. But the firm stumbled badly in its initial efforts with Disneyland Paris and knows its competitors will continue to fight for market share. European vacationers can enjoy other amusement parks, such as Denmark’s Legoland or France’s Parc Asterix. Mickey Mouse lunchboxes compete for the attention of the world’s schoolchildren with those featuring England’s Paddington Bear, France’s Babar the Elephant, Japan’s Hello Kitty, and Belgium’s Smurfs. And Time Warner’s Cartoon Network has been outperforming the mouse for years. Thus, Disney’s top managers know that they are in a continuous battle for the entertainment dollars (and euros, yen, and pounds) of the world’s consumers and that it is up to them to deploy the firm’s resources to achieve desired levels of profitability, growth, and market share.

The Challenges of International Strategic Management

Disney’s managers, like those of other international businesses, use strategic management to address these challenges. More specifically, international strategic management is a comprehensive and ongoing management planning process aimed at formulating and implementing strategies that enable a firm to compete effectively internationally. The process of developing a particular international strategy is often referred to as strategic planning. Strategic planning is usually the responsibility of top-level executives at corporate headquarters and senior managers...
in domestic and foreign operating subsidiaries. Most large firms also have a permanent planning staff to provide technical assistance for top managers as they develop strategies. Disney’s planning staff, for example, gathered demographic and economic data that the firm’s decision makers used to select the sites for its domestic and international theme parks.

International strategic management results in the development of various international strategies, which are comprehensive frameworks for achieving a firm’s fundamental goals. Conceptually, there are many similarities between developing a strategy for competing in a single country and developing one for competing in multiple countries. In both cases, the firm’s strategic planners must answer the same fundamental questions:

- What products or services does the firm intend to sell?
- Where and how will it make those products or services?
- Where and how will it sell them?
- Where and how will it acquire the necessary resources?
- How does it expect to outperform its competitors?²

But developing an international strategy is far more complex than developing a domestic one.³ Managers developing a strategy for a domestic firm must deal with one national government, one currency, one accounting system, one political and legal system, and, usually, a single language and a comparatively homogeneous culture. But managers responsible for developing a strategy for an international firm must understand and deal with multiple governments, multiple currencies, multiple accounting systems, multiple political systems, multiple legal systems, and a variety of languages and cultures.

Moreover, managers in an international business must also coordinate the implementation of their firm’s strategy among business units located in different parts of the world with different time zones, different cultural contexts, and different economic conditions, as well as monitoring and controlling their performance. But managers usually consider these complexities acceptable trade-offs for the additional opportunities that come with global expansion. Indeed, international businesses have the ability to exploit three sources of competitive advantage unavailable to domestic firms.

- **Global efficiencies.** International firms can improve their efficiency through several means not available to domestic firms. They can capture location efficiencies by locating their facilities anywhere in the world that yields them the lowest production or distribution costs or that best improves the quality of service they offer their customers. Production of athletic shoes, for example, is labor intensive, and Nike, like many of its competitors, centers its manufacturing in countries where labor costs are especially low.⁴ Similarly, by building factories to serve more than one country, international firms may also lower their production costs by capturing economies of scale. For example, rather than splitting production of its first SUV among several factories, Mercedes-Benz decided to initially produce this vehicle only at its Alabama assembly plant to benefit from economies of scale in production.⁵ Finally, by broadening their product lines in each of the countries they enter, international firms may enjoy economies of scope, lowering their production and marketing costs and enhancing their bottom lines.

- **Multinational flexibility.** As we discussed in Chapters 3 and 4, there are wide variations in the political, economic, legal, and cultural environments of countries. Moreover, these environments are constantly changing: New laws are passed, new governments are elected, economic policies are changed, and new competitors may enter (or leave) the national market. International businesses thus face the challenge of responding to these multiple diverse and changing environments. But unlike domestic firms, which operate in and respond to changes in the context of a single domestic environment, international businesses may also respond to a change in one country by implementing a change in another country. Chicken processor Tyson Foods, for example, has benefited from the increased demand by health-conscious U.S. consumers for chicken breasts. In producing more chicken breasts,
Tyson also produced more chicken legs and thighs, which are considered less desirable by U.S. consumers. Tyson capitalized on its surplus by targeting the Russian market, where dark meat is preferred over light, and the Chinese market, where chicken feet are considered a tasty delicacy. Tyson exports nearly $700 million worth of chicken legs and thighs to Russia and chicken feet to China. In a variety of ways similar to this, international businesses are better able than purely domestic firms to exploit and respond to changes and differences in their operating environments.

- **Worldwide learning.** The diverse operating environments of multinational corporations (MNCs) may also contribute to organizational learning. Differences in these operating environments may cause the firm to operate differently in one country than another. An astute firm may learn from these differences and transfer this learning to its operations in other countries. For example, McDonald’s U.S. managers believed that its restaurants should be freestanding entities located in suburbs and small towns. A Japanese franchisee convinced McDonald’s to allow it to open a restaurant in an inner-city office building. That restaurant’s success caused McDonald’s executives to rethink their store location criteria. Nontraditional locations—office buildings, Walmart superstores, food courts, and airports—are now an important source of new growth for the firm. “Emerging Opportunities” provides another example of the benefits of worldwide learning.

Unfortunately, it is difficult to exploit these three factors simultaneously. Global efficiencies can be more easily obtained when a single unit of a firm is given worldwide responsibility for the task at hand. BMW’s engineering staff at headquarters in Munich, for example, is responsible for the research and development of the company’s new automobiles. By focusing its R&D efforts at one location, BMW engineers designing new transmissions are better able to coordinate their activities with their counterparts designing new engines. However, centralizing control of its R&D operations also hinders the firm’s ability to customize its product to meet the differing needs of customers in different countries. Consider the simple question of whether to include cup holders in its cars. In designing cars to be driven safely at the prevailing high speeds of Germany’s autobahn, the company’s engineers initially decided that cup holders were both irrelevant and dangerous. Driving speeds in the United States, however, are much lower, and cup holders are an important comfort feature in autos sold to U.S. consumers. Lengthy battles were fought between BMW’s German engineers and its U.S. marketing managers over this seemingly trivial issue. Only after a decade of argument did cup holders finally become a standard feature in the firm’s automobiles sold in North America. And even then, in some BMW models the cup holders were placed in front of the air conditioner vents, making it harder to keep beverages at their desired temperature.

As this example illustrates, if too much power is centralized in one unit of the firm, it may ignore the needs of consumers in other markets. Conversely, multinational flexibility is enhanced when firms delegate responsibility to the managers of local subsidiaries. Vesting power in local managers allows each subsidiary to tailor its products, personnel policies, marketing techniques, and other business practices to meet the specific needs and wants of potential customers in each market the firm serves. However, this increased flexibility will reduce the firm’s ability to obtain global efficiencies in such areas as production, marketing, and R&D.

Furthermore, the unbridled pursuit of global efficiencies or multinational flexibility may stifle the firm’s attempts to promote worldwide learning. Centralizing power in a single unit of the firm to capture global efficiencies may cause it to ignore lessons and information acquired by other units of the firm. Moreover, these other units may have little incentive or ability to acquire such information if they know that the “experts” at headquarters will ignore them. Decentralizing power in the hands of local subsidiary managers may create similar problems. A decentralized structure may make it difficult to transfer learning from one subsidiary to another. Local subsidiaries may be disposed to reject any outside information out of hand as not being germane to the local situation. Firms wishing to promote worldwide learning must utilize an organizational structure that promotes knowledge transfer among its subsidiaries and corporate headquarters. They must also create incentive structures that motivate managers at headquarters and in subsidiaries to acquire, disseminate, and act on worldwide learning opportunities.
EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES

HOW DOES A JAPANESE FIRM COMPETE IN CHINA? … ACT MORE AMERICAN

Although Toyota claims the title of being the world’s largest car manufacturer, it initially struggled in the Chinese market, the fastest-growing auto market in the world. In 2005, it sold a mere 183,000 cars there, ranking ninth in the market, far behind Volkswagen, General Motors, Hyundai, and Honda. And its performance fell well short of its ambitions. Toyota’s goal was to sell one million cars a year in China. Part of Toyota’s problem is that it was a late entrant. It delayed producing cars in China until 2002, when it entered into a joint venture with a local company, the First Auto Works Group (FAW). The first car manufactured by Toyota-FAW, the Vios, failed to attract much of a market, for, despite its unremarkable design, it was three times as expensive as most cars sold in China.

Toyota’s real difficulty was not its slow start or poor product positioning, however. Rather, Toyota assumed the Chinese market would be similar to the Japanese market. It soon learned, the hard way, that the Chinese market more closely resembled the U.S. market.

Sales personnel in Japan are paid a salary and succeed by slowly building a base of loyal clientele by providing first-class service to them. Similarly, most Japanese auto dealers sell but a single brand, thereby ensuring their loyalty to it. Japan is a relatively small country with an ethnically homogeneous population. Accordingly, Toyota used nationwide advertising to market its products in its home country.

Such is not the case in China. Salespersons live off their commissions, and most dealers sell numerous brands. Thus, loyalty plays little role in motivating either the sales staff or the dealers, who will ignore a slow-selling product should a more profitable one turn up. And China is a large, diverse country. For instance, an advertising campaign depicting the ruggedness of a Toyota SUV in conquering the harrowing terrain of inland China did little to spur sales in the populous, prosperous cities of the south.

To remedy its failures in the Chinese market, Toyota transferred Yoshi Inaba, a 38-year company veteran who had overseen the company’s recent success in the United States. Inaba then recruited two senior U.S. marketing executives who had worked for him in California to do the same in China. Their first task was to establish 32 FAW-Toyota regional dealership associations. In the U.S. market, such associations develop cooperative advertising campaigns customized for their local markets. The new team also revamped its annual dealer meetings, shifting from the staid approach used in Japan to the more rah-rah, inspirational approach used in the United States to build enthusiasm for the Toyota brand. It also revamped Toyota’s approach to allocating cars among its Chinese dealers, adopting the “turn and earn” system used in the United States: Dealers who sell (or turn) more cars earn favorable access to additional cars, particularly the hot-selling models. In this way, Toyota both rewards and motivates its dealers to focus their efforts on selling Toyotas rather than other vehicle brands.

Competition in the Chinese market is fierce, but transferring lessons learned in the U.S. market to its operations in China appears to have been successful. Toyota sold nearly 900,000 vehicles there in 2011—a bit short of its ambitious million car goal, but a significant improvement from its 2005 sales. However, while adopting U.S. approaches to doing business in China, Toyota is still a Japanese company in the eyes of Chinese consumers. Accordingly, the company’s sales in China fell in 2012 as a result of boycotts of Japanese products by Chinese consumers, angry at the Japanese government’s claim of sovereignty over the Senkaku/Diaoyu islands (see Chapter 3’s closing case, “Tiny Islands, Big Trouble.”)


For example, in the late 1990s Procter and Gamble (P&G) executives grew increasingly concerned that their organizational structure, which was organized along geographic lines, was hindering the ability of the firm to transfer hard-won knowledge in one region to other areas of the world. P&G underwent a drastic organizational restructuring, creating a complex matrix structure that shifted more power to product line managers while retaining the local expertise of regional managers. The process was neither easy nor quick. In fact, the chief executive officer (CEO) who initiated the restructuring was fired after 18 months on the job. His successor was more successful in implementing the change, which has allowed P&G to transfer products, such as the Swiffer Sweeper or the upscale SK-II skin care cleansing system developed by its Japanese subsidiaries, throughout the globe more quickly and profitably.9

General Electric (GE) adopted a different approach to facilitate learning transfer among its units. It established 12 management councils, composed of senior executives from different subsidiaries. At the quarterly meetings of these councils, each member must present a new idea that other subsidiaries can use in their businesses as well. In this way, hard-earned knowledge of new techniques or market opportunities can be quickly spread throughout GE’s operations.
Strategic Alternatives

MNCs typically adopt one of four strategic alternatives in their attempt to balance the three goals of global efficiencies, multinational flexibility, and worldwide learning. These opportunities are not available to purely domestic firms. It is difficult to create an organizational structure that allows a firm to capture all three of these advantages, however.

For further consideration: Which of these three advantages is most important? Is the answer the same for every firm?

SK-II was developed by P&G’s Japanese subsidiary after a local scientist noticed the soft and youthful skin of women working in a sake brewery. Its expansion into other markets, including Asia, the United States, and the United Kingdom, was accelerated by an organizational restructuring designed to facilitate the transfer of new products and new technologies from one region to another.

In Practice

International businesses can benefit from global efficiencies, multinational flexibility, and worldwide learning. These opportunities are not available to purely domestic firms. It is difficult to create an organizational structure that allows a firm to capture all three of these advantages, however.

For further consideration: Which of these three advantages is most important? Is the answer the same for every firm?

MNCs typically adopt one of four strategic alternatives in their attempt to balance the three goals of global efficiencies, multinational flexibility, and worldwide learning.

The first of these strategic alternatives is the home replication strategy. In this approach, a firm uses the core competency or firm-specific advantage it developed at home as its main competitive weapon in the foreign markets that it enters. That is, it takes what it does exceptionally well in its home market and attempts to duplicate it in foreign markets. Mercedes-Benz’s home replication strategy, for example, relies on its well-known brand name and its reputation for building well-engineered, luxurious cars capable of traveling safely at high speeds. It is this market segment that Mercedes-Benz has chosen to exploit internationally, despite the fact that only a few countries have both the high income levels and the high speed limits appropriate for its products. Yet consumers in Asia, the rest of Europe, and the Americas, attracted by the car’s mystique, eagerly buy it, knowing that they too could drive their new car 150 miles per hour, if only the local police would let them.

The multidomestic strategy is a second alternative available to international firms. A multidomestic corporation views itself as a collection of relatively independent operating subsidiaries, each of which focuses on a specific domestic market. In addition, each of these subsidiaries is free to customize its products, its marketing campaigns, and its operational techniques to best meet the needs of its local customers. The multidomestic approach is particularly effective when there are clear differences among national markets; when economies of scale for production, distribution, and marketing are low; and when the cost
of coordination between the parent corporation and its various foreign subsidiaries is high. Because each subsidiary in a multidomestic corporation must be responsive to the local market, the parent company usually delegates considerable power and authority to managers of its subsidiaries in various host countries. MNCs operating in the years prior to World War II often adopted this approach because of difficulties of controlling distant foreign subsidiaries given the communication and transportation technologies of those times.

The **global strategy** is the third alternative philosophy available for international firms. A global corporation views the world as a single marketplace and has as its primary goal the creation of standardized goods and services that will address the needs of customers worldwide. The global strategy is almost the exact opposite of the multidomestic strategy. Whereas the multidomestic firm believes that its customers in every country are fundamentally different and must be approached from that perspective, a global corporation assumes that customers are fundamentally the same regardless of their nationalities. Thus, the global corporation views the world market as a single entity as it develops, produces, and sells its products. It tries to capture economies of scale in production and marketing by concentrating its production activities in a handful of highly efficient factories and then creating global advertising and marketing campaigns to sell those goods. Because the global corporation must coordinate its worldwide production and marketing strategies, it usually concentrates power and decision-making responsibility at a central headquarters location.

The home replication strategy and the global strategy share an important similarity: Under either approach, a firm conducts business the same way anywhere in the world. There is also an important difference between the two approaches, however. A firm using the home replication strategy takes its domestic way of doing business and uses that approach in foreign markets as well. In essence, a firm using this strategy believes that if its business practices work in its domestic market, then they should also work in foreign markets. Conversely, the starting point for a firm adopting a global strategy has no such home-country bias. In fact, the concept of a home market is irrelevant because the global firm thinks of its market as a global one, not one divided into domestic and foreign segments. The global firm tries to figure out the best way to serve all of its customers in the global market, and then does so.

A fourth approach available to international firms is the **transnational strategy**. The transnational corporation attempts to combine the benefits of global scale efficiencies, such as those pursued by a global corporation, with the benefits and advantages of local responsiveness, which is the goal of a multidomestic corporation. To do so, the transnational corporation does not automatically centralize or decentralize authority. Rather, it carefully assigns responsibility for various organizational tasks to that unit of the organization best able to achieve the dual goals of efficiency and flexibility.

A transnational corporation may choose to centralize certain management functions and decision making, such as R&D and financial operations, at corporate headquarters. Other management functions, such as human resource management and marketing, however, may be decentralized, allowing managers of local subsidiaries to customize their business activities to better respond to the local culture and business environment. Often transnational corporations locate responsibility for one product line in one country and responsibility for a second product line in another. To achieve an interdependent network of operations, transnational corporations focus considerable attention on integration and coordination among their various subsidiaries. “Venturing Abroad” discusses how IKEA has tried to capture the benefits of global scale efficiencies while remaining responsive to local conditions.

Figure 11.1 assesses these four strategic approaches against two criteria, the need for local responsiveness and the need to achieve global integration. Firms must pay particular attention to local conditions when consumer tastes or preferences vary widely across countries, when large differences exist in local laws, economic conditions, and infrastructure, or when host-country governments play a major role in the particular industry. Pressures for global integration arise when the firm is selling a standardized commodity with little ability to differentiate its products through features or quality, such as agricultural goods, bulk chemicals, ores, and low-end semiconductor chips. If trade barriers and transportation costs are low, such firms must strive to produce their goods at the lowest possible cost. Conversely, if the product features desired by consumers vary by country or if firms are able to differentiate their products through brand names, after-sales support services, and quality differences, the pressures for global integration are lessened.
IKEA has developed a peculiarly Scandinavian culture, with emphasis on restraint and fairness, which it calls “democratic design.” This slogan applies to products and also to organizational and task design. Bill Agee, a U.S. employee who transferred to IKEA’s Swedish headquarters, says, “It’s a little religious or missionary in a sense, but it’s who we are.” Within the firm, private offices are rare and everyone is on a first-name basis. The no-frills facilities keep the sense, but it’s who we are.” Within the firm, private offices are rare and everyone is on a first-name basis. The no-frills facilities keep the

The home replication strategy is often adopted by firms when both the pressures for global integration and the need for local responsiveness are low, as the lower left-hand cell in Figure 11.1 shows. Toys “R” Us, for example, has adopted this approach to internationalizing its operations. It continues to use the marketing, procurement, and distribution techniques developed in its U.S. retail outlets in its foreign stores as well. The company’s managers believe that the firm’s path to success internationally is the same as it was domestically: build large, warehouse-like stores; buy in volume; cut prices; and take market share from smaller, high-cost toy retailers. Accordingly, they see little reason to adjust the firm’s basic domestic strategy as they enter new international markets.

**VENTURING ABROAD**

**MASTER OF THE FURNITURE UNIVERSE**

In 1943, when he was 17, Ingvar Kamprad established a mail-order company selling assorted merchandise. A few years later, he added furniture to his product line but soon chose to design his own furniture products. IKEA developed the idea of shipping disassembled furniture to allow the use of less-expensive flat packaging. The firm opened Europe’s first warehouse store in the small Swedish village of Älmhult in 1958. From these innovations, the pioneering retail firm has grown to encompass 298 stores in 26 countries.

The firm’s products are known for their combination of Swedish-modern style, practicality, and affordability. Sofas, for example, cost as little as $200 and are covered with washable, durable canvas. IKEA deliberately engages in social engineering, believing that better and lower-cost design can transform the lives of the average person. Peter Fiell, author of *Industrial Design A–Z*, claims that the retailer’s philosophy is about “how to get the most quality to the greatest number of people for the least money.” He adds, “That’s the nucleus of modernism. It’s inherently optimistic.”

IKEA has developed a peculiarly Scandinavian culture, with emphasis on restraint and fairness, which it calls “democratic design.” This slogan applies to products and also to organizational and task design. Bill Agee, a U.S. employee who transferred to IKEA’s Swedish headquarters, says, “It’s a little religious or missionary in a sense, but it’s who we are.” Within the firm, private offices are rare and everyone is on a first-name basis. The no-frills facilities keep the

emphasis on the downscale customers, who are referred to as "people with thin wallets." Josephine Rydberg-Dumont, the firm’s managing director, speaks with evangelical fervor. "We’re ready for modernism now," she says. "When it first came, it was for the few. Now it’s for the many.”

To cope with the needs of diverse customers around the world, IKEA relies on standardization, with global production and distribution. Customers in Russia, Malaysia, and the United States buy the same linens and cupboards. Customers walk through the identical warehouses along the same predetermined pathway. IKEA encourages ongoing consumption of “throw-away” furniture, long considered a durable good. Christian Mathieu, the firm’s North American marketing manager, says of the traditional attitude, “Americans change their spouse as often as their dining-room table, about 1.5 times in a lifetime.” To change that mind-set, IKEA launched an ad campaign called *Umbörring*, featuring a discarded lamp sitting out in the rain. The spokesman says, “Many of you feel bad for this lamp. That is because you are crazy.” Rydberg-Dumont concurs, saying, “You value things that don’t bog you down, that are easy to take care of.” The message is, you can and should update your home as often as you update your wardrobe.

IKEA made some mistakes in its early globalization efforts, not surprising for a firm whose 212 million catalogs are printed in 17 languages. In the United States, for example, beds didn’t match standard sheet sizes. Another flop was the six-ounce drinking glass that
was far too small for U.S. preferences. Kent Nordin, a former IKEA manager, says, “People told us they were drinking out of our vases.” Bedroom dressers contained numerous small drawers, a popular European feature, but they couldn’t hold Americans’ bulky sweaters. Storage units were not sized to hold standard coat hangers. Ultimately, top executives realized that telling U.S. buyers to use smaller coat hangers wouldn’t work. Today, IKEA has adapted its products to local tastes. The firm is one of the top furnishings retailers in the United States, and 1 in 10 U.S. homes have at least one IKEA item.

In its newest venture, IKEA has expanded into designing and building entire communities of apartments that are furnished with IKEA products, down to the kitchen gadgets and the bath towels. They are able to provide housing that is 25 percent less expensive than comparable units. The firm’s tendency toward social engineering informs every aspect of the design, from the community gardens to the cooperative governance. Many praise the developments, but some feel the concept will not work outside of Sweden. “The idea of building an ideal little street is quite laudable,” says Ruth Eaton, author of Ideal Cities: Utopianism and the (Un)Built Environment. “But you can’t put the same thing everywhere. That’s where utopias go wrong…. You can’t take over the world, because conditions are too different, calling for different solutions. Yes for Stockholm, no for Timbuktu.”

The retailer may master the furniture industry, but it’s not clear whether those skills will translate into a flair for suburban development. IKEA still has a long way to go before realizing its vision of complete world domination in design for the home, but, with €27.6 billion in 2012 sales, it’s obviously well on its way.


The multidomestic approach is often used when the need to respond to local conditions is high, but the pressures for global integration are low. Many companies selling brand-name food products have adopted this approach. Although not unmindful of the benefits of reducing manufacturing costs, such marketing-driven companies as Kraft, Unilever, and Nestlé are more concerned with meeting the specific needs of local customers, thereby ensuring that these customers will continue to pay a premium price for the brand-name goods these companies sell. Moreover, they often rely on local production facilities to ensure that local consumers will readily find fresh, high-quality products on their supermarket shelves.

The global strategy is most appropriate when the pressures for global integration are high but the need for local responsiveness is low. In such cases, the firm can focus on creating standardized goods, marketing campaigns, distribution systems, and so forth. This strategy has been adopted by many Japanese consumer electronics firms such as Sony and Matsushita, which design their products with global markets in mind. Aside from minor adaptations for differences in local electrical systems and recording formats, these firms’ digital cameras, TVs, smartphones, and Blu-ray players are sold to consumers throughout the world with little need for customization. Thus, these firms are free to seek global efficiencies by capturing economies of scale in manufacturing and concentrating their production in countries offering low-cost manufacturing facilities.

The transnational strategy is most appropriate when pressures for global integration and local responsiveness are both high. The Ford Motor Company has been attempting to employ this strategy. For example, Ford now has a single manager responsible for global engine and transmission development. Other managers have similar responsibilities for product design and development, production, and marketing. But each manager is also responsible for ensuring that Ford products are tailored to meet local consumer tastes and preferences. For instance, Ford products sold in the United Kingdom must have their steering wheels mounted on the right side of the passenger compartment. Body styles may also need to be slightly altered in different markets to be more appealing to local customer tastes.

Not addressed to this point has been the issue of worldwide learning. Worldwide learning requires the transfer of information and experiences from the parent to each subsidiary, from each subsidiary to the parent, and among subsidiaries. The home replication, multidomestic, and global strategies are not explicitly designed, however, to accomplish such learning transfer. The home replication strategy is predicated on the parent company’s transferring the firm’s core competencies to its foreign subsidiaries. The multidomestic strategy decentralizes power to the local subsidiaries so that they can respond easily to local conditions. The global strategy centralizes decision making so that the firm can achieve global integration of its activities.
The transnational strategy would appear to be better able to promote global learning with its mix of centralization of certain functions and decentralization of others—a primary reason for adopting the transnational strategy in the first place. Transnational corporations use such techniques as matrix organizational designs, project teams, informal management networks, and corporate cultures to help promote transfer of knowledge among their subsidiaries. Such approaches to promoting worldwide learning are also available to firms adopting the home replication, multidomestic, and global approaches as well. However, such firms need to exert a systematic effort to successfully make use of these techniques.

**In Practice**

- Firms can choose from four basic approaches to competing internationally: home replication, multidomestic, global, and transnational.
- In each of these approaches, firms must weigh how important capturing global efficiencies and responding to local differences is in their ability to compete successfully in the international market under consideration.

*For further consideration:* Pick three or four international companies with which you are familiar. Which cell of Figure 11.1 would you put them in? Why do you think that they have adopted this approach?

## Components of an International Strategy

After determining the overall international strategic philosophy of their firm, managers who engage in international strategic planning then need to address the four basic components of strategy development. These components are distinctive competence, scope of operations, resource deployment, and synergy.

### Distinctive Competence

Distinctive competence, the first component of international strategy, answers the question: “What do we do exceptionally well, especially as compared to our competitors?” A firm’s distinctive competence may be cutting-edge technology, efficient distribution networks, superior organizational practices, or well-respected brand names. As our discussion of Dunning’s eclectic theory in Chapter 6 suggested, a firm’s possession of a distinctive competence (what Dunning called an ownership advantage) is thought by many experts to be a necessary condition for a firm to compete successfully outside its home market. Without a distinctive competence, a foreign firm will have difficulty competing with local firms that are presumed to know the local market better. The Disney name, image, and portfolio of characters, for example, is a distinctive competence that allows the firm to succeed in foreign markets. Similarly, the ready availability of software programs compatible with Windows operating systems gives Microsoft an advantage in competing with local firms outside the United States.

Whatever its form, this distinctive competence represents an important resource to the firm. A firm often wishes to exploit this advantage by expanding its operations into as many markets as its resources allow. To a large degree, the internationalization strategy adopted by a company reflects the interplay between its distinctive competence and the business opportunities available in different countries.

For instance, Frankfurt’s Glasbau Hahn constructs glass showcases with self-contained climate controls and fiber-optic lighting. Because the showcases are perceived to be the world’s best, museums pay Glasbau Hahn as much as $100,000 for a case in which to display priceless art, sculpture, or artifacts. Exploiting its distinctive competence in this specialized market, Glasbau Hahn has built a multimillion-dollar international business. Similarly, Wiesbaden’s F. Ad. Müller Söhne has for 16 generations specialized in the production of glass eyeballs. The firm’s long-term success rests on highly-skilled craftsmen and a proprietary technology invented in the 1860s.
Scope of Operations

The second component, the **scope of operations**, answers the question: “Where are we going to conduct business?” Scope may be defined in terms of geographical regions, such as countries, regions within a country, or clusters of countries. Or it may focus on market or product niches within one or more regions, such as the premium-quality market niche, the low-cost market niche, or other specialized market niches. Because all firms have finite resources and because markets differ in their relative attractiveness for various products, managers must decide which markets are most attractive to their firm. Scope is, of course, tied to the firm’s distinctive competence: If the firm possesses a distinctive competence only in certain regions or in specific product lines, then its scope of operations will focus on those areas where the firm enjoys the distinctive competence.

For instance, the geographical scope of Disney’s current theme park operations consists of the United States, Japan, France, and Hong Kong, whereas the geographical scope of its movie distribution and merchandise sales operations reaches almost 200 countries. Other companies have chosen to participate in many lines of business but narrow their geographic focus, such as Grupo Luksic, a family-owned conglomerate with interests in beer, copper, banking, hotels, railroads, telecommunications, and ranching in Chile and neighboring countries. Conversely, Ballantyne Strong, a small ($169 million in annual revenues) Nebraska-based company, is sharply focused, just like its primary product: feature-film projectors, a market it has mastered in the United States and abroad.15 Similarly, in the semiconductor industry, many firms have chosen to limit their operations to specific product niches. Asian semiconductor manufacturers such as Samsung and Hynix dominate the global memory chip market. California-based Intel focuses on producing the microprocessors that power most personal computers. Texas Instruments specializes in digital signal processors, which convert analog signals into digital signals. Such chips have many uses, from computer modems to stereo systems to cellular phones. Infineon Technologies AG concentrates on chips that have automotive, industrial, and communications applications. Thus, strategic planning results in some international businesses choosing to compete in only a few markets, some to compete in many, and others (such as Disney) to vary their operations across the different types of business operations in which they are involved.

Resource Deployment

**Resource deployment** answers the question: “Given that we are going to compete in these markets, how should we allocate our resources to them?” For example, even though Disney has theme park operations in four countries, the firm does not have an equal resource commitment to each market. Disney invested nothing in Tokyo Disneyland and limited its original investment in Disneyland Paris to 49 percent of its equity and in Hong Kong to 43 percent. But it continues to invest heavily in its U.S. theme park operations and in filmed entertainment.

Resource deployment might be specified along product lines, geographical lines, or both.16 This part of strategic planning determines relative priorities for a firm’s limited resources. Some large MNCs choose to deploy their resources worldwide. For example, Osaka-based Sharp Corporation manufactures its electronic goods in factories spread around the world. Other firms have opted to focus their production more narrowly. Boeing, the leading U.S. exporter, concentrates final assembly of most of its commercial aircraft in the Seattle, Washington, region. And although Daimler AG has production facilities in a dozen countries (including Austria, Brazil, China, and the United States), most Mercedes vehicles are German-built.17 Although these firms buy materials and sell products globally, they have limited much of their production resource deployment to their home countries.

Synergy

The fourth component of international strategy, **synergy**, answers the question: “How can different elements of our business benefit each other?” The goal of synergy is to create a situation in which the whole is greater than the sum of the parts. Disney has excelled at generating synergy in the United States. People know the Disney characters from television, so they plan vacations to Disney theme parks. At the parks they are bombarded with information about the newest Disney movies, and they buy merchandise featuring Disney characters, which encourage them to watch Disney characters on TV, starting the cycle all over again. However, as noted previously, the firm has been more effective in capturing these synergies domestically than internationally.
Developing International Strategies

Developing international strategies is not a one-dimensional process. Firms generally carry out international strategic management in two broad stages, strategy formulation and strategy implementation. Simply put, strategy formulation is deciding what to do and strategy implementation is actually doing it.

In strategy formulation, the firm establishes its goals and the strategic plan that will lead to the achievement of those goals. In international strategy formulation, managers develop, refine, and agree on which markets to enter (or exit) and how best to compete in each. Much of what we discuss in the rest of this chapter and in the next two chapters primarily concerns international strategy formulation.

In strategy implementation, the firm develops the tactics for achieving the formulated international strategies. Disney’s decision to build Hong Kong Disneyland was part of strategy formulation. But deciding which attractions to include, when to open, what to charge for admission, and how to leverage its investment in the park to penetrate the TV, movie, and character licensing markets in China is part of strategy implementation. Strategy implementation is usually achieved via the organization’s design, the work of its employees, and its control systems and processes. Chapters 14 and 15 deal primarily with implementation issues.

Although every strategic planning process is in many ways unique, there is nevertheless a set of general steps that managers usually follow as they set about developing their strategies. These steps, shown in Figure 11.2, are discussed next.

Mission Statement

Most organizations begin the international strategic planning process by creating a mission statement, which clarifies the organization’s purpose, values, and directions. The mission statement is often used as a way of communicating with internal and external constituents and stakeholders about the firm’s strategic direction. It may specify such factors as the firm’s target customers and markets, principal products or services, geographical domain, core technologies, concerns for survival, plans for growth and profitability, basic philosophy, and desired public image. For example, IKEA’s mission is “to create a better everyday life for the many people,” and Disney’s is to be “one of the world’s leading producers and providers of entertainment and information.” MNCs may have multiple mission statements—one for the overall firm and one for each of its various foreign subsidiaries. Of course, a firm that has multiple mission statements must ensure that they are compatible.

Environmental Scanning and the SWOT Analysis

The second step in developing a strategy is conducting a SWOT analysis. SWOT is an acronym for strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats. A firm typically initiates its SWOT analysis by performing an environmental scan, a systematic collection of data about all elements of the firm’s external and internal environments, including markets, regulatory issues, competitors’ actions, production costs, and labor productivity.
When members of a planning staff scan the external environment, they try to identify both opportunities (the O in SWOT) and threats (the T in SWOT) confronting the firm. They obtain data about economic, financial, political, legal, social, and competitive changes in the various markets the firm serves or might want to serve. (Such data are also used for political risk analysis, discussed in Chapter 3, as well as the country market analysis discussed in Chapter 12.) For example, Boeing continuously monitors changes in political and economic forces that affect air travel. In China, political shifts in the early 1990s to allow more competition in the air travel market led the government to split the giant state-owned carrier CAAC into competing regional carriers and to allow Hong Kong’s Cathay Pacific airline to offer air travel within China. Boeing’s environmental scanning suggested that booming demand for air travel would make the Chinese market a particularly appealing opportunity. Accordingly, the firm chose to locate a new sales office in Beijing. The move paid off, and China has become one of Boeing’s most important markets.

External environmental scanning also yields data about environmental threats to the firm, such as shrinking markets, increasing competition, the potential for new government regulation, political instability in key markets, and the development of new technologies that could make the firm’s manufacturing facilities or product lines obsolete. Threats to Disney include increased competition in the U.S. market from Universal Studios, Six Flags, and other
theme parks; potential competition in Europe from theme parks there; foreign resentment of U.S. military and diplomatic policies; fluctuating exchange rates; and more stringent requirements for obtaining U.S. visas as a result of the attacks on September 11, 2001, on the Pentagon and World Trade Center. Threats to BMW include changing U.S. automobile fuel-efficiency standards, increased competition from Japanese producers in the luxury car market, the high value of the euro, and high German labor costs. The threats Federal Express faces include not only competition in the international express package delivery market from firms such as DHL Worldwide and TNT, but also the rapidly growing usage of information technology to send messages electronically.

In conducting a SWOT analysis, a firm’s strategic managers must also assess the firm’s internal environment, that is, its strengths and weaknesses (the S and W in SWOT). Organizational strengths are skills, resources, and other advantages the firm possesses relative to its competitors. Potential strengths, which form the basis of a firm’s distinctive competence, might include an abundance of managerial talent, cutting-edge technology, well-known brand names, surplus cash, a good public image, and strong market shares in key countries. Disney’s strengths include low corporate debt and the international appeal of its characters. BMW’s strengths include its skilled workforce, innovative engineers, and reputation for producing high-quality automobiles.

A firm also needs to acknowledge its organizational weaknesses. These weaknesses reflect deficiencies or shortcomings in skills, resources, or other factors that hinder the firm’s competitiveness. They may include poor distribution networks outside the home market, poor labor relations, a lack of skilled international managers, or product development efforts that lag behind competitors’. Disney’s organizational weaknesses regarding Disneyland Paris include high capital costs, negative publicity, and difficulties adjusting to French cultural values. BMW’s weaknesses include its extremely high domestic labor costs, which make it difficult for it to compete on the basis of price.

One technique for assessing a firm’s strengths and weaknesses is the value chain. Developed by Harvard Business School Professor Michael Porter, the value chain is a breakdown of the firm into its important activities—production, marketing, human resource management, and so forth—to enable its strategists to identify its competitive advantages and disadvantages. Each primary and support activity depicted in Figure 11.3 can be the source of an organizational strength (distinctive competence) or weakness. For example, the quality of Caterpillar’s products (Research, Development, and Product Design in the figure) and the strength of its worldwide dealership network (Distribution and After-Sales Service in the figure) are among its organizational strengths, but a history of contentious labor relations (Human Resource Management in the figure) represents one of its organizational weaknesses.

Managers use information derived from the SWOT analysis to develop specific effective strategies. Effective strategies are those that exploit environmental opportunities and organizational strengths, neutralize environmental threats, and protect or overcome organizational weaknesses.
weaknesses. For example, BMW’s decision to build automobiles in South Carolina took advantage of its strong brand image in the United States. This decision also neutralized the firm’s internal weakness of high German labor costs and its vulnerability to loss of U.S. customers if the euro were to rise in value relative to the U.S. dollar.

Strategic Goals
With the mission statement and SWOT analysis as context, international strategic planning is largely framed by the setting of strategic goals. Strategic goals are the major objectives the firm wants to accomplish through pursuing a particular course of action. By definition, they should be measurable, feasible, and time-limited (answering the questions: “how much, how, and by when?”). For example, Disney set strategic goals for Disneyland Paris for projected attendance, revenues, and so on. But, as the Scottish poet Robert Burns noted, “the best laid plans of mice and men” often go awry. Part of the park’s resultant financial problems arose from the firm’s goals not being met. Disney’s strategic managers had to revise the firm’s strategic plan and goals, taking into account the new information painfully learned from the first years of the park’s unprofitable operation. And as “E-World” discusses, Nokia’s strategy, which served them well for a decade, quickly became obsolete when new competitors like the iPhone entered their market.

Tactics
As shown in Figure 11.2, after a SWOT analysis has been performed and strategic goals set, the next step in strategic planning is to develop specific tactical goals and plans, or tactics. Tactics usually involve middle managers and focus on the details of implementing the firm’s strategic goals. For example, Grand Metropolitan, a huge British food company, and Guinness, a major British spirits maker, merged to create Diageo PLC, one of the world’s largest consumer products companies. The merger agreement reflected strategic decisions by the two companies. But after plans for the merger were announced, middle managers in both companies were faced with the challenges of integrating various components of the two original companies into a single new one. Tactical issues such as the integration of the firms’ accounting and information systems; human resource procedures involving hiring, compensation, and career paths; and distribution and logistics questions ranging from shipping and transportation to warehousing all had to be addressed and synthesized into one new way of doing business.
NOKIA: NO LONGER KING OF THE HILL

Nokia Corporation provides a useful case study of the opportunities and challenges facing firms competing in the global economy. It also offers an object lesson for firms who fail to react quickly and appropriately to changes in the global marketplace.

Nokia was formed by Fredrik Idestam, a Finnish engineer. Its early success is consistent with the theory of comparative advantage. Idestam’s young company set up shop in the town of Nokia on the Nokianvirta River in Finland (hence the firm’s name) to manufacture pulp and paper using the area’s lush forests as raw material. Nokia flourished in international anonymity for 100 years, focusing almost exclusively on its domestic market.

During the 1960s the firm’s management decided to start expanding regionally. In 1967, with the government’s encouragement, Nokia took over two state-owned firms, Finnish Rubber Works and Finnish Cable Works. In 1981, Nokia’s destiny was altered dramatically by one seminal event: Because it had done so well with the rubber and cable operations, the Finnish government offered to sell Nokia 51 percent of the state-owned Finnish Telecommunications Company.

Because Nokia had already been developing competencies in digital technologies, it quickly seized this opportunity and pushed aggressively into a variety of telecommunications businesses. For example, Nokia created Europe’s first digital telephone network in 1982. A series of other acquisitions and partnerships propelled the company to the number-one position in the global market for mobile telephones.

At face value it might seem that larger industrial countries like the United States, Germany, and Japan should have led the way in this market. Conditions in Finland, however, provide a unique catalyst for Nokia’s initial successes. Many parts of the Finnish landscape are heavily forested, and vast regions of the country are sparsely populated. Creating, maintaining, and updating land-based wired communication networks can be slow and extremely expensive, making wireless digital systems a relative bargain. Thus, conditions were near perfect for an astute, forward-looking company like Nokia to strike gold.

During much of the past decade, Nokia hit a rich vein of pay dirt. It sold more than 40 million of its premium-priced N-series handsets, which allow dedicated gamers to download and play video games that were more graphics-rich than those available on its competitors’ products. Nokia aggressively targeted emerging markets as well, developing attractively priced mobile phones to meet the needs of those customers. By the end of 2007, Nokia was the world’s largest seller of mobile phones, with a global market share of 40 percent. Moreover, it enjoyed the highest operating profit margins in the industry.

Unfortunately, Nokia’s market dominance disappeared quickly, seemingly in the blink of an eye. In June 2007, Apple began selling the iPhone in the United States; five months later, the iPhone was available for sale in Europe. The iPhone redefined the rules of competition in the mobile phone industry. Software, not hardware, became the critical selling feature. Unfortunately, Nokia’s strength lay in hardware, not software. Nokia’s clumsy Symbian operating system was no match for the iPhone’s easy to use iOS operating system. Apple’s clever “There’s an App for that” commercials reinforced the superiority of the iPhone over Nokia’s offerings. To make matters worse, Nokia’s share of emerging markets eroded in the face of increased competition from low-cost Android-based phones produced by Chinese rivals. By the first quarter of 2013, Nokia’s global market share had fallen to 16.6 percent. Of particular concern was Nokia’s weakness in the more profitable smartphone market segment, where Samsung’s Galaxy line of smartphones and Apple’s iPhones are now the dominant players, with a combined market share of 52 percent.


Control Framework

The final aspect of strategy formulation is the development of a control framework, the set of managerial and organizational processes that keep the firm moving toward its strategic goals. For example, Disneyland Paris had a first-year attendance goal of 12 million visitors. When it became apparent that this goal would not be met, the firm increased its advertising to help boost attendance and temporarily closed one of its hotels to cut costs. Had attendance been running ahead of the goal, the firm might have decreased advertising and extended its operating hours. Each set of responses stems from the control framework established to keep the firm on course. As shown by Figure 11.2’s feedback loops, the control framework can prompt revisions in any of the preceding steps in the strategy formulation process. We discuss control frameworks more fully in Chapter 14.
Levels of International Strategy

Given the complexities of international strategic management, many international businesses—especially MNCs—find it useful to develop strategies for three distinct levels within the organization. These levels of international strategy, illustrated in Figure 11.4, are corporate, business, and functional.21

Corporate Strategy

Corporate strategy attempts to define the domain of businesses in which the firm intends to operate. Consider three Japanese electronics firms: Sony competes in the global market for consumer electronics and entertainment but has not broadened its scope into home and kitchen appliances. Archrival Panasonic spans all these industries, while Pioneer Corporation focuses only on electronic audio and video products. Each firm has answered quite differently the question of what constitutes its business domain. Their divergent answers reflect their differing corporate strengths and weaknesses, as well as their differing assessments of the opportunities and threats produced by the global economic and political environments. A firm might adopt any of three forms of corporate strategy. These are called a single-business strategy, a related diversification strategy, and an unrelated diversification strategy.

THE SINGLE-BUSINESS STRATEGY The single-business strategy calls for a firm to rely on a single business, product, or service for all its revenue. The most significant advantage of this strategy is that the firm can concentrate all its resources and expertise on that one product or service. However, this strategy also increases the firm’s vulnerability to its competition and to changes in the external environment. For example, for a firm producing only floppy disk drives,
Part 3 • Managing International Business

A new innovation such as the thumb drive may make the firm’s single product obsolete, and the firm may be unable to develop new products quickly enough to survive. Nonetheless, some MNCs, such as Singapore Airlines, McDonald’s, and Facebook, have found the single-business strategy a rewarding one.

**Related Diversification**

Related diversification, the most common corporate strategy, calls for the firm to operate in several different but fundamentally related businesses, industries, or markets at the same time. This strategy allows the firm to leverage a distinctive competence in one market to strengthen its competitiveness in others. The goal of related diversification and the basic relationship linking various operations are often defined in the firm’s mission statement.

Disney uses the related diversification strategy. Each of its operations is linked to the others via Disney characters, the Disney logo, a theme of wholesomeness, and a reputation for providing high-quality family entertainment. Disney movies and TV shows, many of which are broadcast over Disney-owned networks, help sell Disney theme parks, which in turn help sell Disney merchandise. Accor SA also relied on the related diversification strategy to become one of the world’s largest hotel operators. Originally the operator of a chain restaurant, this Paris-based firm began acquiring luxury hotel chains such as Sofitel and budget chains such as Motel 6. To keep its dining rooms and hotel beds full, Accor then branched out into the package tour business and the rental car business. To promote tourism, the firm even opened its own theme park north of Paris, based on the French cartoon character Asterix the Gaul. Once it established itself a leader in the hotel industry, however, it sold off its interests in many of its non-hotel operations.

Related diversification has several advantages. First, the firm depends less on a single product or service, so it is less vulnerable to competitive or economic threats. For example, if Disney faces increased competition in the theme park business, its movie, television, and licensing divisions can offset potential declines in theme park revenues. Moreover, these related businesses may make it more difficult for an outsider to compete with Disney in the first place. For example, non-Disney animated movies have trouble competing against new animated releases from the Disney Studios. Makers of these movies must buy advertising at commercial rates, whereas Disney can inexpensively promote its new releases to families waiting in line at its theme parks and to viewers of shows on ABC or the Disney Channel. Similar problems confront rival theme park operators, who have to contend with the constant exposure that Disney’s theme parks receive on network television and the Disney Channel and on T-shirts and caps worn by kids of all ages worldwide.

Second, related diversification may produce economies of scale for a firm. For example, Disney created a division it calls Strategic Sourcing. This unit’s purpose is to consolidate as much of the firm’s global purchasing as possible. For instance, the company buys all its packaging materials from one supplier. Consumers who buy merchandise from Disneyland Paris, the Disney Store in Los Angeles, the Lion King show in London, a Disney website, or the direct-mail Disney catalog all receive their purchases in the same size and style box bought from the same manufacturer. The company estimates that it saves more than $300 million annually from this approach.

Third, related diversification may allow a firm to use technology or expertise developed in one market to enter a second market more cheaply and easily. For example, Pirelli SpA used its expertise in producing rubber products and insulated cables, refined over 100 years ago, to become the world’s fifth-largest producer of automobile tires. Pirelli has also transferred its knowledge of rubber cables to become a major producer of fiber-optic cables. Similarly, Casio Computer Company transferred the knowledge it gained in making handheld electric calculators to the production of inexpensive electronic digital watches, musical synthesizers, and pocket televisions. Such potential synergies are a major advantage of the related diversification strategy.

One potential disadvantage of related diversification is the cost of coordinating the operations of the related divisions. A second is the possibility that all the firm’s business units may be affected simultaneously by changes in economic conditions. For example, Disney can create synergies by promoting its theme parks on its TV networks. Yet all of Disney’s divisions are vulnerable to a downturn in the economy that would shrink consumers’ disposable incomes, thereby discouraging families from traveling to Disney World or marketers from advertising on ESPN or the Disney Channel.
UNRELATED DIIVERSIFICATION A third corporate strategy international businesses may use is unrelated diversification, whereby a firm operates in several unrelated industries and markets. For example, GE owns such diverse business units as a lighting manufacturer, a medical technology firm, an aircraft engine producer, a home appliance manufacturer, and an investment bank. These operations are unrelated to each other, and there is little reason to anticipate synergy among such diverse operations and businesses.

During the 1960s, unrelated diversification was a popular investment strategy. Many large firms, such as ITT, Gulf and Western, LTV, and Textron became conglomerates, the term used for firms comprising unrelated businesses. The unrelated diversification strategy yields several benefits. First, the corporate parent may be able to raise capital more easily than any of its independent units can separately. The parent can then allocate this capital to the most profitable opportunities available among its subsidiaries. Second, overall riskiness may be reduced because a firm is less subject to business cycle fluctuations. For example, temporary difficulties facing one business might be offset by success in another. Third, a firm is less vulnerable to competitive threats because any given threat is likely to affect only a portion of the firm’s total operations. Fourth, a firm can more easily shed unprofitable operations because they are independent. It also can buy new operations without worrying about how to integrate them into existing businesses.

Nonetheless, the creation of conglomerates through the unrelated diversification strategy is out of favor on Wall Street today primarily because of the lack of potential synergy across unrelated businesses. Because the businesses are unrelated, no one operation can regularly sustain or enhance the others. For example, GE managers cannot use any of the competitive advantages they may have developed in the lighting business to help offset poor aircraft engine sales. Further, it is difficult for staff at corporate headquarters to effectively manage diverse businesses, because staff members must understand a much wider array of businesses and markets than if operations are related. This complicates the performance monitoring of individual operations. As a result, although some conglomerates, such as GE and Textron, have thrived, many others have changed their strategy or disappeared altogether. Daimler AG, for example, reoriented its business away from unrelated diversification and more toward related diversification. The firm had operations in passenger cars and trucks, commercial vehicles, financial services and information technology, aerospace, rail, diesel engines, and auto electronics. But Daimler consolidated some of its nonautomotive activities, selling others, and putting more and more emphasis on its automobile operations. However, conglomerates are often an important component of the economies of emerging markets, as Chapter 12’s closing case, “The House of Tata” discusses.

Business Strategy
Whereas corporate strategy deals with the overall organization, business strategy focuses on specific businesses, subsidiaries, or operating units within the firm. Business strategy seeks to answer the question: “How should we compete in each market we have chosen to enter?” Firms that pursue corporate strategies of related diversification or unrelated diversification tend to bundle sets of businesses together into strategic business units (SBUs). In firms that follow the related diversification strategy, the products and services of each SBU are somewhat similar to each other. For example, Disney defines its SBUs as Parks and Resorts, Studio Entertainment (Touchstone, Buena Vista, and Pixar studios), Consumer Products (Disney publishing, character licensing, Disney Stores), and Media Networks (ABC, the Disney Channel, ESPN). In firms that follow unrelated diversification strategies, products and services of each SBU are dissimilar. Textron, for example, has created four SBUs: aircraft, automotive products, financial services, and industrial products.

By focusing on the competitive environment of each business or SBU, business strategy helps the firm improve its distinctive competence for that business or unit. Once a firm selects a business strategy for an SBU, it typically uses that strategy in all geographical markets the SBU serves. The firm may develop a unique business strategy for each of its SBUs, or it may pursue the same business strategy for all of them. The three basic forms of business strategy are differentiation, overall cost leadership, and focus.

DIFFERENTIATION Differentiation strategy is a commonly used business strategy. It attempts to establish and maintain the image (either real or perceived) that the SBU’s products
or services are fundamentally unique from other products or services in the same market segment. Many international businesses today are attempting to use quality as a differentiating factor. If successful at establishing a high-quality image, they can charge higher prices for their products or services. For example, Rolex sells its timepieces worldwide for premium prices. The firm limits its sales agreements to only a few dealers in any given area, stresses quality and status in its advertising, and seldom discounts its products. Other international firms that use the differentiation strategy effectively include Coca-Cola (nonalcoholic bottled beverages), Nikon (cameras), Calvin Klein (fashion apparel), and Waterford Wedgwood (fine china and glassware).

Other firms adopt value as their differentiating factor. They compete by charging reasonable prices for quality goods and services. Marks and Spencer has used the value factor to thrive in the department store market in the United Kingdom and on the European Continent, while Target and Kohl’s have adopted a similar approach in the North American market.

**OVERALL COST LEADERSHIP** The **overall cost leadership strategy** calls for a firm to focus on achieving highly efficient operating procedures so that its costs are lower than its competitors’. This allows it to sell its goods or services for lower prices. A successful overall cost leadership strategy may result in lower levels of unit profitability due to lower prices but higher total profitability because of increased sales volume. For example, France’s Bic Pen Company
has dominated the global ballpoint pen market since its founding in 1945. By concentrating on making those pens as cheaply as possible, the firm is able to sell them for a low price. Taken together, volume production and a worldwide distribution network have allowed Bic to flourish. Other firms that use this strategy are Timex (watches), Vizio (high-definition TVs), Hyundai (automobiles), Aldi (grocery stores), and Hynix (DRAM memory chips).

**FOCUS** A focus strategy calls for a firm to target specific types of products for certain customer groups or regions, such as a retailer specializing in maternity clothes or “big and tall” clients. Doing this allows the firm to match the features of specific products to the needs of specific consumer groups. These groups might be characterized by geographical region, ethnicity, purchasing power, tastes in fashion, or any other factor that influences their purchasing patterns. For example, Hollister Co., a division of Abercrombie & Fitch, has targeted a narrow but lucrative slice of the apparel market. The company concentrates its energies on selling the “hottest southern Cali lifestyle clothing geared for outgoing guys and girls.”

Denmark’s Bang and Olufsen focuses on producing elegantly designed high end audio products, thereby meeting the needs of customers with demanding standards in both form and function.

**Functional Strategies**

Functional strategies attempt to answer the question: “How will we manage the functions of finance, marketing, operations, human resources, and R&D in ways consistent with our international corporate and business strategies?” We briefly introduce each common functional strategy here but leave more detailed discussion to later chapters.

International financial strategy deals with such issues as the firm’s desired capital structure, investment policies, foreign-exchange holdings, risk-reduction techniques, debt policies, and working-capital management. Typically, an international business develops a financial strategy for the overall firm as well as for each SBU. We cover international financial strategy more fully in Chapter 18. International marketing strategy concerns the distribution and selling of the firm’s products or services. It addresses questions of product mix, advertising, promotion, pricing, and distribution. International marketing strategy is the subject of Chapter 16.

International operations strategy deals with the creation of the firm’s products or services. It guides decisions on such issues as sourcing, plant location, plant layout and design, technology, and inventory management. We return to international operations management in Chapter 17. International human resource strategy focuses on the people who work for an organization. It guides decisions regarding how the firm will recruit, train, and evaluate employees and what it will pay them, as well as how it will deal with labor relations. International human resource strategy is the subject of Chapter 19. Finally, a firm’s international R&D strategy is concerned with the magnitude and direction of the firm’s investment in creating new products and developing new technologies.

The next steps in formulating international strategy determine which foreign markets to enter and which to avoid. The firm’s managers must then decide how to enter the chosen markets. These two issues are the subject of Chapters 12 and 13.

**In Practice**

- Firms strive to develop successful strategies at three organizational levels: corporate, business, and functional.
- The three basic forms of business strategy are differentiation, cost leadership, and focus.

*For further consideration:* Are there successful business operating in your community that have adopted a differentiation strategy? A cost leadership strategy? A focus strategy?
Summary

International strategic management is a comprehensive and ongoing management planning process aimed at formulating and implementing strategies that enable a firm to compete effectively in different markets. Although there are many similarities in developing domestic and international strategies, international firms have three additional sources of competitive advantages unavailable to domestic firms. These are global efficiencies, multinational flexibility, and worldwide learning.

Firms participating in international business usually adopt one of four strategic alternatives: the home replication strategy, the multidomestic strategy, the global strategy, or the transnational strategy. Each of these strategies has advantages and disadvantages in terms of its ability to help firms be responsive to local circumstances and to achieve the benefits of global efficiencies.

A well-conceived strategy has four essential components. Distinctive competence is what the firm does exceptionally well. Scope of operations is the array of markets in which the firm plans to operate. Resource deployment specifies how the firm will distribute its resources across different areas. And synergy is the degree to which different operations within the firm can benefit one another.

International strategy formulation is the process of creating a firm’s international strategies. The process of carrying out these strategies via specific tactics is called international strategy implementation. In international strategy formulation, a firm follows three general steps. First, a firm develops a mission statement that specifies its values, purpose, and directions. Next it thoroughly analyzes its strengths and weaknesses, as well as the opportunities and threats that exist in its environment. Finally, it sets strategic goals, outlines tactical goals and plans, and develops a control framework.

Most firms develop strategy at three levels. Corporate strategy answers the question: “What businesses will we operate?” Basic corporate strategies are single-business, related diversification, and unrelated diversification. Business strategy answers the question: “How should we compete in each market we have chosen to enter?” Fundamental business strategies are differentiation, overall cost leadership, and focus. Functional strategy deals with how the firm intends to manage the functions of finance, marketing, operations, human resources, and R&D.

Review Questions

11-1. What is international strategic management?
11-2. What are the four basic philosophies that guide strategic management in most MNCs?
11-3. How do international strategy formulation and international strategy implementation differ?
11-4. What are the steps in international strategy formulation? Are these likely to vary among firms?
11-5. Identify the four components of an international strategy.
11-6. Describe the role and importance of distinctive competence in international strategy formulation.
11-7. What are the three levels of international strategy? Why is it important to distinguish among the levels?
11-8. Identify and distinguish among three common approaches to corporate strategy.
11-9. Identify and distinguish among three common approaches to business strategy.
11-10. What are the basic types of functional strategies most firms use? Is it likely that some firms have different functional strategies?

Questions for Discussion

11-11. What are the basic differences between a domestic strategy and an international strategy?
11-12. Should the same managers be involved in both formulating and implementing international strategy, or should each part of the process be handled by different managers? Why?
11-13. Successful implementation of the global and the transnational approaches requires high levels of coordination and rapid information flows between corporate headquarters and subsidiaries. Accordingly, would you expect to find many companies adopting either of these approaches in the nineteenth century? Prior to World War II? Prior to the advent of personal computers?
11-14. Study mission statements from several international businesses in the same industry. How do they differ, and how are they similar?
11-15. How can a poor SWOT analysis affect strategic planning?
11-16. Why do relatively few international firms pursue a single-product strategy?
11-17. How are the components of international strategy (scope of operations, resource deployment,
distinctive competence, and synergy) likely to vary across different types of corporate strategy (single-business, related diversification, and unrelated diversification)?

11-18. The new Disney theme park in Shanghai will open later this decade. Develop a list of at least five ways other units of Disney can help promote and publicize the park’s grand opening.

11-19. Is a firm with a corporate strategy of related diversification more or less likely than a firm with a corporate strategy of unrelated diversification to use the same business strategy for all its SBUs? Why or why not?

11-20. Identify products you use regularly that are made by international firms that use the three different business strategies.

11-21. Related and unrelated diversification represent extremes of a continuum. Discuss why a firm might want to take a mid-range approach to diversification, as opposed to being purely one or the other.

Building Global Skills

Form a group with three or four of your classmates. Your group represents the planning department of a large, domestically oriented manufacturer that has been pursuing a corporate strategy of unrelated diversification. Currently, the firm makes four basic products, as follows:

• All-terrain recreational vehicles. This product line consists of small two- and three-wheeled recreational vehicles, the most popular of which is a gasoline-powered mountain bike.
• Color televisions. The firm concentrates on high-quality, wide-screen, LED televisions.
• Luggage. This line is aimed at the low end of the market and comprises pieces made from inexpensive aluminum frames covered with ballistic material (high-strength, tear-resistant fabric). Backpacks are especially popular.
• Writing instruments. The firm makes a full line of mechanical pens and pencils pitched to the middle-market segment, between low-end products such as Bic and high-end ones such as Montblanc.

The CEO of the business has approached your group to act as business consultants. His intention is to either develop a distribution network in your country or, if the circumstances and opportunities are right, consider sub-contracting manufacture and distribution. The CEO is looking for likely partners in your country. He feels that with the right partnerships, the corporation can expand into new markets without taking all of the risk of the venture. With this in mind, answer the following:

11-22. Identify and evaluate examples of existing businesses in your country that would appear to match the four main product areas as likely partners.

11-23. Assess the likely demand for the four product areas in your country.

11-24. Suggest whether all four product ranges should be offered in your country and give reasons for your decisions.

11-25. Compare and contrast existing competitors for the product ranges in your country and assess their market share.

11-26. Assess whether your country would be an ideal regional hub for manufacturing and/or distribution.

11-27. What would you recommend the CEO of the business to do—a joint venture, acquire an existing business or set up one from scratch—in your country?

**Closing Case**

The New Conquistador

The South American continent emerged as one of the hottest markets in the past two decades as a result of economic policy changes and the region’s growth prospects. Privatization, deregulation, and regional economic integration unshackled the imaginations and energies of the continent’s entrepreneurs and attracted the attention of foreign investors, while surging commodities exports boosted the economies of such countries as Brazil (iron ore), Chile (copper), Bolivia (tin), and Venezuela (oil).

One industry directly impacted by these policy changes is telecommunications. Once the sleepy preserve of inefficient and overstaffed state-owned enterprises, the industry has become a magnet for new firms and new technologies. The most aggressive entrant is Telefónica SA. Telefónica’s managers knew all too well the problems of state-owned telecommunications monopolists because Telefónica was just such a firm in its former guise as government-run Telefónica de España. Telefónica de España first obtained its monopoly concession on telephone services in Spain in 1924. Originally privately owned, the company was nationalized in 1945, with the government owning outright 41 percent of the company’s shares.

For four decades the company enjoyed the easy life of a monopolist. The seeds of change were planted in 1986, however, when Spain joined the European Union (EU). Telefónica de España was ill-equipped to handle...
the explosive growth in telephone service or the chorus of complaints about poor service that followed. Moreover, as part of its single market initiative, the EU announced that state-sponsorred telephone monopolies would be abolished by 1998. Any European telecommunications firm would then be able to provide service anywhere within the EU.

Faced with the threat of new entry from European rivals that promised increased competition, lower prices, and smaller profit margins, Telefónica’s managers realized they had to transform the company. A leaner and more competitive company emerged as managers trimmed fat, shed unprofitable operations, and invested in new technologies and facilities. With the EU-directed ending of state telephone monopolies, Telefónica’s managers confronted a new strategic problem: Should they change the scope of their operations? Should they erect a fortress in Spain and keep out EU rivals, expand into other EU markets, or do something else?

In analyzing their strategic choices, Telefónica’s managers recognized they had a strong position in Spain, and that domestic demand for telephone services would continue to grow in the relatively underserved Spanish market. Thus, they continued to invest in new equipment and technologies there. This approach has worked: Telefónica has 12 million local fixed-line subscribers and 24 million cellular customers in its home market. Despite the EU’s competition directive, at the end of 2012 Telefónica retained 69 percent of Spain’s fixed-line business and about 41 percent of its mobile phone market.

In assessing their international prospects, Telefónica’s managers decided that the company lacked a competitive advantage against European rivals like British Telecom and Deutsche Telekom, who had equal if not better access to the latest technology and managerial talent. That ruled out attacking other EU markets, at least initially. However, they noted that many South American countries were about to privatize their own state-owned telephone monopolies, and that investing in these companies made strategic sense. Telefónica did have a competitive advantage vis-à-vis local entrepreneurs in accessing technology, capital, and managerial talent. Moreover, because of linguistic and cultural ties between Spain and South America, Telefónica believed it had a competitive advantage over any of its European rivals who might wish to enter the South American market.

Telefónica de España launched its invasion of the South American market in 1990, when it acquired a minority interest in Compañía de Teléfonos de Chile and a contract to manage the southern half of Argentina’s telephone system. In 1995, it purchased a majority interest in Teléfonica del Perú, that country’s state-owned monopoly provider of telephone services. A year later it acquired 35 percent of a regional Brazilian telephone company at a state-sponsored auction. Telefónica also acquired interests in Argentina’s largest cable company and a digital satellite TV provider. The Spanish government then sold off the last of its ownership position, making Telefónica de España wholly privately owned. In 1998, the company changed its name—to Telefónica SA—and paid $4.9 billion at auction to acquire control of the fixed-line and cellular operations of Telebras, Brazil’s former state-owned telephone giant. In 2000, Motorola sold its Mexican cellular service operations to Telefónica for $2.6 billion, and in 2006 Telefónica purchased 50 percent (plus one share) of state-owned Colombia Telecommunicaciones, making it the largest landline operator in that country as well. In 2010 it acquired full ownership of Brasilcel, a Brazilian mobile phone joint venture, by buying out its Portuguese partner for €7.5 billion.

All told, Telefónica has invested more than $64 billion in South America. It is the largest telecommunications company on that continent and now has more landline customers there—24 million—than in Spain. Its wireless subsidiary, using the brand name Movistar, has 177 million customers in Latin America. It has followed the same pattern in each country it has entered: Trim excess payrolls ruthlessly and expand capacity aggressively. For example, it laid off half of the 22,000 workers in its Argentine subsidiary while doubling its network there to 4 million lines.

Telefónica’s actions in South America have not lacked criticism, however. Telefónica’s tactics have been denounced by local skeptics as “conquistador capitalism.” After winning the Telebras auction, it moved quickly to expand service in Brazil’s commercial center, São Paulo, while laying off thousands of workers. This strategy of doing more with less backfired, as chaotic disruptions in service led to numerous complaints. Minority shareholders also complained that Telefónica charges its South American subsidiaries exorbitant management fees that reduce the value of their interests. For example, its Argentine subsidiary pays 4.6 percent of its revenues to Telefónica for management services provided by the parent corporation.

Minority shareholders have also protested Telefónica’s practice of transferring product lines with high growth potential from the subsidiaries to the parent. For example, Telefónica created Terra Networks SA to consolidate all of its South American Internet operations. It then sold to the public 30 percent of Terra Networks, retained the other 70 percent, and listed it on stock exchanges in Madrid and the United States. As part of this deal, Telefónica transferred the Internet operations of its Chilean subsidiary to Terra Networks for $40 million; minority owners believed that the price should have been double that figure. Minority shareholders in other subsidiaries have made similar complaints. Similarly, Telefónica has been transferring the telemarketing operations of its South American subsidiaries to an umbrella company in Madrid, arguing that they would benefit from the economies of scale that a consolidated operation would offer.
Telefónica also faces some operational challenges. Some are of its own doing: It was forced to pay $8 million in refunds in 1999 to São Paulo customers because of poor service. Others are not: It was forced to take a $300 million write-off for currency losses after Brazil devalued its currency in 1998 and a €1.8 billion markdown of its Venezuelan assets in 2010 after the bolivar was devalued. Moreover, changes in government policies have increased competitive pressures. For example, Argentina and Peru began to deregulate their telecommunications industries in 2000, ending their reliance on monopoly provision of telephone service. And Telefónica’s success has attracted new competitors. In 1999, for instance, BellSouth signed up 1 million cellular phone subscribers in São Paulo, capturing nearly 50 percent of that market in only 10 months of operations. But BellSouth executives were unhappy with the venture’s profitability, and in 2004 Telefónica purchased BellSouth’s Latin American subsidiary for $5.9 billion, thereby eliminating a well-funded, technologically sophisticated competitor.

Having built strong bases in Spain and Latin America, in 2005 Telefónica turned its attentions back to Europe. It purchased Český Telecom, the leading provider of landline and mobile telecommunications services in the Czech Republic. In 2006, it acquired O₂, the largest provider of mobile phone service in the United Kingdom. O₂ is a major player in the German and Irish markets as well. In 2007, it purchased a minority position in Telecom Italia. In 2009, it paid €913 million for HanseNet, a German provider of telecommunications services. Telefónica now serves some 50 million European customers outside its Spanish home market. It also purchased 5 percent of China Netcom in 2005, the second-largest provider of landline service in China. In 2008, it agreed to buy an additional 2.2 percent of that company for €309 million. After China Unicom acquired China Netcom, Telefónica entered into a strategic alliance with China Unicom and increased its ownership of that company to 9.7 percent.

Overall, this strategy seems to be working. In 2012, Telefónica earned €5.9 billion on revenues of €62.4 billion. Under the direction of César Alierta, the firm’s CEO since 2005, Telefónica has made significant inroads in the British, Irish, Czech, Slovakian, and German mobile phone markets. Telefónica now operates in 25 countries, serving 40 million landline customers and 247 million mobile phone customers. Telefónica does, however, face one significant financial challenge: it has to trim its excessive debt burden, the result of its rapid expansion through acquisitions. In 2012, the company liquidated a portion of its China Unicom position and some of its Colombian operations to reduce its debt burden. Telefónica also sold off 23 percent of its stake in its German subsidiary through a public offering, raising €1.4 billion through the sale. In 2013, the company raised $1.25 billion by selling treasury stock; the sales proceeds were used to pay off some of its remaining €51 billion in debt.

Case Questions

11-28. How important was the EU’s directive eliminating national telecommunications monopolies by 1998 in shaping Telefónica’s strategy? What would the company look like today if Spain were not a member of the European Union?

11-29. How important were cultural ties in determining Telefónica’s success in Latin America?

11-30. Why did Telefónica initially choose to enter the Czech market, rather than the larger French or German markets?

11-31. Considering Telefónica’s large and persistent share of the Spanish telecommunications market, how successful has the EU’s directive been in promoting competition within the European telecommunication industry?

11-32. Minority investors in Telefónica’s South American subsidiaries are unhappy with the parent corporation. Suppose you are a senior manager at the parent corporation. How would you handle the problem of the minority investors? What would you recommend to the CEO should be done about the minority investors?

Chapter 11: Managing International Businesses

11-33. Describe and discuss the three sources of competitive advantage available to international businesses that are not available to purely domestic firms. Why is it difficult for firms to exploit these three competitive advantages simultaneously?

11-34. What are some of the issues that a firm might need to address if it decides to change its corporate or business strategy? For example, how would an MNC go about changing from a strategy of related diversification to a strategy of unrelated diversification?

11-35. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


10. Bartlett and Ghoshal label this strategy the multinational strategy. We have altered their terminology to avoid confusion with other uses of the term multinational.

11. See Hill and Jones, Strategic Management.


CHAPTE R 12
Strategies for Analyzing and Entering Foreign Markets

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:
1. Discuss how firms analyze foreign markets.
2. Outline the process by which firms choose their mode of entry into a foreign market.
3. Describe forms of exporting and the types of intermediaries available to assist firms in exporting their goods.
4. Identify the basic issues in international licensing and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of licensing.
5. Identify the basic issues in international franchising and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of franchising.
6. Analyze contract manufacturing, management contracts, and turnkey projects as specialized entry modes for international business.
7. Characterize the greenfield and acquisition forms of foreign direct investment (FDI).

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!
More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs.
Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
THE BUSINESS OF LUXURY

Christian Dior...Givenchy...Dom Pérignon...Louis Vuitton. To most of us, these names convey luxury, indulgence, the finer things in life. To Bernard Arnault, the chairman and chief executive officer (CEO) of the €28.1 billion fashion conglomerate LVMH Louis Vuitton Moët Hennessy SA—or more, simply, LVMH—it is his life’s work. Like many French companies, LVMH is controlled by a family-owned group: In LVMH’s case, the Arnault family owns 46.4 percent of its shares but 62.7 percent of the voting rights. Another 45 percent are owned by institutional investors in France, the United States, and other European countries. The remainder is owned by individuals.

LVMH is in the business of selling prestige. Consider the company’s annual report: Displaying the company’s portfolio of brands in glowing color, it looks more like a high-end fashion magazine than a boring compilation of the company’s financial reports. LVMH plays on the ancient heritage of its brands. In 2010, for example, bottles of Veuve Clicquot were discovered amid the remains of a nineteenth-century shipwreck in the Baltic Sea. LVMH publicists let it be known that the submerged champagne retained its “admirable organoleptic qualities”—a word choice sure to appeal to Veuve Clicquot’s target market. Its sister brand, Dom Pérignon, dates back to 1688, while Louis Vuitton’s luggage business began in 1854. Tag Heuer, celebrating its 150th anniversary, reissued a watch line in 2010 based on its 1887 collection, and Chaumet launched its new Joséphine collection, named after its most important patron, the Emperor Napoleon’s wife, to remind its customers of its imperial lineage.

LVMH is following a related-diversification strategy. It has stitched together a remarkable stable of luxury brands, organized into its Fashion and Leather Goods, Wines and Spirits, Perfumes and Cosmetics, Watches and Jewelry, and Selective Retailing strategic business units. LVMH has grown its portfolio of brands primarily by acquiring family-owned companies specializing in manufacturing and marketing luxury goods. Although it typically operates the acquired firms as stand-alone subsidiaries, the corporate parent tries to reduce its operating costs by centralizing sourcing, advertising, financing, and acquisition of real estate. In 2011, for example, LVMH purchased high-end Italian jewelers Bulgari for $6 billion. The Bulgari family swapped its 51 percent stake in Bulgari for 16.5 million LVMH shares. The Bulgari acquisition doubled LVMH’s watch and jewelry revenues. Although Bulgari is being run independently, Arnault believes that the jeweler’s profit margins will benefit from LVMH’s expertise and economies of scale in finance, store location, sourcing, and other behind-the-scenes operations. LVMH will also help Bulgari expand its presence in Asia. Of course, LVMH is not always successful, as its attempt to purchase Hermès International demonstrated. LVMH had quietly purchased 20 percent of the company’s shares, but the descendants of founder Thierry Hermès created a family holding company to counter the proposed buyout.

Despite the luxury nature of its product line, LVMH weathered the global recession well. Although the company suffered flat revenues and reduced earnings at the nadir of the global recession in 2009, its revenues and profits have subsequently boomed. In 2012, it earned €5.9 billion in profits, up almost 50 percent over their 2010 levels. Leading the way was its Fashion and Leather Goods group, which earned profits of €3.3 billion on revenues of €9.9 billion. The company believes its success rests on the “enduring values of our star brands, creativity as an absolute imperative, the quest for perfection in our products, and our efforts to ensure an environment of excellence.”

For a company with a long and storied history in Europe, LVMH fully appreciates the need to broaden its appeal to customers outside the developed countries. Eleven percent of its revenues come from its home, France, and another 20 percent from the rest of Europe. The United States accounts for 23 percent of its revenues, and Japan another 8 percent. What may be surprising is that the rest of Asia contributes 28 percent of its revenues, a reflection of the growing importance of that region to the world economy and LVMH’s commitment to meeting the aspirations of the region’s consumers. LVMH expects China to be the largest market for luxury goods by 2020. For instance, China has provided Hennessy, the company’s prestigious cognac, with double-digit growth the past three years. In recognition of the country’s growing clout, Louis Vuitton featured Godfrey Gao, a Taiwanese-Canadian model and TV star, in its recent commercials for the company’s man bag.1

Chapter 11 focused on the process by which a firm formulates its international strategy. This chapter discusses the next steps in the implementation of international strategy: choosing the markets the firm will enter and the modes of entry it will use to compete in these markets. As the opening case indicates, LVMH’s primary mode of entry is to acquire purveyors of upscale goods that integrate easily into the company’s portfolio of prestigious products. For some brands, LVMH operates its own retail outlets; for others, it relies on high-end retailers for distribution. In other cases, LVMH uses licensing agreements with local firms to promote its business interests or teams with local partners in joint ventures. As we discuss in this chapter, in deciding whether and how to enter a market, a well-managed firm will match its internal strengths and weaknesses to the unique opportunities and needs of that market. LVMH has successfully done this in the many national markets in which it participates.
Foreign Market Analysis

Regardless of their strategies, most international businesses have the fundamental goals of expanding market share, revenues, and profits. They often achieve these goals by entering new markets or by introducing new products into markets in which they already have a presence. A firm’s ability to do this effectively hinges on its developing a thorough understanding of a given geographical or product market. To successfully increase market share, revenue, and profits, firms must normally follow three steps: (1) assess alternative markets, (2) evaluate the respective costs, benefits, and risks of entering each, and (3) select those that hold the most potential for entry or expansion.

Assessing Alternative Foreign Markets

In assessing alternative foreign markets, a firm must consider a variety of factors, including the current and potential sizes of these markets, the levels of competition the firm will face, the markets’ legal and political environments, and sociocultural factors that may affect the firm’s operations and performance. Table 12.1 summarizes some of the most important questions that firms need to address when analyzing new market opportunities.

Information about some of these factors is relatively objective and easy to obtain. For example, a country’s currency stability is important to a firm contemplating exporting to or importing from that country or analyzing investment opportunities there. Objective information about this topic can be easily obtained from various published sources in the firm’s home country or on the Internet. Other information about foreign markets is much more subjective and may be quite difficult to obtain. For instance, information about the honesty of local government officials or on the process of obtaining utility permits may be hard to acquire in the firm’s home country. Obtaining such information often entails visiting the foreign location early in the decision-making process to talk to local experts, such as embassy staff and chamber of commerce officials, or contracting with a consulting firm to obtain the needed data.

Market Potential

The first step in foreign market selection is assessing market potential. Many publications, such as those listed in “Building Global Skills” in Chapter 2, provide data about population, gross domestic product (GDP), per capita GDP, public infrastructure, and ownership of such goods as automobiles and televisions. Such data permit firms to conduct a preliminary “quick-and-dirty” screening of various foreign markets.

The decisions a firm draws from this information often depend on the positioning of its products relative to those of its competitors. A firm producing high-quality products at premium prices will find richer markets attractive but may have more difficulty penetrating a poorer market. Conversely, a firm specializing in low-priced, lower-quality goods may find the poorer market even more lucrative than the richer market. (See “Venturing Abroad” for another aspect of this assessment.)

A firm must then collect data relevant to the specific product line under consideration. For instance, if Pirelli SpA is contemplating exporting tires to Thailand, its strategic managers must collect data about that country’s transportation infrastructure, transportation alternatives, gasoline prices, and growth of vehicle ownership. Pirelli would also need data on the average age of motor vehicles and the production of automobiles in Thailand to assess whether to focus its marketing efforts on the replacement market or the original equipment manufacturer (OEM) market. In some situations, a firm may have to resort to using proxy data. For example, Whirlpool, in deciding whether to enter the dishwasher market in Indonesia, could examine sales of other household appliances, per capita electricity consumption, or the number of two-income families. Firms may also be concerned about the income distribution of the country.

But such data reflect the past, not the future. Firms must also consider the potential for growth in a country’s economy by using both objective and subjective measures. Objective measures include changes in per capita income, energy consumption, GDP, and ownership of consumer durables such as private automobiles. More subjective considerations must also be taken into account when assessing potential growth. For example, following the collapse of communist economies in Central and Eastern Europe, many Western firms ignored the data indicating negative economic growth in these countries. Instead they focused on the prospects for future growth as these countries adopted new economic policies and programs. As a result,
firms such as Procter & Gamble and Unilever established production facilities, distribution channels, and brand recognition to seize first-mover advantages as these economies recovered from the process of adjusting to capitalism.

Similarly, although it accounts for only 2 percent of the world’s GDP, sub-Saharan Africa is attracting much attention as a result of its huge potential. The area has enjoyed an annual growth rate of 5.7 percent in the past decade, driven by the run-up in commodities prices resulting from

TABLE 12.1 Analyzing New Market Opportunities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Market Potential</th>
<th>How large is the market today?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How fast is the market growing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Which product segments are likely to expand? Contract?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Which product segments would we like to target?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What are the key drivers of success in this market?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do these key drivers match our capabilities?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What future changes will likely occur in this market?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levels of Competition</th>
<th>How many firms are currently in the market?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What are the major strengths of existing firms? Weaknesses?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Who is gaining market share? Who is losing market share? Why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How do our capabilities compare to those of existing competitors?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the industry concentrated? Is collusion prevalent among existing firms?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are foreign firms operating successfully in the market?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What are the primary channels of distribution?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Will these channels of distribution be open to us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are other firms contemplating entry into this market?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Legal and Political Environment</th>
<th>Does the government welcome or discourage foreign investment?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Has the government erected trade barriers in this market?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If so, how high are they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the government favor local firms?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are there strong ties between existing political and business elites?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is corruption pervasive?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How reliable is the rule of law?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How strong is intellectual property protection?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are the levels of political conflict between the home and host country high or low?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sociocultural influences</th>
<th>Is our product compatible with the local culture?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How different is this market from others that we have entered?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What motivates workers in this culture?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do consumers seek out foreign brands?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How educated is the population?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the population young or old? Urban or rural?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do demographic trends favor our product?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES

THE BOTTOM OF THE PYRAMID

As Figure 2.1 indicated, the majority of the world’s economic activity is generated by the developed countries: the European Union (EU), the United States, Canada, and the rich countries of Asia and Oceania—Japan, South Korea, Australia, New Zealand, Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Singapore. And there is little doubt that these lucrative markets have captured the attention of the world’s entrepreneurs and international businesses.

C. K. Prahalad, in his influential 2004 book The Fortune at the Bottom of the Pyramid, argues that these businesspersons should turn their attention to the poorest of the 4 billion people in China, India, and other emerging markets who are now just becoming part of the market economy—what he calls the aspiring poor with incomes below $2 a day. After adjusting for purchasing power parity (PPP), Prahalad believes the potential size of this market is huge but recognizes that firms focused on developed markets may need to rethink how they make and market their products to meet the needs of the aspiring poor. For example, one simple approach is to sell products such as toothpaste or shampoo in single-use sizes. Nonetheless, he argues that firms can boost their profitability and help alleviate poverty by targeting the bottom of the pyramid.

Other scholars are not so sure. Aneel Karnani notes that adjusting the incomes of the poor for purchasing power may overstate the importance of the market to international businesses. After all, the revenue and profit potential of a market for multinational corporations (MNCs) denominated in their home currency is calculated using actual exchange rates, not PPP-adjusted rates. Thus, Karnani believes the size of the bottom of the pyramid market in emerging markets is much smaller than Prahalad estimates. Then there is the problem of actually making a profit. MNCs may find it difficult to reduce their costs of production to a level necessary to be able to sell to people at the bottom of the pyramid. Moreover, much of the incomes of people at the bottom of the pyramid is spent on food and other necessities. And operating costs are often unexpectedly high because of infrastructure deficiencies in emerging markets.


China’s economic boom. Google, for instance, is targeting the continent, believing that Africa’s current low Internet penetration rates create enormous growth potential as its infrastructure improves. Moreover, mobile phone use is exploding—Nigeria alone added 75 million cell phone subscribers during the 2000s—creating demand for company services such as Google maps and Gmail. Major global advertising groups like Publicis Groupe SA, WPP, and Omnicom are expanding their operations in numerous African countries or buying up local advertising agencies in response to their multinational clients’ interest in marketing to African customers. Ghana, Kenya, Angola, and Nigeria have attracted particular attention, in addition to the continent’s economic powerhouse, South Africa.

LEVELS OF COMPETITION Another factor a firm must consider in selecting a foreign market is the level of competition in the market—both the current level and the likely future level. To assess the competitive environment, it should identify the number and sizes of firms already competing in the target market, their relative market shares, their pricing and distribution strategies, and their relative strengths and weaknesses, both individually and collectively. It must then weigh these factors against actual market conditions and its own competitive position. For example, Kia entered the crowded North American automobile market believing low labor costs at its Korean factories would allow it to charge lower prices than entrenched competitors such as GM, Ford, Toyota, and Volkswagen.

Most successful firms continually monitor major markets to exploit opportunities as they become available. This is particularly critical for industries undergoing technological or regulatory changes. The telecommunications industry provides an important example of this phenomenon. Once the home of inefficient, plodding state-owned monopolies, this industry is now the epicenter of the convergence of a variety of new technologies and products—fiber-optics, smartphones, tablets, 4G cellular service, satellite networks, and so on. Many of these firms—particularly in Europe and Latin America—have been privatized. Privatization has been coupled with the tumbling of regulatory barriers to entry and innovation, allowing firms to enter new geographic and product markets, as Telefónica SA has done in Latin America as detailed in Chapter 11’s closing case, “The New Conquistador.”

LEGAL AND POLITICAL ENVIRONMENT A firm contemplating entry into a particular market also needs to understand the host country’s trade policies and its general legal and political environments. A firm may choose to forgo exporting its goods to a country that has high tariffs and
other trade restrictions in favor of exporting to one that has fewer or less significant barriers. Conversely, trade policies or trade barriers may induce a firm to enter a market via FDI. For example, Ford, GM, Audi, and Mercedes-Benz built auto factories in Brazil to avoid that country’s high tariffs and to use Brazil as a production platform to access other Mercosur members. And some countries require foreign firms wanting to establish local operations to work with a local joint-venture partner. 

Government stability is an important factor in foreign market assessment. Some less-developed countries have been prone to military coups and similar disruptions. Government regulation of pricing and promotional activities may need to be considered. For example, many governments restrict advertising for tobacco and alcohol products, so foreign manufacturers of those products must understand how those restrictions will affect their ability to market their goods in those countries. Care also often needs to be taken to avoid offending the political sensibilities of the host nation. Consider the political implications of the language used to describe the island of Taiwan. The leadership of the People’s Republic of China (PRC) refuses to recognize the Republic of China (ROC) as an independent nation, viewing Taiwan as a breakaway province. Labeling Taiwan as the Republic of China might discourage sales of this textbook in the PRC; failure to do so might hurt sales in the ROC/Taiwan.

SOCIOCULTURAL INFLUENCES Managers assessing foreign markets must also consider sociocultural influences, which, because of their subjective nature, are often difficult to quantify. To reduce the uncertainty associated with these factors, firms often focus their initial internationalization efforts in countries culturally similar to their home markets. For example, Canada was the location of Starbucks’ and Hollister’s first international outlets. 

If the proposed strategy is to produce goods in another country and export them to the market under consideration, the most relevant sociocultural factors are those associated with consumers. Firms that fail to recognize the needs and preferences of host country consumers often run into trouble. For example, Denmark’s Bang & Olufsen, a well-known stereo system manufacturer, floundered in some markets because its designers stress style rather than function. Japanese competitors, meanwhile, stress function and innovation over style and design. Bang & Olufsen’s Danish managers failed to realize that consumers in markets such as the United States are generally more interested in function than in design and that they are more willing to pay for new technology than for an interesting appearance.

A firm considering FDI in a factory or distribution center must also evaluate sociocultural factors associated with potential employees. It must understand the motivational basis for work in that country, the norms for working hours and pay, and the role of labor unions. By hiring—and listening to—local managers, foreign firms can often avoid or reduce cultural conflicts.

Evaluating Costs, Benefits, and Risks
The next step in foreign market assessment is a careful evaluation of the costs, benefits, and risks associated with doing business in a particular foreign market.

COSTS Two types of costs are relevant at this point: direct and opportunity. Direct costs are those the firm incurs in entering a new foreign market and include costs associated with setting up a business operation (leasing or buying a facility, for example), transferring managers to run it, and shipping equipment and merchandise. The firm also incurs opportunity costs. Because a firm has limited resources, entering one market may preclude or delay its entry into another. The profits it would have earned in that second market are its opportunity costs—the organization has forfeited or delayed its opportunity to earn those profits by choosing to enter another market first. Thus, the firm’s planners must carefully assess all the alternatives available to it.

BENEFITS Entering a new market presumably offers a firm many potential benefits; otherwise, why do it? Among the most obvious potential benefits are the expected sales and profits from the market. Others include lower acquisition and manufacturing costs (if materials or labor are cheap), foreclosing of markets to competitors (which limits competitors’ ability to earn profits), competitive advantage (which allows the firm to keep ahead of or abreast with its competition), access to new technology, and the opportunity to achieve synergy with other operations.
Of course, few benefits are achieved without some degree of risk. Many of the previous chapters provided overviews of the specific types of risks facing international businesses. Generally, a firm entering a new market incurs the risks of exchange rate fluctuations, additional operating complexity, and direct financial losses resulting from inaccurate assessment of market potential. In extreme cases, it also faces the risk of loss through government seizure of property or as a result of war or terrorism.

This list of factors a firm must consider when assessing foreign markets may seem burdensome. Nonetheless, successful international businesses carefully analyze these factors to uncover and exploit any and all opportunities available to them. At best, poor market assessments may rob a firm of profitable opportunities. At worst, a continued inability to reach the right decisions may threaten the firm’s existence.

**In Practice**

- Globalization has created numerous opportunities for firms to increase their profits by expanding into new markets.
- Firms must carefully assess a variety of issues, including levels of competition, the host country’s legal, political, and cultural environments, and the risks associated with doing business in that country.

*For further consideration:* Chapter 6 discussed Linder’s country similarity theory. Do firms tend to enter markets that look like their home market out of laziness, fear, or careful analysis of the factors we have just discussed?

**Choosing a Mode of Entry**

Having decided which markets to enter, the firm is now faced with another decision: Which mode of entry should it use? Dunning’s eclectic theory, discussed in Chapter 6, provides useful insights into the factors that affect the choice among either home country production (exporting), host country production in firm-owned factories (FDI and joint venture), or host country production performed by others (licensing, franchising, and contract manufacturing). Recall that the eclectic theory considers three factors: ownership advantages, location advantages, and internalization advantages. Other factors a firm may consider include the firm’s need for control, the availability of resources, and the firm’s global strategy. The role of these factors in the entry mode decision is illustrated in Figure 12.1.

**Ownership advantages** are tangible or intangible resources owned by a firm that grant it a competitive advantage over its industry rivals. The ownership by Toronto-based Vale Canada, Ltd. (a subsidiary of Brazilian mining conglomerate Vale), of rich, nickel-bearing ores has allowed the firm to dominate the production of both primary nickel and nickel-based metal alloys. The luxury appeal of Dom Pérignon champagne and Christian Dior perfumes—both products of France’s LVMH Louis Vuitton Moët Hennessy—although a more intangible resource than a nickel ore mine, similarly grants the Parisian firm a competitive advantage over its rivals in international markets. Assuming that local firms know more about their home turf than foreigners do, a foreign firm contemplating entry into a new market should possess some ownership advantage that allows it to overcome the liability of foreignness. **Liability of foreignness** reflects the informational, political, and cultural disadvantages that foreign firms face when trying to compete against local firms in the host country market. As discussed later in this chapter, the nature of the firm’s ownership advantage affects its selection of entry mode. Embedded technology, for example, is often best transferred through an equity mode, while firms whose competitive advantage is based on a well-known brand name sometimes enter foreign markets through a licensing or franchising mode. Further, firm advantages are primary determinants of bargaining strength; thus, they can influence the outcome of entry mode negotiations.

**Location advantages** are those factors that affect the desirability of host country production relative to home country production. Firms routinely compare economic and noneconomic characteristics of the home market with those of the foreign market in determining where to
locate their production facilities. If home country production is found to be more desirable than host country production, the firm will choose to enter the host country market via exporting. For example, Siam Cement, one of the world’s lowest cost producers, initially relied on exports from its modern domestic factories to serve the ASEAN market rather than setting up production facilities outside Thailand. Conversely, if host country production is more desirable, the firm may invest in foreign facilities or license the use of its technology and brand names to existing host country producers, as Starbucks has done in implementing its internationalization strategy.

The choice between home country and host country production is affected by many factors. Relative wage rates and land acquisition costs in the countries are important, but firms may also consider surplus or unused capacity in existing factories, access to research and development (R&D) facilities, logistical requirements, the needs of customers, and the additional administrative costs of managing a foreign facility. Political risk must also be considered. The presence of civil war, official corruption, or unstable governments will discourage many firms from devoting significant resources to a host country.

Government policies can also have a major influence. High tariff walls discourage exporting and encourage local production, whereas high corporate taxes or government prohibitions against repatriation of profits inhibit FDI. Even government inaction may affect location decisions. McDonald’s built a bakery in Cairo in the late 1990s to supply its regional restaurants, in part because of its frustration in dealing with Egyptian customs bureaucrats, who required the company to obtain more than a dozen signatures each time it wished to import hamburger buns into Egypt.

Location advantages may also be culture-bound. Turkey has benefited from its geographic, religious, linguistic, and cultural ties to the Central Asian and Caucasus republics of the former Soviet Union (see Map 12.1). MNCs such as Siemens, JPMorgan Chase, and Goodyear have based their regional headquarters and export operations in Istanbul, viewing it as the ideal jumping-off point for doing business in the entire Eurasian region.

Internalization advantages are those that make it desirable for a firm to produce a good or service itself rather than contracting with another firm to produce it. The level of transaction costs (costs of negotiating, monitoring, and enforcing an agreement) is critical to this decision.
If such costs are high, the firm may rely on FDI and joint ventures as entry modes. If they are low, the firm may use franchising, licensing, or contract manufacturing. In deciding, the firm must consider both the nature of the ownership advantage it possesses and its ability to ensure productive and harmonious working relations with any local firm with which it does business. Toyota, for example, possesses two important ownership advantages: efficient manufacturing techniques and a reputation for producing high-quality automobiles. Neither asset is readily saleable or transferable to other firms; thus, Toyota has used FDI and joint ventures rather than franchising and licensing for its foreign production of automobiles.

Pharmaceutical firms routinely use licensing as their entry mode. In this industry, two common ownership advantages are the ownership of a patented drug that has unique medical properties and the ownership of local distribution networks. Obtaining either is expensive; researching, developing, and testing a new wonder drug can cost several hundred million dollars, while distribution networks must be large to be effective. In Japan, for example, a sales force of at least 1,000 employees is necessary to efficiently market prescription drugs. Once a pharmaceutical firm has developed and patented a new drug, it is eager to amortize its R&D costs in both domestic and foreign markets. Many such firms prefer to forgo the expensive and time-consuming process of setting up overseas production facilities and foreign distribution networks. Instead they grant existing local firms the right to manufacture and distribute the patented drug in return for royalty payments. For example, Merck licensed Israel’s Teva Pharmaceutical Industries to manufacture and market its pharmaceutical products in Israel, saving it the expense of establishing its own Israeli sales force. Licensing is also attractive because it is relatively inexpensive to monitor the sales and product quality of patented drugs sold in the host country by the licensee.

**MAP 12.1**

*Turkey: The Gateway to the Central Asian Republics and the Caucasus*

Shared religious, cultural, and linguistic ties have made Turkey a gateway to the Muslim and Turkic-speaking populations of the Caucasus and Central Asian Republics. Hundreds of MNCs have established regional headquarters in Istanbul, Turkey’s commercial capital.

Constantinople, the ancient name of Istanbul, served as the capital of the Byzantine and Ottoman empires. Istanbul sits in both Europe and Asia and controls the only route between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.

Turkic-speaking countries

MNCs like Coca-Cola have teamed with Turkish partners to meet the needs of consumers in the region. Even more attractive to Western firms is the lure of Central Asia’s vast oil and natural gas deposits.
Other factors may also affect the choice of entry mode. For example, a firm is likely to consider its need for control and the availability of resources. A firm’s lack of experience in a foreign market may cause a certain degree of uncertainty. To reduce this uncertainty, some firms may prefer an initial entry mode that offers them a high degree of control. However, firms short on capital or thin in executive talent may be unable or unwilling to commit themselves to the large capital investments this control entails; they may prefer an entry mode that economizes on their financial and managerial commitments, such as licensing. Cash-rich firms may view FDI more favorably, believing that it offers high profit potential and the opportunity to more fully internationalize the training of their young, fast-track managers.

A firm’s overall global strategy also may affect the choice of entry mode. Firms such as Ford that seek to exploit economies of scale and synergies between their domestic and international operations may prefer ownership-oriented entry modes. Conversely, firms such as Starbucks and Nike, whose competitive strengths lie in flexibility and quick response to changing market conditions, are more likely to use any and all entry modes warranted by local conditions in a given host country. A firm’s choice may also be driven by its need to coordinate its activities across all markets as part of its global strategy. For example, IBM has for this reason traditionally favored ownership-oriented entry modes as part of its globalization strategy.

In short, like most business activities, the choice of entry mode is often a trade-off between the level of risk borne by the firm, the potential rewards to be obtained from a market, the magnitude of the resource commitment necessary to compete effectively, and the level of control the firm seeks.

**In Practice**

- Dunning’s eclectic theory can be used to analyze the appropriate means by which firms should enter foreign markets.
- The liability of foreignness suggests that foreign firms are at a disadvantage when competing with a local firm because the local firm knows more about local customs, culture, political processes, and so on than the foreign firm. In sports, this is called the home field advantage.

*For further consideration:* Chapter 1 discussed Ghemawat’s CAGE model. How is the CAGE model related to the concept of the liability of foreignness?
Exporting to Foreign Markets

Perhaps the simplest mode of internationalizing a domestic business is exporting, the most common form of international business activity. Its advantages and disadvantages, and those of the other modes of entry, are summarized in Table 12.2. Recall from Chapter 1 that exporting is the process of sending goods or services from one country to other countries for use or sale there. Merchandise exports in the world economy totaled $18.4 trillion in 2012, or 26 percent of the world’s total economic activity, while service exports amounted to $4.4 trillion.

Exporting offers a firm several advantages. First, the firm can control its financial exposure to the host country market as it deems appropriate. Little or no capital investment may be needed if the firm chooses to hire a host country firm to distribute its products. In this case, the firm’s financial exposure is often limited to start-up costs associated with market research, locating and choosing its local distributor, and local advertising plus the value of the goods and services involved in any given overseas shipment. Alternatively, the firm may choose to distribute its products itself to better control their marketing. If the firm opts for this approach, it is then able to raise its selling prices because a middleman has been eliminated. However, its investment costs and its financial exposure may rise substantially, for the firm will have to equip and operate its own distribution centers, hire its own employees, and market its products.

TABLE 12.2 Advantages and Disadvantages of Different Modes of Entry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Primary Advantages</th>
<th>Primary Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exporting</td>
<td>Relatively low financial exposure</td>
<td>Vulnerability to tariffs and nontariff barriers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Permit gradual market entry</td>
<td>Logistical complexities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acquire knowledge about local market</td>
<td>Potential conflicts with distributors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoid restrictions on foreign investment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licensing</td>
<td>Low financial risks</td>
<td>Limited market opportunities and profits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low-cost way to assess market potential</td>
<td>Dependence on licensee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoid tariffs, nontariff barriers, restrictions on foreign investment</td>
<td>Potential conflicts with licensee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Licensee provides knowledge of local markets</td>
<td>Possibility of creating future competitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franchising</td>
<td>Low financial risks</td>
<td>Limits market opportunities and profits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low-cost way to assess market potential</td>
<td>Dependence on franchisee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoid tariffs, nontariff barriers, restrictions on foreign investment</td>
<td>Potential conflicts with franchisee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maintain more control than with licensing</td>
<td>May be creating future competitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Franchisee provides knowledge of local market</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract manufacturing</td>
<td>Low financial risks</td>
<td>Reduced control (may affect quality, delivery schedules, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimize resources devoted to manufacturing</td>
<td>Reduced learning potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Focus firm’s resources on other elements of the value chain</td>
<td>Potential public relations problems—may need to monitor working conditions, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management contracts</td>
<td>Focus firm’s resources on its area of expertise</td>
<td>Potential returns limited by contract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimal financial exposure</td>
<td>May unintentionally transfer proprietary knowledge and techniques to contractee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turnkey projects</td>
<td>Focus firm’s resources on its area of expertise</td>
<td>Financial risks (cost overruns, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoid all long-term operational risks</td>
<td>Construction risks (delays, problems with suppliers, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign direct</td>
<td>High profit potential</td>
<td>High financial and managerial investments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investment</td>
<td>Maintain control over operations</td>
<td>Higher exposure to political risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acquire knowledge of local market</td>
<td>Vulnerability to restrictions on foreign investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoid tariffs and nontariff barriers</td>
<td>Greater managerial complexity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Second, exporting permits a firm to enter a foreign market gradually, thereby allowing it to assess local conditions and fine-tune its products to meet the idiosyncratic needs of host-country consumers. If its exports are well received by foreign consumers, the firm may use this experience as a basis for a more extensive entry into that market. For example, the firm may choose to take over distribution of its product from the host country distributor or to build a factory in the host country to supply its customers there, particularly if it finds it can reduce its production and distribution costs or improve the quality of its customer service. For instance, Constellation Brands, the world’s largest wine distributor, chose to develop its own marketing and distribution network in China to take advantage of the 20 percent annual growth in the Chinese consumption of wine.18

Firms may have proactive or reactive motivations for exporting. Proactive motivations are those that pull a firm into foreign markets as a result of opportunities available there. For example, San Antonio’s Pace, Inc., a maker of Tex-Mex food products, began exporting proactively to Mexico after discovering that Mexican consumers enjoy its picante sauce as much as its U.S. customers do.19 A firm also may export proactively to exploit a technological advantage or to spread fixed R&D expenses over a wider customer base, thereby allowing it to price its products more competitively in both domestic and foreign markets. For example, the breakeven price of commercial airliners produced by Airbus and Boeing would skyrocket if these firms limited their sales to their respective domestic markets.

Reactive motivations for exporting are those that push a firm into foreign markets, often because opportunities are decreasing in the domestic market. Some firms turn to exporting because their production lines are running below capacity or because they seek higher profit margins in foreign markets in the face of downturns in domestic demand. For instance, consider two suppliers of specialty services to the U.S. construction industry, which were battered by the U.S. housing crisis of 2008–2009. Hycrete Inc., a New Jersey firm that manufactures an additive to make concrete waterproof and corrosion proof, shifted its emphasis from its domestic market to the booming Middle Eastern, Asian, and Eastern European markets. Illinois-based ProMark Associates, which manufactures and installs commercial air purifiers, adopted a similar strategy in response to the slowdown in the U.S. construction market.20

Forms of Exporting

Export activities may take several forms (see Figure 12.2), including indirect exporting, direct exporting, and intracorporate transfers.

INDIRECT EXPORTING Indirect exporting occurs when a firm sells its product to a domestic customer, which in turn exports the product, in either its original form or a modified form. For example, if Kenworth, a leading U.S. truck manufacturer, buys diesel engines from Cummins (also a U.S. firm) and then exports the completed trucks to Colombia, Cummins’ engines have been indirectly exported. Or a firm may sell goods to a domestic wholesaler who then sells them to an overseas firm. A firm also may sell to a foreign firm’s local subsidiary, which then transports the first firm’s products to the foreign country.

Some indirect exporting activities reflect conscious actions by domestic producers. For example, the Association of Guatemala Coffee Producers sells bags of coffee to passengers boarding international flights in Guatemala City to gain export sales and to build consumer awareness of its product. In most cases, however, indirect exporting activities are not part of a conscious internationalization strategy by a firm. Thus, they yield the firm little experience in conducting international business. Further, for firms that passively rely on the actions of others, the potential short-term and long-term profits available from indirect exporting are often limited.

DIRECT EXPORTING Direct exporting occurs through sales to customers—either distributors or end-users—located outside the firm’s home country. Research suggests that in one-third of cases, a firm’s initial direct exporting to a foreign market is the result of an unsolicited order. However, its subsequent direct exporting typically results from deliberate efforts to expand its business internationally. In such cases, the firm actively selects the products it will sell, the foreign markets it will service, and the means by which its products will be distributed in those markets. Through direct exporting activities, the firm gains valuable expertise about operating internationally and specific knowledge concerning the individual countries in which it operates. And export success often breeds additional export success. Increasing experience with exporting
often prompts a firm to become more aggressive in exploiting new international exporting opportunities.\textsuperscript{21} Such experience also often proves useful if the firm later engages in FDI. Baskin-Robbins, for example, followed this deliberate approach in entering the Russian market. It began by shipping ice cream to that country in 1990 from company-owned plants in Canada and Texas. Over a five-year period, the company opened up 74 retail outlets with Russian partners, carefully observing the likes and dislikes of local consumers. Only after gaining a thorough understanding of the Russian market did Baskin-Robbins invest $30 million in a new ice cream plant in Moscow, ensuring a constant flow of Jamoca Almond Fudge and (at least) 30 other flavors to please Russian appetites.\textsuperscript{22}

**INTRACORPORATE TRANSFERS** A third form of export activity is the intracorporate transfer, which has become more important as the sizes of MNCs have increased. An intracorporate transfer is the sale of goods by a firm in one country to an affiliated firm in another. For example, when BP ships crude oil from its storage facilities in Kuwait to its Australian subsidiary, the transaction is counted as a Kuwaiti export and an Australian import, but the revenues for the transaction remain within the same firm.

Intracorporate transfers are an important part of international trade. They account for about 31 percent of all U.S. merchandise exports and imports. Many MNCs constantly engage in such transfers, importing and exporting semi-finished products and component parts to lower their production costs. By so doing, they use the productive capacity of both their domestic and foreign factories more efficiently, concentrating production of individual inputs at specific factories and shipping these inputs to other factories as needed. We will discuss these factors more thoroughly in Chapter 17 when we analyze the global sourcing strategies of MNCs.
Such transfers are also common in the service sector. For example, Dow Jones & Company publishes both Asian and European versions of the Wall Street Journal in addition to its U.S. edition. Although some of the stories in each edition are written locally and are intended for local audiences, others are written in one location and printed in all editions of the newspaper. The usage of stories first published by a Dow Jones subsidiary in one country by Dow Jones affiliates in other countries is an intracorporate transfer of services.

**Additional Considerations**

In considering exporting as its entry mode, a firm must consider many other factors besides which form of exporting to use, including (1) government policies, (2) marketing concerns, (3) logistical considerations, and (4) distribution issues.

**GOVERNMENT POLICIES** Export promotion policies, export financing programs, and other forms of home country subsidization encourage exporting as an entry mode. Conversely, host countries may impose tariffs and nontariff barriers (NTBs) on imported goods, thereby discouraging the firm from relying on exports as an entry mode. Similarly, Japan’s imposition of voluntary export restraints (VERs) on Japanese automobiles reduced Japanese exports, but it also encouraged Japanese automakers to construct assembly plants in the United States.

**MARKETING CONCERNS** Marketing concerns, such as image, distribution, and responsiveness to the customer, may also affect the decision to export. Often foreign goods have a certain product image or cachet that domestically produced goods cannot duplicate. For example, buyers of Dom Pérignon champagne are purchasing, at least in part, the allure of one of France’s finest champagnes. This allure would be lost should LVMH choose to produce the product in Lubbock, Texas, even though Lubbock vineyards yield a regionally acclaimed wine, Llano Estacado. Swiss watches, German automobiles, Italian shoes, Cuban cigars, and Scottish wool are among the other product groups whose allure is closely associated with specific countries.

The choice of exporting is also influenced by a firm’s need to obtain quick and constant feedback from its customers. Such feedback is less important for standardized products whose designs change slowly, if at all, such as toothbrushes and coffeemakers. On the other hand, producers of goods such as personal computers and smartphones must continually monitor the marketplace to ensure that they are meeting the rapidly changing needs of their customers. (“Emerging Opportunities” provides additional insights into the importance of understanding the needs of local customers.) For example, Hyundai shifted its production of personal computers from factories in its Korean homeland to the United States because it needed to be closer to its U.S. customer base.

The allure of some goods—particularly luxury ones—is reinforced by their country of origin. The demand for Swiss watches rests in large part on the reputation and craftsmanship of the skilled workers who carefully oversee their assembly.
VENTURING ABROAD

DNATA – GLOBAL GROWTH STRATEGY

Founded in 1959, Dnata is an international travel management services company based in Dubai. It provides services in aircraft and cargo-handling, and engineering, information technology, as well as travel-related services and in-flight and institutional catering. Dnata has three main divisions: Dnata Airport Operations, Dnata Cargo, and Dnata Agencies. It is the fourth largest licensed air services provider in the world with approximately 20,000 employees across five continents. As a key member of the Emirates Group, Dnata provides the Emirates Airline and other world major airlines with ground-handling services at 73 airports internationally. Today its business has expanded to 38 countries.

Despite the recent global economic recession, Dnata’s revenues have increased dramatically and nearly quadrupled over the past few years. This success is attributed largely to Dnata management’s forward thinking strategy and a global mindset. Dnata has been pursuing a global growth strategy and has structured its business units in line with the strategy. It has one dedicated administration and management division called Dnata International, which oversees a number of Dnata’s business operations including wholly-owned and joint ventures in eight countries and a global network of sales offices outside the United Arab Emirates (UAE). Dnata has constantly scrutinized the world markets enabling it to capture opportunities to enter the markets based upon the strategic fit between the business opportunities, such as the growth pace of airline operations in a certain region and its existing resources. The president of Dnata described the approach as a result of extremely cautious planning with a focus on returnability. In 2004, Dnata entered the Singapore market, which boasts one of the world’s busiest and largest airports, and acquired Changi International Airport Services, called Dnata Singapore after the acquisition. Dnata Singapore offers a comprehensive range of ground-handling services to more than 30 scheduled airlines in Singapore. Over the past few years, Dnata has acquired stakes and/or established a number of joint ventures in Australia, China, Pakistan, Philippines, Switzerland, United Kingdom, and Iraq. Among them, the most important joint ventures are Toll Dnata Airport Services (TDAS), a joint venture between Toll Holdings (Australia) and Dnata, and Xi’an Dnata Aviation Services Co. Ltd., a joint venture between Dnata and China West Airport Group that provides airport ground-handling services at Xi’an Xianyang International Airport. In addition to expanding its business internationally through a number of strategic acquisitions outside the UAE, Dnata has entered strategic alliances with many travel agencies globally and established an extensive global network of sales offices. These strategic alliances expand Dnata’s international reach and create win-win business opportunities without involving significant financial investment.

Following its success worldwide, Dnata has most recently developed a new company logo and a mission statement in line with its brand strategy and brand architecture that are seen as an indication for further growth. The new mission statement emphasizes its global value and unites its 20,000 employees around the world. When asked about how Dnata protects itself from an increasingly competitive and volatile aviation industry, the president of Dnata said, that making the business less Dubai-centric and more global has helped the company grow and sustain.


LOGISTICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Logistical considerations also enter into the decision to export. The firm must consider the physical distribution costs of warehousing, packaging, transporting, and distributing its goods, as well as its inventory-carrying costs and those of its foreign customers. Typically, such logistical costs will be higher for exported goods than for locally produced goods. But logistical considerations go beyond mere costs. Because exporting means longer supply lines and increased difficulties in communicating with foreign customers, firms choosing to export from domestic factories must ensure that they maintain competitive levels of customer service for their foreign customers.

DISTRIBUTION ISSUES

A final issue that may influence a firm’s decision to export is distribution. A firm experienced in exporting may choose to establish its own distribution networks in its key markets. For example, Japanese consumer electronics manufacturers such as Sony, Minolta, and Hitachi typically rely on wholly owned host country subsidiaries to distribute their products to wholesalers and retailers in the developed countries. The costs of establishing and operating these distribution networks are offset by two important benefits. First, a firm captures additional revenues by performing the distribution function. Second, it maintains control over the distribution process, thereby avoiding the problems that we discuss in the following paragraphs.

However, a firm—particularly a smaller business or one just beginning to export—often lacks the expertise to market its products abroad, so it will seek a local distributor to handle its products in the target market. Critical to the firm’s success is the selection of this distributor, which must have sufficient expertise and resources (capital, labor, facilities, and local reputation) to successfully market the firm’s products. However, often the best local distributors already handle the products of existing firms. Consequently, sometimes a firm must choose between an experienced local distributor and a less experienced one that will handle the firm’s products exclusively.
The profitability and growth potential of exporting to a foreign market will be affected by the firm’s agreement with the local distributor. The local distributor must be compensated for its services, of course. This compensation will reduce the exporter’s profit margin. Further, the exporter and its local distributor depend on each other to ensure that a satisfactory business relationship is established and maintained. If the host country distributor inadequately markets, distributes, or services the exporter’s products, it is the exporter that will suffer lost sales and damaged reputation. For example, Apple’s initial share of the Japanese personal computer market was hurt by the performance of a Canon subsidiary hired to market and distribute the firm’s products in Japan. Apple took over these tasks and quickly quintupled its market share.23

Problems may also arise if the business judgments of the local distributor and the exporter differ. The exporter and the importer may disagree on pricing strategies, with the exporter preferring lower retail prices to stimulate sales and the distributor favoring higher prices, which fatten its profit margins. The exporter may want its distributor to market its products more aggressively in hopes of building sales volume; the distributor may believe that the additional sales generated by this strategy will not cover the increased expenses incurred. Thus, the importance of selecting a distributor whose goals and business philosophy are compatible with those of the exporter cannot be overstressed.

Export Intermediaries
An exporter may also market and distribute its goods in international markets by using one or more intermediaries, third parties that specialize in facilitating imports and exports. These specialists may offer limited services such as handling only transportation and documentation. Or they may perform more extensive roles, including taking ownership of foreign-bound goods and/or assuming total responsibility for marketing and financing exports. Types of intermediaries that offer a broad range of services include export management companies, Webb-Pomerene associations, and international trading companies.

**Export Management Company** A **export management company (EMC)** is a firm that acts as its client’s export department. Most are small operations that rely on the services of a handful of professionals. An EMC’s staff typically is knowledgeable about the legal, financial, and logistical details of exporting and so frees the exporter from having to develop this expertise in-house. The EMC may also provide advice about consumer needs and available distribution channels in the foreign markets the exporter wants to penetrate.

EMCs usually operate in one of two ways. Some act as commission agents for exporters. They handle the details of shipping, clearing customs, and document preparation in return for an agreed-on fee. In this case, the exporter normally invoices the client and provides any necessary financing it may need. Others take title to the goods. They make money by buying the goods from the exporter and reselling them at a higher price to foreign customers. Such EMCs may offer customer financing and design and implement advertising and promotional campaigns for the product.

**Webb-Pomerene Association** A **Webb-Pomerene association** is a group of U.S. firms that operate within the same industry and that are allowed by law to coordinate their export activities without fear of violating U.S. antitrust laws. First authorized by the Export Trade Act of 1918, a Webb-Pomerene association engages in market research, overseas promotional activities, freight consolidation, contract negotiations, and other services for its members. It may also directly engage in exporting by buying goods domestically from members and selling the goods in foreign markets on the association’s behalf. Although such associations were originally designed to allow smaller, related firms to cooperate in promoting exports, most are now dominated by larger firms. In general, Webb-Pomerene associations have not played a major role in international business. Fewer than 25 such associations exist today, and they tend to be concentrated in raw materials such as wood pulp, sulfur, and phosphate rock.

**International Trading Company** An **international trading company** is a firm directly engaged in importing and exporting a wide variety of goods for its own account. It differs from an EMC in that it participates in both importing and exporting activities. An international trading company provides a full gamut of services, including market research, customs documentation, international transportation and host country distribution, marketing, and financing. Typically,
international trading companies have agents and offices worldwide. The economic intelligence information they glean from these far-flung operations is one of their most potent competitive weapons.

The most important international trading companies in the global marketplace are Japan’s sogo shosha, which are an integral part of Japan’s keiretsu system. The sogo shosha have prospered for several reasons. Because of their far-flung operations, they continuously obtain information about economic conditions and business opportunities in virtually every corner of the world. As part of a keiretsu, a sogo shosha enjoys ready access to financing (from the keiretsu’s lead bank) and a built-in source of customers (its fellow keiretsu members). This customer base reduces the sogo shosha’s costs of soliciting clients and builds up its business volume, thereby allowing it to reap economies of scale in its transportation and information-gathering roles. Nonmembers of the keiretsu are then attracted to doing business with the sogo shosha because of its low-cost structure and international expertise. Moreover, many of the sogo shosha have made investments in the natural resource sector, which, as a result of the increases in commodity prices created by China’s economic boom, have been extremely profitable in the past decade. Japan’s international trading companies are among the world’s largest service companies, measured by sales volume.24 The five largest sogo shosha are featured in Table 12.3.

OTHER INTERMEDIARIES In addition to the intermediaries that provide a broad range of services to international exporters and importers, numerous other types offer more specialized services. Manufacturers’ agents solicit domestic orders for foreign manufacturers, usually on a commission basis. Manufacturers’ export agents act as a foreign sales department for domestic manufacturers, selling those firms’ goods in foreign markets. Export and import brokers bring together international buyers and sellers of such standardized commodities as coffee, cocoa, and grains. Freight forwarders specialize in the physical transportation of goods, arranging customs documentation and obtaining transportation services for their clients. This list, however, is by no means complete. Indeed, specialists are available to provide virtually every service needed by exporters and importers in international trade.

In Practice

- Exporting is the dominant form of international business activity. In 2012, the world’s exports of goods and services totaled $22.8 trillion.
- Intracorporate transfers account for about 31 percent of U.S. trade. They reflect the growing importance of multinational corporations in the world’s economy.

For further consideration: Are international trade and foreign direct investment substitutes for one another, or do they complement one another?

International Licensing

Another means of entering a foreign market is licensing, in which a firm, called the licensor, leases the right to use its intellectual property—technology, work methods, patents, copyrights, brand names, or trademarks—to another firm, called the licensee, in return for a fee. This process is illustrated in Figure 12.3. The use of licensing as an entry mode may be affected by host country policies. Firms are not advised to use licensing in countries that offer weak protection for intellectual property because they may have difficulty enforcing licensing agreements in the host country’s courts. On the other hand, the use of licensing may be encouraged by high tariffs and NTBs, which discourage imports, or by host country restrictions on FDI or repatriation of profits.

Licensing is a popular mode for entering foreign markets because it involves little out-of-pocket cost. A firm has already incurred the costs of developing the intellectual property to be licensed; thus, revenues received through a licensing agreement often go straight to the firm’s bottom line. Licensing also allows a firm to take advantage of any location advantages of foreign production without incurring any ownership, managerial, or investment obligations.
TABLE 12.3 The Five Largest Sogo Shosha

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Firm</th>
<th>2012 Sales ($ Billion)</th>
<th>Key Subsidiaries and Affiliates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | Mitsubishi Corp.| 71.9                   | Kirin Brewery (alcoholic beverages)  
Mitsubishi Holdings, Ltd.  
Mitsubishi Heavy Industries, Ltd. (construction)  
Mitsubishi Motor Corporation (automobiles)  
Nikon Corporation (cameras and video equipment)  
The Tokyo Marine and Fire Insurance Company |
| 2    | Mitsui & Company| 59.1                   | Japan Steel Works, Ltd. (steel manufacturing)  
Mitsui Construction Company, Ltd. (construction)  
Mitsukoshi, Ltd. (department stores)  
Mitsui Mutual Life Insurance Company, Ltd.  
Onoda Cement Company, Ltd. (construction materials)  
Sakura Bank |
| 3    | Marubeni        | 58.5                   | Archer Pipe and Tube Company (steel pipe sales)  
Bactec Corporation (insecticides)  
Columbia Grain International (grain trading)  
Fremont Beef Company (meat processing)  
Kubota Tractor Company (farm equipment)  
Precision Tools Service, Inc. (machine tools) |
| 4    | Itochu Corp.    | 55.2                   | U.S. Isuzu Motors (wholesaling)  
ATR Wires & Cable Company (steel tire cords)  
Century 21 Real Estate of Japan, Ltd. (real estate brokerage)  
Dunhill Group Japan, Inc. (men’s clothing and accessories)  
Mazda Motor of America (wholesaling)  
Time Warner Entertainment of Japan (25 percent limited partnership)  
VIDEOSAT, Inc. (satellite transmission of video signals) |
| 5    | Sumitomo Group  | 36.3                   | Asahi Breweries, Ltd. (alcoholic beverages)  
NEC Corp. (electronics)  
Nippon Sheet Glass Company  
The Sumitomo Bank, Ltd.  
Sumitomo Cement Company, Ltd.  
Sumitomo Chemical Company, Ltd.  
Sumitomo Coal Mining Company, Ltd.  
Sumitomo Forestry Company, Ltd.  
Sumitomo Metal Industries, Ltd.  
Sumitomo Realty & Development Company, Ltd. |

Source: Based on Fortune, July 22, 2013, pp. F1f.; various corporate websites.
Licensing is an important element of the strategies of many international firms. Consider the Nintendo Company. The firm manufactures electronic video game consoles and games. It also licenses dozens of firms worldwide to design and, in some cases, to manufacture games to be used in its game consoles. As part of its licensing arrangements, Nintendo provides game designers with technical specifications for how its game consoles work. The design firms create the games and then pay Nintendo a fee to manufacture them. Other firms manufacture the games themselves, but they must still pay a licensing fee to Nintendo. Through licensing, Nintendo not only generates new revenues; it also inspires the development of new video games, which in turn stimulate demand for Nintendo game consoles. Similar arrangements are used by many video game and software firms.25

Saks Inc. has similarly relied on licensing as part of its internationalization strategy. It licensed local companies to construct and operate stores in Saudi Arabia, Dubai, Bahrain, and Mexico City. Saks’ executives believe they need to focus their attention on the highly competitive U.S. market. Through the licensing arrangement, the company can establish a presence in the growing international market, generate royalty income with little risk and no investment, and not have to deal with the trials and tribulations of mastering the complexities of foreign retailing markets.26

Licensing is an important element of the strategies of many international firms. Consider the Nintendo Company. The firm manufactures electronic video game consoles and games. It also licenses dozens of firms worldwide to design and, in some cases, to manufacture games to be used in its game consoles. As part of its licensing arrangements, Nintendo provides game designers with technical specifications for how its game consoles work. The design firms create the games and then pay Nintendo a fee to manufacture them. Other firms manufacture the games themselves, but they must still pay a licensing fee to Nintendo. Through licensing, Nintendo not only generates new revenues; it also inspires the development of new video games, which in turn stimulate demand for Nintendo game consoles. Similar arrangements are used by many video game and software firms.25

Saks Inc. has similarly relied on licensing as part of its internationalization strategy. It licensed local companies to construct and operate stores in Saudi Arabia, Dubai, Bahrain, and Mexico City. Saks’ executives believe they need to focus their attention on the highly competitive U.S. market. Through the licensing arrangement, the company can establish a presence in the growing international market, generate royalty income with little risk and no investment, and not have to deal with the trials and tribulations of mastering the complexities of foreign retailing markets.26

Licensing is an important element of the strategies of many international firms. Consider the Nintendo Company. The firm manufactures electronic video game consoles and games. It also licenses dozens of firms worldwide to design and, in some cases, to manufacture games to be used in its game consoles. As part of its licensing arrangements, Nintendo provides game designers with technical specifications for how its game consoles work. The design firms create the games and then pay Nintendo a fee to manufacture them. Other firms manufacture the games themselves, but they must still pay a licensing fee to Nintendo. Through licensing, Nintendo not only generates new revenues; it also inspires the development of new video games, which in turn stimulate demand for Nintendo game consoles. Similar arrangements are used by many video game and software firms.25

Saks Inc. has similarly relied on licensing as part of its internationalization strategy. It licensed local companies to construct and operate stores in Saudi Arabia, Dubai, Bahrain, and Mexico City. Saks’ executives believe they need to focus their attention on the highly competitive U.S. market. Through the licensing arrangement, the company can establish a presence in the growing international market, generate royalty income with little risk and no investment, and not have to deal with the trials and tribulations of mastering the complexities of foreign retailing markets.26

Saks has relied on licensing as its primary mode of entering international markets. This Saks store in Dubai’s prestigious BurJuman Mall features 80,000 square feet of retail space.
Basic Issues in International Licensing

Nearly every international licensing arrangement is unique because of variations in corporate strategy, the levels of competition, the nature of the product, and the interests of the licensor and licensee. Normally the terms of a licensing agreement are specified in a detailed legal contract, which addresses such issues as (1) specifying the boundaries of the agreement, (2) determining compensation, (3) establishing rights, privileges, and constraints, and (4) specifying the duration of the contract.

SPECIFYING THE AGREEMENT’S BOUNDARIES The licensor and licensee must determine which rights and privileges are and are not being conveyed in the agreement. For example, Heineken is exclusively licensed to manufacture and sell Pepsi-Cola in the Netherlands. PepsiCo must either provide Heineken with the formula for its soft drink or supply concentrated cola syrup. Heineken is then allowed to add carbonated water to create the beverage, package it in appropriate containers, and distribute and sell it in the Netherlands. PepsiCo cannot enter into a competing licensing agreement with another firm to sell Pepsi-Cola in the Netherlands, nor can Heineken begin duplicating other products owned by PepsiCo (such as Lay’s Potato Chips) without a separate agreement. Nor can it alter PepsiCo’s formula, market the firm’s products as its own, or ship them outside the geographic boundaries specified in the agreement.

DETERMINING COMPENSATION Compensation is another basic issue that is specified in a licensing agreement. Obviously, the licensor wants to receive as much compensation as possible, whereas the licensee wants to pay as little as possible. Yet each also wants the agreement to be profitable for the other so that both parties will willingly perform their contractual obligations. Licensees must be careful to ensure that they can reach their target levels of profitability after paying licensing fees; the licensor will attempt to establish a rate that allows it to recoup its variable costs of negotiating and enforcing the licensing agreement plus recover at least part of its fixed investment in the intellectual property being licensed. Of course, from the licensor’s perspective, the license fee, after deducting these variable costs, should also exceed its opportunity costs—that is, the profits it would have earned had it entered the market via a different entry mode.

Compensation under a licensing agreement is called a royalty. The royalty is usually paid to the licensor in the form of a flat fee, a fixed amount per unit sold, or, most commonly, a percentage of the sales of the licensed product or service. Although the royalty amount is often determined by prevailing market forces, royalties between 3 and 5 percent of sales are typical and have long been viewed as reasonable and appropriate. Some licensing agreements also guarantee a minimum royalty payment to ensure that the foreign licensee will take full advantage of the market value of whatever has been licensed, rather than merely acquiring and then shelving it to keep domestic rivals from obtaining it.

ESTABLISHING RIGHTS, PRIVILEGES, AND CONSTRAINTS Other basic issues to be addressed in licensing agreements are the rights and privileges given to the licensee and the constraints imposed by the licensor. For example, if a licensee began using inferior materials as a way to boost its profit margin, the image of the licensor’s product could be severely damaged. Similarly, if the agreement included the transfer of technology, production processes, or work methods, the licensee might be tempted to sell this information to another firm, thereby harming the licensor. Or the licensee could simply underreport licensed sales as a means of reducing its licensing fees.

To prevent these practices, licensing agreements usually limit the licensee’s freedom to divulge information it has obtained from the licensor to third parties, specify the type and form of records the licensee must keep regarding sales of the licensed products or services, and define standards that will be adhered to regarding product and service quality. To avoid costly litigation, the licensing agreement should also detail how the parties will resolve any disagreements. Many licensing agreements require, for example, that disputes be resolved through the use of a third-party mediator.

SPECIFYING THE AGREEMENT’S DURATION The licensor may view the licensing agreement as a short-term strategy designed to obtain knowledge about the foreign market at low cost and with little risk. If sales of its products and services are strong, it may want to enter the market itself after the agreement has ended. Thus, the licensor may seek a short-term agreement. However, if the contract’s duration is too short, the licensee may be unwilling to invest in necessary consumer research, distribution networks, or production facilities, believing that it will be unable to
amortize its investment over the life of the licensing contract. Normally the licensor wants the
licensee to undertake these market development efforts. Accordingly, the greater the investment
costs incurred by the licensee, the longer is the likely duration of the licensing agreement. For
example, the licensees that built Tokyo Disneyland insisted on a 100-year licensing agreement
with the Walt Disney Company before agreeing to invest the millions of dollars necessary to build
the park. However, in most cases the term of the licensing agreement is far shorter than this.

Advantages and Disadvantages of International Licensing
Licensing carries relatively low financial risk, provided the licensor fully investigates its market
opportunities and the abilities of its licensees. It also allows the licensor to learn more about
the sales potential of its products and services in a new market without significant commitment
of financial and managerial resources. Licensees benefit through the opportunity to make
and sell, with relatively little R&D cost, products and services that have been successful in
other international markets. Nintendo game designers, for example, have the relative safety of
knowing there are millions of game system units available that will play their games.

However, licensing does have opportunity costs. It limits the market opportunities for both
parties. For example, as long as the licensing agreement between PepsiCo and Heineken is in
effect, PepsiCo cannot enter the soft-drink market in the Netherlands and Heineken cannot sell
competing soft drinks such as Coca-Cola. Further, licensor and licensee depend on each other
to maintain product quality and to promote the product’s brand image. Improper actions by
one party can damage the other party. Further, if the licensee or licensor does not adhere to the
agreement, costly and tedious litigation may hurt both parties.

No matter how carefully worded a licensing agreement may be, there is always the risk of
problems and misunderstandings. For example, several years ago Oleg Cassini licensed Jovan,
a U.S. subsidiary of London’s GlaxoSmithKline, to market the Cassini beauty products line in
the United States. After signing the agreement, Jovan was approached by Diane Von Furstenberg
Cosmetics with a similar proposal but better terms. Jovan subsequently signed a licensing
agreement with Von Furstenberg to make and market its products instead of Cassini’s. Cassini
was left without a licensee in the United States. To complicate things even further, a clause in
the contract between Jovan and Cassini prevented Cassini from licensing its name to any other
U.S. firm. Cassini sued Jovan for $789 million. The dispute was eventually settled out of court,
but it was more than three years beyond Cassini’s original target date when the firm finally got
its products into the United States.27 Laura Ashley ran into similar problems after it granted
L’Oréal exclusive rights for 20 years to develop Laura Ashley–branded cosmetics, toiletries, and
perfumes. The British company later sued the French cosmetics company, claiming that L’Oréal
had failed to develop the true potential of the Laura Ashley brand after it had only marketed one
perfume under the agreement in 6 years.28

A final concern is the long-term strategic implications of licensing a firm’s technology.
Many firms are concerned that sharing their technology will inadvertently create a future
competitor. The licensee, by producing under the licensing agreement, may be able to learn
the manufacturing secrets of the licensor or to develop new production tricks of its own. The
licensee can also build an independent reputation for manufacturing quality and service excel-
lence while operating under the contract. Although the licensing agreement may restrict the
geographical area in which the licensee can manufacture and sell the product, once it expires, the
former licensee may choose to expand its operations into the licensor’s existing territory. This is
a risk the licensor must take if it chooses to license its product.

In Practice
- International licensing can be profitable because the licensing firm can tap into new
  markets while incurring little additional commitment of cash or human resources.
- The downside to licensing is the loss of control over what the licensee will do when
  granted the license.

For further consideration: List three products that you believe could be successfully licensed.
List three products that you believe could not be successfully licensed. Explain why.
International Franchising

Still another popular strategy for internationalizing a business is franchising, actually a special form of licensing. Franchising allows the franchisor more control over the franchisee and provides for more support from the franchisor to the franchisee than is the case in the licensor-licensee relationship. International franchising is among the fastest-growing forms of international business activity today. A franchising agreement allows an independent entrepreneur or organization, called the franchisee, to operate a business under the name of another, called the franchisor, in return for a fee. The franchisor provides its franchisees with trademarks, operating systems, and well-known product reputations, as well as continuous support services such as advertising, training, reservation services (for hotel operations), and quality assurance programs.

Basic Issues in International Franchising

International franchising is likely to succeed when certain market conditions exist. First, it may work when the franchisor has been successful domestically because of unique products and advantageous operating procedures and systems. McDonald’s was successful initially because it provided a popular menu that was consistently prepared and service that was quick and efficient. Franchising may also be effective when the factors that contributed to domestic success are transferable to foreign locations. McDonald’s prospered because “American” food is popular in other countries, efficiency and lower prices are valued by consumers worldwide, and foreign visitors to the United States usually seem to want to visit a McDonald’s restaurant. Third, this may be a viable option if the franchisor has already achieved considerable success in franchising in its domestic market. For example, there were hundreds of franchised McDonald’s restaurants in the United States before the first was built abroad. Finally, foreign investors must be interested in entering into franchise agreements. For well-established franchisors like McDonald’s, this is typically not a problem.

Like licensing agreements, franchising agreements are spelled out in formal contracts, with a typical set of terms. The franchisor generally receives a fixed payment plus a royalty based on the franchisee’s sales for the rights to use the franchisor’s name, trademarks, formulas, and operating procedures. The franchisee usually agrees to adhere to the franchisor’s requirements for appearance, financial reporting, and operating procedures. However, franchisors are likely to allow some degree of flexibility to meet local customs and tastes. In fact, as with other licensing arrangements, one of the services the franchisee offers the franchisor is knowledge about the local market’s culture and customs. For example, McDonald’s restaurants sell beer or wine in many European countries. Finally, the franchisor almost always helps the franchisee establish the new business; provides expertise, advertising, and a corporate image; and is usually able to negotiate favorable arrangements with suppliers.

Numerous MNCs rely on franchising to internationalize their operations. Fast-food firms such as McDonald’s, Dunkin’ Donuts, Baskin-Robbins, Pizza Hut, and KFC have franchised restaurants worldwide. Benetton relies on franchised retail stores to distribute its clothing in some 120 countries. And Japan’s Bridgestone Corporation franchises both Bridgestone and Firestone tire retail outlets in the United States as well as several other countries.

Advantages and Disadvantages of International Franchising

On the plus side, franchisees can enter a business that has an established and proven product and operating system, and franchisors can expand internationally with relatively low risk and cost. A franchisor also can obtain critical information about local market customs and cultures from host country entrepreneurs that it otherwise might have difficulty obtaining. It further can learn valuable lessons from franchisees that apply to more than the host country. McDonald’s, for example, benefited from this worldwide learning phenomenon (see Chapter 11). Its U.S. managers once believed that the firm’s restaurants would be successful only if they were freestanding entities located in suburbs and smaller towns. A Japanese franchisee convinced the firm to allow him to open a restaurant in an inner-city office building. It quickly became one of the firm’s most popular restaurants. Because of the insight of its Japanese franchisee, McDonald’s now has restaurants in downtown locations in many cities throughout the world.

On the negative side, as with licensing, both parties to a franchising agreement must share the revenues earned at the franchised location. International franchising may also be more complicated than domestic franchising. For example, when McDonald’s expanded to Moscow, it had to teach...
local farmers how to grow potatoes that met its standards. Moreover, control is also an issue in international franchising. McDonald’s was once forced to revoke the franchise it had awarded a French investor because his stores were not maintained according to McDonald’s standards.

**In Practice**

- Franchising is a fast-growing mode of entry into new markets. By franchising, a company such as McDonald’s benefits from the local knowledge and local expertise of its franchisees.
- Franchisers need to monitor their franchisees to make sure that the franchisees’ decisions do not diminish the brand name and brand image of the franchiser.

*For further consideration: Franchising helps overcome the liability of foreignness. Would you expect that the more different two countries are, the more likely franchising will be used as a mode of entry? Why or why not?*

**Specialized Entry Modes for International Business**

A firm may also use any of several specialized strategies to participate in international business without making long-term investments. Such specialized modes include contract manufacturing, management contracts, and turnkey projects.

**Contract Manufacturing**

*Contract manufacturing* is used by firms, both large and small, that outsource most or all of their manufacturing needs to other companies. This strategy reduces the financial and human resources firms need to devote to the physical production of their products. Nike, for example, has chosen to focus its corporate energies on marketing its products and has contracted with numerous factories throughout Southeast Asia to produce its athletic footwear and apparel. Similarly, retailers such as Victoria’s Secret and J.C. Penney rely on contract manufacturers to fabricate their store-branded apparel. By using this approach, international businesses can focus on that part of the value chain where their distinctive competence lies and yet benefit from any location advantages generated by host-country production. However, they also surrender control over the production process, which can lead to quality problems or other unexpected surprises. Nike, for example, suffered a string of blows to its public image—including a series of unflattering *Doomesday* cartoons—because of reports of unsafe and harsh working conditions in Vietnamese factories churning out Nike footwear. Similarly, companies such as Benetton and Loblaw found themselves in an unwanted spotlight as a result of sourcing apparel from a Bangladeshi factory complex that collapsed, killing more than 1,100 workers.29 “Emerging Opportunities” discusses the growing importance of business process outsourcing, a service industry equivalent of contract manufacturing.

**Management Contract**

A *management contract* is an agreement whereby one firm provides managerial assistance, technical expertise, or specialized services to a second firm for some agreed-on time in return for monetary compensation. For its services the first firm may receive either a flat fee or a percentage of sales. The management contract may also specify performance bonuses based on profitability, sales growth, or quality measures. Management contracts allow firms to earn additional revenues without incurring any investment risks or obligations. A subsidiary of Hilton Hotels, for example, offers hotel management and reservation services to hotels that bear the Hilton logo but that are not company-owned. Similarly, major airlines such as Air France, British Airways, and Lufthansa often sell their management expertise to small state-owned airlines headquartered in developing countries.

**Turnkey Project**

Another specialized strategy for participating in international business is the turnkey project. A *turnkey project* is a contract under which a firm agrees to fully design, construct, and equip a facility and then turn the project over to the purchaser when it is ready for operation. The turnkey contract may be for a fixed price, in which case the firm makes its profit by keeping its costs...
below the fixed price. Or the contract may provide for payment on a cost-plus basis, which shifts the risk of cost overruns from the contractor to the purchaser.

International turnkey contracts often involve large, complex, multiyear projects such as construction of a nuclear power plant, an airport, or an oil refinery. Managing such complex construction projects requires special expertise. As a result, most are administered by large construction firms such as Bechtel, KBR, Hyundai Group, Daelim, New Zealand’s Fletcher Challenge Ltd., and Germany’s Friedrich Krupp GmbH. KBR, for example, was selected as the project manager for a $19-billion petrochemical complex being built by a joint venture between Saudi Aramco and Dow Chemical. The awarding of lucrative turnkey projects is often based on the availability of home government financing, such as through the Eximbank of the United States, or on political ties between the host and home countries. U.S. construction engineering firms have secured many contracts in Saudi Arabia because of the friendly relations between the two countries, while French construction companies have done well in Francophone Africa.

An increasingly popular variant of the turnkey project is the so-called B-O-T project, in which the firm builds a facility, operates it, and later transfers ownership of the project to some other party. Through this approach, the contractor profits from operation and ownership of the project for some period of time but bears any financial risks associated with it during this period. For example, the government of Gabon wished to upgrade the quality of electrical service and fresh water delivered to its citizens. Aided by the International Finance Corporation, a branch of the World Bank Group discussed in Chapter 7, Gabon contracted with Ireland’s Electricity Supply Board International and France’s Compagnie Générale des Eaux to operate the country’s electrical and water systems for 20 years. The two companies invested $600 million to improve these basic services. After the 20-year contract expires, ownership of these assets will be transferred to the government of Gabon.

EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES

BUSINESS PROCESS OUTSOURCING

Business process outsourcing (BPO) covers a variety of business functions, ranging from routine call centers focusing on telemarketing, customer service, and technical support to more sophisticated and expensive services like financial analysis, tax return preparation, and legal document review. India is the market leader in providing international BPO. Its initial success was based on the large supply of well-trained English-speaking graduates that its universities produce each year. However, the BPO market has expanded so much that Indian BPO providers are finding it increasingly difficult to fill newly created positions, particularly in Bangalore and New Delhi. As a result, wages in the sector have increased, as has labor turnover. In response Indian BPO providers have targeted higher-value-added markets to maintain their profitability. For example, some large MNCs, such as Citigroup and General Electric, have begun outsourcing routine legal work like contract preparation and patent filings to Indian BPO firms, who charge a quarter to a third what a U.S. law firm would bill for the work. Other Indian firms have entered the remote infrastructure management business, offering to monitor from afar who enters and exits a client’s buildings or to protect a client’s computer network when hackers attempt to penetrate it. Similarly, Tata Consultancy Services engineering-services division develops computer simulations for auto manufacturers wanting to examine the effects of acceleration and rapid deceleration (i.e., crashes) on their latest car designs.

Other countries have also benefited from the boom in BPO, often because they possess market-specific advantages unavailable to Indian firms. CendrisBSC, a Dutch call-center operator, has established a call center in Cape Town, South Africa, to service its customers in the Netherlands. Labor in the Netherlands is expensive, whereas South Africa suffers from high rates of unemployment—an estimated 30 to 40 percent. But low labor costs are not the country’s only attraction.

Europe and South Africa share a common time zone, and a new submarine fiber-optic cable laid in 2003 connecting Europe to South Africa reduced communications costs. More importantly, 6 million South African citizens speak Afrikaans, a language that evolved from seventeenth-century Dutch. CendrisBSC has found that most Afrikaans speakers need only three months of intense training to become fluent in Dutch, although some cultural readjustments must be made because South Africans usually exchange pleasantries before commencing a business conversation, whereas the Dutch often prefer to get down to business immediately.

Stockholm-headquartered Transcom Worldwide SA has adopted a different strategy: taking advantage of the lower labor costs and language abilities of citizens of the EU’s new entrants, Transcom has established call centers in the three Baltic republics, Hungary, and Poland. Many Estonians, for example, speak English, Estonian, Finnish, and Russian, allowing Transcom to serve the regional needs of clients such as FedEx, IBM, and Shell. French customers are served by its operations in francophone Morocco. And, ironically, its Spanish call centers serve the Swedish market, for Transcom finds there is no shortage of Swedes living there who are trying to escape the cold.

Foreign Direct Investment

Exporting, licensing, franchising, and the specialized strategies just discussed all allow a firm to internationalize its business without investing in foreign factories or facilities. However, many firms prefer to enter international markets through ownership and control of assets in host countries. Other firms may first establish themselves in a foreign market through exporting, licensing, franchising, or contract manufacturing. After gaining knowledge of and expertise in operating in the host country, they may then want to expand in the market through ownership of production or distribution facilities, as was Baskin-Robbins’ strategy in Russia.

Such FDI affords the firm increased control over its international business operations, as well as increased profit potential. Control is particularly important to the firm if it needs to closely coordinate the activities of its foreign subsidiaries to achieve strategic synergies, as IBM has long done, or if it determines that the control is necessary to fully exploit the economic potential of proprietary technology, manufacturing expertise, or some other intellectual property right.

In one study, for example, British subsidiaries of U.S.-headquartered MNCs were found to be more effective and successful competitors in the United Kingdom than a matched set of British-owned firms, primarily because the U.S. parents were able to transfer their technological and managerial expertise to their British affiliates.31

FDI is also beneficial if host country customers prefer dealing with local factories. Many firms and governments participate in programs that favor locally made products—for example, “Buy American” or “Buy Korean”—to promote their local economies. Equally important, many purchasing managers perceive that local production implies more reliable supply, faster service, and better communication with suppliers.

On the other hand, FDI exposes the firm to greater economic and political risks and operating complexity, as well as the potential erosion of the value of its foreign investments if exchange rates change adversely. A firm’s decision to engage in FDI may also be influenced by government policies. As noted in Chapter 3, host countries may discourage FDI through direct controls on foreign capital, bans on the acquisition of local companies by foreigners, or restrictions on repatriation of dividends and capital; home countries can promote FDI through such devices as political risk insurance. Firms using FDI must also meet the standard challenges of managing, operating, and financing their foreign subsidiaries while facing the additional hurdle of doing so in political, legal, and cultural milieus different from their own.

There are three methods for FDI: (1) building new facilities (called the greenfield strategy), (2) buying existing assets in a foreign country (called the acquisition strategy or the brownfield strategy), and (3) participating in a joint venture.

The Greenfield Strategy

The greenfield strategy involves starting a new operation from scratch (the word greenfield arises from the image of starting with a virgin green site and then building on it). The firm buys or leases land, constructs new facilities, hires or transfers in managers and employees, and then launches the new operation. Samsung’s semiconductor chip fabrication facility in Texas represents a greenfield investment, as does the Mercedes-Benz automobile assembly plant in Alabama and Nissan’s factory in Sunderland, England.
The greenfield strategy has several advantages. For one thing, the firm can select the site that best meets its needs and construct modern, up-to-date facilities. Local communities often offer economic development incentives to attract such facilities because they will create new jobs; these incentives lower the firm’s costs. The firm also starts with a clean slate. Managers do not have to deal with existing debts, nurse outmoded equipment, or struggle to modify ancient work rules protected by intransigent labor unions. For example, GM’s managers considered a major advantage of its building a new factory in Eisenach in the former East Germany to be its ability to implement Japanese-style production techniques and labor policies without having to battle workers wedded to the old way of doing things. In addition, the firm can acclimate itself to the new national business culture at its own pace, rather than having the instant responsibility of managing a newly acquired, ongoing business. Research indicates that the greater the cultural differences between the home and host countries, the more likely a firm is to choose to build a new factory rather than purchase an existing firm.\textsuperscript{32}

However, the greenfield strategy also has some disadvantages. For one thing, successful implementation takes time and patience. For another, land in the desired location may be unavailable or expensive. In building the new factory, the firm must also comply with various local and national regulations and oversee the factory’s construction. It must also recruit a local workforce and train it to meet the firm’s performance standards. And finally, by constructing a new facility, the firm may be more strongly perceived as a foreign enterprise.

Disney managers faced several of these difficulties in building Disneyland Paris. Although the French government sold the necessary land to Disney at bargain prices, Disney was not fully prepared to deal with French construction contractors. For example, Disney executives had numerous communications difficulties with a painter that applied 20 different shades of pink to a hotel before the firm approved the color. The park’s grand opening was threatened when local contractors demanded an additional $150 million for extra work allegedly requested by Disney. And Disney clashed with its French employees, who resisted the firm’s attempt to impose its U.S. work values and grooming standards on them.\textsuperscript{33}

The Acquisition Strategy

A second FDI strategy is acquisition of an existing firm conducting business in the host country. Although the actual transaction may no doubt be complex—requiring bankers, lawyers, regulators, and mergers and acquisitions specialists from several countries—the basic motivation for it is quite simple. By acquiring a going concern, the purchaser quickly obtains control over the acquired firm’s factories, employees, technology, brand names, and distribution networks. The acquired firm can continue to generate revenues as the purchaser integrates it into its overall international strategy. And, unlike the greenfield strategy, the acquisition strategy adds no new capacity to the industry. In times of overcapacity, this is an obvious benefit. As the chapter’s opening case indicated, the acquisition strategy is the approach Bernard Arnault favored in building LVMH.

Sometimes international businesses acquire local firms simply as a means of entering a new market. For instance, Cemex SA’s purchase of Britain’s RMC Group for $5.8 billion, which made the Mexican company the world’s largest manufacturer of ready-mix concrete, allowed it to swiftly benefit from RMC’s dominance of the European cement and concrete market.\textsuperscript{34} Similarly, Best Buy chose to enter the Chinese market by buying a controlling interest in Jiangsu Five Star Appliance Co. The purchase of the 136-store appliance and retailing chain allowed Best Buy to quickly establish a presence in that country and to capture economies of scale in sourcing, marketing, and distribution.\textsuperscript{35} Although we noted previously in the chapter that Best Buy is shuttering its Chinese outlets bearing the Best Buy brand, the U.S. company is busily adding Five Star-branded stores, a format more attuned to the needs of Chinese consumers.\textsuperscript{36}

At other times, acquisitions may be undertaken by a firm as a means of implementing a major strategic change. For example, the state-owned Saudi Arabian Oil Co. has tried to reduce its dependence on crude oil production by purchasing “downstream” firms, such as Petron Corporation, the largest petroleum refiner in the Philippines, and South Korea’s Ssangyong Oil Refining Company. Similarly, to increase its presence in emerging markets and in noncarbonated beverages, PepsiCo agreed to pay $1.4 billion for 74 percent of Russia’s largest juice producer, OAO Lebedyansky.\textsuperscript{37}
The acquisition strategy does have some disadvantages, however. The acquiring firm assumes all the liabilities—financial, managerial, and otherwise—of the acquired firm. If the acquired firm has poor labor relations, unfunded pension obligations, or hidden environmental cleanup liabilities, the acquiring firm becomes financially responsible for solving the problem. For instance, Argentina’s YPF SA is being sued by the state of New Jersey for actions of Maxus Energy Corporation, a firm it acquired in 1995. Maxus is accused of dumping dioxin, a carcinogenic pesticide, in the Passaic River in the 1950s and 1960s. The acquiring firm must also spend substantial sums up front. For example, when Kraft purchased Britain’s Cadbury PLC for $19 billion in 2010, it had to pay out this vast sum shortly after the deal was closed. The greenfield strategy, in contrast, may allow a firm to grow slowly and spread its investment over an extended period.

Joint Ventures
Another form of FDI is the joint venture. Joint ventures (JV) are created when two or more firms agree to work together and create a jointly owned separate firm to promote their mutual interests. The number of such arrangements is burgeoning as rapid changes in technology, telecommunications, and government policies outstrip the ability of international firms to exploit opportunities on their own. Because of the growing importance of international intercorporate cooperation, as well as the unique set of challenges it offers international firms, we devote Chapter 13 to this subject.

In Practice
- FDI to date totals more than $20 trillion. The bulk of FDI occurs through acquisitions of existing companies.
- A company using the acquisition approach must be careful to assess the potential liabilities it will be acquiring when it purchases an existing firm.

For further consideration: What are the advantages of the greenfield strategy? What are the disadvantages?

MyManagementLab®
Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary
An important aspect of international strategy formulation is determining which markets to enter. To make this decision, a firm must consider many factors, including market potential, competition, legal and political environments, and sociocultural influences. It must also carefully assess the costs, benefits, and risks associated with each prospective market. Once a firm has decided to expand its international operations and has assessed potential foreign markets, it must decide how to enter and compete most effectively in the selected foreign markets. An array of strategic options is available for doing this. Choosing an entry mode involves careful assessment of firm-specific ownership advantages, location advantages, and internalization advantages.

Exporting, the most common initial entry mode, is the process of sending goods or services from one country to other countries for use or sale there. Exporting continues to grow rapidly. There are several forms of exporting, including indirect exporting, direct exporting, and intracorporate transfer. In deciding whether to export, a firm must consider such factors as government policies, marketing concerns,
consumer information needs, logistical considerations, and distribution issues. Export intermediaries are often used to facilitate exporting. These include export management companies, Webb-Pomerene associations, international trading companies, and export trading companies.

International licensing, another popular entry mode, occurs when one firm leases the right to use its intellectual property to another firm. Basic issues in international licensing include negotiating mutually acceptable terms, determining compensation, defining the rights and privileges of, and the constraints imposed on the licensee, and specifying the duration of the agreement.

International franchising is also growing rapidly as an entry mode. International franchising is an arrangement whereby an independent organization or entrepreneur operates a business under the name of another. Several market conditions must exist for a firm to successfully franchise. As with licensing agreements, the terms of a franchising agreement are usually quite detailed and specific.

Three specialized entry modes are contract manufacturing, the management contract, and the turnkey project. Contract manufacturing permits a firm to outsource physical production of its product and focus its energies on some other element of the value chain. A management contract calls for one firm to provide managerial assistance, technical assistance, or specialized services to another firm for a fee. A turnkey project involves one firm agreeing to fully design, construct, and equip a facility for another.

The most complex entry mode is FDI. FDI involves the ownership and control of assets in a foreign market. The greenfield strategy for FDI calls for the investing firm to start a totally new enterprise from scratch. The acquisition strategy, in contrast, involves buying an existing firm or operation in the foreign market. In joint ventures, a third form of FDI, ownership and control are shared by two or more firms.

**Review Questions**

12-1. What are the key indicators in understanding a market’s potential?
12-2. What are the global and local competitive issues a firm seeking to enter a new market must address?
12-3. What is exporting? Why has it increased so dramatically in recent years?
12-4. What are the primary advantages and disadvantages of exporting?
12-5. What are three forms of exporting?
12-6. What is an export intermediary? What is its role?
12-7. What are the various types of export intermediaries?
12-8. How do firms address opportunities at the Bottom of the Pyramid?
12-9. What are three specialized entry modes for international business, and how do they work?
12-10. What is FDI? What are its three basic forms? What are the relative advantages and disadvantages of each?

**Questions for Discussion**

12-11. Do you think it is possible for someone to make a decision about entering a particular foreign market without having visited that market? Why or why not?
12-12. How do managers balance the need for control as a decision factor on the choice of entry modes if other factors are favorable?
12-13. How does each advantage in Dunning’s eclectic theory specifically affect a firm’s decision regarding entry mode?
12-14. Discuss the importance of location-specific advantages of global firms.
12-15. What specific factors could cause a firm to reject exporting as an entry mode?
12-16. What conditions must exist for an intracorporate transfer to be cost-effective?
12-17. Your firm is about to begin exporting. In selecting an export intermediary, what characteristics would you look for?
12-18. In today’s era of technology-driven globalization, do you think export management companies can continue to provide valuable service to exporters?
12-19. What factors could cause you to reject an offer from a potential licensee to make and market your firm’s products in a foreign market?
12-20. Under what conditions should a firm consider a greenfield strategy for FDI? An acquisition strategy?

**Building Global Skills**

Heineken is the third-largest brewer in the world, with sales of €18.4 billion. Eighty percent of these sales occur outside Western Europe, the regional home of the Amsterdam-headquartered firm. When Heineken enters a new market, it follows a basic set of steps designed to maximize its potential profits in that market:

- It often begins to export its beer into that market as a way to boost brand familiarity and image.
- If sales look promising, it then licenses its brands to a local brewer. Doing this allows Heineken to build its sales further while simultaneously becoming more familiar with local distribution networks.
Part 3 • Managing International Business

- If this relationship also yields promising results, Heineken then either buys partial ownership of the local brewer or forms a new joint venture with that brewer.

The end result is a two-tier arrangement with the more expensive Heineken label at the top end of the market and the lower-priced local brands at the bottom, all sharing a common brewery, sales force, and distribution network.

After reading and thinking about Heineken’s approach, break up into groups of four or five people each and proceed as follows:

12-21. Identify at least five products or brands you are familiar with that could use the same three-step approach perfected by Heineken for entering foreign markets. Develop a clear rationale to support each example.

12-22. Identify at least five products or brands that probably could not use that strategy. Develop a clear rationale to support each example.

12-23. Randomly list the 10 examples you identified, keeping the rationale for each hidden. Exchange lists with another group. Each group should discuss the list given to it by the other group and classify the various products or brands into one of two categories: “can copy Heineken’s approach” and “cannot copy Heineken’s approach.” Be sure to have some rationale for your decision.

12-24. Each pair of groups that exchanged lists should form one new group. Compare lists and note areas in which the smaller groups agreed and disagreed on their classifications. Discuss the reasons for any disagreements in classification.

12-25. What are the specific factors that enable Heineken to use the approach described and simultaneously make it difficult for some other firms to copy it? What types of firms are most and least likely to be able to use this approach?

12-26. What does this exercise teach you about international business?

Closing Case: The House of Tata

As Chapter 1 indicated, the role of emerging markets in the world economy is growing. It should come as no surprise that multinational enterprises (MNEs) headquartered in emerging markets are also playing a growing role. Fortune’s Global 500 contained only 21 such firms in 2002. In 2012, that number has grown to 81.

One of the most important of these emerging market MNEs is the Mumbai-based Tata Group. Founded in 1868 by Jamsetji Tata, the Tata Group now consists of 90 companies focused on seven business segments that span industrial products, consumer goods, and high technology. Thirty-one of these companies, such as information-technology specialist Tata Consultancy Services, trade as publicly listed firms; the remainder are privately held. The Tata Group generated $100 billion in revenues in 2012 and employed more than 456,000 workers. About 59 percent of its revenue is produced outside the domestic Indian market.

In some ways, the organizational structure of the Tata Group is typical of many businesses in the world. In most countries, the predominant form of large corporate organization is a family-owned, family-centered, or bank-centered conglomerate, typified by Korea’s chaebol, Japan’s keiretsu, or Latin America’s grupos. Indeed, other than in the Anglo-Saxon countries that inherited British traditions, the Anglo-American model of a stand-alone firm with dispersed shareholders run by professional managers is the exception, rather than the rule. This chapter’s opening case, for example, highlights the international expansion strategy of France’s LVMH Louis Vuitton Moët Hennessy, a large family-controlled conglomerate that specializes in luxury brands.

Particularly in emerging markets, such diversified conglomerates may exist because of institutional voids in a domestic economy. In nations in which the rule of law is weak or in which markets for capital or executive talent are nonexistent, the group form of organization may arise to overcome these voids. Instead of acquiring resources through the marketplace, the firm internalizes these exchanges through group member to group member transactions.

The Tata Group differs from the family-owned conglomerate model in some interesting ways, however. The group has always had a strong social commitment. Founder Jamsetji Tata was among the first in India to implement progressive work practices such as shorter work hours. He established the JN Tata Endowment in 1892 to support Indian students seeking higher education. Other trusts, including the Sir Ratan Tata Trust and the Sir Dorabji
Chapter 12 • Strategies for Analyzing and Entering Foreign Markets

Tata Trust, were created by his descendants to support initiatives in health, education, scientific research, and other fields. Various charitable trusts established by the Tata family now own two-thirds of Tata Sons, which in turn owns controlling interest in various companies that constitute the Tata Group.

Each Tata company operates as an independent entity, with its own management team, board of directors, and shareholders. The Tata Group, however, is proud of and concerned about maintaining the integrity of the Tata brand. To be able to use the Tata name, the independent companies must act according to the Tata Business Excellence Model. Individual employees must sign the Tata Group Code of Contact, which stresses the importance of integrity, understanding, excellence, unity, and responsibility.

This commitment to integrity was heightened when Ratan Tata took over leadership of the Tata Group two decades ago. He confronted a sprawling confederation of some 300 companies. He immediately sought to seek synergies from the firms in this diverse empire, while selling off unprofitable and underperforming units. Ratan Tata decided that many of the Tata companies had become inefficient, having been protected by the high tariff walls erected by the Indian government (see page 67). He set about to improve the competitiveness of the group’s firms by investing in R&D, improving training, and strengthening the Tata brand, particularly outside of India.

A key element of Ratan Tata’s brand-strengthening strategy was to acquire foreign companies to aid the competitiveness of firms within the Tata Group. In 2000, Tata Tea acquired Britain’s Tetley Tea for $432 million. In 2004, Tata Motors purchased the struggling heavy vehicles unit of Daewoo Motors; in 2008, it purchased the Land Rover and Jaguar brands from Ford Motor Company for $2.3 billion. Tata Chemicals purchased control of Britain’s Brunner Mond Group in 2005. In 2005, Tata Steel acquired Singapore’s NatSteel for $300 million; in 2007, it purchased steel giant Corus, an Anglo-Dutch company, for $13 billion.

Unlike many acquirers, Tata often leaves the management teams of its acquired businesses intact, but provides corporate support, investment capital, or other needed resources. It usually sends Tata managers to learn from the new subsidiaries. In the case of Tetley, Tata was interested in learning about tea cultivation, product branding, and export development. Tata Global Beverages is now the world’s second-largest seller of tea. In Corus’ case, it was to learn about producing higher-quality steel to meet the growing needs of India’s motor vehicle industry. Tata Steel is now the world’s 10th-largest producer of that product. And, to the surprise of many industry experts, Tata has made Jaguar Land Rover an important player in the luxury automobile market. It sold 358,000 vehicles in 2012, up 30 percent from the previous year. The auto company is investing $219 million in a new British engine manufacturing center to boost the performance while lowering the emissions of its engines.

The Tata Group’s biggest challenge may be the loss of its dynamic leader. Ratan Tata retired as the chairman of the group at the end of 2012. His successor, Cyrus Mistry, is the first non-family member to chair the group. Needless to say, Mistry has some big shoes to fill.

Case Questions

12-27. What advantages does the Tata Group gain from being a conglomerate?

12-28. What are institutional voids? Why might they encourage the conglomerate form of organization in emerging markets?

12-29. Many corporate takeovers involve the acquiring firm installing its own managers and slashing the payrolls of the acquired firm. Why has Tata chosen to retain the existing management teams of the foreign companies it has taken over?

12-30. The Tata Group has a strong commitment to high ethical standards and corporate social responsibility. Does it gain any competitive advantages in the marketplace because of this commitment?

12-31. What advice would you give to Cyrus Mistry, Rajan Tata’s successor? What are the primary challenges that Mistry faces? What changes, if any, would you recommend to make to the Tata Group’s policies and procedures?

12-32. Discuss the factors that a firm should consider in deciding whether or not to enter a foreign market.

12-33. Discuss the primary modes of entering a foreign market. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each of these modes?

12-34. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


21. Geir Grrip, “The determinants of export decisions and attitudes to a distant market: Norwegian
fishery exports to Japan,” *The Journal of International Business Studies*, vol. 21, no. 3 (Third Quarter 1990), pp. 469–494.


23. Desmond, op. cit.


CHAPTER 13

International Strategic Alliances

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Compare joint ventures and other forms of strategic alliances.
2. Characterize the benefits of strategic alliances.
3. Describe the scope of strategic alliances.
4. Discuss the forms of management used for strategic alliances.
5. Identify the limitations of strategic alliances.

MyManagementLab®

🌟 Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
THE EUROPEAN CEREAL WARS

Kellogg virtually created the market for breakfast cereals in Europe. The maker of such popular brands as Kellogg’s Corn Flakes, Rice Krispies, and Frosted Flakes, Kellogg began introducing its products in the United Kingdom in the 1920s and on the European continent in the 1950s. However, Europeans traditionally favored bread, fruit, eggs, and meats for breakfast, so the firm had a tough sell on its hands. Indeed, it took decades for Europeans to accept cereals as a viable breakfast choice.

Fortunately for cereal makers, during the 1980s and 1990s, demand for breakfast cereals in Europe began to accelerate as European consumers became more health-conscious and started looking for breakfast alternatives to eggs and meat. The busy schedules of the increasing number of dual-career families spurred demand for prepackaged foods. Another contributing factor has been the emergence of supermarkets in Europe. Traditionally most food products in Europe were sold at small specialty stores, which were often reluctant to stock cereals because they take up so much shelf space. In recent years, however, more full-line supermarkets have opened in Europe, and shelf space is now available for a wider array of products. Finally, the growth of commercial TV outlets in Europe has helped firms increase brand awareness and demand through advertising. Needless to say, the enormous potential of the European cereal market also attracted the interests of Kellogg’s competitors.

One of Kellogg’s biggest competitors in the United States is General Mills, which makes popular brands such as Cheerios and Golden Grahams. General Mills has traditionally concentrated on the North American market. But in 1989 General Mills’ managers decided it was time for the company to enter the European market. However, they also recognized that taking on Kellogg, which controlled 50 percent of the worldwide cereal market and dominated the European market, would be a monumental battle.

After careful consideration, General Mills’ Chief Executive Officer (CEO) Bruce Atwater decided that the firm could compete most effectively in Europe if it worked with a strategically located partner. It didn’t take him long to choose one: Nestlé, the world’s largest food-processing firm. Nestlé is a household name in Europe, has a well-established distribution system, and owns manufacturing plants worldwide. One major area in which Nestlé had never succeeded, however, was the cereal market. Thus, Atwater reasoned that Nestlé would be a logical and willing partner.

When he approached his counterpart at Nestlé, he was amazed to discover that that firm had already been considering approaching General Mills about just such an arrangement. From Nestlé’s perspective, General Mills could contribute its knowledge of cereal technology, its array of proven cereal products, and its expertise in marketing cereals to consumers, especially children.

Top managers of the two firms met and quickly outlined a plan of attack. Each firm contributed around $80 million to create a new firm called Cereal Partners Worldwide (CPW). CPW’s corporate offices were established in Lausanne, Switzerland. General Mills agreed to install its proprietary manufacturing systems in existing Nestlé factories, oversee the production of cereals, and help develop advertising campaigns. Nestlé, in turn, agreed to use its own globally recognized corporate name on the products and to handle sales and distribution throughout Europe. The two partners set two major goals for CPW: They wanted CPW to be generating annual sales of $1 billion and to be a strong number 2 in market share outside North America by the year 2000.

By almost any measure, CPW has been a roaring success. Among its first triumphs was a deal struck with Disneyland Paris to supply breakfast cereals to the restaurants and hotels at the French theme park and to use Disney characters to promote the firm’s cereals. The firm quickly established itself as a major player in the European cereal market, with an impressive 25 percent of the United Kingdom market. Having solidified its beachhead in Europe, CPW then expanded its operations to Latin America and Asia. With revenues of $2 billion in 2011, it is now one of the world’s largest cereal manufacturers. CPW operates in 140 countries and markets 50 brands, delivering a steady and growing stream of earnings for its parents, Nestlé and General Mills.1

Globalization can be an expensive process, particularly when a firm must perfectly coordinate research and development (R&D), production, distribution, marketing, and financial decisions throughout the world to succeed. A firm may discover that it lacks all the necessary internal resources to effectively compete against its rivals internationally. The high costs of researching and developing new products alone may stretch its corporate budget. Thus, a firm may seek partners to share these costs. Or a firm may develop a new technology but lack a distribution network or production facilities in all the national markets it wants to serve. Accordingly, the firm may seek out other firms with skills or advantages that complement its own and negotiate agreements to work together. Such factors motivated Nestlé and General Mills to team together, as the opening case indicated.
Part 3 • Managing International Business

International Corporate Cooperation

Cooperation between international firms can take many forms, such as cross-licensing of proprietary technology, sharing of production facilities, cofunding of research projects, and marketing of each other’s products using existing distribution networks. Such forms of cooperation are known collectively as **strategic alliances**, business arrangements whereby two or more firms choose to cooperate for their mutual benefit. The partners in a strategic alliance may agree to pool R&D activities, marketing expertise, or managerial talent. For example, in the early 1990s, Kodak and Fuji—two fierce competitors in the film market—formed a strategic alliance with camera manufacturers Canon, Minolta, and Nikon to develop a new standard for cameras and film, the Advanced Photo System, to make picture taking easier and more goof-proof.²

A **joint venture (JV)** is a special type of strategic alliance in which two or more firms join together to create a new business entity that is legally separate and distinct from its parents. JVs are normally established as corporations and are owned by the founding parents in whatever proportions they negotiate. Although unequal ownership is common, many are owned equally by the founding firms. Cereal Partners Worldwide represents this type of alliance.

A strategic alliance is only one method by which a firm can enter or expand its international operations. As Chapter 12 discussed, other alternatives exist: exporting, licensing, franchising, and foreign direct investment (FDI). In each of these alternatives, however, a firm acts alone or hires a second individual or firm—often one further down the distribution chain—to act on its behalf. In contrast, a strategic alliance results from cooperation among two or more firms. Each participant in a strategic alliance is motivated to promote its own self-interest but has determined that cooperation is the best way to achieve its goals.

Some means is required for managing any cooperative agreement. A JV, as a separate legal entity, must have its own set of managers and board of directors. It may be managed in any of three ways. First, the founding firms may jointly share management, with each appointing key personnel who report back to officers of the parent. Second, one parent may assume primary responsibility. And third, an independent team of managers may be hired to run it. The third approach is often preferred because independent managers focus on what is best for the JV rather than attempting to placate bosses from the founding firms.³ Other types of strategic alliances may be managed more informally—for example, by a coordinating committee, composed of employees of each of the partners, which oversees the alliance’s progress.

A formal management organization allows a JV to be broader in purpose, scope (or range of operations), and duration than other types of strategic alliances. A non-JV strategic alliance may be formed merely to allow the partners to overcome a particular hurdle that each faces in the short run. A JV will be more helpful if the two firms plan a more extensive and long-term relationship. A typical non-JV strategic alliance has a narrow purpose and scope, such as marketing a new smartphone in Canada. A JV might be formed if firms wanted to cooperate in the design, production, and sale of a broad line of telecommunications equipment in North America. Non-JV strategic alliances are often formed for a specific purpose that may have a natural ending. For example, the agreement among the camera manufacturers Canon, Minolta, and Nikon and the film manufacturers Fuji and Kodak to jointly create the Advanced Photo System for cameras and film terminated in 1996 after the new standards were developed. Each participant then marketed the resulting products on its own: Kodak called its new film Advantix; Minolta labeled its new cameras Vectis; and Nikon chose the name Nuvis.⁴ But because JVs are separate legal entities, they generally have a longer duration. A venture such as CPW has an indefinite time horizon in that it will continue to function so long as its two owners are satisfied with its performance.

Because of their narrow mission and lack of a formal organizational structure, non-JV strategic alliances are relatively less stable than JVs. For example, in 1988 United Airlines and British Airways entered into an agreement to form a strategic marketing alliance involving their North American and European routes. At the time, United was offering limited service to Europe and was losing market share to archrivals Delta and American Airlines, both of which offered more extensive service there. To solve its problem, United agreed to coordinate its flight schedules with British Airways, thereby making it more convenient for a Europe-bound U.S. traveler to board a domestic United flight and then transfer to a transatlantic British Airways flight. United and British Airways both prominently described the arrangement in
their marketing campaigns and in the visits of their marketing reps to U.S. and European travel agencies. Within a year, however, Pan Am’s routes to London were placed on the auction block. United quickly purchased those routes from Pan Am and severed relations with its strategic ally. British Airways was of little use to United once United could operate in London on its own. Needing a transatlantic partner, British Airways then entered into a similar strategic alliance with US Air in 1993. Three years later American Airlines and British Airways agreed to form a separate strategic alliance. US Air, believing that it would be the weakest partner in a three-way alliance, promptly sued British Airways and terminated their alliance.

**In Practice**

- Strategic alliances occur when two or more companies agree to cooperate to achieve a mutual objective.
- A joint venture (JV) is a strategic alliance in which a new firm or organization is created. JVs are often used when the proposed strategic alliance is complex and expected to be long-lived.

*For further consideration: Why have JVs involving firms from two or more countries become so popular?*

**Benefits of Strategic Alliances**

Firms that enter into strategic alliances usually expect to benefit in one or more ways. As summarized in Figure 13.1, international business may realize four benefits from strategic alliances: ease of market entry, shared risk, shared knowledge and expertise, and synergy and competitive advantage.

**Ease of Market Entry**

A firm wishing to enter a new market often faces major obstacles, such as entrenched competition or hostile government regulations. Partnering with a local firm can often help it navigate around such barriers. In other cases, economies of scale and scope in marketing and distribution confer benefits on firms that aggressively and quickly enter numerous markets. Yet the costs of speed and boldness are often high and beyond the capabilities of a single firm. A strategic alliance may allow the firm to achieve the benefits of rapid entry while keeping costs down.

For example, IMAX recently targeted China as an important growth market for filmed entertainment. To speed its entry, it entered into a $40 million JV with Wanda Cinema Line, the operator of China’s largest theater chain, to build 75 IMAX theaters in China. IMAX will supply its specialized projection equipment, while Wanda will build the theaters. A similar meshing of strengths motivated a JV between Cigna, the U.S. insurance giant, and Banco Excel Economico, one of Brazil’s largest privately owned banks, to sell personal insurance in Brazil.
Part 3 • Managing International Business

Cigna provides expertise in selling life, accident, and credit insurance to consumers, while Banco Excel supplies its knowledge of the Brazilian financial services industry, as well as access to its existing retail customer base. Each partner contributed half of the $19 million invested in the new company, Excel Cigna Seguradora.9

Regulations imposed by national governments also influence the formation of JVs. Many countries are so concerned about the influence of foreign firms on their economies that they require multinational corporations (MNCs) to work with a local partner if they want to operate in these countries.10 For example, the government of Namibia, an African nation, requires foreign investors operating fishing fleets off its coast to work with local partners. At other times governments strongly encourage foreign companies to partner with local firms as a means of transferring technology to its automobile industry. A local partner may also make it easier to navigate through complex laws and customs. For instance, Rio Tinto, an Anglo-Australian mining company, formed a JV with Chinalco, China’s leading aluminum company, to explore for ore deposits in China. The JV will benefit from Rio Tinto’s expertise and Chinalco’s knowledge of local laws and ways of doing business.11

Shared Risk

Today’s major industries are so competitive that no firm has a guarantee of success when it enters a new market or develops a new product. Strategic alliances can be used to either reduce or control individual firms’ risks. For example, Boeing established a strategic alliance with several Japanese firms to reduce its financial risk in the development and production of the Boeing 777 jet. Researching, designing, and safety-testing a new aircraft model costs billions of dollars, much of which must be spent before the manufacturer can establish how well the airplane will be received in the marketplace. Even though Boeing has enjoyed much success as a manufacturer of commercial aircraft, it wanted to reduce its financial exposure on the 777 project. Thus, it collaborated with three Japanese partners—Fuji, Mitsubishi, and Kawasaki—agreeing to let them build 20 percent of the 777 airframe. Boeing, the controlling partner in the alliance, also hoped its allies would help sell the new aircraft to large Japanese customers such as Japan Air Lines and All Nippon Airways. The arrangement proved so successful that Boeing used it as well in designing and producing its latest jet, the 787 Dreamliner.

Or consider the strategic alliance involving Kodak and Fuji and three Japanese camera firms discussed previously. At face value, it might seem odd for Kodak to agree to collaborate with Fuji, its biggest competitor, to develop a new film that both would make and sell. Closer scrutiny, however, suggests that the arrangement reduced Kodak’s risks considerably. Kodak managers realized that if they developed the film alone, Fuji would aggressively fight the innovation in the marketplace and Kodak would have to work hard to gain consumer acceptance of its new standard for film. Still worse, Fuji might have decided to develop its own new film standard, thereby jeopardizing Kodak’s R&D investment should the Japanese-dominated camera-manufacturing industry adopt Fuji’s approach rather than Kodak’s. Mindful of the financial losses incurred by Sony when VHS rather than Betamax became the standard format for VCRs, Kodak chose to include Fuji in the deal. Through this strategic alliance, Kodak perhaps reduced its potential profits but also substantially reduced its risks. It was then free to compete on a playing field of its own choosing, able to harness its marketing clout, distribution networks, and formidable brand name against the efforts of its rivals.

Shared Knowledge and Expertise

Still another common reason for strategic alliances is the potential for the firm to gain knowledge and expertise that it lacks. A firm may want to learn more about how to produce something, how to acquire certain resources, how to deal with local governments’ regulations, or how to manage in a different environment—information that a partner often can offer.12 The firm can then use the newly acquired information for other purposes. For instance, Moody’s entered into a JV with China Cheng Xin International Credit Rating Company to allow them to offer joint credit ratings for participants in cross-border financings; the Chinese company provides credit ratings for domestic firms, and Moody’s provides ratings for non-Chinese companies.13 And, as our opening case discussed, CPW has proved to be successful, in part because it blended the knowledge and expertise of Nestlé and General Mills.
Synergy and Competitive Advantage

Firms may also enter into strategic alliances to attain synergy and competitive advantage. These related advantages reflect combinations of the other advantages discussed in this section: The idea is that through some combination of market entry, risk sharing, and learning potential, each collaborating firm will be able to achieve more and to compete more effectively than if it had attempted to enter a new market or industry alone.\(^{14}\)

For example, creating a favorable brand image in consumers’ minds is an expensive, time-consuming process, as is creating efficient distribution networks and obtaining the necessary clout with retailers to capture shelf space for one’s products. These factors led PepsiCo, the world’s second-largest soft drink firm, to establish a JV with Thomas J. Lipton Co., a division of Unilever, to produce and market ready-to-drink teas in the United States. Lipton, which is the global market leader in ready-to-drink teas, provided the JV with manufacturing expertise and brand recognition in teas. PepsiCo supplied its extensive and experienced U.S. distribution network.\(^{15}\) Alternatively, firms create synergies by establishing JVs to deepen and strengthen their global business relationships. Exxon Mobil and Qatar Petroleum International, for instance, created Golden Pass Products LLC to construct and operate liquefied natural gas (LNG) import facilities in Port Arthur, Texas. With the boom in production of shale-based natural gas in Texas (see Chapter 2’s closing case, “Fracturing the Energy Market”), the two partners are planning a $10-billion expansion of the facility to export LNG. Golden Pass is but one of the many projects the two firms collaborate on because each benefits from the financial strength, technical expertise, and political connections of the other.\(^{16}\)

In Practice

- JVs are often created to facilitate market entry, share risk, transfer knowledge and expertise, and promote synergies and competitive advantage.
- In many JVs, one partner’s strength is its partner’s weakness and vice-versa.

For further consideration: Many JVs involve a host country firm and a foreign firm which possesses a superior technology. Why might this be so?

Scope of Strategic Alliances

The scope of cooperation among firms may vary significantly, as Figure 13.2 illustrates. For example, it may consist of a comprehensive alliance, in which the partners participate in all facets of conducting business, ranging from product design to manufacturing to marketing. Or it may consist of a more narrowly defined alliance that focuses on only one element of the business, such as R&D. The degree of collaboration will depend on the basic goals of each partner.

Comprehensive Alliances

Comprehensive alliances arise when the participating firms agree to perform together multiple stages of the process by which goods or services are brought to the market: R&D, design, production, marketing, and distribution. Because of the broad scope of such alliances, the firms must establish procedures for meshing such functional areas as finance, production, and marketing for the alliance to succeed. Yet integrating the different operating procedures of the parents over a broad range of functional activities is difficult in the absence of a formal organizational structure. As a result, most comprehensive alliances are organized as JVs. As an independent entity, the JV can adopt operating procedures that suit its specific needs, rather than attempting to accommodate the often incompatible procedures of the parents, as might be the case with another type of strategic alliance.

Moreover, by fully integrating their efforts, participating firms in a comprehensive alliance are able to achieve greater synergy through sheer size and total resources. For instance, as the chapter’s opening case discussed, General Mills and Nestlé created a comprehensive JV, CPW, to market cereal in Europe in the face of fierce, entrenched competition from Kellogg. General Mills contributed its cereal-making technology to the JV, and Nestlé added its European distribution network and name recognition. CPW would have had a major uphill battle in the
European cereal market if the JV had covered only a single function, such as marketing. But a complete meshing of each firm’s relative strengths resulted in a business unit that has emerged as a formidable competitor for Kellogg. Similarly, Dow Chemical and the Saudi Arabian Oil Company (Aramco) created a JV, Sadara Chemical Company, that will build and operate a $19-billion petrochemical complex near Jubail that is scheduled to begin operation in 2015. Aramco will provide the feedstock for the plant, and Dow Chemical will contribute its technology and expertise in manufacturing petrochemicals.17

Functional Alliances

Strategic alliances may also be narrow in scope, involving only a single functional area of the business. In such cases, integrating the needs of the parent firms is less complex. Thus, functionally based alliances often do not take the form of a JV, although JVs are still the more common form of organization. Types of functional alliances include production alliances, marketing alliances, financial alliances, and R&D alliances.

**PRODUCTION ALLIANCES** A production alliance is a functional alliance in which two or more firms each manufacture products or provide services in a shared or common facility. A production alliance may use a facility one partner already owns. For example, as we discuss later in this chapter, the NUMMI joint venture between Toyota and GM was housed in a former GM assembly plant in California, which the U.S. company had previously closed down. Alternatively, the partners may choose to build a new plant, as was the case for a $3.5-billion JV between Sony and Sharp to manufacture liquid crystal display panels for high-definition televisions in western Japan.18 At other times, the alliance may be quite narrow. Paramount Pictures, for instance, and state-owned China Movie Channel agreed to coproduce segments of the movie sequel *Transformers 4* in China.19

**MARKETING ALLIANCES** A marketing alliance is a functional alliance in which two or more firms share marketing services or expertise. In most cases, one partner introduces its products or
VENTURING ABROAD

ALLIANCES IN THE SKY

Marketing alliances are usually ad hoc in nature, established to remedy some problem a firm has in a specific market. In the international airline industry, however, mega-marketing alliances now dominate competition within the industry. Three mega-alliances together account for a majority of the world’s air revenue passenger miles. The Star Alliance, established in 1997, was the first of the mega-alliances to form and is the industry’s largest. Its 27 members include United, Lufthansa, SAS, Air Canada, Air China, South African Airways, Singapore Airlines, and Turkish Airlines. The Star Alliance provides 21,900 daily departures to 1,329 airports in 194 countries. The 19-member SkyTeam alliance includes Air France, KLM, Delta, Aeromexico, Korean Air Lines, China Eastern, and Aeroflot. This alliance offers 15,000 daily flights serving 1,000 cities in 187 countries. The OneWorld alliance, whose 12 members include American Airlines, British Airways, Qantas, Cathay Pacific, and Japan Airlines, is the third-largest alliance. OneWorld carriers offer 8,800 daily departures to 841 cities in 157 countries.

Alliances have become a critical component of competition in the international airline industry because of decisions made at the International Civil Aviation Conference held in Chicago in 1944. The Chicago Conference, like the Bretton Woods Conference of 1944, was convened to structure a portion of the post–World War II economic environment—in this case, that of the civil aviation industry. The Chicago conferees decided to grant each government control over international airline service to and from its country. Most countries chose to grant commercial airline rights on a reciprocal basis: Country A would grant country B the right to designate a carrier from country B to fly between a city in B and a city in A if country B granted country A the right to designate a carrier from country A to fly between a city in A and a city in B. Moreover, few nations allowed cabotage—the carrying of passengers by a foreign carrier from one city in the host country to another city in the host country (e.g., Delta Airlines carrying a passenger from Vancouver to Montreal).

Thus, an airline such as Delta could develop an elaborate hub-and-spoke system in Atlanta that would allow it to pick up a passenger in a U.S. city like Buffalo, transport her to Atlanta, and transfer her to a Delta flight going to Albuquerque. Using a hub-and-spoke system, Delta could provide convenient service to Buffalo-Albuquerque travelers, even though only a few passengers might wish to fly from Buffalo to Albuquerque on any given day. This advantage, however, stopped at the water’s edge. Because of the Chicago Conference, Delta could not create a similar hub in Europe or Asia. However, by joining the SkyTeam Alliance, Delta can take advantage of Air France’s hub in Paris, KLM’s hub in Amsterdam, Aeroflot’s hub in Moscow, and Korean Airlines’ hub in Seoul. Thus, Delta and any other member of the SkyTeam alliance can advertise and offer service on 15,000 flights a day to 1,000 cities in 187 countries even though it physically flies only a small percentage of these flights itself.

Besides offering customers more flights and more destinations, these marketing alliances make it easier for customers to transfer between alliance members’ flights and allow customers to use frequent flyer miles earned on one carrier to fly free on the flights of other members of the alliance. The alliances also strive to maintain uniformly high standards of service and to promote consistent customer service policies. The SkyTeam alliance, for instance, coordinates its in-flight video offerings so that passengers flying different SkyTeam carriers on a given day see different movies on each leg of their journey.

R&D ALLIANCES  Rapid technological change in high-technology industries and the skyrocketing cost of staying abreast of that change have prompted an increase in functional alliances that focus on R&D. In an R&D alliance, the partners agree to undertake joint research to develop new products or services. An example of a typical R&D alliance is one formed in 2011 between BMW and Toyota to conduct battery research destined for the next generation of electric-powered automobiles. Similarly, Bayer AG formed R&D alliances with smaller biotechnology companies like Millennium Pharmaceuticals and MorphoSys to strengthen their joint search for new miracle drugs.

Such alliances are often not formed as JVs because scientific knowledge can be readily transmitted among partners through private research conferences, the exchange of scientific papers, and laboratory visits. Moreover, forming a separate legal organization and staffing it with teams of researchers drawn from the partners’ staffs might disrupt ongoing scientific work in each partner’s laboratory. Instead each partner may simply agree to cross-license whatever new technology is developed in its labs, thereby allowing its partner (or partners) to use its patents at will. Each partner then has equal access to all technology developed by the alliance, an arrangement that guarantees the partners will not fall behind each other in the technological race. Partners also are freed from legal disputes among themselves over ownership and validity of patents. For example, the alliance among Kodak, Fuji, and the three Japanese camera makers focused solely on R&D. Both Kodak and Fuji were licensed to make the new film they developed; the three camera makers were free to market the cameras to use it.

Because of the importance of high-tech industries to the world economy, many countries are supporting the efforts of R&D consortia as part of their industrial policies. An R&D consortium is a confederation of organizations that band together to research and develop new products and processes for world markets. It represents a special case of strategic alliance in that governmental support plays a major role in its formation and continued operation. Japanese firms have successfully practiced this type of arrangement for many years. For example, more than two decades ago the Japanese government, Nippon Telephone and Telegraph, Mitsubishi, Matsushita, and three other Japanese firms agreed to work together to create new types of high-capacity memory chips. They were so successful that they dominated this market for many years. Similarly, the European Union (EU) has developed a wide array of joint research efforts with clever acronyms—such as ESPRIT, RACE, BRITE, EURAM, JOULE, and SCIENCE—to ensure that its firms can compete against U.S. and Japanese firms in high-tech markets.
Strategic alliances come in all sizes and scopes. They may range from a narrow scope, involving a single business function such as marketing, to comprehensive scope, involving all aspects of designing, manufacturing, marketing, and distributing a product or service. Oftentimes R&D alliances are not structured as JVs so as to avoid disrupting ongoing laboratory work.

For further consideration: Consider production alliances and financial alliances. Which type is more likely to result in the creation of a JV? Why?

In Practice

Implementation of Strategic Alliances

The decision to form a strategic alliance should develop from the firm’s strategic planning process, discussed in Chapter 11. Having made this decision, its managers must then address several significant issues, which set the stage for how the arrangement will be managed. Some of the most critical of these issues are the selection of partners, the form of ownership, and joint management considerations.

Selection of Partners

The success of any cooperative undertaking depends on choosing the appropriate partner(s). Research suggests that strategic alliances are more likely to be successful if the skills and resources of the partners are complementary—each must bring to the alliance some organizational strength the other lacks. A firm contemplating a strategic alliance should consider at least four factors in selecting a partner (or partners): (1) compatibility, (2) the nature of the potential partner’s products or services, (3) the relative safeness of the alliance, and (4) the learning potential of the alliance.

Compatibility The firm should select a compatible partner that it can trust and with whom it can work effectively. Without mutual trust, a strategic alliance is unlikely to succeed. But incompatibilities in corporate operating philosophies may also doom an alliance. For example, an alliance between General Electric Corporation (a UK firm unrelated to the U.S. firm of the same name) and the German firm Siemens failed because of incompatible management styles. The former firm is run by financial experts and the latter by engineers. General Electric Corporation’s financial managers continually worried about bottom-line issues, short-term profitability, and related financial considerations. Siemens’ managers, in contrast, paid more attention to innovation, design, and product development and less attention to financial issues. In contrast, a key ingredient in CPW’s success is the high level of compatibility between General Mills and Nestlé.

Nature of a Potential Partner’s Products or Services Another factor to consider is the nature of a potential partner’s products or services. It is often hard to cooperate with a firm in one market while doing battle with that same firm in a second market. Under such circumstances, each partner may be unwilling to reveal all of its expertise to the other partner for fear that the partner will use that knowledge against the firm in another market.

Most experts believe a firm should ally itself with a partner whose products or services are complementary to but not directly competitive with its own. The JV between General Mills and Nestlé is an example of this principle in action: Both are food-processing firms, but Nestlé does not make cereal, the product on which it is collaborating with General Mills. Similarly, PepsiCo and Lipton complement but do not compete with one another, thus raising the likelihood of success for their JV to market ready-to-drink tea in the United States.

The Relative Safeness of the Alliance Given the complexities and potential costs of failed agreements, managers should gather as much information as possible about a potential partner before entering into a strategic alliance. For example, managers should assess the success or failure of previous strategic alliances formed by the potential partner. Also, it often makes sense to analyze the prospective deal from the other firm’s side. What does the potential partner hope to gain from the arrangement? What are the partner’s strengths and weaknesses?
will it contribute to the venture? Does the proposed arrangement meet its strategic goals? The probability of success rises if the deal makes good business sense for both parties.\(^{28}\)

For example, Corning, Inc., created a JV venture—Asahi Video Products Company—by integrating its television glass production with the operations of Asahi Glass, a producer of large television bulbs. Corning believed this JV would be a sound one for several reasons:

- Asahi Glass’ expertise in large television-bulb technology complemented Corning’s strength in other bulb sizes.
- The JV would benefit from Asahi Glass’ ongoing business connections with the increasing number of Japanese television manufacturers that were establishing North American facilities.
- The combined strengths of the two firms would help both keep abreast of technological innovations in the video display industry.
- Asahi Glass would benefit from Corning’s technology and marketing clout in the U.S. market.
- Corning had successfully operated another JV with Asahi Glass since 1965.

In fact, Corning is so good at developing JVs that almost half its profits are generated by JVs with leading MNCs such as PPG, Dow Chemical, and Samsung.

**THE LEARNING POTENTIAL OF THE ALLIANCE** Before establishing a strategic alliance, partners should also assess the potential to learn from each other. Areas of learning can range from the specific—for example, how to manage inventory more efficiently or how to train employees more effectively—to the general—for example, how to modify corporate culture or how to manage more strategically. At the same time, however, each partner should carefully assess the value of its own information and not provide the other partner with any information that will result in competitive disadvantage for itself should the alliance dissolve—a point we revisit in the next section.\(^{29}\) “Venturing Abroad” discusses a successful alliance formed for learning purposes.

**Form of Ownership**

Another issue in establishing a strategic alliance is the exact form of ownership that is to be used. A JV almost always takes the form of a corporation, usually incorporated in the country in which it will be doing business. In some instances, it may be incorporated in a different country, such as one that offers tax or legal advantages. The Bahamas, for example, are sometimes seen as a favorable tax haven for the incorporation of JVs.

The corporate form enables the partners to arrange a beneficial tax structure, implement novel ownership arrangements, and better protect their other assets. This form also allows the JV to create its own identity apart from those of the partners. Of course, if either or both of
partners have favorable reputations, the new corporation may choose to rely on those, perhaps by including the partners’ names as part of its name.

A new corporation also provides a neutral setting in which the partners can do business. The potential for conflict may be reduced if the interaction between the partners occurs outside their own facilities or organizations. It may also be reduced if the corporation does not rely on employees identified with either partner and instead hires its own executives and workforce whose first loyalty is to the JV. For example, a JV formed by Corning and Genentech was not performing as well as expected. Corning soon discovered one source of the difficulties: Managers contributed by Genentech to the JV were actually on leave from Genentech. To ensure that these managers’ loyalties were not divided between Genentech and the JV, Corning requested that they resign from Genentech. Once they did, the performance of the JV improved rapidly.30

In isolated cases, incorporating a JV may not be possible or desirable. For example, local restrictions on corporations may be so stringent or burdensome that incorporating is not optimal. The partners in these cases usually choose to operate under a limited partnership arrangement. In a limited partnership, one firm, the managing partner, assumes full financial responsibility for the venture, regardless of the amount of its own investment. The other partner (or partners) has liability limited to its own investment. Obviously, such arrangements are riskier for the managing partner.

PUBLIC-PRIVATE VENTURE  A special form of JV, a public-private venture, is one that involves a partnership between a privately owned firm and a government. Such an arrangement may be created under any of several circumstances. (See “People, Planet, and Profits” for a discussion of the growth of alliances between the private sector and nongovernmental organizations.)

When the government of a country controls a resource it wants developed, it may enlist the assistance of a firm that has expertise related to that resource. For example, South American countries have enlisted foreign lumber firms, such as Weyerhaeuser, to assist in the sustainable development of their rainforests and surrounding lands. A similar pattern exists in the discovery, exploration, and development of oil fields. National governments that control access to and ownership of oil fields may lack the technical expertise to drill for and manage the extraction of crude oil. International oil firms, on the other hand, possess the requisite knowledge and expertise but may lack the necessary drilling rights. A common result is a JV for which the government grants drilling rights and private oil firms provide capital and expertise. For example, in 2006, Exxon Mobil entered into a JV with the Abu Dhabi government, receiving a 28-percent interest in Abu Dhabi’s Upper Zakum field; as part of the deal, the company agreed to establish a technology institute in Abu Dhabi and boost the field’s production by 50 percent using advanced drilling and reservoir management techniques.31

Similarly, a firm may pursue a public-private venture if a particular country does not allow wholly owned foreign operations. If the firm cannot locate a suitable local partner, it may invite the government itself to participate in a JV, or the government may request an ownership share. Public-private ventures are typical in the oil industry. In assessing the opportunities and drawbacks of such a venture, a firm should consider the various aspects of the political and legal environment it will be facing. Foremost among these is the stability of the government. In a politically unstable country, the current government may be replaced with another, and the firm may face serious challenges. At best, the venture will be considered less important by the new government because of its association with the old government. At worst, the firm’s investment may be completely wiped out, its assets seized, and its operation shut down. However, if negotiations are handled properly and if the local government is relatively stable, public-private ventures can be quite beneficial. The government may act benignly and allow the firm to run the JV. It may also use its position to protect its own investment—and therefore that of its partner—by restricting competing business activity.

A firm entering into a public-private partnership should ensure that it thoroughly understands the expectations and commitments of both the host country’s government and its prospective business partner. These concerns are most obvious in China. Because of the vast size and growth prospects of the Chinese market, many firms are interested in investment opportunities there, and JVs with state-owned firms are a common mode of entry for MNCs. Many Western firms have prospered through such arrangements. For example, GM’s JV with Shanghai Automotive Industry Corporation (SAIC) is a market leader in the huge and fast-growing Chinese market. The SAIC-GM JV plans to invest an additional $11 billion by 2016 to develop new vehicles for the Chinese market, expand assembly capacity, and recruit hundreds of new dealers.
PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS

ALLIANCES FOR GOOD

Alliances between nongovernmental organizations (NGOs) and businesses large and small are growing in importance. Most NGOs are focused on promoting a cause, such as human rights, workers rights, or environmental protection. Often their initial approach was to organize politically and then lobby their local government to pass legislation to achieve their agendas. But many found that governments are slow to act and often inefficient in implementing and enforcing legislation once enacted. The private sector, conversely, can react faster and more efficiently if motivated to do so.

NGOs therefore have turned their attention to forming alliances with private sector organizations. For instance, the World Wildlife Fund now focuses on the largest 100 companies in the global marketplace: “We know if they change their practices, it will affect half of the markets in which they operate, and that will make a huge difference in conserving the places we care about…This is the fastest-growing part of our work, and it’s the place where we see the greatest traction.”

Sometimes an alliance is formed because the business partner genuinely believes in the mission of the NGO; sometimes the alliance develops after the business partner suffers adverse publicity, often triggered by the NGO it later partners with. Nike provides a useful example. In the 1990s, Nike was pilloried by NGOs for the unsafe and abusive working environments in factories of its contract manufacturers. At first, Nike argued that it had no responsibility for the conditions because the workers were not its employees. That argument proved unpersuasive in the court of public opinion. After several false starts, Nike forged a strong working relationship with leading labor rights NGOs and agreed to an active and open monitoring of conditions in the factories of its subcontractors, the results of which are available on its website, at www.nikeinc.com/pages/responsibility. Although conditions are not perfect in the factories, Nike is now viewed as a partner, not an enemy, in the promotion of workers rights by the NGO community.

Other examples abound: IKEA and Kingfisher (a leading European home improvement vendor) teamed with the Forest Stewardship Council, the Rainforest Alliance, and the World Wildlife Fund to protect Chinese forests by purchasing only lumber certified as having been cut in an environmentally sound manner. Limited Brands agreed to purchase paper for its 400 million catalogs from sustainable vendors after being pressured to do so by ForestEthics. Walmart has committed to triple its purchases of local produce for its grocery operations, thereby supporting local small farmers and reducing transportation-related greenhouse gas emissions. It forged this new sourcing strategy in consultation with experts from the National Resource Defense Council, the World Wildlife Fund, and the Environmental Defense Fund.

NGOs often work with smaller firms as well, particularly in emerging markets. For instance, the Brazilian branch of the World Wildlife Fund has partnered with the state government of Acre and local farm cooperatives to promote sustainable agricultural practices and reliance on the bounty of the rainforest. For instance, Cooperacre, a 2,000-member cooperative collects, shells, and packages Brazil nuts gathered from the wild. Natex, a 700-member cooperative, purchases latex gathered from wild rubber trees to manufacture condoms, which are then purchased by the government to combat AIDS.

However, other Western firms have had their share of troubles with these arrangements, prompting a bitter joke among expatriates in China: “What qualities should you look for in a joint-venture partner?” “One who never comes to the office.” For instance, Daimler-Benz signed an agreement in 1995 to establish a JV with state-owned Nanfang South China Motor Corporation to build minivans. Two years later, nothing had been done because the two partners bickered over a variety of issues. Nanfang, for example, wanted to assemble the minivans at two plant sites, whereas Daimler-Benz officials fought for a single plant so as to capture economies of scale. Unilever had a different problem. Its JV partner in Shanghai not only continued to sell its own brand of detergent, White Cat, in competition with the Unilever product (Omo) produced by the JV, but it also began to copy Omo’s formula and packaged its detergent in a box that looked almost identical to that of Omo. New Balance executives could sympathize with Unilever’s plight. They discovered that their Chinese manufacturing partner was making counterfeit sneakers and selling them directly to discounters in England and Australia in addition to those it was legally making for New Balance itself.

**Joint Management Considerations**

Further issues and questions are associated with how a strategic alliance will be managed. Three standard approaches are often used to jointly manage a strategic alliance (see Figure 13.3): shared management agreements, assigned arrangements, and delegated arrangements.

Under a shared management agreement, each partner fully and actively participates in managing the alliance. The partners run the alliance, and their managers regularly pass on instructions and details to the alliance’s managers. The alliance managers have limited authority of their own and must defer most decisions to managers from the parent firms. This type of agreement requires a high level of coordination and near-perfect agreement between the participating partners. Thus, it is the most difficult to maintain and the one most prone to conflict among the partners. An example of this type of JV management is that used by Coca-Cola and France’s Groupe Danone to distribute Coke’s Minute Maid orange juice in Europe and...
Partner selection is a critical issue in the success or failure of strategic alliances. Each firm should carefully analyze the learning potential of the alliance, the nature of the potential partner’s products or services, and the relative safeness of the alliance.

As in a marriage, compatibility of the prospective partners may be the most critical determinant of success or failure. An alliance may make good business sense, but if the partners can’t get along, failure is likely.

For further consideration: Consider the three approaches to managing a JV: shared management agreements, assigned arrangements, and delegated arrangements. Which one requires the most trust among the JV partners?

### In Practice

- Partner selection is a critical issue in the success or failure of strategic alliances. Each firm should carefully analyze the learning potential of the alliance, the nature of the potential partner’s products or services, and the relative safeness of the alliance.
- As in a marriage, compatibility of the prospective partners may be the most critical determinant of success or failure. An alliance may make good business sense, but if the partners can’t get along, failure is likely.

For further consideration: Consider the three approaches to managing a JV: shared management agreements, assigned arrangements, and delegated arrangements. Which one requires the most trust among the JV partners?

### Pitfalls of Strategic Alliances

Regardless of the care and deliberation a firm puts into constructing a strategic alliance, it still must consider limitations and pitfalls. Figure 13.4 summarizes five fundamental sources of problems that often threaten the viability of strategic alliances: incompatibility of partners, access to information, conflicts over distributing earnings, loss of autonomy, and changing circumstances.

### Incompatibility of Partners

Incompatibility among the partners of a strategic alliance is a primary cause of the failure of such arrangements. At times, incompatibility can lead to outright conflict, although typically it merely leads to poor performance of the alliance. We noted previously in the chapter the example of the conflict between Siemens’ engineering-oriented management and General Electric Corporation’s financially oriented management. Incompatibility can stem from differences in corporate culture, national culture, goals and objectives, or virtually any other fundamental dimension linking the
two partners. For instance, General Motors’ $340-million JV with Russian auto manufacturer OAO AvtoVAZ, which was established to build Chevrolet-branded compact SUVs designed by AvtoVAZ, has struggled as a result of disagreements between the partners over parts pricing, product design, market development, and adjustments in the JV’s strategic direction.37 Similarly, VW’s management was disappointed with the slow start of its JV with Suzuki, which it attributed to the methodical but time-consuming decision making of its Japanese partner. It later accused Suzuki of sourcing certain diesel engines from Fiat in violation of the terms of their alliance agreement.38

In many cases, compatibility problems can be anticipated if the partners carefully discuss and analyze the reasons why each is entering into the alliance in the first place. A useful starting point may be a meeting between top managers of the two partners to discuss their mutual interests, goals,

---

**EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES**

**XI’S IN CHARGE**

Webster’s dictionary defines communism as a “social scheme which promotes the abolition of inequalities in the possession of wealth by distributing wealth equally or by holding all wealth in common for the benefit and use of all citizens.” By that definition, contemporary China is not very communist. That does not mean that the Communist Party is unimportant, however, when doing business in or with China.

The most important person in the governance of any Chinese business organization of significant size is often the organization’s party secretary. The party secretary is a member of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) and is appointed by the CCP to be its representative within the organization. Although a Chinese corporation or a JV with a Chinese partner may be formally governed by a board of directors, ultimate power resides with the party secretary. Appointments of executives and senior managers or major strategic decisions must be approved by the party secretary. Often, the party secretary informs the board as to decisions that have been made by the party, which the board must then implement. One telling example was the government’s decision in November 2004 to have the CEOs of the country’s three largest telecommunications companies (China Telecom, China Mobile, and China Unicom) swap jobs among themselves. Although all three companies were state-owned enterprises, two of them were publicly listed with significant minority shareholders. Regardless of the formal role or wishes of their boards of directors, CCP leaders made the decision, which the three boards of directors then dutifully ratified.

Foreign companies must understand these informal, unwritten rules of governance or face the consequences, as New Zealand’s Fonterra Corporation, the world’s largest exporter of dairy products, learned to its chagrin. In 2005, Fonterra signed a JV agreement with Sanlu, China’s premier dairy products firm. To implement the JV, Fonterra received a 43-percent ownership stake in Sanlu and was given three seats on Sanlu’s board. Sanlu’s rapid growth was attributable to its practice of buying milk in bulk from middlemen who in turn purchased it from local farmers. Sanlu began receiving scattered reports early in 2008 that some of the purchased milk, which it used to make its market-leading infant formula, was laced with melamine. Melamine boosted the apparent protein content of the milk, which raised the price that the seller received, but it is highly toxic, causing kidney stones, bladder cancer, and damage to the reproductive system. By the end of July 2008 Sanlu’s testing confirmed the problem.

Sanlu and its chairwoman Tian Wenhua—who also served as Sanlu’s party secretary—faced a political as well as public health disaster. The Beijing Olympics were scheduled to begin on August 8, 2008, and the CCP made it clear it wanted no bad publicity to damage its desired triumphal staging of the summer games. When Sanlu’s board met on August 2, it voted for a full product recall, according to Fonterra’s minutes of the meeting. Sanlu’s minutes indicate agreement on a limited product recall, the apparent result of intervention by the local vice-mayor in charge of product safety, who was mindful of the CCP’s directive to suppress any food safety scandals while the eyes of the world’s media and sports fans were focused on Beijing. A full product recall belatedly commenced in September, the result of New Zealand’s ambassador notifying the Chinese government of the problem. Although Fonterra executives claim that they first heard of the melamine contamination at the August 2nd board meeting, the damage to the firm’s reputation was not be easy to repair. Fonterra learned too late that the party secretary, not the board of directors or the company’s managers, is the one in charge.

and beliefs about strategy. The manner in which the managers are able to work together during such a meeting may be a critical clue to their ability to cooperate in a strategic alliance. Obviously, if the partners cannot agree on such basic issues as how much decision-making power to delegate to the alliance’s business unit, what the alliance’s strategy should be, how it is to be organized, or how it should be staffed, compromise will probably be difficult to achieve and the alliance is unlikely to succeed. For example, a marketing alliance between AT&T and Italy’s Olivetti announced with great fanfare quickly failed after the firms could not reach agreement on a marketing strategy, what they wanted the alliance to accomplish, and how they planned to work together.

Access to Information
Limited access to information is another drawback of many strategic alliances. For a collaboration to work effectively, one partner (or both) may have to provide the other with information it would prefer to keep secret. It is often difficult to identify such needs ahead of time; thus, a firm may enter into an agreement not anticipating having to share certain information. When the reality of the situation becomes apparent, the firm may have to be forthcoming with the information or else compromise the effectiveness of the collaboration. For example, Unisys, a U.S. computer firm, negotiated a JV with Hitachi, a Japanese electronics firm. Only after the venture was well underway did Unisys realize that it would have to provide Hitachi with most of the technical specifications it used to build computers. Although Unisys managers reluctantly gave Hitachi the information, they feared they were compromising their own firm’s competitiveness. And an alliance between Ford and Mazda to work on the design of a new Ford sedan almost stalled when Mazda officials would not allow their Ford counterparts to visit their research laboratory. After several weeks of arguing, a compromise was eventually reached whereby Ford engineers could enter the facility but only for a limited time.

Conflicts Over Distributing Earnings
An obvious limitation of strategic alliances relates to the distribution of earnings. Because the partners share risks and costs, they also share profits. For example, General Mills and Nestlé split the profits from their European JV on a 50/50 basis. Of course, this aspect of collaborative arrangements is known ahead of time and is virtually always negotiated as part of the original agreement. However, there are other financial considerations beyond the basic distribution of earnings that can cause disagreement. The partners must also agree on the proportion of the joint earnings that will be distributed to themselves as opposed to being reinvested in the business, the accounting procedures that will be used to calculate earnings or profits, and the way transfer pricing will be handled. For example, Rubbermaid ended its JV to manufacture and distribute rubber and plastic houseware products throughout Europe, North Africa, and the Middle East because its local partner, the Dutch chemical company DSM Group NV, resisted reinvesting profits to develop new products to expand the JV’s sales as Rubbermaid preferred.

Loss of Autonomy
Another pitfall of a strategic alliance is the potential loss of autonomy. Just as firms share risks and profits, they also share control, thereby limiting what each can do. Most attempts to
introduce new products or services, change the way the alliance does business, or introduce any other significant organizational change first must be discussed and negotiated. To overcome such problems, FedEx chose to buy out its Chinese JV partner, Tianjin Datan W Group, for $400 million. The purchase freed FedEx to better integrate the JV’s 90 parcel-processing facilities and its 3,000 workers into FedEx’s global distribution network. Conversely, as part of its contract with General Mills, Nestlé had to agree that if the JV is ever terminated, Nestlé cannot enter the North American cereal market for at least 10 years.

At the extreme, a strategic alliance may even be the first step toward a takeover. In the early 1980s, the Japanese firm Fujitsu negotiated a strategic alliance with International Computers, Ltd. (ICL), a British computer firm. After nine years of working together, Fujitsu bought 80 percent of ICL. One survey of 150 terminated strategic alliances found that more than three-fourths ended because a Japanese firm had taken over its non-Japanese partner. In other cases, partners may accuse each other of opportunistic behavior, that is, trying to take unfair advantage of each other. For example, a JV between the Walt Disney Company and Sky Television, a British pay-TV channel operator, broke down after Sky accused Disney of deliberately delaying the supply of promised programming. Disney, in turn, accused Sky of proceeding too hastily and without consulting it.

Changing Circumstances

Changing circumstances may also affect the viability of a strategic alliance. The economic conditions that motivated the cooperative arrangement may no longer exist, or technological advances may have rendered the agreement obsolete. For example, in late 2011 Samsung bought out Sony’s interests in a seven-year-old JV to produce LCD screens for high-definition TVs. Although the venture was profitable for several years, industry overproduction led to operating losses in the 2010s. Similarly, that same year, Johnson Controls sued to dissolve its JV with French battery manufacturer Saft Groupe SA to fabricate lithium-ion batteries for the automobile industry. The U.S. company claimed that rapid technological change and the investments needed to maintain market leadership rendered the JV ineffective. Its French partner disagreed.

In Practice

The most important reasons why strategic alliances fail include incompatibility of partners, conflicts over access to information, disagreements over distributing earnings, loss of autonomy, and changing circumstances. Due diligence and discussion with prospective alliance partners can lessen the likelihood of some of these issues arising. For example, access to information and policies toward distributing earnings should be understood by all parties before an agreement is signed.

For further consideration: Consider the NUMMI JV, which dissolved after 25 years. Would you consider this JV a success or failure? Why?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

Strategic alliances, in which two or more firms agree to cooperate for their mutual benefit, are becoming increasingly popular in international business. A joint venture (JV), a common type of strategic alliance, involves two or more firms joining together to create a new entity that is legally separate and distinct from its parents.

Strategic alliances offer several benefits to firms that use them. First, they facilitate market entry. Second, they allow
the partners to share risks. Third, they make it easier for each partner to gain new knowledge and expertise from the other partner(s). Finally, they foster synergy and competitive advantage among the partners.

The scope of strategic alliances can vary significantly. Comprehensive alliances involve a full array of business activities and operations. Functional alliances involving only one aspect of the business, such as production, marketing, finance, or research and development (R&D), are also common.

The decision to form a strategic alliance needs to be based on a number of different considerations. Selecting a partner is, of course, critically important and must take into account compatibility, the nature of the potential partner’s products or services, the relative safety of the alliance, and the learning potential of the alliance. Selecting a form of organization is also important to the success of the alliance. A special form of strategic alliance involves public and private partners. The management structure of the strategic alliance must also be given careful consideration.

Partners in a strategic alliance must be aware of several pitfalls that can undermine the success of their cooperative arrangement. These include incompatibility of the partners, access to information, conflicts over distributing earnings, loss of autonomy, and changing circumstances.

Review Questions

13-1. What are the basic differences between a JV and other types of strategic alliances?
13-2. Why have strategic alliances grown in popularity in recent years?
13-3. What are the basic benefits partners are likely to gain from their strategic alliance? Briefly explain each.
13-4. What are the basic characteristics of a comprehensive alliance? What form is it likely to take?
13-5. What are the four common types of functional alliances? Briefly explain each.
13-6. What is an R&D consortium?
13-7. What factors should be considered in selecting a strategic alliance partner?
13-8. What are the three basic ways of managing a strategic alliance?
13-9. Under what circumstances might a strategic alliance be undertaken by public and private partners?
13-10. What are the potential pitfalls of strategic alliances?

Questions for Discussion

13-11. Are strategic alliances common in your country? What are the current trends?
13-12. Assume you are a manager for a large international firm, which has decided to enlist a foreign partner in a strategic alliance and has asked you to be involved in the collaboration. What effects, if any, might the decision to structure the collaboration as a JV have on you personally and on your career?
13-13. Identify an example of strategic alliance in your country that has not worked. Why?
13-14. Identify an example of a strategic alliance in your country that has worked. Why?
13-15. There will be some clear examples of success stories for strategic alliances. What appears to be the correct formula for successful strategic alliances in your country?
13-16. What are some of the issues involved in a firm’s trying to learn from a strategic alliance partner without giving out too much valuable information of its own?
13-17. Why would a firm decide to enter a new market on its own rather than using a strategic alliance?
13-18. Identify any particular concerns or issues a global business might have to consider if they want to enter into a strategic alliance in your country.
13-19. Emerging markets offer great opportunities for businesses. The opportunities can be particularly advantageous if the corporation can obtain first-mover advantage by engaging a local partner. However, it can be that local partners are difficult to identify and assess. Why might this be the case?

Building Global Skills

Break into small groups of four to five people. Assume your group is the executive committee (that is, the top managers) of Resteaze, Inc. Resteaze is a large manufacturer of mattresses, box springs, and waterbeds. The publicly traded firm is among the largest in the U.S. bedding market. It operates 15 factories, employs more than 5,000 people, and last year generated $20 million in profits on sales of $380 million. Resteaze products are sold through department stores, furniture stores, and specialty shops and have the reputation of being of good quality and medium-priced.

Your committee is thinking about entering the European bedding market. You know little about the European market, so you are thinking about forming a JV. Your committee has identified three possible candidates for such an arrangement.

One candidate is Bedrest. Bedrest is a French firm that also makes bedding. Unfortunately, Bedrest products have a poor reputation in Europe and most of its sales stem from the fact that its products are exceptionally cheap. However, there are possibilities for growth in Eastern Europe. The consultant who recommended Bedrest suggests that your higher-quality products would mesh well with Bedrest’s cheaper ones. Bedrest is known to be having financial difficulties because of declining sales. However, the consultant thinks the firm will soon turn things around.
A second candidate is Home Furnishings, Inc., a German firm that manufactures high-quality furniture. Its line of bedroom furniture (headboards, dressers, chests, and so on) is among the most popular in Europe. The firm is also known to be interested in entering the U.S. furniture market. Home Furnishings is a privately owned concern that is assumed to have a strong financial position. Because of its prices, however, the firm is not expected to be able to compete effectively in Eastern Europe.

Finally, Pacific Enterprises, Inc., is a huge Japanese conglomerate that is just now entering the European market. The firm does not have any current operations in Europe but has enormous financial reserves to put behind any new undertaking it might decide to pursue. Its major product lines are machine tools, auto replacement parts, communications equipment, and consumer electronics.

Your task is to assess the relative advantages and disadvantages of each of these prospective partners for Resteaze. The European market is important to you, this is your first venture abroad, and you want the highest probability for success. After assessing each candidate, rank the three in order of their relative attractiveness to your firm.

13-20. How straightforward or ambiguous was the task of evaluating and ranking the three alternatives?
13-21. Determine and discuss the degree of agreement or disagreement among the various groups in the class.

## CLOSING CASE Look Before You Leap

Groupe Danone SA, the Paris-based marketer of yogurt, nonalcoholic beverages, and baby foods, has long been a savvy international competitor. Employing 102,000 persons, its sales in 2012 totaled €20.9 billion, 90 percent of which are outside of France, its home country. It is the world’s largest seller of fresh dairy products, and the second-largest vendor of bottled water and infant nutrition products. Like many other MNCs, Danone believes emerging markets—which currently produce one-third of its sales—offer it significant opportunities for growth. Danone has adopted a strategy of allying with local companies to penetrate promising emerging markets. Danone contributes its financial clout, manufacturing expertise, and sophisticated marketing skills to these JVs, and the local partner contributes its knowledge of the host country’s legal system, political process, distribution channels, and the consumption habits of local consumers.

In Bangladesh, for example, Danone created a joint venture with the Grameen Group (see page 588 for a fuller discussion of Grameen). Danone viewed Bangladesh’s 164 million people as an untapped market. Grameen had two different, but complementary goals. It wished to improve nutrition in that country through the provision of healthier foods. It also wanted to reduce poverty by creating new markets for Bangladeshi farmers. To accommodate Grameen’s goals, Danone had to make some changes in its normal business practices. For example, its local factory uses as little automation as possible to maximize job creation, and Danone scientists tinkered with product formulas to eliminate the need for sugar, which would have had to have been imported. Grameen Danone’s first product is low-priced Shoktidoi yogurt (Bengali for “yogurt that makes you strong”), which is fortified with vitamins to overcome nutritional deficiencies in the diet of rural children. Shoktidoi yogurt is made using milk provided by local farmers and is sweetened with molasses made from locally produced dates.

Danone adopted a similar strategy in entering the Chinese and Indian markets. In the former market, Danone established a partnership with Zong Qinghou, the entrepreneur who in the 1980s founded the Hangzhou Wahaha group, a drink manufacturer and owner of one of China’s most famous brand names, Wahaha. Starting in 1996, Danone and the Wahaha group formed a series of JVs—a total of 38 in all—to produce soft drinks, sport drinks, tea, and bottled water. In most of these JVs, Danone had a 51-percent ownership share and Wahaha a 49-percent share.

On paper, these JVs were quite successful; most enjoyed large market shares with significant growth prospects. For example, Wahaha is the largest bottled-water marketer in China, with a 39-percent market share. Danone’s JV with Hangzhou Wahaha and another small partner made Danone the country’s largest soft drink seller, with an 18-percent market share. Its soft drink sales enjoyed annual growth rates between 10 and 15 percent in the past several years.

Despite the market successes of these companies, the relationship between Danone and Hangzhou fell apart. Danone argued that Zong Qinghou, the founder of Hangzhou Wahaha, set up without its permission 20 parallel soft-drink businesses, with cumulative sales of $1.46 billion, which operated outside of the Danone-Hangzhou agreement. Zong did not deny his creation of these parallel companies. Rather, he responded he was forced to do so to protect his rights to the Wahaha brand name and because Danone was not aggressive enough in building and investing in their JV operations. Zong also argued that Danone has been unfaithful as well, investing in other Chinese companies—such as the Mengui dairies and the Hui Yuan company, a manufacturer of fruit juices—that competed with their JVs.

Besides depriving it of its share of the profits, the parallel operations, in Danone’s view, made it impossible to determine if the products sold to consumers were legitimate.
Accordingly, Danone sued Zong and Hangzhou Wahaha in Chinese, Swedish, and U.S. courts, alleging they had violated the JV agreement. Danone did not fare well in Chinese courts. Danone claimed its JVs had the right to the Wahaha name. However, when Hangzhou Wahaha first submitted its request to transfer the Wahaha brand name to the JVs as was required by their contract, Chinese regulatory authorities failed to approve it. No reaplication of the request was ever made. Thus, in December 2007, the Hangzhou Arbitration Commission ruled that Danone had waited too long to demand that Wahaha transfer ownership of the Wahaha brand name to their JVs. Subsequent to this ruling, Danone suspended its lawsuits, hoping that the Chinese government would recognize the importance of protecting foreign companies’ legal rights and that the Chinese and French governments would intervene to help settle the disputes. Its hopes for a political solution came to naught. Accordingly, in 2009, Danone chose to surrender: It sold its 51-percent share of the JV to Wahaha for €300 million, ending their dispute.

Danone had the opposite problem in India. Danone and the Wadia family each owned about one-quarter of their JV in India, Britannia Industries Ltd., with the remainder publicly held. Danone preferred to be more aggressive in introducing new products in India. Unfortunately, as part of its agreement with the Wadia family to market foodstuffs there, its 1995 contract stated it could only introduce new foodstuffs in the Indian market with the consent of the Wadia family, which was unwilling to do so. As was the case with its Wahaha JVs in China, in 2009 Danone sold its stake in Britannia Industries to the Wadia family for $170 million.

### Case Questions

13-22. Grameen Danone is a JV among two companies—the nonprofit Grameen Group and the for-profit Groupe Danone SA. What are the benefits of this JV to each of these companies? Why did each choose to participate in the JV?

13-23. From the perspective of each of the partners, are there any potential pitfalls to joining this JV?

13-24. Now consider Danone’s JV in China. What were the benefits of this JV to each of these companies? Why did each choose to participate in the JV?

13-25. What could Danone have done to avoid the problems it encountered in China and India?


### Endnotes


4. “Camera system is developed but not delivered,” op. cit.


27. Main, op. cit.


42. Main, op. cit.


CHAPTER 14
International Organization Design and Control

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Define and discuss the nature of international organization design, and identify and describe the initial influence of international business activity on organization design.

2. Identify and describe five advanced forms of international organization design and discuss hybrid global designs.

3. Identify and describe key related issues in global organization design.

4. Explain the general purpose of control and the levels of control in international business.

5. Describe how international firms manage the control function.

MyManagementLab®
🌟 Improve Your Grade!
More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
LENOVO SPREADS ITS GLOBAL WINGS

Lenovo was started in Beijing by Chinese entrepreneur Liu Chuanzhi in 1984. The firm dabbled in a variety of high-tech industries before it began to focus on the PC market. Initially Lenovo made computers for other firms, most notably AST Research. In 1990, though, the firm launched its own brand of PC and by 1997 Lenovo was the top-selling PC company in its home country. As Lenovo grew, Liu structured his firm around the traditional functional areas such as operations, marketing, and finance, but also created a separate research and development (R&D) group charged with exploring new technologies and commercializing existing technologies. The heads of each of these divisions worked directly with Liu as a team to make decisions and determine the firm’s strategies.

Unfortunately, however, the company was not successful in getting its computers accepted outside of China, and the firm fell further and further behind leading computer firms such as IBM, Dell, Apple, Sony, and Toshiba. One reason for this was the lack of brand recognition. Another was that Lenovo simply did not have many top managers with global experience. Hence, they did not have a deep understanding of foreign markets and how to penetrate those markets nor did they really know how to compete in a global marketplace.

But that began to change in 2005. During the early 2000s IBM, one of the world’s most recognized computer companies, was developing a new strategy that emphasized informational technology and business services and concentrated on business clients. At the time IBM was also a major competitor in the PC market in both desktops and laptops (especially with its line of ThinkPad laptops). But IBM managers also felt that PCs were dropping in price so quickly that reasonable profit margins would be difficult to maintain. When the company finally decided to sell its PC operation in 2005, Lenovo was quick to jump on the opportunity and bought IBM’s entire PC business for $1.75 billion. Lenovo was allowed to continue using the IBM name through 2007 but then started to brand all of its PCs with the Lenovo name.

Along with the PC business itself, Lenovo also got another extremely important asset—a team of skilled top managers well-versed in global PC markets. Senior IBM executives were quickly integrated throughout the top management structure and one of them, Stephen Ward, was appointed chief executive officer (CEO) of Lenovo. Liu, meanwhile, moved into the background but remained a director—he felt that Lenovo’s best opportunity for the firm to gain international market share would be under the leadership of a seasoned global manager like Ward.

But almost from the start problems began to surface. Ward, for example, was extremely autocratic in how he made decisions and believed that Lenovo should function in a highly centralized, command-and-control fashion. One of his first actions was to decrease the frequency of top management team meetings; he felt the functional vice presidents needed to spend more time running their own functional areas and less time meeting with him. Unfortunately, this alienated his new Chinese colleagues who assumed that their roles were being diminished because they spent less time with the CEO. Liu, for instance, had relied on a senior leadership team that worked together to make decisions, whereas Ward made most of the major decisions by himself. And at a more general level, the U.S. managers tried to impose a rigid, centralized, and bureaucratic structure throughout the new Lenovo. The Chinese, meanwhile, were highly resistant to these efforts, strongly preferring the more consensus-style structure that they had used previously.

Within a matter of months things came to a head. Among other changes, Ward was pushed out and replaced with William Amelio, a senior executive recruited from Dell Computer’s highly successful Asia/Pacific operations. Amelio immediately indicated his intent to try to move Lenovo back toward the traditional Chinese structure. He also thought that the firm could benefit from an infusion of additional perspectives so he began to aggressively recruit new executives from other international high-tech firms such as Dell, Motorola, Samsung, and Toshiba. He also softened the rigid functional structure and tried building more coordination across areas by creating cross-functional teams.

Unfortunately, though, Amelio’s efforts at Lenovo yielded only mixed results. On the one hand he led the development of a sophisticated and long-term international strategy that is still being followed today. He also successfully integrated numerous divisions and functions between the old IBM unit and Lenovo. But there were also major problems. For one thing, he never really made any major changes in how decisions were made, retaining much of the decision-making authority himself and continuing the command-and-control approach that had been Ward’s downfall. For another, Lenovo began to lose market share. Its new products were not as well received in the marketplace as company directors had hoped, and profits began to drop. Internal conflict also became more significant, with the old-guard IBM executives in one camp, the Chinese executives who grew up in Lenovo from the beginning in a different camp, and the newly recruited executives from other firms in still a third camp.

Finally, in 2010 Liu decided that he had to take action. He pushed Amelio to resign and took control of the firm himself. He then quickly restructured the upper ranks of Lenovo to fall more in line with the traditional Chinese approach. Under Amelio’s U.S.-style approach, the CEO had made most of the major decisions and then worked with business unit heads to execute them. Liu, though, re-formed the eight top managers at Lenovo into a close-knit team and then brought them together regularly
to make decisions and formulate plans. After decisions and plans were made by consensus, the team continued to work together to ensure that they were implemented effectively and with buy-in from others throughout the organization. However, he also decided to continue Amelio’s push away from functional divisions toward more cross-functional activity; he also increased the prominence of regional activities in different parts of the world.

Today Lenovo is headquartered in Hong Kong but has major operations in Beijing, Singapore, and Morrisville, North Carolina. The firm’s products include PCs, workstations, servers, storage devices, and information technology (IT) services. Lenovo has also entered the mobile phone business, citing increased convergence between the PC and handheld wireless technologies. In 2012 Lenovo generated profits of $273 million on revenues of $21.6 billion and employed more than 27,000 workers. Right now it’s still too soon to know if the changes at Lenovo will improve its fortunes or not. But Liu believes that his new approach, which he calls a “blend of old Chinese thinking and modern global thinking,” will soon carry the day.1

The Lenovo case illustrates one of the most fundamental issues facing any international business—how much authority to retain at the top and how much to delegate to lower levels of the organization. In its earlier days, the firm followed a consensus-oriented approach to authority. But as the firm sought to globalize, U.S. managers brought in to lead the firm installed a more centralized, command-and-control approach. Finally, though, as the firm’s top management team again came to be dominated by Chinese executives Lenovo reverted back to its previous consensus-based approach. As we will see in this chapter, this issue is an important component in managing international organization design and control.

In this chapter we describe the various organization designs that international businesses use to help achieve their strategic goals. Because these designs typically evolve along a well-defined path as firms become more international, we first discuss the initial forms of organization design firms use as they begin to internationalize their operations.2 We then analyze the more advanced forms of organization design that firms adopt as they broaden their participation in international business to become true multinational corporations (MNCs). Next we discuss several related issues in global organization design. We conclude by describing control, another important management function related to organization design.

The Nature of International Organization Design

Organization design (sometimes called organization structure) is the overall pattern of structural components and configurations used to manage the total organization.3 The appropriate design for any given organization may depend on the firm’s size, strategy, technology, and environment, as well as the cultures of the countries in which the firm operates. Organization design is also the basic vehicle through which strategy is ultimately implemented and through which the work of the organization is actually accomplished.

A firm cannot function unless its various structural components are appropriately assembled.4 Through its design the firm does four things. First, it allocates organizational resources. Second, it assigns tasks to its employees. Third, it informs those employees about the firm’s rules, procedures, and expectations about the employees’ job performances. Fourth, it collects and transmits information necessary for problem solving, decision making, and effective organizational control.5 This last task is particularly important for large MNCs, which must manage sharing vast amounts of information between corporate headquarters and subsidiaries and staff spread worldwide.

An organization’s structure is not created and then left alone; organization design is an ongoing process. Indeed, managers change the design of their firms almost continually. One study found that most firms and divisions of large firms make moderate design changes about once a year and one or more major design changes every 4 to 5 years.6 These changes often result from changes in a firm’s strategy because an important characteristic of a successful firm is its ability to match its strategy with a compatible organization design, as Lenovo has sought to do.7 For example, even though Lenovo is only about 30 years old the firm has undergone dozens of major organization design changes as well as hundreds of smaller ones. And clearly, a strategy calling for increased internationalization will have an impact on the firm’s organization design.
To see how this begins to happen, we will start by considering a domestic firm that has no international sales. Many entrepreneurs, particularly in larger economies such as those of the United States, Japan, and Germany, start new firms in response to some perceived need in the local market; they give little immediate thought to the international marketplace. Also, many small, domestically oriented firms enter international markets passively through indirect exporting, as discussed in Chapter 12. Because such indirect exporting occurs as a routine part of the firm’s domestic business, the firm’s organization design need not change at all.

Now assume that the hypothetical firm just described begins to engage in direct exporting on a modest level. Its initial response to international sales and orders is the corollary approach, whereby the firm delegates responsibility for processing such orders to individuals within an existing department, such as finance or marketing. Under this approach, the firm continues to use its existing domestic organization design. This approach is typical of a firm that has only a small level of international activity.

As a firm’s export sales become more significant, however, its next step usually is to create a separate export department. The export department takes responsibility for overseeing international operations, marketing products, processing orders, working with foreign distributors, and arranging financing when necessary. Initially, the head of the export department may report to a senior marketing or finance executive. As exports grow in importance, however, the export department of a small- to medium-size firm may achieve equality on the organization chart with finance, marketing, human resources, and other functional areas.

When selling to foreign customers is not fundamentally different from selling to domestic ones, the export department may get by with knowing only a little about foreign markets. However, as international activities increase, firms often find that an export department no longer serves their needs. Once a firm begins to station employees abroad or establish foreign subsidiaries to produce, distribute, and/or market its products, managerial responsibilities, coordination complexities, and information requirements all swell beyond the export department’s capabilities and expertise. Familiarity with foreign markets becomes more important and new methods for organizing may be required.

Firms respond to the challenges of controlling their burgeoning international business by changing their organization design through the creation of an international division that specializes in managing foreign operations. The international division allows a firm to concentrate resources and create specialized programs targeted on international business activity while simultaneously keeping that activity segregated from the firm’s ongoing domestic activities.

In Practice

- When a firm begins to engage in international business activity it will likely need to change its structure.
- As international activity increases the firm’s structure will need to continue to change in tandem with that increased activity.

For further consideration: Do you think that all businesses follow the same progression from corollary approach to export department to international division? Why or why not?

Global Organization Designs

As a firm evolves from being domestically oriented with international operations to becoming a true MNC with global aspirations, it typically abandons the international division approach. In place of that division it usually creates a global organization design to achieve synergies among its far-flung operations and to implement its organizational strategy. For example, for several years Aetna maintained a separate division for its small-but-growing international operations. When its international revenues more than doubled during a three-year period, however, the firm announced plans to eliminate the international division and integrate Aetna’s global initiatives into its existing structure. Executives at the firm indicated that their new structure would make it easier to transfer knowledge and technology between international markets.
the global design adopted by any firm must deal with the need to integrate three types of knowledge to compete effectively internationally.\textsuperscript{10}

- Area knowledge: Managers must understand the cultural, commercial, social, and economic conditions in each host-country market in which the firm does business.
- Product knowledge: Managers must comprehend such factors as technological trends, customer needs, and competitive forces affecting the goods the firm produces and sells.
- Functional knowledge: Managers must have access to coworkers with expertise in basic business functions such as production, marketing, finance, accounting, human resource management, and IT.

The five most common forms of global organization design are product, area, functional, customer, and matrix. As we will discuss, each form allows the firm to emphasize one type of knowledge, yet perhaps each also makes it more difficult to incorporate the other types of knowledge into the firm’s decision-making processes. Accordingly, the global design the MNC chooses will reflect the relative importance of each of the three types of knowledge in the firm’s operations, as well as its need for coordination among its units, the source of its firm-specific advantages, and its managerial philosophy about its position in the world economy.\textsuperscript{11}

MNCs typically adopt one of three managerial philosophies that guide their approach to such functions as organization design and marketing. The ethnocentric approach is used by firms that operate internationally the same way they do domestically. The polycentric approach is used by firms that customize their operations for each foreign market they serve. The geocentric approach is used by firms that analyze the needs of their customers worldwide and then adopt standardized operations for all markets they serve. (We discuss these concepts more fully in Chapter 16.)

**Global Product Design**

Global Product Design

The most common form of organization design adopted by MNCs is the global product design. The global product design assigns worldwide responsibility for specific products or product groups to separate operating divisions within a firm. This design works best when the firm has diverse product lines or when its product lines are sold in diverse markets, thereby rendering the need for coordination between product lines relatively unimportant. If the products are related, the organization of the firm takes on what is often called an M-form design; if the products are unrelated, the design is called an H-form design. The M in M-form stands for multidivisional—the various divisions of the firm are usually self-contained operations with interrelated activities. The H in H-form stands for holding, as in holding company—the various unrelated businesses function with autonomy and little interdependence.

Samsung Group is the largest chaebol in Korea, with almost 80 affiliates, 19 of which are separately listed on the Korea Stock Exchange. Samsung Group uses the H-form global product design, shown in Figure 14.1. The chaebol is organized into four major divisions: the electronics group, the chemical products group, the financial services group, and another group of smaller businesses. Each of these groups has little in common with the others and functions separately from them. Similarly, the other affiliated companies group includes businesses that are also unrelated, including a catering business, a small hotel chain, an amusement park, a professional baseball team, and a small group of hospitals and medical centers.

The global product design provides several potential competitive advantages. First, because a division focuses on a single product or product group, the division managers gain expertise in all aspects of the product or products, better enabling them to compete globally. Second, the global product design facilitates efficiencies in production because managers are free to manufacture the product wherever manufacturing costs are the lowest. It also allows managers to coordinate production at their various facilities, shifting output from factory to factory as global demand or cost conditions fluctuate. Further, because managers have extensive product knowledge, they are better able to incorporate new technologies into their product(s) and respond quickly and flexibly to technological changes that affect their market. The global product design also facilitates global marketing of the product. The firm gains flexibility in introducing, promoting, and distributing each product or product group. Rather than being tied to one marketing plan that encompasses the whole firm, individual product line managers may pursue their own plans. Finally, because the global product design forces managers to think globally, it facilitates geocentric corporate philosophies. This is a useful mind-set as firms work to develop greater international skills internally.\textsuperscript{12}
The global product design also has disadvantages, however. For one, it may encourage expensive duplication because each product group needs its own functional-area skills such as marketing, finance, and information management, and sometimes even its own physical facilities for production, distribution, and R&D. Similarly, each product group must develop its own knowledge about the cultural, legal, and political environments of the various regional and national markets in which it operates. Coordination and corporate learning across product groups also becomes more difficult. If such coordination is an important part of the firm’s international strategy, a different global design, such as the global area design, may be preferable. Thus, businesses must carefully consider the relative advantages and disadvantages of using the global product design when deciding the best form of organization design for their particular circumstances.

**Global Area Design**

The **global area design** organizes the firm’s activities around specific areas or regions of the world. This approach is particularly useful for firms with a polycentric or multidomestic corporate philosophy. A global area design is most likely to be used by a firm whose products are not readily transferable across regions. “Emerging Opportunities” discusses how many firms doing business in China are using the global area design.

![Samsung Group's Global Product Design](imagebroker/Alamy)

Samsung Group is the largest *chaebol* in Korea, with almost 80 affiliates. Samsung Group uses the H-form global product design. The chaebol is organized into four major divisions: electronics, chemical products, financial services, and a group of smaller businesses. Each of these groups has little in common with the others and functions separately from them. Similarly, the other affiliated companies group includes businesses that are also unrelated, including a catering business, a small hotel chain, an amusement park, a professional baseball team, and a small group of hospitals and medical centers.
FIGURE 14.2
*Adecco S.A.'s Global Area Design*

As shown in Figure 14.2, Adecco S.A. uses the global area design. Adecco, a Swiss firm, is the world’s largest temporary employment agency, serving more than 100,000 clients from more than 5,500 offices worldwide. The firm has 10 basic divisions, each representing a different area of the world where Adecco does business. Managers in each area division handle recruiting, distribution, promotion, advertising, client services, and other functions for their particular region.

The global area design is particularly useful for a firm whose strategy is marketing-driven rather than predicated on manufacturing efficiencies or technological innovation or for a firm whose competitive strength lies in the reputation of its brand-name products. Both conditions apply to Adecco. Further, the geographical focus of this design allows a firm to develop expertise about the local market. Area managers can freely adapt the firm’s products to meet local needs and can quickly respond to changes in the local marketplace. They also can tailor the product mix they offer within a given area. For example, Adecco managers must adapt their practices to local demand for temporary employment as well as different labor laws and cultural differences regarding employment relationships.

The global area design does have disadvantages, however. By focusing on the needs of the area market, the firm may sacrifice cost efficiencies that might be gained through global production. Diffusion of technology is also slowed because innovations generated in one area division may not be adopted by all the others. Thus, this design may not be suitable for product lines undergoing rapid technological change. Further, the global area design results in duplication of resources because each area division must have its own functional specialists, product experts, and, in many cases, production facilities. And finally, it makes coordination across areas expensive and discourages global product planning.

**Global Functional Design**

The **global functional design** calls for a firm to create departments or divisions that have worldwide responsibility for the common organizational functions—finance, operations, marketing, R&D, and human resources management. This design is used by MNCs that have relatively narrow or similar product lines. It results in what is often called a U-form organization, where the U stands for *unity*. Lenovo used this design in the early years of its existence. Another example of the global functional design is that used by British Airways, shown in Figure 14.3. This firm is essentially a single-business firm—it provides air transport services—and has company-wide functional operations dedicated to marketing and operations, public affairs, engineering, corporate finance, human resources, and other basic functions.

The global functional design offers several advantages. First of all, the firm can easily transfer expertise within each functional area. For example, Exxon Mobil uses the global functional design, so production skills learned by Exxon Mobil’s crews operating in the Gulf of Mexico can be used by its offshore operations in Malaysia’s Jerneh field, and new catalytic cracking technology tested at its refinery in Baton Rouge, Louisiana, can be adopted by its refineries in Singapore and Trecate, Italy. Second, managers can maintain highly centralized control over functional operations. For example, the head of Exxon Mobil’s refinery division can rapidly adjust the production runs or product mix of refineries to meet changes in worldwide demand, thereby achieving efficient usage of these expensive corporate resources. Finally, the global functional design focuses attention on the key functions of the firm. For example, managers can easily isolate a problem in marketing and distinguish it from activities in other functional areas.
Despite these advantages, this design is inappropriate for many businesses. For one thing, the global functional design is practical only when the firm has relatively few products or customers. For another, coordination between divisions can be a major problem. For example, the manufacturing division and the marketing division may become so differentiated from each other that each may start pursuing its own goals to the detriment of the firm as a whole. Finally, there may also be duplication of resources among managers. For example, the finance, marketing, and operations managers may each hire an expert on Japanese regulation, when a single expert could have served all three functional areas just as effectively.

Because of these problems, the global functional design has limited applicability. It is used by many firms engaged in extracting and processing natural resources, such as the mining and energy industries, because in their case the ability to transfer technical expertise is important. Firms that need to impose uniform standards on all their operations also may adopt this approach. For example, to ensure safety, British Airways standardizes its maintenance and flight procedures regardless of whether a flight originates in London, Hong Kong, or Sydney.

**Global Customer Design**

The global customer design is used when a firm serves different customers or customer groups, each with specific needs calling for special expertise or attention. For example, Kodak has adopted a global customer design, as is shown in Figure 14.4. Its Commercial Business Group focuses on selling high-quality film products to studios in Hollywood, London, Munich, Hong Kong, Toronto, and other centers for filmed entertainment, as well as film and supplies to the medical community and other commercial customers. Its Consumer Business Group sells both film and digital media to professional and amateur photographers, and its New Business Group targets emerging markets and new technologies of relevance to leading-edge customers around the world.

This design is useful when the various customer groups targeted by a firm are so diverse as to require totally distinct marketing approaches. For example, selling four packages of image printing paper to an individual is a completely different task from selling medical imaging supplies to a cancer hospital. The global customer approach allows the firm to meet the specific needs of each customer segment and track how well the firm’s products or services are doing among those segments. On the other hand, the global customer design may lead to a significant duplication of resources if each customer group needs its own area and functional specialists. Coordination between the different divisions is also difficult because each is concerned with a fundamentally different market.

**Global Matrix Design**

The most complex form of international organization design is the global matrix design. A global matrix design is the result of superimposing one form of organization design on top of an existing, different form. The resulting design is usually quite fluid, with new matrix dimensions
being created, downscaled, and eliminated as needed. For example, the global matrix design shown in Figure 14.5 was created by superimposing a global product design (shown down the side) on an existing global functional design (shown across the top). This was the design that Lenovo’s U.S. managers attempted to use. Using a global matrix design, a firm can form specific product groups comprising members from existing functional departments. These product groups can then plan, design, develop, produce, and market new products with appropriate input from each functional area. In this way the firm can draw on both the functional and the product expertise of its employees. After a given product development task is completed, the product group may be dissolved; its members will then move on to new assignments. Of course, other matrix arrangements are possible. For example, an area design could be overlaid on a functional design, thereby allowing area specialists to coordinate activities with functional experts.

An advantage of the global matrix design is that it helps bring together the functional, area, and product expertise of the firm into teams to develop new products or respond to new challenges in the global marketplace. For example, Texas Instruments (TI) often uses a global matrix design for new product development, although its underlying organization design is based on function. At any one time TI has several product development groups in operation, which draw members from relevant functional groups and work toward creating new products or new uses for existing ones. If and when such breakthroughs are achieved, matrix-based product groups are used to transfer the new technology throughout the rest of the firm. After the task assigned to the product group is completed (for example, after the new product has been launched), the group may be dissolved.

The global matrix design thus promotes organizational flexibility. It allows firms to take advantage of functional, area, customer, and product organization designs as needed while simultaneously minimizing the disadvantages of each. Members of a product development team can be added or dropped from the team as the firm’s needs change. The global matrix design also promotes coordination and communication among managers from different divisions.
VENTURING ABROAD

ALSHAYA’S MATRIX DESIGN

The Kuwait-based business M. H. Alshaya Company does not have great name recognition. But that’s exactly how the privately held company owned by the Alshaya family wants to keep it. Now suppose you were visiting Bahrain, Dubai, or Kuwait City and went for a stroll in one of the megamalls that have sprung up in those cities in recent years. During your visit you would see and might shop in such stores as Starbucks, The Cheesecake Factory, Pinkberry, IHOP, American Eagle Outfitters, Victoria’s Secret, Pottery Barn, and Williams-Sonoma. Perhaps surprisingly, as it turns out, each of those stores and restaurants throughout the region are owned and managed by none other than M. H. Alshaya Company.

Alshaya has prospered in recent years as a franchisee for dozens of retail and restaurant chains, concentrating in the Middle East but recently branching out into Europe and Asia as well. Alshaya offers strong regional expertise—scouting locations, negotiating leases, hiring and training employees, and helping modify foods and other products to meet local religious requirements. For example, foods with alcohol-based content must have their ingredients modified, but Alshaya tries to find alternative ingredients that produce the same appearance and taste. Although Alshaya modifies its stores to meet local customs, it also strives to maintain the character and experience that customers enjoy regardless of their locations. So, a Starbucks latte made in Dubai tastes just like a Starbucks latte made in Seattle. And the store and customer “buying experience” are also the same.

The firm currently operates more than 2,400 stores comprising more than 70 brands in 19 countries, and its stores occupy around 8.6 million square feet of retail space. Although much of its operations are based in the Middle East, Alshaya also has stores in Poland, Russia, the Czech Republic, the United Kingdom, and Morocco. The firm also employs approximately 32,000 people of 100 different nationalities.

Alshaya uses a matrix design to manage its diverse and far-flung retail operations. The basic structure is centered on seven business units: fashion and footwear, food, health and beauty, pharmacy, optics, home furnishings, and office supplies. Each of these business units has its own president who reports directly to the CEO. So, for example, the food business unit president oversees Alshaya’s Starbucks, Cheesecake Factory, IHOP, Texas Roadhouse, P. F. Chang’s, and other food businesses across all of their markets (23 food brands in all).

The matrix “overlay” consists of what Alshaya calls cross-border functional teams and includes human resources, finance, legal, property, supply chain, audit, IT, and customer care specialists. The firm’s logic for this arrangement is that it enables Alshaya to rely on common metrics, policies, and reporting systems in a consistent manner. For instance, a common metric to measure retail sales is revenue per square foot of floor space and sales at the same location compared from one time period to the same time period a year later. By using common metrics, then Alshaya can judge the performance of an IHOP restaurant in Kuwait city and compare it to the performance of IHOPs in Warsaw, Dubai, and Doha. All in all, then, Alshaya seems to be performing well, and its matrix design clearly contributes to that performance.\(^\text{17}\)

The global matrix design has limitations, however. First of all, it is not appropriate for a firm that has few products and that operates in relatively stable markets. Second, it often puts employees in the position of being accountable to more than one manager. For example, at any given time an employee may be a member of his or her functional, area, or product group as well as of two or three product development groups. As a result, the individual may have split loyalties—caught between competing sets of demands and pressures as the area manager to whom the employee reports wants one thing and the product line manager wants another. Similarly, the global matrix design creates a paradox regarding authority. On the one hand, part of the design’s purpose is to put decision-making authority in the hands of those managers most able to use it quickly. On the other hand, because reporting relationships are so complex and vague, getting approval for major decisions may actually take longer. And finally, the global matrix design tends to promote compromises, or decisions based on the relative political clout of the managers involved.\(^\text{18}\)

Hybrid Global Designs

Each global form of international organization design described in this section represents an ideal or pure type. Most firms, however, create a hybrid design that best suits their purposes, as dictated in part by the firms’ size, strategy, technology, environment, and culture. Most MNCs are likely to blend elements of all the designs discussed. A firm may use a global product design as its overall approach, but it may have more of a functional orientation or area focus in some of its product groups than in others. In fact, if it were possible to compare the designs used by the world’s 500 largest MNCs, no two would look exactly the same. A firm’s managers start with the basic prototypes, merge them, throw out bits and pieces, and create new elements unique to their firm as they respond to changes in the organization’s strategy and competitive environment. In many ways, Lenovo is using a hybrid design today. Specifically, its current design reflects functional, area, and matrix components.

Figure 14.6 illustrates how Nissan Motor Corporation uses a hybrid design to structure its North American operations. At the top level of the firm Nissan has some managers dedicated
FIGURE 14.6
Nissan USA’s Hybrid Design
Part 3 • Managing International Business

to products (such as the vice president and general manager for the Infiniti division) and others
dedicated to functions (such as the vice president and chief financial officer). The marketing
function for Nissan automobiles is broken down by product, with specific units responsible
for sedans, sports cars, and trucks and SUVs. Both the Infiniti and Nissan divisions also have
regional general managers organized by area. In similar fashion all large international firms mix
and match forms of organization in different areas and at different levels to create hybrid organi-
zation designs that their managers believe best serve the firm’s needs.

In Practice

- There is no one single best form of organization design for a global business.
- Although international businesses can use global product, area, functional, customer, or
  matrix designs, most use a hybrid design including several of these based on their size,
  strategy, technology, environment, and culture.

For further consideration: Are international businesses in the same industry likely to adopt
similar forms of organization design? Why or why not?

Related Issues in Global Organization Design

In addition to the fundamental issues of organization design we have addressed, MNCs also face
a number of other related organizational issues that must be carefully managed.

Centralization versus Decentralization

When designing its organization, an MNC must make a particularly critical decision that deter-
mines the level of autonomy, power, and control it wants to grant its subsidiaries. Suppose it
chooses to decentralize decision making by allowing individual subsidiaries great discretion
over strategy, finance, production, and marketing decisions, thereby letting those decisions
be made by managers closest to the market. These managers may then focus only on the
subsidiary’s needs rather than on the firm’s overall needs. An MNC can remedy this deficiency
by tightly centralizing decision-making authority at corporate headquarters. Decisions made by
the corporate staff can then take into account the firm’s overall needs. However, these decisions
often hinder the ability of subsidiary managers to quickly and effectively respond to changes in
their local market conditions. Because both centralization and decentralization offer attractive
benefits to the MNC, most firms constantly tinker with a blend of the two to achieve the best
outcome in terms of overall strategy.19

Numerous U.S. businesses have stumbled after setting up shop in China because they try to
maintain centralized control from abroad. This has been especially problematic in industries in
which responsiveness to market conditions is critical. Both Google and eBay, for instance, have
struggled in China because small local rivals have been more nimble in responding to customer
preferences. Amazon, meanwhile, recently acquired a major online Chinese retailer called Joyo
.com. Amazon founder and CEO Jeff Bezos has vowed to not replicate the mistakes of other
firms but instead insists that the local Joyo.com managers will have a great deal of discretion and
control over how they respond to peculiarities in the Chinese market.20

Nor are these problems unique to U.S. businesses moving into China. Toyota has long been
known for its centralized organization design and the relative lack of autonomy given to coun-
try managers outside of Japan. Interestingly, however, in early 2013 Toyota announced major
changes in its design intended to push considerable autonomy out to country managers. James
Lentz, formerly head of Toyota’s sales and marketing in the United States, was promoted and
given additional responsibility for vehicle development and manufacturing. Going forward, he
and his leadership team will have considerably more authority than in the past to run Toyota’s
U.S. business as they think best.21

Role of Subsidiary Boards of Directors

An MNC typically incorporates each of its subsidiaries in the subsidiary’s country of opera-
tion. This is done to limit the subsidiary’s liability and to allow it to attain legal status as a
local citizen. Most countries require each corporation, including a wholly owned subsidiary of a foreign MNC, to have a board of directors. The board is elected by corporate shareholders (which is the MNC), is responsible to those shareholders for the effective management of the subsidiary (which is owned by the MNC), and oversees the activities of top-level managers (who are hired by the MNC). The issue facing most MNCs is whether to view the creation of a subsidiary board of directors as a pro forma exercise and therefore give the board little real authority or to empower the board with substantial decision-making authority.

Empowering the subsidiary’s board promotes decentralization. Foreign subsidiaries may need the authority to act quickly and decisively without having to always seek the parent’s approval. Also, if the MNC decentralizes authority to local levels, an active board provides a clear accountability and reporting link back to corporate headquarters. Some MNCs also have found that appointing prominent local citizens to the subsidiary’s board is helpful in conducting business in a foreign country. These members can help the subsidiary integrate itself into the local business community and can be an effective source of information for both parent and subsidiary about local business and political conditions.

For example, prominent local business officials on the board of Apple’s Japanese subsidiary were key to the firm’s early success in the Japanese market. They enhanced the credibility of Apple’s products in a country where corporate connections and status are an important marketing tool, while their appointment demonstrated Apple’s long-term commitment to the Japanese market. A subsidiary board also can help monitor the subsidiary’s ethical and social responsibility practices. A potential disadvantage of empowering a subsidiary’s board is that the subsidiary may become too independent as its board assumes substantial authority and thereby fails to maintain the desired level of accountability to the parent.

In general a subsidiary board is most useful when the subsidiary has a great deal of autonomy, its own self-contained management structure, and a business identity separate from the parent’s. Active subsidiary boards are particularly useful in H-form organizations because a holding company’s subsidiaries are typically run independently of one another. For example, Nestlé’s U.S. subsidiary, Carnation, meets each of the three criteria noted. Not surprisingly, therefore, Carnation also has an active board of directors. Honda, Matsushita, Hewlett-Packard, and Dow also empower their local boards of directors to make decisions and respond to local conditions.

**Coordination in the Global Organization**

Finally, as part of creating an effective design for itself, an international firm must address its coordination needs. Coordination is the process of linking and integrating functions and activities of different groups, units, or divisions. Coordination needs vary as a function of interdependence among the firm’s divisions and functions. In other words, the higher the level of interdependence among divisions and functions, the more coordination is necessary among them.

MNCs can use any of several strategies to achieve and manage their desired level of coordination. The organizational hierarchy itself is one way to manage interdependence and promote coordination. An organization design that clearly specifies all reporting relationships and directions of influence facilitates coordination because each manager knows how to channel communications, decision making, and so on. Rules and procedures also facilitate coordination. For example, a standard operating procedure that requires the reporting of monthly and quarterly revenue, cost, and profit data to headquarters allows corporate staff to coordinate the firm’s cash flows and to quickly identify troublesome markets.

MNCs also may adopt somewhat more temporary or ad hoc coordination techniques. Using employees in liaison roles is one such technique. Suppose two divisions of an MNC are collaborating on an activity or function. Each may designate a specific manager as its liaison with the other. If any manager in one unit has information or questions that involve the other unit, they are channeled through the liaison to the appropriate person or unit. Toyota, for example, frequently uses this technique for managing relatively small-scale joint efforts.

When the magnitude of the collaboration is significant, task forces may be used for coordination. In such cases each participating unit or division assigns one or more representatives to serve on the task force. The assignment may be either full-time or part-time. Ford and Mazda, for example, used a task force when they collaborated on the design of the Ford Focus. Each
Part 3 • Managing International Business

firm designated members of its design, engineering, operations, and finance departments to serve on the task force. Employees of the two firms rotated on and off the task force depending on its needs and on the automobile’s stage of development. When the final design was complete and the automobile was put into production, the task force was dissolved.

Many international firms also rely heavily on informal coordination mechanisms. Informal management networks can be especially effective. An informal management network is simply a group of managers from different parts of the world who are connected to one another in some way. These connections often form as a result of personal contact, mutual acquaintances, and interaction achieved via travel, training programs, joint meetings, task force experiences, and so on. Informal management networks can be very powerful for short-circuiting bureaucracy that may delay communication and decision making. They also can be effective for getting things done more quickly and more effectively than if normal and routine procedures were always followed.26

In Practice

The Control Function in International Business

Another important role of organization design is to enable the firm to more effectively manage its control function. Control is the process of monitoring ongoing performance and making necessary changes to keep the organization moving toward its performance goals. Control is conceptually similar to a thermostat. A thermostat monitors room temperature and then turns on the cooling or heating system when the actual temperature moves too far from the ideal temperature. When the desired room temperature is reached, the system is turned off until it is needed again.

As illustrated in Figure 14.7, there are three main levels at which control can be implemented and managed in an international business. These three key levels of control are the strategic, organizational, and operations levels. Although each is important on its own merits, the three levels also are important collectively as an organizing framework for managers to use in approaching international control from a comprehensive and integrated perspective.

Strategic Control

Strategic control is intended to monitor both how well an international business formulates strategy and how well it goes about implementing that strategy.27 Strategic control thus focuses on how well the firm defines and maintains its desired strategic alignment with the firm’s environment and how effectively the firm is setting and achieving its strategic goals. For example, several years ago Germany’s largest automobile manufacturer, Daimler-Benz, bought Chrysler, the third-largest automaker in the United States. At the time this decision seemed logical. For instance, managers believed that the firms could learn from each other, that their existing product lines and organizational strengths complemented one another, and that the combined firm would be able to compete more effectively in global markets with other behemoths such as General Motors, Ford, and Toyota. As it turned out, though, this ended up being a poor strategic decision. The anticipated synergies and efficiencies could never be achieved and so Chrysler was subsequently sold to a group of private investors.

Strategic control also plays a major role in the decisions firms make about foreign-market entry and expansion. This is especially true when the market holds both considerable potential and considerable uncertainty and risk. For example, in the wake of India’s overtures for foreign direct investment, many firms are expanding their operations in that country. Hindustan Lever, Unilever’s Indian subsidiary, has increased its capacity for soap and detergent manufacturing
and launched new food-processing operations as well. These steps represent a strategic commitment by the firm to the Indian market. As this strategy is implemented, strategic control systems will be used in making decisions about future operations there. If opportunities in the Indian market continue to unfold, Unilever no doubt will continue to expand. However, if uncertainty and risk become too great, the firm may become cautious, perhaps even reversing its expansion in India.

Often the most critical aspect of strategic control is control of an international firm’s financial resources. Money is the driving force of any organization, whether that money is in the form of profits or of cash flow to ensure that ongoing expenses can be covered. Moreover, if a firm has surplus revenues, managers must ensure that those funds are invested wisely to maximize their payoff for the firm and its shareholders. Thus, it is extremely important that an international firm develop and maintain effective accounting systems. Such systems should allow managers to fully monitor and understand where the firm’s revenues are coming from in every market in which the firm operates, to track and evaluate all its costs and expenses, and to see how its parts contribute to its overall profitability.28

Poor financial control can cripple a firm’s ability to compete globally. For example, Mantrust, an Indonesian firm, bought Van Camp Seafood, packager of Chicken of the Sea tuna, for $300 million. Most of that money was borrowed from Indonesian banks. Mantrust’s owner was unskilled at managing debt, and the firm had difficulties making its loan payments. Both Mantrust and Van Camp struggled for years until Mantrust sold Van Camp to Tri-Union Seafood, a limited partnership owned by investors in the United States and Thailand.
Financial control is generally a separate area of strategic control in an international firm. Most firms create one or more special managerial positions to handle financial control. Such a position is usually called controller. Large international firms often have a corporate controller responsible for the financial resources of the entire organization. Each division within the firm is likely to have a divisional controller who is based in a country where the division operates and who oversees local financial control. Divisional controllers usually are responsible both to the heads of their respective divisions and to the corporate controller. These control relationships are managed primarily through budgets and financial forecasts.

A special concern of an international controller is managing the inventory of various currencies needed to run the firm’s subsidiaries and to pay its vendors. For example, Coca-Cola has to manage its holdings of more than 150 currencies as part of its daily operations. Each foreign subsidiary of an international firm needs to maintain a certain amount of local currency for the subsidiary’s domestic operations. Each also needs access to the currency of the parent corporation’s home country to remit dividend payments, reimburse the parent for the use of intellectual property, and pay for other intracorporate transactions. The subsidiary further must be able to obtain other currencies to pay suppliers of imported raw materials and component parts as their invoices are received.

Given the possibility of exchange rate fluctuations, the controller needs to oversee the firm’s holdings of diverse currencies to avoid losses if exchange rates change. Many MNCs centralize the management of exchange rate risk at the corporate level. However, others, such as the Royal Dutch/Shell Group, allow their foreign affiliates to use both domestic and international financial and commodity markets to protect the affiliates against exchange rate fluctuations. Firms that decentralize this task need to maintain adequate financial controls on their subsidiaries or face financial problems. For example, a few years ago Shell’s Japanese affiliate, Showa Shell Seikyu KK, engaged in widespread speculative trading in foreign-currency markets, a practice forbidden by Shell. Knowledge of this speculative trading was brought to light only when the Japanese affiliate reported a loss of more than $1 billion. Clearly, Shell’s internal controls had broken down and failed to detect the speculative activities. As a result, corporate officials implemented new procedures and tighter controls to better manage the firm’s financial resources.

Another type of strategic control that is increasingly important to international firms is control of joint ventures and other strategic alliances. As we discussed in Chapter 13, strategic alliances, particularly joint ventures, are being used more often by and becoming more important to international firms. It follows that strategic control systems must account for the performances of such alliances. By definition a joint venture or other strategic alliance is operated as a relatively autonomous enterprise; therefore, most partners agree to develop an independent control system for each alliance in which they participate. The financial control
of these alliances then becomes an ingredient in the overall strategic control system for each partner’s firm. That is, the alliance maintains its own independent control systems, but the results are communicated not only to the managers of the alliance but also to each partner.

Organizational Control

Organizational control focuses on the design of the organization itself. As discussed previously, there are many different forms of organization design that an international firm can use. However, selecting and implementing a particular design does not necessarily end the organization design process. For example, as a firm’s environment or strategy changes, managers may need to alter the firm’s design to better enable the firm to function in the new circumstances. Adding new product lines, entering a new market, or opening a new factory—all can dictate the need for a change in design.

The most common type of organizational control system is a decentralized one called responsibility center control. Using this system, the firm first identifies fundamental responsibility centers within the organization. Strategic business units are frequently defined as responsibility centers, as are geographical regions or product groups. Once the centers are identified, the firm then evaluates each on the basis of how effectively it meets its strategic goals. Thus, a unique control system is developed for each responsibility center. These systems are tailored to meet local accounting and reporting requirements, the local competitive environment, and other circumstances.

Nestlé uses responsibility center control for each of its units, such as Poland Springs, Alcon Labs, and Nestlé-Rowntree (see Map 14.1). These subsidiaries regularly provide financial performance data to corporate headquarters. Managers at Poland Springs, for example, file quarterly reports to Nestlé headquarters in Switzerland so that headquarters can keep abreast of how well its U.S. subsidiary is doing. By keeping each subsidiary defined as a separate and distinct unit and allowing each to use the control system that best fits its own competitive environment, corporate managers in Switzerland can see how each unit is performing within the context of its own market. Each report must contain certain basic information, such as sales and profits, but each also has unique entries that reflect the individual subsidiary and its market.

A firm may prefer to use generic organizational control across its entire organization; that is, the control systems used are the same for each unit or operation, and the locus of authority generally resides at the firm’s headquarters. Generic organizational control most commonly is used by international firms that pursue similar strategies in each market in which they compete. Because there is no strategic variation between markets, responsibility center control would be inappropriate. The firm is able to apply the same centralized decision making and control standards to the strategic performance of each unit or operation. Moreover, international firms that use the same strategy in every market often have relatively stable and predictable operations; therefore, the organizational control system the firms use also can be relatively stable and straightforward. For example, United Distillers PLC markets its line of bourbon products in the United States, Japan, and throughout Europe. Because the product line is essentially the same in every market and the characteristics of its consumers vary little across markets, the firm uses the same control methods for each market.

A third type of organizational control, which could be used in combination with either responsibility center control or generic organizational control, focuses on the strategic planning process itself rather than on outcomes. Planning process control calls for a firm to concentrate its organizational control system on the actual mechanics and processes the firm uses to develop strategic plans. This approach is based on the assumption that if the firm controls its strategies, desired outcomes are more likely to result. Each business unit may then concentrate more on implementing its strategy, rather than worrying as much about the outcomes of that strategy.

In implementing planning process control, whenever a unit fails to meet its goals, the head of that unit meets with the firm’s executive committee. The meeting focuses on how the original goals were set and why they were not met. Throughout the meeting the emphasis is on the process that was followed that led to the unsuccessful outcome. The goal is to correct shortcomings in the actual process each unit uses. For example, a unit might have based its unmet sales goals on outdated market research data because there were insufficient funds for new market research. Planning process control would focus not only on correcting the sales shortfall but also on enabling more accurate forecasting in the future.
MAP 14.1
A Sampling of Nestlé’s Global Holdings, Subsidiaries, and Affiliates
There are clear and important linkages between strategic control and organizational control in an international firm. When a firm adopts a centralized form of organization design, strategic control is facilitated as a logical and complementary extension of that design. When a firm uses a decentralized design, strategic control is not as logically connected with that design. A decentralized design gives foreign affiliates more autonomy and freedom while making it more difficult for the parent to maintain adequate control. The challenge facing managers of the parent is to foster the autonomy and freedom that accompany a decentralized design while simultaneously maintaining effective parent control of operating subsidiaries.

For a large international firm organizational control must be addressed at multiple levels. At the highest level, the appropriate form of organization design must be maintained for the entire firm. At a lower level, the appropriate form of organization design must be maintained for each subsidiary or operating unit. The firm also must ensure that these designs mesh with each other.

**Operations Control**

The third level of control in an international firm is operations control. Operations control focuses specifically on operating processes and systems within both the firm and its subsidiaries and operating units. The firm also may need an operations control system for each of its manufacturing facilities, distribution centers, and administrative centers.

Strategic control often involves time periods of several years, while organizational control may deal with periods of a few years or months. Operations control, however, involves relatively short periods of time, dealing with components of performance that need to be assessed on a regular—perhaps daily or even hourly—basis. An operations control system is also likely to be much more specific and focused than strategic and organizational control systems.

For example, a manufacturing firm may monitor daily output, scrappage, and worker productivity within a given manufacturing facility, whereas a retail outlet may measure daily sales. A firm that wants to increase the productivity of its workforce or enhance the quality of its products or services primarily will use operations control to pursue these goals. Operations control usually focuses on the lower levels of a firm, such as first-line managers and operating employees.

---

**PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS**

**TOWARD ZERO WASTE?**

DuPont was once a major generator of trash, routinely dumping thousands of tons of waste materials in landfills each year. But a few years ago the firm announced its intentions to dramatically reduce the waste it was sending to landfills, with a goal of achieving total recycling wherever possible. To accomplish this goal the firm used a classic control system model. First, it set a control standard for each of its business units and facilities. Next, it developed procedures for monitoring progress toward those standards. And finally, it outlined how it would address deviations.

Take DuPont’s Building Innovations unit, for example. This business makes such products as kitchen countertops and Tyvek building wrap. In 2008 the business was sending 81 million pounds of waste to landfills each year. But by January 2013 it was not sending anything to landfills! Among the new practices leading to this milestone are:

- Composting cafeteria waste and using it in landscaping;
- Repairing shipping pallets to extend their use life, and shredding those not repairable for use as animal bedding;
- Recycling countertop waste into landscape stone.

There is even a new term that has been coined to reflect this accomplishment: zero-landfill status. DuPont is not alone, of course. General Motors recently reported that 81 of its North American manufacturing plants have achieved zero-landfill status. Moreover, GM also says that it recycles 92 percent of all waste generated by its facilities worldwide. Honda reports that 10 of its 14 North American factories have achieved zero-landfill status. And Toyota claims that its North American operations are at “near-zero”-landfill status.

Outside of the auto industry, Boeing says that a renovated Chinook helicopter plant is at zero-landfill status. And PepsiCo’s Frito-Lay facilities are, in the words of the company, approaching zero-landfill status at some of its facilities. For now, though, there are still a few roadblocks and challenges faced by businesses trying to improve their environmental footprint through control procedures. For one thing, some waste products are simply difficult to recycle. DuPont, for example, noted that reducing waste by 80 percent was surprisingly easy, but the last 20 percent posed real challenges. For another, there is no independent resource for verifying zero-landfill status. Regardless, though, critics agree that even if a firm takes small liberties in reporting waste reductions progress is nevertheless being made.
Consider Aldi, a German grocery chain. Although people in the United States are used to sprawling, full-line supermarkets that carry everything from apples to zippers, typical European grocery stores tend to be smaller and less service oriented, to carry fewer product lines, and to charge higher prices. Aldi has prospered in Europe through an elaborate operations control system that relies heavily on cost control and efficiency. Aldi stores do not advertise or even list their numbers in telephone directories. Products are not unpacked and put on shelves but instead are sold directly from crates and boxes. The no-frills stores are also usually located in areas in which rents are low. Customers bring their own sacks (or pay Aldi 5¢ each for sacks), bag their own purchases, and rent shopping carts for 25¢ (refunded if the customer returns the cart to the storage rack). Aldi does not accept checks or coupons and provides little customer service, but this austere approach allows the firm to charge rock-bottom prices. Aldi has effectively transferred its control methods to its U.S. operation. The result? Aldi’s net profit margins and sales per square foot in the United States are about double the industry norm. With more than 1,000 stores operating in 31 states, Aldi has become one of the country’s most profitable grocery chains.

**In Practice**

- Effective control at the all levels—strategic, organizational, and operations—is critical to organizational effectiveness.
- Poor or weak control can open the door for major strategic mistakes, cost overruns, and lower productivity.

*For further consideration: How is control related to issues of centralization versus decentralization?*

---

**Managing the Control Function in International Business**

Given the obvious complexities in control, it should come as no surprise that international firms must address a variety of issues in managing the control function. To effectively manage control, managers need to understand how to establish control systems, what the essential techniques for control are, why some people resist control, and what managers can do to overcome this resistance.

**Establishing International Control Systems**

As illustrated in Figure 14.8, control systems in international business are established through four basic steps: (1) set control standards for performance, (2) measure actual performance, (3) compare performance against standards, and (4) respond to deviations. There obviously will be differences in specificity, time frame, and sophistication, but these steps are applicable to any area and any level of control. “Bringing the World into Focus” describes how Ford has set goals and implemented a new control system targeting international growth.

**SET CONTROL STANDARDS FOR PERFORMANCE** The first step in establishing an international control system is to define relevant control standards. A control standard in this context is a target, or a desired level of the performance component the firm is attempting to control. Control standards need to be objective and consistent with the firm’s goals. Suppose a firm is about to open its first manufacturing facility in Thailand. It might set the following four control standards for the plant: (1) Productivity and quality in the new plant will exceed the levels in the firm’s existing plants. (2) After an initial break-in period, 90 percent of all management positions in the plant will be filled by local managers. (3) The plant will obtain at least 80 percent of its resources from local suppliers. (4) The plant will produce and sell 100,000 units per month.

These control standards help provide a road map for managers involved in opening and running the new plant. Managers can readily see that sales, productivity, and quality are critical and that the firm expects them to hire and buy locally. Where did these standards come from? The firm set them on the basis of its objectives for the new plant, its experience with similar operations, and its overall goals. The second and third goals may have resulted from a conscious strategy of reducing political risk or the parent firm’s desire to be a good corporate citizen in each country in which it operates.
BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

FORD AIMS HIGH

During the Global Recession of 2008–2009 the already-shaky Big Three U.S. automakers were especially hard hit. But whereas General Motors and Chrysler relied on government support to survive, Ford managed to stay afloat on its own. One reason for Ford's success was that under the leadership of Alan Mulally the firm was already well along its way to regaining its profitability. Among other things, Mulally has helped Ford reduce its overhead, boost productivity, and overhaul its product line to appeal more to younger auto buyers. For instance, although Ford SUVs still are the firm's largest-selling products, new entrants such as the Focus, Flex, Fusion, and Escape Hybrid have all been big hits.

But one area in which Ford still lags is its international sales. In 2012, for example, Ford derived 50 percent of its revenue from North America but only 6 percent from China, currently the world's largest auto market. But Mulally has made it clear he intends to change things. Specifically, he announced a new corporate goal of increasing Ford's global sales by 50 percent by the end of 2015. He further specified that the Asia-Pacific region, India, and Africa were expected to account for most of the revenue growth. Much of the growth is expected to come from sales of small cars. For instance, one of India's hottest-selling cars is the subcompact Ford Figo, recently named the 2011 India Car of the Year.

To make sure the firm stays on track, Mulally also put into place a series of annual growth goals for each region. These annual goals, in turn, will play a major control function. Each year area managers will be largely judged based on their contributions to the overall 50-percent growth goal. Their contributions, in turn, will impact their salary and other rewards for the year. Will this all work? Well, Mulally has so far done a masterful job of rebuilding the iconic Ford brand so few people want to bet against him.
The tobacco processing facility in Nayarit, Mexico, must pay close attention to managing its control function. For instance, its managers must first create and then oversee appropriate systems to ensure acceptable product quality. They must also use meaningful accounting systems and procedures. Behavioral aspects of control must also be considered.

**MEASURE ACTUAL PERFORMANCE** The second step in creating an international control system is to develop a valid measure of the performance component being controlled. Some elements of performance are relatively easy and straightforward to measure; examples are actual output, worker productivity, product quality, unit sales, materials waste, travel expenses, hiring practices, and employee turnover. Considerably more difficult are measuring the effectiveness of an advertising campaign to improve a firm’s public image, measuring ethical managerial conduct, and measuring employee attitudes and motivation. For the firm introducing a new product in a foreign market, performance may be based on the actual number of units sold. For the new plant in Thailand used as an example previously, performance would be assessed in terms of sales, productivity, quality, and hiring and purchasing practices.

**COMPARE PERFORMANCE AGAINST STANDARDS** The third step in establishing an international control system is to compare measured performance (obtained in step 2) against the original control standards (defined in step 1). Again, when control standards are straightforward and objective and performance is relatively easy to assess, this comparison is easy. For example, comparing actual sales of 80,437 units against a target sales level of 100,000 is simple. Likewise, comparing the actual hiring of 20 Thai managers against a target of hiring 19 Thai managers is also straightforward. When control standards and performance measures are less concrete, however, comparing one against the other is considerably more complicated. Suppose a manager established a control standard of “significantly increasing market share” and now finds that market share has increased by 4 percent. Is this significant? Obviously, this comparison is ambiguous and difficult to interpret. Managers are advised to use specific and objective standards and performance measures whenever possible.

**RESPOND TO DEVIATIONS** The fourth and final step in establishing an international control system is responding to deviations observed in step 3. One of three different outcomes can result when comparing a control standard and actual performance: the control standard has been met, it has not been met, or it has been exceeded. For example, if the standard is sales of 100,000 units, actual sales of 99,980 units probably means the intent of the standard has been met, whereas sales of only 62,300 units means it has not been met. Actual sales of 140,329 units clearly surpasses the standard.

Depending on the circumstances, managers have many alternative responses to these outcomes. If a standard has not been met and a manager believes it is because of performance deficiencies by employees accountable for the performance, the manager may mandate higher performance, increase incentives to perform at a higher level, or discipline or even terminate
those employees. Of course, the actual course taken depends on the nature of the standard versus performance expectations, the context within which the failure has occurred, and myriad other factors. Sometimes standards are not met for unforeseen reasons, such as unexpected competition, an unexpected labor strike, unpredictable raw material shortages, or local political upheavals. On the other hand, the original control standard may have been set too high to begin with, in which case it may be possible to adjust the standard downward or to make additional allowances.

Finally, actual performance occasionally exceeds the control standard. Again, there may be multiple explanations: Managers and employees may have expended extra effort, the original standard may have been too low, or competitors may have bungled their own opportunities. In this case managers may need to provide additional rewards or bonuses, adjust their control standards upward, or aggressively seize new opportunities.

Kenya Power & Lighting (KP&L) often finds it must react to deviations between control standards and actual performance in its distribution of electric power throughout Kenya. Businesses and municipalities in Kenya are more heavily dependent on hydroelectric power than are those in most other countries. Whenever Kenya experiences inadequate rain or prolonged dry spells (see Map 14.2), KP&L’s water-powered electric plants have to ration electricity. Twice in the last 20 years, the government-run utility has been forced to enact nationwide rationing to ensure adequate power. It also has used smaller-scale rationing on numerous other occasions. During each rationing period continued supplies of electricity were guaranteed to hospitals and security installations, whereas big businesses were required to cut energy consumption by 30 percent, and homeowners were subjected to two-hour blackout periods each day. As soon as energy supplies reached an acceptable limit, rationing was phased out.

MAP 14.2
Kenyan Rainfall

Although power supplies in many regions of Africa are a bit erratic, they do have enormous potential. For example, some experts believe Africa possesses 40 percent of the world’s hydroelectric potential. Kenya mirrors the larger continent in that its temperature and rainfall vary greatly—from a hot, humid coastal strip to the semidesert of the northeastern highlands. Most of Kenya’s farming takes place in the fertile grasslands bordering Lake Victoria.
Essential Control Techniques

Because of the complexities of both the international environment and international firms themselves, those firms rely on a wide variety of different control techniques, as “Bringing the World into Focus” suggests. We do not describe them all but introduce a few of the most important ones.

ACCOUNTING SYSTEMS

Accounting is a comprehensive system for collecting, analyzing, and communicating data about a firm’s financial resources. Accounting procedures are heavily regulated and must follow prescribed methods dictated by national governments. Because of these regulations, investors, government agencies, and other organizational stakeholders within a given country can better compare the financial performance of different organizations, have a common understanding of what various kinds of information mean, and place reasonable trust in the accuracy and meaning of that information. International firms face more difficulties in establishing their accounting procedures than do purely domestic firms. International businesses must develop accounting systems to control and monitor the performance of the overall firm and each division, operating unit, or subsidiary. These systems enable managers to keep abreast of the financial performance of every part of the firm.

Problems can arise when the accounting standards or procedures of the countries in which a firm operates are incompatible with each other, as is frequently the case. Each subsidiary must maintain its accounting records in accordance with local procedures and denominate its accounts in the local currency to satisfy local government regulations and meet the needs of local managers. Yet to meet the needs of investors, regulators, and tax collectors in the parent’s home country, the parent needs the local accounting records of each subsidiary translated into the parent’s currency using accounting procedures dictated by the parent’s home country. The parent further must decide whether it will evaluate the performance of its subsidiaries and the subsidiaries’ managers using the local currency, the parent’s home country currency, or some combination of the two.

PROCEDURES

Policies, standard operating procedures, rules, and regulations all help managers carry out the control function. For example, a firm may establish a policy that at least 75 percent of the raw materials it buys must be obtained from local suppliers. This policy guides plant managers in making purchasing decisions and allocations. A firm also could have a rule that each employee transferred to a foreign unit must attain basic proficiency in the local language within six months. This rule would serve as an ongoing and easily referenced measure of what is expected.

Firms often alter their procedures in the face of adversity. For example, during the crisis involving the Firestone/Ford recall of defective tires both firms had to deviate from their established procedures to satisfy both their customers and government regulators. Firestone replaced tires at no cost instead of prorating costs based on tread wear. Ford replaced many Firestone tires with more expensive Michelin tires at no extra cost. At times both firms even refused to sell new tires to unaffected customers to maintain a sufficient inventory for the recall program.

PERFORMANCE RATIOS

International firms also use various performance ratios to maintain control. A performance ratio is a numerical index of performance that the firm wants to maintain. A common performance ratio used by many firms is inventory turnover. Holding excessive inventory is dysfunctional because the inventory ties up resources that could otherwise be used for different purposes and because the longer materials sit in inventory, the more prone they are to damage and loss. Based on a firm’s unique circumstances, it may decide it does not want anything to sit in inventory for more than 30 days. Turnover rates are likely to differ among different types of retailers and among different countries depending on the amount of floor space, the sophistication of inventory management systems, and the reliability of suppliers. For example, because rents are so high in Tokyo, convenience stores such as 7–Eleven have little room for storage. They must maintain high inventory turnover ratios to remain profitable. Often vendors resupply the 7–Elevens four or five times a day to ensure that goods are available for customers. Sophisticated electronic linkages allow the stores to communicate their inventory needs to suppliers on a real-time basis.
British Airways also uses performance ratios to maintain control of its airline operations. One key ratio for an airline is the percentage of seats filled on its flights. If this ratio falls below a set minimum, the firm looks into alternative ways to generate passenger demand, such as discounts or additional promotional activity. Another ratio of interest to British Airways is the percentage of its flights that arrive and depart on time. If this ratio slips too much, managers try to identify and eliminate the reasons for delays.

Behavioral Aspects of International Control
Regardless of how well formulated and implemented a control system may be, managers must understand that human behavior plays a fundamental role in how well control works. Essential to this understanding is being aware that some people resist control. Also essential is recognizing that resistance can be minimized. Although resistance to control is likely to exist within most cultures, its magnitude will vary across cultures.

Resistance to Control
People in international firms may resist control for various reasons. One potential reason is overcontrol, whereby the firm tries to exert more control over individuals than they think is appropriate. By definition control regulates and constrains behavior; most people accept this within what they perceive to be reasonable limits (with the limits being partially determined by the cultural context). However, if attempts to control behavior begin to exceed those perceived limits, people may balk and begin to resist. For example, when Disney first opened Disneyland Paris, it attempted to apply the same grooming standards for its employees there that it uses in the United States, banning beards and mandating trimmed hair. French employees saw this as overcontrol. They complained about the standards, vented their grievances in the media, and occasionally ignored the standards altogether. The resistance grew to the point where Disney eventually backed off and developed standards that were more acceptable to its European employees.

People also may resist control because it may be inappropriately focused; that is, the firm may inadvertently be trying to control the wrong things. For example, if a firm places so much emphasis on lowering costs that quality is compromised and employee morale suffers, employees may become indignant and attempt to circumvent the control system. Whistler Radar, a U.S. firm, encountered this problem in its assembly of radar detectors. Its control system focused on quality control only at the end of the assembly process. When managers discovered that 100 of the firm’s 250 employees were doing nothing more than reworking defective units assembled by the other 150, the managers realized that control should have been focused on quality throughout the assembly process.

Finally, people may resist control because control increases their accountability. In the absence of an effective control system, employees may be able to get by with substandard performance because managers do not understand what the employees are doing relative to what they should be doing. For example, if a foreign-branch manager has to submit financial performance data only annually, the manager may not do as good a job on a day-to-day basis as the firm would like. If the firm were to request performance reports more frequently, it could increase the manager’s accountability. At the same time, if the firm demands too much reporting, it becomes prone to overcontrol. Thus, it is important to strike a balance between appropriate and acceptable levels of accountability without edging over into overcontrol.

Overcoming Resistance to Control
Although there are no guaranteed methods for eliminating resistance to control, there are a few that can help minimize it. The appropriate method, as well as its likely effectiveness, will vary by culture. In many cultures, for instance, one effective way to overcome resistance to control is to promote participation. Involving employees who are going to be affected by control in its planning and implementation will enable them to better understand the goal of the control system, how and why the system works, and how their jobs fit into the system. As a result, the employees may be less prone to resist it.

Another method to reduce resistance that works well in most cultures is to create a control system that has a clear appropriate focus and that creates reasonable accountability without overcontrolling. GlaxoSmithKline, the UK’s largest pharmaceutical firm, uses this method. The firm is receptive to allowing scientists to explore ideas and possibilities for new prescription
drugs, thereby motivating those scientists to pursue ideas and creating an atmosphere of creativity and innovation. At the same time Glaxo managers carefully monitor the progress of new product development. If costs start becoming excessive or if development begins to lag too far behind the competition, managers may choose to curtail a given project. Employees see this as a viable strategy because it gives them the opportunity to pursue their scientific interests while simultaneously keeping costs in check.\textsuperscript{36}

A firm also may overcome resistance to control by providing a diagnostic mechanism for addressing unacceptable deviations. Suppose a plant manager reports productivity levels far below those expected by headquarters. Top managers should avoid jumping to a potentially wrong conclusion, such as simply assuming the manager has done a poor job and reprimanding the manager, or worse. Instead they first should learn why the poor performance occurred. For example, it may have resulted from the corporate purchasing manager’s having bought inferior materials for the plant.

Again, it is important to account for cultural factors when planning how to deal with resistance to control. People from hierarchical cultures, for example, may be reluctant to actively participate in planning and implementing control because they view such activities as the domain of management.

Finally, behavioral aspects of control can be approached and managed from a cultural perspective. A firm may attempt to replace behaviors resulting from national culture with those more consistent with the firm’s corporate culture. Being careful to hire people with values, experiences, work habits, and goals that are consistent with the firm’s can go a long way toward this goal. Managers of Japanese-owned automobile factories in the United States, for example, spend thousands of dollars per worker selecting U.S. employees who will be receptive to the Japanese way of working. Further refinements in behavior can be expedited through training and management development programs designed to impart the firm’s cultural values and business methods.

\begin{InPractice}

Managing the control function in international business requires that managers understand such essential control techniques as accounting systems, procedures, and performance ratios.

Given that there is a tendency for some people to resist control, managers must know how to overcome resistance to control.

\textit{For further consideration:} How might resistance to control relate to cross-cultural differences?
\end{InPractice}

MyManagementLab\textsuperscript{®}

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

\section*{CHAPTER REVIEW}

\subsection*{Summary}

Organization design is the overall pattern of structural components and configurations used to manage the total organization. The most appropriate design of an organization depends on several factors. Managers also realize that organization design is an evolutionary process. When a firm first begins to operate internationally, it usually must change its design in one or more ways. Such change may involve following the corollary approach, then establishing an export department, and then creating an international division.

After a firm has established a significant international presence, it will usually develop a global organization design.
The most common approaches to global organization design are the global product design, the global area design, the global functional design, the global customer design, and the global matrix design. Each of these approaches has unique advantages and disadvantages, and one approach may be more suitable for some firms than for others. Indeed, many firms actually use a hybrid global design best suited to their needs.

MNCs also must make other decisions related to organization design. Particularly important are those regarding centralization versus decentralization, the role of subsidiary boards of directors, and which coordination mechanisms to use. Informal management networks are especially powerful mechanisms for coordination.

Control is the process of monitoring and regulating activities of a firm so that a targeted component of performance is achieved or maintained. For an MNC, control must be managed both at the corporate level and within each subsidiary. Most MNCs usually address control at three levels. Strategic control monitors how well an international firm formulates strategy and then goes about trying to implement it. Financial control is an especially important area of strategic control in international business because poor financial control can cripple a firm’s ability to compete globally. Organizational control involves the design of the firm. Three basic forms of organizational control are responsibility center control, generic strategic control, and planning process control. Operations control focuses specifically on operating procedures and systems within the firm.

When international firms establish control systems, they first set control standards, then measure actual performance. Next they compare performance against the standards and respond to deviations. Essential control techniques include accounting systems, procedures, and performance ratios. International managers also need to understand behavioral aspects of control, such as why people resist control and how to overcome that resistance. Cultural factors are an important ingredient in addressing behavioral aspects of control.

**Review Questions**

14-1. What are some of the initial impacts of international activity on organization design?
14-2. What is the global product design? What are its strengths and weaknesses?
14-3. What is the global area design? What are its strengths and weaknesses?
14-4. What is the global functional design? What are its strengths and weaknesses?
14-5. What is the global customer design? What are its strengths and weaknesses?
14-6. What is the global matrix design? What are its strengths and weaknesses?
14-7. What are the three levels of control in international business?
14-8. Why is financial control so important?
14-9. What are the four basic steps in establishing an international control system?

14-10. If a new organization starts out with a global perspective, will it necessarily experience any of the initial impacts of international activity on organization design? Why or why not?
14-11. Do managers of international firms need to approach organization design differently from their counterparts in domestic firms? Why or why not?
14-12. How do the global product, area, functional, and customer approaches to organization design differ? How are they similar?
14-13. Why is a global matrix design almost always transitional in nature?
14-14. How does management exercise control businesses in your country?
14-15. Find examples of businesses that use the three common types of international organizational control. Which of the three is more common?
14-16. Which form of control system would you most and least prefer for your own work? Why?
14-17. Identify the most common control technique in your country. How would this approach work for the business in an international context?

**Building Global Skills**

Samsung Group was originally founded as an exporter of dry fish, vegetables and fish. In the 1960s, Samsung Electronics was founded. It’s first mobile phone was launched in 1988. By 2005 it was bigger than Sony, and two years later it overtook Motorola. In 2009 Samsung Electronics achieved revenue of U.S. $117 billion, making it bigger than Hewlett Packard. By 2012, it became the biggest seller of mobile handsets, beating Nokia.

Against the backdrop of this astonishing growth is a vast organization operating in most global markets. Samsung
Although some observers might assume that Anglo American PLC is a U.S. company, in reality the company has never been American. Instead, Anglo American is based in the United Kingdom but has substantial operations in other parts of the world. The firm is the world’s fourth-largest diversified mining company. It has annual revenues of more than $27 billion, profits of around $6.5 billion, and more than 100,000 employees.

The last 10 years have been a period of change for Anglo American. The major upheavals started in 2007 when Cynthia Carroll was appointed as CEO. The Times of London expressed shock at the appointment, referring to mining as “an irredeemably macho industry.” Not only was she not a man, Carroll was neither a mining industry veteran nor British (she’s an American). When her appointment was announced, Anglo’s stock immediately dropped $0.80 per share. The dice, observed the Times, were “probably loaded against her from the start,” and to make her job even more difficult, she was soon forced to embark on a $2-billion efficiency program involving a number of changes guaranteed to rile the old guard of the 91-year-old company. Her whirlwind campaign to cut costs by $450 million in the first half of 2009 earned her the nickname “Cyclone Cynthia,” but many analysts and investors were unimpressed by the savings: Because the entire industry was struggling with high costs during the recession, Carroll’s cost-cutting was seen as little more than the logical and obvious strategy to pursue.

Then in June 2009, the Swiss–British mining company Xstrata proposed a merger with Anglo—a move that would create a $68 billion firm to compete with industry giants like BHP Billiton, Vale, and Rio Tinto. Xstrata said in a statement that it was seeking “a merger of equals that would realize significant value for both companies’ shareholders” and cited “substantial operational synergies” that could amount to savings of $1 billion a year in combined costs. From Anglo’s perspective, there were drawbacks to the deal—its portfolio was worth more than Xstrata’s and would be diluted by a merger of the two—but the appeal to Anglo shareholders was clear: Depending on how the new company distributed the cost savings among its investors, Anglo shareholders stood to realize an increase in the market value of their holdings of 26 to 37 percent.

Carroll and the Anglo board quickly rejected Xstrata’s offer as “totally unacceptable,” and in August, Carroll presented both Anglo’s mid-year financial results and its argument for remaining independent. Once again, however, the numbers were underwhelming: Because of the global economy, profits were off 69 percent and revenues 38 percent. Anglo investors wanted to know what management was doing to deliver the kind of returns promised by the Xstrata merger, and an analyst at Barclays Capital, Britain’s biggest investment bank, announced that, “in our view, Anglo American has not yet presented a strong argument as to why a merger with Xstrata is not strategically sensible and value-creating for its shareholders.” “Frankly,” replied Carroll,

I know what it is that we need to do….We have a strategy, we have clear goals, we have tremendous assets….in the most attractive commodities in the world. The opportunities are massive….We’re well aware of what Xstrata does, but I’m very confident of what we can do in the future.

In October 2009, Xstrata withdrew its offer in the face of resistance from the Anglo board. Anglo, said a company
Organization design and control are related management functions but each is also an independent set of activities. For the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

Go to MyManagementLab® for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

14-26. Organization design and control are related management functions but each is also an independent set of activities. Develop a detailed explanation of their interconnectedness. Then, relate both organization design and control to international strategic management.

14-27. What is the role of national culture in organization design? That is, if there are commonalities within the organization designs of U.S. multinationals, to what extent is this a function of the fact that they are U.S. companies?

14-28. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Case Questions

14-21. Identify the basic organization design issues at Anglo American.

14-22. What basic elements of organization design were changed? What elements were probably not changed?

14-23. What criteria most logically determine whether a new organization design can be judged to be successful?

14-24. Identify the basic control issues at Anglo American.

14-25. How do you think the control function should be organized and managed at Anglo American?

Endnotes


CHAPTER 15

Leadership and Employee Behavior in International Business

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Identify and discuss the basic perspectives on individual differences in different cultures.
2. Evaluate basic views of employee motivation in international business.
3. Identify basic views of managerial leadership in international business.
4. Discuss the nature of managerial decision making in international business.
5. Describe group dynamics and discuss how teams are managed across cultures.

MyManagementLab®

☆ Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
LEADERSHIP ISSUES AT TOYOTA

Until recently Toyota was among the most admired businesses in the world. Its products consistently earned top scores for quality and value, its financial base was among the strongest in its industry, and its leaders were respected for their integrity and strategic vision. But things have taken a different turn in recent times. After overtaking General Motors to become the world’s largest automobile company in 2008, quality and safety problems with Toyota vehicles began to surface in 2010.

Specifically, word began to spread that certain Toyota vehicles were prone to uncontrolled acceleration that could lead to accidents—sometimes fatal. To make matters worse, it also became public knowledge that Toyota had known about the problems for some time and had chosen to do nothing about them. Over the next year, the company recalled more than 8 million vehicles (5 million in the United States alone) to correct this and other safety problems. These recalls, in turn, cost the firm hundreds of millions of dollars and severely damaged its reputation for quality.

Toyota’s leadership came under intense scrutiny—and criticism—in the wake of these problems. Moreover, this scrutiny revealed not one but two different sets of leadership shortcomings at the company. One set of shortcomings may have played a pivotal role leading up to the quality crisis and the other served to further tarnish Toyota’s reputation after the problems became public knowledge.

One of a leader’s most important tasks is to thoroughly understand the organization culture at the company. It would follow logically, then, that if the culture is changed, the leader must understand the dynamics and potential outcomes of this change as well. And it is in this area that Toyota’s leaders may have first stumbled. For decades Toyota’s culture was centered on the principle of using “only reliable, thoroughly tested technology that services your people and processes.” This translated into high-quality products and lean production processes and was known internally as “The Toyota Way.”

But under the leadership of Fujio Cho and Katsuaki Watanabe, Toyota’s chairman and vice chairman, respectively, the firm began to adjust its core operating principles. Cho was a strong advocate of environmentally friendly automotive technology, such as the hybrid-electric Prius, and led the company’s effort to position Toyota as a market leader in this field. Watanabe, for his part, spearheaded Toyota’s efforts to increase capability for building large gas-guzzling cars and small trucks in pursuit of increased U.S. market share. Indeed, the firm’s strategic goal to become the world’s number-one automaker was based on using new know-how, new technology, and new materials to improve, perfect, and create new innovations in auto design and manufacturing. However, the strategy also required that Toyota shift its focus from manufacturing engineering and continuous improvement more toward research and development and product design.

But when a company shifts its focus from lean production to technology and innovation, the culture will also change. For instance, the essence of lean production dictates the elimination of waste. But the uncertainties in new product development require that the manufacturer build in redundancy to manage the risks of the unknown and ensure a high level of safety. Trying to balance lean production with the need for redundancy is a difficult act that requires the leadership to be instrumental in making key decisions as well as leading and managing the change. And by all accounts Cho and Watanabe failed to meet this obligation. That is, the new strategy called for a change in culture but this needed change was ignored.

Even worse, though, was that Toyota’s leadership also allowed fundamental changes in human resource practices that may have also contributed to the problems. When the overarching goal is quality, performance is evaluated and rewards are distributed for producing high-quality products. But when growth becomes the goal, performance evaluations and rewards will also shift. So, under the previous system people were encouraged to correct quality problems. But under the new system correcting quality problems may detract from growth and hence actually (and presumably inadvertently) be discouraged. And compounding the problem was the fact that some experts think that the firm’s longtime creed “The Toyota Way” became so biased toward positive information that employees “learned” to not make waves by raising concerns about product quality and safety.

A second leadership failure occurred after news of the safety problems became widely known. In times of crisis people often look to leaders to step forward, offer explanations, take responsibility, and outline corrective steps. But Toyota’s leader, Akio Toyoda (promoted to president in 2009) was nowhere to be seen. Worse still, he allowed other senior managers to offer poorly worded apologies and make contradictory promises about how the company was addressing its problems. And some of Toyota’s few consistent messages were that the problems were minor, could be easily corrected, and might have even been the fault of the drivers.

After several weeks of fumbling the company’s response to the crisis, however, Toyoda eventually agreed to travel to the United States and appear before a congressional panel of inquiry. He also offered a contrite apology and initiated what would become one of the most massive product recalls in history. In 2009 the firm’s net revenues fell by more than 20 percent and it posted its first net loss since 1950. No doubt part of Toyota’s decline was attributable to the global recession. And some of it would have happened no matter how well Toyoda had managed the crisis. But some of it also came as a result of the firm’s leaders failing to carry out their jobs as effectively as they should have.
To their credit, in the aftermath of this debacle Toyota’s leadership took a careful and systematic look at their shortcomings and resolved to find better ways of doing things in the future. The first major initiative for leadership change was announced in 2013. The goals of the change were to provide more autonomy to the regions where Toyota sells cars and to groom a more diverse set of leaders for future top management positions. One major change was that several key executives outside of Japan were elevated to higher level positions in the organization and given more autonomy. For instance, James Lentz, former head of Toyota’s sales and marketing in the United States, was promoted and given additional responsibilities for virtually all of Toyota’s operations in the United States, including manufacturing. In addition, former General Motors executive Mark Hogan was appointed to Toyota’s corporate board in Japan. It remains to be seen if these changes will really help transform the company, of course. But it does seem that Toyota’s log-entrenched mind-set about leadership, at least, is beginning to change.

The story of Toyota’s leadership shortcomings illustrates several important messages for all managers, but especially those who work in international businesses. For one thing, leaders must maintain a thorough knowledge of their firm, its culture, and its strategy. Second, leaders need to understand that changes in strategy may dictate changes in culture and rewards. Beyond these two points, it is also important for international managers to understand the symbolic role they play as the “face” of their organization. Clearly then, it is important that they represent their organization in the most effective manner possible.

To complicate their work further, although managers who operate in a domestic firm must understand and contend with a complex set of behavioral and interpersonal processes, managers in a multicultural firm have the additional challenge of managing people with diverse frames of reference and perspectives on work and organizations. International managers who develop insights into dealing with people from different cultural backgrounds will be far ahead of those who do not.

In Chapter 4, we discussed national culture and its implications for firms with international operations. We now look more closely at the actual behaviors of managers and employees in different cultures and how those behavioral differences affect the conduct of international business. We start by discussing the nature of individual differences in different cultures. Then we introduce and discuss four aspects of behavior that are especially important for international businesses: motivation, leadership, decision making, and groups and cross-cultural teams.

Individual Behavior in International Business

Individual behavior in organizations is strongly influenced by a variety of individual differences—specific dimensions or characteristics of a person that influence that person. Most patterns of individual differences are, in turn, based on personality. Other important dimensions that relate to individual behavior are attitudes, perception, creativity, and stress.

Personality Differences Across Cultures

Personality is the relatively stable set of psychological attributes that distinguishes one person from another. A long-standing debate among psychologists—often referred to as the question of “nature versus nurture”—is the extent to which personality attributes are biologically inherited (the “nature” argument) or shaped by the social and cultural environment in which people are raised (the “nurture” argument). In reality, both biological factors and environmental factors play important roles in determining personalities. Although the details of this debate are beyond the scope of our discussion here, international managers should recognize the limitations of sweeping generalizations about people’s behavior based on their cultural backgrounds and should acknowledge that individual differences also exist within any given cultural group. That is, although culture may lead to certain behavioral tendencies, as outlined in Chapter 4, individual behavior within any given culture can also vary significantly.

THE “BIG FIVE” PERSONALITY TRAITS Psychologists have identified literally thousands of personality traits and dimensions that differentiate one person from another. But in recent years, researchers have identified five fundamental personality traits that are especially relevant to
Within any given culture, even when two individuals are of the same age and professional standing, they are also different from each other in numerous fundamental ways. But when they are from different cultures, such as the two men leading this discussion, personality differences may be magnified to a much great degree.

organizations. Because these five traits, illustrated in Figure 15.1, are so important and because they are currently the subject of so much attention, they are commonly referred to as the “Big Five” personality traits.©

Agreeableness refers to a person’s ability to get along with others. Agreeableness causes some people to be gentle, cooperative, understanding, and good-natured in their dealings with others, but its absence results in those who are irritable, short-tempered, and uncooperative toward other people. Conscientiousness refers to the order and precision a person imposes on activities. This trait measures whether one is organized, systematic, responsible, and self-disciplined, or conversely, disorganized, careless, and irresponsible. The third of the “Big Five” personality dimensions is emotional stability, which causes some individuals to be poised,
calm, resilient, and secure; those who have less emotional stability will be excitable, insecure, reactive, and subject to extreme mood swings. Extroversion, a person’s comfort level with relationships, indicates that some people are sociable, talkative, and assertive, whereas others are less sociable and more introverted. Finally, openness measures a person’s rigidity of beliefs and range of interests. This trait results in some people being willing to listen to new ideas and to change their own ideas, beliefs, and attitudes as a result of new information. Those who are less open are less receptive to new ideas and less willing to change their minds.

A growing body of research has emerged on the Big Five framework in the United States. In general, this work focuses on using one or more of the five traits to predict performance in various kinds of jobs. Recently this research has been extended to other countries. For instance, researchers have found that in the European Union (EU), as in the United States, conscientiousness and emotional stability appear to be reasonable predictors of performance across a variety of job criteria and occupational groups. That is, Europeans with high conscientiousness and emotional stability are likely to perform at a higher level than those with low conscientiousness and less emotional stability. Similarly, extroversion is a useful predictor of managerial performance in China and among certain occupational groups in the EU, most notably managers in sales and marketing. Openness and agreeableness predict performance across more occupational types, but only for certain performance criteria, most notably training proficiency.7 There is also some evidence to suggest that the Big Five are reasonably good predictors of performance in Hong Kong, but predict even better when combined with traditional Chinese factors as harmony, face, and ren qing (personal connections).8 Thus, when selecting individuals for job assignments in different countries, managers should take advantage of any valid and reliable personality measures that might help with their choices, but should also be sure to not overgeneralize the validity and reliability of such measures across cultures.

**OTHER PERSONALITY TRAITS AT WORK** Besides the Big Five, there are also several other personality traits that influence behavior in organizations. Among the most important are locus of control, self-efficacy, authoritarianism, and self-esteem.9

**Locus of control** is the extent to which people believe that their behavior has a real effect on what happens to them.10 Some people, for example, trust that if they work hard, they will succeed. They also may believe that people who fail do so because they lack ability or motivation. People who maintain that individuals are in control of their lives are said to have an internal locus of control. Other people think that fate, chance, luck, or other people’s behavior determines what happens to them. For example, employees who fail to get a promotion may attribute that failure to a politically motivated boss or just bad luck, rather than to their own lack of skills or poor performance record. People who think that forces beyond their control dictate what happens to them are said to have an external locus of control.

Although not yet demonstrated by research, it seems reasonable to suggest that people from relatively individualistic and power-tolerant cultures are more likely to have an internal locus of control, whereas people from relatively collectivistic and power-respecting cultures may be more likely to have an external locus of control. Similarly, an external locus of control is likely to be prevalent among Muslims, whereas an internal locus of control is more consistent with Protestantism. One study has found that samples of people in New Zealand and Singapore seem to be relatively internal in their orientation, as are many people in the United States.11 It also seems likely, however, that locus of control will vary significantly across cultures.

**Self-efficacy** is a related but subtly different personality characteristic. Self-efficacy indicates a person’s beliefs about his or her capabilities to perform a task.12 People with high self-efficacy believe that they can perform well on a specific task, whereas people with low self-efficacy tend to doubt their ability to perform that task. Although self-assessments of ability contribute to self-efficacy, so too does the individual’s personality. Some people simply have more self-confidence than do others. This belief in their ability to perform a task effectively results in their being more self-assured and more able to focus their attention on performance. In one interesting recent study, the self-efficacy of senior managers was found to be positively related to the performance of international joint ventures. That is, joint-venture managers who have confidence in their abilities to meet the goals and objectives of the business are more likely to do so than are managers in joint ventures with lower confidence in their abilities.13
Another important personality characteristic is **authoritarianism**, the extent to which an individual believes that power and status differences are appropriate within hierarchical social systems like business organizations. For example, a person who is highly authoritarian may accept directives or orders from someone with more authority purely because the other person is “the boss.” On the other hand, even though a person who is not highly authoritarian may still carry out appropriate and reasonable directives from the boss, he or she is also more likely to question things, express disagreement with the boss, and even to refuse to carry out orders if they are for some reason objectionable. A highly authoritarian manager may be relatively autocratic and demanding, and highly authoritarian subordinates will be more likely to accept this behavior from their leader. A less authoritarian manager may allow subordinates a bigger role in making decisions, and less authoritarian subordinates will respond positively to this behavior. This trait is obviously quite similar to the concept of power orientation discussed in Chapter 4.

**Self-esteem** is the extent to which a person believes that he or she is a worthwhile and deserving individual. A person with high self-esteem is more likely to seek higher status jobs, be more confident in his or her ability to achieve higher levels of performance, and derive greater intrinsic satisfaction from his or her accomplishments. In contrast, a person with less self-esteem may be more content to remain in a lower-level job, be less confident of his or her ability, and focus more on extrinsic rewards.

Among the major personality dimensions, self-esteem is the one that has been most widely studied in other countries. More research is clearly needed, but the published evidence does suggest that self-esteem is an important personality trait in most Western European countries, throughout North America and South America, and in Australia. However, it has not been widely studied in Africa, the Middle East, and most Asian countries. In those societies in which self-esteem does emerge as a meaningful personality trait, those individuals with high levels of self-esteem seem to be more motivated and to perform at a higher level than those with lower levels of self-esteem.

**Attitudes Across Cultures**

Another dimension of individuals within organizations is their attitudes. **Attitudes** are complexes of beliefs and feelings that people have about specific ideas, situations, or other people. Although some attitudes are deeply rooted and long-lasting, others can be formed or changed quickly. For example, attitudes toward political parties or major social issues, such as pollution control or abortion, evolve over an extended period of time. But attitudes about a new restaurant may be formed immediately after eating there for the first time.

Attitudes are important because they provide a way for most people to express their feelings. An employee’s statement that he is underpaid by the organization reflects his feelings about his pay. Similarly, when a manager endorses the new advertising campaign, she is expressing her feelings about the organization’s marketing efforts. In recent times, attitudes toward workplace privacy have become especially important in light of the increased use of e-mail, the Internet, and other forms of electronic communication.

**Job satisfaction** or **job dissatisfaction** is an attitude that reflects the extent to which an individual is gratified by or fulfilled in his or her work. Extensive research conducted on job satisfaction has indicated that personal factors such as an individual’s needs and aspirations determine this attitude along with group and organizational factors such as relationships with coworkers and supervisors and working conditions, work policies, and compensation. A satisfied employee also tends to be absent less often, to make positive contributions, and to stay with the organization. In contrast, a dissatisfied employee may be absent more often, may experience stress that disrupts coworkers, and may be continually looking for another job. However, high levels of job satisfaction do not necessarily lead to higher levels of performance.

Research has shown, at least in some settings, that expatriates who are dissatisfied with their jobs and foreign assignments are more likely to leave their employers than are more satisfied managers. One survey measured job satisfaction among 8,300 workers in 106 factories in Japan and the United States. Contrary to what many people believe, this survey found that Japanese workers in general are less satisfied with their jobs than are their counterparts in the United States. For instance, on a four-point scale the average U.S. worker scored 2.95 when
asked “All in all, how satisfied would you say you are with your job?” The average Japanese worker, in contrast, scored only 2.12. Another survey found that managers in the former Soviet Union are relatively dissatisfied with their jobs, especially in terms of their autonomy to make important decisions.\textsuperscript{19} Yet another study suggests that Vietnamese workers are relatively satisfied with their jobs, with younger workers (those born since 1975) especially satisfied.\textsuperscript{20}

**Organizational Commitment** Another important job-related attitude is organizational commitment, which reflects an individual’s identification with and loyalty to the organization. One comparative study of Western, Asian, and local employees working in Saudi Arabia found that the expatriate Asians reported higher levels of organizational commitment than did the Westerners and local Saudis.\textsuperscript{21} Another found that U.S. production workers reported higher levels of organizational commitment than did Japanese workers.\textsuperscript{22} More recently, a large study of organizational commitment among U.S. expatriates in four Asian and four European countries found that if those expatriates had a long service history with the firm, received extensive pretransfer training, and adjusted easily to the foreign culture after transfer, they retained high levels of commitment to their parent company. But expatriates with shorter service histories, who had less pretransfer training, and who had a more difficult adjustment period, actually developed stronger levels of commitment toward the foreign affiliate.\textsuperscript{23} These findings seem reasonable: The first group of employees had made major personal investments in the parent organization and, because of the ease of their transfer, had less need to invest themselves emotionally in their new assignments. The second group had less attachment to their domestic employers but needed to make larger personal investments in their new assignments to overcome the difficulties they were encountering. Similar “bonding” is observed among people who undergo stressful situations together, such as basic training in the military, initiation week in a fraternity or sorority, or the “ropes” course commonly used by many corporate trainers.

**Perception Across Cultures**

One important determinant of an attitude is the individual’s perception of the object about which the attitude is formed. **Perception** is the set of processes by which an individual becomes aware of and interprets information about the environment. Perception obviously starts when we see, hear, touch, smell, or taste something. Each individual, however, then interprets that awareness through filtering processes that are unique to that person. For example, two people supporting different teams can watch the same play on a soccer or rugby field and “see” different realities. An individual’s cultural background obviously plays a role in shaping how the person’s filtering mechanisms work.

Stereotyping is one common perceptual process that affects international business. **Stereotyping** occurs when we make inferences about someone because of one or more characteristics they possess. For example, some people in the United States hold stereotypes that Japanese managers work all the time, that Swiss managers are well organized, and that French managers are elitist. And some people in those countries stereotype U.S. managers as greedy. Although such stereotypes may sometimes be useful as cultural generalizations, all managers should be aware that each individual is unique and may or may not fit preconceived impressions.

Aside from stereotyping, perception can affect international business in many other ways. For example, as described in Chapter 3, international managers must assess political and other forms of risk in foreign markets. However, there may be differences across cultures as to how risk is perceived. As illustrated in one recent study, managers from six Latin American countries perceived common business risks (such as political, commercial, and exchange-rate risks) differently from one another.\textsuperscript{24} Managers in Costa Rica saw risk as a definable and manageable part of the environment, whereas managers from Guatemala saw risk as an abstract force that was determined almost by chance.

Similarly, another study of Japanese expatriates and British locals working together in Japanese-owned banks in London found that the two groups perceived each other in different ways.\textsuperscript{25} The Japanese expatriates saw their British coworkers as being most interested in protecting their jobs and maintaining their income, whereas the British locals saw the Japanese as being most interested in profit and group harmony. And, finally, another study found that
senior executives in the United States, the United Kingdom, Germany, and Austria perceived ethical situations differently from one another. Clearly, then, international managers must consider the role of perception as they conduct business in different countries.

**Stress Across Cultures**

Another important element of behavior in organizations is stress. Stress is an individual’s response to a strong stimulus. This stimulus is called a stressor. We should note that stress is not all bad. In the absence of stress, we may experience lethargy and stagnation. An optimal level of stress can result in motivation and excitement; too much stress, however, can have negative consequences.

It is also important to understand that stress can be caused by “good” as well as “bad” things. Excessive pressure, unreasonable demands on our time, and bad news can all cause stress. But receiving a bonus and then having to decide what to do with the money can also be stressful. So, too, can receiving a promotion, gaining recognition, and similar positive events.

There are two different perspectives on stress that are especially relevant for international managers. One, managing stress resulting from international assignments, is covered in Chapter 19. The other is recognizing that people in different cultures may experience different forms of stress and then handle that stress in different ways. In one study that looked at stress patterns across 10 countries, Swedish executives experienced the least stress. Executives from the United States, the United Kingdom, and the former West Germany reported relatively moderate stress, and that they were managing this stress effectively. But managers from Japan, Brazil, Egypt, Singapore, South Africa, and Nigeria reported that they were experiencing high levels of stress or that they were having difficulties managing stress. Another study reported that managers in Germany do a better job of maintaining a healthy balance between work and nonwork activities and managing stress than do managers in the United Kingdom.

**BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS**

**STRESSING OUT IN THE CALL CENTERS**

Twenty-one-year-old Anurag Verma has one of those jobs that tend to come up in the conversation when Americans are talking about U.S. unemployment: He works in India’s burgeoning business process outsourcing (BPO) industry. He makes good money—about $800 a month, which is 12 times the average Indian salary. He uses a BlackBerry and doesn’t have to ride a crowded bus to work because he owns a car. He was getting ready to put money down on a condo until one day he collapsed at his desk and had to be taken to the hospital. In the weeks leading up to his collapse, he had been suffering from dizzy spells and migraines; he’d lost his appetite and 22 pounds.

Anurag had been on the job for eight months, and in the industry, his problem is known as BOSS—Burn Out Stress Syndrome. Symptoms include chronic fatigue, insomnia, loss of appetite, and gastrointestinal problems. Back and shoulder pain are common, as are ear and eye ailments. Experts say that BOSS affects about one-third of India’s 7 million BPO workers. In the city of Bangalore (known as the “Silicon Valley of India” because it’s the country’s leading information technology exporter), a study of information technology (IT) professionals conducted by the National Institute for Mental Health and Neurosciences (NIMHANS) found that 1 in 20 workers regularly considered suicide and classified 36 percent as “probable psychiatric cases.”

“You are making nice money,” reports 26-year-old Vaibhav Vats, whose weight ballooned to 265 pounds after two years at an outsourced IBM call center, “but the trade-off,” he warns young people just entering the industry out of college, “is also big.” Those trade-offs typically include long night shifts and disrupted eating and sleeping schedules, and a common result, according to doctors, is the alteration of biorhythms—the patterns by which our bodies adapt to the patterns of day and night. One study, for example, found that BPO workers tend to develop markedly different sleeping patterns. According to researchers, they were not only sleepier but were “more depressed and suffered from anxiety disorders.”

Explains Dr. Anupam Mittal of Delhi’s Max Hospital: “Those who put in 10 hours of work every night are unable to get adequate sleep during daytime no matter how hard they try. This causes a cumulative sleep debt leading to significant sleep deprivation, fatigue, mood swings, [and] lack of concentration.”

There are also physiological repercussions. Women, for instance, suffer from menstrual and hormonal disorders when disrupted sleep patterns create imbalances in melatonin and cortisol, two hormones related to sleep and stress. “Sleep deprivation and exposure to light at night,” says Dr. Swati Bhargava, a Mumbai gynecologist, “interrupts melatonin production, thereby stimulating the body to produce more estrogen, which is a known hormonal promoter of breast cancer.” Bhargava’s diagnosis is supported by research showing that women who work nights have a 6 percent higher risk of breast cancer.
Stress can play a powerful role in any job, but some jobs are inherently more stressful than others. Take this border patrol agent for example. He spends several hours a day patrolling desolate areas along the U.S.-Mexican border. The temperatures are often extreme—very hot on summer days and very cold on winter evenings. He may also encounter people trying to cross the border who haven’t eaten for days and who are in dire need of medical treatment, and he may be threatened by armed thieves.

In Practice

- Managers in all organizations must remember that no two people are the same. This is even more important in a multinational organization with a diverse workforce.
- Managers need to remember that attitudes, perception, and stress are affected by different things in different cultures.

For further consideration: If you were being transferred to work in another country, how would you try to learn about how people behave in that country?

Motivation in International Business

All international businesses face the challenge of motivating their workforces to reduce costs, develop new products, enhance product quality, and improve customer service. Motivation is the overall set of forces that causes people to choose certain behaviors from a set of available behaviors. Yet the factors that influence an individual’s behavior at work differ across cultures.

Needs and Values Across Cultures

The starting point in understanding motivation is to consider needs and values. Needs are what an individual must have or wants to have. Values, on the other hand, are what people believe to be important. Not surprisingly, most people have a large number of needs and values. Primary needs are things that people require to survive, such as food, water, and shelter. Thus, they are instinctive and physiologically based and play a major role in directing human behavior. For instance, Ivory Coast farmers have grown cocoa for decades, and the methods used to grow it has been passed down from generation to generation. However, dramatic fluctuations in prices and climate change have combined to make income for the farmers increasingly unpredictable. To ensure a more stable income, many of these farmers are switching to more stable crops such as rubber and palm oil.

Secondary needs, on the other hand, are more psychological in character and are learned from the environment and culture in which the individual lives. Examples of secondary needs include the needs for achievement, autonomy, power, order, affiliation, and understanding. Secondary needs often manifest themselves in organizational settings. For example, if an individual is to be satisfied with his or her job the rewards provided by the organization must be
consistent with his or her needs. Offering a nice office and job security may not be sufficient if the individual is primarily seeking income and promotion opportunities. Values, however, are learned and developed as a person grows and matures. These values are influenced by one’s family, peers, experiences, and culture.

Motivational Processes Across Cultures
Most modern theoretical approaches to motivation fall into one of three categories. Need-based models of motivation are those that attempt to identify the specific need or set of needs that result in motivated behavior. Process-based models of motivation focus more on the conscious thought processes people use to select one behavior from among several. Finally, the reinforcement model deals with how people assess the consequences of their behavioral choices and how that assessment goes into their future choice of behaviors. This model incorporates the roles of rewards and punishment in maintaining or altering existing behavioral patterns.

Need-Based Models Across Cultures
Geert Hofstede’s work, discussed in Chapter 4, provides some useful insights into how need-based models of motivation are likely to vary across cultures.33 Common needs incorporated in most models of motivation include the needs for security, for being part of a social network, and for having opportunities to grow and develop. By relating these need categories to four of Hofstede’s dimensions—social orientation, power orientation, uncertainty orientation, and goal orientation—we can draw several inferences about differences in motivation across cultures.

For example, managers and employees in countries that are individualistic may be most strongly motivated by individually based needs and rewards. Opportunities to demonstrate personal competencies and to receive recognition and rewards as a result may be particularly attractive to such people. In contrast, people from collectivistic cultures may be more strongly motivated by group-based needs and rewards. Indeed, they may be uncomfortable in situations in which they are singled out for rewards apart from the group with which they work.

Conflicts can easily arise when an international firm’s mechanisms for motivating workers clash with cultural attitudes. Many U.S. managers working for Japanese multinational corporations (MNCs) have difficulty with the seniority-based, group-performance-oriented compensation systems of their employers. Similarly, Michigan autoworkers resisted the attempts by Mazda officials to get them to “voluntarily” wear Mazda baseball caps as part of their work uniforms.34 And U.S. professional baseball players playing for Japanese teams, accustomed to the “star system” at home that accords them status, prestige, and special privileges, are often shocked by the team-based approach in Japan, which discourages attention to individuals.

Power-respecting individuals are those who accept their boss’ right to direct their efforts purely on the basis of organizational legitimacy. As a consequence of this power respect, they may be motivated by the possibility of gaining their boss’ approval and acceptance. Thus, they may willingly and unquestioningly accept and attempt to carry out directives and mandates. In contrast, power-tolerant people attach less legitimacy to hierarchical rank. Thus, they may be less motivated by gaining their boss’ approval than by opportunities for pay raises and promotions.

Managers and employees in uncertainty-avoiding cultures may be highly motivated by opportunities to maintain or increase their perceived levels of job security and job stability. Any effort to reduce or eliminate that security or stability may be met with resistance. In contrast, people in uncertainty-accepting cultures may be less motivated by security needs and less inclined to seek job security or stability as a condition of employment. They also may be more motivated by change and by new challenges and opportunities for personal growth and development. For example, recent studies comparing U.S. and German workers reveal substantial differences in their preferences regarding job values. Job security and shorter work hours were valued more highly by the German workers than the U.S. workers. Income, opportunities for promotion, and the importance of one’s work were much more highly valued by the U.S. workers than by their German counterparts.35

Finally, people from more aggressive goal behavior cultures are more likely to be motivated by money and other material rewards. They may pursue behavioral choices that they perceive as having the highest probability of financial payoff. They also may be disinclined to work toward rewards whose primary attraction is mere comfort or personal satisfaction. In contrast,
workers in passive goal behavior cultures may be more motivated by needs and rewards that can potentially enhance the quality of their lives. They may be less interested in behavioral choices whose primary appeal is a higher financial payoff. For example, Swedish firms provide generous vacations and fringe benefits.

Various studies have tested specific motivation theories in different cultural settings. The theory receiving the most attention has been Abraham Maslow’s hierarchy of five basic needs: physiological, security, social, self-esteem, and self-actualization.36 International research on Maslow’s hierarchy provides two different insights. First, managers in many different countries, including the United States, Mexico, Japan, and Canada, usually agree that the needs included in Maslow’s hierarchy are all important to them. Second, the relative importance and preference ordering of the needs vary considerably by country.37 For example, managers in less-developed countries such as Liberia and India place a higher priority on satisfying self-esteem and security needs than do managers from more developed countries.38

Results from research based on another motivation theory, David McClelland’s learned needs framework, have been slightly more consistent. In particular, the need for achievement (to grow, learn, and accomplish important things) has been shown to exist in many different countries. McClelland has also demonstrated that the need for achievement can be taught to people in different cultures.39 However, given the role of Hofstede’s cultural differences, it follows that McClelland’s needs are not likely to be constant across cultures. In particular, individualistic, uncertainty-accepting, power-tolerant, and aggressive goal behavior cultures seem more likely to foster and promote the needs for achievement and power (to control resources) than the need for affiliation (to be part of a social network). In contrast, collectivistic, uncertainty-avoiding, power-respecting, and passive goal behavior cultures may promote the need for affiliation more than the needs for achievement and power.40

Frederick Herzberg’s two-factor theory is another popular need-based theory of motivation.41 This theory suggests that one set of factors affects dissatisfaction and another set affects satisfaction. It, too, has been tested cross-culturally with varied results. For example, research has found different patterns of factors when comparing U.S. managers with managers from New Zealand and Panama.42 Results from U.S. employees suggested that supervision contributed to dissatisfaction but not to satisfaction. But supervision did contribute to employees’ satisfaction in New Zealand. Unfortunately, Herzberg’s theory often fails to yield consistent results even within a single culture. Thus, even though the theory is well known and popular among managers, managers should be particularly cautious in attempting to apply it in different cultural contexts.

Process-Based Models Across Cultures

In contrast to need-based theories, expectancy theory takes a process view of motivation.43 This theory suggests that people are motivated to behave in certain ways to the extent that they perceive that such behaviors will lead to outcomes they find personally attractive. The theory acknowledges that different people have different needs—one person may need money, another recognition, another social satisfaction, and still another prestige. But each will be willing to improve his or her performance if he or she believes the result will be fulfillment of the needs he or she finds most important.

Relatively little research has explicitly tested expectancy theory in countries other than the United States. It does seem logical, however, that the basic framework of the theory should have wide applicability. Regardless of where people work, they are likely to work toward goals they think are important. However, cultural factors will partially determine both the nature of those work goals and people’s perceptions of how they should most fruitfully pursue them.

One particularly complex factor that is likely to affect the expectancy process is the cultural dimension of social orientation. The expectancy theory is essentially a model of individual decisions regarding individual behavioral choices targeted at individual outcomes. Thus, it may be less able to explain behavior in collectivistic cultures, but otherwise may be one of the most likely candidates for a culturally unbiased explanation of motivated behavior. For example, expectancy theory helps explain the success Sony has enjoyed. People who go to work for Sony know they will be able to pursue diverse opportunities and will be kept informed about what is happening in the firm. People who see these conditions as especially important will be most strongly motivated to work for Sony.
The Reinforcement Model Across Cultures

Like expectancy theory, the reinforcement model has undergone relatively few tests in different cultures. This model says that behavior that results in a positive outcome (reinforcement) will likely be repeated under the same circumstances in the future. Behavioral choice that results in negative consequences (punishment) will result in a different choice under the same circumstances in the future. Because this model makes no attempt to specify what people will find reinforcing or punishing, it may also be generalizable to different cultures.

Like expectancy theory, the reinforcement model may have exceptions. In Muslim cultures, for example, people tend to believe that the consequences they experience are the will of God rather than a function of their own behavior. Thus, reinforcement and punishment are likely to have less effect on their future behavioral decisions. Aside from relatively narrow exceptions such as this, however, the reinforcement model, like expectancy theory, warrants careful attention from international managers, provided they understand that what constitutes rewards and punishment will vary across cultures.

In Practice

- Managers need to understand that needs and values vary across cultures and thus what motivates workers in one culture will not necessarily motivate workers in a different culture.
- Motivational processes and reinforcement will also vary from one culture to another.

For further consideration: What are the implications of differences in motivation across cultures for organizational reward systems in multinational organizations?

Leadership in International Business

Another important behavioral and interpersonal consideration in international business is leadership. Leadership is the use of noncoercive influence to shape the goals of a group or organization, to motivate behavior toward reaching those goals, and to help determine the group or organizational culture.44 Leadership in international business takes on additional complexities as a result in part of the more diverse workforces that are likely to be found in international organizations.45

Some people mistakenly equate management and leadership. However, there are clear and substantive differences between these two important processes. Management tends to rely on formal power and authority and to focus on administration and decision making. Leadership, in contrast, relies more on personal power and focuses more on motivation and communication. Leadership has been widely studied by organizational scientists for decades. Early studies attempted to identify physical traits or universal behaviors that most clearly distinguished leaders from nonleaders. More recently, attention has focused on matching leadership with situations. Although some studies still focus on traits, most leadership models suggest that appropriate leader behavior depends on situational factors.46

Contemporary Leadership Theory

Contemporary leadership theories recognize that leaders cannot succeed by always using the same set of behaviors in all circumstances. Instead, leaders must carefully assess the situation in which they find themselves and then tailor one or more behaviors to fit that situation. Common situational factors that affect appropriate leader behavior include individual differences among subordinates; characteristics of the group, the organization, and the leader; and subordinates’ desire to participate.47

Clearly, cultural factors will affect appropriate leader behavior, and the way in which managers spend their workday will vary among cultures.48 Figure 15.2 summarizes some interesting findings from an early international study of leadership. Managers were asked to indicate the extent to which they agreed with the statement, “It is important for a manager to have at hand precise answers to most of the questions that subordinates may raise about their work.”
The leadership of diverse groups can pose a variety of challenges to those in positions of authority. For instance, when South Africa was governed by apartheid, White leaders and White citizens had superior standing while the rights of non-Whites were severely limited. But following the abolishment of apartheid, Nelson Mandela, the former leader of the Black opposition, was elected president. His first big challenge was to reconcile the former ruling White population with the formerly oppressed Blacks and other non-White groups.

As shown in the figure, more than half of the managers in Japan and Italy agreed with this statement, whereas a much smaller percentage of managers in Sweden, Germany, Great Britain, and the United States did so. In general, agreement with the statement would suggest that managers and leaders are perceived as experts who should know all the answers. Those who disagree with the statement believe that managers and leaders are supposed to be problem solvers who may not know the answer to a question but can figure it out or know how to find the answer. In the United States, therefore, a manager who failed to refer a subordinate to a more knowledgeable authority would be seen as arrogant. But in Indonesia, a manager who refers a subordinate to someone else for answers is likely to be seen as incompetent.

**FIGURE 15.2**
The Role of Managers Varies Across Cultures


![Pie charts showing percentages of managers in different countries agreeing with the statement: Sweden 10%, United States 18%, Great Britain 27%, Germany 46%, Italy 66%, Japan 78%](image)

“It is important for a manager to have at hand precise answers to most of the questions that subordinates may raise about their work.”

(Percentages refer to those in agreement.)
Several implications for leaders in international settings can be drawn from the cultural factors identified in Hofstede’s work. In individualistic cultures, leaders may need to focus their behavior on individual employees rather than the group. In contrast, in a collectivist culture, leader behaviors will clearly need to focus on the group rather than on individual group members. In a group-oriented culture such as that of Japan, an effective leader must guide subordinates while preserving group harmony. At Sony, for example, managers are expected to allow their employees to transfer at will to more interesting job settings because such transfers are believed to be in the firm’s overall best interests. The Japanese management system focuses on consensus-building efforts to ensure that both leader and subordinates reach a common decision. A leader would destroy group harmony if he dictatorially commanded his subordinates to implement his decisions. One problem that may develop, however, is that junior managers attempt to anticipate what their boss’ preferred strategy is and then offer it as their own. A leader confronted with such a strong tendency toward conformity must seek ways to encourage creative solutions from subordinates to new problems as they arise. A Japanese manager may thus distance himself from pending decisions, thereby encouraging subordinates to discuss a variety of options among themselves. Only then will the manager lead by dropping subtle hints regarding what he sees as the correct solution to an issue.

Power orientation carries even more direct implications for situational leadership. In power-respecting cultures, employees may expect leaders to take charge, to make decisions, and to direct their efforts. Leaders may therefore need to concentrate on performance-oriented behaviors (direct, structured, and goal-oriented behaviors), avoid employee-oriented behaviors (caring, concern, and interpersonally oriented behaviors), and make little attempt to foster participation. But if power tolerance is the more pervasive cultural value, a leader should spend less time on performance-oriented behaviors. Instead, employee-oriented behaviors and more employee participation may result in higher levels of effectiveness.

Attempts at blurring the distinctions between managers and workers may not be well received in more authoritarian, hierarchical societies. For example, one U.S. firm exported the “company picnic” concept to its Spanish subsidiary, complete with company executives serving food to the Spanish employees. However, this informality was not well received by the employees, who were embarrassed at being served by their “superiors.”

Uncertainty orientation is also an important situational factor to consider. Where uncertainty avoidance is the rule, employees will have a strong desire for structure and direction. Thus, performance-oriented behaviors are likely to be more successful, whereas employee-oriented behaviors and attempts to use participation may be less so. For example, German managers tend to be autocratic and task-oriented, making decisions with reference to existing corporate rules and procedures. Having determined departmental objectives, they then confidently delegate tasks to subordinates, whom they expect to competently carry out the tasks necessary to achieve the objective.

In contrast, employees more prone toward uncertainty acceptance may respond more favorably to opportunities for participation. They may even prefer participative behaviors on the part of their leaders. But performance-oriented leadership may be undesirable or unnecessary, whereas employee-oriented leadership may have little impact. That is, employees may have such a strong desire to participate and be involved in their work that they see performance-oriented or employee-oriented behaviors from their supervisor as being redundant with or even negating their own opportunities for participation.

Finally, differences in goal orientation will affect leader behavior. Recall that people in aggressive goal behavior cultures tend to value money and other material rewards. If performance-oriented leadership or higher levels of participation are perceived by followers to result in higher rewards, those behaviors will be more acceptable. In contrast, outcomes enhancing quality of life are more desirable in passive goal behavior cultures. To the extent that employee-oriented leader behaviors may cause followers to feel more satisfied with their work and the organization, such behaviors may be more effective in these settings.

Cultural factors are among the most difficult and complex to assess and understand. They may also be among the most critical in determining leader effectiveness. It is important that leaders attempt to match their behaviors with the context—the people they are leading and the organization in which they are functioning. For example, one study analyzed the productivity of U.S. and Mexican factories owned by the same MNC. Cultural differences clearly exist between
the two countries. Mexico ranks high on power respect relative to the United States. U.S. residents are far more individualistic than those of Mexico, whereas the family is more highly valued in Mexico than in the United States. Mexican cultural values translate into the paternalistic, authoritarian management style adopted by managers of the MNC’s Mexican facilities. Managers of its U.S. facilities, however, adopted less paternalistic and more participative styles in managing their employees. By allowing management styles to adapt to national culture, the MNC enjoyed equally high levels of productivity from both facilities.54

The GLOBE Leadership Project

To learn more about international leadership, a global team of researchers have been working on a series of studies under the general heading of Project GLOBE (Global Leadership and Organizational Behavior Research Project). GLOBE was initiated by Robert House, and research is still being conducted under its auspices.55 GLOBE identified six leader behaviors that can be observed and assessed across a variety of cultures. These behaviors are:

- **Charismatic/value-based leadership**: the ability to inspire, to motivate, and to promote high performance; includes being visionary, self-sacrificing, trustworthy, decisive, and performance oriented.
- **Team-oriented leadership**: emphasizes team building and creating a sense of common purpose; includes being collaborative, diplomatic, and administratively competent.
- **Participative leadership**: the extent to which leaders involve others in making decisions; being participative and non-autocratic.
- **Humane-oriented leadership**: being supportive, considerate, compassionate, and generous; displaying modesty and sensitivity.
- **Autonomous leadership**: refers to being independent and individualist; being autonomous and unique.
- **Self-protective leadership**: includes behaviors intending to ensure the safety and security of the leader and the group; includes being self-centered, status conscious, conflict inducing, and face saving.

These behaviors have been—and are being—studied in 62 global societies. These societies are mostly separate countries, but when there are markedly different societies with a country (such as Black and White South Africa), each is examined separately. Based on the preliminary results, the original 62 societies were condensed into 10 cultural clusters—societies that yielded highly similar results to one another. For instance, the Nordic Europe cluster includes Finland, Sweden, Denmark, and Norway, and the Southern Asia cluster consists of India, Indonesia, Malaysia, Thailand, and Iran.

In general, the findings of GLOBE suggest that within any cultural cluster, followers react in similar ways to various leader behaviors. For example, employees in Nordic Europe generally want their leaders to be inspiring and to involve others in decision making but are less concerned with status and similar self-centered attributes. Therefore, charismatic/value-based and participative leadership are most important and humane-oriented and self-protective leadership are least important. In Southern Asia, however, most employees want their leaders to be collaborative, sensitive to other people’s needs, and concerned with status and face saving. Consequently, self-protective and charismatic/value-based leadership are most important in these countries, whereas autonomous and participative leadership are least important.56 Of course, as noted previously, this research is still ongoing, and it would be premature to draw overly strong generalizations at this point.

**In Practice**

- Managers need to understand that people in different cultures expect different things from their leaders.
- Likewise, managers must remember that their own behaviors will have different effects in different cultures.

*For further consideration:* Do you think it is easier for a leader to manage people who are from one culture or from several cultures?
Decision Making in International Business

Another area of international business in which large cultural differences exist is decision making. Decision making is the process of choosing one alternative from among a set of alternatives to promote the decision maker’s objectives.

Models of Decision Making

There are two different views of how managers go about making decisions, as illustrated in Figure 15.3. The normative model of decision making suggests that managers apply logic and rationality in making the best decisions. In contrast, the descriptive model of decision making argues that behavioral processes limit a manager’s ability to always be logical and rational.57

The normative model suggests that decision making starts when managers recognize that a problem exists and a decision has to be made. For example, a Shell refinery manager recently noticed that turnover among a certain group of workers had increased substantially. The second step is for the manager to identify potential alternatives for addressing the problem. The Shell manager determined that because turnover can be caused by low wages, poor working conditions, or poor supervision, her alternatives included raising wages, improving working conditions, or changing the group’s supervisor.

The third step in the normative model is to evaluate each alternative in light of the original problem. The Shell manager knew that the group’s wages were comparable to what others in the refinery were making. She also realized that the group’s work area had recently been refurbished, so she assumed working conditions were not a problem. In addition, she also discovered that a new supervisor had recently been appointed for the group. Using this information, the manager proceeded to step four in the normative process, selecting the best alternative. She felt that the problem was one of poor supervision, so she looked more closely at that particular part of the situation.

After scrutinizing the new supervisor’s records, the plant manager saw that the supervisor had been promoted during a hectic period and had not gone through the refinery’s normal supervisory training program. Because step five of the normative model suggests that the chosen alternative be implemented, the plant manager arranged for the new supervisor to complete his training. After six months, turnover in the group had dropped significantly and the plant manager was certain from this follow-up and evaluation that her chosen course of action was the correct one.

The descriptive model acknowledges that this is perhaps how managers should make their decisions. But the model also notes that, in reality, managers are affected by two important
behavioral processes. The first is called bounded rationality. Bounded rationality suggests that decision makers are constrained in their ability to be objective and rational by limitations of the human mind. Thus, they often use incomplete and imperfect information. Notice that the Shell manager in the preceding example did not consult with the members of the group to find out why turnover had increased. Had she done so, she might have gained additional information. The other behavioral process is called satisficing. Satisficing suggests that managers sometimes adopt the first minimally acceptable alternative they identify, when a further search might suggest an even better alternative. For example, because the supervisor had an opportunity to gain some experience, he might have been able to improve his skills with an abbreviated or accelerated training program.

The Normative Model Across Cultures

We can draw several possible implications from applying our basic understanding of the normative and descriptive models to decision making in other cultures. To explore those implications, we first walk through the steps in the normative model.

STEP 1: PROBLEM RECOGNITION  People from different cultures are likely to recognize and define problem situations in different ways. For example, in individualistic cultures, problems are likely to be defined in terms of individual scenarios and consequences. In collectivistic cultures, the focus will be more on group-related issues and situations. In an uncertainty-accepting culture, managers are more likely to take risks in solving problems and making decisions. In uncertainty-avoiding cultures, they may be much more cautious and strive to reduce uncertainty as much as possible before making a decision. As a result, they may fall back on firm policies and rules to provide a course of action (“We can’t do that because it’s against company policy”).

STEP 2: IDENTIFYING ALTERNATIVES  The processes through which alternatives are identified will also vary across cultures. For example, in power-respecting cultures, managers may be much less willing to consider an alternative that potentially threatens the hierarchy—for example, that a suggestion from a subordinate might be valid or that a problem might exist at a higher level in the organization. But in power-tolerant cultures, such hierarchical issues are more likely to be considered possible remedies to organizational problems.

In collectivistic societies, the desire for group harmony and conflict avoidance may be so strong that decision making is approached in unique ways. For example, the Japanese concern for maintaining group harmony has given rise to the ringi system for identifying alternatives and making decisions. The ringi system provides that decisions cannot be made unilaterally; doing that would be too individualistic and therefore destructive of group harmony. To encourage creative solutions, a manager may draw up a document, called the ringisho, which defines the problem and sets out a proposed solution. The Japanese corporate belief is that those who implement a solution should be those most affected by the problem because they understand the problem and are motivated to solve it. Thus, most ringisho originate from middle managers. Although the ringisho originates from an individual, it is soon subsumed by the group. The document is circulated to all members of the originator’s work group, as well as to other groups affected by it. As the ringisho passes through the workplace, it may be accepted, rejected, or modified. Only a document that is approved by all its reviewers is passed to a more senior manager for approval or disapproval. But before the ringisho reaches this stage, any senior manager worth his salt will have already dropped hints if he had any objections to any parts of it. Appropriate changes then would have been incorporated into the document by some subordinate before the ringisho arrived at the senior manager’s desk. Through the ringi system, creativity, innovation, and group harmony are all promoted.

In contrast, the German business structure is both strongly hierarchical and compartmentalized. Decision making tends to be slow and drawn out, designed to build consensus within a department of a firm. Data are painstakingly gathered, then communicated to the appropriate employees within the hierarchy. However, information often does not flow easily between departments, and a decision, once reached, may be difficult to change. Also, established operating procedures are followed carefully. These factors substantially reduce the firm’s flexibility and responsiveness to rapidly changing conditions. The resulting inflexibility often hinders the performance of foreign subsidiaries of German MNCs, which have difficulty getting the home office to acknowledge that their operating conditions may differ from those in Germany.
Chapter 15 • Leadership and Employee Behavior in International Business

**STEP 3: Evaluating Alternatives** Evaluating alternatives can also be affected by cultural phenomena. For example, an alternative that results in financial gain may be more attractive in an aggressive goal behavior culture than in a passive goal behavior culture, which may prefer an alternative that results in improved quality of work life. Uncertainty avoidance will also be a consideration; alternatives with varying levels of associated uncertainty may be perceived to be more or less attractive.

Evaluating alternatives is further complicated in countries in which people tend to avoid taking responsibility for making decisions. China’s economic policies, for example, have changed so quickly and drastically over the past five decades that those supporting today’s economic policies may find themselves in political difficulties tomorrow. Indeed, within the Chinese culture there is a tendency for Chinese officials to avoid association with any decision that could haunt them later. Group decision making reduces the potential blame an individual bureaucrat may suffer.61

**STEP 4: Selecting the Best Alternative** Cultural factors can affect the actual selection of an alternative. In an individualistic culture, for example, a manager may be prone to select an alternative that has the most positive impact on him or her personally; in a collectivistic culture, the impact of the alternative on the total group will carry more weight. Not surprisingly, a manager trained in one culture will often use the same techniques when operating in a different culture, even though they may be ineffective there. In one recent study comparing U.S. managers operating in the United States with U.S. managers operating in Hong Kong, the managerial behaviors of the two groups were found to be the same. These behaviors included managerial supportiveness of subordinates, problem solving, openness of communication, disciplining of subordinates, and so on. However, although these behaviors positively affected firm performance in the United States, they had no effect on firm performance in Hong Kong.62

Cultural differences in problem solving and decision making may be particularly troublesome for partners in a joint venture or other strategic alliance because they must develop mutually acceptable decisions. U.S. managers often deliberately use conflict (in the form of devil’s advocate or dialectical inquiry techniques) as a means of improving the decision-making process. Managers from more consensus-oriented societies, such as Japan, find this disharmonious approach distasteful and unproductive.63

**STEP 5: Implementation** In a power-respecting culture, implementation may be mandated by a manager at the top of the organization and accepted without question by others. But in a power-tolerant culture, participation may be more crucial to ensure acceptance. In an uncertainty-avoiding culture, managers may need to carefully plan every step of the implementation before proceeding so that everyone knows what to expect. In an uncertainty-accepting culture, however, managers may be more willing to start implementation before all the final details have been arranged.

**STEP 6: Follow-Up and Evaluation** Follow-up and evaluation also have cultural implications, most notably regarding power orientation. In a power-respecting culture, a manager may be unwilling to find fault with an alternative suggested by a higher-level manager. Also, too much credit may be given to a higher-level manager purely on the basis of his or her position in the hierarchy. But in a power-tolerant culture, responsibility, blame, and credit are more likely to be accurately attributed.

**The Descriptive Model Across Cultures** The behavioral processes of bounded rationality and satisficing are more difficult to relate to cultural differences. Few research efforts have specifically explored these phenomena in different cultures, and their nature makes it hard to draw reasonable generalizations. Thus, although it is likely that they do have some impact on business decisions made in different cultures and therefore need to be understood by managers, more research needs to be conducted on their precise influence. In particular, all managers need to understand the potential limitations of applying different modes of decision making in different cultural settings. For example, several years ago the Japanese owners of the Dunes Hotel and Casino in Las Vegas tried to implement a variety of Japanese management practices in the casino operation. One was decision making by consensus. They quickly recognized, however, that it was far too slow for the intensely competitive, fast-changing casino industry.
Part 3 • Managing International Business

VENTURING ABROAD

MIXING AND MATCHING IN A JOINT VENTURE

Because work teams have become so ubiquitous in management today, it follows that many new joint ventures and other alliances will have work teams as a critical component. But managers need to pay careful attention to the culturally based differences that can exist among people in such settings and how those differences can facilitate or hinder the new venture.

Consider, for example, the experiences that three multinational firms had when they decided to “venture abroad” together. It all started when IBM, Siemens, and Toshiba entered into a new joint venture to work together in developing an advanced type of computer chip. Each firm identified a set of research scientists for the project and the total group of around 100 people assembled for work at an IBM facility in East Fishkill, a small Hudson River Valley town in New York. The idea was that the best and brightest minds from three diverse companies would bring such an array of knowledge, insight, and creativity to the project that it was bound to succeed.

Unfortunately, things didn’t start out well, and it took much longer than expected for the firms to really figure out how to work together. The biggest reasons cited for the early difficulties related to the cultural differences and barriers that existed among the group members. For example, the Japanese scientists were accustomed to working in one big room where everyone could interact with everyone else and it was easy to overhear what others were saying. The IBM facility, in contrast, had small, cramped offices that could only hold a few people at a time. The Germans were unhappy because most of their offices lacked windows—they claimed that back home no one would be asked to work in a windowless office.

Interpersonal styles also caused conflict at times. Both the U.S. and Japanese scientists criticized their German colleagues for planning and organizing too much, and the Japanese were criticized for their unwillingness to make clear decisions. The German and Japanese scientists felt that their U.S. hosts did not spend enough time socializing with them after work. There were also problems with employee privacy and workplace rights. The office doors at the IBM facility all had small windows that visitors could use to peek in to see if the occupant was busy before knocking. Both the Germans and Japanese, however, saw this as an invasion of their privacy and often hung their coats over the windows. And they also objected to IBM’s strict no-smoking policy that mandated that people go outside to smoke, regardless of weather conditions.

Because of these problems, the group’s initial lack of progress was discouraging. Managers felt that a big part of the problem was that they did not do an adequate job of training the group members before transferring them to the project and that better cultural training in particular would have been useful. Fortunately for the joint venture, the group members eventually started to train and socialize themselves about how to overcome the cultural differences. Indeed, after the early rough spots, the new venture finally took off and the new chip was developed only a few months behind schedule.54

Groups and Teams in International Business

Other important behavioral processes that international managers should understand are those associated with groups and teams. Regardless of whether a firm is a small domestic company or a large MNC, much of its work is accomplished by people working together as a part of a team, task force, committee, or operating group. The “Venturing Abroad” box underscores the importance of understanding some of the issues in using teams in different cultures.

The Nature of Group Dynamics

Firms use groups frequently because, in theory, people working together as a group can accomplish more than they can working individually. Although organizations use a wide array of different kinds of groups, teams are especially popular today. Indeed, many managers now refer to all their groups as teams. Technically, a group is any collection of people working together to accomplish a common purpose, whereas a team is a specific type of group that assumes responsibility for its own work. Because teams are so ubiquitous today and the term is so common among managers, we will use this term in our discussion.

In Practice

- All managers need to remember the explicit role that decision making plays in their jobs.
- Managers need to understand the differences between the descriptive and normative models of decision making and how those differences may affect their own decision making.

For further consideration: It seems logical that the normative model would produce better decisions. Can you think of situations in which the descriptive model might be superior?
A mature team in a firm generally has certain characteristics:

1. It develops a well-defined role structure; each member has a part to play on the team, accepts that part, and makes a worthwhile contribution.
2. It establishes norms for its members. Norms are standards of behavior, such as how people should dress, when team meetings or activities will begin, the consequences of being absent, how much each member should produce, and so on.
3. It is cohesive. That is, team members identify more and more strongly with the team, and each member respects, values, and works well with the others.
4. Some teams identify informal leaders among their members—individuals whom the team accords special status and who can lead and direct the team without benefit of formal authority.

If a team’s role structure promotes efficiency, its norms reinforce high performance, it truly is cohesive, and its informal leaders support the firm’s goals, then it can potentially reach maximum effectiveness. Sony’s computer development group took on all of these characteristics, which no doubt helped to contribute to the group’s ability to reach its goal ahead of schedule. However, if the team’s role structure is inefficient, its performance norms are low, it is not cohesive, or its informal leaders do not support the firm’s goals, then it may become ineffective from the firm’s standpoint.

Managing Cross-Cultural Teams

The composition of a team plays a major role in the dynamics that emerge from it. A relatively homogeneous team generally has less conflict, better communication, less creativity, more uniform norms, higher cohesiveness, and clear informal leadership. A more heterogeneous team often has more conflict, poorer communication, more creativity, less uniform norms, a lower level of cohesiveness, and more ambiguous informal leadership.

Managers charged with building teams in different cultures need to assess the nature of the task to be performed and, as much as possible, match the composition of the team to the type of task. For example, if the task is relatively routine and straightforward, a homogeneous team may be more effective. Similarities in knowledge, background, values, and beliefs can make the work go more smoothly and efficiently. But if the task is nonroutine, complex, and/or ambiguous, a heterogeneous team may be more effective because of members’ diverse backgrounds, experiences, knowledge, and values.

Other cultural factors may also play a role in team dynamics. For example, in an individualistic culture, establishing shared norms and cohesiveness may be somewhat difficult, whereas in a collectivistic culture, team cohesiveness may emerge naturally. In a power-respecting culture, team members should probably be from the same level of the organization because members from lower levels may be intimidated and subservient to those from higher levels. In a power-tolerant culture, variation in organizational level may be less of a problem. Uncertainty avoidance and team dynamics may also interact as a function of task. If a task is vague, ambiguous, or unstructured, an uncertainty-avoiding group may be unable to function effectively; in contrast, an uncertainty-accepting group may actually thrive. Finally, teams in an aggressive goal behavior culture may work together more effectively if their goal has financial implications, whereas teams in a passive goal behavior culture may be more motivated to work toward attitudinal or quality-of-work outcomes.

Matching business behavior with the cultural values of the workforce is a key ingredient in promoting organizational performance. Much of the competitive strength of Japanese firms, for example, is as a result of their incorporation of Japanese cultural norms into the workplace. Japanese culture emphasizes the importance of group harmony and respect for superiors. “Silent leaders,” ones who guide rather than command subordinates and who preserve group harmony, are more admired than are authoritarian managers. The ringi system ensures that new approaches are granted group approval before being implemented. The traditional lifetime employment practices that some major Japanese firms use promote employee loyalty to the organization. All these features are reinforced by careful selection of new employees. Only those persons who are willing to subordinate their individual goals to the needs of the group are hired. This corporate philosophy carries over to foreign operations of Japanese MNCs. For example, many U.S. newspapers have reported on the extraordinary amounts of testing and interviewing that such firms operating in North America do before hiring an employee.
All managers need to understand the increased pervasiveness of teams as vehicles for getting work done and how to most effectively use such teams.

International managers must understand the role of cross-cultural differences when forming global teams.

For further consideration: If you were appointed to lead a cross-cultural team, what steps would you take to minimize the possibility of culturally based conflict among your team members?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

Behavioral and interpersonal processes are vitally important in any organization. Both their importance and their complexity are magnified in international firms. Individual differences provide the cornerstone for understanding behavioral patterns in different cultures. Personality traits, attitudes, perceptions, and stress are all important individual differences that international managers should understand.

Motivation is the overall set of forces that causes people to choose certain behaviors from a set of available behaviors. Need-based, process-based, and reinforcement models of motivation each explain different aspects of motivation. Although none of these models is generalizable to all cultures, each can provide insights into motivation in similar cultures.

Leadership is the use of noncoercive influence to shape the goals of a group or organization, to motivate behavior toward reaching those goals, and to help determine the group or organizational culture. People from different cultures react in different ways to each type of leadership behavior. These different reactions are determined partially by cultural dimensions and partially by the individuals themselves.

Decision making is the process of choosing an alternative from among a set of alternatives designed to promote the decision maker’s objectives. People from different cultures approach each step in the decision-making process differently. Again, variation along cultural dimensions is a significant determinant of variations in decision-making processes.

Groups and teams are part of all organizations. A team’s role structure, cohesiveness, norms, and informal leadership all contribute to its success or failure. Culture plays a major role in determining the team’s degree of heterogeneity or homogeneity, which in turn helps determine its overall level of effectiveness.

Review Questions

15-1. Define personality and explain how personality differences affect individual behavior.
15-2. Explain how attitudes vary across cultures.
15-3. Discuss the basic perceptual process and note how it differs across cultures.
15-4. Explain how attitudes and perception can affect each other.
15-5. Discuss stress and how it varies across cultures.
15-6. Identify some of the basic issues managers must confront when attempting to motivate employees in different cultures.
15-7. How do needs and values differ in different cultures?
15-8. Summarize the steps in the normative model of decision making and relate each to international business.
15-9. Why are teams so important? What are the basic implications of teams for an international business?

Questions for Discussion

15-10. Which do you think is a more powerful determinant of human behavior—cultural factors or individual differences?
15-11. Think of two or three personality traits that you believe are especially strong in your culture, and two or three that are especially weak. Relate these to Hofstede’s cultural dimensions.
15-12. Imagine that you have just been transferred to an overseas location by your business. What are your own personal dimensions? How might these personal
dimensions affect your experience and your ability to adapt to the new situation? You may choose any country as the location of your international posting.

15-13. How do businesses in your country seek to motivate employees?

15-14. Good leadership is vital to all organizations. What makes a good business leader in your country?

15-15. Do you think it will ever be possible to develop a motivation framework that is applicable in all cultures? Why or why not?

15-16. How do motivation and leadership affect corporate culture?

**Building Global Skills**

Select a country in which you have some interest and about which you can readily find information (e.g., Japan as opposed to Bhutan). Go to your library or use the Internet and learn as much as you can about the behavior of people from the country you selected. Concentrate on such culturally based social phenomena as the following:

- The meaning people from the country attach to a few common English words
- The meaning they attach to common gestures
- How they interpret basic colors
- The basic rules of business etiquette they follow
- Their preferences regarding personal space
- How the country is characterized along Hofstede’s dimensions

Team up with a classmate who chose a different country. Each of you should pick a product or commodity that is produced in the country you studied (such as stereos, bananas, oil, or machine parts). Attempt to negotiate a contract for selling your product or commodity to the other. As you negotiate, play the role of someone from the country you studied as authentically as possible. For example, if people from that culture are offended by a certain gesture and your counterpart happens to make that gesture while negotiating, act offended!

Spend approximately 15 minutes negotiating. Then spend another 15 minutes discussing with your classmate how the cultural background each of you adopted affected (or could have affected) the negotiation process.

15-19. How easy or difficult is it to model the behavior of someone from another country?

15-20. What other forms of advance preparation might a manager need to undertake before negotiating with someone from another country?

**CLOSING CASE**

**IKEA’s Transformational Leader**

Pernille Spiers-Lopez grew up in a small town in Denmark. After finishing college she worked as a journalist for a short time, but she found that profession to be unsatisfying. Her next move was to relocate to the United States and open a business importing Danish furniture. Unfortunately, that venture failed. She then took a minimum-wage job selling furniture in Florida. Through hard work and determination within two years Spiers-Lopez was supervising 24 stores. The regional furniture company where she was working was then purchased by IKEA in 1993.

She quickly advanced through the management ranks at IKEA, where she was the only woman on the company’s North American board. A 1997 businesswomen’s leadership conference led her to reassess her priorities and her role at IKEA. In response, she chose to alter her career path and moved into human resource management. She subsequently became the U.S. director of human resources; one of her first actions was to implement programs to recruit more minority and female managers. Today, half of the firm’s 75 top earners are female. Five women now serve on the management board. She also increased pay and benefits throughout the firm, especially for the lowest-paid employees. Today, thanks in large part to Spiers-Lopez, IKEA offers one of the most generous benefits packages for full-time and part-time workers in the retailing sector. And along the way she was promoted to the position of CEO and President of IKEA North America and Global Chief Human Resource Officer.

Yet it was a personal, frightening experience that led to the most dramatic change. Spiers-Lopez is a working mother whose husband is a public school principal. As her IKEA career developed, the couple chose not to uproot the family. Instead, Spiers-Lopez commuted home several times each week from distant worksites. In 1999, Spiers-Lopez was working long hours and commuting frequently. Her competitive, Type A personality caused her to push herself
harder and harder without regard to the consequences. One night as she left work she experienced tremendous pain in the chest and arms. Rushing to the hospital, convinced she was having a heart attack, Spiers-Lopez found the problem instead was exhaustion and stress.

She decided she wanted to continue working but with more limits. “I’d been in denial for some time about my own strength. I’d been emotionally numb, ignored things and moved ahead, and put my family on automatic pilot,” Spiers-Lopez says. “Now I’ve acted on that wake-up signal and am working on balancing life and work.”

One of her coping mechanisms was a reduction in working hours so that she could relax with family. She says, “For years I’ve struggled with questions of whether I’m a good mother, a good friend, and a good wife…. [Now] I avoid business travel on weekends, try to keep regular hours at work and leave the job at the office.” Her coworkers help, too. “We have meetings, and they know if they don’t say, ‘Let’s take a break,’ they won’t get a break. So they say, ‘Pernille, in order to help you, we’re going to all take a break.’” A perfectionist, she struggles to keep from being overwhelmed but adds, “I am continuing to learn how to ‘wing’ things.” Her career and personal life have both flourished as a result of better balance.

Her personal experiences with balancing career and family have affected her choices as a manager. She is a strong advocate for telecommuting, alternative work arrangements, and job sharing. IKEA’s policy of generous leave for new or adoptive mothers and fathers was designed by Spiers-Lopez. The organization has also flourished under Spiers-Lopez’s leadership. The number of U.S. stores has doubled and sales are the fastest growing of all the IKEA regions.

The combination of hard-driving competition and a culture that values people has resulted in an organization that is both supportive of its workers and profitable. Author Andy Meisler calls it “high-yield humanism.” Spiers-Lopez admits that it is not easy for her to walk the line between challenge and nurture. “I want things done quickly,” she says. “But in big organizations you have to be careful not to move too many things too quickly. Elevators have to stop at every floor.”

**Case Questions**

15-21. Can you speculate about the personality traits that personify Pernille Spiers-Lopez?
15-22. Describe the role that motivation has played in the choices made by Pernille Spiers-Lopez in her career.
15-23. Discuss how her experiences with stress may have been impacted by international issues.
15-24. Describe Pernille Spiers-Lopez’s approach to leadership at IKEA.


40. Adler, op. cit.


60. Hall and Hall, op. cit., pp. 33–84.


Chapter 15 • Leadership and Employee Behavior in International Business

Targets were not met. As a result, Nissan continued to lose money in 1994 and 1995. Although the company earned a modest profit in 1996, its profits turned negative once again in 1997. Profit performance for 1998 and 1999 was no better.

Unable to overcome its mounting problems, Nissan suffered the ultimate humiliation for a Japanese company: It was taken over by a foreigner. In May 1999 France’s Renault SA purchased 37 percent of Nissan’s common stock for $5.4 billion, effectively transferring control of Japan’s second-largest auto manufacturer to the French firm. Renault empowered one of its most highly respected executives, Carlos Ghosn, to clean up the mess at Nissan. Ghosn first spent five months carefully reviewing Nissan’s operations. In October 1999 the Brazilian-born Ghosn announced a “revival plan” for the company designed to reduce Nissan’s annual costs by nearly $10 billion. To reach this goal, five Nissan factories in Japan would have to be shuttered and 21,000 jobs eliminated. About 16,000 of the job cuts would occur in Nissan’s domestic operations. Mindful of Japan’s distaste for layoffs and Japanese labor laws that make firing employees expensive, the employment reductions were to be implemented via attrition, which averages about 2,000 domestic employees per year.

Other options, such as voluntary retirement programs, were initially shelved because of opposition from Nissan’s union leaders, although the options have not been permanently ruled out. Further cost reductions were to be implemented by eliminating regional offices in such cities as New York and Washington and cutting the number of different vehicle models produced and marketed by Nissan. To ensure that no one misunderstood the importance of cost cutting to revive the company, Ghosn announced that “No one in purchasing, engineering, or administration will receive a pay raise until they [show] what their contribution is to this [cost cutting].”

Ghosn recognized the need to hack away at Nissan’s mountain of debt—some 2.4 trillion yen (in early 2001, 117 yen were worth 1 U.S. dollar)—and set a target of halving it by 2002. Ghosn also sought to streamline Nissan’s dealership networks in Japan and North America. In Japan, for example, Nissan owns about half of its distributorships. Unfortunately, many of its distributors act like employees, rather than entrepreneurs, an attitude that Ghosn hoped to change by trimming company-owned outlets.

Reinventing Nissan

During the 1980s it was hard to pick up a copy of Businessweek, Fortune, or Forbes that did not feature some article extolling the virtues of Japanese management techniques and the Japanese way of doing business. Many Western commentators urged U.S. and European firms to adopt such Japanese corporate policies as lifetime employment, group-oriented compensation, and reliance on tight customer-supplier networks like those found in the keiretsu system. Among the most admired of these firms were Japan’s premier automakers—Toyota, Nissan, and Honda.

The 1990s, however, were disastrous for many Japanese firms. The collapse of Japan’s so-called bubble economy at the end of the 1980s condemned Japan to a decade of slow growth, stagnant stock markets, and loss of confidence. Among Japan’s corporate elite, Nissan perhaps suffered the greatest fall of all. Although Nissan had prospered during the 1980s, the 1990s were far less kind. Expansion of its domestic auto-making capacity during the 1980s left Nissan with far too many factories and workers, and it was forced to battle for market share in the crowded Japanese domestic market by keeping its prices low. (Japan has more major domestic automobile manufacturers than any other country.)

The company suffered from excess capacity in its European operations as well. And the high value of the yen during the first half of the 1990s made it difficult for the company to export its way out of its difficulties. The Asian currency crisis of 1997–1998 dried up that region’s demand for the company’s products in the waning years of the twentieth century. Confronted with these diverse challenges, the company eked out a small profit in 1991 but lost money in 1992 and 1993.

To restore the company to profitability, Nissan’s executives announced a major cost-cutting program in 1994. As one part of this program, Nissan pledged to slash the number of suppliers the firm would buy from in the future. It hoped this would result in better prices for auto parts by increasing the size of its orders to individual suppliers. Nissan also decided to trim its workforce and to reduce the number of parts used in the company’s cars, thereby simplifying its procurement operations and reducing its inventory costs. Unfortunately, these efforts did not work, in part because the program’s targets were not met. As a result, Nissan continued to lose green pants here.” The Economist, May 31, 2008, p. 71; “Sri Lanka Gears Up for Asian Garment Competition,” www.tdctrade.com, January 8, 2004; Dian Gomes, “Introduction,” A Place in the Sun (Pannala, Sri Lanka [privately printed], 2001), p. xiii; Thomas L. Friedman, The Lexus and the Olive Tree (New York: Anchor Books, 2000), pp. 177–178; “Sri Lanka Keeps Victoria’s Secret: Toiling in Comfort,” Wall Street Journal, July 14, 1999.
Review of the firm’s marketing operations unearthed another set of problems. Ghosn quickly recognized that Nissan’s product image differed from country to country, making it hard to launch cost-effective cross-border advertising campaigns. Far worse, he discovered that Nissan suffered from a “brand deficiency,” causing consumers to value rivals’ vehicles over those produced by Nissan. In the United States, for example, comparable cars sold by Honda, Toyota, Chrysler, and Ford might sell for $1,000 more than Nissan’s product. To sharpen its brand identity and develop a uniform global image for its products, Nissan contracted with TBWA Worldwide to handle all of its advertising throughout the world—an account worth an estimated $1.1 billion in annual billings.

Perhaps the most controversial of Ghosn’s initiatives dealt with parts procurement. He estimated that Nissan’s parts procurement costs were 10 percent higher than those of Renault. Ghosn believed that by combining, centralizing, and globalizing Renault’s and Nissan’s parts procurement, these costs could be cut by 20 percent. To accomplish this, however, Ghosn needed to overcome a key element of the Japanese environment—the keiretsu system. The keiretsu system, in which members of a keiretsu group own shares in each other, has been a mainstay of the Japanese economy since World War II. The system is designed to build trust and promote stable, long-term cooperative relationships among suppliers and customers. Under this system Nissan funneled orders for parts and components to keiretsu affiliates, many of which were partially owned by Nissan. Ghosn’s criticism of the keiretsu system was blunt. He believed that Nissan’s purchase of parts and components from keiretsu affiliates promoted inefficiency and mediocrity. Because they were guaranteed business from Nissan, Ghosn felt that many of Nissan’s keiretsu members failed to continue to innovate and cut costs:

About 60 percent of our costs are in the suppliers. You have to have suppliers that are innovative. You want suppliers offering products to many customers so there is a flow of information about best standards. That won’t happen with keiretsu companies.67

Accordingly, Ghosn announced he would liquidate Nissan’s holdings in all but four of its 1,394 keiretsu partners. In a separate but related announcement he also said Nissan would halve the number of its suppliers to about 600. Instead of purchasing the same part from several suppliers, Nissan would now concentrate its purchases among a smaller number of suppliers, allowing them to achieve economies of scale and reduce their costs. Offering a carrot and a stick, he announced that suppliers cutting their prices to Nissan by 20 percent would get more of Nissan’s business. Those failing to do so, however, risked losing Nissan as a customer. Not surprisingly, these tough measures were not embraced by everyone. For example, the then prime minister of Japan, Keizo Obuchi, promptly denounced Ghosn’s plan, fearing job losses in the tens of thousands as Nissan cut back parts purchases from inefficient affiliates and suppliers.

Perhaps an even bigger challenge to Ghosn was to change Nissan’s corporate culture. He learned that too many Nissan executives were focused on protecting their turf rather than on promoting the company’s objectives. Moreover, he discovered to his horror that communication among divisions was nonexistent:

Country [organizations] were not talking to each other, people were not talking to each other…. This company is very territorial, very divisional; this goes deep into the history and tradition of Nissan. There is nothing that upsets me more than turfism.68

Ghosn knew he needed to redirect the company’s managers, refocusing their efforts on improving profits and enhancing customer satisfaction. To implement this objective, he created a network of multinational, cross-functional teams to reexamine and reinvigorate each of the firm’s activities, from research and development to purchasing to manufacturing to distribution. These teams were also charged with spreading the restructuring gospel and tearing down the walls that have divided Nissan’s operating divisions. Further down the line Ghosn plans to implement U.S.-style compensation schemes, such as stock options and bonuses based on profitability and performance, for managerial and nonmanagerial employees alike. If implemented, compensation will no longer be based merely on seniority, as it traditionally has been in Japan. And to drive home the point that Nissan could no longer operate as it did in the past, he made English Nissan’s official language.

Not all of Nissan’s critics were convinced that Ghosn’s strategy would work. One skeptic noted that many of the senior managers surrounding Ghosn were the same ones who were in charge of Nissan’s operations while it hemorrhaged red ink during the 1990s. Others believed that any outsider—even a Brazilian from a French company—lacked the understanding of the Japanese business culture and the credibility necessary to motivate domestic managers and workers. Eventually, though, things seemed to be headed back in the right direction. In 2008, for example, Nissan posted record profits. And in 2010 the firm announced a joint venture with Daimler in which Nissan would provide transmissions for some of Daimler’s models and Daimler would provide engines for some of Nissan’s Infiniti automobiles.

Case Questions

P3-1. What benefits will Nissan gain if its procurement of parts is combined with Renault’s parts procurement on a global basis? Are there any costs to this change? What problems does Nissan create if it abandons the keiretsu system for purchasing parts? In what ways might the Internet facilitate this change?
P3-2. Suppose natural attrition fails to allow Nissan to reach its goal of reducing its workforce by 21,000 people. If this occurs, what would you advise Ghosn to do? Should he abandon the planned job cuts? Or should he begin to fire workers and risk violating one of Japan’s strongest cultural norms?

P3-3. Given Japan’s culture, will the introduction of performance-based compensation schemes create any problems for Nissan in Japan? If so, what is the nature of these problems? Do you have any suggestions for overcoming these problems?

P3-4. Prime Minister Obuchi’s comments send a clear signal that Japanese politicians will resist any restructuring of Nissan’s operations that lead to significant losses of domestic jobs. How important is this political threat to Ghosn’s plans? What advice would you give to Ghosn to overcome or address Obuchi’s concerns?

P3-5. As it turned out, Ghosn’s strategies paid off. Nissan has become one of the most dramatic turnaround success stories in years. The firm returned to profitability in 2001 and since that time has been systematically cutting costs, boosting profits, and growing market share. Some observers are now arguing that only a foreigner (a non-Japanese) could have turned Nissan around so quickly. Do you agree?


**Slimline: Marching to a Different Drummer**

Globalization means different things to different people. To the CEO of a multinational enterprise, globalization reflects the changing business world: access to new consumers, opportunities to reduce production costs by siting factories in low-cost areas, and the threat of competition from foreign firms. To workers in developed countries, globalization often implies job insecurity and no raises. To human rights activists, globalization implies exploitation of workers and denial of human rights.

Many multinational enterprises have been confronted with allegations of mistreatment of workers in developing countries. Nike, for example, has been the target of accusations that its subcontractors in China, Indonesia, and other Asian countries abuse their workers. One enterprise that has never been subjected to such criticism is Slimline, Ltd., an apparel manufacturer in Pannala, Sri Lanka. Indeed, Slimline’s way of doing business stands in marked contrast to that of many apparel manufacturers in developed and developing countries alike. The company employs 5,000 workers, who produced $50 million worth of apparel annually. Many of them have undergraduate or graduate degrees. Its payrolls have included a mathematician (a Ph.D. from Yale), a physicist, and an investment banker. Slimline goes out of its way to provide its workers with working conditions that exceed industry standards. Entry-level wages are deliberately set higher than those in the local market.

Like most apparel manufacturers, most of its employees are female sewing machine operators. Even here Slimline defies the sweatshop stereotypes that plague the industry. Its production workers use advanced pneumatic sewing machines instead of the manual models prevalent in most Asian apparel factories. Work stations are ergonomically designed, and the factory is air-conditioned. As a result, Slimline has attracted a premier workforce, and the human resources office maintains a waiting list for prospective employees.

The job is intense and demanding, to be sure. Base pay is $80 to $100 per month (breakfast included). Computers monitor the output of each worker, who must match factory-wide production standards to earn her monthly bonus. But, contrary to industry norms, the standards are ratcheted down for pregnant workers. All employees have access to a new gymnasium, staffed by a full-time trainer and equipped with modern exercise machines.

Why has Slimline adopted this approach? Slimline’s managers have concluded that Sri Lanka can’t compete with Bangladesh or China on the basis of low wages. Instead, they believe that they must focus on producing high-quality goods for their customers, brand-name retailers such as Victoria’s Secret, Express, and Marks and Spencer. But these retailers are vulnerable to antisweatshop campaigns by human rights activists in Europe and North America. Notes one Slimline official:

...in today’s global economy Sri Lankan manufacturers must tie themselves to big Western retailers to survive, and the more they do that the more their factory standards have to meet the workplace norms demanded by Western consumers.69

Slimline was founded in 1993 as a joint venture among Mast Industries, Courtaulds, and MAS Holdings Ltd. Slimline has benefited from the unique knowledge and expertise of the joint venture partners. Mast Industries, a subsidiary of Limited Brands, is a U.S.-based contract manufacturer.
of apparel, with annual sales of $1.5 billion. Among its major customers are The Limited, Intimate Brands, Victoria’s Secret, Marks and Spencer, Liz Claiborne, The Gap, Ralph Lauren, C&A, and Tommy Hilfiger. Mast operates 36 factories in Sri Lanka through joint ventures, employing more than 16,300 people. Courtaulds Textiles PLC was the UK’s largest apparel manufacturer until its purchase by Sara Lee in 2000. (Sara Lee sold its Courtaulds subsidiary in 2006 but retained its stake in Slimline.) The third partner, MAS Holdings Ltd., is a privately owned Sri Lankan company that has rapidly become Sri Lanka’s largest apparel manufacturer and one of the island’s largest employers. MAS is Victoria’s Secret’s largest source of goods, supplying an estimated 30–32 percent of the U.S.-based retailer’s merchandise. MAS later developed the world’s first carbon-neutral textile facility.

The driving force behind Slimline is Dian Gomes. In 1993, Gomes was 36 years old and employed as the finance director of another apparel factory when he was approached by Mahesh Amalean, the chairman of MAS Holdings Ltd., to launch a new business, Slimline. Gomes rose to the challenge, but the goals he set for himself and the venture were neither modest nor easy:

I had a dream, and... I set out to make it a reality at Slimline. To make an ambitious garment project a state-of-the-art plant. A super efficient monolith. My aim was to be number one, and stay number one.70

The first task confronting Gomes and his new management team was to build a state-of-the-art garment factory. Courtaulds sent an experienced team of production managers from its British operations to oversee the construction and start-up of the factory. Gomes added Japanese inventory control and production methods that cut costs and raised productivity and team-building techniques that he learned at executive education programs at Wharton and Harvard. He also incorporated a $4-million computer system into the factory’s operations to monitor quality and production. The system is integrated with the computer systems of its major customers, facilitating distribution and improving service to its customers. It also facilitates communication between the factory, customers, and the marketplace, allowing the factory to quickly shift production to the styles most in demand.

Although its state-of-the-art facilities and technology have played a critical role in Slimline’s success, Gomes and his staff have worked to instill pride in the company. One way Slimline has bolstered its company image and enhanced employee morale is by sponsoring company sports teams. Its teams won the National Women’s Cricket Championship four years in a row, and the company boxing team captured the National Boxing Championship. Slimline also sponsored Ruwini Abeymanne, who placed a respectable 31st among pistol shooters in the 2000 Sydney Olympics and won a bronze medal at the Commonwealth Pistol Championship in 2001. Nor has the company forgotten about the community. Slimline built a new auditorium for the local high school and equipped its computer and science labs. It also provided scholarships allowing local high school graduates to attend the local university.

Although less than two decades old, Slimline has been recognized by numerous groups for its innovative approaches and commitment to its workers and the community. The company has received, for example, the Sri Lankan National Safety Award, the National Productivity Award, the Best Corporate Citizen Award, the Akimoto Award (for incorporating Japanese productivity and quality techniques into its manufacturing processes), Courtaulds’ Risk Management Award (placing first among Courtaulds’ 123 manufacturing facilities), and Mast Industries’ Quality Award. In 2007 it was certified by the Sri Lankan government as a “Garments without Guilt” participant, meaning its human resources practices were in compliance with the standards established by the International Labor Organization. And with such successes has come growth: The company now operates four factories that produce more than 50 million units of women’s sleepwear and intimate apparel.71

Case Questions

P3-6. Slimline is a joint venture among three companies—a local Sri Lankan firm, a British firm, and a U.S. firm. What are the benefits of this joint venture to each of these companies?
P3-7. Why did each choose to participate in the joint venture rather than operate its own wholly owned subsidiary?
P3-8. From the perspective of each of the partners, are there any potential pitfalls to joining this joint venture?

Unilever Matches Strategy and Structure

Unilever is one of the world’s largest packaged consumer goods companies, trailing only Proctor & Gamble. In 2012 the firm has over 170,000 employees and annual revenues of around $60 billion. Among its best-known brand names are Lipton, Dove, Helene Curtis, Vaseline, and Q-tips. As the firm has grown, Unilever occasionally has set up other businesses to support its consumer products operations. For example, the firm once established a chemical unit to process the oils it uses to make margarine. At the time managers believed this route provided them with a predictable and controllable source of materials. Fragrances and food flavorings operations were created for the same reason. In similar fashion Unilever often has grown by acquiring other consumer products businesses, many of which had supporting operations as well.

Several years ago Unilever was structured around five basic business groups: food products, personal-care products, soap/laundry products, cosmetics/perfume/hair products, and specialty chemicals. As the company continued
to expand, however, this arrangement grew increasingly unwieldy. The methods and operations used to package, distribute, and promote the products and brands in the four consumer products groups were all very similar. Managers could be transferred across businesses easily, and knowledge about local market conditions in different countries was freely exchanged.

The specialty chemicals group, however, was an altogether different story. Because it had no consumer products, only indirect linkages existed between its operations and those in the consumer products groups. For example, in some markets the chemical companies made chemicals that were then “sold” to Unilever’s consumer products businesses. These businesses in turn used the chemicals to create their consumer products for resale around the world. In the mid-1990s Unilever’s board of directors grew concerned about the firm’s seeming inability to gain market share from Procter & Gamble. A new CEO was hired to remedy this situation and to improve Unilever’s financial performance.

After studying Unilever’s operations, the new CEO concluded that the firm’s specialty chemical businesses were part of the problem. For one thing, they did not meet the firm’s profitability targets. For another, some of the chemicals they were making could be bought on the open market for the same—and sometimes lower—prices. Finally, the firm had higher administrative costs due to the lack of synergy between its dissimilar units (chemical and consumer products).

As a result of these conclusions, Unilever executives decided to sell the specialty chemical units. The sale would eliminate inefficiencies created by the firm’s structure and generate cash that could be used to reduce debt and to finance new acquisitions in Unilever’s core business areas. The CEO argued that the new international organization design would allow Unilever to focus all its attention on competing with Procter & Gamble and other firms in the consumer products markets. Accordingly, Unilever negotiated the sale of its specialty chemical group to Britain’s Imperial Chemical Industries PLC for approximately $8 billion.

Part of the proceeds from this sale were then used to acquire Ben & Jerry’s Homemade Inc., the quirky ice cream maker, and SlimFast Foods Company, a leading diet products firm. However, managers soon realized that selling the chemicals business and buying new food products businesses were not really addressing Unilever’s other problems, which were its slow decision making and weak control of worldwide marketing strategies. As a result, the company announced another major restructuring of Unilever, reorganizing it into two units rather than four. One unit would be responsible for all food products and the other for all home and personal-care products. Each unit was then assigned its own chief executive responsible for all its global operations.

This new arrangement proved to be reasonably successful, but Unilever executives still felt there was room for improvement. In 2005 the CEO retired and was replaced by Patrick Cescau. Cescau agreed that the firms’ structure was satisfactory but might benefit from some fine tuning. So, he introduced a hybrid design for the home and personal-care products division. Basically, the division operates as a single entity with regard to procurement, operations, and manufacturing. But once products are manufactured, the division has two different units responsible for distribution, marketing, and sales. One handles all home care products and the other concentrates on personal-care products. In 2008, this design was further refined by the creation of regional support centers. Clusters of neighboring countries now function as one entity, leveraging regional scale through shared services for functions such as human resource management, information technology, and finance. Unilever managers now believe they have achieved the right structure and have turned their full attention to competing with their archival, Procter & Gamble.

But, there is an old saying that “what goes around comes around.” In 2010 newly installed CEO Paul Polman (the first outsider to ever run Unilever) once again took Unilever back to the four-divisional model it had discarded ten years before. The newly formed product groups are (1) savory, dressings, and spreads, (2) personal care, (3) ice cream and beverages, and (4) home care and miscellaneous. Polman’s logic was based on literally dozens of acquisitions and divestitures Unilever had made during the first decade of this century. Essentially, the firm had exited the fragrance business altogether and bought numerous new businesses in the ice cream and dressings and spreads market. So, will the new structure stick? Well, if history is any indication it’ll be around for awhile but Unilever will still look different in a few years.

Case Questions

P3-9. Identify the basic organization design issues at Unilever.

P3-10. What seems to account for the frequent changes in organization design at Unilever?

P3-11. Do the frequent changes in organization design at Unilever seem to be, overall, relatively positive or relatively negative?

P3-12. Identify the basic control issues at Unilever from all three levels.

P3-13. How do you think the control function should be organized and managed at Unilever?

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Characterize the nature of marketing management in international business.
2. Discuss the basic kinds of product policies and decisions made in international business.
3. Identify pricing issues and evaluate pricing decisions in international business.
4. Identify promotion issues and evaluate promotion decisions in international business.
5. Discuss the basic kinds of distribution issues and decisions in international business.
CONQUERING WITH STALLS

Unilever is one of the world’s largest consumer-products companies. The firm has over 170,000 employees and raked up sales of around $60 billion in 2012. It markets a range of products including personal care brands such as Axe, Degree, and Dove; hair care products like Alberto VO5 and TRESemme; ice cream and beverages such as Breyer’s, Ben & Jerry’s, and Lipton Tea; Close-up toothpaste, and the list goes on…and on. All told Unilever has more than a hundred recognizable brand names, dozens of market-leading products, and sells its wares in over 180 countries.

The firm is more than 100 years old, tracing its roots back as far as 1885 when two English brothers, William and James Lever, introduced the world’s first packaged and branded laundry soap called Sunlight. In 1930 Lever Brothers, as the firm was named, merged with a Dutch company call Margarine Union and took the new name Unilever. For tax purposes, though, the company maintained separate legal entities, Unilever PLC in London and Unilever N.V. in Rotterdam. For all practical and operational purposes, though, it is a single multinational company.

Over the last several decades Unilever has bought dozens of new businesses (and shed a few as well). Its primary competitors (varying across different product groups) include Procter & Gamble, L’Oréal, Coca-Cola, Colgate-Palmolive, Johnson & Johnson, and Tata Group. In recent years, Unilever has established itself as the clear number-two firm in the $7 trillion consumer-products industry (behind only Procter & Gamble [P&G]) but is also growing at a rapid clip. Indeed, Unilever’s sales are increasing at twice the rate of P&G’s. Interestingly, much of Unilever’s success comes from its ability to penetrate emerging markets. For instance, in 1990 the firm got 20 percent of its revenues from emerging markets but now gets about 55 percent of its revenues from those same markets. This compares with about 40 percent for Nestlé, 38 percent for P&G, and 35 percent for L’Oréal.

Unilever’s success in these markets, in turn, has come from aggressive and close relationships with local merchants and vendors. Take Jakarta, the capital of Indonesia, for example. Most retailers in this bustling city are small mom-and-pop merchants catering to low-income customers by selling products in small stalls in various open-air markets. Unilever packages its products in small containers that can then be sold cheaply. For instance, it offers creams and lotions that can be sold for as little as 35 cents. It then offers merchants a hefty discount if they will display Unilever brands in the front of the stall and move competitors’ products to the back of the store. As customers walk through the markets where these stores thrive, Unilever’s products are often all that they see. Only if a customer asks for a competing product will the merchant direct them toward the back of the dusty, poorly lit stall.

Unilever has taken an equally aggressive approach in Brazil. The firm bought Alberto Culver in 2010 for $3.7 billion and developed plans to market TRESemme shampoo acquired as part of that deal as an alternative to Pantene, P&G’s market-leading shampoo, starting in Brazil. Executives from Unilever got support from Brazil’s 40 biggest retailers, nurtured Brazilian fashion bloggers and opinion leaders, and distributed 10 million free samples. And when TRESemme was actually introduced, it went from literally zero market share to becoming the market leader (surpassing Pantene) in less than one year. Total sales from Brazil for TRESemme top $200 million a year. The firm is now planning to roll out the same sort of campaign in India.

In a sense, what Unilever is doing is taking a two-pronged approach to international marketing. First, it is using its capabilities for innovation and its marketing clout to push major new products into emerging markets. Next, it is using local knowledge gained from decades of operating in those markets to attract local shoppers to its products—Unilever has been selling in Indonesia since 1933, India since 1888, and Brazil since 1920. Unilever has also gone to great efforts to streamline its communication and reporting processes so that decisions can be made faster and products developed and launched more quickly than ever before. For example, 20 years ago decision makers at Unilever used 20,000 different kinds of financial reports. Now, that number has been cut to 90. In 2005 Unilever had 5,000 new product-projects in its pipeline, but knew it would take years to get them to more than just a few markets. Now, however, the firm has a pipeline of only about 600 products but knows it can launch at least 90 percent of those globally within a year of introduction. In short, the firm is focusing on fewer products, but products with great potential, and then rolling them out with the full force of Unilever behind them.1

The success of Unilever underscores the importance and the value of marketing in international business. Identifying the right products, matching those products with the right customers, promoting the products to those customers, and then developing an effective distribution mechanism for getting products to customers can lead to a successful enterprise regardless of where it might be located.

Marketing is “the process of planning and executing the conception, pricing, promotion, and distribution of ideas, goods, and services to create exchanges that satisfy individual and organizational objectives.”  International marketing is the extension of these activities across national boundaries. Firms expanding into new markets in foreign countries must deal
with different political, cultural, and legal systems, as well as unfamiliar economic conditions, advertising media, and distribution channels. An international firm accustomed to promoting its products on television will have to alter its approach when entering a less-developed market in which relatively few people have televisions. Advertising regulations also vary by country. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products. French law, for instance, discourages advertisements that disparage competing products; comparative advertisements must contain at least two significant, objective, and verifiable differences between products.

In addition to dealing with national differences, international marketing managers confront two tasks their domestic counterparts do not face: capturing synergies among various national markets and coordinating marketing activities among those markets. Synergies are important because they provide opportunities for additional revenues and for growth and cross-fertilization. Coordination is important because it can help lower marketing costs and create a unified marketing effort.

**International Marketing Management**

An international firm’s marketing activities often are organized as a separate and self-contained function within the firm. Yet that function both affects and is affected by virtually every other organizational activity, as shown in Figure 16.1. These interrelationships make international marketing management a critical component of international business success. International marketing management encompasses a firm’s efforts to ensure that its international marketing activities mesh with the firm’s corporate strategy, business strategy, and other functional strategies.

**International Marketing and Business Strategies**

A key challenge for a firm’s marketing managers is to adopt an international marketing strategy that supports the firm’s overall business strategy. As we discussed in Chapter 11, business strategy can take one of three forms: differentiation, cost leadership, or focus.

A differentiation strategy requires marketing managers to develop products as well as pricing, promotional, and distribution tactics that differentiate the firm’s products or services from those of its competitors in the eyes of customers. Differentiation can be based on perceived quality, fashion, reliability, or other salient characteristics, as the marketing managers of such products as Rolex watches, BMW automobiles, and Montblanc pens successfully have shown. Assuming the differentiation can be communicated effectively to customers, the firm will be able to charge higher prices for its product or insulate itself from price competition from lesser brands. For example, Rolex, which has successfully implemented a differentiation strategy, does not need to cut the price for its diamond-faced $15,000 watches just because Target advertises Timex quartz watches for $39.95.
Alternatively, a firm may adopt an international business strategy that stresses its overall cost leadership. Cost leadership can be pursued and achieved through systematic reductions in production and manufacturing costs, reductions in sales costs, the acceptance of lower profit margins, the use of less expensive materials and component parts, or other means. Marketing managers for a firm adopting this strategy will concentrate their promotional efforts on advertising the low price of the product and will use channels of distribution that allow the firm to keep the retail price low—for example, by selling through discounters rather than through fashionable boutiques. Old Navy clothing, Kia automobiles, and Bic pens all are marketed using a cost leadership strategy. And Timex’s cost leadership approach has allowed it to thrive in the large market for low-price watches.

A differentiation strategy based on perceived quality or fashion allows companies to charge higher prices for their products. Rolex, for instance, has carefully cultivated an image that allows it to charge prices several times higher than those of most watchmakers. The Swiss-based firm has enjoyed great success in extending its differentiation strategy throughout most Asian markets.
inexpensive line of watches to young, fashion-oriented consumers in Europe, North America, and Asia. “Emerging Opportunities” demonstrates how one Chinese entrepreneur used the Internet as a key ingredient in implementing his focus strategy.

A critical element for a firm’s success is the congruency of its international marketing efforts with its overall business strategy. Timex, Rolex, and SMH—all watchmakers—have chosen different strategies, yet all are successful internationally because they match their international marketing efforts to their business strategies. Timex’s cost leadership strategy implies that the firm must seek out low-cost suppliers globally and sell its watches in discount stores such as Walmart and Target, rather than in fashionable department stores such as Saks Fifth Avenue and Harrod’s. Rolex’s differentiation strategy, based on the firm’s carefully nurtured worldwide image, might collapse if Rolex distributed its watches through armies of street vendors stationed in front of subway stations throughout the world, rather than through a handful of chic and expensive horologists located on the most fashionable avenues of the world’s most glamorous cities. Similarly, SMH does not advertise Swatch watches to the upper-class, middle-aged audiences of Town and Country and Architectural Digest or to the predominantly male readership of Field and Stream and Popular Electronics. It does advertise its wares in the U.S., Chinese, and French editions of Elle, which are read by demographically similar young, trendy female consumers—the target of its focus strategy.

Having adopted an overall international business strategy, a firm must assess where it wants to do business. Decisions about whether to enter a particular foreign market are derived from and must be consistent with the firm’s overall business strategy. For example, the steady economic growth of such low-to-middle-income countries as Costa Rica, Namibia, Poland, and Turkey offers exciting new business opportunities for Timex but less so for Rolex. But in relatively newer affluent markets such as Dubai and Beijing Rolex has enjoyed considerable success.

Because of budget and resource limitations, international firms must carefully assess countries and rank them according to their potential for the firms’ products. Influencing this ranking may be factors such as culture, levels of competition, channels of distribution, and availability of infrastructure. Depending on the nature of the product and other circumstances, a firm may choose to enter simultaneously all markets that meet certain acceptability criteria. For example, consumer goods marketers such as Nike and Coca-Cola often introduce new products broadly throughout North America or Europe to maximize the impact of their mass media advertising campaigns. Alternatively, a firm may choose to enter markets one by one, in an order based on their potential to the firm. Caterpillar, for example, uses this approach because its marketing strategy is based on the painstaking development of strong local dealerships, not glitzy TV campaigns highlighting the endorsements of the latest music and sports stars.

The Marketing Mix

After an international firm has decided to enter a particular foreign market, further marketing decisions must be made. In particular, international marketing managers must address four issues:

1. How to develop the firm’s product(s)
2. How to price those products
3. How to sell those products
4. How to distribute those products to the firm’s customers.

These elements are collectively known as the marketing mix and colloquially referred to as the four Ps of marketing: product, pricing, promotion, and place (or distribution). The role of the four Ps in international marketing is illustrated in Figure 16.2.

International marketing-mix issues and decisions parallel those of domestic marketing in many ways, although they are more complex. The array of variables international marketing managers must consider is far broader, and the interrelationships among those variables far more intricate, than is the case for domestic marketing managers. Before we discuss these complexities, however, we need to focus on another important issue in international marketing—the extent to which an international firm should standardize its marketing mix in all the countries it enters.
EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES

PRETTY GARLIC

When Yafod International was founded it sold a single product: garlic. John Huang, at the time the managing director of the small exporting company based in China’s Shandong province, faced an interesting challenge: how to convince the world’s food-processing companies and vegetable wholesalers to order his garlic, despite his lack of a marketing budget.

Huang’s solution was to use the Internet to build worldwide recognition of his company and its simple product line. He developed a clever brand name—Pretty Garlic—and designed an attractive website—www.prettygarlic.com—that provides much of the information a prospective buyer of garlic needs—varieties, prices, ordering information, payment terms, shipping arrangements, and packaging details. The website also provides information of use to garlic retailers, such as the plant’s health benefits. It is probably the first site on the Internet that features color photos showcasing the different sizes and types of Chinese garlic. Although most Web surfers have no need to see a photo of a 5.5-centimeter pure-white Jinxiang garlic bulb, buyers for the world’s food processors and grocery chains do. More than half of Huang’s orders are generated by the Internet, and the company now ships more than 15,000 tons of garlic a year.

Needless to say, the Internet provided a perfect means for Huang to reach his small-but-focused target market. Boosted by its imaginative Internet-driven marketing strategy, Yafod has broadened its product line to include other fruits, vegetables, beans, and spices. It now has offices in Canada, Colombia, Iran, India, Poland, and the United Kingdom. Although not as big or as well-known as Amazon or eBay, Pretty Garlic’s success similarly demonstrates the power of the Internet to reach customers worldwide. In reflecting on his company’s growth, Huang notes the “Internet has played a major role in our development. We continuously develop our online e-business platform and promote our products on leading search engines... Daily we receive new inquiries from various countries in the world.” Creative use of the Internet, coupled with a commitment to quality and customer service, are the foundations of the young company’s achievements. Indeed, Fortune magazine recently described Pretty Garlic as the “industry’s equivalent of Nike or Coca-Cola.”


Standardization versus Customization

A firm’s marketers usually choose from three basic approaches in deciding whether to standardize or customize their firm’s marketing mix:

1. Should the firm adopt an ethnocentric approach, that is, simply market its goods internationally the same way it does domestically?
2. Should it adopt a polycentric approach, that is, customize the marketing mix to meet the specific needs of each foreign market it serves?
3. Should it adopt a geocentric approach, that is, analyze the needs of customers worldwide and then adopt a standardized marketing mix for all the markets it serves?

The ethnocentric approach is relatively easy to adopt. The firm simply markets its goods in international markets using the same marketing mix it uses domestically, thereby avoiding the expense of developing new marketing techniques to serve foreign customers.
When some firms first internationalize, they adopt this approach, believing that a marketing mix that worked at home should be as successful abroad. For example, when Lands’ End targeted the German mail-order market—which on a per capita basis is the largest in the world—it deliberately replicated its U.S. marketing strategy. Stressing its “down home” roots, the company trumpets to its U.S. consumers its location next to a rural Wisconsin cornfield, the friendliness of its operators and production staff, and its generous return policy—consumers can return all Lands’ End products, even if they are used or worn out, with no questions asked. When it entered the German market, Lands’ End established its local headquarters in an old schoolhouse in the tiny, picturesque village of Mettlach on the Saar River. The company spent months training its telephone operators to ensure they would meet its standards for friendly, helpful service. It also transplanted its “no questions asked” return service, much to the consternation of its German competitors, whose policy was to accept returns only if the goods were flawed or inaccurately described in their catalogs and then only if the goods were unused and in good condition.8 The ethnocentric approach may not be desirable, however, if the firm loses sales because it fails to take into account the idiosyncratic needs of its foreign customers. Should this be the case, successful firms will modify their marketing mixes to meet local conditions and needs after the firms learn more about the local market.

The polycentric approach is far more costly because international marketers attempt to customize the firm’s marketing mix in each market the firm enters to meet the idiosyncratic needs of customers in that market. Customization may increase the firm’s revenues if its marketers are successful in this task. Firms that adopt this approach believe customers will be more willing to buy and more willing to pay a higher price for a product that exactly meets their needs than a product that does not. Often international firms that view themselves as multidomestic adopt this approach.

The geocentric approach calls for standardization of the marketing mix, allowing the firm to provide essentially the same product or service in different markets and to use essentially the same marketing approach to sell that product or service globally. Coca-Cola was one of the first international businesses to adopt this approach. It sells its popular soft drink worldwide and uses essentially the same packaging, product, and advertising themes everywhere. Indeed, the contoured shape of a Coca-Cola bottle is one of the world’s most widely recognized images.

Note that both the ethnocentric and the geocentric approaches argue for standardization of the marketing mix. As we saw in Chapter 11, a firm using the ethnocentric approach standardizes on the basis of what the firm does in its home country. A firm using the geocentric approach starts with no such home country bias. Instead, the geocentric approach considers the needs of all the firm’s customers around the world and then standardizes on that basis.

Standardization became a popular buzzword during the 1980s, as proponents such as Kenichi Ohmae (then managing director of McKinsey & Company’s Tokyo office) argued that customers in the rich countries of North America, Europe, and Asia were becoming increasingly alike, with similar incomes, educational achievements, lifestyles, and aspirations, so that expensive customization of the marketing mix by country was less necessary.9 Similarly, Harvard Business School marketing guru Theodore Levitt suggested that standardization of a firm’s products and other elements of its marketing mix creates huge economies of scale in production, distribution, and promotion. By transforming these cost savings into reduced prices worldwide, Levitt argues, a firm that adopts standardization can outperform its international competitors.10

The trade-offs between standardization and customization are clear. Standardization allows a firm to achieve manufacturing, distribution, and promotional efficiencies and to maintain simpler and more streamlined operations.11 However, the firm may suffer lost sales if its products fail to meet the unique needs of customers in a given market. Customization allows a firm to tailor its products to meet the needs of customers in each market, although the firm may sacrifice cost efficiencies by so doing. In essence, standardization focuses on the cost side of the profit equation; by driving down costs, the firm’s profits are enhanced. Customization focuses on the revenue side of the profit equation; by attending to the unique customer needs in each market, the firm is able to charge higher prices and sell more goods in each market. In practice, most firms avoid the extremes of either approach.12 Many successful firms have adopted a strategy of “think
globally, act locally” to gain the economies of scale of a global marketing mix while retaining the ability to meet the needs of customers in different national markets. Even Coca-Cola, a pioneer in the use of global marketing, has begun to encourage more localized thinking within its global marketing framework. For instance, it allows its South African distributor to package Coca-Cola in three different size cans and also markets a sweeter-tasting cola in that country called Iron Brew.

The home appliance market provides a useful example of this strategy. U.S. kitchens tend to be large and spacious, and consumers prefer large stoves, refrigerators, and dishwashers. The smaller kitchens of Europe and Japan dictate the use of much smaller appliances. Further, within Europe there are marked differences in power supply characteristics and in consumer preferences for various design features and alternatives. Thus, appliance manufacturers must develop specific and unique product lines for each country in which the firms do business. Whirlpool has tried to reduce some of the costs of customization by designing its products to meet the needs of market niches that cross national boundaries. For example, Whirlpool designers have developed a World Washer, a small, stripped-down automatic washing machine targeted to meet the needs of the emerging middle classes in such countries as Brazil, Mexico, and India. Whirlpool, however, stands ready to customize even the World Washer when needed. It modified the agitators of World Washers sold in India to ensure the machines would not shred or tangle the delicate saris traditionally worn by Indian women.13

The degree of standardization or customization a firm adopts depends on many factors, including product type, the cultural differences between the home country and the host countries, and the host countries’ legal systems. The firm may adopt one approach for one element of the marketing mix and another for a second element. Often firms standardize product designs to capture manufacturing economies of scale but customize advertisements and the channels of distribution to meet specific local market needs. The degree of standardization also may be influenced by the firm’s perception of the global marketplace, which is similar to the conundrum “Is the glass half full or half empty?” A firm tilting toward standardization assumes consumers around the world are basically similar but then adjusts for differences among them. A firm tilting toward customization assumes consumers are different but then adjusts for similarities among them.

An international firm also must consider its own organizational structure. Standardization implies that power and control should be centralized, often at the firm’s headquarters, whereas customization suggests that headquarters must delegate considerable decision-making power to local managers. Thus, a strongly centralized firm (see Chapter 14) can more easily standardize its international marketing mix than can a decentralized firm. Often international firms address these organizational issues by adopting a two-step process:

1. The decision to standardize some elements of the marketing mix, such as product design, brand name, packaging, and product positioning, is made centrally.
2. Then local managers are called on to critique the global marketing program and to develop plans to implement customized elements of the marketing mix, such as promotion and distribution.14

Table 16.1 summarizes some factors that may lead a firm to adopt standardization or customization for all or part of its international marketing efforts.

---

In Practice

- Managers need to understand the importance of integrating international marketing with their business strategies.
- Managers must also be sure to have a clear understanding of the pros and cons of standardization versus customization in their marketing plans.

For further consideration: Which do you think is most challenging—the ethnocentric, the polycentric, or the geocentric approach to international marketing?
Product Policy

The first P of the international marketing mix is the product itself. Here, product comprises both the set of tangible factors that the consumer can see or touch (the physical product and its packaging) and numerous intangible factors such as image, installation, warranties, and credit terms. Critical to a firm’s ability to compete internationally is its success in developing products with tangible and intangible features that meet the wants and needs of customers in diverse national markets. For instance, Toyota’s success in selling its automobiles in Europe, Asia, and the Americas reflects its product-related achievements in designing and producing mechanically reliable vehicles, offering competitive warranties, building a solid brand name for its products, providing spare parts and repair manuals, and furnishing financing to its dealers and retail customers.

Many firms use a combination of product standardization and customization. Automakers, for example, can use the same basic seat designs, control buttons, and brake systems in many different parts of the world. But they also have to adapt to right-hand versus left-hand driving conditions and metric versus non-metric distance, speed, and fuel indicators.
Standardized Products or Customized Products?

A vital product policy decision facing international marketers is the extent to which their firms’ products should be standardized across markets or customized within individual markets. For example, Toyota, like many international firms, has adopted a blend of customization and standardization. It has standardized its corporate commitment to building high-quality, mechanically reliable automobiles and to maintaining the prestige of the Toyota brand name. Yet it customizes its products and product mix to meet the needs of local markets. It sells right-hand-drive motor vehicles in Japan, Australia, South Africa, and the United Kingdom and left-hand-drive vehicles in the Americas and continental Europe. It also adjusts its warranties from country to country based on the warranties offered by its competitors. The name under which a business sells a product also may vary by country. Frito-Lay, for example, sells potato chips under the name Lay’s in the United States, Walkers in the United Kingdom, Sabritas in Mexico, and Smith’s in Australia.

Sometimes firms learn they have customized their products not by design but by accident. For example, a few years ago managers at Unilever realized that for no apparent reason the firm was using 85 different recipes for its chicken soups and 15 different cone shapes for its Cornetto ice creams in Europe. Once this problem was identified, Unilever quickly standardized its ice cream cone design and slashed the number of chicken soup flavors it offered European customers, thereby reducing its production and inventory costs and simplifying its distribution requirements.16

The extent to which products should be customized to meet local needs varies according to several factors. One is the nature of the product’s target customers—are they industrial users or are they individual consumers? Although some industrial products are customized and some consumer products are standardized, generally speaking, industrial products are more likely to be standardized than consumer products. For example, Caterpillar’s bulldozers and front-end loaders are sold throughout the world with only minor modifications to meet local operating and regulatory requirements. Products sold as commodities also are typically standardized across different markets; examples include agricultural products, petroleum, digital memory chips, and chemicals. A general rule of thumb is that the closer to the body a product is consumed, the more likely it will need to be customized. For example, to boost its sales in Japan, Eddie Bauer altered the styles of clothing it sells there, adding to its store shelves stretchy shirts and straight-legged pants that the Japanese prefer.17 The Big Boy burger chain added pork omelets and fried rice to its menus in Thailand to attract local consumers.18

Legal Forces

The laws and regulations of host countries also may affect the product policies adopted by international firms. Some countries, for instance, have imposed detailed labeling requirements and health standards on consumer products that firms, both foreign and domestic, must follow strictly. International firms must adjust the packaging and even the products themselves to meet these consumer protection regulations. For example, Grupo Modelo SA, the brewer of Corona beer, had to reduce the nitrosamine levels of the beer it sells in Germany, Austria, and Switzerland to meet those countries’ health standards.19 Countries also may regulate the design of consumer products to simplify purchase and replacement decisions. Saudi Arabia, for instance, requires electrical connecting cords on consumer appliances to be 2 meters long. GE suffered the embarrassment (and a loss of profits) of having its goods turned back at a Saudi port when an inspector determined GE’s connecting cords were only 2 yards long.20 Widely varying technical standards adopted by countries for such products as electrical appliances and broadcasting and telecommunications equipment also force firms to customize their products. For example, the electrical plugs of home appliances sold in Europe must be modified on a country-by-country basis to fit the array of electrical outlets found there.

Cultural Influences

International firms often must adapt their products to meet the cultural needs of local markets. One typical adaptation is to change the labeling on the product’s package into the primary language of the host country. However, in some cases a foreign language may be used to connote quality or fashion. For instance, after the fall of communism, P&G added
German words to the labels of detergents sold in the Czech Republic. Market researchers had determined that products in packages labeled in English or German were viewed by Czechs as being of higher quality than products labeled in Czech.\textsuperscript{21} Often the ingredients of food products are modified to better please local palates. Gerber, for example, customizes its baby food to meet the requirements of the local culture. The company found that Polish mothers refused to purchase its mashed bananas for their infants because the fruit was viewed as an expensive luxury. Instead, Polish mothers favor such Gerber flavors as Vegetable and Rabbit Meat to help nurture their infants; Japanese mothers choose Gerber’s Freeze Dried Sardines and Rice for their children.\textsuperscript{22} Pepsi’s Frito-Lay division also has modified its snack foods to better meet the needs of foreign consumers, offering, for example, paprika-flavored chips to Poles and Hungarians and shrimp-flavored chips to Koreans.\textsuperscript{23} Its food scientists also are busily working on a squid-peanut snack food Frito-Lay believes will be successful among Southeast Asians. Presumably for cultural reasons, neither Gerber nor Frito-Lay has yet made plans to market these items in North America.

Culture may affect product policy in other ways. For example, foreign automobile makers have learned that Japanese consumers are extremely quality conscious. For many Japanese consumers an automobile is more a status symbol than a mode of transportation—the average car in Japan is driven only 5,000 miles per year, about one-third the U.S. average. Thus, the way the car looks is often more important than the way it drives. A Japanese customer may reject a car if the paint underneath the hood is uneven or the gas tank cover fits loosely.\textsuperscript{24} Many German consumers are environmentally conscious. As a result, firms often must redesign products they sell in Germany to allow for easier disposal and recycling.

In a similar vein, firms may also find it necessary to adjust or modify their packaging in different countries. For instance, when German grocery retailer Metro entered the market in Southeast Asia it initially used the same methods for packaging fresh fruits and vegetables as it used elsewhere—corrugated containers of shrink-wrapped food. But consumers in Vietnam insisted on ripping such packages open, wanting to ensure there were no rotten items on the bottom. They also indicated a strong need to touch, feel, and smell their food. So Metro altered its methods and simply stacked its fruits and vegetables just as they are in street market stalls.\textsuperscript{25}

At other times culture may force changes in a foreign product. For example, although U.S. films are popular in Asia, HBO often has to edit its movies before they can be broadcast in Asia’s culturally conservative countries. HBO could not show \textit{Schindler’s List} or \textit{Amistad} in Malaysia because both films contained brief nudity, and their director, Steven Spielberg, refuses to allow others to cut scenes from his movies. Similarly, musicians embarking on international tours may have to adjust to local sensibilities. Artists Gwen Stefani, Adam Lambert, and Beyoncé Knowles all changed their costuming and other artistic elements of their shows when performing in Malaysia.\textsuperscript{26}

Both Nike and Adidas have been experimenting with ways to make their normal “Americanized” products blend more readily into foreign cultures. For example, each has been launching new products in China with standard designs embellished with local cultural touches. Adidas has introduced a line of sportswear that follows normal western design (polo-type shirts, for instance) decorated with ancient Chinese swirling “lucky cloud” patterns. Nike, meanwhile, has been marketing its products using various Chinese slogans and traditional sayings.\textsuperscript{27}

\textbf{Economic Factors}

A country’s level of economic development may affect the desired attributes of a product. Consumers in richer countries often favor products loaded with extra performance features; more price-sensitive consumers in poorer countries typically opt for stripped-down versions of the same products. Sometimes a firm may have to adjust package size or design to meet local conditions. For example, firms selling toothpaste or shampoo in poorer countries often package their goods in single-use sizes to make the products more affordable to local citizens. The quality of a country’s infrastructure also may affect the customization decision; thus, manufacturers may reinforce the suspension systems of motor vehicles sold in countries where road maintenance is poor. The availability and cost of repair services also can affect product design. Automobiles sold in poorer countries often use simpler technology, which allows more repairs to be done by backyard mechanics.
**Brand Names**

One element international firms often like to standardize is the brand name of a product. A firm that does this can reduce its packaging, design, and advertising production costs. It also can capture spillovers of its advertising messages from one market to the next. For example, Avon’s entry into the China market was made easier by the fact that millions of consumers had seen its products advertised on Hong Kong television. Mars, Inc., sought to capture the benefits of standardization by dropping its successful local brand names for the Marathon bar in the British market and the Raider chocolate biscuit on the European continent in favor of the more universally known Snickers and Twix brands. However, sometimes legal or cultural factors force a firm to alter the brand names under which it sells its products. For example, Grupo Modelo SA markets Corona beer in Spain as Coronita because a Spanish vineyard owns the Corona brand name. Coca-Cola calls its low-calorie soft drink Diet Coke in weight-conscious North America but Coca-Cola Light in other markets.

Marvel Comics has recently undertaken an interesting approach to customizing a brand name to local markets. Its popular character Spider-Man was already well-known in India, and Spider-Man comics had reasonable sales levels. But Marvel decided to introduce a new version of Spider-Man in that country. The “new” Spider-Man’s alter ego is Pavitr Prabhakar (not Peter Parker), he got his powers from a yogi (instead of a radioactive spider), and he wears a loincloth into battle (instead of the famous spider suit). As a result, sales of Spider-Man comics and Spider-Man licensed merchandise in India have skyrocketed. Certain characters from Disney, Sesame Street, and the Powerpuff Girls have also been modified to better fit the Indian market.

**In Practice**

- International managers must be cognizant of the legal, cultural, and economic factors in different countries that may influence marketing in those countries.
- The power and significance of brand names in different countries is an important consideration in international marketing.

*For further consideration:* Can you identify examples of non-U.S. movies or products that have been modified for marketing in the United States?

**Pricing Issues and Decisions**

The second P of the international marketing mix is pricing. Developing effective pricing policies is a critical determinant of any firm’s success. Pricing policies directly affect the size of the revenues earned by a firm. The policies also serve as an important strategic weapon by allowing the firm to shape the competitive environment in which it does business. For example, Toys ‘R’ Us has achieved success in Germany, Japan, the United States, and other countries by selling low-priced toys in low-cost warehouse-like settings. Its low prices have placed enormous pressure on its competitors to slash their costs, alter their distribution systems, and shrink their profit margins. The firm’s aggressive pricing strategy has effectively forced its competitors to fight the battle for Asian, European, and North American consumers on terms dictated by Toys ‘R’ Us. Walmart is doing much the same in foreign markets where it competes.

Both domestic and international firms must strive to develop pricing strategies that will produce profitable operations, but the task facing an international firm is more complex than that facing a purely domestic firm. To begin with, a firm’s costs of doing business vary widely by country. Differences in transportation charges and tariffs cause the landed price of goods to vary by country. Differences in distribution practices also affect the final price the end customer pays. For example, intense competition among distributors in the United States minimizes the margin between retail prices and manufacturers’ prices. In contrast, Japan’s inefficient multilayered distribution system, which relies on a chain of distributors to get goods into the hands of consumers, often inflates the prices Japanese consumers pay for goods.
Exchange rate fluctuations also can create pricing problems. If an exporter’s home currency rises in value, the exporter must choose between maintaining its prices in the home currency (which makes its goods more expensive in the importing country) and maintaining its prices in the host currency (which cuts its profit margins by lowering the amount of home country currency it receives for each unit sold).

International firms must consider these factors in developing their pricing policies for each national market the firms serve. They must decide whether they want to apply consistent prices across all those markets or customize prices to meet the needs of each. In reaching this decision, the firms must remember that competition, culture, distribution channels, income levels, legal requirements, and exchange rate stability may vary widely by country.

**Pricing Policies**

International firms generally adopt one of three pricing policies:33

1. **Standard price policy**
2. **Two-tiered pricing**
3. **Market pricing**

An international firm following a geocentric approach to international marketing will adopt a **standard price policy**, whereby the firm charges the same price for its products and services regardless of where they are sold or the nationality of the customer. Firms selling goods that are easily tradable and transportable often adopt this pricing approach out of necessity. For example, if a firm manufacturing DRAM memory chips charged different customers vastly different prices, some of its favored customers might begin to resell the chips to less-favored customers—an easy task, given the small size and high value of the chips. Similarly, firms that sell commodity goods in competitive markets often use this pricing policy. Producers of crude oil, such as Aramco, Kuwait Oil, and Pemex, sell their products to any and all customers at prices determined by supply and demand in the world crude oil market. Other commodities produced and traded worldwide, such as coal and agricultural goods, also are sold at competitive prices with suitable adjustments for quality differentials and transportation costs and little regard to the purchaser’s nationality.

An international firm that follows an ethnocentric marketing approach will use a **two-tiered pricing policy**, whereby the firm sets one price for all its domestic sales and a second price for all its international sales. A firm that adopts a two-tiered pricing policy commonly allocates to domestic sales all accounting charges associated with research and development, administrative overhead, capital depreciation, and so on. The firm then can establish a uniform foreign sales price without having to worry about covering these costs. Indeed, the only costs that need to be covered by the foreign sales price are the marginal costs associated with foreign sales, such as the product’s unit manufacturing costs, shipping costs, tariffs, and foreign distribution costs.

Two-tiered pricing often is used by domestic firms just beginning to internationalize. In the short run charging foreign customers a price that covers only marginal costs may be an appropriate approach for such firms. Although Apple is already a multinational firm, of course, the firm is trying to boost its market presence in India through bargain pricing for local customers who pay with an Indian credit card.34 However, the strong ethnocentric bias of two-tiered pricing suggests it is not a suitable long-run pricing strategy. A firm that views foreign customers as marginal—rather than integral—to its business is unlikely to develop the international skills, expertise, and outlook necessary to compete successfully in the international marketplace.

Firms that adopt a two-tiered pricing policy also are vulnerable to charges of dumping. Recall from Chapter 9 that dumping is the selling of a firm’s products in a foreign market for a price lower than that charged in the firm’s domestic market—an outcome that easily can result from a two-tiered pricing system. Most major trading countries have issued regulations intended to protect domestic firms from dumping by foreign competitors. For example, Toyota and Mazda were charged with dumping minivans in the U.S. market. Although the Japanese automakers were not penalized in this case, both subsequently raised their minivan prices to avoid future dumping complaints.
Market Pricing

An international firm that follows a polycentric approach to international marketing will use a market pricing policy. Market pricing is the most complex of the three pricing policies and the one most commonly adopted. A firm using market pricing customizes its prices on a market-by-market basis to maximize its profits in each market.

As you may remember from your microeconomics class, the profit-maximizing output (the quantity the firm must produce to maximize its profit) occurs at the intersection of the firm’s marginal revenue curve and its marginal cost curve. The profit-maximizing price is found by reading across from the point on the firm’s demand curve where the profit-maximizing output occurs. In Figure 16.3(a) the intersection of the marginal revenue curve (\( MR \)) and the marginal cost curve (\( MC \)) occurs at \( Q \), which is the profit-maximizing output. If you read straight up from \( Q \) until you reach the demand curve (\( D \)), then move left to the \( y \)-axis, you find the profit-maximizing price, \( P \), the maximum price at which quantity \( Q \) of the good can be sold. With market pricing the firm calculates and charges the profit-maximizing price in each market it serves. Figure 16.3(b) shows two markets in which a firm has identical demand and marginal revenue curves but faces different marginal cost curves. The firm faces higher marginal costs in country 1 (\( MC_1 \)) than in country 2 (\( MC_2 \)). Accordingly, its profit-maximizing price in country 1 (\( P_1 \)) is higher than that in country 2 (\( P_2 \)).

Two conditions must be met if a firm is to successfully practice market pricing:

1. The firm must face different demand or cost conditions in the countries in which it sells its products. This condition usually is met because taxes, tariffs, standards of living, levels of competition, infrastructure costs and availability, and numerous other factors vary by country.
2. The firm must be able to prevent arbitrage, a concept discussed in Chapter 8. The firm’s market pricing policy will unravel if customers are able to buy the firm’s products in a low-price country and resell them profitably in a high-price country. Because of tariffs, transportation costs, and other transaction costs, arbitrage is usually not a problem if country-to-country price variations are small. If prices vary widely by country, however, arbitrage can upset the firm’s market pricing strategy.

Assuming these conditions are met, the advantages of this polycentric approach are obvious. The firm can set higher prices where markets will tolerate them and lower prices where necessary to remain competitive. It also can directly allocate relevant local costs against local sales within each foreign market, thereby allowing corporate strategists and planners to better allocate the firm’s resources across markets. Such flexibility comes with a cost, however. To capture the benefits of market pricing, local managers must closely monitor sales and competitive conditions within their markets so that appropriate and timely adjustments can be made. Also, corporate headquarters must be willing to delegate authority to local managers to allow them to adjust prices within their markets.

**FIGURE 16.3**
Determining the Profit-Maximizing Price

- **a.** Finding the profit-maximizing price
- **b.** Finding the profit-maximizing price for two markets
A market pricing policy, however, can expose a firm to complaints about dumping (as discussed previously) as well as to three other risks: (1) damage to its brand name, (2) development of a gray market for its products, and (3) consumer resentment against discriminatory prices.

The firm needs to ensure that the prices it charges in one market do not damage the brand image it has carefully nurtured in other markets. For example, suppose Kirin encouraged its North American and European brand managers to market Chivas Regal as a premium scotch whiskey sold at a premium price but allowed its Japanese brand managers to sell Chivas Regal as a nonprestigious brand sold at rock-bottom prices. Because of its marketing approach in Japan, Kirin would risk deterioration of Chivas Regal’s premium brand image in North America and Europe. Thus any international firm that sells brand name products and adopts market pricing should review the prices charged by local managers to ensure that the integrity of its brand names and its market images is maintained across all of its markets.

A firm that follows a market pricing policy also risks the development of gray markets for its products as a result of arbitrage. A **gray market** is a market that results when products are imported into a country legally but outside the normal channels of distribution authorized by the manufacturer. (This phenomenon also is known as **parallel importing**.) A gray market may develop when the price in one market is sufficiently lower than the price the firm charges in another market that entrepreneurs can buy the good in the lower-price market and resell it profitably in the higher-price market. Thus, the firm that has large price differences among markets is vulnerable to having these differentials undercut by gray markets. Gray markets frequently arise when firms fail to adjust local prices after major fluctuations in exchange rates. Coca-Cola, for example, faced such a problem in the mid-1990s after the yen strengthened relative to the U.S. dollar. Japanese discounters were able to purchase and import Coke made in the United States for 27 percent less than the price of Coke made in Japan, thereby disrupting the firm’s pricing strategy in both countries.35 Merck had a similar problem when the British pound rose relative to other European Union (EU) currencies. The company was forced to cut the prices in the United Kingdom of many of its drugs, such as the AIDS drug Crixivan, because of parallel importing from other EU countries.36

Products commonly influenced by gray markets include big-ticket items such as automobiles, cameras, computers, ski equipment, and watches. Gray markets also are more prevalent in free-market economies, where fewer government regulations make it easier for gray markets to emerge. One estimate suggests gray-market sales in the United States approach $130 billion each year.37 Many multinational corporations (MNCs) have attempted to eliminate or control gray markets through legal action, but few have had much success.

Gray-market sales undermine a firm’s market pricing policy and often lower the firm’s profits. Gray-market sales also cause friction between the firm and its distributors, who lose sales but often are stuck with the costs of either providing customer support and honoring product guarantees on gray-market goods or explaining to unhappy customers why they will not do so. For example, Charles of the Ritz reports that more than 10,000 retailers sell its Opium perfume, although the firm has authorized only 1,300 to do so. The prices its authorized dealers charge are continually being undercut by the prices offered by gray-market sellers, thereby making it difficult for the authorized dealers to adhere to the firm’s suggested pricing schedule. Charles of the Ritz has sought to smooth over the resulting friction by helping its authorized dealers compete with the gray marketers through additional advertising allowances and special price reductions. This practice, however, harms the firm’s profit margins.

A third danger lies in consumer resentment. Consumers in the high-priced country may feel they are being gouged by such pricing policies. Estée Lauder, for example, charges $40 for Clinique facial soap in Tokyo; the same soap sells for only $10 in the United States. J. Crew charges Japanese customers $130 for wool sweaters that sell for $48 in the United States. Japanese newspapers and television stations have highlighted this issue, claiming that foreign companies take advantage of Japanese consumers. Although spokespersons from various companies have argued that the price differences are the result of the high cost of doing business in Japan, the ill will engendered by the controversy has not helped the companies’ sales.38
Promotion Issues and Decisions

Promotion, the third P of the international marketing mix, encompasses all efforts by an international firm to enhance the desirability of its products among potential buyers. Although many promotional activities are specifically targeted at buyers, successful firms recognize they also must communicate with their distributors and the general public to ensure favorable sentiment toward the firms themselves and their products. Because promotion relies on communication with audiences in the host country, it is the most culture bound of the four Ps. Thus, a firm must take special care to ensure that the message host-country audiences receive is in fact the message the firm intended to send. International marketing managers must therefore effectively blend and use the four elements of the promotion mix—advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations—to motivate potential customers to buy their firms’ products.

Advertising

For most international firms, especially those selling consumer products and services, advertising is the most important element in the promotion mix. As a firm develops its advertising strategy, it must consider three factors:

1. The message it wants to convey
2. The media available for conveying the message
3. The extent to which the firm wants to globalize its advertising effort

At the same time the firm must take into account relevant cultural, linguistic, and legal constraints found in various national markets.

MESSAGE The message of an advertisement is the facts or impressions the advertiser wants to convey to potential customers. An automaker may want to convey a message of value (low price), reliability (quality), or style (image and prestige). The choice of message is an important reflection of the way the firm sees its products and services and the way it wants them to be seen by customers. Coca-Cola, for example, believes its products help consumers enjoy life, and its advertising messages consistently stress this theme worldwide. Products that are used for different purposes in different areas will need to be marketed differently. For instance, in the United States motorcycles are seen primarily as recreational products, but in many other countries they are seen mainly as a means of transportation. Thus, Honda and Kawasaki’s ads in the United States stress the fun and excitement of riding. In poorer countries they stress the reliability and functionalism of motorcycles as a mode of inexpensive transportation.

A product’s country of origin often serves as an important part of the advertising message. Among fashion-conscious teenagers and young adults in Europe and Japan, U.S. goods often are viewed as being trendy. Thus, Harley-Davidson, Apple products, Gibson guitars, Stetson hats, and the National Basketball Association, among others, highlight the U.S. origins of their products. The engineering of German products is often perceived to be of very high quality, so international marketers emphasize the German origins of such products as BMW and Mercedes-Benz automobiles.
VENTURING ABROAD

PUTTING THE GREEK INTO YOGURT

Hamdi Ulukaya was born and raised in Turkey. He helped work in the family dairy, and loved eating the thick, tangy yogurt that his mother prepared from an old family recipe. As he traveled through Europe as a young man, he found similar kinds of yogurt all along the way and became a real aficionado. He later learned that European yogurt has generally always been made using the so-called Greek process that removes the whey from the final product (water left after the milk has been cultured) resulting in a thick, creamy yogurt.

Ulukaya moved to the United States in 1994 to study English. Although he loved his new country, he detested the yogurt varieties produced in the United States, which he found lacked the tanginess and creaminess of the yogurt he grew up with. Meanwhile, Ulukaya started a small business producing feta cheese for restaurants, built it into a successful operation, and accumulated some savings.

One day in 2004 Ulukaya read an article about an old yogurt plant that Kraft Foods was closing. The next day he drove to upstate New York, inspected the plant, and then quickly, with the help of a loan from the U.S. Small Business Association, bought the old plant for a song. But then he needed some equipment. He found a used machine called a separator in Wisconsin and bought it for $50,000. He also wanted to create some unique packaging. U.S. suppliers wanted $250,000 just to create a mold for the new yogurt container, but Ulukaya found a company in Colombia that would do the job for half that amount.

Finally, after a couple of years of trying and testing recipes and getting his business plan finalized, Ulukaya launched his new yogurt in 2007. He named it Chobani—Turkish for shepherd. And to say it has been successful would be an understatement. For example, the business plan called for eventually selling 20,000 cases of Chobani a week. By mid-2009, they found they could add a zero to that—200,000 cases a week were going out the door. And now Ulukaya is a billionaire. Chobani is made and sold in Europe and Australia, but, not surprisingly, Dannon and Yoplait have aggressively introduced their own versions of Greek yogurt. But for the time being, at least, Chobani still hasn’t found its ceiling and is now shipping 1.2 million cases a week, and sales are still growing. Not bad for a Turkish immigrant just looking to learn a foreign language!

MEDIUM The medium is the communication channel used by the advertiser to convey a message. A firm’s international marketing manager must alter the media used to convey its message from market to market based on availability, legal restrictions, standards of living, literacy rates, the cultural homogeneity of the national market, and other factors. In bilingual or multilingual countries such as Belgium, Switzerland, and Canada, international firms must adjust their mix of media outlets to reach each of the country’s cultural groups. For example, Nestlé communicates to its French-speaking Swiss audience by advertising in French-language newspapers and to its German-speaking Swiss audience via ads in German-language newspapers.

A country’s level of economic development also may affect the media firms use. In many less-developed countries television ownership may be limited and literacy rates low. This eliminates television, newspapers, and magazines as useful advertising media but raises the importance of radio. Some firms have developed innovative solutions to communicate with potential consumers. For example, Colgate-Palmolive wished to increase its sales in rural India. Unfortunately, only one-third of rural Indians own television sets, and more than half are illiterate. To reach these customers, the company’s marketers outfitted “video vans” to tour the rural countryside. After showing rural villagers a half-hour infomercial extolling the virtues of the company’s oral hygiene products, sales representatives handed out samples of Colgate toothpaste and toothbrushes. This technique has proved successful, doubling toothpaste consumption in rural areas during the past decade.

Legal restrictions also may prompt the use of certain media. Most national governments limit the number of TV stations as well as the amount of broadcast time sold to advertisers. Countries often outlaw the use of certain media for advertising products that may be harmful to their societies. For example, South Korea, Malaysia, Hong Kong, China, and Singapore ban cigarette advertising on television. South Korea has broadened the ban to magazines read primarily by women and by persons under the age of 20; Hong Kong has extended it to radio; China to radio, newspapers, and magazines; and Singapore to all other media. As in the United States, however, this ban has prompted tobacco firms to sponsor athletic events and to purchase display ads at stadiums that will be picked up by TV cameras. Legal restrictions on the advertising of alcoholic products also are common throughout the world.
GLOBAL VERSUS LOCAL ADVERTISING  A firm also must decide whether advertising for its product or service can be the same everywhere or must be tailored to each local market the firm serves. Some products, such as Coca-Cola soft drinks, Bic pens, Levi jeans, and McDonald’s hamburgers, have almost universal appeal. Such companies frequently advertise globally, using the same advertising campaign in all of the markets they serve. For example, Coca-Cola introduced a series of ads shown globally that featured its “Always Coca-Cola” slogan.  

Sometimes international businesses may choose to make subtle adaptations to meet the needs of the local market. Unilever applied this approach to an advertising campaign for Dove soap. The company’s TV commercials were identical in each market, but the actors were not. On the same stage and set, U.S., Italian, German, French, and Australian models were filmed in succession, each stating in her own language, “Dove has one-quarter cleansing cream.” Nestlé used a single theme in promoting Kit Kat candy to its European customers—“Have a break, have a Kit Kat”—but changed the backgrounds to better appeal to customers across national markets.

Other firms have opted for a regionalization strategy. IBM, for instance, began advertising its products in European markets by creating a pan-European advertising campaign. Instead of customizing its ads by country, IBM featured the same text and visual images in all its European ads, altering only the language used for its broadcast and print ads. IBM determined that this approach saved $22 to $30 million in creative and production expenses (of a total advertising budget of $150 million). However, maintaining uniformity of the product’s image was of paramount concern. The campaign was designed specifically to ensure that IBM’s European clients, regardless of the country in which they were located, received the same message about its product. Similarly, Levi Strauss used the same TV ad to sell its 501 jeans in six European markets. Because each of its commercials costs about $500,000 to shoot, Levi Strauss would have spent about $3 million on six ads and thus saved $2.5 million in production costs alone by choosing this regional strategy.

Whether to choose a standardized or a specialized advertising campaign also is a function of the message the firm wants to convey. Standardized advertisements tend to contain less concrete information than do more specialized advertisements. Ads for products such as candy and soft drinks often can be standardized because the ads stress the warm, emotional aspects of consuming the good, whereas ads for products such as credit cards, automobiles, and airline services tend to be customized to meet the needs of local consumers.

E-WORLD  

¿QUÉ PASA IN THE AD AGENCY?


As the makeup of U.S. society changes, foreign businesses that advertise in the U.S. have realized that they need to change the ways in which they communicate with diverse customer bases. It might come as something of a surprise, but this Toyota TV spot reflects a revolutionary change in the way companies address potential buyers from different cultures. Once, for example, Toyota assumed that Hispanics living in the United States were immigrants, spoke no English, and clung to old-world values. Today, however, they’re well aware of the fact that more than half of the country’s 50 million Hispanics were born in this country. Like the father and son in Toyota’s depiction of Hispanic life, most Spanish speakers know English and mix elements not only of both languages but of both U.S. and Latino culture. “This group is not about nostalgia for the home country,” says Jaime Fortuño, managing partner of Azafrán, a New York–based ad agency.

There was also a time when advertisers relied on mainstream ads—ads aimed at the center of the market where they expected to find the “typical” consumer. But as the purchasing power of minorities has increased, companies have put more energy into developing targeted ads—ads aimed at specific groups of consumers and often delivered through language-targeted media. Today, for example, a corporation thinks nothing of budgeting $100 million a year for Hispanic-themed ads. Since 2004, about one-third of ads targeted to Hispanics have been presented in Spanish, and that proportion is growing—for good reason. The buying power of Hispanics grew from $490 billion in 2000 to $1 trillion in 2010—a rate of 108 percent over the decade (compared to a 49 percent rate for the majority market). By 2015, Hispanic buying power will hit $1.5 trillion and will account for 11 percent of the national total.

In similar fashion, of course, all international marketers need to understand the cultural nuances of foreign markets where they promote their products and services. South Africa, for example, has 12 “official” languages. Although many residents there speak and understand English, honing in on traditional tribal languages also offers opportunities. Similarly, many different dialects are spoken in China and so marketers can’t simply translate to “Chinese.”
Personal Selling

The second element of the promotion mix is personal selling—making sales on the basis of personal contacts. The use of sales representatives, who call on potential customers and attempt to sell them a firm’s products or services, is the most common approach to personal selling. Because of the close contact between the salesperson and the potential customer, sellers are likely to rely on host-country nationals to serve as their representatives. A firm just starting international operations often will subcontract personal selling to local sales organizations that handle product lines from several firms. As the firm grows and develops a sales base in new markets, it may establish its own sales force. Colgate-Palmolive, for example, made effective use of personal selling to gain market share in Central Europe. The firm opened a sales office in Warsaw after the Iron Curtain fell and used it to develop a well-trained professional sales staff. That staff has made Colgate-Palmolive the consumer products market leader in Poland.

The importance of personal selling as an element of the promotion mix differs for industrial products and for consumer products. For industrial products (such as complex machinery, electronic equipment, and customized computer software) customers often need technical information about product characteristics, usage, maintenance requirements, and availability of after-sales support. Well-trained sales representatives often are better able to convey information about the intricacies of such products to customers than are print or broadcast media. For consumer products, personal selling normally is confined to selling to wholesalers and to retail chains. Most consumer products firms find that advertising, particularly in print and broadcast media, is a more efficient means of communicating with consumers than is personal selling. However, personal selling can be used to market some goods. Avon and Amway, for example, have successfully exported to the Asian and European markets the personal selling techniques they developed in the United States. Similarly, American International Group (AIG) carefully built its 5,000-person sales force in Shanghai over a four-year period; today AIG is the leading foreign-owned insurance company in the country.

In Amway’s case, personal selling and the ethnic ties of its existing distributors have played a critical role in the firm’s internationalization strategy. When Amway decided to enter the Philippines in 1997, it encouraged distributors of Philippine heritage from the United States, New Zealand, and Australia to act as ambassadors, recruiting new distributors there. Because the ambassadors receive a percentage of the sales generated by the persons they recruit, more than 100 existing distributors eagerly traveled to the Philippines at their own expense to develop Amway’s sales force. The company has used a similar approach to break into the Korean and Chinese markets.

Personal selling has several advantages for an international firm:

- Firms that hire local sales representatives can be reasonably confident that those individuals understand the local culture, norms, and customs. For example, a native of India selling products in that country will be better informed about local conditions than will someone sent from Spain to sell products in India.
- Personal selling promotes close, personal contact with customers. Customers see real people and come to associate that personal contact with the firm.
- Personal selling makes it easier for the firm to obtain valuable market information. Knowledgeable local sales representatives are an excellent source of information that can be used to develop new products or to improve existing products for the local market.

On the other hand, personal selling is a relatively high-cost strategy. Each sales representative must be adequately compensated even though each may reach relatively few customers. An industrial products sales representative, for example, may need a full day or more to see just one potential customer. After a sale is closed, the sales representative may still find it necessary to spend large blocks of time with the customer explaining how things work and trying to generate new business. Most larger international firms also find it necessary to establish regional sales offices staffed by sales managers and other support personnel, which add more sales-related costs.

Sales Promotion

Sales promotion comprises specialized marketing efforts such as coupons, in-store promotions, sampling, direct-mail campaigns, cooperative advertising, and trade fair attendance. Sales promotion activities focused on wholesalers and retailers are designed to increase the number and
commitment of these intermediaries working with the firm. Many international firms participate in international trade shows such as the Paris Air Show or the Tokyo Auto Mart to generate interest among existing and potential distributors for the firms’ products. Participation in international trade shows often is recommended as a first step for firms wanting to internationalize their sales. The U.S. Department of Commerce often will help small U.S. firms participate in overseas trade shows as part of its export promotion efforts. Agencies with a similar mission exist in the governments of most major trading nations. Firms also may develop cooperative advertising campaigns or provide advertising allowances to encourage retailers to promote the firms’ products.

Sales promotion activities may be narrowly targeted to consumers or offered for only a short time before being dropped or replaced with more permanent efforts. This flexible nature of sales promotions makes them ideal for a marketing campaign tailored to fit local customs and circumstances. For example, British American Tobacco, Philip Morris, and R. J. Reynolds competed in the Taiwanese market by handing out free cigarettes, a practice not used in the U.S. market. Philip Morris and R. J. Reynolds built market share by offering Korean consumers free cigarette lighters and desk diaries emblazoned with the firms’ logos in return for cigarette purchases. U.S. airlines have effectively used direct mail and e-mail to lure international travelers away from foreign airlines.

**Public Relations**

Public relations consists of efforts aimed at enhancing a firm’s reputation and image with the general public, as opposed to touting the specific advantages of an individual product or service. The consequence of effective public relations is a general belief that the firm is a good “corporate citizen,” that it is reputable, and that it can be trusted.

Savvy international firms recognize that money spent on public relations is money well spent because it earns them political allies and makes it easier to communicate the firms’ needs to the general public. They also recognize that, as “foreigners,” they often are appealing political targets; thus, the firms attempt to reduce their exposure to political attacks. Toyota provides a case in point. The company received large financial incentives from the state of Kentucky to build its first wholly owned U.S. auto assembly plant in Georgetown. During the first few years it operated that plant, Toyota received a fair amount of criticism for its lack of community concern—Japanese firms, unlike their U.S. counterparts, do not have a tradition of corporate philanthropy. The firm eventually realized it had to adapt its corporate attitudes to local customs if it wanted to maintain the goodwill of local politicians. Toyota subsequently became a model corporate citizen, providing grants to local charities, funding college scholarships to graduating high school students, and sponsoring local youth sports teams.

The impact of good public relations is hard to quantify, but over time an international firm’s positive image and reputation are likely to benefit the firm in a host country. Consumers are more likely to resist “buy local” pitches when the foreign firm also is perceived to be a good guy. Good public relations also can help the firm when it has to negotiate with a host country government for a zoning permit or an operating license or when it encounters a crisis or unfavorable publicity. On the other hand, it can take a company a long time to overcome botched public relations efforts. For instance, following the BP oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico in 2010, the firm’s top managers committed one gaffe after another in trying to contain the bad press they were getting. Only after the firm’s CEO stepped down did BP manage to adjust its message and present a more conciliatory position. And three years later the firm is still running television commercials promoting their efforts to help those affected by the environmental disaster.

**In Practice**

- International advertising must consider the message to be conveyed, the medium for conveying it, and the degree of standardization that can be achieved.
- International marketing managers need to remember that the effectiveness of personal selling and sales promotion and the importance of public relations varies from one country to another.

*For further consideration:* Will public relations efforts likely be more effective in a developed country like Spain or a less developed country like Zambia? Why?
Distribution Issues and Decisions

The fourth P of the international marketing mix is place—more commonly referred to as distribution. Distribution is the process of getting products and services from the firm into the hands of customers. (As we discuss in Chapter 17, distribution is also one component of international logistics management.) An international firm faces two important sets of distribution issues:

1. Physically transporting its goods and services from where they are created to the various markets in which they are to be sold
2. Selecting the means by which to merchandise its goods in the markets it wants to serve

International Distribution

The most obvious issue an international firm’s distribution managers must address is the selection of a mode (or modes) of transportation for shipping the firm’s goods from their point of origin to their destination. This choice entails a clear trade-off between time and money, as Table 16.2 indicates. Faster modes of transportation, such as air freight and motor carrier, are more expensive than slower modes, such as ocean shipping, railroad, pipeline, and barge. However, the transportation mode selected affects the firm’s inventory costs and customer service levels, as well as the product’s useful shelf life, exposure to damage, and packaging requirements. International air freight, for example, scores high on each of these dimensions, whereas ocean shipping ranks low.

Consider the impact of transportation mode on the firm’s inventory expenses and the level of customer service. If the firm relies on slower modes of transportation, it can maintain a given level of inventory at the point of sale only by maintaining higher levels of inventory in transit. If the firm selects unreliable modes that make it difficult to predict when shipments will actually arrive, the firm will have to increase buffer stocks in its inventory to avoid stock-outs that will lead to disappointed customers. Slower modes of transportation also increase the firm’s international order cycle time—the time between the placement of an order and its receipt by the customer—for any given level of inventories. Longer order cycle times lower the firm’s customer service levels and may induce its customers to seek alternative supply sources.

The product’s shelf life affects the selection of transportation mode. Goods that are highly perishable because of physical or cultural forces—such as cut flowers or fashionable dresses—are typically shipped by air freight because of their short shelf life. Less perishable products, such as coal, crude oil, or men’s socks, are shipped using less expensive modes. In some cases the transportation mode may affect the product’s packaging requirements. For example, goods sent on long ocean voyages may need special packaging to protect them from humidity and damage resulting from rough seas; the firm could avoid the extra costs of packaging if it chose a faster mode such as air freight. Of course, a simple solution is sometimes available: When Calpis, a Colorado-based agricultural goods processor, entered the Japanese orange juice market, the firm switched its packaging from glass bottles to cans to reduce breakage.57

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transportation Mode</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
<th>Sample Products</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Train</td>
<td>Safe</td>
<td>Limited to rail routes</td>
<td>Automobiles, Grains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reliable</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inexpensive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airplane</td>
<td>Safe</td>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>Jewelry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reliable</td>
<td>Limited access</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truck</td>
<td>Versatile</td>
<td>Small size</td>
<td>Consumer goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inexpensive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship</td>
<td>Inexpensive</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>Automobiles, Furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Good for large products</td>
<td>Indirect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital media</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>Unusable for many products</td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Channels of Distribution

An international firm’s marketing managers also must determine which distribution channels to use to merchandise the firm’s products in each national market it serves. Figure 16.4 shows the basic channel options used by most international manufacturing firms. Note that a distribution channel can consist of as many as four basic parts:

1. The manufacturer that creates the product or service
2. A wholesaler that buys products and services from the manufacturer and then resells them to retailers
3. The retailer that buys from wholesalers and then sells to customers
4. The actual customer, who buys the product or service for final consumption

Import agents (discussed in Chapter 11) also may be used as intermediaries, especially by smaller firms.

One important factor illustrated by Figure 16.4 is channel length, the number of stages in the distribution channel. A firm that sells directly to its customers, which then pay the business directly, bypasses wholesalers and retailers and therefore has a short distribution channel. This approach is called direct sales because the firm is dealing directly with its final consumer. Dell Computer started out as a direct-sales business, taking customer orders over toll-free, 24-hour telephone lines. The advantage of this approach is that the firm maintains control over retail distribution of its products and retains any retailing profits it earns. Unfortunately, the firm also bears the costs and risks of retailing its products.

A slightly longer channel of distribution involves selling to retailers, which then market and sell the products to customers. This is easiest to do when retailers in a given market are heavily concentrated. When there are relatively few large retailers, selling directly to each is easier for manufacturers; when a larger number of smaller retailers are present, selling to each is more complex. For example, huge supermarkets with vast selections of foods and toiletries exist throughout the United States. In Europe, however, many consumers still buy food from small neighborhood stores, and few of these carry toiletries. A consumer products firm therefore will have to use different approaches to distributing its products in the two markets. For example, in the United States P&G may sell directly to Kroger or Safeway, which will routinely stock several hundred tubes of toothpaste of various sizes on its shelves and store cartons of inventory in its warehouses. A European retailer, however, may have retail space for only a few tubes and little storage space for backup inventory, thereby making it more difficult for P&G to sell directly to such outlets.

The longest distribution channel involves the use of wholesalers. Wholesalers are separate businesses that buy from manufacturers and then resell to retailers or, in some cases, to other wholesalers. For example, small farmers cannot easily sell their produce to large grocery...
Product shelf life affects the modes of transportation international firms can use to distribute their products. Unilever, for example, can use slower labor-intensive modes of transportation, such as this delivery cart in the West African country of Burkina Faso, to distribute Omo, one of its laundry detergents. But the firm’s ice cream products cannot be distributed in the same manner. Refrigerated containers must be used for perishable products like ice cream, milk, and cheese.

chains because those chains find it inefficient to deal with large numbers of small suppliers. Instead, farmers sell their produce to wholesalers, which then sell it to grocery stores; thus the grocery stores must deal with only a few large suppliers. Similarly, in markets with little retail concentration, a consumer products firm like P&G generally finds it easier to sell to a few wholesalers rather than attempt to deal with a huge number of small retailers. The use of wholesalers makes it easier to market in countries with little retail concentration and also allows the firm to maintain a smaller sales staff. On the other hand, profit margins tend to be smaller because there are more businesses involved, each of which expects to make a profit. Rather than keeping all the profits for itself, as in the case of direct sales, a firm must share them with wholesalers and retailers.

The challenge for international marketing managers is to find the optimal distribution channel to match the firm’s unique competitive strengths and weaknesses with the requirements of each national market it serves. In practice, as with other elements of international marketing, most international firms develop a flexible distribution strategy—they may use a short channel in some markets and a longer channel in others.

The firm’s distribution strategy also may be an important component of its promotion strategy. For example, SMH manufactures not only relatively inexpensive Swatch watches but also higher-priced watches such as Omega and Tissot. It distributes its more expensive watches through chic jewelry stores and its Swatch watches through department stores such as Macy’s, Marks and Spencer, and Dillard’s. Toyota initially adopted different distribution strategies for its luxury cars in the United States and Japan. In the United States it named the model Lexus and set up an independent dealership network to strengthen the prestige of that brand name. In Japan, where the firm had less need to bolster its image, the same model was sold under the Toyota name through existing Toyota dealerships. And Unilever has developed a unique approach for distributing and promoting its products in rural Tanzania. Its brigade of pedaling peddlers journeys into the countryside each morning on bicycles to hawk small packets of the company’s soaps, toothpaste, and laundry powders.

As noted in Chapter 12, some international firms, particularly producers of more specialized products, may hire a sales or import agent to distribute their goods. For example, the National Football League contracted with Japan Marketing Services to promote NFL-licensed goods in Japan. Annual Japanese sales of T-shirts, sweatshirts, and other clothing bearing the names of U.S. football teams exceed $50 million. Many governments, as part of their efforts to stimulate exports, have developed programs to help firms locate suitable international import agents. For instance, the U.S. and Foreign Commercial Service, a branch of the U.S. Department of Commerce, provides lists of foreign firms that have expressed a willingness to distribute given
products in their market areas. These data can be obtained by contacting local offices of the U.S.
and Foreign Commercial Service or through the National Trade Data Bank.

Firms should exercise caution when selecting a foreign distributor. The distributor is
the firm as far as local customers are concerned, so a poor distributor jeopardizes the firm’s
reputation and performance in that market, often for a long time. Further, local laws may make
it difficult for a firm to terminate the distributor. In Saudi Arabia, for example, a foreign firm
must hire a local national to represent it, and firing that agent is virtually impossible without
the agent’s consent.

Some international firms attempt to transfer to international markets the distribution
systems developed in their home countries. McDonald’s, for example, gained its status as the
leading food service company in the United States by taking great care in selecting its fran-
chisees and by nurturing their enterprises to the mutual benefit of both the franchisees and
McDonald’s. The firm has followed a similar distribution strategy to capture fast-food dollars
in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, and Central and South America. Similarly, Coca-Cola uses
a network of subsidiaries and independent bottlers to market its soft drinks in virtually every
country—a distribution strategy identical to that used by the firm in its home market.

At other times a firm may adapt its distribution practices to match local customs. In Russia,
for example, many goods are sold at street-side kiosks; Pepsi-Cola and Coca-Cola are sold
at hundreds of these stands in Moscow alone.61 And Kodak, recognizing the desire of many
Chinese to run their own businesses, developed a turnkey program that provided local entrepre-
neurs a fully furnished and equipped photo-processing lab for 99,000 yuan (less than $12,000).
For budding owners without cash, Kodak offered financing through an agreement with the
Bank of China. Thanks to this initiative, Kodak had 8,000 stores spread throughout China
and enjoyed a 63 percent share of the Chinese market. China quickly became the company’s
second-largest market, trailing only the United States.62 But little in international business is
permanent: the benefits of this effort diminished once digital photography displaced film-based
photography.

Local laws may affect distribution strategies. For many years the ability of foreign-
ers to establish distribution systems was limited in India, Mexico, and China. As a result,
most MNCs established joint ventures with local firms to distribute their products in those
countries. Similarly, the complexities of Japan’s culture and the complicated nature of its
distribution networks have prompted many Western firms to seek joint-venture partners to
help the firms penetrate the Japanese market. KFC, for example, teamed up with Mitsubishi
to create a joint venture to market KFC’s products in Japan. Mitsubishi contributed chicken
(one of its subsidiaries is a major chicken producer), distribution networks, and an under-
standing of the cultural nuances of dealing with Japanese consumers. KFC contributed its
brand name, a U.S. image that appealed to fashion-conscious Japanese, and its technology
and trade secrets—including, of course, the secret spices that make its chicken so finger-
lickin’ good.

In Practice

- International marketing managers must develop a sound distribution strategy for the
goods and services they intend to market in foreign markets.
- Managers must be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of different modes of
transportation for international distribution.

For further consideration: Under what circumstances might a firm need multiple
distribution strategies?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.
CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

International marketing is the process of planning and executing the conception, pricing, promotion, and distribution of ideas, goods, and services across national boundaries to create exchanges that satisfy individual and organizational objectives.

International marketing management is a critical organizational operation that should be integrated with other basic functions such as operations and human resource management. International marketing is generally based on one of three business strategies: differentiation, cost leadership, or focus. Determining the firm’s marketing mix involves making decisions about product, pricing, promotion, and place (distribution). A related basic issue that marketing managers must address is the extent to which the marketing mix will be standardized or customized for different markets. A variety of factors must be considered in making this decision.

Product policy focuses on the tangible and intangible factors that characterize the product itself. Standardization versus customization is again a consideration. Industrial products and consumer products usually require different types of product policies. Legal, cultural, and economic forces also affect product policy and must be carefully evaluated.

Pricing issues and decisions constitute the second element of the marketing mix. The three basic pricing philosophies are standard pricing, two-tiered pricing, and market pricing. Market pricing, the most widely used and complex policy, involves setting different prices for each market. Basic economic analyses are used to arrive at the prices. Concerns related to gray markets, dumping, and potential consumer resentment must be addressed by firms that use this approach. Otherwise, serious problems may result.

Promotion issues and decisions generally concern the use of advertising and other forms of promotion. The promotion mix is a blend of advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations. Each of these elements is usually carefully tailored for the market in which it will be used and implemented accordingly.

Finally, international marketing managers also must plan for distribution—getting products and services from the firm to customers. International distribution may involve a variety of transportation modes, each with its own unique set of advantages and disadvantages. A firm must also develop appropriate distribution channels, which may involve wholesalers and retailers in addition to the firm and its customers. Effective distribution can have a significant impact on a firm’s profitability.

Review Questions

16-1. What are the basic factors involved in deciding whether to use standardization or customization?
16-2. How do legal, cultural, and economic factors influence product policy?
16-3. Why are brand names an important marketing tool for international business?
16-4. What are the three basic pricing policies?
16-5. What are the dangers in attempting to set prices globally?
16-6. What are some of the fundamental issues that must be addressed in international advertising?
16-7. How can international marketing managers find the optimal distribution channel, and develop a comprehensive distribution strategy for goods and services they intend to sell in foreign markets?

Questions for Discussion

16-8. What are the similarities and differences between domestic and international marketing?
16-9. Identify several products you think could be marketed in a variety of foreign markets with little customization. Identify other products that clearly would require customization.
16-10. How do legal, cultural, and economic factors in your home country affect product policy for foreign firms?
16-11. International marketing managers need to remember that the effectiveness of personal selling, sales promotions, advertisements and the importance of public relations varies from one country to another. Discuss with examples.
16-12. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each pricing policy? Why do most international firms use market pricing?
16-13. EPG is a framework used to identify strategic profiles for international business strategy. What ‘orientations’ or approaches are associated with stages in the evolution of international operations.
16-14. What are some basic differences you might expect to see in TV ads broadcast in France, Japan, Saudi Arabia, and the United States?

Building Global Skills

Ajax Alarms is a medium-sized U.S. firm that sells alarm clocks. It subcontracts the production of its clocks to a Korean firm, which manufactures them based on Ajax designs and specifications and then ships the clocks directly to the Ajax warehouse in Kansas. Ajax markets and distributes the clocks throughout the United States and Canada. The clocks...
Chapter 16 • International Marketing

One of the longest-surviving online businesses in the world recently celebrated its 16th anniversary. This business provides a unique online experience, and, at the same time, is attempting to change the world. No, the company is not Google, Facebook, eBay, or Amazon. It’s Novica, an online retailer of beautiful handmade items from Brazil, Ghana, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Peru, and Thailand. Novica’s founders were Armenia Nercessian de Oliveira, a Brazilian and longtime United Nations human rights worker; Roberto Milk, her 23-year-old son-in-law; and Roberto’s brother, Andy. Roberto and Andy are sons of a Peace Corps volunteer.

Their business plan, launched in 1997, was based on direct sales between artisans in developing countries and customers in the United States. Together, the founders had lived in or traveled to dozens of countries, spoke a number of languages, and had strong management and financial experience. But despite their obvious qualifications, “everyone said it couldn’t be done: simultaneously establish offices in countries all over the world, pay artists more than they have ever made before, and ship purchases directly to customers worldwide from countries all over the world with no U.S. warehousing,” says de Oliveira. “But we did it! Novica.com [is now] the leading online world style marketplace.”

Although some companies choose globalization to reduce costs or to respond to competitive pressure, Novica is more concerned about building global communities that share products and ideas. The main goal of Novica is not “merely selling products,” de Oliveira emphasizes. “We are actively working to disseminate cultures and restore the importance and appreciation of traditional cultures and skills.” Moreover, it is important for the company that both cultures benefit and are not harmed by the exchange. “Novica has broken down the traditional international barriers to direct trade between individuals,” says Catherine Ryan, Novica’s Vice President for Communications. “Our goal is to help usher in a second, positive era of globalization that moves away from both the consolidation of the marketplace and the homogenization of culture.”

Novica’s business model shows a close fit with the cultural characteristics of both the United States and developing nations. Americans tend to want to buy luxury goods for themselves and their homes. They often prefer objects that are unique and handcrafted to ones that are mass produced. In parallel fashion, individuals from developing nations and traditional cultures often like to work with family and friends, typically from home or in a small organization. All of these preferences are supported by Novica.

Although Novica was already succeeding, the firm gained new financial strength and marketing support when National Geographic bought a minority stake in the company in 2001. Today more than 11,500 artists are featured and thousands of others are employed. “Novica is all about promoting artisans as individuals and increasing appreciation of all cultures—on a tremendous scale,” notes Ryan. Her employer provides an online marketplace to connect artists in developing countries with buyers in the United States. Novica is unique among sellers of international art in sustaining global culture by opening direct lines of communication and trade among a diverse group of individuals. The company’s website gives clues to the diverse characteristics, motivations, and values of the artisans and buyers.

Artist biographies and detailed product information encourage cultural awareness. Pravakar Das, from Puri in India, explains his traditional Hindu temple paintings. “Putachitra painting originated thousands of years ago to adorn the temple of Lord Jagarnath, another name for Krishna…. [They are used in] the Jagarnath Mandir festival, where thousands of devotees offer their prayers.”

Neide Ambrosio crochets soda can tops she finds discarded on Brazil’s beaches into purses and belts. “Novica encouraged my creativity,” she says. “I realized myself as a person. My quality of life improved… I now offer employment to ten young girls from favelas…. It’s also a good way for me to keep Brazil clean and unpolluted.” Ambrosio adds, “I feel so glad every time I read what my clients tell me. It is so motivating!”

A letter from customer Jeane Vogel tells about her bond with the artist who created the jewelry she purchased from Novica. “Rajan made me feel as if I were his cherished friend…. He included a hand-written note—in two
languages. I felt quite beloved… He connects in a very personal way with the recipient of his art.”

Many Novica artisans can now afford to own their own homes, buy computers, or send children to college, unheard-of luxuries for much of the population in developing regions. Even more important than financial gain, according to de Oliveira, are the social benefits. “Beyond business and the economic improvement of artisans, we are also and mainly talking about dignity, about pride, about the international recognition of extraordinary work…. We’re succeeding in transmitting human energy along with each item that is sold through us.”

Case Questions
16-15. What is the difference between international marketing and international community building?
In what ways, if any, do these differences matter?

Endnotes
14. Quelch and Hoff, op. cit.

MyManagementLab®
Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:
16-19. Discuss how international marketing relates to international strategy.
16-20. Why do you think that sophisticated and effective multinational firms still occasionally make mistakes in their international marketing efforts?
16-21. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.
29. “Mexico’s Corona brew wins back cachet,” op. cit.
52. “Colgate-Palmolive is really cleaning up in Poland,” *Businessweek*, March 15, 1993, pp. 54–56.
CHAPTER 17

International Operations Management

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Describe the nature of international operations management.
2. Analyze the supply chain management and vertical integration decisions facing international operations managers.
3. Analyze the meaning of productivity and discuss how international firms work to improve it.
4. Explain how firms control quality and discuss total quality management in international business.
5. Analyze how international firms control the information their managers need to make effective decisions.

MyManagementLab®

🌟 Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
RACING TO MARKET

Like two heavyweight fighters, Benetton Group SpA, the trendy Italian clothing chain, and Inditex, the Spanish parent of hot retailer Zara, have been constantly maneuvering for the last several years to see who can gain the upper hand in the mass-market trendy clothing industry. Benetton had a head-start, growing from a two-person operation in 1955 to a multinational clothing empire. The first Benetton retail store opened in a fashionable ski resort in the Italian Alps in 1968. Other stores quickly followed in the leading fashion capitals of Europe. It now has hundreds of stores throughout the former communist bloc, as well as stores in such far-flung locations as Turkey, Japan, and Egypt. Benetton has been opening stores in China at a steady pace and also recently started expanding in the Middle East (especially the United Arab Emirates). In total, Benetton distributes its goods through 6,500 outlets in some 120 countries. Almost all Benetton outlets are independently owned; Benetton licenses its name to these shop owners, who in turn must carry only Benetton goods. Italian styling and reasonable prices are two of the critical ingredients in Benetton's success. Benetton is well-known for sponsoring sporting events and its occasionally controversial advertising centered on the “United Colors” theme.

The first Zara store, meanwhile, was opened in 1975 in La Coruna, a port town near Artesio in northern Spain. Its first international store was opened in Portugal in 1989, followed soon thereafter by one in New York. There are now more than 3,700 Zara stores in 75 countries; the firm plans to continue an aggressive expansion campaign to open several hundred new stores per year. In addition to Zara, Inditex also owns and operates Massimo Dutti (more upscale stores located in high-fashion centers) and Bershka (more youth-oriented stores, often located in shopping malls). Unlike Benetton, though, Inditex does not franchise—it owns all of its stores. In another unusual move, Zara does virtually no advertising, choosing instead to focus its resources on opening new stores.

The real battlefield between the two firms, though, has been behind-the-scenes. Both Benetton and Inditex have world-class operations management systems that have allowed them to stay a step ahead of the rest of the pack. Benetton centralizes design and production in Italy so the firm can maintain tight control over manufacturing costs, quality, and related considerations. Each retail transaction in a Benetton store is electronically coded and transmitted to a central information-processing center in Italy. Managers there can track sales levels, sales trends and patterns, and inventory distributions, and they can do so for individual stores, for clusters of stores in an area, by country, or on a global basis. Managers use this sales information to plan and adjust production activity. Whenever a new garment is designed, its creators try to plan for possible variations and alterations. For example, a new shirt will be designed so it can be produced with short, midlength, or full-length sleeves and with or without a collar. Early production runs and shipments will include all six possible styles. A portion of those runs also will be devoted to making shirt bodies without sleeves or collars. As sales figures begin to arrive, managers quickly can tailor production adjustments to these inventoried shirt bodies to finish them out according to customer demand. If shirts with midlength sleeves and a collar sell much faster than other variations, more of this type of shirt can be finished quickly and shipped to stores. The same approach also is used for colors.

Bar codes and scanners are used throughout Benetton factories and warehouses. Using fully networked computer workstations, managers can plan and initiate production runs based on style and color demand. Partially completed products are pulled from shelves by robots and placed on final production lines. As those products are finished out, bar codes are attached, and the products are automatically wrapped, packaged, and shipped to those stores that need inventory replenishment. Through the use of this sophisticated system Benetton can fill an order from any of its 6,500 stores spread throughout the globe in 13 to 27 days.

Zara, meanwhile, has taken some of these same techniques to a whole new level. Inditex makes most of its garments in Spain and near-by countries such as Portugal, Turkey, and Morocco. But it actually stocks its stores with new designs twice a week. New collections are often small, and the more successful ones sell out quickly. But this allows the firm to both maintain an air of exclusivity and avoid marking unsold merchandise down to lower prices. Like Benetton, though, Zara can quickly restock virtually any of its items quickly and efficiently. Zara is also constantly looking for new ways to get products into the hands of consumers at an ever faster pace. For instance, most retailers have store employees attach inventory control tags to new products after the items arrive in the stockroom. They also routinely replace the inexpensive hangers used to ship products with more substantial ones before taking the garments out to the sales floor. But Zara ships its products with the tags already affixed—saving several hours at the store level. Moreover, employees hang the garments on their original shipping hangers and only later replace them with standard display hangers. This practice has even had some unexpected bonus effects—savvy young shoppers know that garments still on their shipping hangers have just arrived and are thus the latest styles!

Most industry experts now see Zara as the top firm in its industry. Although Benetton has more stores in more countries, its growth has stalled and many of its target customers see it as outdated. The real issues turned out to require even more finesse than managers at Benetton imagined. For instance, even though Benetton was a pioneer in mass customization, it still only changes its basic product lines once per season. But Zara can actually alter its entire line within a few weeks. Indeed,
Zara launches about 10,000 new designs each year! This has allowed Zara to slowly but surely creep ahead of its rival in terms of fashion cachet. The other end of the supply chain has also had an impact as well. For instance, because most of its stores are franchised, Benetton has less control over how retailers display and promote products. Meanwhile, though, Zara’s company-owned store layouts can be tweaked and merchandise rearranged on the basis of a quick e-mail from company headquarters.

But Zara cannot afford to rest on its newfound laurels. U.S. retailers such as Abercrombie & Fitch and Gap have made inroads in many European cities currently controlled by Benetton and Zara. H&M, a Swedish fashion retailer, is coming on strong. And Urban Outfitters is also moving cautiously into this arena as well. Indeed, Urban Outfitters might eventually pose the greatest challenge to Zara. Although Zara and its competitors offer essentially the same product lines at each of their stores (just varying the mix), Urban Outfitters has invested in creating a separate design center in Europe; the firm has also indicated that as it finalizes plans for a big push into Asia it will establish yet another design center there as well. And the firm has also invested heavily in its own supply chain and has reached the point where it has the lowest manufacturing, warehousing, and shipping costs of all of the major chains and has reduced the time it takes to get new stock to a store to an astonishing 24 hours!1

First Benetton and more recently Zara and Urban Outfitters have flourished for various reasons. Among them are their ability to track demand for various products and then to take the appropriate steps to satisfy that demand promptly and efficiently. By centralizing design and manufacturing systems in their home countries of Italy and Spain, Benetton and Zara are able to maintain tight control over those and related functions. By building flexibility into design, production, and distribution, the firms are able to get new inventory to their stores around the world much faster than most of their competitors. But upstarts like H&M and Urban Outfitters are closing the gap, not necessarily on the basis of style but instead by getting new products to market quickly and efficiently. The basis for planning and implementing these activities is operations management.

Some firms, such as Shell, Exxon Mobil, and BP, are concerned with physically transforming natural resources into various products through complex refining processes. Others, such as Dell, Sony, and Philips, purchase completed component parts from suppliers and then assemble the parts into electronics products. Still others, such as Emirates, United, British Airways, and JAL, use a global travel network to provide transportation services to people. Regardless of a firm’s product, however, the goal of its international operations managers is to design, create, and distribute goods or services that meet the needs and wants of customers worldwide—and to do so profitably.

The Nature of International Operations Management

Operations management is the set of activities an organization uses to transform different kinds of inputs (materials, labor, and so on) into final goods and services.2 International operations management refers to the transformation-related activities of an international firm. Figure 17.1 illustrates the international operations management process. As shown, a firm’s strategic context provides a necessary backdrop against which it develops and then manages its operations functions. Flowing directly from the strategic context is the question of standardized versus customized production. The positioning of a firm along this continuum in turn helps dictate the appropriate strategies and tactics for other parts of the operations management process. The next part of international operations management is the activities and processes connected with the acquisition of the resources the firm needs to produce the goods or services it intends to sell. Location decisions—where to build facilities and other facilities—are also important. In addition, international operations managers are concerned with logistics and materials management—the efficient movement of materials into, within, and out of the firm. We use this framework to organize this chapter’s discussion of international operations management.
Operations management is also closely linked with quality, productivity, and information technology. A firm’s operations management system largely determines how inputs are transformed into goods or services. Properly designed and managed operating systems and procedures play a major role in determining product quality and productivity. For example, Zara is able to squeeze extra measures of productivity from its distribution centers because of its highly efficient and flexible design. Conversely, poorly designed operating systems are a major cause of poor quality and lower productivity. They promote inefficiency and can contribute in various ways to higher costs and suboptimal profit performance. Hence, we also describe productivity, quality, and information in this chapter as well.

The Strategic Context of International Operations Management

The central role of operations management is to create the potential for achieving superior value for the firm. That is, operations management is a value-adding activity intended to create or add new value to the organization’s inputs in ways that directly impact outputs. If operations can take $2 worth of inputs to create $10 worth of goods or services, it has created considerable value. However, if it requires $9 worth of inputs to create the same $10 worth of goods or services, it has created much less value.

Figure 17.1 indicates that international operations management must be aligned closely with a firm’s business strategy. Indeed, the business strategy set by top managers at the firm’s corporate and regional levels will affect all facets of the planning and implementing of operations management activities, such as supply chain management strategies, location decisions, facilities design, and logistics management. For a company pursuing a differentiation strategy, the operations management function must be able to create goods or services that are clearly different from those of the company’s competitors. For a firm like Porsche or Rolex that wants to compete on the basis of product performance and status, costs will be less important than product quality and design. As a result, production facilities may need to be located where there is a skilled labor force, even if the cost of employing that labor is relatively high. For example, Porsche has never considered shifting its production from Stuttgart to a lower-labor-cost locale because its highly skilled and committed workforce is vital to producing its high-quality cars.

Conversely, for a firm following a cost leadership strategy, the operations management function must be able to reduce the costs of creating goods or services to the absolute minimum so the firm can lower its prices while still earning an acceptable level of profits. In this case, cost and price issues are central, whereas quality may be less critical. As a result, locating production facilities where labor costs are especially low may be highly appropriate. IKEA has become a global retailer by offering a wide range of appealing products at extremely low prices. The firm has 31 distribution centers in 16 countries and uses a network of 1,350 suppliers in 50 countries.
PEOPLE, PLANET, AND PROFITS

ASKING FOR GOVERNMENT REGULATION

Most businesses are strongly opposed to any form of government regulation, especially regulation that raises their costs. But in an odd turn of events, several large shipping companies are actually lobbying government leaders in Hong Kong to do just that—impose regulations that will increase their cost of doing business in China.

Hong Kong has some of the worst pollution of any major city in the world. A lot of the region’s air pollution has come from its shipping port, one of the largest in the world. Hong Kong leaders recently asked shipping companies to voluntarily use low-sulfur fuel to help curb pollution and offered a modest financial incentive for them to do so. A total of 18 shippers agreed to this request, even though the financial incentive did not offset the higher fuel costs they began to incur. Maersk Line, the world’s largest container shipping company, estimates that the government incentive covers about 40 percent of the higher fuel cost. Nevertheless, though, managers felt it was the right thing to do.

However, problems have cropped up because of the voluntary nature of the fuel switch. As it turns out, although 18 shippers signed on, about a dozen others did not. These shipping companies have continued to use “standard” fuel, which is cheaper but which also emits much more pollution. Maersk and the other shippers using the more expensive fuel have started to lobby the government, claiming that their voluntary compliance has put them at a competitive disadvantage to the dozen shippers using dirtier but cheaper fuel.

Things recently came to a head when Maersk and its allies threw down a gauntlet to the Hong Kong government: either make low-emission fuel a requirement for all shippers entering the port or else they will revert back to the dirtier fuel used by some of their competitors. Basically, they are arguing that they want to help with the city’s efforts to reduce pollution and are willing to pay a price for doing so—but they want a level playing field for all firms in the industry. For their part, Hong Kong’s leaders have agreed to look into the situation. But many observers are skeptical about Hong Kong’s sincerity in matters such as this. For example, they point out that even though the city set ambitious air-quality targets back in 1987 they have never met those targets. And worse still, air pollution readings in 2011 showed a substantial deterioration in air quality over the preceding five years.


Another factor affecting the firm’s choices is the extent to which it uses standardized or customized production processes and technologies. On the one hand, if the firm uses standardized production processes and technologies in every market where it does business, then its operations systems can—and almost certainly should be—globally integrated. Such firms may choose to adopt global product designs, for example, to capture more easily global efficiencies generated by their operations. On the other hand, if a firm uses a unique operations system in each market where it does business, such global integration is not only unnecessary but also likely to be impossible. Often such firms adopt a global area design to promote responsiveness of their operations managers to local conditions.

For example, Intel uses a standardized operations management strategy in that it makes its microprocessors using the same manufacturing processes around the world. Thus, it can share technology between plants and freely ship component parts between factories in different countries. Similarly, for years automakers have had a goal of creating a global automobile that could be manufactured and sold using the same design and brand name everywhere in the world. Ford has achieved that goal, and its Focus has become the best-selling car in the world (1,160,764 units in 2012). Conversely, Nestlé tailors its mix of products, as well as their ingredients and packaging, across markets. So although there may be some sharing of production technology, Nestlé tends to operate each production facility as more of a self-contained unit.

Complexes of International Operations Management

International operations management presents one of the most complex and challenging set of tasks managers face today. The basic complexities inherent in operations management stem from the production problem itself—where and how to produce various goods and services. Operations managers typically must decide important and complex issues in three areas:

1. **Resources**: Managers must decide where and how to obtain the resources the firm needs to produce its products. Key decisions relate to supply chain management and vertical integration.
2. Location: Managers must decide where to build administrative facilities, sales offices, and plants; how to design them; and so on.

3. Logistics: Managers must decide on modes of transportation and methods of inventory control.

All firms, whether domestic or international, must address these issues. However, resolving them is far more complicated for international firms. A domestic manufacturer may deal with only local suppliers, be subject to one set of government regulations, compete in a relatively homogeneous market, have access to an integrated transportation network, and ship its goods relatively short distances. An international manufacturer, in contrast, is likely to deal with suppliers from different countries and confront different government regulations wherever it does business, as well as heterogeneous markets, disparate transportation facilities and networks, and relatively long shipping distances. International operations managers must choose the countries in which to locate production facilities, taking into account factors such as costs, tax laws, resource availability, and marketing considerations. They also must consider potential exchange rate movements and noneconomic factors such as government regulations, political risk, and predictability of a country’s legal system. Further, they must consider the impact of facilities’ locations on the firm’s ability to respond to changes in customer tastes and preferences. Finally, they must factor in logistical problems. Just as long supply lines doomed Napoleon’s invasion of Russia, locating factories far from one’s suppliers may impede timely access to resources and materials.

In Practice

- Managers need a clear understanding of the basic elements of international operations management.
- The strategic importance of international operations management must be clearly understood by all managers in any international business.

For further consideration: How do decisions about resources, location, and logistics influence one another?

Production Management

Although some similarities exist between creating goods and creating services for international markets, there also are major fundamental differences. Operations management decisions, processes, and issues that involve the creation of tangible goods are called production management, and those involving the creation of intangible services are called service operations management. This section focuses on production management; service operations management is addressed later in the chapter.

Manufacturing is the creation of goods by transforming raw materials and component parts in combination with capital, labor, and technology. Some examples of manufacturing activities are Sony’s production of digital cameras, BMW’s production of automobiles, and Michelin’s production of tires. BMW, for example, takes thousands of component parts, ranging from sheet metal to engine parts to upholstery to rubber molding, and combines them to make different types of automobiles.

Most successful manufacturers use many sophisticated techniques to produce high-quality goods efficiently. These techniques are best covered in more advanced and specialized production management courses, so we focus here on three important dimensions of international production management: international supply chain management, international facilities location, and international logistics.

Supply Chain Management and Vertical Integration

Because the production of most manufactured goods requires a variety of raw materials, parts, and other resources, the first issue an international production manager faces is deciding how to acquire those inputs. Supply chain management is the set of processes and steps a firm uses to
acquire the various resources it needs to create its products (other common terms for this activity include sourcing and procuring). Supply chain management clearly affects product cost, product quality, and internal demands for capital. Because of these impacts, most international firms approach supply chain management as a strategic issue to be carefully planned and implemented by top management.

The first step in developing a supply chain management strategy is to determine the appropriate degree of vertical integration. **Vertical integration** is the extent to which a firm either provides its own resources or obtains them from other sources. At one extreme, firms that practice relatively high levels of vertical integration are engaged in every step of the operations management process as goods are developed, transformed, packaged, and sold to customers. Various units within the firm can be seen as suppliers to other units within the firm, which can be viewed as the customers of the supplying units. At the other extreme, firms that have little vertical integration are involved in only one step or just a few steps in the production chain. They may buy their inputs and component parts from other suppliers, perform one operation or transformation, and then sell their outputs to other firms or consumers.

BP is a vertically integrated international business. One unit of the firm is engaged in the worldwide exploration for natural gas and crude oil. After oil is discovered, another unit is responsible for its extraction. The oil then is transported through company-owned pipelines and on company-owned tanker ships to company-owned refineries. Those refineries transform the crude oil into gasoline, processed petroleum, and other petroleum-based fuels. Next, the fuel is transported by company-owned trucks to company-owned service stations and convenience stores, where it is sold to individual consumers. Thus, BP’s exploration and extraction business supplies its pipeline business, which supplies its refinery business, which supplies its retailing business. Although the firm occasionally uses third-party suppliers and may sometimes sell its products to other firms or franchise retailers to distribute its products, it primarily seeks to maintain an unbroken and efficient chain of vertically integrated operations from the beginning of the production process to the final sale of the product to individual consumers.

In contrast, Heineken NV, the world’s third-largest brewer, practices relatively little vertical integration. The firm buys the grains and other ingredients it needs to brew beer from local farmers and agricultural cooperatives. From various container suppliers it buys the bottles, labels, and cartons it uses to package its beers. After brewing and bottling its beers, Heineken sells them to distributors, which subsequently resell them to retailers, which in turn resell them to consumers.

The extent of a firm’s vertical integration is the result of a series of supply chain management decisions made by production managers. In deciding how to acquire the components necessary to manufacture a firm’s products, its production managers have two choices: The firm can
make the inputs itself, or it can buy them from outside suppliers. This choice is called the **make-or-buy decision**. It is also important to note, though, that the make-or-buy decision carries with it other decisions as well. For example, a decision to buy rather than make dictates the need to choose between long-term and short-term supplier relationships. Similarly, a decision to make rather than buy leaves open the option of making by self or making in partnership with others. If partnership is the choice, yet another decision relates to the degree of control the firm wants to have.

The make-or-buy decision can be influenced by a firm’s size, scope of operations, and technological expertise and by the nature of its product. For example, because larger firms are better able to benefit from economies of scale in the production of inputs, larger automakers such as GM and Fiat are more likely to make their parts themselves, whereas smaller automakers such as Ferrari or BMW are more likely to buy parts from outside suppliers. Components embodying relatively new technologies, such as satellite navigation systems and hands-free cellular telephones, are more likely to be purchased from outside suppliers, whereas more standardized components, such as conventional braking systems and AM/FM automotive radios, are more likely to be produced in-house. At other times the make-or-buy decision will depend on existing investments in technology and manufacturing facilities. For example, PC manufacturers such as Dell and Sony must decide whether they want to make or buy microprocessors, memory chips, external speakers, motherboards, and power supplies. Because of its extensive manufacturing expertise, Sony is more likely to make a component in-house, whereas Dell is more likely to rely heavily on outside suppliers.

All else being equal, a firm will choose to make or buy simply on the basis of whether it can obtain the resource cheaper by making it internally or by buying it from an external supplier. “All else being equal” seldom occurs however, so strategic issues also must be considered. For example, the firm must balance competitive advantage against strategic vulnerability when resolving the make-or-buy decision. If a high potential for competitive advantage exists along with a high degree of strategic vulnerability, the firm is likely to maintain strategic control by producing internally. However, if the potential for competitive advantage and the degree of strategic vulnerability are both low, the firm will need less control and therefore will be more likely to buy “off the shelf.” Finally, when intermediate potential for competitive advantage and moderate degree of strategic vulnerability call for moderate control, special ventures or contract arrangements may be most appropriate.

In addition to these strategic considerations, other factors may play a role with respect to the make-or-buy decision. In particular, international firms typically must make trade-offs between costs and control, risk, investment, and flexibility.10

**CONTROL** Making a component has the advantage of increasing the firm’s control over product quality, delivery schedules, design changes, and costs. A firm that buys from external suppliers may become overly dependent on those suppliers. If a given supplier goes out of business, raises its prices, or produces poor-quality materials, the firm will lose its source of inputs, see its costs increase, or experience its own quality-related problems.

Another issue of control relates to the ability to enforce contracts with outside suppliers. Enforcing contracts with foreign suppliers may be difficult or costly because of differences in national legal systems. For example, if laws protecting intellectual property of foreigners are weak in a certain country, entertainment firms such as Sony Records and BMG may be unwilling to license firms in that country to duplicate their CDs and DVDs. When such considerations are important, a firm may prefer to make rather than buy necessary inputs. One strength of the Japanese *keiretsu* system, for instance, is its ability to reduce the problem of enforcing contracts between a firm and its suppliers. Cross-ownership of shares among keiretsu members, which strengthens trust among members, increases their willingness to enter into long-term contracts and to share intellectual property with each other.11

**RISK** Buying a component from an external supplier has the advantage of reducing the firm’s financial and operating risks. BP, for example, has risk associated with its drilling platforms, pipelines, and every other stage in its production chain. If the firm simply bought crude oil from other firms, it would not have to worry about equipment failure or injuries on drilling platforms because those risks would be assumed by the supplier. The firm also would not have to worry about earning an adequate rate of return on those assets. Equally important, the firm that buys
rather than makes can reduce its political risk in a host country. For example, BP runs the risk that politicians elected on anti-British or antiforeigner platforms in the United States, Nigeria, Colombia, or elsewhere may someday expropriate its refineries. Indeed, this did happen in 1951, when Iran’s rulers seized a major BP operation in that country. “Bringing the World into Focus” illustrates another form of supply chain risk—disasters, both natural and man-made.

**INVESTMENTS IN FACILITIES, TECHNOLOGY, AND PEOPLE** Buying from others lowers the firm’s level of investment. By not having to build a new factory or learn a new technology, a firm can free up capital for other productive uses. Benetton, for example, primarily uses licensees to retail its goods, allowing the firm to concentrate on what it does best—manufacturing. Honda provides another example of this approach. As production at Honda’s U.S. manufacturing plant in Ohio grew, the firm needed an increased supply of mirrors for its cars. It convinced a local supplier, Donnelly Corp., to build a new factory to assemble mirrors for its automobiles. Thus, Honda obtained the profits of mirror manufacturing to Donnelly. Buying from others also reduces a firm’s training costs and expertise requirements. By contracting with Donnelly, Honda avoided having to develop expertise in designing, manufacturing, and marketing automobile mirrors. BP, in contrast, needs a wide range of expertise and talent among the ranks of its managers to take full advantage of its highly vertically integrated global operations.

**FLEXIBILITY** A firm that buys rather than makes retains the flexibility to change suppliers as circumstances dictate. This is particularly helpful in cases in which technology is evolving rapidly or delivered costs can change as a result of inflation or exchange rate fluctuations. Most PC manufacturers, for example, have chosen to buy disk drives, USB ports, and microprocessors from outside suppliers. By so doing, they avoid the risk of product obsolescence and the large research and development expenditures needed to stay on the cutting edge of each of the technologies embedded in the component parts of PCs. Similarly, Dallas’ Peerless Manufacturing buys components from numerous European subcontractors that produce filters and separators. Peerless can shift its sourcing around the continent depending on currency fluctuations and flows of orders from its customers.

Of course, sometimes a firm must make trade-offs that reduce flexibility. In the case of Honda and Donnelly, Donnelly was concerned it would be at Honda’s mercy once it invested in the new mirror factory. To induce Donnelly to agree to build the new factory, the automaker had to assure Donnelly managers that the firm would get all of Honda’s mirror business for

Sourcing goods and services from low-cost areas can help hold down expenses and improve profit margins. But sometimes these lower costs are the result of weak or inadequate regulations that endanger worker safety or the environment. For instance, this garment factory in Bangladesh collapsed in 2013, killing 1,127 workers. The factory, constructed with substandard construction materials and in violation of local building codes, was making garments for Benetton, Gap, Sears, Target, and other major Western retailers. As a result of this tragedy, many retail chains have agreed to launch an industry-wide effort to improve safety standards and working conditions in Bangladesh.
at least 10 years. By so doing, Honda reduced its capital investment but sacrificed the flexibility of changing suppliers during the 10-year period. This example also illustrates a major trend in buyer-supplier relationships. Not long ago, managers assumed it was useful to use a variety of suppliers to avoid becoming too dependent on a single one. A drawback of this approach, however, is the complexity associated with dealing with a large network of suppliers, especially if that network is global. More recently, some firms have come to realize that by engaging in exclusive or semi-exclusive long-term relationships with fewer suppliers, the firms can better benefit from these suppliers’ experience and product knowledge. In the automobile industry, many manufacturers are relying on so-called first-tier suppliers such as Johnson Controls or Magna International to work with the automakers’ engineers to design component systems, such as seating systems or dashboard assemblies, for new vehicles. Companies also are saving additional money by relying on first-tier suppliers to manage and monitor the acquisition of parts and subassemblies from second-tier suppliers.

**Location Decisions**

An international firm that chooses to make rather than buy inputs faces another decision: Where should it locate its production facilities? In reaching a location decision, the firm must consider country-related issues, product-related issues, government policies, and organizational issues.

**COUNTRY-RELATED ISSUES** Several features of countries can influence the decision about where to locate an international facility. Chief among these are resource availability and cost, infrastructure, and country-of-origin marketing effects.

---

**BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS**

**DEALING WITH THE UNEXPECTED**

Relations between manufacturers and their suppliers can be vitally important to each other. Manufacturers depend on their suppliers to provide them with high-quality parts and supplies on a timely basis, whereas suppliers depend on their manufacturing customers for revenue. In general, both parties work to create and maintain a sound relationship. But sometimes disaster can get in the way—and create big problems.

In March 2011, for instance, a massive earthquake in Japan triggered an equally devastating tsunami. Between the two natural disasters, manufacturing facilities and shipping routes throughout the country were shut down. These events created obvious problems for just about every manufacturer in Japan. But the ripple effects were also felt in North America as well. For instance, Toyota’s North American manufacturing plants get about 15 percent of their parts from suppliers back in Japan. As inventory was depleted, the North American plants began to cut back on production. Two months later they were operating at only 30 percent of normal capacity when they experienced critical shortages of 150 important component parts. And experts predicted that they might not be able to resume normal production until the end of 2011. Nissan and Honda faced similar problems.

Nor were problems limited to Toyota and other Japanese firms. General Motors, for instance, spends about 2 percent of its parts budget in Japan and so it too was affected. But GM managers responded effectively to the crisis. Four days after the earthquake, GM assembled hundreds of employees into teams that began working around the clock to identify critical parts likely to be affected and developing plans for dealing with anticipated shortages. The teams identified 118 parts most likely to be affected and quickly located alternative suppliers. Had GM run out of any of those products, production would have been halted for days. All told, it took more than 18 months before supply chains disrupted by the natural disasters in Japan were fully operational again.

One lesson that all of the major automakers say they learned was the need for more comprehensive crisis plans in the event of future disasters or other supply chain disruptions. One GM executive, for example, noted that although GM had a standing contingency plan for supply chain disruptions, it was not ready for anything “on this kind of scale or scope.” Meanwhile, other sectors ranging from electronics to clothing manufacturing to food production also had to assess the impact of the earthquake and tsunami and make their own decisions about being better prepared in the future.

Although natural disasters can cause major problems, so too can those caused by humankind. For instance, an eight-story garment factory in Bangladesh collapsed in May 2013, killing 1,127 workers. Bangladesh is the second-largest garment exporter in the world (behind China) and employs 4 million people. Garment workers in this impoverished country actually make reasonable wages by local standards but working conditions are poor and subject to little government regulation. As it turned out, workers in the collapsed building had been busily making garments for Benetton, Gap, Target, Sears, and other major retailers. As a result, these retailers faced both disruptions in their product supply chains and damage to their reputations for not mandating proper oversight of the working conditions for workers in Bangladesh.

Resource availability and cost constitute a primary determinant of whether an individual country is a suitable location for a facility. As suggested by the classical trade theories and the Heckscher-Ohlin theory (see Chapter 6), countries that enjoy large, low-cost endowments of a factor of production will attract firms needing that factor of production. For example, BP has little choice but to situate drilling platforms where crude oil reserves are located. Bangladesh has attracted toy, footwear, and textile manufacturers because of the availability of low-cost labor. At the same time, though, the migration of factories to countries with low labor costs has generated much controversy.

Infrastructure also affects the location of production facilities. Most facilities require at least some minimal level of infrastructural support. To build a facility requires construction materials and equipment as well as materials suppliers and construction contractors. More important, electrical, water, transportation, telephone, and other services are necessary to use the facility productively. In addition, access to medical care, education, adequate housing, entertainment, and other related services are almost certain to be important for the employees and managers who will work at the facility as well as for their families.

Country-of-origin effects also may play a role in locating a facility. Certain countries have “brand images” that affect product marketing. For example, Japan has a reputation for manufacturing high-quality products, whereas Italy often is credited with stylishly designed products. In one interesting experiment a researcher found that consumer preference for Timex watches fell by only 6 percent when interviewees were told the watches were made in Pakistan rather than Germany. However, when consumers were confronted with an unfamiliar brand called Tempomax, their willingness to buy the watches fell by 74 percent when they were told the watches were made in Pakistan instead of Germany. All else being equal, it obviously is easier to sell watches made in Germany than ones made in Pakistan to consumers in industrialized countries, particularly if the product is not backed by a strong brand name. Firms must take into account these country-of-origin effects in deciding where to site a production facility. A firm interested in marketing its product as high quality might choose to locate in Japan or Germany rather than in Pakistan or Indonesia, whereas a firm competing on the basis of low costs and prices might make the opposite choice.

**PRODUCT-RELATED ISSUES** Product-related characteristics also may influence the location decision. Among the more important of these are the product’s value-to-weight ratio and the required production technology.

The product’s value-to-weight ratio affects the importance of transportation costs in the product’s delivered price. Goods with low value-to-weight ratios, such as iron ore, cement, coal, bulk chemicals, and raw sugar and other agricultural goods, tend to be produced in multiple locations to minimize transportation costs. Conversely, goods with high value-to-weight ratios, such as microprocessors or diamonds, can be produced in a single location or handful of locations without loss of competitiveness.

The production technology used to manufacture the good also may affect facility location. A firm must compare its expected product sales with the efficient size of a facility in the industry. If a firm’s sales are large relative to an efficient-sized facility, the firm is likely to operate many facilities in various locations. If its sales are small relative to an efficient-sized facility, the firm probably will use only one plant. For example, the minimum efficient size of a petroleum refinery is about 200,000 barrels per day. Thus, BP, which can produce up to 5 million barrels per day, has chosen to operate 17 refineries located in such countries as the United Kingdom, Spain, and Colombia.

The relative importance of customer feedback also may influence the location decision. Products for which firms desire quick customer feedback often are produced close to the point of final sale. For example, a general rule of thumb in the U.S. apparel industry is that, all else being equal, the more fashionable the item, the more likely it will be produced near or in the United States so the manufacturer can respond quickly to market trends. At the beginning of each selling season women’s sportswear buyers for Macy’s, Nordstrom’s, and Saks Fifth Avenue carefully monitor which new items are hot sellers. The buyers quickly reorder the hot items and mercilessly dump goods that fashion-conscious shoppers ignore. Because the selling season for such goods may last only two or three months—and no one can predict with certainty what the fashion fanatics will buy—apparel manufacturers in the United States are better able to respond
to the sportswear buyers’ demands than are producers in Taiwan or Indonesia. Conversely, low-fashion items are more likely to be produced outside the United States to take advantage of lower production costs. For example, J.C. Penney can predict with reasonable certainty how many athletic socks and white cotton briefs it will sell each summer. If for some reason it overestimates summer sales of these items, it can continue to sell them in the fall. Accordingly, Penney’s menswear buyers often enter into long-term contracts with Asian knitting mills. In this case cost is a more important variable than speed or flexibility of delivery.

**GOVERNMENT POLICIES** Government policies also may play a role in the location decision. Especially important are the stability of the political process, national trade policies, economic development incentives, and the existence of foreign trade zones.

The stability of the political process within a country can clearly affect the desirability of locating a factory there. Firms like to know what the rules of the game are so they can make knowledgeable investment, production, and staffing decisions. A government that alters fiscal, monetary, and regulatory policies seemingly on whim and without consulting the business community raises the risk and uncertainty of operating in that country. Unforeseen changes in taxation policy, exchange rates, inflation, and labor laws are particularly troublesome to international firms.

National trade policies also may affect the location decision. To serve its customers, a firm may be forced to locate a facility within a country that has high tariff walls and other trade barriers. For example, Toyota, Nissan, and Mazda built factories in the United States to evade a voluntary export restraint imposed by the Japanese government to limit the exports of Japanese-built automobiles to the United States. Similarly, Hewlett-Packard located a PC manufacturing facility in São Paulo to avoid Brazilian import taxes.

Economic development incentives may influence the location decision. Communities eager to create jobs and add to the local tax base often seek to attract new factories by offering international firms inexpensive land, highway improvements, job-training programs, and discounted water and electric rates. For example, the government of France sold the Walt Disney Company suburban land on which to build Disneyland Paris at a greatly discounted rate. Similarly, Mississippi outbid dozens of North American cities, provinces, and states for an $800-million Nissan assembly plant, offering the firm a $295-million package of incentives. The governments of New Zealand and South Africa offer filmmakers incentives to shoot in their countries.

An international firm also may choose a site based on the existence of a foreign trade zone (FTZ). As discussed in Chapter 9, an FTZ is a specially designated and controlled geographical area in which imported or exported goods receive preferential tariff treatment. A country may establish FTZs near its major ports of entry or major production centers. It then allows international firms to import products into those zones duty free for specified purposes, sometimes with express limitations; for example, there may be limitations on the types and value of products allowed and on the kind of work that may be performed.

A firm may decide to locate in a particular area because the existence of an FTZ gives the firm greater flexibility regarding importing or exporting and creates avenues for lowering costs. For example, the Port of Houston operates a large FTZ used primarily for storage by non-U.S. automakers. Toyota and Nissan can ship all their automobiles bound for sale in the southern part of North America to Houston, where they are stored without any payment of import tariffs being required. Only when specific automobiles are removed from the zone and shipped to dealerships must the manufacturers pay the duty. However, some automobiles eventually are shipped to Mexico or various Caribbean countries. The firms then pay only whatever duty those countries levy and avoid paying U.S. duties altogether.

Costs can be lowered through the creative use of FTZs. A firm may be able to import component parts, supplement them with other component parts obtained locally, and assemble them all into finished goods. The duty paid on the imported components incorporated into the products assembled in the FTZ may be lower than the duty imposed on imported components in general. For this reason most automobiles produced in the United States are assembled in FTZs. Further, some duties are calculated on the basis of the good’s total weight, including packaging. So a firm may lower its duties by bringing goods into the FTZ in lightweight, inexpensive packaging, and then, after duties have been paid, repackage them with heavier, more substantial materials obtained locally.
ORGANIZATIONAL ISSUES An international firm’s business strategy and its organizational structure also may affect the location decision. Inventory management policies are important considerations as well.

A firm’s business strategy may affect its location decisions in various ways. A firm that adopts a cost leadership strategy must seek out low-cost locations, whereas a firm that focuses on product quality must locate facilities in areas that have adequate skilled labor and managerial talent. A firm may choose to concentrate production geographically to better meet organizational goals. Benetton does this with its Italian production facilities so as to better control product design and quality. Other firms find that strategic goals can be better met by dispersing facilities in various foreign locations. Most electronics firms take this approach. For example, Intel has manufacturing and assembly plants in Ireland, Israel, Malaysia, China, Costa Rica, and Vietnam to take advantage of the relatively low-cost resources available in each of these markets. Further, shipping the firm’s computer chips to distant markets from those manufacturing facilities is relatively easy and inexpensive. Multiple production facilities also protect a firm against exchange rate fluctuations. FMC, for example, often shifts orders for its food-packaging machinery from plants in Chicago to plants in Italy or vice versa, depending on the relative values of the dollar and the euro.

A firm’s organizational structure also influences the location of its factories. For example, as noted in Chapter 14, adoption of a global area structure decentralizes authority to area managers. These managers, seeking to maintain control over their area, are likely to favor locating factories within their area to produce goods sold within the area. For example, Ford once was structured as three area groups: North America, Europe, and Asia Pacific. The firm exported few automobiles from these regions: Rather, each area focused on producing automobiles to meet the needs of consumers in its area. Ford later abandoned this organizational structure, believing it hindered the company’s ability to truly globalize its automobile production. Conversely, a firm having a global product structure will locate factories anywhere in the world to meet the firm’s cost and quality performance goals.

A firm’s inventory management policies are also affected by plant location decisions. Inventory management is a complex task all operations managers must confront. They must balance the costs of maintaining inventory against the costs of running out of materials or finished goods. The costs of maintaining inventory include those associated with storage (operating a warehouse, for example), spoilage and loss (some stored inventory gets ruined, damaged, or stolen), and opportunity costs (an investment in inventory cannot be put to other business uses). Factory location affects the level of inventory that firms must hold because of the distances and transit times involved in shipping goods. For example, if Walmart purchases private-label televisions for its U.S. stores from a Taiwanese factory, Walmart’s inventory levels will be higher than if it purchases the televisions from a Mexican factory. Factory location becomes particularly critical when the just-in-time (JIT) inventory management system is adopted. With this approach, a firm’s suppliers deliver their products directly to the firm’s manufacturing center, usually in frequent small shipments, just as they are needed for production. The JIT system requires careful coordination between a firm and its internal and external suppliers. Often parts suppliers locate their facilities near the factories of their major customers to meet the JIT requirements of their customers. For example, many car-part makers, such as TRW Steering Systems, Denso, Bosch, and Johnson Controls, have located in Wales or the West Midlands region of England to better serve major customers like Jaguar and Range Rover. Parts manufacturers also have gravitated to the midwestern United States, Ontario, Brazil, Thailand, and other areas where auto assembly plants are clustered.

International Logistics and Materials Management

Regardless of the location of an international firm’s factories, its operations management must address issues of international logistics. International logistics is the management of the flow of materials, parts, supplies, and other resources from suppliers to the firm; the flow of materials, parts, supplies, and other resources within and between units of the firm itself; and the flow of finished products, services, and goods from the firm to customers.

The first two sets of activities usually are called materials management, and the third set often is called physical distribution, or, more simply, distribution. Recall that we discussed distribution issues in Chapter 16 because they often are managed as part of the firm’s marketing function. Thus, the focus here is on the materials management area of logistics. The role of
International logistics is the management of the flow of materials, parts, supplies, and other resources. For multinational firms major shipping ports like this one in Singapore play a major role in international logistics. A complex web of highways, trucks, rail lines, trains, containerized shipping facilities, and cargo ships help move vast quantities of resources around the globe.

logistics is particularly important for firms that have developed integrated, but geographically dispersed, manufacturing and distribution networks where parts may be made in one country for assembly in a second country for sale in a third country. Three basic factors differentiate domestic and international materials management functions. The first is simply the distance involved in shipping. Shipments within even the largest countries seldom travel more than a couple of thousand miles, and many shipments travel much less. For example, the road distance between New York City and Los Angeles is around 2,800 miles, but the distances between New York and Warsaw, Tokyo, and Sydney are 4,300 miles, 6,700 miles, and 9,900 miles, respectively. Thus, assembling component parts in Kansas City, Chicago, and St. Louis and then shipping them to Cincinnati for final assembly is much easier than assembling component parts in San Diego, Montreal, and Cairo and then shipping them to Singapore for final assembly.

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS
MOVING HERE, MOVING THERE...

It seems like just yesterday that manufacturers were moving their production facilities to Mexico. A business-friendly government combined with an abundant supply of low-cost labor made the northern Mexican border a perfect place to set up shop. The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) made it relatively painless for businesses to move materials and finished goods back and forth across the border as needed. But the good times slowed in the early years of the twenty-first century as Mexican wages crept higher and higher and China emerged as the world’s exciting new manufacturing center. So, by the droves businesses shut down their Mexican operations and moved to China. And for the next decade China’s burgeoning manufacturing prowess firmly established that country as the low-cost manufacturing hub.

But sometimes history has a way of repeating itself. As China’s economy boomed local workers demanded—and received—higher wages. For example, in 2003 Mexican wages were six times higher than comparable wages in China. By 2013, though, wages in China had escalated to the point where they were nearing comparable wages in Mexico. Factoring in international shipping costs, manufacturers whose primary markets are in the Western hemisphere came to see that total costs of producing in Mexico versus China were about the same.

Not surprisingly, then, some firms that abandoned Mexico for China are reversing their course. Casabella, for example, makes cleaning supplies and kitchen gadgets. It moved from Mexico to China in 2003, but is now in the process of moving back. Similarly, Manufacturing Marvel produces toys and novelty items in both China and Mexico. But the firm’s chief executive officer (CEO) says that when his current Chinese contracts expire in 2015 he plans to move all of his operations to Mexico. Will Mexico be the last stop for these firms? Probably not, because for low-cost manufacturers it generally pays to be where the lowest labor and materials costs are located. But now, at least, Mexico seems to be rising once again.

The second basic difference between domestic and international materials management functions is the sheer number of transport modes that are likely to be involved. Shipments within the same country often use only a single mode of transportation, such as truck or rail. However, shipments that cross national boundaries, and especially shipments traveling great distances, almost certainly involve multiple modes of transportation. For example, a shipment bound from Kansas City to Berlin may use truck, rail, ship, and then rail and truck again.

Third, the regulatory context for international materials management is much more complex than for domestic materials management. Most countries regulate many aspects of their internal transportation systems—price, safety, packaging, and so on. Shipments that cross through several countries are subject to the regulations of each of those countries. Although various economic trade agreements, such as the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), have sought to streamline international shipping guidelines and procedures, transporting goods across national boundaries is still complex and often involves much red tape.

Seemingly simple logistics and materials management issues often become much more complex in an international context. Packaging issues, which might at first glance seem minor, are in reality a significant consideration in managing international logistics. Packaging protects the goods in transit, helps make the goods easier to handle, and facilitates delivery and/or sale of finished goods at their final destination. International shipping complicates packaging decisions, however, because of the use of multiple modes of transportation as well as the variation in conditions that will be encountered. Wine distributors have struggled with these issues for years. The burgeoning international market for wine has opened new markets to wineries in Australia, South Africa, and South America, but the expense of shipping wine in heavy glass bottles can result in much higher retail prices. Hardy’s, an Australian wine distributor, has hit on a novel solution. It ships wine to Great Britain in 24,000 liter plastic bags (translating to about 32,000 bottles of wine). The wine is then bottled after it reaches shore in Great Britain. As a result, Hardy can sell its wines for as little as $5 a bottle, allowing it to become the best-selling Australian wine in Great Britain.

Consider the problems confronted by a firm that wants to ship a large quantity of delicate electronics equipment from a plant in California, where the equipment was produced, to a facility in Saudi Arabia, where the equipment will be used. During the course of shipment the equipment likely will be on trucks, railcars, and a ship. These transport settings will have variations in humidity, temperature, and amount of dust. Moreover, each time the equipment is loaded and unloaded, it will be handled with varying degrees of roughness or delicacy. Thus, the equipment must be packaged to handle everything it will encounter during its travels.

The weight of the packaging itself also is a consideration, especially for finished goods en route to customers. As noted previously in the chapter, weight sometimes determines the amount of import duty, so firms frequently repackaging goods after shipment. Sometimes customers even go so far as to specify precise total weights, including packaging, they will accept, and may require that packaging meet certain preset specifications.

Logistical considerations may play a critical role in the decision of where to locate a factory. Production costs may be lower in a domestic factory than in a foreign factory. However, the firm also must consider the materials management costs of warehousing, packaging, transporting, and distributing its goods, as well as its inventory carrying costs and those of its foreign customers. Typically, such logistical costs will be higher for exported goods than for locally produced goods. There also are logistical considerations besides costs. Because of longer supply lines and increased difficulties in communicating with foreign customers, a firm that chooses to export from domestic factories must ensure that it maintains competitive levels of service for its foreign customers. For years steelmakers have found it cost effective to produce in countries in Southeast Asia. However, new technologies are making it cheaper to produce steel using natural gas instead of coal (the traditional method). Because natural gas is so cheap in the United States, an Austrian steelmaker is building a new steel mill in Louisiana.

Needless to say, the ongoing globalization of the world’s economy has magnified the importance of international logistics. Globalization would be much less extensive and much slower to develop had it not been for rapid changes in information technology (IT). Although the development of PCs, fax machines, e-mail, smartphones, the Internet, and the like are widely known, less visible IT breakthroughs such as satellite communications, electronic data interchange, and bar coding have been equally significant. By integrating such technological changes into their logistical operations, firms are able to increase their productivity and enhance...
customer satisfaction. Firms such as Zara and Urban Outfitters that have aggressively and innovatively harnessed these new information technologies have improved the efficiency of their overall operations as well as their logistical operations. Cost savings can be huge. Volkswagen, for example, believes it can trim its overall operating costs by 1 percent using electronic data interchange for all of its internal and external transactions.

IT also has promoted a reconceptualization of the logistics process and a rethinking of the supplier-customer relationship. By harnessing IT, firms are able to analyze how to promote the efficiency and productivity of the entire supply chain, rather than just their particular component of it. Indeed, by using IT creatively, companies not only enhance their own productivity but also raise the satisfaction of their customers. IT has other advantages as well. Investments in IT can act as substitutes for investments in inventory and warehousing capacity, reducing capital costs and improving rates of return on assets. Moreover, IT helps firms monitor their progress toward attainment of their strategic goals.

In Practice

- Managers need to be thoroughly familiar with the role of supply chain management and vertical integration in their organization.
- The make-or-buy decision is a basic option that managers must consider.

For further consideration: Under what circumstances might production previously off-shored be brought back into the home country?

International Service Operations

The service sector has emerged in recent years as an increasingly important part of many national economies, especially those of developed countries. For example, the service sector accounts for almost three-fourths of the U.S. gross domestic product and is the source of most new U.S. jobs. It therefore should come as no surprise that services are becoming a more integral part of international trade and of the global economy. An international service business is a firm that transforms resources into an intangible output that creates utility for its customers. Examples of international services are British Airways’ transporting of passengers from London to New Delhi; PricewaterhouseCooper’s assistance with the accounting and auditing functions of firms such as BP, Baxter, and IBM; and Dai-Ichi Kangyo Bank’s handling of international corporate business accounts.

Characteristics of International Services

Services have several unique characteristics that create special challenges for firms that want to sell services in the international marketplace. In particular, services often are intangible, are not storable, require customer participation, and may be linked with tangible goods.

SERVICES ARE INTANGIBLE A consumer who goes to a store and buys an Apple iPad has a tangible product, one that can be held, manipulated, used, stored, damaged, or returned. A consumer who goes to an accountant to obtain financial advice leaves with intangible knowledge that cannot be held or seen. (The pieces of paper or electronic documents sometimes associated with services—tax statements, insurance policies, and so on—although tangible themselves, are actually just symbols or representations of the service product itself.) Because of this intangibility, assessing a service’s value or quality often is more difficult than assessing the value or quality of a good.

SERVICES GENERALLY ARE NOT STORABLE Often they cannot be created ahead of time and inventoried or saved for future usage. A service call to repair a broken washing machine can occur only when the technician is physically transported to the site of the broken appliance—and is wasted if no one is home to unlock the door. An empty airline seat, an unused table in a restaurant, and an unsold newspaper all lose their economic value as soon as their associated window of opportunity closes, that is, after the plane takes off, the restaurant kitchen closes, and the next day’s newspaper is printed. The high degree of perishability of services makes capacity planning a critical problem for all service providers. Capacity planning is deciding how many customers a firm will be able to serve at a given time. Failure to provide sufficient capacity often means permanently lost sales, whereas provision of too much capacity raises the firm’s costs and lowers its profits.
SERVICES OFTEN REQUIRE CUSTOMER PARTICIPATION

International services such as tourism cannot occur without the physical presence of the customer. Because of customer involvement in the delivery of the service, many service providers need to customize the product to meet the purchaser’s needs. Thomas Cook, for example, can sell more bus tours in London if it provides Spanish-speaking guides for its Mexican, Venezuelan, and Argentinean clients and Japanese-speaking guides for its Japanese customers. Further, an identical service can be perceived quite differently by each of its customers, thereby creating strategic and marketing problems. The London bus tour, for instance, may be viewed with great excitement by Japanese honeymooners on their first trip outside of Osaka but with boredom by a harried Toshiba executive who has visited the city many times.

MANY SERVICES ARE TIED TO THE PURCHASE OF OTHER PRODUCTS

Many firms offer product-support services—assistance with operating, maintaining, or repairing products for customers. Such services may be critical to the sale of the related product. For example, Swedish appliance maker AB Electrolux manufactures vacuum cleaners, refrigerators, washing machines, and other appliances under such names as Eureka, Frigidaire, Tappan, and Weed Eater. The firm also has service operations set up to repair those products for consumers who buy them, to provide replacement parts, and so on. The firm’s ability to sell its appliances would be harmed substantially if it did not offer these related services. Moreover, not only must it offer the services at its corporate headquarters in Stockholm, Sweden; if Electrolux wants to compete in the U.S., Canadian, and British markets, it must provide repair and parts distribution services there as well.

The Role of Government in International Services Trade

An important dimension of the international services market is the role of government. Many governments seek to protect local professionals and to ensure that domestic standards and credentials are upheld by restricting the ability of foreigners to practice such professions as law, accounting, and medicine. Government regulations often stipulate which firms are allowed to enter service markets and the prices they may charge. For instance, in the United States foreign banks and insurance firms are heavily regulated and must follow the directives of numerous state and federal regulatory agencies. In many countries telecommunications, transportation, and utility firms typically need governmental permission to serve individual markets. For example, airline routes between the United States and Australia are defined by a bilateral agreement between those two countries. Qantas, Australia’s leading airline, can fly passengers between Sydney and San Francisco and between Sydney and Dallas, but it cannot board passengers in San Francisco and fly them to Dallas. Similarly, a U.S. carrier can fly passengers between the United States and Sydney and between the United States and Melbourne but not between Sydney and Melbourne.

The past decade has seen a reduction in domestic and international regulation of many service industries. Continued reductions in barriers to service trade is a high priority of the World Trade Organization. Deregulation and reduced trade barriers have created opportunities for firms in industries such as banking and telecommunications and spurred them to aggressively seek new domestic markets and expand their operations to foreign markets. These changes have also triggered numerous strategic alliances, cross-border investments, and new start-up companies in every corner of the globe.

Managing Service Operations

The actual management of international service operations involves a number of basic issues, including capacity planning, location planning, facilities design and layout, and operations scheduling.

Recall that capacity planning is deciding how many customers the firm will be able to serve at one time. Because of the close customer involvement in the purchase of services, capacity planning affects the quality of the services provided to customers. For example, McDonald’s first restaurant in Russia was considerably larger than many of its other restaurants to accommodate an anticipated higher level of sales volume. Despite this larger size, customer waiting times at the Moscow restaurant were much longer than those in the United States. The lack of restaurant alternatives made Muscovites more willing to stand in long lines for their “Big Mek.” In contrast, if customers had to wait a half-hour to be served in Boulder, Columbus, or even Paris, McDonald’s would lose much of its business.
As with production management, location planning is important for international service operations. By definition most service providers must be close to the customers they plan to serve (exceptions might be information providers that rely on electronic communication). Indeed, most international service operations involve setting up branch offices in each foreign market and then staffing each office with locals.

International service facilities also must be carefully designed so the proper look and layout are established. At times firms operating internationally may highlight their foreign identity or blend their home country heritage with the local culture. At Disneyland Paris, for example, signs are in both English and French. At other times firms may choose to downplay their foreign identity. Most U.S. donut dunkers, for instance, were unaware that Dunkin’ Donuts was owned by a British conglomerate for many years.

Finally, international service firms must schedule their operations to best meet the customers’ needs. For example, airlines transporting passengers from the United States to Europe generally depart late in the evening. Doing this gives passengers the opportunity to spend some of the day working before they depart, and they arrive in the early morning the next day. In contrast, westbound flights usually leave Europe in midmorning and arrive in the United States late that same afternoon. This scheduling provides an optimal arrangement because it factors in customer preferences, time zones, jet lag, and aircraft utilization and maintenance requirements.

Managers need to recognize both the differences and similarities between managing production and service operations. Managers must have a clear understanding of the characteristics of international services and how they affect business operations.

For further consideration: How might the role of government be different for international service operations as opposed to manufacturing?

Managing Productivity in International Business

A key consideration in operations management for many international firms is productivity. At its simplest level productivity is an economic measure of efficiency that summarizes the value of outputs relative to the value of the inputs used to create the outputs.24 Productivity is important for various reasons. For one thing, it helps determine a firm’s overall success and contributes to its long-term survival. For another, productivity contributes directly to the overall standard of living within a particular country. If the firms within a country are especially productive, the country’s citizens will have more products and services to consume. Moreover, the firm’s goods and services can be exported to other countries, thereby bringing additional revenues back into the country of origin. Each of these factors positively impacts gross domestic product and thus benefits the whole country.

Regardless of where a firm operates, one of its fundamental goals must be to continue to enhance its productivity. There are several general strategies a firm can pursue in its efforts to maintain or boost productivity. Three approaches in particular often help firms become more productive: (1) spend more on research and development (R&D), (2) improve operations, and (3) increase employee involvement.

The starting point in improving productivity is often to invest more heavily in R&D. Through R&D firms identify new products, new uses for existing products, and new methods for making products. Each of these outcomes in turn contributes directly to higher productivity. U.S. firms often spend more on R&D than do their foreign competitors, but the gap is narrowing as more foreign firms increasingly invest in R&D. Moreover, U.S. firms have a long and painful history of achieving significant scientific breakthroughs but then being ineffective in getting them to market.25

Another important way to increase productivity is to improve operations. This is where control comes in; a firm seeking to increase productivity needs to examine how it does things and then look for ways to do them more efficiently. Replacing outmoded equipment, automating
selected tasks, training workers to be more efficient, and simplifying manufacturing processes are all ways to improve operations and boost productivity. Japanese manufacturers have been especially successful at increasing productivity through improved operations. JIT manufacturing and inventory control techniques, consistent investments in technology, and a concentration on efficiency have paid big dividends for many Japanese firms. U.S. firms also are paying more attention to operations. For example, General Electric once required three weeks to fill an order for a custom-made industrial circuit breaker box. Further, the firm had six plants making the boxes. Through improved operations—more efficient manufacturing methods and product simplification, among other improvements—the firm now fills such an order in only three days and makes all its circuit breaker boxes in a single facility.

Finally, productivity can be improved by increasing employee involvement. The idea is that if managers give employees more say in how they do their jobs, those employees will become more motivated to work and more committed to the firm’s goals. Further, because they are the ones actually doing the jobs, the employees probably have more insights than anyone else into how to do the jobs better. Increased involvement is generally operationalized through the use of self-managed teams. Groups of workers are formed into teams, each of which has considerable autonomy over how it does its job. Self-managed teams were pioneered in Sweden and the United Kingdom, refined in Japan, and are now used extensively worldwide.

For example, Lufthansa currently uses employee participation in its efforts to cut costs. The firm’s overhead had grown out of control, and it needed to be reduced for the firm to remain competitive. Lufthansa wanted to cut its payroll in Germany but was stymied because of two strong national unions. So the firm enlisted the assistance of the unions to meet its cost-cutting goals. Representatives from the firm and both unions now meet regularly to devise ways to trim payroll costs without resorting to massive layoffs. So far the cuts have focused on reducing work rules and eliminating jobs through attrition and early retirement.

In Practice

- Managers need to understand the meaning and importance of productivity.
- Managers need to know various methods for improving productivity.

For further consideration: Is it possible for an organization to be too productive? Why or why not?

Managing Quality in International Business

Operations management also helps firms maintain and enhance the quality of their products and/or services. Indeed, quality has become such a significant competitive issue in most industries that control strategies invariably have quality as a central focus. The American Society for Quality has defined quality as the totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bear on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs. The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) has been working to develop and refine an international set of quality guidelines. These guidelines, called collectively ISO 9000, provide the basis for a quality certification that is becoming increasingly important in international business. The guidelines were updated and revised in 2000.

The ISO 9000 standards cover such areas as product testing, employee training, record keeping, supplier relations, and repair policies and procedures. Firms that want to meet these standards apply for certification and are audited by a firm chosen by the ISO’s domestic affiliate. These auditors review every aspect of the firm’s business operations in relation to the standards. Many firms report that merely preparing for an ISO 9000 audit has been helpful. Many firms today, including General Electric, DuPont, British Telecom, and Philips Electronics are urging—or in some cases requiring—that their suppliers achieve ISO 9000 certification. All told, more than 162 countries have adopted ISO 9000 as a national standard, and more than 400,000 certificates of compliance have been issued. ISO 14000 is an extension of the same concept to environmental performance. Specifically, ISO 14000 requires that firms document how they are using raw materials more efficiently, managing pollution, and reducing their impact on the environment.
Quality is of vital importance for several reasons. First, many firms today compete on the basis of quality. Firms whose products or services have a poor reputation for quality are unlikely to succeed. For example, some Korean companies initially had difficulty competing in Europe because their products were not perceived by Europeans as being of the same quality as those made by European firms. Such country-of-origin factors play a major role in the marketing and location decisions of international firms. The South Korean chaebols overcame this perceived shortcoming by opening plants in Europe, establishing strategic alliances with European firms, and working to meet ISO 9000 guidelines and standards.

Second, quality is important because it is directly linked with productivity. Higher quality means increased productivity because of fewer defects, fewer resources devoted to reworking defective products, and fewer resources devoted to quality control itself. Finally, higher quality helps firms develop and maintain customer loyalty. Customers who buy products and services that fulfill quality expectations are more likely to buy again from the same firm.

Because of the increasing importance of quality, firms worldwide are putting more and more emphasis on improving the quality of their products and services. Many of these firms call their efforts total quality management. **Total quality management (TQM)** is an integrated effort to systematically and continuously improve the quality of an organization’s products and/or services.

TQM programs vary by firm and must be adapted to fit each firm’s unique circumstances. As shown in Figure 17.2, TQM must start with a strategic commitment to quality. This means the quality initiative must start at the top of the firm, and top managers must be willing to commit the resources necessary to achieve continuous improvement. Firms that only pay lip service to quality and try to fool employees and customers into believing they care about it are almost certain to fail.

With a strong strategic commitment as a foundation TQM programs rely on four operational components to implement quality improvement. Employee involvement almost always is cited as a critical requirement in quality improvement. All employees must participate in helping to accomplish the firm’s quality-related objectives. Materials also must be scrutinized. Firms often can improve the quality of their products by requiring higher-quality parts and materials from their suppliers and procuring inputs only from suppliers whose commitment to quality matches their own. The firm also must be willing to invest in new technology to become more efficient and to achieve higher-quality manufacturing processes. Finally, the firm must be willing to adopt new and improved methods of getting work done.

Firms using TQM have a variety of tools and techniques from which they can draw, including statistical process control and benchmarking. **Statistical process control** is a family of mathematically based tools for monitoring and controlling quality. Its basic purposes are to define the target level of quality, specify an acceptable range of deviation, and then ensure that product quality is hitting the target. For example, Source Perrier SA uses statistical process control to monitor its bottling operations. Managers there have determined that a large bottle of Perrier water should contain 23 fluid ounces. Of course, regardless of how careful managers are, few bottles will have exactly 23 ounces—some will have a bit more, some a bit less. However, if too many bottles are filled with either too much or too little, adjustments must be made. An acceptable range for this situation might be an actual content of between 22.8 and 23.2 ounces, with a target
of 99.9 percent of all bottles having content within this range. Samples of finished products are taken and their actual content measured. As long as 99.9 percent of all samples have between 22.8 and 23.2 ounces, production continues. However, if only 97 percent of one sample falls within the acceptable range, managers may stop production and adjust their bottling equipment.

Another important TQM technique is benchmarking. **Benchmarking** is the process of legally and ethically studying how other firms do something in a high-quality way and then either imitating or improving on their methods. Xerox started the benchmarking movement in the United States as a result of competitive pressures from foreign rivals. Canon, a Japanese firm, once introduced a midsized copier that sold for less than $10,000. Xerox was sure Canon was selling it below cost to gain market share. To learn more about what was going on, Xerox sent a team of managers to Japan to work with Fuji-Xerox, a joint venture a Xerox affiliate had established with Fuji to make copiers in Asia. While there, the managers bought a Canon copier and took it apart. To their surprise they found the Canon copier to be of higher quality and lower cost than the copiers Xerox was making. By imitating various materials and methods used by Canon, Xerox was able to begin making its own higher-quality and lower-cost equipment. Today benchmarking is widely used. For example, smartphone manufacturers rely heavily on benchmarking to keep abreast of their competitors.

---

### In Practice

Managing Information in International Business

A final and increasingly important aspect of operations in international business involves information. **Information** is data in a form that is of value to a manager in making decisions and performing related tasks.

Information is vitally important to any firm. Managers use it in every phase of their work because it is necessary to the decision-making process. Obtaining accurate and timely information is of particular importance to international firms. Managers use information to better understand their firm’s environment—its customers, competitors, and suppliers; the government policies that affect its hiring, producing, and financing decisions; and virtually every other element of its environment.

Managers also use information to help them decide how to respond to the environment. Meetings, reports, data summaries, telephone calls, and e-mail messages are all used as managers set strategic goals and map out strategic plans. Information is also critical to implementing those strategic plans. For example, top managers must communicate their goals and expectations to managers of their foreign operations. Information is needed continually because managers make decisions daily and provide feedback to others in the firm about the consequences of those decisions. Finally, information is an important part of the control process itself as managers monitor and assess how well they are meeting goals and executing plans. No manager likes to be taken by surprise. Having ready access to information that can be used to gauge ongoing performance and actual accomplishments is an important part of a manager’s ability to function effectively.31

The importance of information management depends on the type of strategy and organization design the firm uses. If a firm is using related diversification, it is important that various parts of the firm be able to communicate with other parts so the firm can most effectively capitalize on the potential synergies of this strategy. If the firm is highly centralized, information systems are vital for top managers so they can maintain the control they seek from using this particular design. On the other hand, if a firm is using unrelated diversification, its information systems needs will be quite different. Communication among the various businesses within the firm will be far less important. Finally, if the firm is using a decentralized form of organization
design, its top managers will need and expect somewhat less information reporting by managers of various divisions and units.

The nature of international business adds considerable complexity to information and its role in a firm. In a domestic firm, information is almost certain to be in a common language, within the same legal context (the same accounting standards, financial reporting requirements, and so on will apply), and stored, manipulated, and accessed through common computer software and hardware configurations. In an international firm, information is likely to be in different languages and subject to different legal contexts. For example, foreign partners and foreign governments may constrain the flow of information into and/or out of their countries. Moreover, computer software and hardware configurations are not always compatible. Thus, managing information is not only important for an international firm; it also is more complex than for a domestic firm.

Firms increasingly are working to develop integrated information systems to more effectively manage their information. An information system is a methodology created by a firm to gather, assemble, and provide data in a form or forms useful to managers. Most information systems are computerized, although they do not necessarily have to be—routing slips, files, and file storage systems can effectively manage information in small firms. Larger firms today almost always use computerized systems to manage their information. For example, managers at Laura Ashley, a British fashion and home furnishings chain, use a computerized information system to help the firm manage its information more effectively. Each sale is electronically recorded and used by managers to make decisions about reordering hot-selling merchandise. And, as the chapter opening case indicated, a primary source of Benetton’s competitive advantage lies in mastery of information.

To the extent possible international firms would like to use information systems to link their operations, so their managers in any part of the world can access information and communicate with counterparts from any of the firm’s operations. The sheer size of this undertaking, however, along with computer software and hardware limitations, makes it difficult for firms to achieve true global integration of their information systems. Thus, most firms develop information subsystems for specific functional operations or divisions.

Texas Instruments is further along the path toward a truly global system than are most firms. One of its subsidiaries, Texas Instruments Registration and Identification Systems (TIRIS), is headquartered in the United Kingdom; its product development units are in Germany and the Netherlands; and its manufacturing facilities are in Japan and Malaysia. Managers and engineers at each facility communicate with each other over an integrated computer-based information system that enables them to function as if they were across the hall from each other rather than thousands of miles apart. A manager in England might respond to a new customer order by sending a request electronically to a designer in Germany to make a small modification in a part to meet the customer’s specifications. After the modification is made, the design specifications and order information can be sent electronically to Japan where the products will be manufactured. The original manager in England receives verification that the parts have been made and shipped and can call the customer with the news. At any time during the entire process any manager or designer can electronically monitor what is being done with the order and where it will be sent next. This approach helps Texas Instruments compete internationally by enabling it to reduce its costs and meet differing needs of customers in different countries.

In Practice

- Managers must work to understand the importance of information management in international business.
- International managers need to clearly understand their organization’s information systems and how to most effectively use them.

For further consideration: Can managers ever have too much information? Why or why not?
Summary

International operations management is the set of activities used by an international firm to transform resources into goods or services. Effective operations management is a key ingredient in any firm’s success. A firm’s business strategy provides the major direction it will take regarding its operations management activities.

Production management refers to the creation of tangible goods. One of the first decisions production managers must make concerns supply chain management and vertical integration. Supply chain management, also called sourcing or procuring, encompasses the set of processes and steps used in acquiring resources and materials. Vertical integration refers to the extent to which a firm either provides its own resources or obtains them externally.

A key decision is whether to make or buy inputs. Several options exist. Production managers attempting to select from among them must consider strategic issues as well as risks, flexibility, investments in facilities, and questions of control.

Location decisions are also of paramount importance to effective international operations management. Country-related considerations include resource availability and costs, infrastructure, and country-of-origin marketing effects. Product-related issues are the value-to-weight ratio, production technology, and the importance of customer feedback. Governmental factors that must be considered include stability of the political process, tariffs and other trade barriers, economic development incentives, and the existence of FTZs. Finally, organizational issues include the firm’s strategy, its structure, and its inventory management policies.

International logistics and materials management are also a basic part of production management. Several factors differentiate international from domestic materials management, including shipping distance, transportation modes, and the regulatory context. Packaging, weight, and factory location also must be considered. Technological changes in information technology are revolutionizing logistics and redefining relationships between suppliers and end users.

Service operations management is concerned with the creation of intangible products. The service sector is an increasingly important part of the global economy. International services are generally characterized as being intangible, not storable, requiring customer participation, and linked with tangible goods. The basic issues involved in managing service operations include capacity planning, location planning, design and layout, and operations scheduling.

Productivity is an economic measure of efficiency that summarizes the value of outputs relative to the value of inputs used to create the outputs. Productivity can be assessed at a variety of levels and in many different forms. Experts agree that a firm can improve productivity by spending more on R&D, improving operations, and increasing employee involvement.

Quality is the total set of features and characteristics of a product or service that bears on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs. Quality has become a critical factor in both domestic and global competition. To improve quality, many firms are relying on TQM. TQM starts with a strategic commitment and is based on employee involvement, high-quality materials, up-to-date technology, and effective methods. Quality improvement tools include statistical process control and benchmarking.

Information is data in a form that is of value to a manager. It plays a major role in international business. Managers use information to understand their environment and to make decisions. Information is also an important element in effective control. Managing information in an international firm is complex, and many firms use sophisticated electronic information systems to do so more effectively.

Review Questions

17-1. How does a firm’s corporate strategy affect its operations management?
17-2. How do production management and service operations management differ?
17-3. What is supply chain management? What is vertical integration?
17-4. What basic set of factors must a firm consider when selecting a location for a production facility?
17-5. What basic factors must be addressed when managing international service operations?
17-6. Why is it important for organizations to control productivity?
17-9. How do each of the basic business strategies (differentiation, cost leadership, and focus) relate to operations management?

Questions for Discussion

17-7. How does international operations management relate to international marketing (discussed in Chapter 16)?
17-8. How are a firm’s strategy and operations management interrelated?
17-10. What are the basic similarities and differences between production management and service operations management?

17-11. What is your country’s GDP, and trends of manufacturing and services?

17-12. Identify your country’s top 10 export products. This could be assessed by volume, value or their importance in terms of employment. What is their ranking in the world market?

17-13. What types of information are particularly important to an international firm?

Building Global Skills

You have been brought in to advise a Palestinian olive oil cooperative. The majority of Palestinians live on less than U.S. $2 per day. However, up to 80 percent of the West Bank and Gaza are planted with olive trees. For the farmers, the olive harvest provides between 25 to 50 percent of their annual income.

In the past, a kilo of olive oil sold for just over U.S. $4; recently, this has dropped to half that price due to the political situation.

On the positive side, there is significant demand for olive oil outside the immediate region. At present, only a third of the estimated 15,000 tons of olive is actually exported outside the region. The majority of the oil is sold at low prices to Israel or is unsold. This state of affairs is plunging farmers into debt; they can barely justify their focus on olive oil production.

The olive oil cooperative has a deal with a fair trade organization to ship and distribute their produce across Europe. This means that the olive oil can be sold at a premium price, significantly improving the income of the members of the cooperative.

The deal has also ensured that there are distributors and on-line retailers who can sell the olive oil to a broader target market, although this has not yet been the case in the Middle East. At present, it is impossible for the cooperative to fulfill direct orders themselves and therefore, keep the majority of the profits on each sale.

The member of the cooperative responsible for online sales service has been monitoring foreign orders for several years, and has noticed a steady but dramatic increase in online order attempts from the Middle East. Indeed, the attempted order volume has grown to the point where the online service manager has brought it up at a recent meeting of the cooperative. He suggests that if the orders could be fulfilled directly to the cooperative’s total revenue would increase by at least 25 percent. The primary reasons for the cooperative not being able to fulfill orders from these locations are that the normal shipping times are simply too long and the customs regulations too complicated.

Each season’s costs and distributions are different. The order quantity affects the costs of bottling, labeling, overseas shipping, brokerage, inspection costs and transportation. Collectively, this can equate to 50 percent of the total cost of each bottle.

When you meet the cooperative to find out what they would like you to investigate and advise them on, they present you with four options:

- Continue to follow their current business model and ignore the broader European and Middle Eastern market.
- Bottle and ship the olive oil to key overseas locations. They are suggesting that they partner with fair trade distributors in Dubai (to serve the Middle East) and in London (to handle the European distribution). The cooperative would have to buy a bottling plant, package the bottles of olive oil and organize their shipping (probably via Lebanon or Egypt). The cooperative believes that orders received from the distributors should be fulfilled within around 10 days. The cooperative would have to store the olive oil in bulk tanks, and ready to be bottled, when needed. They propose that the bottling and shipping costs would be passed on to the distributors.
- Ship the olive oil in bulk to the distributors so that they can break down the bulk shipment into bottles, cans and drums for onward sales to retailers and consumers. The bulk shipments would have to be made via freighters and this will mean that the olive oil will have to be shipped out of Lebanon. The distributors would handle all branding and marketing on behalf of the cooperative.
- Identify a fair trade bulk buyer who will handle the shipments of olive oil out of Palestine, by whatever means. The cooperative is prepared to consider bottling the olive oil for the distributor as this is likely to be the more favored approach. Once the olive oil leaves the cooperative, the responsibility and subsequent profits will pass to the distributor.

Form groups of three or four with your classmates and take the following steps:

- Advise the cooperative on the advantages and disadvantages of the four options.
- Which one of these options would you recommend the cooperative to pursue?
- If the best option cannot be achieved, which is the second best option, and is it a poor choice for the cooperative?
- Share and discuss your findings and recommendations with others in your group.
It’s no secret that Walmart is the largest retailer (indeed, the second-largest corporation) on the planet, with total revenues in 2012 of $469 billion. It’s more than six times bigger than the number-two retailer in the United States, Home Depot (2012 revenue: $75 billion), and it’s bigger than Europe’s three largest retailers—France’s Carrefour, Britain’s Tesco, and Germany’s Metro AG—combined. It is, according to the business-information service Hoover’s, “an irresistible (or at least unavoidable) retail force that has yet to meet any immovable objects.” One key to Walmart’s success has been astute supply chain management. For example, Walmart was among the first to use point-of-sale scanners to track product sales and reorder quickly to meet shifting consumer buying patterns. And Walmart has also been ruthless at forcing its suppliers to continuously lower their own costs.

But some experts have recently noted that Walmart is actually getting beaten at its own game by one of its European rivals, Tesco. Food-retail analyst Kevin Coupe points out that “there isn’t a place in the world where Tesco has gone one-on-one with Walmart and Tesco hasn’t won.” In Britain, for example, U.K.-owned Tesco, the world’s third-largest retailer, commands a 34-percent market share—double that of Walmart-owned Asda.

Tesco’s 4,000 stores in 13 countries utilize five basic formats, customized to match the needs of the local market. Its ability to manage stores in multiple formats as well as multiple markets is one of the company’s greatest strengths. The key to this core competence is technology—or more precisely, data management, which is critical in any effort to optimize inventory selection, size, and distribution. Tesco, reports retail-industry analyst Scott Langdoc, “is ruthless in supply-chain management.” In the United Kingdom, for instance, a wireless network connecting all Tesco stores facilitates real-time management of distribution and transportation. Workers use handheld PDAs for data entry and reporting, and radio frequency identification (RFID) tags allow them to conduct crates and pallets to stores carrying anywhere from 3,500 to 60,000 different products in markets located anywhere from Sussex to Seoul.

Tesco is good not only at applying data management to supply chain management, but it has also developed considerable skill in applying data management to the analysis of consumer preferences in different markets. Tesco relies on a data-mining firm called Dunnhumby (of which it has majority control) to manage everything from targeting sales promotions to designing store formats and, perhaps most importantly, developing private-label products. Along with its ability to manage multiple store formats, many analysts regard Tesco’s ability to provide a better and broader range of private brands—products manufactured for retailers who sell them under their own names—as one of the most important factors in the company’s marketing success. U.S. retailers, on the other hand, have never been quite able to convince consumers that private-label products are as good as their brand-name counterparts. Walmart, for example, struggles to get 35 percent of its sales from private-label goods. In many countries, however, Tesco gets as much as 60 percent of its revenue from private-label products.

The difference? Tesco, explains New York retail consultant Burt P. Flickinger III, knows which products to develop, how to price them, and how to integrate them into the product lines of its various stores. “[Our] range of high-quality own-label products,” says CEO Terry Leahy, “is an integral part of our offer in every market in which we operate.” Tesco offers about 12,000 private-label and specialty brands at every price point. Some high-range products, such as Tesco Finest Chocolates, even sell at 50-percent premiums to established brands like Cadbury, and all of them sell at significantly higher margins than national brands.

According to Flickinger, “Tesco is arguably the finest food retailer in the world,” and he suggests that, armed with a unique set of competencies, the British grocer may well be “Walmart’s worst nightmare.” But, like every business, Tesco isn’t perfect. In 2007, it rolled out a new chain of food stores, called Fresh & Easy, in California, Arizona, and Nevada. Unfortunately its timing and location choice couldn’t have been worse. Tesco acquired its properties at the height of the U.S. property boom of the mid-2000s. Unfortunately, California, Arizona, and Nevada were among the worst-hit areas when the bubble in the U.S. housing market burst, dooming Fresh & Easy’s viability. Tesco is now in the process of winding down the chain’s operations. Despite this setback, Walmart knows it cannot rest easy, for the U.S. market is too big for a skillful and aggressive rival like Tesco to ignore.

**Case Questions**

17-14. What is the basis of Tesco’s success?
17-15. How easy (or hard) would it be for rivals like Walmart or Carrefour to adopt Tesco’s data management techniques?
17-16. The global recession slowed down Tesco’s plans for expansion. Why might Tesco have been more harmed by the recession than Walmart?

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

17-17. How are operations management, productivity, and quality interrelated?

17-18. What are the basic similarities and differences between managing in a production environment and managing in a services environment?

17-19. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes


14. “Nissan to say ‘We’re back’ with new Mississippi plant,” Houston Chronicle, November 9, 2000, p. 3C.


CHAPTER 18
International Financial Management

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Analyze the advantages and disadvantages of the major forms of payment in international trade.
2. Identify the primary types of foreign-exchange risk faced by international businesses.
3. Describe the techniques used by firms to manage their working capital.
4. Evaluate the various capital budgeting techniques used for international investments.
5. Discuss the primary sources of investment capital available to international businesses.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs.
Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
Singapore Airlines lives or dies in the international market. It has no domestic market because the land mass of its home, the city-state of Singapore, is only 267 square miles (693 square kilometers). Singapore Airlines competes head-to-head against other major international carriers, including Air France, American Airlines, British Airways, Cathay Pacific, KLM, Japan Air Lines, United, and Qantas.

The foundation of Singapore Airlines’ global success is its reputation for providing high-quality service. It has lured passengers of all nationalities to its flights, particularly highly valued business travelers, who are willing to pay a premium for safe and reliable service. Only 30 percent of its business is done within the friendly turf of East Asia. European operations account for 22 percent of its revenue, and flights to the Americas generate 20 percent. The carrier also provides West Asian, Pacific, and African services.

A truly international carrier, Singapore Airlines flies to more than 62 cities in 35 countries on all six inhabited continents. But its international success brings a major financial challenge—managing its holdings of dozens of currencies it uses in the normal conduct of business. Singapore Airlines receives from its customers a rainbow of currencies, including baht, ringgit, rupees, rand, krone, dollars (Australian, Canadian, Hong Kong, New Zealand, and U.S.), as well as yen, yuan, pounds, Swiss francs, euros, and of course its home currency, the Singapore dollar. It also must pay in local currency for local services—landing fees, ground-handling services, travel agent commissions, and so on—in each country in which it does business.

Managing the firm’s revenues, expenses, assets, and liabilities, all denominated in various foreign currencies, is a major task for Singapore Airlines’ financial officers. To pay local expenses, they must maintain local-currency cash balances in each country. They also must search worldwide for sources of low-cost capital to modernize the firm’s aircraft fleet and thereby maintain its reputation for high-quality service. In addition, they must protect the carrier from exchange rate fluctuations, which will change the value in its home currency that it receives for its services and the costs it incurs for aircraft, fuel, flight services, and ground handling. These executives must thoroughly understand how the contemporary international monetary system operates. They must monitor changes in the foreign-exchange market, be knowledgeable about potential shifts in government economic policies in their major markets, and constantly shop for the best credit terms in such capital markets as Amsterdam, London, Frankfurt, New York, Singapore, and Tokyo.1

In many business transactions, the receipt of goods by the buyer and the receipt of payment by the seller in a form the seller can use immediately do not coincide. Even when a customer pays for goods with a check, the seller will not have access to the funds until the check clears. Until then, the seller risks having the check returned because of insufficient funds. Thus, some type of financing and some degree of trust between buyer and seller are necessary to allow business transactions to occur.

Although these problems affect both domestic and international businesses, the problems of financing and credit checking are far greater for international transactions. Differences in laws, customs, financial practices, and currency convertibility among countries mean that an international firm must know the practices both of its home country and of each country in which it does business—or else hire experts who do. A firm also must acquire specific credit information about the foreign firms with which it wants to deal. On top of these problems is that of transacting in a foreign currency—a problem that either the buyer or the seller must face. Financial officers of international businesses such as Singapore Airlines are well aware of the challenges created by using different currencies. How international businesses address these myriad problems is the subject of this chapter.

Financial Issues in International Trade

We begin by considering the problems associated with financing international trade. In any business transaction, the buyer and the seller must negotiate and reach agreement on such basic issues as price, quantity, and delivery date. However, when the transaction involves a buyer and a seller from two countries, several other issues arise:

- Which currency to use for the transaction
- When and how to check credit
- Which form of payment to use
- How to arrange financing
Choice of Currency

One problem unique to international business is choosing the currency to use to settle a transaction. Exporters and importers usually have clear—and conflicting—preferences as to which currency to use. The exporter typically prefers payment in its home currency so it can know the exact amount it will receive from the importer. The importer generally prefers to pay in its home currency so it can know the exact amount it must pay the exporter. Sometimes an exporter and an importer may elect to use a third currency. For example, if both parties are based in countries with relatively weak or volatile local currencies, they may prefer to deal in a more stable currency such as the euro, the Japanese yen, or the U.S. dollar. By some estimates, more than 70 percent of the exports of less-developed countries and 85 percent of the exports of Latin American countries are invoiced using the U.S. dollar, whereas the exports of many of the new entrants into the European Union favor the euro.2 In some industries one currency is customarily used to settle commercial transactions. In the oil and commercial aircraft industries, for instance, the U.S. dollar serves this function. Among the major exporting countries, the most common practice is for the exporter to invoice foreign customers using its home currency. However, smaller exporting countries may choose to use the currency of a major trading partner; most of Thailand’s exports are invoiced in U.S. dollars, for example.

Credit Checking

Another critical financial issue in international trade concerns the reliability and trustworthiness of the buyer. If an importer is a financially healthy and reliable company and one with whom an exporter has had previous satisfactory business relations, the exporter may choose to simplify the payment process by extending credit to the importer. However, if the importer is financially troubled or known to be a poor credit risk, the exporter may demand a form of payment that reduces its risk.

In commercial transactions it is wise to check customers’ credit ratings. For most domestic business transactions firms have simple and inexpensive mechanisms for doing this. In North America, for instance, firms may ask for credit references or contact established sources of credit information such as Dun & Bradstreet or Moody’s. Similar sources are available in other countries; however, many first-time exporters are unaware of them. Fortunately, an exporter’s domestic banker often can obtain credit information on foreign customers through the bank’s foreign banking operations or through its correspondent bank in a customer’s country. Most national government agencies in charge of export promotion also offer credit-checking services. For example, the International Trade Administration, a branch of the U.S. Department of Commerce, provides financial information about foreign firms for a fee. Numerous commercial credit-reporting services also are available. Country desk officers of the U.S. and Foreign Commercial Service are available to steer new exporters to these services.

The firm that ignores the credit-checking process may run into serious payment problems. For example, one small U.S. manufacturer exported $127,000 worth of fan blades to a new customer in Africa. However, it failed to first contact any of the customer’s credit references. Frustrated by the subsequent lack of payment, the manufacturer turned the account over to a collection agency, which discovered that the supposed customer had vanished and its credit references were nonexistent.3

Implicit in this discussion is an important lesson that many successful international businesspeople have learned the hard way. Because the physical and cultural gaps between the exporter and the importer are often large, finding partners, customers, and distributors with whom to build long-term, trusting relationships is invaluable to any international business.

Method of Payment

Parties to the international transaction normally negotiate a method of payment based on the exporter’s assessment of the importer’s creditworthiness and the norms of their industry. Many forms of payment have evolved over the centuries, including payment in advance, open account, documentary collection, letters of credit, credit cards, and countertrade. As with most aspects of finance, each form involves different degrees of risk and cost.

**PAYMENT IN ADVANCE** Payment in advance is the safest method of payment from the exporter’s perspective: The exporter receives the importer’s money before shipping the goods.
Using this method, the exporter reduces its risk and receives payment quickly, which may be important if its working capital balance is low. Exporters prefer payments in advance to be made by wire transfer, which allows immediate use of the funds. Payment by ordinary check may take four to six weeks to clear the banking systems of the two countries involved, depending on the size and sophistication of their financial services sectors.

From the importer’s perspective, payment in advance is undesirable. The importer must give up the use of its cash before its receipt of the goods and bears the risk that the exporter will fail to deliver the goods in accordance with the sales contract. For these reasons exporters that insist on payment in advance are vulnerable to losing sales to competitors willing to offer more attractive payment terms. Nonetheless, payment in advance may be the preferred form if the importer is a poor credit risk.

OPEN ACCOUNT From the importer’s perspective the safest form of payment is the open account, whereby goods are shipped by the exporter and received by the importer before payment. The exporter then bills the importer for the goods, stipulating the amount, form, and time at which payment is expected. Open accounts also can be used as a marketing tool because they offer potential buyers short-term financing. Use of an open account enables the importer to avoid the fees charged by banks for alternative means of payment such as letters of credit or documentary collection, which will be discussed shortly. An open account has the further advantage of requiring less paperwork than these other forms of payment.

From the exporter’s perspective, an open account may be undesirable for several reasons. First, the exporter must rely primarily on the importer’s reputation for paying promptly. Second, because the transaction does not involve a financial intermediary such as a bank, the exporter cannot fall back on such an intermediary’s expertise if a dispute arises with the importer. Third, the exporter may pay a price for the advantage of doing less paperwork: If the importer refuses to pay, the lack of documentation can hamper the exporter’s pursuit of a claim in the courts of the importer’s home country. Finally, the exporter must tie up working capital to finance foreign accounts receivable. Borrowing working capital collateralized by foreign receivables is often expensive because it may be difficult for domestically oriented lenders to evaluate the riskiness of a firm’s portfolio of foreign receivables. Such borrowing is not impossible, however. Numerous firms engage in a specialized international lending activity called factoring, in which they buy foreign accounts receivable at a discount from face value. The size of the fees these firms charge (in the form of the discount from face value of the receivables) reflects both the time value of money and the factor’s assessment of the portfolio’s riskiness.

As a result, an open account is best suited for dealing with well-established, long-term customers or larger firms with impeccable credit ratings and reputations for timely payment of their bills. For example, U.S. restaurant suppliers that deal with McDonald’s in the United States on an open account basis might offer the same arrangement to McDonald’s subsidiary in the United Kingdom, particularly if McDonald’s pledged to honor its subsidiary’s trade obligations. Similarly, foreign subsidiaries owned by a common parent corporation often deal with each other on an open account basis because the risk of default in such circumstances is minimal. About 31 percent of U.S. international trade involves transactions between subsidiaries of a parent firm.

Payment in advance and an open account share a basic similarity. Both shift the cash flow burden and risk of default to one party in the transaction: to the buyer in the case of payment in advance and to the seller in the case of an open account.

DOCUMENTARY COLLECTION To get around the cash flow and risk problems caused by the use of payment in advance and open accounts, international businesses and banks have developed several other methods to finance transactions. One is documentary collection, whereby commercial banks serve as agents to facilitate the payment process. To initiate this method of payment, the exporter draws up a document called a draft (often called a bill of exchange outside the United States), in which payment is demanded from the buyer at a specified time. After the exporter ships its goods, it submits to its local banker the draft and appropriate shipping documents, such as the packing list and the bill of lading. The bill of lading plays two important roles in documentary collection: It serves both as a contract for transportation between the exporter and the carrier and as a title to the goods in question. Acting on the exporter’s instructions, the exporter’s bank then contacts its correspondent bank in the importer’s country.
Part 4 • Managing International Business Operations

FIGURE 18.1
Using a Sight Draft

Note: In the case of a time draft, the importer makes a promise to pay, not the actual payment, in step 5.
Source: Based on Dynamics of Trade Finance, Chase Manhattan Bank, 1989, p. 42.

(or one of its own branches there, if it has any). The latter bank is authorized to release the bill of lading, thereby transferring title of the goods, when the importer honors the terms of the exporter’s draft. This process is shown in Figure 18.1.

There are two major forms of drafts:

1. A **sight draft** requires payment upon the transfer of title to the goods from the exporter to the importer. When the bank in the importer’s country receives the bill of lading and the sight draft from the exporter’s bank, it notifies the importer, which then pays the draft. On payment, the bank gives the bill of lading to the importer, which then can take title to the goods.

2. A **time draft** extends credit to the importer by requiring payment at some specified time, such as 30 or 60 days, after the importer receives the goods. (A variant of the time draft, the **date draft**, specifies a particular date on which payment will be made.)

To obtain title to the goods when a time draft is used, the importer must write “accepted” on the draft, thereby incurring a legal obligation to pay the draft when it comes due. An accepted time draft is called a **trade acceptance**, which under the laws of most countries is a legally enforceable and negotiable debt instrument. For a fee, the importer’s bank also may accept a time draft, thereby adding its own obligation to pay the draft to the importer’s obligation. In this case the time draft becomes a **banker’s acceptance**.

The exporter may hold either a trade acceptance or a banker’s acceptance until it comes due. However, banks and other commercial lenders often are willing to buy acceptances at a discount, thereby allowing the exporter to receive immediate cash. Some acceptances are sold **without recourse**, meaning the buyer of the acceptance is stuck with the loss if the importer does not pay. Others are sold **with recourse**, meaning the exporter will have to reimburse the buyer of the acceptance in the case of nonpayment by the importer. Exporters planning to sell their accepted time drafts must balance the prices they will receive for the drafts against the additional banking fees they must pay (in the case of banker’s acceptances) and the degree of risk they are willing to bear (in the case of acceptances sold with recourse). Because of their greater riskiness, acceptances sold without recourse are sold at bigger discounts from face value than acceptances sold with recourse. Similarly, because banker’s acceptances are guaranteed by the bank as well as by the importer, they are less risky and usually are discounted less than trade acceptances are.

For an exporter, payment through documentary collection has several advantages over the use of open accounts. First, the bank fees for documentary collection are quite reasonable because the banks act as agents rather than risk takers (except in the case of a banker’s acceptance). Second, a trade acceptance or a banker’s acceptance is an enforceable debt instrument under the laws of most countries, thereby solidifying the exporter’s legal position if the importer defaults on its promise to pay. Third, using banks simplifies the collection process for the exporter and substitutes the banks’ superior expertise in effecting international payments for
the exporter’s presumably inferior knowledge. Further, because the collection agent is a local
bank, and the importer does not want to jeopardize its business reputation with a local lender, the
importer is more likely to pay a time draft promptly than an invoice sent under an open account.
Finally, because of the enforceability of acceptances in courts of law, arranging financing for
foreign accounts receivable is easier and less expensive when documentary collection is used
than when open accounts are used.

With documentary collection the exporter still bears some risks, however. Suppose local
business conditions change or the importer finds a cheaper supply source. In such a case, an
importer may simply refuse the shipment and decline to accept the draft, perhaps under a false
pretext that the shipment was late or the goods improperly packed. The importer’s default on
the sales contract places the exporter in the unenviable position of having its goods piled up on
a foreign loading dock (and running up storage fees known as demurrage) while receiving no
payment for them. Alternatively, the importer may default on the time draft when it comes due.
The exporter may have legal remedies in either case, but pursuing them is often costly in terms
of time, energy, and money.

**LETTERS OF CREDIT** To avoid such difficulties, exporters often request payment using a *letter
of credit*, a document that is issued by a bank and contains its promise to pay the exporter
on receiving proof that the exporter has fulfilled all requirements specified in the document.
Because of the bank’s pledge, the exporter bears less risk by using a letter of credit than by
relying on documentary collection. However, cautious bankers are unlikely to issue a letter of
credit unless they fully expect the importer to reimburse them. Thus, using a letter of credit has
the additional advantage that the exporter benefits from the bank’s knowledge of the importer’s
creditworthiness, the requirements of the importer’s home country customs service, and any
restrictions the importer’s home country government imposes on currency movements.

Usually, an importer applies to its local bank—in most cases, one with which it has
an ongoing relationship—for a letter of credit. The bank then assesses the importer’s
creditworthiness, examines the proposed transaction, determines whether it wants collateral,
and, assuming everything is in order, issues the letter of credit. The letter of credit details the
conditions under which the importer’s bank will pay the exporter for the goods. The conditions
imposed by the issuing bank reflect normal sound business practices. Most letters of credit
require the exporter to supply an invoice, appropriate customs documents, a bill of lading,
a packing list, and proof of insurance. Depending on the product involved, the importer’s bank
may demand additional documentation before funding the letter, such as the following:

- **Export licenses** are issued by an agency of the exporter’s home country. They may be
  required for politically sensitive goods, such as nuclear fuels or high-technology goods that
  may have military uses.
- **Certificates of product origin** confirm that the goods being shipped were produced in the
  exporting country. They may be required by the importing country so it can assess tariffs
  and enforce quotas.
- **Inspection certificates** may be needed to provide assurance that the products have been
  inspected and conform to relevant standards. For example, imported foodstuffs often must
  meet rigorous standards regarding pesticide residues, cleanliness, sanitation, and storage.

After issuing the letter of credit, the importer’s bank sends it and the accompanying
documents to the exporter’s bank, which advises the exporter of the terms of the instrument,
thereby creating an *advised letter of credit*. The exporter can also request its bank to add
its own guarantee of payment to the letter of credit, thereby creating a *confirmed letter of
credit*. This type of instrument is particularly appropriate when the exporter is concerned about
political risk. If the importer’s home country government later imposes currency controls or
otherwise blocks payment by the importer’s bank, the exporter can look to the confirming bank
for payment.

Another type of letter of credit is the *irrevocable letter of credit*, which cannot be
altered without the written consent of both the importer and the exporter. A bank may also
issue a *revocable letter of credit*, which the bank may alter at any time and for any reason.
An irrevocable letter of credit offers the exporter more protection than a revocable letter of credit.
However, amending such an instrument can be cumbersome, expensive, and time consuming.
Banks that issue, advise on, or confirm letters of credit charge for their services. Typically the issuing bank charges from 0.5 percent to 1.5 percent of the transaction amount for the letter of credit, depending on the importer’s creditworthiness. Often the importer and the exporter agree to split this cost between them. When goods are sold under a letter of credit, payment does not depend on meeting the terms of the sales contract between the buyer and seller. Rather, the bank issuing the letter of credit will make payment only when the terms of that letter have been fulfilled. Thus, the exporter must carefully analyze the letter’s terms before agreeing to them, to be sure they are compatible with the sales contract.

Surprisingly, it is this feature of letters of credit—that they are paid when their terms are met, not when the sales contract is fulfilled—that makes them so useful in international trade. Once the exporter meets the letter’s terms, the importer’s bank is obligated to pay the exporter even if the importer refuses the shipment or fails to pay for the goods. Such difficulties become the problem of the importer’s bank, not the exporter. However, the likelihood of such difficulties arising are reduced because the importer is unlikely to jeopardize its business reputation or credit lines with its bank. Figure 18.2 shows how a letter of credit is used in a typical international transaction.

Although the issuing bank will not pay the exporter until all the terms of the letter of credit have been met, the exporter can often sell the letter prior to the expected payment date to its bank or another commercial lender at a discount from the face value. The discount will reflect the time value of money, the risk the buyer of the instrument bears if the issuing bank defaults on the transaction, and the buyer’s administrative costs. Because confirmed and irrevocable letters of credit reduce the risk of secondary buyers, such letters sell for higher prices (or lower discounts from face value) than do letters of credit without these features. Thus, an exporter planning to sell a letter of credit prior to delivery must trade off the inconvenience or higher fees paid for these less risky types against the higher prices it will receive from secondary buyers of them.

CREDIT CARDS For small international transactions, particularly those between international merchants and foreign retail customers, credit cards such as American Express, VISA, and MasterCard may be used. A firm may tap into the well-established credit card network to facilitate international transactions, subject to the normal limitations of these cards. The credit card companies collect transaction fees (usually 2 to 4 percent) from the merchant and in return assume the costs of collecting the funds from the customer and any risks of nonpayment. The companies typically charge an additional 1 to 3 percent for converting currencies. However, they offer exporters and importers none of the help banks do in dealing with the paperwork and documentation requirements of international trade.

COUNTERTRADE An additional method used for payment in international transactions is countertrade. Countertrade occurs when a firm accepts something other than money as payment for its goods or services. Forms of countertrade include barter, counterpurchase, buy-back, and offset purchase.

**FIGURE 18.2**

Using a Letter of Credit

Source: Based on Dynamics of Trade Finance, Chase Manhattan Bank, 1989, pp. 62–63.
The simplest form of countertrade is barter, in which each party simultaneously swaps its products for the products of the other. In the late 1990s, for instance, the State Trading Corporation of India agreed to exchange wheat and other grains to Turkmenistan in return for cotton. Similarly, Azerbaijan agreed to import 100,000 tons of wheat from Romania, following a poor harvest in Azerbaijan and a bumper crop in Romania. Payment by Azerbaijan was in the form of crude oil.

A more sophisticated form of countertrade is counterpurchase, whereby one firm sells its products to another at one point in time and is compensated in the form of the other’s products at some future time. Counterpurchase is the most common form of countertrade. It is sometimes called parallel barter, because it disconnects the timing of contract performance by the participating parties. In this way, one part of the transaction can go ahead even if the second requires more time. Boeing, for example, has used counterpurchase to sell aircraft to Saudi Arabia in return for oil and to India in return for coffee, rice, castor oil, and other goods.

Another variant of countertrade involves buy-back, or compensation arrangements whereby one firm sells capital goods to a second firm and is compensated in the form of output generated as a result of their use. For example, Japan’s Fukusuke Corporation sold 10 knitting machines and raw materials to Chinatex, a Shanghai-based clothing manufacturer, in exchange for one million pairs of underwear to be produced on the knitting machines. Similarly, Internationale Vine of Latvia agreed to buy equipment for producing apple juice concentrate from PKL of Switzerland and to pay for the equipment with output from the machinery. Because it links payment with output from the purchased goods, a buy-back is particularly useful when the buyer of the goods needs to ensure the exporter will provide necessary after-sale services such as equipment repairs or instructions on how to use the equipment.

Another important type of countertrade involves offset purchases, whereby part of the cost of an exported good is offset by production in the importing country. Offset arrangements are particularly important in sales to foreign governments of expensive military equipment such as fighter jets or tanks. For instance, for a defense contract greater than $10 million, the United Arab Emirates requires the seller to establish joint ventures with local companies that will cumulatively generate profits to offset 60 percent of the contract’s cost within seven years. Similarly, export sales of the new U.S. F-35 Joint Strike Fighter have been boosted by offset arrangements. A Fiat subsidiary is responsible for production of the aircraft’s turbine.
motor, and BAE, the British aerospace giant, is manufacturing its tail section.\textsuperscript{12} Balancing export sales and counterpurchase obligations on a deal-by-deal basis is often cumbersome. To facilitate countertrade, firms may agree to establish clearinghouse accounts, in which the exporting firm incurs a counterpurchase obligation of an equivalent value, which is recorded in its clearinghouse account. When the exporting firm eventually buys goods from its partner, its clearinghouse obligation is reduced. Thus, a firm does not need to balance any single countertrade transaction, although it must honor its cumulative set of obligations by the time its clearinghouse account expires.

Sometimes firms enter into countertrade agreements to expand their international sales, without having experience in or desire to engage in countertrade. In this case countertrade agreements often permit the use of switching arrangements, whereby countertrade obligations are transferred from one firm to another. A variety of consulting firms, many headquartered in either London (because of access to capital markets) or Vienna (because of access to the former communist countries), is available to provide financing, marketing, and legal services needed by international businesses engaging in switching arrangements.\textsuperscript{13} Japan’s soga shosha (large trading companies discussed in Chapter 12) are particularly skillful in the use of switching arrangements and clearinghouse accounts because of the soga shosha’s extensive worldwide operations. A soga shosha might assist in the sale of Mitsubishi trucks in Ghana, taking payment in cocoa, which then can be sold to keiretsu-linked food processors back in Japan or to independent candy makers anywhere in the world.\textsuperscript{14}

Some firms specialize in exploiting countertrade opportunities by constructing complicated multiple-market trades as part of the firms’ normal business. Consider, for example, Marc Rich & Co., which did more than $3 billion in business annually in the former Soviet Union. (Marc Rich & Co. later morphed into Swiss-headquartered Glencore Xstrata PLC, a leading multinational commodities trading and mining conglomerate.) Soon after the Soviet Union broke up in the early 1990s, the firm engineered a complicated deal among several cash-poor countries that began with its buying 70,000 tons of Brazilian raw sugar on the open market (see Map 18.1). It then hired a Ukrainian firm to refine the sugar and paid the refinery with part of the sugar. Next, it swapped the rest of the refined sugar to oil refineries in Siberia, which needed the sugar for their workers, in return for gasoline. It then swapped 130,000 tons of gasoline to Mongolia in return for 35,000 tons of copper concentrate. The copper concentrate was shipped to copper refineries in Kazakhstan, which received payment in kind. The refined copper then was sold on the world market. At that point, Marc Rich—after several months of efforts—was able to extract its profits on these countertrades in the form of hard currency.\textsuperscript{15}

\textbf{MAP 18.1}
\textit{Countertrade by Marc Rich}

![Diagram showing the countertrade process involving Marc Rich, Ukraine, Siberia, Kazakhstan, and Mongolia.](M18_GRIF8218_08_SE_C18.indd)
Informed estimates suggest countertrade accounts for 15 to 20 percent of world trade, although some published reports claim the proportion approaches 40 percent. Countertrade is of particular importance to countries that lack a convertible currency and is often used as a means of reducing the drain on scarce holdings of convertible foreign currencies. The former Soviet Union, for example, was a major countertrade user. Often goods were traded between the Soviet Union and its former allies using clearinghouse accounts. The former communist countries also engaged in countertrade with capitalist countries. Moreover, when countries are gripped by financial crisis, countertrade may be used as a last resort. In 2002, for example, Argentina’s economy was devastated by a series of financial problems. To keep its local auto business afloat, DaimlerChrysler announced it would accept harvested grain in payment from its Argentine customers.

Table 18.1 summarizes the benefits and costs of the various methods of payment. Techniques that reduce risk for the exporter generally are more expensive. Thus, the exporter must decide how much risk it is willing to bear. In dealing with a new and unknown customer, an exporter may choose a safer but more expensive means of securing payment. In dealing with well-established clients, less expensive but riskier payment methods may be acceptable.

### TABLE 18.1 Payment Methods for International Trade

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Timing of Payment</th>
<th>Timing of Delivery of Goods</th>
<th>Risk(s) for Exporter</th>
<th>Risk(s) for Importer</th>
<th>Availability of Financing for Exporter</th>
<th>Condition(s) Favoring Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Payment in advance</td>
<td>Before delivery of goods</td>
<td>After payment, when goods arrive in importer’s country</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Exporter may fail to deliver goods</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Exporter has strong bargaining power; importer unknown to exporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open account</td>
<td>According to credit terms offered by exporter</td>
<td>When goods arrive in importer’s country</td>
<td>Importer may fail to pay account balance</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Yes, by factoring of accounts receivable</td>
<td>Exporter has complete trust in importer; exporter and importer are part of the same corporate family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentary collection</td>
<td>At delivery if sight draft is used; at specified later time if time draft is used</td>
<td>Upon payment if sight draft is used; upon acceptance if time draft is used</td>
<td>Importer may default or fail to accept draft</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Yes, by discounting draft from its face value</td>
<td>Exporter trusts importer to pay as specified; when risk of default is low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter of credit</td>
<td>After terms of letter are fulfilled</td>
<td>According to terms of sales contract and letter of credit</td>
<td>Issuing bank may default; documents may not be prepared correctly</td>
<td>Exporter may honor terms of letter of credit but not terms of sales contract</td>
<td>Yes, by discounting letter from its face value</td>
<td>Exporter lacks knowledge of importer; importer has good credit with local bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit card</td>
<td>According to normal credit card company procedures</td>
<td>When goods arrive in importer’s country</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Exporter fails to deliver goods</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Transaction size is small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countertrade</td>
<td>When exporter sells countertraded goods</td>
<td>When goods arrive in importer’s country</td>
<td>Exporter may not be able to sell countertraded goods</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Importer lacks convertible currency; importer or exporter wants access to foreign distribution network</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Financing Trade

Financing terms are often important in closing an international sale. In most industries standard financing arrangements exist, and an international firm must be ready to offer those terms to its foreign customers. Depending on the product, industry practice may be to offer the buyer 30 to 180 days to pay after receipt of an invoice. For the sale of complex products such as commercial aircraft, which will be delivered several years in the future, the payment terms may be much more complicated. They may include down payments, penalty payments for cancellation or late delivery, inflation clauses, and concessionary interest rates for long-term financing. In many emerging markets, capital markets are often not well developed, and local lenders may charge extremely high interest rates, especially to smaller borrowers. Thus, exporters with access to low-cost capital can gain a competitive advantage by offering financing to foreign customers who lack access to cheaper financing. Of course, by acting as a lender, the exporter increases the risk of not being paid for its goods. Before deciding to extend credit, the exporter must examine the trade-off between the benefits of increased sales and the higher risks of default.

As noted previously, banks and other commercial lenders often are willing to finance accounts receivable of exporters by purchasing letters of credit or time drafts or factoring open accounts at a discount from face value. Many developed countries supplement the services of these commercial lenders with government-supported financing programs to promote exports. For example, the Export-Import Bank of the United States (Eximbank) offers a working capital guarantee loan program to encourage U.S. exports. Under this program, commercial loans made to finance exportable inventory and foreign accounts receivable will be reimbursed 90 percent if the importer defaults on its obligations. Eximbank activities aided $35.8 billion of exports in 2012. Eximbank has made a special effort to serve the needs of small businesses; in 2012, it provided $6.1 billion of support for U.S. small businesses exports. Eximbank also offers medium-term loan guarantees (up to 7 years’ duration) and long-term guarantees (more than 10 years’ duration) for telecommunications, electrical generation, and transportation infrastructure projects.

Managing Foreign Exchange Risk

By using contracts denominated in a foreign currency, Singapore Airlines and other firms that conduct international business are exposed to the risk that exchange rate fluctuations may affect the firms adversely. Experts have identified three types of foreign-exchange exposure confronting international firms: transaction, translation, and economic.

Transaction Exposure

A firm faces transaction exposure when the financial benefits and costs of an international transaction can be affected by exchange rate movements that occur after the firm is legally obligated to complete the transaction. Many typical international business transactions denominated in a foreign currency can lead to transaction exposure, including the following:

- Purchase of goods, services, or assets
- Sales of goods, services, or assets
ChaPter 18 • international FinanCial ManageMent

Suppose that Saks Fifth Avenue, to meet its Christmas needs, agrees on April 10 to buy 5 million Swiss francs’ worth of Rolex watches from Rolex’s Swiss manufacturer, payable on delivery on October 10. Saks now faces the risk that exchange rate fluctuations will raise the cost of the watches denominated in its home currency—in this case, U.S. dollars—by the time the transaction is completed on October 10. (Of course, exchange rate movements could lower its costs.) Saks could avoid this risk by contracting in dollars, but then Rolex would face transaction exposure. In most international transactions, one of the parties has to bear transaction exposure. Saks has several options for responding to this transaction exposure, which we will discuss next. In particular it can

• Go naked
• Buy Swiss francs forward
• Buy Swiss franc currency options
• Acquire an offsetting asset

GO NAKED Saks can ignore the transaction exposure and deliberately assume the foreign-exchange risk by choosing to buy the necessary Swiss francs on October 10 when it needs to pay for the watches. By doing so, Saks is betting that the U.S. dollar will rise in value relative to the Swiss franc between April and October. This approach has several advantages. First, Saks does not have to tie up any capital in April for the transaction because its only obligation is to pay 5 million Swiss francs on October 10. Second, Saks can benefit from any appreciation of the U.S. dollar versus the Swiss franc. If this happens, Saks can pay its bill on October 10 using fewer dollars than it otherwise would have used. This advantage, of course, can turn sour if the dollar falls relative to the franc. In this unfortunate circumstance, Saks would be forced to pay more U.S. dollars for the watches than it had anticipated. By going naked, however, Saks avoids paying fees to any intermediaries, an expense it would incur if it adopted any of the three other strategies, discussed next.

BUY SWISS FRANCs FORWARD Saks has several ways of avoiding the transaction exposure if it wants. For example, it could buy Swiss francs forward in the foreign-exchange market for delivery on October 10, thereby locking in the price in April that it will pay for the 5 million francs in October. This strategy has two advantages. First, Saks guarantees the dollar price it will pay for the imported watches and protects itself from declines in the value of the dollar. Second, it ties up none of its capital until it receives the goods because its only agreement is to buy the currency on October 10 and pay Rolex the 5 million francs on delivery of the watches. On the other hand, with this strategy Saks will miss the opportunity to benefit from any appreciation of the U.S. dollar relative to the Swiss franc. It also will bear some transaction costs in the form of fees and markups charged by the bank through which Saks buys the forward Swiss francs.

A variant of this approach is for Saks to purchase Swiss franc currency futures, as discussed in Chapter 8. Whether the firm chooses to buy currency futures or use the forward market depends on the price of francs in these two markets as well as the relative transaction costs of using the two markets.

BUY SWISS FRANC CURRENCY OPTIONS Alternatively, Saks could acquire a currency options contract allowing it to buy 5 million Swiss francs in October. As discussed in Chapter 8, the purchase of an options contract gives the buyer the opportunity, but not the obligation, to buy a certain currency at a given price in the future. By buying an option, Saks can guarantee it will pay no more for its francs than the price stated in its options contract. When payment for the watches is due in October, Saks can exercise the option if the U.S. dollar has declined in value relative to the franc or let the option expire if the U.S. dollar has increased in value—hence, the advantage of an options contract over a forward contract or a futures contract.

Saks is equally protected against depreciation of the dollar by all three types of foreign-exchange transactions; however, it can benefit from an appreciation of the U.S. dollar with an options contract (by letting it expire unused) but not with a forward or a futures contract. The options contract’s disadvantage is that it is more expensive than other hedging techniques. Options typically cost from 3.0 to 5.5 percent of the transaction’s total value.
Accordingly, some multinational corporations (MNCs), such as Merck, prefer currency options to currency futures or forward contracts when hedging their transaction risk because of the “heads I win, tails I don’t lose” feature of options. Other MNCs find options too expensive relative to their expected benefit.19

**ACQUIRE AN OFFSETTING ASSET** Another option for Saks is to neutralize its liability of 5 million Swiss francs pending on October 10 by acquiring an offsetting asset of equivalent size denominated in Swiss francs. For example, suppose the interest rate in April on a six-month certificate of deposit (CD) in Switzerland is 8 percent annually (4 percent for six months). By purchasing a six-month CD in April from a Swiss bank such as Credit Suisse for 4,807,692 francs, Saks will receive 5 million francs (4,807,692 × 1.04) in October when its payment obligation to Rolex comes due. By matching its assets denominated in francs with its liabilities denominated in francs, Saks will suffer no net transaction exposure. The disadvantage of this approach is that Saks has to tie up some of its capital in a Swiss bank until October. Saks will earn interest on the Swiss CD, but it may have been able to earn a higher rate of return if it used its capital elsewhere.

Of course, if Saks (or a member of its corporate family) already had an existing franc-denominated CD or receivable due in October, Saks could have used that asset to offset its pending franc-denominated liability to Rolex. Suppose, for example, Saks had licensed a Swiss T-shirt manufacturer to use the Saks logo on its shirts. If Saks expected to receive 5 million Swiss francs in royalties in October from the licensing deal, it could have offset those funds against its October liability to Rolex to neutralize its transaction exposure, rather than buying the Swiss CD. If the licensing deal were to yield only 2 million Swiss francs instead of 5 million, Saks could still pair up the two transactions. To eliminate its exposure totally, Saks would then need to cover its net transaction exposure of 3 million francs using one of the means just discussed.

Table 18.2 summarizes the benefits and costs of these different techniques available to manage transaction exposure. Unfortunately, in many developing markets these techniques are unavailable or expensive to use. As a result, many companies operating in such economies choose to go naked. A survey conducted by Goldman Sachs of large Indonesian companies with large foreign debts suggested that half of them went naked (i.e., did not hedge these debts), and most of the rest hedged only a small portion of their foreign debts. No doubt the cost of hedging played an important role in their behavior. Consider the case of one Indonesian company that did hedge, Indo-Rama Synthetics. In 1997, just before the Asian currency crisis struck, it borrowed $175 million from a consortium of foreign lenders, payable over a five-year period, to finance an expansion of its operations. Indo-Rama paid a premium of about 10 percent of the face

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Benefit(s)</th>
<th>Cost(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Go naked</td>
<td>No capital outlay; potential for capital gain if home currency rises in value</td>
<td>Potential for capital loss if home currency falls in value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy forward currency</td>
<td>Elimination of transaction exposure; flexibility in size and timing of contract</td>
<td>Fees to banks; lost opportunity for capital gain if home currency rises in value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy currency future</td>
<td>Elimination of transaction exposure; ease and relative inexpensiveness of futures contract</td>
<td>Small brokerage fee; inflexibility in size and timing of contract; lost opportunity for capital gain if home currency rises in value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy currency option</td>
<td>Elimination of transaction exposure; potential for capital gain if home currency rises in value</td>
<td>Premium paid up front for option because of its “heads I win, tails I don’t lose” nature; inflexibility in size and timing of option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquire offsetting asset</td>
<td>Elimination of transaction exposure</td>
<td>Effort or expense of arranging offsetting transaction; lost opportunity for capital gain if home currency rises in value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
value of the loan to lock in an exchange rate of 2,650 rupiah per dollar for its loan repayments. In hindsight this turned out to be a fortunate move because within a year the rupiah had fallen in value by more than 70 percent against the dollar. Many of Indo-Rama’s compatriots were not so farsighted—or perhaps were unwilling at the time to pay the 10 percent premium to lock in a forward rate for repayment of their debts. There is little doubt that the 1997–1998 Asian currency crisis was worsened by the failure of many Asian firms to manage their transaction exposure effectively.20

Translation Exposure

As part of reporting its operating results to its shareholders, a firm must integrate the financial statements of its subsidiaries into a set of consolidated financial statements. Problems can arise, however, when the financial statements of a foreign subsidiary are denominated in a foreign currency rather than the firm’s home currency. **Translation exposure** is the impact on the firm’s consolidated financial statements of fluctuations in exchange rates that change the value of foreign subsidiaries as measured in the parent’s currency. If exchange rates were fixed, translation exposure would not exist. (Because translation exposure develops from the need to consolidate financial statements into a common currency, it is often called **accounting exposure.**)

Consider this simple example of translation exposure. Suppose GM transfers $20 million to Barclays Bank to open an account for a new British distribution subsidiary, General Motors Import & Distribution Company Ltd., so the subsidiary can begin operations. Further assume that the exchange rate on the day of the transfer is £1 = $2.00. Thus, the subsidiary’s sole asset is a bank account containing £10 million. If the value of the dollar were to rise to £1 = $1.95, the subsidiary still would have £10 million. However, when GM’s accountants prepare the firm’s consolidated financial statements, its investment in the British subsidiary would be worth only $19,500,000 (10 million pounds × $1.95). GM thus would suffer a translation loss of $500,000 ($20,000,000 – $19,500,000).

Financial officers can reduce their firm’s translation exposure through the use of a balance sheet hedge. A **balance sheet hedge** is created when an international firm matches its assets denominated in a given currency with its liabilities denominated in that same currency. This balancing occurs on a currency-by-currency basis, not on a subsidiary-by-subsidiary basis. For example, Georgia-based AFLAC Inc. is the largest foreign provider of supplemental insurance in Japan. To protect its $13.6-billion net investment in Japan from translation exposure, the company uses a two-pronged balance sheet hedge. Its Japanese insurance subsidiary owns $8.3 billion of U.S. dollar-denominated securities. To finance its other operations, the parent corporation borrowed $850 million worth of yen from Japanese lenders. Through these transactions, only a net $4.4 billion of AFLAC’s assets are vulnerable to translation exposure should the yen fall in value.21 The Walt Disney Company, Pfizer, Procter & Gamble, and McDonald’s follow similar strategies to reduce their translation exposure.22

A controversy exists among financial experts over whether or not firms should protect themselves from translation exposure. Some experts believe managers should ignore translation exposure and instead focus on reducing transaction exposure, arguing that transaction exposure can produce true cash losses to the firm, whereas translation exposure produces only paper, or accounting, losses. Other experts disagree, stating that translation exposure should not be ignored. For instance, firms forced to take write-downs of the value of their foreign subsidiaries may trigger default clauses in their loan contracts if their debt-to-equity ratios rise too high. Further, in AFLAC’s case its Japanese operations are so large relative to the rest of the company—75 percent of its premium income is generated there—that the company feels compelled to manage its translation exposure.

Economic Exposure

The third type of foreign-exchange exposure is **economic exposure**, the impact on the value of a firm’s operations of unanticipated exchange rate changes. From a strategic perspective, the threat of economic exposure deserves close attention from the firm’s highest policy makers because it affects virtually every area of operations, including global production, marketing, and financial planning. Unanticipated exchange rate fluctuations may affect a firm’s overall sales and profitability in numerous markets. In the first half of 2011, for example, the value of the yen
and the euro rose relative to the U.S. dollar in world currency markets. Japanese and European exporters to the United States faced the unhappy choice of either raising the prices in dollars that they charged their U.S. customers and seeing their market shares erode or holding the line on the dollar prices they charged their U.S. customers and seeing their profit margins cut.

Long-term investments in property, plant, and equipment are particularly vulnerable to economic exposure, even if they are located in a firm’s home country. If the yen rises in value, for instance, Japanese automakers such as Toyota and Nissan understand that their Japanese factories will become less competitive relative to automobile factories located in countries whose currencies are declining in value.

One approach firms can use to address the problem of economic exposure is to use an operational hedge (or natural hedge) by trying to match their revenues in a given currency with an equivalent flow of costs. Some firms, such as Sony, have tried to cut their economic exposure to exchange rate fluctuations by localizing their manufacturing, research and development, and parts procurement to better match their revenue flows and cost flows by country. Similarly, Japanese auto companies like Toyota and Honda or European manufacturers like BMW and Mercedes-Benz generate enormous revenues denominated in U.S. dollars because of their success in the U.S. market. By assembling vehicles in the United States, they can limit their economic exposure by offsetting their dollar-denominated revenue flows with significant costs denominated in dollars.

As these examples suggest, an important element of managing economic exposure is analyzing likely changes in exchange rates. (Map 18.2 shows exchange rate changes versus the dollar over a four-year period ending in July 2013.) A wide variety of exchange rate experts and expertise is available to assist international businesses in this task. These range from private consultants to the staffs of international banks to the published forecasts of international organizations such as the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund. Exchange rate experts scrutinize many of the factors discussed in Chapter 8. The theory of purchasing power parity, for example, provides guidance regarding long-term trends in exchange rates between countries. In the short term, forward exchange rates have been found to be unbiased predictors of future spot rates. Because of the importance of interest arbitrage in establishing equilibrium exchange rates, experts also may forecast countries’ monetary policies to predict future currency values. Balance of payments performance also is useful because it provides insights into whether a country’s industries are remaining competitive in world markets and whether foreigners’ short-term claims on a country are increasing. Prospects for inflation also are carefully assessed because inflation can affect a country’s export prospects, demand for imports, and future interest rates.
Management of Working Capital

Managing foreign-exchange exposure is related to another task that financial officers of international businesses perform—managing working capital, or cash, balances. This task is more complicated for MNCs than for purely domestic firms. An MNC’s financial officers must consider the firm’s working capital position for each of its foreign subsidiaries and in each currency in which the subsidiaries do business, as well as for the firm as a whole. Singapore Airlines, for instance, routinely uses more than 20 currencies in its operations, and its financial officers must monitor its holdings of each of these currencies. In the process, they must balance three corporate financial goals:

1. Minimizing working capital balances
2. Minimizing currency conversion costs
3. Minimizing foreign-exchange risk

Minimizing Working Capital Balances

Financial officers seek to minimize the firm’s working capital balances. Both domestic and international firms must hold working capital for two reasons: to facilitate day-to-day transactions and to cover the firm against unexpected demands for cash. (Note that the term cash refers here to actual cash, checking account balances, and highly liquid marketable securities that normally carry low yields.) Obviously, a firm does not want to run out of cash on hand. Failure to have sufficient cash to pay workers or suppliers can lead, at a minimum, to expensive emergency borrowings or, in the worst case, to an embarrassing loss of reputation that may cause suppliers and lenders to cut off future lines of credit. However, the rate of return on working capital is extremely low, and financial officers prefer to capture higher rates of return, if possible, by investing surplus funds in some other form than cash. Thus, they need to balance the firm’s needs for cash against the opportunity cost of holding the firm’s financial assets in such low-yielding forms.

One technique MNCs can use to minimize their company-wide cash holdings is centralized cash management. A centralized cash manager, typically a member of the MNC’s corporate treasury staff, coordinates the MNC’s worldwide cash flows. Each of the MNC’s subsidiaries sends to the centralized cash manager a daily cash report and an analysis of the subsidiary’s expected cash balances and needs over the short run, which may range from a week to a month depending on the parent corporation’s operating requirements. These reports then are assembled by the centralized cash manager’s staff, who uses them to reduce the precautionary balances held by the corporation as a whole and to plan short-term investment and borrowing strategies for the MNC. Instead of each subsidiary holding precautionary, “just in case” cash balances, the staff may direct each subsidiary to send cash in excess of its operational needs to a central corporate bank account. The centralized cash manager will pool these funds, funneling them to subsidiaries when and if emergencies arise. The unexpected need for additional cash by one subsidiary often will be offset by an unexpected excess of cash generated by a second. Thus, the centralized cash manager is able to reduce the precautionary cash balances held by the firm as a whole and thereby reduce the amount of the firm’s assets tied up in such a low-yielding form.

Further, the expertise of the centralized cash manager’s staff can be used to seek out the best short-term investment opportunities available for the firm’s excess cash holdings and to

In Practice

- International businesses confront three types of foreign-exchange exposure: transaction, translation, and economic.
- Firms can reduce their transaction exposure by engaging in forward transactions, purchasing currency futures, buying currency options, or acquiring an offsetting asset.

For further consideration: Why do some firms go naked (i.e., choose not to protect themselves from transaction exposure)?
monitor expected changes in the values of foreign currencies. By transferring these tasks from the subsidiaries to the parent corporation, this approach also reduces the number of highly trained, high-salaried financial specialists that the corporate family needs. It is more efficient and cost effective to concentrate such financial information gathering and decision making in one unit of the corporation, rather than compelling each subsidiary to develop such expertise in house.

**Minimizing Currency Conversion Costs**

International businesses face another complication. Their foreign subsidiaries may continually buy and sell parts and finished goods among themselves. For example, Samsung, Korea's largest chaebol, has major assembly plants as well as company-owned parts suppliers and distribution companies throughout the world. The constant transfer of parts and finished goods among Samsung subsidiaries generates a blizzard of invoices and a constant need to transfer funds among the subsidiaries' bank accounts. Cumulative bank charges for transferring these funds and converting the currencies involved can be high. For large transactions involving two major currencies, currency conversion fees and expenses may average 0.3 percent of the value of the transaction. For smaller-sized transactions or for transactions involving minor currencies with narrow markets, such fees and expenses can easily be three or four times higher.

Let us consider Samsung's operations in just three countries: Mexico, the United Kingdom, and South Korea. As depicted in Figure 18.3, the gross trade among the firm's subsidiaries in the three countries is $21 million (= 1 + 3 + 6 + 4 + 5 + 2). (We have denominated their trade in a common currency—U.S. dollars—for simplicity.) If the costs of converting currencies total 0.5 percent of the transactions' value, Samsung would pay 0.5 percent times $21 million, or $105,000, to convert the currencies necessary to settle these transactions among its subsidiaries.

This cost can be cut considerably, however, if the subsidiaries engage in **bilateral netting**, in which two subsidiaries net out their mutual invoices. Consider Samsung's Mexican and British subsidiaries. Rather than have the Mexican subsidiary convert $1 million worth of pesos into pounds and the British subsidiary convert $3 million worth of pounds into pesos, it makes more sense for them to net out the difference. In this case, the British subsidiary simply should pay the Mexican subsidiary $2 million in pesos, making them even. In similar fashion, the South Korean subsidiary can pay the British subsidiary $2 million worth of pounds ($6 million – $4 million = $2 million), and the Mexican subsidiary can pay the Korean subsidiary $3 million worth of Korean won ($5 million – $2 million = $3 million). By engaging in bilateral netting, Samsung reduces its currency conversion costs to $35,000 (0.5 percent × $7 million).

Currency conversion costs can be reduced further if Samsung engages in **multilateral netting**, which is done among three or more business units. As shown in Table 18.3, the British subsidiary owes the equivalent of $7 million to the other two subsidiaries but also is owed $7 million by them. The South Korean subsidiary is owed $9 million but owes
$8 million, for a net receipt of $1 million. The Mexican subsidiary is owed $5 million but owes $6 million, for a net debt of $1 million. When accompanied by the appropriate bookkeeping entries, all transactions among the three subsidiaries can be settled by the Mexican subsidiary transferring $1 million worth of won to the South Korean subsidiary. Because only $1 million is being converted physically in the foreign-exchange market and transferred through the banking system, Samsung’s conversion costs shrink to $5,000 (0.5 percent × $1 million) as a result of the multilateral netting operation.

In concept, multilateral netting differs little from what children do on the playground all the time: “David owes Karen a quarter, but Karen owes LaTisha 20 cents, so David owes LaTisha 20 cents and Karen 5 cents, and Karen doesn’t owe anyone anything.” To complicate matters, however, some countries impose restrictions on netting operations to support their local banking industries, which benefit from the fees charged for currency exchange. MNCs wanting to engage in netting operations often have to work around such government-imposed barriers.

Minimizing Foreign-Exchange Risk

Financial officers also typically adjust the mix of currencies that make up the firm’s working capital to minimize foreign-exchange risk. Often firms use a leads and lags strategy to try to increase their net holdings of currencies that are expected to rise in value and to decrease their net holdings of currencies that are expected to fall in value. For example, if the Thai baht were expected to decline in value, the financial officers would try to minimize the MNC’s baht-denominated liquid assets, perhaps by demanding quicker (or leading) payment on baht-denominated accounts receivable or by reducing baht-denominated bank balances. The officers also would try to increase the firm’s baht-denominated short-term liabilities, perhaps by slowing (or lagging) payment on baht-denominated accounts payable or by increasing short-term borrowing from Thai banks. Conversely, if the Mexican peso were expected to rise in value, the financial officers would try to maximize the firm’s net holdings of pesos through reverse techniques.

Avon adopted these tactics as the Asian currency crisis worsened in late 1997. It bought most of the raw materials needed by its Asian factories locally; the working capital needs of these factories were supplied by local banks with the loans repayable in the local currency. Avon thus increased its liabilities denominated in weakened currencies like the Indonesian rupiah, the Malaysian ringgit, and the Philippine peso. Its Asian subsidiaries were required to repatriate their earnings to headquarters on a weekly basis rather than on the monthly basis they had used previously. In this way Avon minimized its holdings of these vulnerable currencies.

In summary, an MNC’s financial officers face a complex task. They must ensure each subsidiary maintains sufficient cash balances to meet expected ordinary day-to-day cash outflows, as well as an appropriate level of precautionary balances to respond quickly to sudden, unexpected increases in cash outflow. They also must balance each subsidiary’s expected and unexpected demands for cash against the opportunity cost of holding the firm’s financial assets in such low-yielding forms, while simultaneously controlling working capital-related currency conversion costs and foreign-exchange risk. Typically, such tasks are performed by a single unit of the firm, such as the treasury department of the parent corporation. For example, Tate & Lyle, a large British food processor, has followed this approach. Its centralized treasury provides cash

---

**TABLE 18.3 Multilateral Netting in Action (All quantities in millions of U.S. dollar equivalents)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Payments Owed by</th>
<th>South Korean Subsidiary</th>
<th>Mexican Subsidiary</th>
<th>British Subsidiary</th>
<th>Total Receipts</th>
<th>Net Transfer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Korean subsidiary</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican subsidiary</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British subsidiary</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total payments</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
International Capital Budgeting

Another task that financial officers of any business face is capital budgeting. Firms have limited funds for investment and often a seemingly endless set of projects from which to choose. Financial officers must establish mechanisms for developing, screening, and selecting projects in which the firm will make significant new investments. Numerous approaches for evaluating investment projects are available, but the most commonly used methods include net present value, internal rate of return, and payback period.

Net Present Value

The net present value approach is based on a basic precept of finance theory that a dollar today is worth more than a dollar in the future. To calculate the net present value of a project, a firm’s financial officers estimate the cash flows the project will generate in each time period and then discount them back to the present. For many projects, the cash flow in the early years will be negative because the firm must outlay cash for the initial investment and be prepared to suffer start-up operating losses in the first year or two. In later years, of course, the firm expects cash flows to be positive. Financial officers must decide which interest rate, called the rate of discount, to use in the calculation, based on the firm’s cost of capital. For example, if the firm’s cost of capital is 10 percent, then financial officers will use an annual interest rate of 10 percent to discount the cash flows generated by the project through time to calculate the present value. The firm will undertake only projects that generate a positive net present value.

The net present value approach can be used for both domestic and international projects. However, several additional factors must be considered when determining whether to undertake an international project. These factors are risk adjustment, currency selection, and choice of perspective for the calculations.

RISK ADJUSTMENT Because a foreign project may be riskier than a domestic project, international businesses may adjust either the discount rate upward or the expected cash flows downward to account for a higher level of risk. The amount of risk adjustment should reflect the degree of riskiness of operating in the country in question. For example, little if any risk adjustment is needed for Germany because of its political stability, well-respected court system, and superb infrastructure. In contrast, civil war in Syria and political conflict in Egypt warrant the use of much larger risk adjustments for potential investments in those countries.

CHOICE OF CURRENCY The determination of the currency in which the project should be evaluated depends on the nature of the investment. If the project is an integral part of the business of an overseas subsidiary, use of the foreign currency is appropriate. For example, GM’s German subsidiary Adam Opel AG invested millions of German marks to build a new factory in Eisenach, Germany, in the 1990s. Constructing the plant was central to Opel’s overall business plan,
and the subsidiary’s financial officers thus made the net present value calculation in German marks. For foreign projects that are more properly viewed as integrated parts of a firm’s global procurement strategy, translation into the home country currency may make sense. For instance, Hewlett-Packard allocates production between its U.S. and foreign factories as part of an overall strategy of global reduction of production costs. If Hewlett-Packard invests £10 million to expand the output of its Czech production facilities, it should calculate the project’s net present value in U.S. dollars instead of Czech koruna. To do this, it must estimate revenues and costs for the project and then convert them into dollars. It also must account for any expected changes in the exchange rate between the dollar and the koruna over the life of the project.

**WHOSE PERSPECTIVE: PARENT’S OR PROJECT’S?** Another factor is determining whether the cash flows that contribute to the net present value of the capital investment should be evaluated from the perspective of the parent or that of the individual project. In practice, some international businesses analyze the cash flows of the individual project, others focus on the project’s impact on the parent, and others do both.27

The cash flows to the parent can differ from those to the project for several reasons. MNCs often impose arbitrary accounting charges on the revenues of their operating units for the units’ use of corporate trademarks or to cover general corporate overhead. These arbitrary charges may reduce the perceived cash flows generated by the project but not the real cash flows returned to the parent. For example, suppose that when the corporate parent’s accountants are calculating a subsidiary’s profitability, they routinely assess a 5-percent fee against revenues for general corporate and administrative expenses. This technique may be a reasonable mechanism for allocating general corporate expenses across all the firm’s operations. The 5-percent charge, however, does not represent a true drain on the cash flow generated by the subsidiary. Thus, the charge should be ignored in the calculation of the net present value to the parent of a project the subsidiary proposes. Similarly, fees assessed against the subsidiary for the use of corporate trademarks, brand names, or patents should not be considered in the net present value calculation because the parent firm incurs no additional costs regardless of whether the subsidiary undertakes the project.

Financial officers also must consider any governmental restrictions on currency movements that would affect the firm’s ability to repatriate profits when it wants. A project proposed by a foreign subsidiary may be enormously profitable, but if the profits can never be repatriated to the parent, the project may not be desirable from the perspective of the parent and its shareholders. The importance of currency controls in determining the attractiveness of a project also may be a function of the parent’s overall strategy. For example, PepsiCo has made a long-term commitment to the Ukrainian soft-drink market. Any current Ukrainian restrictions on profit repatriation are of little concern to PepsiCo and its shareholders because the firm expects to increase its investments in the country in the short and medium term. However, PepsiCo’s shareholders would be concerned if the firm were never allowed to repatriate profits from its Ukrainian operations.

**Internal Rate of Return**

A second approach commonly used for evaluating investment projects is to calculate the internal rate of return. With this approach, financial officers first estimate the cash flows generated by each project under consideration in each time period, as in the net present value analysis. They then calculate the interest rate—called the *internal rate of return*—that makes the net present value of the project just equal to zero. As with the net present value approach, the financial officers must adjust their calculations for any accounting charges that have no cash flow implications (intracorporate licensing fees, overhead charges for general corporate and administrative expenses, and so on). They then compare the project’s internal rate of return with the *hurdle rate*—the minimum rate of return the firm finds acceptable for its capital investments. The hurdle rate may vary by country to account for differences in risk. The firm will undertake only projects for which the internal rate of return is higher than the hurdle rate.

**Payback Period**

A third approach for assessing and selecting projects is to calculate the project’s *payback period*—the number of years it will take the firm to recover, or pay back, the original cash
investment from the project’s earnings. The payback period technique has the virtue of simplicity: All one needs is simple arithmetic to calculate the payback period. This approach ignores, however, the profits generated by the investment in the longer run. A project that earns large early profits but whose later profits diminish steadily over time may be selected over a project that suffers initial start-up losses but makes large continuous profits after that.

Because of its simplicity, many firms use the payback period technique for a quick-and-dirty screening of projects and then follow with a more sophisticated method for further analysis of those projects that pass the preliminary screening. A firm may choose different payback criteria for international projects than for domestic ones. Here too adjustments must be made to eliminate intracorporate charges that have no real effect on corporate cash flows.

**In Practice**

- Because firms have limited funds, capital budgeting is a critical task for corporate financial officers. Comparing a proposed investment in country A with a proposed investment in country B is often complicated because the risks and the currencies involved may be different in the two countries.
- The most commonly used methods for evaluating investment projects include net present value, internal rate of return, and payback period.

*For further consideration:* In evaluating a subsidiary’s prospective investment project, why is it important that financial officers focus on real rather than perceived cash flows generated by the proposed project?

**Sources of International Investment Capital**

Firms use capital budgeting techniques to allocate their financial resources toward those domestic and international projects that promise the highest rates of return. Having identified such profitable opportunities, firms must secure sufficient capital to fund them, from either external or internal sources. In doing so, an international business wants to minimize the worldwide cost of its capital, while also minimizing its foreign-exchange risk, political risk, and global tax burden.

**External Sources of Investment Capital**

When raising external financing for their investment projects, international businesses may choose from a rich source of debt and equity alternatives. Investment bankers, such as Goldman Sachs, and securities firms, such as Merrill Lynch and Nomura, can help firms acquire capital from external sources. For example, if a firm wants to increase its equity base, such an intermediary can place the firm’s stock with investors in the home country, in the host country, or in other countries. To facilitate the raising of equity internationally, many MNCs list their common stock on stock markets in several different countries. For example, Sony’s stock is listed on the New York, London, Tokyo, and Osaka stock exchanges. Through multiple foreign listings, international businesses assure foreign investors they can easily dispose of their shares should the need arise.

International firms also have many opportunities to borrow funds internationally on either a short-term or a long-term basis. They may shop for the best credit terms in their home country market, in the host country market, or in other markets. For example, consider New Jersey’s Baltek Corporation, which annually produces $30 million worth of balsa wood products at its factory in Ecuador. Baltek relied on local Ecuadorian banks to finance its expansion into shrimp farming in the Gulf of Guayaquil. The firm found those banks more eager for its business than U.S. banks were—an example of the advantages of being a big fish in a small pond. Larger MNCs may rely on syndicated short- and medium-term loans in which a consortium of international banks and pension fund managers join together to provide the capital. Often these syndicated loans use Eurocurrencies because the absence of expensive central bank regulations reduces the cost of Eurocurrency-based loans. MNCs also may secure longer-term loans in the form of home country bonds, foreign bonds, and Eurobonds, as discussed in Chapter 8.
Securities firms and investment banks are continually developing innovative financing techniques to reduce the costs of borrowing for their MNC clients or to exploit gaps in national financial regulations. For example, an MNC may issue dual-currency bonds, whereby it borrows money and pays interest in one currency but repays the principal in a second currency. Alternatively, bonds may be denominated as a basket of several currencies or be redeemable in gold. Some firms get creative. For instance, the Walt Disney Company issued $400 million in Eurobonds that had a different twist: Their interest rate depended on the success of 13 Disney movies. Investors were guaranteed at least a 3-percent rate, with a possible return of 13.5 percent. Comparable quality bonds were yielding only 7 to 8 percent at the time. Eager investors snapped up the bonds, betting that Disney movies would be box office hits.

Pleased with its ability to shift some movie-making risks to the bondholders through low minimum interest rates, several years later Disney offered a similar note linked to a new set of motion pictures.

A particularly important facet of the international capital market is the swap market, in which two firms can exchange their financial obligations. Swaps are undertaken to change the cost and nature of a firm’s interest obligations or to change the currency in which its debt is denominated. For example, suppose firm A has a fixed-rate obligation but prefers a floating-rate one, whereas firm B has a floating-rate obligation and wants a fixed-rate one. The two firms can swap their obligations. As noted by one financial officer, “The advantage of the swap market is that it allows you to adjust exposure profiles without having to undo the underlying transactions.” Often an international bank will facilitate such swaps by acting as a broker or by undertaking half of a swap for its own account.

MNCs also often engage in currency swaps to shift their interest and payment obligations from a less preferred currency to a more preferred one. An MNC may consider its net obligations in one currency to be too large or may expect exchange rate fluctuations to adversely affect its loan repayment costs. A swap may be arranged between two firms that have differing currency preferences. International banks play a key role in the currency swap market. Because they continually monitor foreign-exchange markets as well as their own net currency exposures, they usually can accommodate any MNC’s currency swap needs. Most international banks engage in currency swaps with corporate clients on an ongoing basis.

Internal Sources of Investment Capital

Another source of investment capital for international businesses is the cash flows generated internally—for example, profits from operations and noncash expenses such as depreciation and amortization earned by the parent firm and its various subsidiaries. The amount from such sources is significant: In 2010, foreign subsidiaries of U.S.-owned firms earned $1,021 billion, while the net income of U.S. subsidiaries of foreign-owned parents totaled $85.9 billion.

Subject to legal constraints, the parent firm may use the cash flow generated by any subsidiary to fund the investment projects of any member of the corporate family. The corporate parent may access the cash flow directly via the subsidiary’s dividend payments to the parent. The parent then can channel those funds to another subsidiary through either a loan or additional equity investments in that subsidiary. Alternatively, one subsidiary can invest in or lend funds directly to a second subsidiary. Figure 18.4 summarizes the various internal sources of capital available to the parent and its subsidiaries.

Two legal constraints may affect the parent’s ability to shift funds among its subsidiaries. First, if the subsidiary is not wholly owned by the parent, the parent must respect the rights of the subsidiary’s other shareholders. Any intracorporate transfers of funds must be done on a fair-market basis. This ensures that the parent does not siphon off the subsidiary’s profits through self-dealing, thereby harming the other shareholders’ interests. Of course, what is “fair” is often in the eyes of the beholder. For instance, Holcim, a global manufacturer of cement and construction aggregates, announced it would raise the royalty rates paid by its 80.65 percent-owned Indonesian subsidiary to the parent from 1.7 percent of sales to 5 percent. Minority shareholders protested the change. If the subsidiary is wholly owned, transfers of funds do not raise this issue. Second, some countries impose restrictions on the repatriation of profits, thus blocking their intracorporate transfer.
Strategic Use of Transfer Pricing

A significant percentage of world trade involves transactions between subsidiaries of the same corporation, such as a production subsidiary of Toyota Motor Company selling Lexus sedans made in Japan to Toyota’s sales subsidiary in the United States. Intracorporate shipments account for an estimated 31 percent of U.S. international trade, for instance.

A transfer price is the price paid for goods and services involved in intracorporate transactions between a subsidiary and other branches of the corporate family. In practice, transfer prices are calculated in one of two ways:

1. Market-based method
2. Nonmarket-based methods

**MARKET-BASED TRANSFER PRICES** The market-based method uses prices determined in the open market to transfer goods between units of the same corporate parent. Suppose Samsung wants to export memory chips from South Korea for use in assembling personal computers at one of its U.S. subsidiaries. It can establish the transfer price for the memory chips between its U.S. and Korean subsidiaries by using the open market price for such chips.

This market-based approach has two main benefits. First, it reduces conflict between the two units over the appropriate price. The higher the price charged in the intracorporate transfer, the better the selling subsidiary’s performance appears and the poorer the buying subsidiary’s performance appears. To the extent that the parent allocates managerial bonuses or investment capital to its subsidiaries on the basis of profitability, the unit managers have incentives to squabble over the transfer price because they care about how the MNC’s accounting system reports their unit’s performance. From the parent’s perspective, however, such arguments waste firm resources. Once the firm’s accounting records are consolidated, its overall before-tax profits will remain the same regardless of whether the transfer price overstates unit A’s profitability and understates unit B’s, or vice versa. Assuming both subsidiaries recognize the basic fairness of the market-based price, such intracorporate conflict will be reduced.

Second, the market-based approach promotes the MNC’s overall profitability by encouraging the efficiency of the selling unit. If the price the unit can charge for intracorporate sales is limited to the market price, its managers know the unit’s profitability depends on their ability to control its costs. Moreover, they recognize that if they successfully produce the product in question more cheaply than their international competitors can, the parent’s market-based transfer pricing will acknowledge their efforts in full. Motivated by the prospects of bonuses and lucrative promotions, unit managers have every incentive to improve the efficiency and profitability of their operations.

**NONMARKET-BASED TRANSFER PRICES** Transfer prices also may be established using nonmarket-based methods. Prices may be set by negotiations between the buying and selling units or on the basis of cost-based rules of thumb, such as production costs plus a fixed markup.
Some services of the corporate parent may be assessed as a percentage of the subsidiary’s sales, such as charges for general corporate overhead and administrative services or for the right to use technology or intellectual property owned by the parent. Hindustan Unilever, for example, pays its Dutch-headquartered parent Unilever 3.15 percent of its sales for such services. In 2011 foreign subsidiaries paid their U.S.-owned parents $73.1 billion in royalties and licensing fees, and U.S. subsidiaries paid their foreign-owned parents $19.3 billion for the same purpose.

MNCs commonly use nonmarket-based prices partly because, for some goods and services, no real market exists outside the firm. For example, the sole market for an engine produced in a Ford factory in Spain may consist of Ford automobile assembly plants in Belgium, Germany, and the United Kingdom. Because no external market exists for this engine, Ford may establish a transfer price for the engine based on production costs plus an allowance for overhead and profit. Similarly, Toyota’s ability to design and develop new automobile models is not a service that is bought and sold in the open market. Yet Toyota may want to charge its North American, European, and Australian subsidiaries an appropriate fee for the use of its research, design, and development services.

The use of nonmarket-based prices has both disadvantages and advantages. One disadvantage is that managers of the buying and selling units may waste time and energy arguing over the appropriate transfer price because it will affect their reported profits even though it will have no overall impact on the parent’s consolidated before-tax income. Nonmarket-based transfer prices also may reduce the selling unit’s efficiency. A transfer price based on the seller’s costs plus some markup may reduce the seller’s incentive to keep its costs low because it can pass along any cost increases to other members of the corporate family through the nonmarket-based transfer price.

However, strategic use of nonmarket-based transfer prices may benefit an international business, as Table 18.4 shows. Creative rearranging of intracorporate prices may allow the parent to lower its overall tax bill. For example, an MNC can lessen the burden of an ad valorem import tariff by reducing the price the selling unit charges the buying unit, thereby lowering the basis on which the tariff is calculated. Clever structuring of transfer prices can also allow a firm to evade host country restrictions on repatriation of profits. Suppose, for example, that a host country blocks repatriation by forbidding dividend payments from the subsidiary to the parent. The parent can evade this restriction by raising the transfer prices it charges the subsidiary for goods and services produced by other units of the corporate family or by charging fees for general corporate services. By doing this, cash will flow from the subsidiary to other parts of the firm in the form of payments for goods or services, rather than through the forbidden dividend payments. The net effect is the same, however: Funds (in some form) are repatriated from the host country.

The most significant strategic use of transfer pricing, however, is to reduce a firm’s total income tax payments. A firm’s transfer prices often reflect a trade-off between tax consequences and legal constraints imposed by countries in which the firm operates. Numerous studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Goal</th>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Decrease tariff paid on components imported from a subsidiary</td>
<td>Lower transfer price charged by the subsidiary</td>
<td>Lowering the price on which an ad valorem tariff is based decreases total amount of import tariff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease overall corporate income tax</td>
<td>Raise transfer prices paid by subsidiaries in high-tax countries or lower transfer prices paid by subsidiaries in low-tax countries or raise transfer prices charged by those subsidiaries</td>
<td>Reported profits of subsidiaries in high-tax countries decrease, and reported profits of subsidiaries in low-tax countries increase; total corporate tax burden decreases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repatriate profits from a subsidiary located in a host country that blocks repatriation</td>
<td>Raise transfer prices paid by the subsidiary; lower transfer prices charged by the subsidiary</td>
<td>Cash flows from the subsidiary to other units, circumventing restriction on repatriation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
conducted by researchers indicate that MNCs routinely engage in tax-shifting behavior through transfer pricing and other devices.\(^{38}\) Suppose an MNC operates in two countries, one with high corporate income tax rates and the second with low rates. The firm can raise the transfer prices charged to the subsidiary in the high-tax country and lower those charged to the subsidiary in the low-tax country. Doing this will reduce the profitability of the first subsidiary, as measured by its accounting records, while increasing the profitability of the second. The net effect is to shift the location of the MNC’s profits from the high-tax country to the low-tax country, thereby reducing the firm’s overall tax burden. Ireland, for example, offers low income tax rates on corporate profits to encourage MNCs to locate factories and service facilities in that country. Yet this tax break also encourages MNCs to manipulate the transfer prices charged by their Irish subsidiaries so as to increase the profits reported by those subsidiaries and lower the profits reported by their non-Irish subsidiaries (see the chapter’s closing case, “Double Irish and a Dutch Sandwich”).\(^{39}\) “Venturing Abroad” explores how the U.S. government addresses such tax-shifting behavior.

Although such intracorporate transfers of funds may theoretically benefit the entire firm, they can create serious problems at the subsidiary and managerial levels. From the parent’s perspective, shifting cash flows to minimize taxes may be beneficial. However, it may cause operational problems and increased expenses for the subsidiary. The parent may consider it wise policy to siphon off the subsidiary’s working capital and reduce its reported profitability by inflating royalty fees, administrative charges, or other transfer prices. Yet such approaches may result in a misleading picture of the subsidiary’s performance in the marketplace. If the parent rewards managerial performance without making adjustments for these financial manipulations, morale among the subsidiary’s managers may plummet, to the detriment of the parent.

### VENTURING ABROAD

#### TAXATION OF FOREIGN SUBSIDIARY INCOME BY THE U.S. GOVERNMENT

Subsidiaries incorporated in a foreign country are legally distinct from the home country parent corporation. In general, for U.S. tax purposes, a U.S. parent corporation does not need to include the earnings of its foreign subsidiaries in calculating its taxable income, as long as those earnings are reinvested in the foreign subsidiaries. The deferral rule in the U.S. tax code states such earnings will be taxed only when they are remitted to the parent in the form of dividends, thus allowing the parent to defer paying U.S. taxes on foreign subsidiaries’ reinvested earnings.

The deferral rule is intended to stimulate international business activity by U.S. firms. Consider Caterpillar. More than half its sales are outside the United States, and the deferral rule, by annually saving it millions of dollars in taxes, has helped it penetrate key markets in Europe and Asia. However, one important exception to the deferral rule attempts to ensure that U.S. firms do not establish shell corporations in tax havens that do little but provide the parent with the ability to defer U.S. taxes. U.S. tax law requires a parent corporation to determine whether each of its foreign subsidiaries is a controlled foreign corporation. A controlled foreign corporation (CFC) is a foreign corporation in which U.S. shareholders—each of which holds at least 10 percent of the firm’s shares—together own a majority of its stock. This definition may seem strange, but it is designed to focus on foreign firms that are controlled by a single U.S. firm or a group of U.S. firms acting in concert, rather than foreign firms owned by many small U.S. investors.

According to the U.S. tax code, the income of CFCs is divided into two types: active income and passive income (also called Subpart F income). Active income is income generated by traditional business operations such as production, marketing, and distribution. Subpart F income, or passive income, is generated by passive activities such as the collection of dividends, interest, royalties, and licensing fees—the type of activities typically performed by subsidiaries incorporated in tax havens. U.S. firms may defer active income earned by CFCs they control. In calculating their U.S. taxes, however, they generally may not defer Subpart F income. In the absence of this restriction, U.S. firms could escape federal corporate income taxes on earnings generated by their intellectual property and investment portfolios. The firms could do this by establishing subsidiaries in tax havens and transferring to those subsidiaries legal title to the firms’ trademarks, patents, brand names, and investment portfolios. The U.S. government, by treating active and passive earnings of foreign subsidiaries differently, is walking a fine line between stimulating U.S. firms’ international business activities and limiting the firms’ ability to avoid U.S. taxes through the creation of subsidiaries in tax havens.

One unintended consequence of this policy is the growing stockpile of cash that U.S. MNCs have parked outside the country’s borders. For instance, Apple has an estimated $102 billion (out of total cash balances of $154 billion) in accounts outside the United States that benefit from the deferral rule. All told, U.S. MNCs have an estimated $1.7 trillion in such foreign cash balances, which are untaxed by the Internal Revenue Service as long as they are not repatriated to the United States.

Tax Havens

The ability of MNCs to lower their tax burdens by the strategic use of transfer prices is facilitated by the existence of tax havens, countries that impose little or no corporate income taxes. For a relatively small fee, an MNC may set up a wholly owned subsidiary in a tax haven. By manipulating payments such as transfer prices, dividends, interest, royalties, and capital gains between its various subsidiaries, an MNC may divert income from subsidiaries in high-tax countries to the subsidiary operating in the tax haven. By booking its profits in the tax haven subsidiary, the MNC escapes the clutches of revenue agents in other countries. For example, an MNC may give ownership of its trademarks to a subsidiary located in Bermuda. That subsidiary then can charge each of the corporation’s operating subsidiaries a fee for the use of the trademarks. The fees paid by the operating subsidiaries reduce their profitability and thus the corporate income taxes they must pay to their host governments. The government of Bermuda,

While thousands of tourists annually visit the Cayman Islands to sunbathe and collect seashells along its white sandy beaches, the islands also attract companies seeking a different kind of shell. The islands are home to thousands of shell corporations, established to take advantage of the islands’ lack of income taxes.
however, imposes no income tax on the trademark licensing fees earned by the subsidiary located there—or on income, profits, capital gains, or dividends. Thus, the MNC reduces its overall income tax burden.

Several other smaller countries, including the Cayman Islands (see “Emerging Opportunities” and Map 18.3), the Bahamas, the Channel Islands, Liechtenstein, and Curaçao, also have gone into the business of being tax havens. To attract MNCs, a tax haven must not only refrain from imposing income taxes but also provide a stable political and business climate, an efficient court system, and sophisticated banking and communications industries. In return, the tax haven is able to capture franchising and incorporation fees and to generate numerous lucrative professional jobs far beyond what an economy of its size normally could.

Government agencies, such as the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, are well aware of these opportunities to play accounting games. As a result, both home and host countries scrutinize the transfer-pricing policies of MNCs operating within their borders to ensure the firms do not evade their tax obligations and the governments receive their “fair share” of taxes from the firms. A common approach is to use an arm’s length test whereby government officials attempt to determine the price that two unrelated firms operating at arm’s length would have agreed on. In many cases, however, an appropriate arm’s length price is difficult to establish, leading to conflict between international businesses and tax authorities.

For example, in 1999 the U.K.’s Inland Revenue agency launched a study of whether IBM inappropriately raised the 8 percent royalty rate paid by its British subsidiary to the U.S. parent to 12 percent for a five-year period beginning in 1991. The effect of the increased royalty rate was to shift $260 million of profits from its U.K. operations to its U.S. operations, thus...
Part 4 • Managing International Business Operations

International businesses rely on external and internal sources of funds to finance attractive investments. In funding these investments, corporate finance officers seek to minimize the worldwide cost of acquiring capital, while simultaneously limiting foreign-exchange risk, political risk, and the corporation’s total tax burden.

For further consideration: Why is transfer pricing so controversial? Are companies that aggressively use transfer pricing to reduce their tax burden acting unethically?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

CHAPTER REVIEW

Summary

International firms face financial management challenges that are far more complex than those confronting purely domestic firms. Conflicts may arise between exporters and importers over the currency to use in invoicing international transactions. Exporting firms often find it difficult to check the creditworthiness of their foreign customers. Also, obtaining payment for goods from foreign customers may be more difficult because of greater geographic distances, differing legal systems, and unfamiliar business customs. Fortunately, many methods of payment have been developed over the centuries, including payment in advance, open accounts, letters of credit, documentary collection, credit cards, and countertrade.

International firms must strive to minimize the impact of exchange rate fluctuations on the firms’ operations. Three main types of exchange rate exposure exist. Transaction exposure refers to the impact of exchange rate fluctuations on the profitability of a business transaction denominated in a foreign currency. Translation exposure reflects the impact of exchange rate fluctuations on the book value of foreign subsidiaries in a firm’s accounting records. Economic exposure is the impact unanticipated exchange rate movements have on the value of the firm’s operations.

Management of working capital balances presents international businesses with unique challenges. A firm and each of its operating subsidiaries must have sufficient cash to facilitate day-to-day operations and to meet unexpected demands for cash. Also, the firm must monitor its holdings of each currency in which it and its subsidiaries do business. MNCs often use centralized cash management and currency...

Reducing the taxes IBM owed the British government. Of course, determining the appropriate arm’s length price for a unique asset like IBM’s trademarks and technology is not simple. Similarly, in 2004, the U.S. Internal Revenue Service claimed that British drug company GlaxoSmithKline owed it $2.7 billion, plus interest, alleging that the company overcharged its U.S. subsidiaries for the cost of research and development done in the United Kingdom. In 2011, the Internal Revenue Service settled a similar lawsuit against AstraZeneca for $1.1 billion.

Such conflicts are rarely resolved easily or quickly. To remedy the cost and uncertainty of the resolution of complex transfer pricing conflicts, firms may negotiate an advance pricing agreement (APA) with the U.S. Internal Revenue Service. The APA, which represents a binding contract between the firm and the IRS, details the methodology that will be used to establish the firm’s transfer prices. The IRS agrees it will not retroactively review or challenge the firm’s transfer prices as long as the firm abides by the methodology established in the APA.

In Practice

- International businesses rely on external and internal sources of funds to finance attractive investments.
- In funding these investments, corporate finance officers seek to minimize the worldwide cost of acquiring capital, while simultaneously limiting foreign-exchange risk, political risk, and the corporation’s total tax burden.

For further consideration: Why is transfer pricing so controversial? Are companies that aggressively use transfer pricing to reduce their tax burden acting unethically?
netting operations to control their working capital balances, reduce currency conversion costs, and minimize their exposure to adverse changes in exchange rates.

Financial officers of international firms must adjust capital budgeting techniques to meet the unique requirements of international business. Standard investment evaluation techniques, such as net present value, internal rate of return, and payback period analysis, must be adjusted to account for differences in risk, government restrictions on currency movements, and various payments between the parent firm and its foreign subsidiaries that do not affect net cash flows generated by an investment project.

Finally, financial officers must look worldwide for low-cost sources of capital. Ongoing operations of the parent firm and its foreign subsidiaries are often an important internal source of investment capital. Well-developed international debt and equity markets can provide external sources of such capital. Also, international businesses often use the swap market to reduce their exposure to adverse changes in currency values or interest rates.

Questions for Discussion

18-10. Letters of credit come in different kinds and formats. When is a letter of credit irrevocable and confirmed?

18-11. Why do firms use countertrade? What problems do they face when they do?

18-12. Discuss the techniques available to reduce transaction exposure.

18-13. How do tax havens manage to attract foreign companies?

18-14. Discuss the external sources of investment capital, and give examples for each of them.

18-15. How can firms use transfer prices and tax havens to reduce their corporate income tax bills? What do governments do in response?

18-16. Are firms that create shell corporations in tax havens being socially responsible?

18-17. Why would a firm want to negotiate an APA with the Internal Revenue Service? Why would the Internal Revenue Service want to negotiate an APA?

Building Global Skills

Consider Belgian Lace Products (BLP), a hypothetical table linens manufacturer. BLP consists of a parent corporation, a wholly owned manufacturing subsidiary in Belgium, and four wholly owned distribution subsidiaries in Belgium, the United Kingdom, Japan, and the United States. Its manufacturing subsidiary buys inputs from various suppliers, manufactures high-quality lace napkins and tablecloths, and sells the output to the four BLP-owned distribution subsidiaries. The four distribution subsidiaries in turn sell the products to retail customers in the subsidiaries’ marketing areas. The distribution subsidiaries buy certain inputs, such as labor, warehouse space, electricity, and computers, from outside suppliers as well.

The following summarizes typical monthly transactions for each of the BLP operating units (note that the symbol for the euro is €):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacturing Subsidiary</th>
<th>Belgian Distribution Subsidiary</th>
<th>British Distribution Subsidiary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales to Belgian distribution subsidiary: €15,000</td>
<td>Sales to Japanese distribution subsidiary: €17,500</td>
<td>Sales to retail customers: €50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales to British distribution subsidiary: €12,500</td>
<td>Sales to U.S. distribution subsidiary: €11,250</td>
<td>Payments to BLP manufacturing subsidiary: €15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from Belgian suppliers: €7,500</td>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from British suppliers: €25,000</td>
<td>Payments to external suppliers: €750 and €10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from Japanese suppliers: ¥3,000,000</td>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from Japanese suppliers: €3,000,000</td>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from U.S. suppliers: $5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from U.S. suppliers: $5,000</td>
<td>Costs of inputs purchased from Japanese suppliers: €3,000,000</td>
<td>Belgian Distribution Subsidiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales to retail customers: €50,000</td>
<td>Payments to BLP manufacturing subsidiary: €15,000</td>
<td>British Distribution Subsidiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments to external suppliers: €750 and €10,000</td>
<td>Payments to BLP manufacturing subsidiary: €12,500</td>
<td>Sales to retail customers: €75,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments to external suppliers: £5,000, €1,000, and $9,000</td>
<td>Payments to BLP manufacturing subsidiary: €12,500</td>
<td>Payments to external suppliers: £5,000, €1,000, and $9,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Review Questions

18-1. Who bears the risk when payment in advance is used to settle an international transaction?

18-2. Who bears the risk when an open account is used to settle an international transaction?

18-3. What are the different types of letters of credit?

18-4. What is the hurdle rate?

18-5. Which are the most commonly used methods for evaluating investment projects?

18-6. How do the various types of countertrade arrangements differ from one another?

18-7. What is translation exposure? What effect does a balance sheet hedge have on translation exposure?

18-8. What capital budgeting techniques are available to international businesses?

18-9. Why does the strategic use of nonmarket-based transfer prices benefit international business?
Part 4 • Managing International Business Operations

Closing Case Double Irish and a Dutch Sandwich

Note: You may find it helpful to re-read “Venturing Abroad: Taxation of Foreign Subsidiary Income by the U.S. Government” on page 549 and “Emerging Opportunities: Sun, Sand, and Shells” on page 550.

Taxation of business income is always a contentious public policy issue. Firms, tax lawyers, and accountants continually engage in cat-and-mouse clashes with their national tax authorities. The former group strives to minimize the tax burden imposed on their businesses, asserting that they have a fiduciary duty to their shareholders to do so. The latter group responds that they are charged with the task of ensuring that all the taxes owed to the government are appropriately and legally collected. Although the battle of wits, lawsuits, and lobbying is intense between domestic firms and domestic tax authorities, it pales in comparison to the company-government wars fought over international taxation.

Most politicians care little about the nuances of the benefits of comparative advantage, the productivity gains generated by specialization of labor, or the deleterious impact of trade barriers. Their concerns are focused on job creation and tax revenue, and they are willing to adjust their national tax codes if doing so stimulates the local economy. The result is wide variations in corporate income taxes among countries. For instance, in the United States, the federal corporate income tax rate is 35 percent, while in Canada it is 16.5 percent, but only 12.5 percent in Ireland. In many tax havens, no taxes are imposed on corporate earnings. Another complicating factor is differences in how various types of income are taxed. When taxing dividends, some countries, such as Australia and Mexico, provide dividend tax credits to the shareholder for income taxes paid by the corporation; others, such as the United States and Sweden, do not. Estonia and the Slovak Republic choose not to tax dividend income at all. Ireland offers generous tax credits for research and development expenditures and exemptions for income generated by intellectual property. The effective rate on royalty income imposed by Ireland can be as low as zero, for example.

These variations in tax codes generate opportunities for firms to locate or relocate their economic activities to lower their overall taxation costs. Firms can also creatively fashion the transfer prices they charge for intracorporate transactions. Much of the attention of the world’s tax collectors has been focused on so-called tax havens (see “Emerging Opportunities” on page 550). But Ireland has become the new focal point for imaginative structuring of corporate transactions to reduce tax bills. Of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) nations, Ireland has been the most aggressive user of its corporate tax code to promote economic development. The Industrial Development Agency

Japanese Distribution Subsidiary

Sales to retail customers: ¥5,000,000
Payments to BLP manufacturing subsidiary: €17,500
Payments to external suppliers: ¥3,000,000 and $8,000

U.S. Distribution Subsidiary

Sales to retail customers: $40,000
Payments to BLP manufacturing subsidiary: €11,250
Payments to external suppliers: $10,000 and ¥300,000

Exchange Rates

€1.33 = £1
€1 = $1.00
€1 = ¥120

Use the preceding information to answer the following questions:

18-18. Calculate the profitability of each of BLP’s five subsidiaries. (Because BLP is Belgian, perform the calculations in terms of euros, which Belgium began using as its national currency in 2002.) Are any of the subsidiaries unprofitable? On the basis of the information provided, would you recommend shutting down an unprofitable subsidiary? Why or why not?

18-19. Suppose it costs each subsidiary 1 percent of the transaction amount each time it converts its home currency into another currency to pay its suppliers. Develop a strategy by which BLP as a corporation can reduce its total currency conversion costs. Suppose your strategy costs BLP 400 euros per month to implement. Should the firm still adopt your approach?

18-20. If the United Kingdom decided to join the European Union’s single-currency bloc and use the euro, what effect would this have on BLP? What effect would it have on the benefits and costs of the strategy you developed to reduce BLP’s currency conversion costs?
Ireland, a governmental agency responsible for promoting inward FDI, believes nearly 1,000 MNCs have located their European headquarters in Ireland, drawn in large part by the country’s low taxes and pro-business policies.

Google is one company that has benefitted from Ireland’s pro-business tax code. It has taken advantage of two strategies created by international tax lawyers, dubbed the “Double Irish” and the “Dutch Sandwich,” which allowed it to reduce its taxes by $3.1 billion over three years. In 2006, Google entered into an advance pricing agreement with the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, establishing the terms under which it could transfer its intellectual property to its foreign subsidiaries.

After signing the agreement with the U.S. tax authorities, Google licensed its intellectual property to Google Ireland Holdings, a wholly owned subsidiary. Although established in Ireland, Google Ireland Holdings is managed in Bermuda, making it a nonresident corporation that is not subject to Irish taxation under Irish law. Google Ireland Holdings, however, is the owner of an Irish resident corporation, Dublin-based Google Ireland Limited—hence, the term Double Irish. Google Ireland Limited’s 2,000 employees sell advertising and provide support services to customers in Europe, the Middle East, and Africa, and account for about 88 percent of Google’s non-U.S. revenues. Even though its California engineers and scientists developed most of Google’s technology, this arrangement allows Google to avoid immediate U.S. taxation of its non-U.S. profits. That takes care of the U.S. Internal Revenue Service. To avoid Ireland’s Revenue Commissioners, Google Ireland Limited then transmits what would appear to be its profits from selling this advertising to another Google subsidiary, Google Netherlands Holdings (the Dutch sandwich), in the form of royalty payments, thereby slashing Google Ireland Limited’s Irish tax bill. (Payments are made to Google Netherlands Holdings because of favorable provisions in the Irish tax code dealing with royalty payments to companies based in other European Union countries.)

Google Netherlands Holdings, which has no employees, then remits 99.8 percent of the royalty payments it receives to Google Ireland Holdings, eliminating most of its tax liability to the Netherlands. And, of course, Bermuda has no corporate income tax, so the “profits” earned by Google Ireland Holdings remain untaxed so long as these profits are not repatriated to the parent corporation back in the United States.

Other technology-intensive companies have established Irish subsidiaries for similar purposes. A Microsoft subsidiary in Ireland, Round Island One Ltd., “localizes” Microsoft products developed by U.S. employees for the European, African, and Middle Eastern markets. The customized products are then licensed by a Round Island One subsidiary in Ireland, Flat Island Company, to customers in those markets. Earnings from these sales are taxed at Ireland’s relatively low 12.5 percent corporate income tax rate. From the U.S. perspective, because the U.S.-developed products undergo transformation in Ireland, Round Island One’s earnings are characterized as active income, allowing Microsoft to take advantage of the IRS’s deferral rule and avoid U.S. taxation of that income. Apple and Oracle have also created Irish subsidiaries that allow them to lower their income tax payments using techniques similar to Google and Microsoft. In Apple’s case, Apple Sales International, one of Apple’s Irish subsidiaries, is the formal purchaser of many of the company’s products made in China. ASI in turn marks up the goods, resells them to other Apple subsidiaries, and books the profits. In 2012, ASI recorded $22 billion in pre-tax profits but paid only $10 million in income taxes.

Case Questions

18-21. Why do tax rates and tax treatment of corporate income vary so dramatically among countries?
18-23. How important is the advance pricing agreement that Google negotiated with the Internal Revenue Service to the success of its tax-minimization strategy?
18-24. Google’s corporate motto is “Don’t be evil.” Is Google’s use of the Double Irish and the Dutch Sandwich honoring that motto?
18-25. Explain how Microsoft uses its Irish subsidiary to cut its U.S. taxes. How does it get around U.S. regulations regarding passive income?
18-26. What is the impact of Microsoft’s Irish subsidiary on the Irish economy?
18-27. Are Google, Microsoft, and Apple acting ethically? Are they being socially responsible?

MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

18-28. Discuss the primary forms of financing international trade. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each technique, from the perspective of the exporter? From the perspective of the importer?

18-29. What are the three forms of exchange rate exposure that MNCs confront? What techniques are available to MNCs to reduce or control these exchange rate exposures?

18-30. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.

Endnotes

AFTER STUDYING THIS CHAPTER, YOU SHOULD BE ABLE TO:

1. Describe the nature of human resource management in international business.
2. Detail how firms recruit and select managers for international assignments.
3. Explain how international businesses train and develop expatriate managers.
4. Discuss how international firms conduct performance appraisals and determine compensation for their expatriate managers.
5. Analyze retention and turnover issues in international business.
6. Explain basic human resource issues involving nonmanagerial employees.
7. Describe labor relations in international business.

MyManagementLab®

Improve Your Grade!

More than 10 million students improved their results using the Pearson MyLabs. Visit mymanagementlab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
AN EMERGING VOICE FOR WORKERS

It’s no secret, of course, that China has become the largest manufacturing center in the world. Products marked “Made in China” are just about impossible to avoid in any retail outlet, factory, warehouse, supply chain, or other marketplace. (As noted in Chapter 17, some manufacturing operations that moved from Mexico to China over the last decade have begun to move back to Mexico. However, China is still the largest manufacturing center in the world and will likely remain so.) It’s also no secret about why this is true—China provides a vast array of relatively compliant workers with a wide array of skills who are willing to work long hours for low pay. This combination has made China an emerging global powerhouse and fueled its explosive economy to ever greater heights.

But cracks may be appearing in its manufacturing machine that could slow China’s economic ascent. In some ways it’s almost reminiscent of the kinds of labor problems that plagued the U.S. railroad and steel industries more than 100 years ago. In a nutshell, as the overall economic climate in China has improved, so too has the awareness of its workers of their own economic value and their willingness to stand up to their employers. Consider, for example, the words of Lan Yimin, a 22-year-old factory worker in China’s Pearl River Delta: “The young generation has a wider social circle; we talk more about factory conditions and we know more about our legal rights.”

The Chinese government, for its part, has allowed wages to increase and has improved working conditions in many manufacturing facilities. Part of the impetus for these changes has been the recognition that higher wages translate into more spending, which can serve as an economic stimulus. But the government also walks a fine line. If it invests too heavily in its workers and their working conditions, it risks losing its standing as a low-cost manufacturing center. On the other hand, though, repressing wages and maintaining substandard working conditions may lead to growing worker discontent and unwanted international media attention.

The unspoken words in all this, of course, are “labor unions.” But that too is tricky. In the United States, for instance, unions are formed by collectives of workers within a defined bargaining group (defined by profession, industry, skill, business, or location). Although the formation and operation of unions are regulated, the workers are responsible for forming a union, managing it, and engaging in collective bargaining with their employers. There are approximately 25,000 different unions in the United States. But in China, there is only one legal union—the state-controlled All-China Federation of Trade Unions (ACFTU). And the government is actually encouraging companies to unionize under the ACFTU umbrella. The thinking is that this form of union membership will give workers an avenue to air their grievances, forestalling harsher and more extreme actions.

But strikes are also becoming increasingly common. So far, at least, the Chinese government has taken a low-key approach to these strikes, though, because for the most part they have been directed at foreign-owned operations. Honda, for one, was hit by several strikes in 2010 and 2011. And Foxconn, a Taiwanese-owned electronics firm that makes electronic goods for Apple and Dell, has had a spate of suicides largely attributed to low wages and poor working conditions. Official information about the frequency and magnitude of strikes is unavailable. But according to Chinese government data, labor complaints heard by arbitration committees more than doubled from 2000 through 2007 to 350,182. And in 2008, arbitrated cases surged to almost 700,000 after a new law took effect, making it cheaper for workers to pursue arbitration and requiring employers to provide written contracts. In 2012, the number of arbitrated cases was around 980,000.

No one knows what the future holds, of course. But many experts agree that China still has a long way to go before it achieves a reasonable framework for dealing with organized labor. And the surge in strikes and lawsuits may indicate that workers are no longer willing to work for minimal wages while their country’s economy booms. Interestingly, China’s growing labor movement has also attracted attention in other parts of the region—workers in Vietnam and Cambodia have gone on strike in recent times as well, crediting their Chinese colleagues for inspiring them to take action. As the movement spreads, we can only be reminded of the words of the Greek poet Homer, who noted that “There is a strength in the union…of…men.”

At its most basic level any organization—from a small neighborhood convenience store to the largest multinational corporation (MNC)—is nothing more than a collection of jobs, clusters of jobs, and interconnections among those jobs. The people who fill the jobs are a vital ingredient in determining how effectively the organization will be able to meet its goals, remain competitive, and satisfy its constituents. Businesses in China, like those in many other countries, are having to grapple with achieving the right balance between worker prosperity and business profitability. Finding this balance, in turn, requires both strategic oversight and effective human resource management.
The Nature of International Human Resource Management

Human resource management (HRM) is the set of activities directed at attracting, developing, and maintaining the effective workforce necessary to achieve a firm’s objectives. HRM includes recruiting and selecting nonmanagers and managers, providing training and development, appraising performance, and providing compensation and benefits. Human resource (HR) managers, regardless of whether they work for a purely domestic firm or an international one, must develop procedures and policies for accomplishing these tasks.

International HR managers, however, face challenges beyond those confronting their counterparts in purely domestic companies. Specifically, differences in cultures, levels of economic development, and legal systems among the countries in which a firm operates may force it to customize its hiring, firing, training, and compensation programs on a country-by-country basis. Particularly troublesome problems develop when conflicts arise between the culture and laws of the home country and those of the host country. For example, prohibitions against gender discrimination in U.S. equal employment opportunity laws conflict with Saudi Arabian custom and law regarding the role, rights, and privileges of women. Such conflicts cause problems for U.S. MNCs that want to ensure their female executives receive overseas assignments equivalent to those given to their male colleagues.3

The international firm also must determine where various employees should come from—the home country, the host country, or third countries. The optimal mix of employees may differ according to the location of the firm’s operations. A firm is likely to hire more employees from its home country to work in production facilities there than to work in foreign facilities. Local laws also must be considered because they may limit or constrain hiring practices. For example, immigration laws may limit the number of work visas granted to foreigners, or employment regulations may mandate the hiring of local citizens as a requirement for doing business in a country.

International businesses also face more complex training and development challenges. HR managers must provide cross-cultural training for corporate executives chosen for overseas assignments. Similarly, training systems for production workers in host countries must be adjusted to reflect the education offered by local school systems. For example, because of the tradition of employment as a lifetime commitment, Toyota, like other large Japanese corporations, goes to great lengths to hire just the right people to work in its factories and offices. To help accomplish this, the firm has nurtured partnerships with local public school systems in Japan to help train and select future employees. However, Toyota cannot rely on this approach in each country in which it does business because local school systems often are not prepared to operate such training partnerships with individual firms. The German secondary school system provides extensive vocational training for its students, but that training is less firm-specific. The United States, on the other hand, emphasizes general education and provides only modest vocational training opportunities through its public schools. Moreover, many countries have labor pools that, when measured along any dimension, are uneducated and unskilled. Toyota thus has adjusted its selection, recruitment, and training practices to meet the requirements of the countries in which it does business.

Finally, because working conditions and the cost of living may vary dramatically by country, international HR managers often must tailor compensation systems to meet the needs of the host country’s labor market. They must take into account variations in local laws, which may require the payment of a minimum wage or may mandate certain benefits, such as annual bonuses or health care coverage. These managers also must determine how to compensate executives on overseas assignments, who potentially face higher costs of living, reductions in the quality of their lifestyle, and unhappiness or stress as a result of separation from friends and relatives.4

Strategic Significance of HRM

As with marketing, operations, and finance, the firm’s managers must design an HRM strategy that promotes the company’s overall corporate and business strategies. The cultural nuances inherent in international business heighten the complexities of developing an effective HR strategy. The basic elements of the international HRM process are shown in Figure 19.1, which provides the framework around which this chapter is organized. The starting point is recognizing
and appreciating HRM’s strategic position within the firm and the interconnection between overall firm strategy and HRM strategy. For example, suppose a firm decides to adopt a cost leadership strategy and subsequently identifies the opportunity to undercut competing firms by aggressively pricing its products in new international markets. In implementing this strategy, the firm could decide to purchase more inputs from outside suppliers, or it could shift production to a country with low-cost labor, such as Bangladesh or Vietnam. This production location decision could result in less need for home country workers and more need for workers at the foreign facility. The firm’s HR managers thus would have to develop severance packages and provide outplacement services for released workers in the home country as well as select, recruit, and train the new workers in the foreign country. Over time the firm’s HR managers would have to adjust their HR practices to meet the conditions in the host country, which are likely to differ from those in the home country.

The decision to shift production overseas has other HR consequences. HR managers have to select key managerial personnel to oversee the transfer of the firm’s technology, operating policies, and proprietary skills to its new overseas factories. Regardless of the skills or abilities of the selected international managers, few of them will be able to walk into a foreign operation and know exactly how to do things from the first day they arrive. Thus, HR managers must provide them with training to help them function more effectively in a new culture.

HR managers also must be prepared to define performance effectiveness and assess how well each international manager is doing relative to that definition. Moreover, international managers must be compensated for their work. Further, companies invest a lot in their international managers, so HR managers must carefully assess how effectively their firm manages retention and turnover.
International Managerial Staffing Needs

The staffing issues confronting international HR managers can be divided into two broad categories. One of these is recruiting, training, and retaining managerial and executive employees. The other is recruiting, training, and retaining nonmanagerial employees, such as blue-collar production workers and white-collar office staff. For managerial employees, strategic and developmental issues are of primary importance. For nonmanagerial workers, differences in cultural, political, and legal conditions among countries may be of greater significance.6

Scope of Internationalization

We begin by focusing on recruiting, training, and retaining managers. The size of this task depends on the scope of the firm’s international involvement. Obviously, a firm’s needs in the beginning stages of internationalization, such as in indirect exporting, are far less complex and comprehensive than those confronting an MNC with extensive investments in numerous countries. Consider the evolution of organizational structure discussed in Chapter 14:

1. Export department: A firm’s initial foray into international business usually involves small-scale exporting using output from existing domestic production facilities. Its international activities are administered by an export department, whose manager reports to an existing company executive such as the vice president of marketing. The manager is likely to be a citizen of the home country and may or may not have special training in overseas marketing and financing. As export sales increase, however, the firm quickly recognizes it must increase its staff’s expertise, so it hires specialists in export documentation, international trade financing, and overseas distribution and marketing. These specialists often are recruited from international banks, international freight forwarders, or export management companies.

2. International division: As its international operations grow in importance, a firm often creates a separate international division to administer all of its international activities. Typically, a firm’s international division is housed at corporate headquarters in its home country and is headed by a home country citizen to facilitate communication and coordination between the domestic and international operations. The heads of the firm’s foreign subsidiaries in turn report to the vice president of the international division. These foreign subsidiaries’ managers (including their presidents as well as heads of functional departments such as finance, marketing, and production) may be either home country or host country citizens. Use of a home country manager facilitates communication and coordination with corporate headquarters because of shared cultural and educational backgrounds.7 Use of a host country manager often improves the subsidiary’s ability to adjust to changes in local economic and political conditions. As we discuss later in this chapter, cost considerations also play a major role in the choice between home country and host country managers.

3. Global organization: A firm further along in the internationalization process often adopts a global organization form. (Chapter 14 discussed the global product, global functional, global area, and global customer forms.) Because of the complexity of its operations, a global organization must assemble a team of managers that have the expertise to produce, finance, and market its products worldwide while simultaneously coordinating its activities to achieve global production, financing, and marketing economies and synergies. To operate successfully, a global firm needs a team of managers that collectively possess expertise in and knowledge of the following:

- The firm’s product line: Product managers must be aware of such factors as the latest manufacturing techniques, research and development opportunities, and competitors’ strategies.
• The functional skills (accounting, logistics, marketing, manufacturing management, and so on) necessary to ensure global competitiveness: Functional specialists strive to capture global economies of scale and synergies in a firm’s financial, marketing, and production activities.

• The individual country markets in which the firm does business: Country managers must understand such factors as local laws, culture, competitors, distribution systems, and advertising media. These managers play a key role in meeting the needs of local customers, ensuring compliance with host country rules and regulations, and enlarging the firm’s market share and profitability in the host country.

• The firm’s global strategy: High-level executives at corporate headquarters must formulate a global strategy for the firm and then control and coordinate the activities of the firm’s product, functional, and country managers to ensure that its strategy is successfully implemented.

Centralization versus Decentralization of Control

An international business’s HRM needs also are affected by whether the firm wants decision making to be centralized at corporate headquarters or delegated (decentralized) to operating subsidiaries. Firms that use a centralized approach often favor employing home country managers; firms that follow a decentralized decision-making philosophy are more likely to employ host country managers.

Certain organizational approaches and forms affect the choice of centralization or decentralization. Firms that view themselves as multidomestic rather than multinational are likely to favor decentralization of decision making. The global area form facilitates delegating responsibility to managers of the firm’s foreign subsidiaries. Conversely, the international division form favors centralizing decision making at corporate headquarters.

Recall from Chapter 14 that most international businesses operate somewhere along the continuum from pure centralization to pure decentralization. In managing HR, most adopt an overall HRM strategy at the corporate headquarters level but delegate many day-to-day HR issues to local and regional offices. Doing this allows each foreign operation to meet its own needs and to more effectively deal with local conditions, cultures, and HR practices.

EMERGING OPPORTUNITIES

THINKING GLOBALLY BUT HIRING LOCALLY

When international businesses first began to aggressively move into China and India, they generally transferred expatriate managers from their home company to run these new operations. Among other reasons, the firms felt a need to try to export their corporate cultures and work procedures to the emerging markets they were entering; they also felt there was a lack of local managerial talent.

As recently as the mid-1990s, for example, virtually every U.S. company doing business in China filled most of its middle and upper management positions in that country with Americans. And the few positions not held by Americans were often filled with managers groomed in Singapore and Hong Kong, markets where these firms had operated for many years.

But in the 1990s things began to change. In China, for instance, many locals sharpened their English language skills, developed more leadership and decision-making skills, and became increasingly familiar and comfortable with the international business world. As a result, more and more locals are entering the ranks of middle and upper-level managers today. It’s estimated, for instance, that around 70 percent of foreign firms’ top management positions in China are filled by Chinese managers. This trend is not restricted to China; the same pattern is also occurring in India as well.

Nor is this pattern found only among U.S. firms in China. The German company Siemens, for instance, has Chinese nationals holding seven of its nine regional management positions there. And Ericsson, a Swedish telecommunications giant, currently fills 90 percent of its middle management positions and half of its top management positions in China with local managers.

Why are firms moving in this direction? There are several reasons. For one thing, hiring local managers is much cheaper. The company avoids costly relocation expenses and does not risk expatriate failure. Further, the compensation package for a local Chinese manager is only around 20 percent to 25 percent of that of a comparable manager transferred from a Western country. Local managers have a strong understanding of local market conditions, competitive behaviors, and government regulations. In addition, hiring locally can boost employee morale and motivation. The local manager has a rich understanding of cultural issues in the workplace and also serves as a symbol of advancement and success for other rising local managers.

Staffing Philosophy

The extent of the firm’s internationalization and its degree of centralization or decentralization affects (and is affected by) its philosophy regarding the nationality of its international managers. Firms can hire from three groups: parent country nationals, host country nationals, and third-country nationals.

**Parent country nationals (PCNs)** are residents of the international business’s home country. Use of PCNs in an MNC’s foreign operations provides many advantages to the firm. Because PCNs typically share a common culture and educational background with corporate headquarters staff, they facilitate communication and coordination with corporate headquarters. If the firm’s global strategy involves exploiting new technologies or business techniques that were developed in the home market, PCNs often are best able to graft those innovations to a host country setting. For example, Mercedes sent a team of executives from Germany to oversee the start-up of its U.S. operations. It wanted to ensure that its manufacturing techniques and corporate commitment to quality were successfully transplanted to Alabama.

However, using PCNs has several disadvantages. PCNs typically lack knowledge of the host country’s laws, culture, economic conditions, social structure, and political processes. Although PCNs can be trained to overcome these knowledge gaps, such training is expensive (particularly when the opportunity cost of the manager’s time is considered) and is not a perfect substitute for having been born and raised in the host country. Further, PCNs are often expensive to relocate and maintain in the host country. Finally, many host countries restrict the number of foreign employees who can be transferred in and/or mandate that a certain percentage of an international firm’s payroll must be paid to employees from the host country. Thus, an international business may not have total freedom to hire whomever it wants for international assignments. Because of these factors, PCNs are most likely to be used in upper-level and/or technical positions in host countries.

**Host country nationals (HCNs)** are residents of the host country. HCNs are commonly used by international businesses to fill middle-level and lower-level jobs, but they also often appear in managerial and professional positions. Experienced MNCs such as Intel, Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, IBM, and Halliburton often hire HCNs instead of transferring home country employees to work in professional positions in the firms’ foreign operations. Many smaller firms setting up operations abroad hire HCNs because the firms do not have enough managerial talent at home to send someone on a foreign assignment.8

Using HCNs offers two primary advantages. First, HCNs already understand the local laws, culture, and economic conditions. Second, the firm avoids the expenses associated with expatriate managers, such as relocation costs, supplemental wages paid for foreign service, and private schooling for children. However, using HCNs can have disadvantages. HCNs may be unfamiliar with the firm’s business culture and practices, thus limiting the effectiveness of the HCNs. As noted previously, Mercedes used German executives to shepherd the development of its U.S. operations to ensure that its new employees understood the firm’s emphasis on producing quality automobiles.

Finally, an international firm may hire **third-country nationals (TCNs)**, who are not citizens of the firm’s home country or of the host country. Like PCNs, TCNs are most likely to be used in upper-level and/or technical positions. TCNs and PCNs collectively are known as expatriates, or people working and residing in countries other than their native country. In the past TCNs were likely to be used when they had special expertise that was not available to the firm through any other channel. Today they are consciously being employed by some firms to promote a global outlook throughout their operations. Firms such as Nestlé and Philips NV rely heavily on TCNs because they believe those managers bring broader perspectives and experiences to the firms’ host country operations. Further, some firms are recruiting more TCNs to serve on their boards of directors to help bring a more global orientation to the boards.

Most international firms develop a systematic strategy for choosing among HCNs, PCNs, and TCNs for various positions. Some firms rely on the **ethnocentric staffing model**, whereby they primarily use PCNs to staff higher-level foreign positions. This approach is based on the assumption that home office perspectives should take precedence over local perspectives and that expatriate PCNs will be most effective in representing the views of the home office in the foreign
Most international businesses use host country nationals to fill middle-level and lower-level jobs. For example, while this Chinese garment factory is operating under contract from an American firm and is producing goods for export to Europe and the United States, its workers and their supervisor are locals.

Other international firms follow a polycentric staffing model; that is, they emphasize the use of HCNs in the belief that HCNs know the local market best. Finally, the geocentric staffing model puts PCNs, HCNs, and TCNs on an equal footing. Firms that adopt this approach want to hire the best person available, regardless of where that individual comes from. National culture often affects the staffing model chosen by a firm. European MNCs are more likely than U.S. or Japanese MNCs to adopt the geocentric approach. This approach is encouraged by the European Union (EU) to improve the mobility of workers and managers throughout its member countries. Japanese firms favor the ethnocentric staffing model, partly because their

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

SCHLUMBERGER PROFITS FROM GEOCENTRIC STAFFING

Schlumberger is one of the world’s largest oil field services companies. The firm offers a complete range of oil and gas services, including engineering, construction, and project management. Schlumberger has more than 118,000 employees, does business around the world, and, in 2012, earned more than $42.15 billion in revenues. Although the firm has little trouble finding oil these days, attracting and keeping the right people—a fundamental HRM issue—is proving to be an ongoing challenge.

Schlumberger and other large companies in energy-related industries depend heavily on a steady inflow of new employees. But an aging workforce and an unevenly distributed supply of talent continues to create challenges. For instance, there is a significant shortage of geosciences and petroleum engineering students in both North America and the Middle East—the regions where more people are needed.

More than 40 years ago Schlumberger adopted an aggressive and innovative HR strategy that is based on diversity and partnerships with colleges and universities. As a result, the firm has long hired in every country where it operates. In addition, it took a geocentric approach to all of its global assignments, hiring the best people regardless of where they are from and moving them to work assignments that are mutually beneficial regardless of the location of those assignments.

Schlumberger also established a long-term emphasis on hiring and developing women engineers. As a result of these efforts, Schlumberger has maintained an HR advantage over many of its key competitors. But these same competitors have shown their own brands of creativity as they, too, have taken a more global and integrated approach to HRM. Among other things, other firms in the industry often look to current Schlumberger employees when they need to recruit experienced people.

To maintain the competitive advantages Schlumberger gets from its workforce, the firm continues to develop and implement new systems, policies, and practices to retain the strong workforce it has attracted. For example, a rigorous and comprehensive training and development program helps keep its engineers at the forefront of their fields. Competitive salaries and performance-based incentives help retain the best and brightest of its employees, and well-defined career paths helps Schlumberger continue to grow and nourish the talent it needs to remain competitive in an increasingly competitive world.

A consensus-oriented approach to decision making is facilitated by employing Japanese managers in key roles in the firms’ foreign subsidiaries. Japanese firms sometimes rely too heavily on this model, to their own disadvantage. Although they usually hire HCNs for lower-level positions, the firms are reluctant to use non-Japanese managers in higher-level positions. When the firms do hire an HCN as a local manager, they have been accused of being too quick to send in a troubleshooter from the home office at the first sign of a problem. Further, the non-Japanese managers often face a glass ceiling because the top positions in the firms are reserved for Japanese managers. Thus, the ethnocentric policy often results in the loss of the best HCN managers, who seek more challenge and responsibility by shifting to non-Japanese employers.

**In Practice**

- Managers need to know how changes in the scope of internationalization affect their HRM practices.
- International HR managers need to have a clear understanding of the staffing philosophy that best fits their organization.

*For further consideration: What are the pros and cons of the three basic staffing philosophies?*

### Recruitment and Selection

A firm’s scope of internationalization, level of centralization, and staffing philosophy help determine the skills and abilities its international managers need. As shown in Figure 19.2, these skills and abilities fall into two general categories: those needed to do the job and those needed to work in a foreign location.

The firm first must define the actual business skills necessary to do the job. For example, a firm that has an assembly plant in a foreign market needs a plant manager who understands the technical aspects of what is to be manufactured, what manufacturing processes will be used, and so on. The firm’s marketing managers must be knowledgeable about advertising media availability, distribution channels, market competition, and local consumers’ demographic characteristics.

The firm next must determine the skills and abilities a manager must have to work and function effectively in the foreign location. These include the manager’s ability to adapt to cultural change, ability to speak the local language, overall physical and emotional health, levels of independence and self-reliance, and appropriate levels of experience and education. Obviously, an HCN can meet these requirements far easier than a PCN or TCN can. Firms relying on the ethnocentric or geocentric staffing models thus must devote more resources to selecting and training PCNs and TCNs for foreign assignments than do firms that rely on the polycentric model.

**FIGURE 19.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skills and Abilities Necessary to Do the Job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Technical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managerial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skills and Abilities Necessary to Work in a Foreign Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adaptability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location-specific skills (language, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal characteristics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Improved chances of succeeding in an international job assignment.
Recruitment of Managers

Once the international business determines the skills and abilities an international manager must have, it next must develop a pool of qualified applicants for the job and then recruit and select the best candidate.

RECRUITMENT OF EXPERIENCED MANAGERS International businesses recruit experienced managers through a variety of channels. A common source of recruits is within the firm itself—among employees already working for the firm in the host country or those who, although currently employed in the home country, might be prepared for an international assignment in the host country. The latter group may include both managers who have never held an international assignment and managers who have already completed previous international assignments. For example, when Kal Kan’s Canadian subsidiary entered the animal-food market in Poland, the firm relied on a team of Polish-born Canadian executives to start up the new operation. Other companies dip into their pool of retired executives to fill short-term international assignments. Whirlpool rehired one of its retired senior engineers to help expand its Shanghai washing machine factory, and Quaker Oats sent a team of five retired employees to oversee the start-up of a cereal plant in that same city. Retired employees often are eager to take on such tasks. For example, Verizon has a pool of several hundred former employees willing to tackle short-term foreign assignments.10

An international business also may attempt to identify prospective managers who work for other firms. These may be home country managers who are deemed to be qualified for an international assignment or managers already working in an international assignment for another firm. For higher-level positions firms often rely on so-called headhunters to help them locate prospective candidates. Headhunters are recruiting firms that actively seek qualified managers and other professionals for possible placement in positions in other organizations. In many parts of the world, including Japan, switching employers has long been frowned on; until recently, headhunting in Europe was considered unethical. Both of these views are changing, however. More firms are finding they can even entice highly qualified Japanese employees away from Japanese firms.

A firm may sometimes find it useful to relocate its facilities to be closer to a pool of qualified employees. For example, when Upjohn and Pharmacia (U.S. and Swedish pharmaceutical firms, respectively) merged in the mid-1990s, they initially selected London for their new corporate headquarters. However, it quickly became apparent there was not an adequate pool of managerial and technical talent available locally to staff the enterprise. Because London is among the world’s most expensive cities, transferring in managers from other locations was not cost effective. Thus, the firm subsequently moved its headquarters to New Jersey, where many other drug companies are located. Managers reasoned this would place them closer to a large talent pool of managers with pharmaceutical industry experience and therefore make recruiting a bit easier.11

One trend seems clear: As a result of the globalization of business, the market for executive talent also is becoming globalized. Firms increasingly value performance more than nationality. Nomura Securities, Japan’s largest stock brokerage firm, typifies this trend. Concerned about losses in its global market share, the firm turned to a seasoned U.S. securities executive, Max Chapman, to reinvigorate its global operations, which are headquartered in London.

RECRUITMENT OF YOUNGER MANAGERS It is uncommon for large MNCs to hire new college graduates for immediate foreign assignments. Some firms, however, will hire new graduates they ultimately intend to send abroad and, in the short term, give the graduates domestic assignments. Particularly attractive are graduates with foreign-language skills, international travel experience, and a major in international business or a related field. A few firms have started taking a longer-term view of developing international managerial talent. Coca-Cola, for example, has developed an innovative strategy for recruiting managers for future international assignments. It actively seeks foreign students who are studying at U.S. colleges and universities and who intend to return to their home countries after receiving their degrees. The firm recruits and hires the best of these graduates and puts them through a one-year training program. The new managers then return home as Coca-Cola employees and take assignments in the firm’s operations in their home countries.
Selection of Managers

After the pool of prospective managers has been identified, HR managers must decide which persons from that pool are the best qualified for the assignment. The most promising candidates share the following characteristics:

- Managerial competence (technical and leadership skills, knowledge of the corporate culture)
- Appropriate training (formal education, knowledge of the host market and its culture and language)
- Adaptability to new situations (ability to deal simultaneously with adjusting to a new work and job environment, adjusting to working with HCNs, and adjusting to a new national culture)

The importance of the selection process cannot be overstated when dealing with expatriate managers. The costs to a firm of expatriate failure are extremely high. Expatriate failure is the early return of an expatriate manager to the home country because of an inability to perform in the overseas assignment. Experts suggest these costs range from $200,000 to as much as $1.2 million (these figures include the expatriate’s original training, moving expenses, and lost managerial productivity but do not include the decreased performance of the foreign subsidiary itself). Expatriate failure occurs far too often. Failure rates of 20 to 50 percent are common for many U.S. firms, and rates appear to be much higher for them than for European and Japanese firms.12

The primary cause of expatriate failure is the inability of the managers and/or their spouse and family to adjust to the new locale. As a result, international HR managers increasingly are evaluating the nontechnical aspects of a candidate’s suitability for a foreign assignment. Assessing certain skills and abilities is relatively easy. For example, measuring a prospect’s language proficiency is a straightforward undertaking. Assessing a person’s cultural adaptability is more difficult and must be accomplished through a variety of means. Most firms use a combination of tests (such as personality and aptitude tests) and interviews in their selection process. Assessment centers, which offer programs of exercises, tests, and interviews that last several days, are also useful because they provide an in-depth look at a set of prospective candidates under the same circumstances.

Another important consideration is the prospect’s motivation for and interest in the foreign assignment.13 Some managers are attracted to foreign assignments, perhaps because they relish the thought of living abroad or because they see the experience as being useful in their future career plans. Others balk at the thought of uprooting their family and moving to a foreign environment, particularly one that is culturally distant from their own. As previously noted, failure of the family to adjust to the new culture is a prominent cause of expatriate failure. Thus, most firms also consider the family’s motivation for and interest in the foreign assignment. The manager’s job performance often will deteriorate if the manager has an unhappy spouse cut off from friends and family and frustrated by dealing with a new culture. Clearly a foreign relocation is far more disruptive to the family than a domestic relocation. Dependent children may face problems integrating into a new school culture—particularly if they do not speak the local language—and may find that material covered in the courses at their new school is well ahead (or well behind) that at their home school.14 In addition, there is the dual-career problem. Trailing spouses may find it difficult to take leave from their current position, thereby forcing a disruption in their career advancement. Still worse, labor laws in the new country may make it difficult or impossible for the spouse to obtain employment there legally.

Because of the risk of expatriate failure, firms often devote considerable resources to selection and training.15 AT&T, for example, prides itself on doing an especially thorough job of selecting managers for foreign assignments. The firm has long used personality tests and interviews as part of its selection process. It now also uses psychologists to help assess prospects and is investing more into learning about family considerations. In addition, the prospects complete a self-assessment checklist designed to help them probe their motivations for seeking a foreign transfer. AT&T reports that this exercise increases managers’ self-awareness. As a result, more managers now remove themselves from consideration for foreign assignments.

Some international businesses are concerned with not only how well a prospective manager will adapt to the foreign culture but also how well the person will fit into that culture.16 For example, for years some U.S. firms hesitated to send women managers on foreign assignments
to some countries, such as Japan, because the firms assumed the women would not be accepted in a culture that frowned on women working outside the home. However, research indicates that this fear is overstated. Host country citizens react primarily to these executives’ foreignness, rather than to their gender.

Expatriation and Repatriation Issues

PCNs on long-term foreign assignments face great acculturation challenges. Working in and coping with a foreign culture can lead to culture shock, a psychological phenomenon that may lead to feelings of fear, helplessness, irritability, and disorientation. New expatriates may experience a sense of loss regarding their old cultural environment as well as confusion, rejection, self-doubt, and decreased self-esteem from working in a new and unfamiliar cultural setting.\(^{17}\) Acculturation, as shown in Figure 19.3, typically proceeds through four phases.\(^{18}\)

Culture shock reduces an expatriate’s effectiveness and productivity, so international businesses have developed various strategies to mitigate its effects. One simple solution is to provide expatriates (and their families) with predeparture language and cultural training, so they can better understand and anticipate the cultural adjustments they must undergo. In addition to straightforward training, firms also might make initial foreign assignments relatively brief and make sure the expatriates understand the role each assignment plays in their overall career prospects.

Interestingly, international businesses should pay almost as much attention to repatriation—bringing a manager back home after a foreign assignment has been completed—as they do to expatriation. If managers and their families have been successfully expatriated, they become comfortable with living and working in the foreign culture. Returning home can be almost as traumatic to them as was the original move abroad. One reason for the difficulty of repatriation is that people tend to assume nothing has changed at home. They look forward to getting back to their friends, familiar surroundings, and daily routines. Yet their friends may have moved or developed new social circles, and their coworkers may have been transferred to other jobs.

FIGURE 19.3
Phases in Acculturation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Honeymoon</th>
<th>For the first few days or months the new culture seems exotic and stimulating. Excitement of working in new environment makes employee overestimate the ease of adjusting.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disillusionment</td>
<td>Differences between new and old environments are blown out of proportion. As employee and family face challenges of everyday living, differences become magnified. Many transplanted employees remain stuck in this phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptation</td>
<td>With time employee begins to understand patterns of new culture, gains language competence, and adjusts to everyday living.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culturalism</td>
<td>Anxiety has ended as transplanted employee gains confidence in ability to function productively in new culture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some expatriates who have returned to the United States have even been denied credit because they have not had a domestic financial history for several years. Repatriated managers also have to cope with change and uncertainty at work. The firm may not be sure what their job is going to entail. Further, they may have been running the show at the foreign operation and enjoying considerable authority. Back home, however, the managers are likely to have much less authority and to be on a par with many other managers reporting to more senior managers. Also, repatriated managers and their families may have enjoyed a higher social status in the host country than they will enjoy after returning home. Thus, readjustment problems may be severe and need the attention of both the managers and the firm.

The repatriation problem can be expensive for a firm. By some estimates one-quarter of all repatriated employees leave their employer within a year after returning home. The average U.S. expatriate costs the employer about $300,000 per year and stays three to four years on an overseas assignment; thus, each repatriated executive who leaves the firm represents a million-dollar investment walking out the door.

The bottom line is that expatriation and repatriation problems can be reduced if international businesses systematically provide organizational career development programs for their expatriate managers. Recent research indicates that the likelihood of managers being successful at an overseas assignment increases if the managers:

- Can freely choose whether to accept or reject the expatriate assignment
- Have been given a realistic preview of the new job and assignment
- Have been given a realistic expectation of what their repatriation assignment will be
- Have a mentor back home who will guard their interests and provide corporate and social support during the assignment
- See a clear link between the expatriate assignment and their long-term career path

Of these five elements, the last is the most critical in determining expatriate success.

In Practice

International HR managers need to understand the nuances of recruiting and selecting both experienced and younger managers.

Expatriation and repatriation need to be carefully managed.

For further consideration: Refer back to Figure 19.3. Can you think of things that can be done to help minimize or eliminate the disillusionment stage?

Training and Development

The international firm’s HR managers also must provide training and development for its home and host country managers to help them perform more effectively. Training is instruction directed at enhancing specific job-related skills and abilities. For example, training programs might be designed to help employees learn to speak a foreign language, to use new equipment, or to implement new manufacturing procedures. Special acculturation training is important for employees who are given international assignments. Development is general education concerned with preparing managers for new assignments or higher-level positions. For instance, a development program could be aimed at helping managers improve their ability to make decisions or to motivate subordinates to work harder.

Assessing Training Needs

Before a firm can undertake a meaningful training or development program, it must assess its exact training and development needs. This assessment involves determining the difference between what managers and employees can do and what the firm feels they need to be able to do. For example, suppose a firm that does business in Latin America wants its employees to be able to speak Spanish fluently. If most of its employees are fluent in Spanish, its language training needs may be minimal, but if relatively few employees are fluent, extensive training may be called for. The assessment of training needs is an extremely important element of international HRM. Firms that underestimate training needs can encounter serious difficulties.
Indeed, lack of knowledge about foreign customers and markets is a major barrier to successful entry into such markets. A firm just moving into international markets has different training and development needs from those of an established global firm. The newly internationalizing firm is likely to have few, if any, experienced international managers. Thus, its training and development needs will be substantial. In contrast, a global firm has a cadre of trained and experienced managers with international backgrounds, skills, and abilities. Yet even then, organization change may necessitate training. For instance, when Jaguar took over a plant in England that had formerly been making Ford Escorts, managers found a workforce that was dispirited and unwilling to accept responsibility for making decisions. All employees were thus sent to several training workshops intended to both enhance their technical skills and to empower them to make key decisions for themselves.21

**Basic Training Methods and Procedures**

The first issue an international business must consider as it plans its training and development efforts is whether to rely on standardized programs or to develop its own customized programs. Certain kinds of training can be readily obtained in common retail outlets—for example, self-paced language training on CDs or DVDs. Prudential Insurance even offers packaged training programs for families of expatriates, a good idea in light of the importance of family problems in causing expatriate failure. One advantage of standardized programs is that they tend to be less expensive than customized ones. On the other hand, a standardized program may not precisely fit the firm’s needs.

As a result, most training and development programs often are customized to a firm’s particular needs. Larger MNCs often have training and development departments that develop customized programs for the unique needs of individual managers or business units. Training and development activities may take place in regular classroom settings within the firm, on actual job sites, or off premises in a conference center or hotel. Customized programs are more costly than standardized programs; however, they ensure that employees get the precise information deemed necessary. Regardless of whether training and development programs are standardized or customized, most use a variety of methods as instructional vehicles. Lectures and assigned readings are common, as are videotaped and web-based instruction. Multimedia technologies are increasingly being incorporated into cross-cultural training. According to Sanjyot Dunung, president of Atma Global, one of the innovators in this area, MNCs increasingly desire...
consistent but flexible delivery of cross-cultural training for their employees. Multimedia approaches allow employees spread throughout the globe to access training materials at their convenience at any time of day or night.

Role-playing and other forms of experiential exercises are useful for helping people better understand other cultures. Motorola uses a workplace simulation to help prepare its managers for foreign assignments. Case studies also are used, although not as frequently as other methods. Training materials often must be altered to fit different cultural contexts. For example, a consultant hired to make training videos for Bally of Switzerland initially assumed he could use the same basic video for each of Bally’s regional offices, with only minor script modifications. As the project progressed, however, he found that so many language and cultural differences affected the video that he essentially had to reshoot it for each office.

The trainers themselves also may need to adapt how they do things. One professional trainer reported difficulties in using her normal style when running a training program in Thailand. She preferred to be informal and to involve the participants through role-playing and other forms of interaction. She found, however, that Thai managers were uncomfortable with her informality and resisted the role-playing approach. She eventually had to adopt a more formal style and use a straightforward lecture approach to get her points across.

Developing Younger International Managers

The increasing globalization of business has prompted most MNCs to recognize the importance of internationalizing their managers earlier in their careers. Until the late 1980s most U.S. MNCs delayed giving their managers significant overseas assignments until they had spent 7 to 10 years with the firm. Today many of these MNCs are beginning to recognize that they need to develop the international awareness and competence of their managers earlier and to systematically integrate international assignments into individual career plans. For example, General Electric (GE) provides language and cross-cultural training to its professional staff even though they may not be scheduled for overseas postings. Such training is important because these employees, even if they never leave their home countries, are likely to work with GE employees from other countries and to deal with visiting executives from GE’s foreign partners, suppliers, and customers. Such training also helps the employees gain a better understanding of the firm’s international markets. Other firms, such as American Express and Johnson & Johnson, occasionally post managers to overseas assignments after only 18 to 20 months on the job. PepsiCo and Raychem are bringing young managers from the firms’ foreign operations to the United States to enrich the managers’ understanding of their firms’ cultures and technologies.

U.S. firms are not the only ones integrating international assignments into career development plans for younger managers. Honda’s U.S. manufacturing subsidiary has been sending U.S. managers to Tokyo for multiyear assignments so they can learn more about the firm’s successful manufacturing and operating philosophies. Samsung regularly sends its executives abroad for various assignments. One of its more interesting strategies is to send younger managers to certain foreign locations for as long as a year with no specific job responsibilities. The managers are supposed to spend their time learning the local language and becoming familiar with the culture. The idea is that if they are transferred back to that same location in the future—when they are in a higher-level position—they will be able to function more effectively. Even though the program costs Samsung about $80,000 per person per year, executives believe the firm will quickly recoup its investment.

In Practice

- International HR managers need to know the basic issues in training and developing employees.
- It is important for managers to know the various methods available for training and development of managers.

For further consideration: What learning methods work best for you? That is, if you wanted to learn something like, say, a foreign language, what technique would most likely be effective?
Performance Appraisal and Compensation

Another important part of international HRM consists of conducting performance appraisals and determining compensation and benefits. Whereas recruitment, selection, and training and development tend to focus on preassignment issues, performance appraisal and compensation involve ongoing issues that continue to have an effect well past the initial international assignment.

Assessing Performance in International Business

Performance appraisal is the process of assessing how effectively people are performing their jobs. The purposes of performance appraisal are to provide feedback to individuals on how well they are doing; to provide a basis for rewarding top performers; to identify areas in which additional training and development may be needed; and to identify problem areas that may call for a change in assignment.

Performance appraisals of an international business’s top managers must be based on the firm’s clear understanding of its goals for its foreign operations. A successful subsidiary in a mature and stable foreign market will have different goals than will a start-up operation in a growing but unstable market. Thus, a firm assigning two new managers to head these different subsidiaries must understand that it cannot expect the same outcome from each of them. Similarly, managers of foreign subsidiaries that serve as cost centers must be judged by different standards from those used for managers of profit centers.

In assessing a manager’s actual performance, the firm may consider sales, profit margin, market share growth, or any other measures or indicators it deems important. If a subsidiary has been having problems, performance may be more appropriately assessed in terms of how well the manager has helped to solve those problems. For example, reducing net losses or halting a decline in market share might be considered good performance, at least in the short term.

Expected and actual performance must be compared, and differences must be addressed. This step needs to have a strong diagnostic component: Why and how has the manager’s performance been acceptable or unacceptable? Are any problems attributable to the manager’s lack of skills? Are some problems attributable to unforeseen circumstances? Is the home office accountable for some of the problems that may have arisen, perhaps because the manager was inadequately trained? Of course, cultural values may shape expectations—an individualistic culture will attribute more of the organization’s performance to the individual manager than a collectivist one—thus complicating performance appraisal when the appraiser and the appraisee come from different cultures.

Circumstances will dictate how frequently performance appraisals occur. In a domestic firm they may occur as often as every quarter. Geographical factors, however, can limit the frequency with which international performance appraisals can occur. Generally, international managers are expected to submit reports on performance-based results to headquarters regularly. As long as these reports fall within acceptable parameters, the firm is likely to conduct a formal performance appraisal perhaps on an annual basis. However, if standard reports reveal a problem, performance appraisals may be done more often in an effort to get things back on track.

Determining Compensation in International Business

Another important issue in international HRM is determining managerial compensation. To remain competitive, firms must provide prevailing compensation packages for their managers in a given market. These packages include salary and nonsalary items and are determined by labor market forces such as the supply and demand of managerial talent, occupational status, professional licensing requirements, standards of living, government regulations, tax codes, and similar factors. For example, in Germany employers customarily reimburse their executives for car expenses. In Japan the executive may actually get a car plus expenses. Japanese executives also receive generous entertainment allowances and an allowance for business gifts. Similarly, British companies typically provide company cars to managers. In the United States firms offer managers health care benefits because such benefits are free from income taxes.

Compensating Expatriate Managers A more complex set of compensation issues apply to expatriate managers. Most international businesses find it necessary to provide these managers with differential compensation to make up for dramatic differences in currency valuation,
standards of living, lifestyle norms, and so on. When managers are on short-term assignments abroad, their home country salaries normally continue unchanged. (Of course, the managers are reimbursed for short-term living expenses such as for hotel rooms, meals, and transportation.) If foreign assignments are indefinite or longer term, compensation is routinely adjusted to allow the managers to maintain their home country standard of living. This adjustment is particularly important if a manager is transferred from a low-cost location to a high-cost location or from a country with a high standard of living to one with a lower standard of living. Map 19.1 identifies the 50 most expensive cities in the world. For example, in 2012, Tokyo was the most expensive city in the world for expatriates. Sydney, Australia, was number 11, Oslo, Norway, was number 18, New York was number 33, and Dakar, Senegal, and Victoria, Seychelles, were tied for number 50.

The starting point in differential compensation is a cost-of-living allowance. This allowance is intended to offset differences in the cost of living in the home and host countries. The premise is that a manager who accepts a foreign assignment is entitled to the same standard of living the manager enjoyed at home. If the cost of living in the foreign country is higher than that at home, the manager’s existing base pay will result in a lower standard of living, and the firm will supplement the base pay to offset this difference. Of course, if the cost of living in the foreign location is lower than at home, no such allowance is needed.

Sometimes firms find they must supplement base pay to get a manager to accept an assignment in a relatively unattractive location. Although it may not be difficult to find people willing to move to England or Japan, it may be much more difficult to entice people to move to Sudan or Afghanistan. Called either a hardship premium or a foreign-service premium, this supplement is essentially an inducement to the individual to accept the international assignment. For instance, the French oil company Total wanted to transfer managers back to its operations in Angola when that country’s bloody civil war ended; it found that it had to offer a substantial foreign-service premium to entice anyone to go. Even then, those executives also insisted that their assignment in Angola would last for one year or less.

Finally, many international businesses also find they must set up a tax equalization system. A tax equalization system is a means of ensuring that the expatriate’s after-tax income in the host country is similar to what the person’s after-tax income would be in the home country. Each country has unique tax laws that apply to the earnings of its own citizens, to earnings within its borders by foreign citizens, and/or to earnings in another country by its own citizens. The most common tax equalization system has the firm’s own accounting department handling the taxes of its expatriates. An accountant from the firm determines what a manager’s taxes will be where the manager is living and what they would be at home on the same income and then makes the appropriate adjustment to equalize the two.

Figure 19.4 shows how one major oil company creates compensation packages for its expatriate managers. The blocks in the center reflect an individual’s U.S. base compensation before being posted to an international assignment. After an assignment has been made, the blocks above and below are used to calculate appropriate adjustments to the employee’s compensation. For example, suppose a U.S. executive being transferred abroad currently earns $100,000, of which $25,000 is paid in taxes, $10,000 is saved, and the remaining $65,000 consumed. Further suppose that the executive currently spends $2,000 a month on housing (mortgage plus utilities). The firm will adjust the executive’s total compensation to make it as equal as possible to that currently earned in the United States. Assume that housing and utilities in the host country cost about 20 percent more than in the United States, and other consumables cost about 10 percent more. Thus, the firm will pay the executive a supplemental housing allowance that is equal to what the executive currently pays times 20 percent, or a total of $400 a month. The remaining part of the executive’s consumption spending will be increased by 10 percent. Similar adjustments will be made to the other components of Figure 19.4.

Benefits packages for expatriate managers International businesses must provide not only salary adjustments but also special forms of benefits for their expatriate managers in addition to standard benefits such as health insurance and vacation allowances. Special benefits include housing, education, medical treatment, travel to the home country, and club memberships.

A common special benefit involves housing. Like other components of living costs, housing expenses vary in different areas. Duplicating the level of housing the executive enjoyed in the
MAP 19.1
Global Cost of Living Survey

home country may be expensive, so housing often is treated as a separate benefit. If a manager is going on permanent or long-term assignment, the firm may buy the manager’s existing home at fair-market value. The firm also may help the manager buy a house in the host country if housing costs or interest rates are substantially different from those at home.

If the expatriate manager has a family, the firm may need to provide job location assistance for the spouse and help cover education costs for children. For example, children may need to attend private school, which the firm would pay for. Schooling represents a particularly important problem for Japanese expatriate managers, whose children may not do well in the national entrance exams for the most prestigious Japanese universities if their Japanese reading and writing skills atrophy as a result of living abroad. Thus, many Japanese firms pay for their expatriates’ children to attend private schools that help students cram for those exams.

Medical benefits also may need to be adjusted. For example, some people consider Malaysian health care facilities inadequate. Thus, managers on assignment there often request that their employer send them to Singapore whenever they need medical attention. And many international firms are routinely incorporating immunizations and dietary recommendations for executives traveling abroad, and arranging medical exams and treatments for expatriates and visiting executives from overseas.

Most international businesses provide expatriates with a travel allowance for trips to the home country for personal reasons, such as to visit other family members or to celebrate holidays. Managers and their families may be allowed one or two trips home per year at company expense. If a manager’s family remains at home during a short-term assignment, the manager may be given more frequent opportunities to travel home.

In some cultures, belonging to a certain club or participating in a particular activity is a necessary part of the business world. In Japan, for example, many business transactions occur during a round of golf. To be effective in Japan, a foreign manager may need to join a golf club. Memberships in such clubs, however, cost thousands of dollars, and a single round of golf may cost 10 times or more what it costs elsewhere. Because such activities are a normal part of doing business, firms often provide managers transferred to Japan with these benefits.

**EQUITY IN COMPENSATION** Thus far, our discussion of compensating expatriate managers has not addressed the issue of equity between the compensation granted expatriate managers and that given to HCNs in similar positions. Often the compensation package offered the expatriate manager is much more lucrative than that offered an HCN occupying an equivalent position of power and responsibility. The equity issue becomes even more complicated when dealing with TCNs. For example, if a U.S. international oil firm transfers a Venezuelan executive to its Peruvian operations, should the Venezuelan be paid according to Peruvian, Venezuelan, or U.S. standards?
Unfortunately there is no simple solution to this problem, and MNCs use a variety of approaches in grappling with it. Hewlett-Packard pays expatriates on short-term assignments according to home country standards and those on long-term assignments according to host country standards. Minnesota Mining & Manufacturing (3M) compares the compensation package it offers in the expatriate’s home country with what it normally pays HCNs and then gives the expatriate the higher pay package. Phillips Petroleum pegs a TCN’s salary to that of the person’s home country but offers housing allowances, educational benefits, and home leaves based on costs in the host country.

The failing value of the dollar and recent changes in the U.S. tax codes have caused some firms to begin an intensive study and review of their expatriate compensation and benefits programs. For instance, the taxes expatriates pay on their foreign housing allowance has recently been increased; some firms pay this cost for their employees and so the higher rates are passed on to the employer. Higher costs have also led some firms to rethink the best people to consider for a new international assignment. If a multinational has a large operation in both Eastern Europe and the United States, for instance, it might find that an executive from the Czech Republic will accept more modest living arrangements for an assignment in Singapore than will his or her colleague from New York.26

BRINGING THE WORLD INTO FOCUS

JAPANESE MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES IN CHINA

Japanese multinational corporations operating in China have invariably brought Japanese management techniques and practices to their factories and operations in China. On the one hand, Japanese management seems to be a fairly good fit, but many Chinese employees suggest that there are fundamental problems, ranging from seating arrangements to incentive structures. As a result, an enormous number of Chinese employees resign from Japanese companies on a regular basis. Most university graduates stay no longer than three years, and Japanese companies rank very low for Chinese workers as businesses they would like to work for. Sony was only ranked 24th and Matsushita 46th.

One of the major cultural differences that causes problems for the Chinese employees is the layout of the offices. Japanese companies use open-office layouts, with no partitions and desks arranged in clusters. The second key criticism is that the Japanese businesses are too process-orientated. They demand that all tasks be carried out using a particular work procedure, down to teaching employees how to file. Work timings are also an area of concern. Overtime is part of the culture of Japanese companies and Chinese employees are expected to work 40 hours or more overtime per month. The idea behind this is that overtime equals hard work. In compensation, Japanese companies do pay for the extra hours in China, which is not always the case in Japan. Paid leave is also an issue—the Chinese viewing paid leave as an entitlement and the Japanese seeing it as a concession.

Remuneration is also a concern for the Chinese workers. European and American multinational companies tend to pay more than the Japanese. Career development is problematic too. Senior management is almost exclusively reserved for Japanese nationals. If Japanese employees leave (which is rare), the parent company sends a replacement Japanese manager to fill the post, rather than offering it to similarly qualified Chinese employees.

There are still anti-Japanese sentiments in China, so it is reasonable to consider the points with a degree of caution. The Japanese may have believed that in wholesale export of their management-style they would have been able to replicate Japanese management systems and decision-making processes. However, in instances such as this it may have been undermined by an over reliance on ex-patriot Japanese management.

Retention and Turnover

Another important element of international HRM focuses on retention and turnover. Retention is the extent to which a firm is able to retain valued employees. Turnover, essentially the opposite, is the rate at which people leave a firm.

People choose to leave a firm for any number of reasons—for example, dissatisfaction with their current pay or promotion opportunities or receipt of a better offer to work elsewhere. Turnover is often a result of job transitions such as those associated with expatriation and repatriation: A worker contemplating changing work locations also may consider changing employers. Turnover is a particular problem in international business because of the high cost of developing managers’ international business skills. Managers with strong reputations for having those skills are in high demand. As noted previously, some firms even rely on headhunters to help them locate prospective managers currently working for other firms. For exactly the same reason—a scarcity of skilled, experienced managers—keeping successful managers should be a high priority for any international business. One way to control managerial turnover is to develop strategies designed to reduce expatriate failure and repatriate failure. These may include providing career development counseling or cross-cultural training to ease the stress of relocation.

A firm also may have to provide special inducements or incentives to its most valuable international managers. They may receive higher salaries or be given a greater say in choosing their assignments. The firm also may make stronger guarantees to them regarding the time frame of their assignments. For example, a firm may want to hire a particularly skillful TCN to run its operation in Italy. Because of the costs and other problems associated with relocation, the

Dubai-based Emirates airlines has been growing rapidly in recent years. In order to maintain the necessary cadre of skilled pilots, Emirates has routinely been hiring pilots from other countries. For example, there are over 100 former U.S. pilots currently working for Emirates. By providing strong salaries and benefits packages, the airline has become a very attractive place to work. Some airlines in China and India have also adopted this model.
individual may consider the assignment only if the firm guarantees the assignment will last for a minimum of, say, five years.

Another important element of turnover management is the exit interview. An exit interview is an interview with an employee who is leaving a firm. Its purpose is to find out as much as possible about why the person decided to leave. Given the distances involved in international business, however, firms may be reluctant to do exit interviews. Yet the potential value of the information gleaned is high: Managers can use it to reduce future employee losses. Thus, firms should give careful consideration to using such interviews as part of their strategy for reducing turnover.

The U.S. airline industry has been facing mounting challenges in retaining its best pilots. For years, as the airlines went through one financial difficulty after another, pilots saw their salaries cut, their benefits reduced, and/or their job security eliminated. As new foreign airlines have sprung up, they have come to see the U.S. labor pool a ready source of pilots. For example, Dubai-based Emirates airlines offers its pilots a freshly pressed uniform and a chauffeur-driven ride to the airport each day they fly. Emirates pilots also get twice the vacation time as their U.S. counterparts, as well as guaranteed annual raises and strong benefits. All told, there are more than 100 former U.S. pilots now working for Emirates. New start-up airlines in China and India are also aggressively recruiting U.S. pilots.27

In Practice

- International HR managers need to understand the basic reasons for turnover.
- Proactive employee retention can be an important function for international HR managers.

For further consideration: Suppose you were resigning from a position because of a personality clash with your boss, and your boss was conducting your exit interview. How honest would you be? Why?

Human Resource Issues for Nonmanagerial Employees

Next, we shift the focus of our discussion of HR issues to nonmanagerial employees in host countries. The standard HRM tasks associated with nonmanagerial employees—recruitment, selection, training, compensation, and so on—are strongly influenced by local laws, culture, and economic conditions. To prosper in the host country environment, HR managers must not fall prey to their own self-referencing criteria. They must be willing to do things the way the locals want, not the way things are done at home. In short, “When in Rome, do as the Romans do.” Thus, many MNCs hire HCNs to staff their HR operations, so the local knowledge of the HCNs can be incorporated into the policies and procedures of the HR department.

Recruitment and Selection

In international firms’ foreign operations, nonmanagerial employees, such as blue-collar production workers and white-collar office workers, are typically HCNs. In most cases there are economic reasons for this decision: HCNs are usually cheaper to employ than are PCNs or TCNs. HCNs also are used because local laws often promote the hiring of locals. Immigration and visa laws, for example, typically restrict jobs to citizens and legal residents of the country. A few exceptions to this rule exist. Construction firms in rich countries such as Saudi Arabia and Kuwait often use Bangladeshi or Pakistani labor because local citizens dislike the working conditions. Oil firms and airlines often employ PCNs and TCNs for high-skilled jobs such as drilling supervisor and pilot. South Korea is facing a labor shortage as its workforce ages and, as a result, has relaxed its immigration standards so more foreign workers can enter. Since 2000, the number of immigrant workers in South Korea has increased sevenfold and now totals around 1.5 million.28

Nonetheless, an international business must develop and implement a plan for recruiting and selecting its employees in a host country market.29 This plan should include assessments of the firm’s HR needs, sources of labor, labor force skills and talents, and training
requirements, and also should account for special circumstances that exist in the local labor market. The chapter’s closing case, for example, details how Toyota goes about recruiting and selecting U.S. employees for its U.S. production facilities.

When firms are hiring PCNs for foreign assignments, the firms must adhere to their home country’s hiring regulations, laws, and norms. When hiring HCNs, the firms must be aware of those regulations, laws, and norms within the host country. For example, in the United States laws and regulations prohibit a firm from discriminating against someone on the basis of gender, race, age, religion, and other characteristics. For instance, Toyota had to ensure that during its selection of its U.S. employees, it did not violate any of those laws and regulations. Because of these restrictions, the selection process in the United States emphasizes job-relatedness. Job-related criteria such as skills, abilities, and education can be used to hire employees; non-job-related criteria such as gender or age cannot. In some countries characteristics such as gender, religion, and skin color are commonly used in hiring decisions. For example, firms in Israel and Northern Ireland often discriminate on the basis of religion, and those in Saudi Arabia discriminate on the basis of gender.

Training and Development

HR managers also must assess the training and development needs of the host country’s workforces to help them perform their jobs more effectively. The training and development needs of local workforces depend on several factors. An important one is the location of the foreign operation. In highly industrialized markets, firms usually find a nucleus of capable workers who may need only a bit of firm-specific training. In an area that is relatively underdeveloped, training needs will be much greater. For example, when Hilton began operating hotels in Eastern Europe after the Soviet Union disintegrated, it found that waiters, hotel clerks, and other customer service employees lacked the basic skills necessary to provide high-quality service to guests. These employees were so accustomed to working in a planned economy, where there was little or no need to worry about customer satisfaction, that they had difficulty recognizing why they needed to change their workplace behavior. Hilton had to invest much more in training new employees there than it had anticipated.

Training also is a critical element if an international business wants to take full advantage of locating production abroad. In recent years MNCs have shown a marked tendency to move facilities to certain areas, such as Honduras, Vietnam, and Indonesia, to capitalize on inexpensive labor. But often the productivity of this labor is low, unless the firm is willing to invest in workforce training. The owner of Quality Coils, Inc., a U.S. maker of electromagnetic coils, closed the firm’s plant in Connecticut and opened a plant in Ciudad Juarez, Mexico, because hourly wage rates there were one-third the wage rates in Connecticut. The owner soon discovered, however, that productivity was also only one-third of what it had been in Connecticut. This, combined with higher absenteeism and the personal costs of running a facility in Mexico, prompted the owner to move the operation back to Connecticut.30

Training costs sometimes arise for reasons the firm might not have anticipated. For example, when Merrill Lynch bought Japan’s fourth-largest brokerage company, Yamaichi Securities, it thought it was also gaining a cadre of 2,000 talented and experienced brokers familiar with their domestic market. But Merrill Lynch soon discovered that although Yamaichi brokers knew how to handle stock transactions, they were unfamiliar with concepts associated with customer service and working to understand customer investment goals before making stock recommendations. Hence, Merrill had to invest heavily in training its new brokers in how it wanted them to work with clients.31

Compensation and Performance Appraisal

Compensation and performance appraisal practices for nonmanagerial employees also differ dramatically among countries, depending on local laws, customs, and cultures. Individualistic cultures such as that of the United States focus on assessing the individual’s performance and then compensating the person accordingly. More group-oriented cultures such as Japan’s emphasize training and motivating the group and place less emphasis on individual performance appraisal and compensation. The HR manager at each foreign operation must develop and implement a performance appraisal and reporting system most appropriate for that setting,
given the nature of the work being performed and the cultural context. For example, although U.S. workers often appreciate feedback from the appraisal system—thereby allowing them to do better in the future—German workers are often resentful of feedback, believing it requires them to admit failures and shortcomings.\(^{32}\)

Compensation practices also reflect local laws, culture, and economic conditions. Prevailing wage rates vary among countries, which has caused many labor-intensive industries to migrate to countries such as Bangladesh, Indonesia, and Guatemala. To attract workers, HR managers must ensure their firms’ wage scales are consistent with local norms.

Compensation packages entail incentive payments and benefit programs in addition to wages. International business researchers have found that the mix among wages, benefits, and incentive payments varies as a function of national culture. For example, wages on average accounted for 85 percent of the total compensation package for workers in 41 manufacturing industries in four Asian countries. However, wages amounted to only 56 percent of the total compensation package for workers in those same industries in five “Latin European” countries. By adjusting the composition of the compensation package to meet local norms, HR managers ensure their workers (and the firm) get the maximum value from each compensation dollar spent.\(^{33}\) Local laws also affect an international firm’s compensation policies. For example, Mexican law requires employers to provide paid maternity leave, a Christmas bonus of 15 days’ pay, and at least three months’ severance pay for dismissed workers. Local norms may also have an impact on compensation costs. In Sweden, workers use more sick leave than is the case in other countries—an average of 24.4 days per year, four times as much as U.S. workers and twice as much as the average Danish, German, or Spanish employee.\(^{34}\) And although the United States does not mandate any paid vacation time for employees, France mandates 30 days per year; Norway, Denmark, Finland, and Sweden mandate 25 days per year; and Germany mandates 24 days per year as a minimum for all workers.\(^{35}\)

---

**In Practice**

- International HR managers need to understand the basic issues in recruiting and selecting nonmanagerial employees.
- Training and development and compensation and performance appraisal requirements for nonmanagerial employees must also be clearly understood.

*For further consideration*: Why do you think there is so much variation across countries in wages, compensation packages, work hours, and benefits?

---

**Labor Relations**

A final component of international HRM is labor relations. Because of their complexity and importance, labor relations often are handled as a separate organizational function, apart from HRM.

**Comparative Labor Relations**

Labor relations in a host country often reflect its laws, culture, social structure, and economic conditions. For example, membership in U.S. labor unions has been steadily declining in recent years and today constitutes less than 15 percent of the country’s total workforce. Labor relations in the United States are heavily regulated by various laws, and both the actions of management toward labor and the actions of labor toward management are heavily restricted. Further, the formal labor agreement negotiated between a firm and a union is a binding contract enforceable in a court of law. Because of the heavy regulation, most negotiations are relatively formal and mechanical, with both parties relying on the letter of law.

A different situation exists in many other countries. In some countries union membership is high and continues to grow. In Europe, labor unions are much more important than in the United States. Labor unions in many European countries are aligned with political parties, and their fortunes ebb and flow as a function of which party currently controls the government.
Throughout most of Europe, temporary work stoppages are frequently used by unions in a bid
for public backing for their demands. For example, the transport workers’ union in Paris often
calls for day-long work stoppages that result in the city’s buses, subways, and railroads being
totally shut down. The union hopes the inconvenienced public will call on elected officials to do
whatever it takes to avoid such disruptions in the future. Foreign firms that try to alter prevailing
host country labor relations may be buying trouble. For example, the unwillingness of Toys ‘R’
Us to adopt the standard collective bargaining agreement used by most Swedish retailers led to a
three-month strike against the firm and denunciations by labor leaders who branded the firm “an
anti-union interloper bent on breaking established traditions in Sweden,” which was not the pub-
lic image the firm was trying to create. Likewise, German retail unions used short but frequent
work stoppages to try to get Walmart to meet more of their demands.

In contrast, labor relations in Japan tend to be cordial. Labor unions usually are created and
run by businesses themselves. Unions and management tend to work cooperatively toward their
mutual best interests. The Japanese culture discourages confrontation and hostility, and these
norms carry over into labor relations. Disputes are normally resolved cordially and through
mutual agreement. In the rare event that a third-party mediator is necessary, there are seldom any
hard feelings or hostility after a decision has been rendered. Thus, strikes are relatively rare in
Japan.

Collective Bargaining
Collective bargaining is the process used to make agreements between management and labor
unions. As already noted, collective bargaining in the United States is highly regulated. Aside
from passing the laws that regulate the process, however, government plays a relatively passive
role in establishing labor agreements. Union and management representatives meet and nego-
tiate a contract. That contract governs their collective working relationship until the contract
expires, when a new one is negotiated. Bargaining normally takes place on a firm-by-firm and
union-by-union basis. For example, United Airlines must bargain with a pilots union, a flight
attendants union, a mechanics union, and so on, one at a time. Further, each of these unions
negotiates individually with each airline whose employees it represents.

In many other countries the government is much more active in collective bargaining. In
some European countries collective bargaining is undertaken by representatives of several firms
and unions, along with government officials. The outcome is an umbrella agreement that applies
to entire industries and collections of related labor unions. In Japan, collective bargaining also
usually involves government officials but is done on a firm-by-firm basis. A government official
serves more as an observer, recording what transpires and answering any questions that arise
during the negotiation.

Union Influence and Codetermination
Union influence can be manifested in various ways, including membership, strikes, and public
relations. In Europe much of the influence of labor unions arises from the premise of industrial
democracy—the belief that workers should have a voice in how businesses are run. In some
countries, most notably Germany, union influence extends far beyond traditional boundaries
of labor-management relations. The approach taken in Germany is called codetermination and
provides for cooperation between management and labor in running the business.

**Codetermination** is the result of a 1947 German law that required firms in the coal and
steel industries to allow unions to have input into how the firms were run. The law has been
amended several times, and today it applies to all German firms with 2,000 or more employees.
The law requires all covered firms to establish a supervisory board. Half the seats on this board
are elected by the firm’s owners (much like the board of directors of a U.S. corporation); the
other half are appointed or elected by labor. Of the labor seats, one-third are union officials and
two-thirds are elected by the workforce. One seat elected by labor must be occupied by a mana-
gerial employee, so management essentially controls a potential tie-breaking vote. The supervi-
sory board oversees another board called the board of managers. This board, composed of the
firm’s top managers, actually runs the business on a day-to-day basis.

The German model promotes a high level of industrial democracy. Some other European
countries, including Sweden, the Netherlands, Norway, Luxembourg, Denmark, and Austria,
take similar approaches in requiring some form of labor representation in running businesses.
In contrast, Italy, Ireland, the United Kingdom, and Latvia have little or no mandated labor participation. However, the EU has been attempting to standardize labor practices, employment regulations, and benefits packages throughout its member states. The ongoing implementation of its social charter (sometimes called the social policy) focuses on such concerns as maternity leave, job training, and superannuation (pension) benefits. One motivation for the social charter is to reduce the potential loss of jobs from richer countries, such as Germany or Belgium, to countries with lower wages and poorer benefit programs, such as Portugal, Greece, and Spain. Worker participation reform also is spreading into Pacific Asia. For example, workers in Singapore have been given a considerably stronger voice in how businesses are operated. Even though Japanese workers do not have a particularly strong voice in the management of their firms, they traditionally have enjoyed an abundance of personal power and control over how they perform their own jobs.

**In Practice**

- Comparative labor relations is of relevance to international HR managers.
- International HR managers need to be familiar with all phases of the collective bargaining process.

_For further consideration:_ Would codetermination work in the United States? Why or why not?

---

**MyManagementLab®**

Go to mymanagementlab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon 🕵️‍♂️.

---

**CHAPTER REVIEW**

**Summary**

HRM is the set of activities directed at attracting, developing, and maintaining the effective workforce necessary to achieve a firm’s objectives. Because the HR function is central to a firm’s success, top managers should adopt a strategic perspective on it.

International HR needs are partially dictated by a firm’s degree of internationalization. The relative degree of centralization versus decentralization of control also plays an important role. A basic staffing philosophy should be developed and followed.

Recruitment and selection are important elements of international HRM. Some firms choose to recruit experienced managers for foreign assignments, whereas others hire younger, and more likely inexperienced, managers. Various avenues may be used for either approach to recruiting. The selection of managers for foreign assignments usually involves consideration of both business and international skills. Managers and firms must address a variety of expatriation and repatriation issues.

Training and development also are important aspects of international HRM. The two principal components of this activity are the assessment of training needs and the selection of basic training methods and procedures.

A firm also must assess the performance of its international managers and determine their compensation. Compensation for expatriate managers usually includes a cost-of-living adjustment as well as special benefits.

Given the high cost of training and development of expatriates, firms need to focus special attention on managing retention and turnover. Each part of international HRM also must be addressed for the firm’s nonmanagerial employees.

Labor relations pose an especially complex task for HR managers and often are handled by a special department. One key aspect of labor relations is collective bargaining, or negotiating agreements with unions.

**Review Questions**

19-1. Along what dimensions does domestic HRM differ from international HRM?
19-2. How does the degree of centralization or decentralization affect international staffing?
19-3. What are the basic issues involved in recruiting and selecting managers for foreign assignments?
19-4. What issues are at the core of expatriation and repatriation problems?
19-5. Why is performance appraisal important for international firms?
19-6. What special compensation and benefits issues arise in international HRM?
19-7. How does international HRM for nonmanagerial employees differ from that for managerial employees?
Questions for Discussion

19-8. How does HRM relate to other functional areas such as marketing, finance, and operations management?
19-9. Why and how does the scope of a firm’s internationalization affect its HRM practices?
19-10. How are the different approaches to recruiting and selecting managers for foreign assignments similar and dissimilar?
19-11. Which are easier to assess, business skills or international skills? Why?
19-12. If you were being assigned to a foreign position, what specific training requests would you make of your employer?
19-13. Do you agree or disagree with the idea that some international assignments require special compensation?
19-14. How easy or difficult do you think it is to handle the equity issue in international compensation?
19-15. What does the high cost of replacing an international manager suggest regarding staffing philosophy?
19-16. Which do you think is easier, HRM for managerial employees or HRM for nonmanagerial employees? Why?

Building Global Skills

Assume you are the top HR manager for a large international firm. The head of your company’s operation in Japan has just resigned unexpectedly to take a job with another firm. You must decide on a replacement as quickly as possible. You have developed the following list of potential candidates for the job:

- Jack Henderson: Henderson is a senior vice president based in your Chicago headquarters. Jack has a long and distinguished career with your firm, is well regarded by everyone, and plans to retire in three years. He has never worked outside the United States but is strongly and visibly lobbying for the job in Japan. Because you and your spouse socialize with Jack and his wife outside of work, you know she does not want to move from Chicago.

- Takeo Takahashi: Takahashi is the number two manager in your Japanese operation, although he has served in that role for only three months. He was born and raised in Japan. After attending college in the United States, he returned to Japan and went to work for your firm. Takeo is considered an emerging star in the company but is also relatively young and inexperienced. Your chief executive officer (CEO) prefers to appoint someone for the Japanese job with at least 15 years of company experience, and Takeo has only eight years of experience. He was being groomed to eventually take over the operation, but the just-departed top executive had been expected to serve until he reached retirement age in another seven years.

- Jacques Moine: Moine is your most experienced international manager. Originally from France, Jacques has held senior management positions in your firm’s operations in Germany, Spain, Canada, Argentina, and Mexico. Moine appears to be quite satisfied with his current posting in Mexico. Because that operation is both stable and efficient, it likely could be run by someone with less experience. Working alone, carefully consider the strengths and weaknesses of each of the four leading candidates for the job. Select the individual you think is the best candidate.

Then form small groups of four or five students. Share with each other your individual choices for the job in Japan, along with the reasons for making those choices.

CLOSING CASE

The Chicago Food and Beverage Company

The Chicago Food and Beverage Company (CFB Co.) is an American multinational with subsidiaries in North America, Europe, and Asia. Paul Fierman, a 34-year-old American manager, was appointed as the General Director of CFB Co. Vietnam with a mission to lead the subsidiary and implement the new organizational strategy.

Obtaining this expatriate position had not been difficult for Paul. In 1995, he earned his bachelor’s degree in marketing from Cornell University. After graduation, Paul took a position as product manager in the marketing department at the New York subsidiary of CFB Co. Three years later, he became a manager for the carbonated nonalcoholic beverages of the Eastern American region. After two years in this position, Paul was put in charge of both carbonated and noncarbonated nonalcoholic drinks in the U.S. market. As a country manager, he was paid an annual base salary of $300,000 and 10 to 15 percent commission on sales. Although Paul was satisfied with his job, he wanted to reorientate his career toward...
general management positions in the company. Therefore, in 2002 he decided to undertake a full-time Masters in Business Administration studies in international management at Harvard Business School. After completing his MBA, Paul wanted to return to CFB Co., but in order be able to reach the pinnacle of his career, he thought he needed to acquire some international professional experience. The only international experience he had so far was a year spent in Oxford, United Kingdom, as an exchange program student. Paul kept in touch with his former supervisor at his first position within CFB Co., Allan Roger, Marketing Director of the New York subsidiary. Just before graduating from his MBA, Paul called Allan to discuss his potential return to the company.

Allan was very enthusiastic about this prospect:

“The expatriate Managing Director of CFB Co. Haiphong, Vietnam, has just returned to the U.S. unexpectedly due to health problems, the headquarters are desperate to replace him as soon as possible. If you are interested, you can send me your application for the position of Managing Director in Vietnam, and I will forward it to the General Manager in Chicago. You have high potential in this company! Your lack of international experience is a problem...but it does not mean that you would not be able to prepare and implement, in collaboration with the regional director of Pacific Rim, the new strategy to integrate the three Asian subsidiaries. This expatriation would be an exceptional training experience for you, preparing you for a higher level managing position within the Chicago headquarters on your return to the U.S. three years later.”

With his experience within CFB Co. and his high recommendations, Paul Fierman was a good candidate for this three-year expatriate position. He was perceived as a promising young manager due to his excellent academic background and the outstanding professional results he achieved during his employment within the company.

At that point, things moved very quickly. In March 2004, thanks to Allan’s intervention and contacts, Paul met directly with the general manager in Chicago. Two weeks later, a notice of approval had been sent to Paul from the Chicago HR department, officially confirming his managing position in Vietnam. Robert Greenberg, managing director in charge of the Asia Pacific region, had been informed about Paul’s nomination by Chicago’s general manager himself. One month later, in April 2004, Paul began his new position in Haiphong. Before his departure he spent a couple of weeks preparing his move and organizing the rental of his house in New York. His wife Carrie and their seven-year-old daughter, Rachel joined him two months later in Haiphong. These two extra months gave Carrie enough time to have her resignation accepted by her employer. In the meantime, Paul settled into their new Vietnamese house and enrolled their daughter at the Haiphong international school. Before his departure, Paul bought three books on Vietnam in order to get some preliminary knowledge about the general business context of the country. However, his readings on culture and the economic and political history of Vietnam seemed to be too disconnected from today’s business reality.

One week before his arrival in Vietnam, Paul had a three-hour meeting with Robert Greenberg in New York. Robert showed him the outlines of the corporate strategy aiming at creating synergies among the three Asian subsidiaries. Since then, they never spoke to each other directly. Six months after his arrival in Vietnam, Paul was feeling extremely frustrated.

“I feel very frustrated by the results of my work in the subsidiary and the relationships I have with my Vietnamese colleagues. The financial situation of the subsidiary six months after my arrival is very bad: declining revenues, decreasing motivation of Vietnamese plant workers and staff, lack of cooperation on behalf of local management, etc. The implementation of the new organizational strategy is far from even getting off the ground! I have to handle all these problems alone. I have the impression that my work does not produce any of the expected results.”

Case Questions

19-17. Which staffing philosophy do you recognize at CFB Co.?
19-18. How would you have organized the recruitment and selection of the right candidate?
19-19. How well was Paul prepared for his expatriation?
19-20. Suggest how Robert Greenberg could support Paul in an effective manner as his direct line manager.


MyManagementLab®

Go to mymanagementlab.com for the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

19-21. How interested are you personally in working in a different country? What would be your preferred top two or three countries? What countries would be of least interest to you?
19-22. Why is labor union membership growing in some countries and shrinking in others?
19-23. Mymanagementlab Only—comprehensive writing assignment for this chapter.
Endnotes


The Aramco Advantage

Between the years 1979 and 1981 Saudi Arabia had a major disagreement with the other members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) about the appropriate price to charge for a barrel of crude oil. So-called OPEC hawks wanted to keep the price of oil high. Saudi Arabia, fearful that high prices would encourage other countries to explore for new, low-cost oil fields and stimulate consumers to conserve on energy usage, believed the most profitable long-run strategy was to keep prices low. The Saudis’ actions resulted in the creation of the “Aramco advantage,” and the world’s largest tax refund involving transfer pricing.

Aramco was a consortium of four U.S. oil companies—Chevron, Exxon, Mobil, and Texaco—that originally controlled the Saudi oil fields. (Exxon and Mobil have subsequently merged, as have Chevron and Texaco.) After its oil reserves were expropriated by the Saudi government in the 1970s, Aramco continued to play a major role in marketing Saudi oil. The Aramco advantage began in January 1979 when Ahmed Zaki Yamani, the Saudi oil minister, wrote a letter to Aramco forbidding it to sell Saudi oil for more than the price set by Yamani’s ministry. This price was well below the world market price for crude oil. The Aramco partners, not wishing to displease the Saudi government, dutifully complied with Yamani’s request. They sold the crude oil to foreign refineries at Yamani’s price and then refined the oil into gasoline, diesel fuel, and other petroleum products.

Yamani’s directive, however, covered only the price of crude oil. Each company was free to sell the refined products at their market prices, which the four companies did. Because they were buying the crude oil at less than the market price, the refining operations of the Aramco partners were soon making money hand over fist. (In case you are wondering, Yamani was not ignorant of the impact of his letter. He had numerous political reasons for his actions.)

The impact of the Aramco advantage was enormous. Exxon’s refineries earned an additional $4.5 billion from 1979 to 1981, and Texaco’s refineries netted an estimated $1.8 billion. Because these profits were earned by the companies’ foreign refinery subsidiaries, the profits could be sheltered from U.S. taxation thanks to the deferral rule—so the companies thought. The U.S. Internal Revenue Service (IRS) had a different view, arguing that it was the marketing activities of the two companies that were responsible for the profits, not the refining operations. Accordingly, the IRS claimed that $4.5 billion in income should be transferred to Exxon (the parent corporation) from its foreign refineries and that Texaco should make a similar shift of $1.8 billion. Having done so, the companies then should be required to pay U.S. corporate income taxes on these earnings.

Not surprisingly, the companies resisted the IRS’s interpretation. They said they were following the explicit instructions of the minister of a sovereign, friendly nation. Because of Yamani’s directive, Texaco and Exxon asserted that the parent companies were unable to directly benefit from lower crude oil prices because the companies were forbidden to resell the oil at the market price. Rather, they noted that the Aramco advantage could be captured only by some one operating further down in the production-distribution chain. As things turned out, it was the next link in the chain—the foreign refineries owned by the individual Aramco partners—that garnered the Aramco advantage. Exxon and Texaco also pointed out that the United States had been putting great diplomatic pressure on the Saudis to lower the price of crude oil and that U.S. officials were well aware that the result of this policy would be increased refining profits.

Texaco’s case was the first to complete its long journey through the U.S. judicial system. The U.S. Tax Court agreed with Texaco’s interpretation. The court found that the $1.8 billion in additional profits generated by the Aramco advantage were earned by Texaco’s foreign refining subsidiaries and not subject to U.S. corporate income taxes unless and until the profits were repatriated back to the parent corporation in the form of dividends. A federal appeals court upheld the verdict of the Tax Court, and in April 1997 the U.S. Supreme Court refused to hear the IRS’s appeal of the appeals court decision. Texaco’s tax refund was estimated to be $700 million.

Case Questions

P4-1. Which unit of Texaco really “earned” the Aramco advantage? Aramco itself? Texaco’s foreign refineries? Texaco’s marketing operations? Or the parent corporation?

P4-2. Had Aramco sold the crude oil to Texaco’s U.S. refineries, would Texaco have been able to avoid U.S. taxation on the Aramco advantage?

P4-3. Because Minister Yamani created the Aramco advantage partly in response to U.S. diplomatic pressure, should Exxon and Texaco have been required to sell their allotment of Saudi crude oil to their domestic refineries?

P4-4. The IRS lawyers argued that the appeals court ruling amounted to a “blueprint for the evasion of U.S. taxes. [It]…creates substantial tax incentives for United States corporations to encourage or to endure the adoption of profitable foreign ‘legal restrictions’ that ‘require’ such corporations to avoid United States taxation.” Do you agree with the IRS position? Or is it just being a crybaby because it lost?

The Power of Microfinance: The Grameen Bank

The lack of a well-functioning credit market is often a hindrance to rural villagers and farmers in developing countries. Living from harvest to harvest, the rural poor are vulnerable to the vagaries of the weather. When the previous harvest fails, far too often rural farmers are forced to borrow sums to plant the next crop at exorbitant interest rates that keep them indebted to the money lenders.

To break this cycle of poverty, a new form of lending to the poor has emerged: microfinance. Microfinance institutions typically focus on making small loans—typically from $25 to $200—to rural entrepreneurs to begin or expand a small business. Microfinance lenders oftentimes provide other services to the rural villagers they serve, including offering savings accounts, life insurance, and basic health care.

The founder of the microfinance movement is Muhammad Yunus, an economics professor at Bangladesh’s Chittagong University. In 1976, he made a small loan out of his own pocket to local craft makers in a nearby village. That $27 loan was the inspiration for the Grameen Bank, the world’s most successful microfinance institution. Since its founding in 1983, the Grameen Bank has lent more than $5 billion to 5.3 million people and inspired more than 3,000 imitators who have reached an additional 93 million clients. Yunus and the Grameen Bank were awarded the 2006 Nobel Peace Prize in recognition of their accomplishments.

Traditional banks focus on making large loans to credit-worthy, ongoing businesses. Yunus turned Grameen’s attention to the needs of the rural poor in Bangladesh. Most bank loans are to men. Yunus believed that Grameen should focus on lending to women because they were more likely to recognize the needs of their families and their communities: 96 percent of Grameen’s loans are to women. Often they were illiterate, so Grameen dispensed with paperwork. Often they lacked collateral, so Grameen developed a new lending model based on trust and peer pressure. Loans are made to individuals in lending groups, consisting of 5 to 10 members. Social pressure from members of the group encourages each borrower to make her loan payments on time. Default rates on Grameen loans are remarkably small: 1 to 2 percent, on average, although they soared after the time. Default rates on Grameen loans are remarkably small: 96 percent of Grameen’s loans are to women. Often they were illiterate, so Grameen dispensed with paperwork. Often they lacked collateral, so Grameen developed a new lending model based on trust and peer pressure. Loans are made to individuals in lending groups, consisting of 5 to 10 members. Social pressure from members of the group encourages each borrower to make her loan payments on time. Default rates on Grameen loans are remarkably small: 1 to 2 percent, on average, although they soared after the catastrophic 1998 flood that devastated Bangladesh.

Buoyed by the success of its microfinance operations, the Grameen Group has developed new ways to alleviate rural poverty. Grameen Telecom has teamed with Norway’s Telenor to provide cell phone service in rural villages. The Grameen Bank provides small loans to “village telephone ladies” to buy a cell phone. The telephone lady then charges villagers a small fee to use the cell phone, which has allowed local entrepreneurs to identify new markets and lower their costs of doing business. The Grameen Group also created a joint venture with Danone SA, the giant French food conglomerate, to improve nutrition in Bangladesh through the provision of healthier foods and to reduce poverty by developing new markets for poor local farmers. Grameen Danone’s first product is low-priced Shoktidoi yogurt (Bengali for “yogurt that makes you strong”), which sells for about 6 eurocents a cup. Shoktidoi yogurt is formulated to address nutritional deficiencies of the local children—an estimated 56 percent of Bangladeshi children suffer from malnutrition—using locally sourced milk and molasses made from dates.

Case Questions

P4-5. How transferable is the Grameen Bank’s business model? Would it work in your country? How important are the cultural values of Bangladeshi society to its success?

P4-6. Numerous banks and venture capitalists have established for-profit microfinance companies to provide small loans to villagers in India and in numerous African nations. Yet some critics have argued it is immoral to profit from the poverty of these impoverished peoples. Do you agree? Should microfinance be limited to not for profit organizations like Grameen Bank?

P4-7. Grameen Bank has teamed with Telenor and Danone to provide telephone service and a low-priced, but nutritious yogurt. Can you think of any other goods or services that could benefit the rural poor through joint ventures between nonprofit organizations and for-profit international businesses?


Nucor Navigates the New Global Economy

For decades the U.S. steel industry was dominated by large steel companies such as U.S. Steel and Bethlehem Steel. These industry giants operated a small number of mammoth mills that churned out millions of tons of steel each year. “Big Steel” prospered during the 1940s, 1950s, and 1960s as businesses around the world expanded and drove up demand—and prices—for steel. But their contentious relations with the United Steelworkers union—“Big Steel” and the United Steelworkers union typified the “us vs. them” mentality that dominated labor relations during those decades—stifled innovation and flexibility.
Chapter 19 • International Human Resource Management and Labor Relations

Big Steel's stagnation allowed emerging competitors in countries such as Japan and South Korea to pioneer new technologies and approaches to making steel. One such innovation was the so-called mini-mill—a smaller and more efficient production facility that could be located closer to customers.

Because they simply failed to innovate, U.S. Steel no longer dominates the North American market and Bethlehem has vanished. In their place, though, have arisen several formidable U.S. mini-mills, most notably Nucor Steel. Nucor dominates the mini-mill segment in the United States, in large part because of its emphasis on innovative human resource management (HRM) practices. Virtually all Nucor employees have their wages and salaries tied directly to productivity and performance. So, when demand is strong and Nucor is operating efficiently all its employees earn more. On the other hand, when demand slows or when a plant is not operating efficiently all of its employees receive less compensation. To see how this works, consider what Nucor has gone through in the last few years.

For the most part, 2008 was a pretty good year for Nucor. In fact, net earnings hit a record $1.83 billion; net sales also set a record—$23.6 billion, up 43 percent over 2007. Unfortunately, despite such record-setting year-end numbers, the fourth quarter of 2008 was a disaster. Net earnings for the last three months of the year came to $105.9 million—down a whopping 71 percent from $364.8 million for the fourth quarter of fiscal 2007. “The record sales and earnings achieved by Nucor in 2008,” said chairman and CEO Daniel R. DiMicco, “were accomplished in spite of the unprecedented economic and steel-market conditions that we experienced in the fourth quarter.”

Referring again to “the unprecedented speed and magnitude of the global economy’s decline,” DiMicco went on to forecast an equally dismal first quarter—and beyond—for fiscal 2009. In January, with the capacity utilization of its mills down from 95 percent to 50 percent and its stock down by more than 10 percent, Nucor management passed out one-time bonuses of $1,000 to $2,000 to all of the firm’s workers, at a total cost to the company of $40 million. In March, management distributed another $270 million in profit sharing. Things had gotten bad and were looking worse, but “we’re making money. We’ve got jobs,” explained one veteran executive.

Indeed, Nucor still had all of its jobs. Hit by a 50-percent plunge in output that had begun in September 2008, the U.S. steel industry had laid off some 10,000 workers by January 2010, and the United Steelworkers union was expecting the number to double before the recession came to an end. As of the end of 2009, however, Nucor had refused to follow suit in laying anyone off. At its 11 U.S. facilities, Nucor employees were rewriting safety manuals, getting a headstart on maintenance jobs, mowing the lawns, and cleaning the bathrooms—but they were still drawing paychecks. “Financially,” says one employee at the company’s facility in Crawfordsville, Indiana, “Nucor workers are still better off than most.”

As far as DiMicco is concerned, the company’s ability to survive the current economic crisis will depend on several factors, “most importantly, our employees and the Nucor culture.” What’s that culture like? It originated in the 1960s as the result of policies established by Ken Iverson, who brought a radical perspective on how to manage a company’s human resources (HR) to the job of chief executive officer (CEO). Iverson figured that workers would be much more productive if an employer went out of its way to share authority with them, respect what they accomplished, and compensate them as handsomely as possible. Today, the basics of the company’s HR model are summed up in its “Employee Relations Principles”:

1. Management is obligated to manage Nucor in such a way that employees will have the opportunity to earn according to their productivity.
2. Employees should feel confident that if they do their jobs properly, they will have a job tomorrow.
3. Employees have the right to be treated fairly and must believe that they will be.
4. Employees must have an avenue of appeal when they believe they are being treated unfairly.

The Iverson approach is based on motivation, and the key to that approach is a highly original pay system. Step 1, which calls for base pay below the industry average, probably doesn’t seem like a promising start, but the Nucor compensation plan is designed to get better as the results of the work get better. If a shift, for example, can turn out a defect-free batch of steel, every worker is entitled to a bonus that’s paid weekly and which can potentially triple his or her take-home pay. In addition, there are one-time annual bonuses and profit-sharing payouts. In 2005, for instance, Nucor had an especially good year: It shipped more steel than any other U.S. producer, and net income hit $1.3 billion, up from $311 million in 2000. The average steelworker took home $79,000 in base pay and weekly bonuses, plus a $2,000 year-end bonus and an average of $18,000 in profit-sharing money.

The system, however, cuts both ways. Take that defect-free batch of steel, for example. If there’s a problem with a batch, workers on the shift obviously don’t get any weekly bonus. And that’s if they catch the problem before the batch leaves the plant. If it reaches the customer, they may lose up to three times what they would have received as a bonus. “In average-to-bad years,” adds HR vice president James M. Coblin, “we earn less than our peers in other companies. That’s supposed to teach us that we don’t want to be average or bad. We want to be good.” For the first quarter of fiscal 2009, total pay at Nucor was down by about 40 percent.
Everybody in the company, from janitors to the CEO, is covered by some form of incentive plan tied to various goals and targets. We’ve just described the Production Incentive Plan, which covers operating and maintenance workers and supervisors and which may boost base salaries by 80 percent to 150 percent. Bonuses for department managers are based on a return-on-assets formula tied to divisional performance, as are bonuses under the Non-Production and Non-Department—Manager Plan, which covers everyone, except senior officers, not included in either of the first two plans; bonuses under both manager plans may increase base pay by 75 percent to 90 percent. Senior officers don’t work under contracts or get pension or retirement plans, and their base salaries are below industry average. In a world in which the typical CEO makes more than 400 times what a factory worker makes, Nucor CEO DiMicco makes considerably less. In the banner year of 2005, for example, his combined salary and bonus (about $2.3 million) came to 23 times the total taken home by the average Nucor factory worker. His bonus and those of other top managers are based on a ratio of net income to stockholder’s equity.

Nucor needs just four incentive plans because of an unusually flat organizational structure—another Iverson innovation. There are just four layers of organization between a janitor and senior management: general managers, department managers, line supervisors, and hourly personnel. Most operating decisions are made at the divisional level or lower, and the company is known for its tolerance of honest mistakes made in the line of decision-making duty. The Nucor website quotes an unnamed executive as saying, “Workers excel here because they are allowed to fail,” and goes on to explain that the occasional misstep is considered a good trade-off for the benefits of initiative and idea sharing: “Nucor managers at all levels encourage their employees to try out their new ideas. Sometimes the ideas work out, sometimes they don’t. But this freedom to try helps give Nucor one of the most creative, get-it-done work forces in the world.”

The Nucor system works not only because employees share financial risks and benefits but because, in sharing risks and benefits, they’re a lot like owners. And people who think like owners are a lot more likely to take the initiative when decisions have to be made or problems solved. What’s more, Nucor has found that teamwork is a good incubator for initiative as well as idea sharing. John J. Ferriola, who managed the Nucor mill in Hickman, Arkansas, before becoming chief operating officer, remembers an afternoon in March 2006 when the electrical grid at his facility went down. His electricians got on the phone to three other company electricians, one in Alabama and two in North Carolina, who dropped what they were doing and went straight to Arkansas. Working 20-hour shifts, the joint team had the plant up and running again in three days (as opposed to an anticipated full week). There was nothing in it (at least financially) for the visiting electricians, but they knew that maintenance personnel get no bonuses when equipment in their facility isn’t operating. “At Nucor,” says one front-line supervisor, “we’re not ‘you guys’ and ‘us guys.’ It’s all of us guys. Wherever the bottleneck is, we go there, and everyone works on it.”

Nucor also likes to see teamwork—cooperation and idea sharing—combined with a little productive competition. Plant managers often set up contests between shifts to improve efficiency, output, or safety, but sometimes the effort of a work group to give itself a competitive edge can be taken to another level. In 2002, the Nucor plant in Crawfordsville, Indiana, was a pioneer in the development of an innovative process called thin-strip steel casting, and, as of 2008, it was still setting record for continuous output from the process. The facility, however, isn’t located near any major waterway and is thus at a disadvantage when it comes to transportation costs, especially when fuel prices are high. So General Manager Ron Dickerson and his employees collaborated on a plan not only to get around the problem but to increase profitability at the same time. Because it was too expensive for them to ship sheet steel as wide as that regularly made by competitors (including other Nucor-owned plants), Crawfordsville management and workers campaigned for the opportunity to shift the plant’s focus to other types of steel.

It was a risky proposition, but today Crawfordsville turns out 160 different grades of steel. Some of them present manufacturing difficulties which employees have had to solve over time, but making the new processes work meant more orders for the plant and more hours for its employees. By the first quarter of 2008, the plant was setting production and shipment records. “We’re continually expanding product ranges and the types of steel we make,” says Dickerson, who continues to look forward, particularly to the opportunity to apply the Nucor brand of employee initiative to new technologies. “Nucor has a couple of other things going on,” he notes, “and it’s not yet decided where they’ll make an investment. [But] Crawfordsville is known for successful startups, so I’m hoping we get some of these new technologies.”

**Case Questions**

P4-8. Instead of a system of individual performance appraisals, Nucor appraises employee performance according to division-wide quality, productivity, and profitability goals and targets. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this approach?

P4-9. Identify the incentives—both financial and nonfinancial—that Nucor uses to motivate employees.

P4-10. How does Nucor’s flat organizational structure contribute to the success of its compensation system?
P4-11. Many firms today use temporary, part-time, or virtual workers to reduce costs and gain flexibility. Nucor has never taken this route. Should management consider it in the future? Why or why not?

P4-12. CEO Dan DiMicco believes that when the economy turns around, Nucor will be “first out of the box” in the steel industry. What reasons does he have for being so optimistic?

P4-13. Can Nucor’s HR strategies be successful in other countries or other cultures?

P4-14. Analyze Nucor’s approach from the perspective of Hofstede’s cultural analysis. Which cultural values are most compatible with Nucor’s approach? Defend your answer.

Glossary

**Absolute advantage, theory of.** Theory stating that trade between nations occurs when one nation is absolutely more productive than other nations in the production of a good and thus should export that good.

**Accommodative stance.** A firm that meets its ethical and legal requirements but also will go further than those in selected cases.

**Accounting reserves.** Reserves created by firms for foreseeable expenses.

**Acculturation.** Process of understanding and learning how to operate in a new culture.

**Acquisition strategy.** Form of foreign direct investment involving the purchase of existing assets in a foreign country.

**Active income.** Income generated by active business operations such as production, marketing, and distribution.

**Ad valorem tariff.** Tax assessed as a percentage of the market value of an imported good.

**Adjustable peg.** Feature of the Bretton Woods system by which a country had a limited right to adjust the value of its currency in terms of gold.

**Advance pricing agreement (APA).** A binding contract between a firm and the IRS, detailing the methodology that will be used to establish the firm’s transfer prices; used to remedy the cost and uncertainty of the resolution of complex transfer pricing conflicts.

**Advised letter of credit.** Letter of credit in which the seller’s bank advises the seller about the creditworthiness of the bank issuing the letter of credit.

**Affiliated bank.** Partly owned, separately incorporated overseas banking operation of a home country bank.

**Agglomeration economies.** Occur when a firm’s costs of production decline as the number of firms in that industry increase within a given area.

**Aggressive goal behavior.** Behavior based on the cultural belief that material possessions, money, and assertiveness underlie motivation and reflect the goals that a person should pursue.

**Agreeableness.** A “big five” personality trait referring to a person’s ability to get along with others.

**Aktiengesellschaft (AG).** A form of corporate organization in Germany; typically, a large, publicly held firm with limited liability; it must have a management board and a board of directors.

**Alien Tort Claims Act.** Holds a company responsible for human rights abuses by foreign governments if the company benefited from those abuses.

**Andean Community.** Customs union composed of Bolivia, Chile, Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru; Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay are associate members.

**Anti-Bribery Convention of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.** To eliminate bribery in international business transactions, mandates jail sentences for those convicted of paying bribes.

**Arbitrage.** Riskless purchase of a product in one market for immediate resale in a second market to profit from price differences between the markets.

**Arbitration.** An alternate dispute resolution technique in which parties to a dispute submit their cases to a private party or body whose decision they will honor.

**Arm’s length test.** Imposed by the IRS to determine the appropriateness of transfer prices; reflects the price that one independent company would charge another for a good or service.

**ASEAN Free Trade Area (AFTA).** Established in January 1993 to promote intra-ASEAN trade.

**Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC).** A group of countries on both sides of the Pacific working to promote trade among themselves by reducing or eliminating trade barriers.

**Assigned arrangement.** Management arrangement in which one partner in a strategic alliance assumes primary responsibility for the operations of the alliance.

**Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN).** Established in August 1967 to promote regional political and economic cooperation.

**Attitudes.** Complexes of beliefs and feelings about specific ideas, situations, or other people.

**Australia–New Zealand Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement (ANZCERTA or CER).** An agreement between Australia and New Zealand to eliminate trade barriers between them.

**Authoritarianism.** Personality trait determining the extent to which a person believes that power and status differences are appropriate within hierarchical social systems like organizations.

**Backtranslation.** Technique used to check for translation errors; after one person translates a document from language A to language B, a second person translates the document from B back to A to check if the intended message is actually being sent.

**Baker Plan.** Plan developed in 1985 by U.S. Treasury Secretary James Baker to solve the international debt crisis; stressed debt rescheduling, tight controls over domestic monetary and fiscal policies, and continued loans to debtor nations.

**Balance of payments (BOP) accounting system.** Records commercial transactions between the residents of one country and residents of other countries.

**Balance on merchandise trade.** Difference between a country’s merchandise exports and imports.

**Balance on services trade.** Difference between a country’s service exports and imports.

**Balance sheet hedge.** Technique for eliminating translation exposure in which a firm matches its assets and liabilities denominated in a given currency on a consolidated basis.

**Banker’s acceptance.** Time draft endorsed by a bank, signifying the bank’s promise to guarantee payment at the designated time.
Barter. Form of countertrade involving simultaneous exchange of goods or services between two parties.

Beggar-thy-neighbor policies. Domestic economic policies that ignore the economic damage done to other countries.

Benchmarking. Legally and ethically studying how other firms do something in a high-quality way and then imitating or improving on their methods.

Benelux nations. Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg.

Besloten vennootschap (BV). Term used in the Netherlands to refer to a privately held, limited liability firm.

“Big five” personality traits. Popular personality model based on five dominant traits—agreeableness, conscientiousness, emotional stability, extroversion, and openness.

Big Ten countries. Argentina, Brazil, China, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Poland, South Africa, South Korea, and Turkey.

Bilateral netting. Netting of transactions between two business units.

Bill of lading. International trade document that serves (1) as a contract between the exporter and the transporter and (2) as a title to the exported goods.

B-O-T project. Variant of a turnkey project for market entry in which a firm builds a facility, operates it, and later transfers ownership to another party.

Brady Plan. Plan developed in 1989 by U.S. Treasury Secretary Nicholas Brady to solve the international debt crisis; involves writing off part of the debtor nations’ debts or repurchase of their debts at less than face value.

Branch bank. Overseas banking operation of a home country bank that is not separately incorporated.

Bribery Act. A 2010 British law that outlaws corrupt actions done anywhere in the world by firms with a business presence in the United Kingdom.

BRIC countries. Brazil, Russia, India, and China.

Brownfield strategy. See acquisition strategy.

Bureaucratic law. Legal system based on interpretations, actions, and decisions of government employees.

Buy-back. Form of countertrade in which a firm is compensated in the form of goods produced by equipment or technology that it has sold to another firm.

Cairns Group. Group of major agricultural exporting nations, led by Argentina, Australia, and Canada, that lobbies for reductions in agricultural subsidies.

Call option. Publicly traded contract granting the owner the right, but not the obligation, to buy a specific amount of foreign currency at a specified price at a stated future date.

Capacity planning. Deciding how many customers a firm will be able to serve at a given time.

Capital account. BOP account that records capital transactions between residents of one country and those of other countries.

Caribbean Basin Initiative (CBI). Program developed by the United States to spur the economic development of countries in the Caribbean Basin; allows duty-free importation of selected goods from these countries into the United States.

Carry trade. Uncovered interest arbitrage technique which exploits differences in the interest rates between countries.

Centralized cash management. System controlled by a parent corporation that coordinates worldwide cash flows of its subsidiaries and pools their cash reserves.

Chaebol. Any of the large business conglomerates that dominate the South Korean economy.

Channel length. Number of stages in a distribution channel.

Civil law. Law based on detailed codification of permissible and nonpermissible activities; world’s most common form of legal system.

Clearinghouse accounts. Accounting system used to facilitate international countertrade; a firm must balance its overall countertrade transactions but need not balance any single countertrade transaction.

Clustering. Phenomenon in which firms within an industry locate in the same geographic area to benefit from agglomeration economies.


Codes of ethics. Written statements of the values and ethical standards that guide firms’ actions.

Codetermination. German system that provides for cooperation between management and labor in running a business.

Cohesion fund. Means of funneling economic development aid to countries whose per capita GDP is less than 90 percent of the EU average.

Collectivism. The belief that the group comes first.

Common law. Law that forms the foundation of the legal system in Anglo-American countries; based on cumulative findings of judges in individual cases.

Common market. Form of regional economic integration that combines features of a customs union with elimination of barriers inhibiting the movement of factors of production among members.

Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS). Organization formed by 12 former Soviet republics to promote free trade and discuss issues of common concern.

Comparative advantage, theory of. Theory stating that trade between countries occurs when one country is relatively more productive than others in the production of a good.

Compound tariff. Tax that combines elements of an ad valorem tariff and a specific tariff.

Comprehensive alliance. Strategic alliance in which the participants agree to perform together multiple stages of the process by which goods or services are brought to market.

Confirmed letter of credit. Letter of credit in which the seller’s bank adds its promise to pay should the issuing bank fail to pay the seller.

Confiscation. Involuntary transfer of property, with little or no compensation, from a privately owned firm to the host government.

Conglomerate. Firm that uses a strategy of unrelated diversification.
Conscientiousness. A “big five” personality trait referring to the order and precision a person imposes on activities.

Contract manufacturing. Process of outsourcing manufacturing to other firms to reduce the amount of a firm’s financial and human resources devoted to the physical production of its products.

Control. Process of monitoring and regulating activities in a firm so that targeted measures of performance are achieved or maintained.

Control framework. Managerial and organizational processes used to keep a firm on target toward its strategic goals.

Controlled foreign corporation (CFC). Foreign corporation in which certain U.S. shareholders (each of which must own at least 10 percent of the foreign corporation’s stock) cumulatively own at least 50 percent of the foreign corporation’s stock.

Convergence criteria. Criteria imposed on EU members wishing to adopt the euro as their national currency.

Convertible currencies. Currencies that are freely traded and accepted in international commerce; also called hard currencies.

Coordination. Process of linking and integrating functions and activities of different groups, units, or divisions.

Core competency. A distinctive strength or advantage of a firm which allows it to compete effectively with its rivals.

Corollary approach. Approach whereby a firm delegates responsibility for processing international sales orders to individuals within an existing department, such as finance or marketing.

Corporate social audit. A formal and thorough analysis of the effectiveness of a firm’s social performance.

Corporate social responsibility (CSR). The set of obligations a corporation undertakes to protect and enhance society.

Correspondent relationship. Agency relationship whereby a bank in country A acts as an agent for a bank from country B, providing banking services in country A for both the B bank and its clients; typically done on a reciprocal basis.

Cost-of-living allowance. Compensation for managers on international assignment designed to offset differences in living costs.

Council of the European Union. Main decision-making body of the EU.

Counterpurchase. Form of countertrade in which one firm sells its products to another at one point in time and is compensated in the form of the other’s products at some future time.

Countertrade. Form of payment in which a seller accepts something other than money in compensation.

Countervailing duty (CVD). Ad valorem tariff placed on imported goods to offset subsidies granted by foreign governments.

Country fund. Mutual fund that specializes in investing in stocks and bonds issued by firms in a specific country.

Country similarity theory. Theory stating that international trade in manufactured goods will occur between countries with similar income levels and at similar stages of economic development.

Covered-interest arbitrage. Arbitrage that exploits geographic differences in interest rates and differences in exchange rates over time.

Crawling peg. Allowing the currency peg to change gradually over time.

Cross-cultural literacy. Ability to understand and operate in more than one culture.

Cross rate. Exchange rate between two currencies, A and B, derived by using currency A to buy currency C and then using currency C to buy currency B.

Cultural cluster. Group of countries that share many cultural similarities.

Cultural convergence. Convergence of two or more cultures.

Culture. Collection of values, beliefs, behaviors, customs, and attitudes that distinguish and define a society.

Culture shock. Psychological phenomenon arising from being in a different culture; may lead to feelings of fear, helplessness, irritability, and disorientation.

Currency future. Publicly traded contract involving the sale or purchase of a specific amount of foreign currency at a specified price with delivery at a stated future date.

Currency option. Publicly traded contract giving the owner the right, but not the obligation, to sell or buy a specific amount of foreign currency at a specified price at a stated future date (see also call option; put option).

Current account balance. Net balance resulting from merchandise exports and imports, service exports and imports, investment income, and unilateral transfers.

Customs union. Form of regional economic integration that combines features of a free trade area with common trade policies toward nonmember countries.

Date draft. Draft that requires payment at some specified date.

Decision making. Process of choosing one alternative from among a set of alternatives to promote the decision maker’s objectives.

Defensive stance. When an organization does everything legally required of it but nothing more.

Deferral rule. Rule permitting U.S. companies to defer paying U.S. income taxes on profits earned by their foreign subsidiaries.

Delegated arrangement. Management arrangement in which partners in a strategic alliance play little or no management role, delegating responsibility to the executives of the alliance itself.

Development. General education aimed at preparing managers for new assignments and/or higher-level positions.

Differentiated goods. Goods for which brand names and product reputations play an important role in consumer decision making (e.g., automobiles, expensive electronics equipment, and personal care products).

Differentiation strategy. Business-level strategy that emphasizes the distinctiveness of products or services.
**Direct exchange rate.** Price of a foreign currency in terms of the home currency; also called a direct quote.

**Direct exporting.** Product sales to customers, either distributors or end users, located outside the firm’s home country.

**Direct quote.** See direct exchange rate.

**Dirty float.** See managed float.

**Distinctive competence.** Component of strategy that answers the question “What do we do exceptionally well, especially as compared to our competitors?”

**Distribution.** Process of getting a firm’s products and services to its customers.

**Documentary collection.** Form of payment in which goods are released to the buyer only after the buyer pays for them or signs a document binding the buyer to pay for them.

**Doha Round.** World Trade Organization negotiations that began in 2001.

**Draft.** Document demanding payment from the buyer.

**Dual use.** Products that may be used for both civilian and military purposes.

**Dumping.** Sale of imported goods either (1) at prices below what a company charges in its home market or (2) at prices below cost.

**Eclectic theory.** Theory that foreign direct investment occurs because of location advantages, ownership advantages, and internalization advantages.

**Economic and monetary union (EMU).** Goal established by the Maastricht Treaty to create a single currency for the EU, thereby eliminating exchange rate risks and the costs of converting currencies for intra-EU trade.

**Economic and Monetary Community of Central Africa (CEMAC).** Organization promoting regional economic cooperation in Central Africa.

**Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS).** Organization promoting regional economic cooperation created by 16 West African countries.

**Economic exposure.** Impact on the value of a firm’s operations of unanticipated exchange rate changes.

**Economic union.** Form of regional economic integration that combines features of a common market with coordination of economic policies among its members.

**Economies of scale.** Average costs of producing a good decrease as output of the good increases.

**Embargo.** Ban on the exporting and/or importing of goods to a particular country.

**Emerging markets.** Countries whose recent growth or prospects for future growth exceed that of traditional markets.

**Emotional stability.** A “big five” personality trait defining a person’s poise, calmness, and resilience.

**Environmental scanning.** The systematic collection of data about all elements of a firm’s external and internal environments.

**Errors and omissions account.** BOP account that results from measurement errors; equals the negative of the sum of the current account, the capital account, and the official reserves account.

**Ethical behavior.** Behavior that conforms to generally accepted social norms.

**Ethical compliance.** The extent to which the members of the organization follow basic ethical and legal standards of behavior.

**Ethics.** An individual’s beliefs about whether a decision, behavior, or action is right or wrong.

**Ethnocentric approach.** Managerial approach in which a firm operates internationally the same way it does domestically.

**Ethnocentric staffing model.** Approach that primarily uses PCNs to staff upper-level positions.

**Eurobonds.** Bonds denominated in one country’s currency but sold to residents of other countries.

**Eurocurrency.** Currency on deposit in banks outside its country of issue.

**Eurodollars.** U.S. dollars deposited in banks outside the borders of the United States.

**European Central Bank.** The central bank responsible for controlling monetary policy for all EU countries adopting the euro as their currency.

**European Commission.** 27-person group that acts as the EU’s administrative branch of government and proposes EU legislation.

**European Council.** Consists of the heads of government or state of each of the member states, the President of the European Council, and the President of the European Commission.

**European Court of Justice.** 27-member court charged with interpreting EU law; also interprets whether the national laws of the EU members are consistent with EU laws and regulations.

**European Economic Area.** Common market created by the EU and Iceland, Liechtenstein, and Norway.

**European Free Trade Association.** Trading bloc in Europe that works closely with the EU to promote intra-European trade; current members are Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, and Switzerland.

**European Monetary System (EMS).** System based on 1979 agreement among members of the European Union to manage currency relationships among themselves.

**European Parliament.** Legislature elected from member countries that has a consultative role in EU decision making.

**Exchange rate.** Price of one currency in terms of a second currency.

**Exchange rate mechanism (ERM).** Agreement among European Union members to maintain fixed exchange rates among themselves within a narrow band.

**Exit interview.** Interview with an employee who is leaving the organization.

**Expatriate failure.** Early return of an expatriate manager to his or her home country because of an inability to perform in the overseas assignment.
Expatriates. Collective name for parent country nationals (PCNs) and third-country nationals (TCNs).

Export and import brokers. Agents who bring together international buyers and sellers of standardized commodities such as coffee, cocoa, and grains.

Export department. The part of the firm that has responsibility for overseeing international operations, marketing products, processing orders, working with foreign distributors, and arranging financing when necessary.

Export-Import Bank of the United States (Eximbank). U.S. government agency that promotes U.S. exports by offering direct loans and loan guarantees.

Export management company (EMC). Firm that acts as its clients’ export department.

Export of the services of capital. Income that a country’s residents earn from their foreign investments.

Export promotion. Economic development strategy based on building a vibrant manufacturing sector by stimulating exports, often by harnessing some advantage the country possesses, such as low labor costs.

Export promotion strategy. See export promotion.

Export tariff. Tax levied on goods as they leave the country.

Exporting. Selling products made in one’s own country for use or resale in other countries.

Expropriation. Involuntary transfer of property, with compensation, from a privately owned firm to a host country government.

Export alliance. Strategic alliance in which two or more firms work together to reduce the financial risks associated with a project.

Fixed exchange rate system. International monetary system in which each government promises to maintain the price of its currency in terms of other currencies.

Flexible (or floating) exchange rate system. System in which exchange rates are determined by supply and demand.

Flight capital. Money sent out of politically or economically unstable countries by investors seeking a safe haven for their assets.

Float. To allow a currency’s value to be determined by forces of supply and demand.

Focus strategy. Business-level strategy targeting specific types of products for certain customer groups or regions.

Foreign bonds. Bonds issued by residents of one country to residents of a second country and denominated in the second country’s currency.

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA). U.S. law enacted in 1977 prohibiting U.S. firms, their employees, and agents acting on their behalf from paying or offering to pay foreign government officials to influence official actions or policies or to gain or retain business.

Foreign direct investment (FDI). Investments made for the purpose of actively controlling property, assets, or companies located in a host country.

Foreign exchange. Currencies issued by countries other than one’s own.

Foreign portfolio investments (FPI). Investments made in a host country by foreign investors not for purposes of control.

Foreign service premium. See hardship premium.


Foreign trade zone (FTZ). Geographical area in which imported or exported goods receive preferential tariff treatment.

Forum shopping. Attempt to seek a court system or judge that will be most sympathetic to an attorney’s client.

Forward discount. Difference between the forward and the spot price of a currency expressed as an annualized percentage (assumes the forward price is less than the spot price (see also forward premium).

Forward market. Market for foreign exchange involving delivery of currency at some point in the future.

Forward premium. Difference between the forward and the spot price of a currency expressed as an annualized percentage (assumes the forward price is more than the spot price (see also forward discount).

Franchisee. Independent entrepreneur or organization that operates a business under the name of another.

Franchising. Special form of licensing in which the licensor authorizes the licensee to utilize its operating systems, brand names, trademarks, and logos in return for a royalty payment.

Franchisor. Firm that allows an independent entrepreneur or organization to operate a business under its name.

Free trade. Trade between nations that is unrestricted by governmental actions.

Free trade area. Regional trading bloc that encourages trade by eliminating trade barriers among its members.

Freight forwarders. Agents who specialize in the physical transportation of goods, arranging customs documentation and obtaining transportation services for their clients.

General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT). International agreement that sponsors negotiations to promote world trade.

Generalized system of preferences (GSP). System of reduced tariff rates offered on goods exported from developing countries.
Generic organizational control. Form of organizational control based on centralized generic controls across the entire organization.

Geocentric approach. Management approach in which a firm analyzes the needs of its customers worldwide and then adopts standardized operating practices for all markets it serves.

Geocentric staffing model. Approach using a mix of PCNs, HCNs, and TCNs to staff upper-level foreign positions.

Geographic arbitrage. See two-point arbitrage.

Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung (GmbH). A form of corporate organization in Germany; a typical GmbH is a small, privately held company.

Global area design. Form of organization design that centers a firm’s activities around specific areas or regions of the world.

Global bonds. Large, liquid bond issues designed to be traded in numerous capital markets.

Global customer design. Form of organization design centered around different customers or customer groups, each requiring special expertise or attention.

Global functional design. Form of organization design based on departments or divisions having worldwide responsibility for a single organizational function such as finance, operations, or marketing; also called U-form organization.

Global matrix design. Complex form of international organization design created by superimposing one form of design on top of an existing different form.

Global product design. Form of organization design that assigns worldwide responsibility for specific products or product groups to separate operating divisions within a firm.

Globalization. The increasing integration of the world economy and the world’s countries.

Goal orientation. Cultural beliefs about motivation and the different goals toward which people work.

Gold standard. International monetary system based on the willingness of countries to buy or sell their paper currencies for gold at a fixed rate.

Goodwill. Accounting term used to measure the difference between the price paid for a company and the fair value of its tangible net assets.

Gray market. Market created when products are imported into a country legally but outside the normal channels of distribution authorized by the manufacturer.

Greenfield investment. Form of investment in which the firm designs and builds a new factory from scratch, starting with nothing but a “green field.”

Greenfield strategy. Form of foreign direct investment that involves building new facilities.

Gross domestic product (GDP). The total market value of all goods and services produced in a country during some time period, such as a year.

Gross national income (GNI). GDP plus net income, such as dividends and interest received from residents of other countries minus those paid to residents of other countries.

Hard currencies. Currencies that are freely tradable; also called convertible currencies.

Hard loan policy. World Bank lending policy requiring that loans be made only if they are likely to be repaid.

Hardship premium. Supplemental compensation to induce managers to accept relatively unattractive international assignments; also called foreign service premium.

Harmonization. Voluntary adoption of common regulations, policies, and procedures by members of a regional trading bloc to promote internal trade.

Harmonized tariff schedule (HTS). Classification scheme used by many nations to determine tariffs on imported goods.

Headhunters. Recruiting firms that actively seek qualified managers and other professionals for possible placement in positions in other organizations.

Heckscher-Ohlin theory. See relative factor endowments, theory of.

High-context culture. Culture context in which a discussion is held is equally as important as the actual words that are spoken in conveying the speaker’s message to the listener.

Home country. Country in which a firm’s headquarters is located.

Host country. Country other than a firm’s home country in which it operates.

Host country nationals (HCNs). Employees who are citizens of the host country where an international business operates.

Human resource management (HRM). Set of activities directed at attracting, developing, and maintaining the effective workforce necessary to achieve a firm’s objectives.

Hurdle rate. Minimum rate of return a firm finds acceptable for its capital investments.

IMF conditionality. Restrictions placed on economic policies of countries receiving IMF loans.

Import of the services of capital. Payments that a country’s residents make on capital supplied by foreigners.

Import substitution policy. Economic development strategy that relies on the stimulation of domestic manufacturing firms by erecting barriers to imported goods.

Import substitution strategy. Economic development approach that relies on the promotion of domestic manufacturing by erecting barriers to imported goods.

Import tariff. Tax levied on goods as they enter a country.

Importing. Buying products made in other countries for use or resale in one’s own country.

Inconvertible currencies. Currencies that are not freely traded because of legal restrictions imposed by the issuing country or that are not generally accepted by foreigners in settlement of international transactions; also called soft currencies.

Indirect exchange rate. Price of the home currency in terms of the foreign currency; also called indirect quote.

Indirect exporting. Sales of a firm’s products to a domestic customer, which in turn exports the product, in either its original form or a modified form.

Indirect quote. See indirect exchange rate.

Individualism. The cultural belief that the person comes first.
**Industrial policy.** Economic development strategy in which a national government identifies key domestic industries critical to the country’s economic future and then formulates policies that promote the international competitiveness of these industries.

**Infant industry argument.** Argument in favor of governmental intervention in trade; a nation should protect fledgling industries for which the nation will ultimately possess a comparative advantage.

**Informal management network.** Group of managers from different parts of the world who are connected to one another in some way.

**Information.** Data in a form that is of value to a manager.

**Information system.** Methodology created by a firm to gather, assemble, and provide data in a form or forms useful to managers.

**Interindustry trade.** International trade involving the exchange of goods produced in one industry in one country for goods produced in another industry in a different country.

**Intermediaries.** Third parties that specialize in facilitating imports and exports.

**Internalization advantages.** Factors that affect the desirability of a firm’s producing a good or service itself rather than relying on other firms to control production.

**Internalization theory.** Theory stating that foreign direct investment occurs because of the high costs of entering into production or procurement contracts with foreign firms.

**International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).** International organization, formed in 2001 from the restructuring of the IASC, to issue international accounting standards.

**International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD).** Official name of the World Bank, established by the Bretton Woods Agreement to reconstruct the war-torn economies of Western Europe and whose mission changed in the 1950s to aid the development of less developed countries.

**International banking facility (IBF).** Entity of a U.S. bank that is exempted from domestic banking regulations as long as it provides only international banking services.

**International business.** Business that engages in cross-border commercial transactions with individuals, private firms, and/or public-sector organizations; also refers to cross-border transactions.

**International Development Association (IDA).** World Bank affiliate that specializes in loans to less developed countries.

**International division.** Organizational unit whose responsibility is to manage foreign operations, allowing the firm to concentrate resources and create specialized programs for international business activities.

**International Finance Corporation (IFC).** World Bank affiliate whose mission is the development of the private sector in developing countries.

**International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS).** Accounting standards promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board.

**International Fisher effect.** Observation that differences in nominal interest rates among countries are due to differences in their expected inflation rates.

**International franchising.** An arrangement in which a firm from one country authorizes a firm in a second country to use its operating systems, brand names, and trademarks in return for a royalty payment.

**International investments.** Capital supplied by residents of one country to residents of another.

**International Labor Organization (ILO).** Watchdog that monitors working conditions in factories in developing countries.

**International licensing.** Transaction in which a firm in one country (the licensor) sells the right to use its intellectual property to a firm located in a second country (the licensee) for a fee.

**International logistics.** Management functions associated with the international flow of materials, parts, supplies, and finished products from suppliers to the firm, between units of the firm itself, and from the firm to customers.

**International management contract.** An arrangement in which a firm from one country agrees to operate facilities or provide other management services in a second country for a fee.

**International marketing.** Extension of marketing activities across national boundaries; see also marketing.

**International Monetary Fund (IMF).** Agency created by the Bretton Woods Agreement to promote international monetary cooperation after World War II.

**International monetary system.** System by which countries value and exchange their currencies.

**International operations management.** Transformation-related activities of an international firm.

**International order cycle time.** Time between placement of an order and its receipt by the customer.

**International service business.** Firm that transforms resources into an intangible output that creates utility for its customers.

**International strategic management.** Comprehensive and ongoing management planning process aimed at formulating and implementing strategies that enable a firm to compete effectively internationally.

**International strategies.** Comprehensive frameworks for achieving a firm’s fundamental goals.

**International trade.** Voluntary exchange of goods, services, or assets between a person or organization in one country and a person or organization in another country.

**International trading company.** Firm directly engaged in importing and exporting a wide variety of goods for its own account.

**Intracorporate transfer.** Selling of goods by a firm in one country to an affiliated firm in another country.

**Intraindustry trade.** Trade between two countries involving the exchange of goods produced by the same industry.
Invoicing currency. Currency in which an international transaction is invoiced.

Irrevocable letter of credit. Letter of credit that cannot be changed without the consent of the buyer, the seller, and the issuing bank.

Jamaica Agreement. Agreement among central bankers made in 1976, allowing each country to adopt whatever exchange rate system it wished.

Job satisfaction/dissatisfaction. An attitude that reflects the extent to which an individual is gratified by or fulfilled in his or her work.

Joint venture (JV). Special form of strategic alliance created when two or more firms agree to work together and jointly own a separate firm to promote their mutual interests.

Just-in-time (JIT) systems. Systems in which suppliers are expected to deliver necessary inputs just as they are needed.

Kabushiki kaisha (KK). In Japan, term used to represent all limited-liability companies.

Keiretsu. Family of Japanese companies, often centered on a large bank or trading company, having extensive cross-ownership of shares and interacting with one another as suppliers or customers.

Kommanditgesellschaft auf Aktien (KGaA). A form of corporate organization in Germany; a typical KGaA is primarily owned by partners with limited liability, although at least one shareholder must have unlimited liability.

Leadership. Use of noncoercive influence to shape the goals of a group or organization, to motivate behavior toward reaching those goals, and to help determine the group or organizational culture.

Leads and lags strategy. Money management technique in which an MNC attempts to increase its holdings of currencies and assets denominated in currencies that are expected to rise in value and to decrease its holdings of currencies and assets denominated in currencies that are expected to fall in value.

Legal compliance. The extent to which an organization conforms to regional, national, and international laws.

Leontief paradox. Empirical finding that U.S. exports are more labor intensive than U.S. imports, which is contrary to the predictions of the theory of relative factor endowments.

Letter of credit. Document issued by a bank promising to pay the seller if all conditions specified in the letter of credit are met.

Liability of foreignness. The informational, political, and cultural disadvantages that foreign firms face when trying to compete against local firms in the host country.

Licensee. Firm that buys the rights to use the intellectual property of another firm.

Licensing. Transaction in which a firm (the licensor) sells the rights to use its intellectual property to another firm (the licensee) for a fee.

Licenser. Firm that sells the rights to use its intellectual property to another firm.

Lingua franca. Common language.

Location advantages. Factors that affect the desirability of host country production relative to home country production.

Locus of control. Personality trait determining the extent to which people believe that their behavior has a real effect on what happens to them.

London Interbank Offer Rate (LIBOR). Interest rate that London banks charge each other for short-term Eurocurrency loans.

Long-term foreign portfolio investments. Portfolio investments with maturities of more than one year.

Louvre Accord. Agreement made in 1987 among central bankers to stabilize the value of the U.S. dollar.

Low-context culture. Culture in which the words being spoken explicitly convey the speaker’s message to the listener.

Ltd. Abbreviation used in the United Kingdom to indicate a privately held, limited-liability company.


Macropolitical risk. Political risk that affects all firms operating within a country.

Make-or-buy decision. Decision for an organization to either make its own inputs or buy them from outside suppliers.

Managed float. Flexible exchange system in which government intervention plays a major role in determining exchange rates; also called a dirty float.

Managed trade. See fair trade.

Management contract. Agreement whereby one firm provides managerial assistance, technical expertise, or specialized services to a second firm for an agreed-upon time for a fee.

Manufacturers’ agents. Agents who solicit domestic orders for foreign manufacturers, usually on a commission basis.

Manufacturers’ export agents. Agents who act as an export department for domestic manufacturers, selling those firms’ goods in foreign markets.


Market pricing policy. Pricing policy under which prices are set on a market-by-market basis.

Marketing. Process of planning and executing the conception, pricing, promotion, and distribution of ideas, goods, and services to create exchanges that satisfy individual and organizational objectives.

Marketing alliance. Strategic alliance in which two or more firms share marketing services or expertise.

Marketing mix. How a firm chooses to address product development, pricing, promotion, and distribution.

Materials management. Part of logistics management concerned with the flow of materials into the firm from suppliers and between units of the firm itself.

Medium. Communication channel used by an advertiser to convey a message.

Mercantilism. Economic philosophy based on the belief that a nation’s wealth is measured by its holdings of gold and silver.
Merchandise export. Sale of a good to a resident of a foreign country.

Merchandise exports and imports. Trade involving tangible products.

Merchandise import. Purchase of a good from a resident of a foreign country.

Message. Facts or impressions an advertiser wishes to convey to potential customers.

Micropolitical risk. Political risk that affects only specific firms or a specific industry operating within a country.

Mission statement. Definition of a firm’s values, purpose, and directions.

Most favored nation (MFN) principle. Principle that any preferential treatment granted to one country must be extended to all countries.

Motivation. Overall set of forces that cause people to choose certain behaviors from a set of available behaviors.

Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (MIGA). World Bank affiliate that offers political risk insurance to investors in developing countries.

Multilateral netting. Netting of transactions between three or more business units.

Multinational corporation (MNC). A firm that owns and controls value-adding activities in two or more countries.

Multinational enterprise (MNE). Business that may or may not be incorporated and has extensive involvement in international business.

Multinational organization (MNO). Any organization—business or not-for-profit—with extensive international involvement.

Mutual recognition. Legal concept created by the European Court of Justice; implies that if one EU member determines that a product is valid for sale within its borders, then other EU members must also recognize its validity and allow it to be sold within their borders.

Naamloze vennootschap (NV). Term used in the Netherlands to refer to a publicly held, limited-liability firm.

National competitive advantage, theory of. States that success in international trade is based on the interaction of factor conditions, demand conditions, related and supporting industries, and firm strategy, structure, and rivalry.

National defense argument. Argument in favor of governmental intervention in trade, holding that a nation should be self-sufficient in critical raw materials, machinery, and technology.

National treatment. Imposing the same standards, regulations, and so forth on foreign firms that are imposed on domestic firms.

Nationalization. Transfer of property from a privately owned firm to the government.

Natural hedge. See operational hedge.

Needs. The things an individual must have or wants to have.

Neomercantilists. Modern supporters of mercantilism, who hold that a country should erect barriers to trade to protect its industries from foreign competition; also called protectionists.

New trade theory. Extends Linder’s analysis by incorporating the impact of economies of scale on trade in differentiated goods.

Newly Independent States (NIS). Refers to the 15 independent countries created as a result of the breakup of the Soviet Union.

Nontariff barrier (NTB). Any governmental regulation, policy, or procedure other than a tariff that has the effect of impeding international trade.


Obstructionist stance. A firm doing as little as possible to address social or environmental problems.

Official reserves account. BOP account that records changes in official reserves owned by a central bank.

Official settlements balance. BOP balance that measures changes in a country’s official reserves.

Offset purchases. Form of countertrade in which a portion of the exported good is produced in the importing country.

Open account. Type of payment in which the seller ships goods to the buyer prior to payment; the seller relies on the promise of the buyer that payment will be forthcoming.

Openness. A “big five” personality trait referring to a person’s rigidity of beliefs and range of interests.

Operational hedge. When a firm tries to match its revenues or service in question.

Organizational control. Level of control that focuses on operating processes and systems within both the organization and its subsidiaries and operating units.

Organizational management. Set of activities used by an organization to transform different kinds of resource inputs into final goods and services.

Opportunity cost. Value of what is given up to get the good or service in question.

Organization design. Overall pattern of structural components and configurations used to manage the total organization; also called organization structure.

Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). A group of 34 market-oriented democracies formed to promote economic growth.

Organization structure. See organization design.

Organizational commitment. An attitude reflecting an individual’s identification with and loyalty to the organization.

Overall cost leadership strategy. Business-level strategy that emphasizes low costs.

Overseas Private Investment Corporation (OPIC). U.S. government agency that promotes U.S. international business activities by providing political risk insurance.
Ownership advantage theory. Theory stating that foreign direct investment occurs because of ownership of valuable assets that confer monopolistic advantages in foreign markets.

Ownership advantages. Resources owned by a firm that grant it a competitive advantage over its industry rivals.

Par value. Official price of a currency in terms of gold.

Parallel barter. See counterpurchase.

Parallel importing. Market that results from products being imported into a country legally but outside the normal channels of distribution authorized by a manufacturer (synonymous with gray market).

Parent country nationals (PCNs). Employees who are citizens of an international business’s home country and are transferred to one of its foreign operations.

Passive goal behavior. Behavior based on the cultural belief that social relationships, quality of life, and concern for others are the basis of motivation and reflect the goals that a person should pursue.

Passive income. See Subpart F income.

Payback period. Number of years it takes a project to repay a firm’s initial investment.

Payment in advance. When an exporter receives the importer’s money prior to shipping the goods.

Pegged. Tied to, as in “The gold standard created a fixed exchange rate system because each country pegged the value of its currency to gold.”

Per capita income. Average income per person in a country.

Perception. The set of processes by which an individual becomes aware of and interprets information about the environment.

Performance appraisal. Process of assessing how effectively a person is performing his or her job.

Personal selling. Making sales on the basis of personal contacts.

Personality. The relatively stable set of psychological attributes that distinguish one person from another.

Philanthropic giving. Awarding funds or gifts to charities or other social programs.

Planning process control. Form of organizational control that focuses on the actual mechanics and processes a firm uses to develop strategic plans.

Plaza Accord. Agreement made in 1985 among central bankers to allow the U.S. dollar to fall in value.

PLC. Abbreviation used in the United Kingdom to indicate a publicly held, limited-liability company.

Political risk. Change in the political environment that may adversely affect the value of a firm.

Political risk assessment. Systematic analysis of the political risks that a firm faces when operating in a foreign country.

Political union. Complete political and economic integration of two or more countries.

Polycentric approach. Management approach in which a firm customizes its operations for each foreign market it serves.

Polycentric staffing model. Approach primarily using HCNs to staff upper-level foreign positions.

Power orientation. Cultural beliefs about the appropriateness of power and authority in hierarchies such as business organizations.

Power respect. Cultural belief that the use of power and authority is acceptable simply on the basis of position in a hierarchy.

Power tolerance. Cultural belief that the use of power and authority is not acceptable simply on the basis of position in a hierarchy.

Pricing. A component of the Four Ps of marketing.

Primary stakeholders. Individuals and groups directly affected by the actions of a corporation and which have an economic stake in its performance.

Principle of comity. Provides that a country will honor and enforce within its own territory the judgments and decisions of foreign courts, with certain limitations.

Privatization. Sale of publicly owned property to private investors.

Proactive stance. When a firm exhibits the highest degree of social responsibility, viewing itself as a citizen in society and actively seeking ways to contribute.

Product. A good produced either by man or nature.

Product life cycle theory. A theory that traces the evolution of international trade and investment as a product evolves through the stages of new product, maturing product, and standardized product.

Product-support services. Assistance a firm provides for customers regarding the operation, maintenance, and/or repair of its products.

Production alliance. Strategic alliance in which two or more firms each manufacture products or provide services in a shared or common facility.

Production management. International operations management decisions and processes involving the creation of tangible goods.

Productivity. Economic measure of efficiency that summarizes the value of outputs relative to the value of inputs used to create them.

Promotion. Set of all efforts by an international firm to enhance the desirability of its products among potential buyers.

Promotion mix. Mix of advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations used by a firm to market its products.

Protectionists. See neomercantilists.

Protestant ethic. Belief that hard work, frugality, and achievement are means of glorifying God.

Public choice analysis. Branch of economics that analyzes public decision making.

Public-private venture. Joint venture involving a partnership between a privately owned foreign firm and a government.

Public relations. Efforts aimed at enhancing a firm’s reputation and image.
**Purchasing power parity (PPP), theory of.** Theory stating that the prices of tradable goods, when expressed in a common currency, will tend to equalize across countries as a result of exchange rate changes.

**Put option.** Publicly traded contract granting the owner the right, but not the obligation, to sell a specific amount of foreign currency at a specified price at a stated future date.

**Quality.** Totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bear on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs.

**Quota.** Deposit paid by a member nation when joining the International Monetary Fund.

**R&D alliance.** Strategic alliance in which two or more firms agree to undertake joint research to develop new products or services.

**R&D consortium.** Confederation of organizations that band together to research and develop new products and processes for world markets.

**Reexporting.** Process of importation of a good into a country for immediate exportation, with little or no transformation of the good.

**Reform Treaty.** Common name given to the Treaty of Lisbon.

**Regional development banks.** Banks whose mission is to promote economic development of poorer nations within the region they serve.

**Related diversification.** Corporate-level strategy in which the firm operates in several different but related businesses, industries, or markets at the same time.

**Relative factor endowments, theory of.** Theory stating that a country will have a comparative advantage in producing goods that intensively use factors of production it has in abundance; also called Heckscher-Ohlin theory.

**Religious law.** Law based on officially established rules governing the faith and practice of a particular religion.

**Repatriate.** To return to a home country.

**Repatriation.** Moving a manager back home after a foreign assignment has been completed.

**Resource deployment.** Component of strategy that answers the question “Given that we are going to compete in these markets, how will we allocate our resources to them?”

**Responsibility center control.** Form of organizational control based on decentralized responsibility centers.

**Retention.** Extent to which a firm is able to retain its employees.

**Revocable letter of credit.** Letter of credit that can be changed by the bank without the consent of the buyer and the seller.

**Ringi system.** Japanese approach to ensuring that decisions are made collectively rather than by an individual.

**Royalty.** Compensation paid by a licensee to a licensor.

**Rules of origin.** Rules to determine which goods will benefit from reduced trade barriers in regional trading blocs.

**Sales promotion.** Specialized marketing efforts using such techniques as coupons and sampling.

**Sanctions.** Government-imposed restraints against commerce with a foreign country.

**Scope of operations.** Component of strategy that answers the question “Where are we going to conduct business?”

**Screwdriver plant.** Domestic factory that assembles imported parts in which little value is added to the parts.

**Secondary stakeholders.** Individuals and groups affected by the actions of a corporation but which are not engaged in economic transactions with it.

**Self-efficacy.** Personality trait determining a person’s beliefs about his or her capabilities to perform a task.

**Self-esteem.** Personality trait determining the extent to which a person believes that he or she is a worthwhile and deserving individual.

**Self-reference criterion.** The unconscious use of one’s own culture to help assess new surroundings.

**Service export.** Sale of a service to a resident of a foreign country.

**Service exports and imports.** Trade involving intangible products.

**Service import.** Purchase of a service from a resident of a foreign country.

**Service operations management.** International operations management decisions and processes involving the creation of intangible services.

**Shared management agreement.** Management arrangement in which each partner in a strategic alliance fully and actively participates in managing the alliance.

**Shareholder model.** Model of the corporation which asserts that the corporation’s goal is to maximize the returns to its shareholders.

**Short-term foreign portfolio investments.** Portfolio investments with maturities of one year or less.

**Sight draft.** Draft that requires payment upon transfer of the goods to the buyer.

**Single-business strategy.** Corporate-level strategy that calls for a firm to rely on a single business, product, or service for all its revenue.

**Smithsonian Conference.** Meeting held in Washington, DC, in December 1971, during which central bank representatives from the Group of Ten agreed to restore the fixed exchange rate system but with restructured rates of exchange between the major trading currencies.

**Social charter.** EU policy promoting common job-related benefits and working conditions throughout the EU; also called social policy.

**Social mobility.** The ability of individuals to move from one stratum of society to another.

**Social orientation.** Cultural beliefs about the relative importance of the individual and the groups to which an individual belongs.

**Social policy.** See social charter.

**Social stratification.** Organization of society into hierarchies based on birth, occupation, wealth, educational achievements, and/or other characteristics.
Società per azioni (SpA). A form of corporate organization in Italy in which owners of the firm enjoy limited liability.

Société anonyme (SA). A form of corporate organization in France in which owners of the firm enjoy limited liability.

Soft currencies. See inconvertible currencies.

Soft loans. Loans made by the World Bank Group that bear significant risk of not being paid.

Sogo shosha. Large Japanese export trading company.

Southern African Development Community (SADC). Free trade area created by 12 Southern African countries.

Sovereign wealth funds. Investment companies owned and established by national governments.

Special drawing rights (SDRs). Credits granted by the IMF that can be used to settle transactions among central banks; also called paper gold.

Specific tariff. Tax assessed as a specific dollar amount per unit of weight or other standard measure.

Spot market. Market for foreign exchange involving immediate delivery of the currency in question.

Stability and Growth Pact. Limits annual government deficits of eurozone participants to no more than 3 percent of their GDPs.

Standard price policy. Pricing policy under which a firm charges the same price for its products and services regardless of where they are sold.

Stakeholder model. Model of the corporation which asserts that the corporation’s mission is to promote the interests of its stakeholders.

Statistical process control. Family of mathematically based tools for monitoring and controlling quality.

Statutory laws. Laws enacted by legislative action.

Sterling-based gold standard. Gold standard in which the British pound is commonly used as an alternative means of settlement of transactions.

Strategic alliance. Business arrangement in which two or more firms choose to cooperate for their mutual benefit.

Strategic business units (SBUs). “Bundles” of businesses created by a firm using a corporate strategy of either related or unrelated diversification.

Strategic control. Process of monitoring how well an international business formulates and implements its strategies.

Strategic goals. Major objectives a firm wants to accomplish through the pursuit of a particular course of action.

Strategic planning. Process of developing a particular international strategy.

Strategic trade theory. Theory addressing the optimal policies through which a government may benefit its country by aiding domestic firms in monopolistic or highly oligopolistic industries.

Stress. An individual’s response to a strong stimulus.

Subpart F income. Income earned from financial transactions, such as dividends, interest, and royalties; also called passive income.

Subsidiary bank. Separately incorporated overseas banking operation.

Supply chain management. Set of processes and steps a firm uses to acquire raw materials, parts, and other resources it needs to create its own products.

Swap market. Facet of international capital market in which two firms can exchange financial obligations.

Swap transaction. Transaction involving the simultaneous purchase and sale of a foreign currency with delivery at two different points in time.

Switching arrangements. Agreement under which firms may transfer their countertrade obligations to a third party.

SWOT analysis. Analysis of a firm and its environment to determine its strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats.

Synergy. Component of strategy that answers the question “How can different elements of our business benefit one another?”

Tactics. Methods used by middle managers to implement strategic plans.

Tariff. Tax placed on a good involved in international trade.

Tariff rate quota (TRQ). A type of quota that imposes a low tariff rate on a limited amount of imports of a specific good into the country but then subjects all imports above that threshold to a prohibitively high tariff.

Tax equalization system. System for ensuring that an expatriate’s after-tax income in the host country is comparable to what the person’s after-tax income would be in the home country.

Tax havens. Countries that charge low, often zero, taxes on corporate incomes and that offer an attractive business climate.

Technology transfer. The transmittal of technology from one country to another.

Theocracy. Country whose legal system is based on religious law.

Theory of absolute advantage. See absolute advantage, theory of.


Theory of national competitive advantage. See national competitive advantage, theory of.

Theory of purchasing power parity (PPP). See purchasing power parity (PPP), theory of.

Theory of relative factor endowments. See relative factor endowments, theory of.

Third-country nationals (TCNs). Employees of an international business who are not citizens of the firm’s home or host country.

Three-point arbitrage. Arbitrage based on exploiting differences between the direct rate of exchange between two currencies and their cross rate of exchange using a third currency.

Time draft. Draft that requires payment at some specified time after the transfer of goods to the buyer.
**Time orientation.** Cultural beliefs regarding long-term versus short-term outlooks on work, life, and other aspects of society.

**Total quality management (TQM).** Integrated effort to systematically and continuously improve the quality of an organization’s products and/or services.

**Trade.** Voluntary exchange of goods, services, assets, or money between one person or organization and another.

**Trade acceptance.** Time draft that has been signed by the buyer signifying a promise to honor the payment terms.

**Trade deflection.** Rerouting of exported goods to the member of a free trade area with the lowest barriers to imports from nonmember countries.

**Trade in invisibles.** British term denoting trade in services.

**Trade in visibles.** British term referring to merchandise trade.

**Training.** Instruction directed at enhancing job-related skills and abilities.

**Transaction costs.** Costs of negotiating, monitoring, and enforcing a contract.

**Transaction currency.** Currency in which an international transaction is denominated.

**Transaction exposure.** Financial risks that occur because the financial benefits and costs of an international transaction may be affected by exchange rate movements occurring after the firm is legally obligated to the transaction.

**Transfer price.** Prices that one branch or subsidiary of a parent firm charges for goods, services, or property sold to a second branch or subsidiary of the same parent firm.

**Transit tariff.** Tax levied on goods as they pass through one country bound for another.

**Translation exposure.** Impact on a firm’s consolidated financial statements of fluctuations in foreign exchange rates that change the value of foreign subsidiaries as measured in the parent’s currency.

**Treaty for Europe.** See Treaty of Amsterdam.

**Treaty of Amsterdam.** 1997 treaty furthering integration among EU members.

**Treaty of Lisbon.** An agreement among EU members to adopt many of the reforms proposed by the EU’s Constitutional Convention.

**Treaty of Nice.** Became effective in February 2003, furthering the integration of the EU.

**Treaty of Rome.** Treaty signed in 1957 that established the European Economic Community.

**Treaty on European Union.** Signed in 1992 and came into force on November 1, 1993, furthering economic and political integration of the EC’s members; important provisions include the creation of an economic and monetary union, a cohesion fund, a pledge to cooperate on foreign and defense policies, and the renaming of the EC as the European Union; commonly known as the Maastricht Treaty.

**Triffin paradox.** Paradox that resulted from reliance on the U.S. dollar as the primary source of liquidity in the Bretton Woods system; for trade to grow, foreigners needed to hold more dollars; the more dollars they held, however, the less faith they had in the U.S. dollar, thereby undermining the Bretton Woods system.

**Triple bottom line.** Concept that corporations have three primary responsibilities: earn profits for their shareholders, protect the natural environment, and enhance the general welfare of society.

**Turnkey project.** Contract under which a firm agrees to fully design, construct, and equip a facility and then turn the project over to the purchaser when it is ready for operation.

**Turnover.** Rate at which people leave an organization.

**Two-point arbitrage.** Riskless purchase of a product in one geographic market for immediate resale in a second geographic market to profit from price differences between the markets; also called geographic arbitrage.

**Two-tiered pricing policy.** Pricing policy under which a firm sets one price for all its domestic sales and a second price for all its international sales.

**Uncertainty acceptance.** Cultural belief that uncertainty and ambiguity are stimulating and present new opportunities.

**Uncertainty avoidance.** Cultural belief that uncertainty and ambiguity are unpleasant and should be avoided.

**Uncertainty orientation.** Cultural beliefs about uncertainty and ambiguity.

**Undifferentiated goods.** Goods for which brand names and product reputations play a minor role in consumer purchase decisions (e.g., coal, petroleum products, and sugar).

**Unethical behavior.** Behavior that does not conform to generally accepted social norms.

**Unilateral transfers.** Gifts made by residents of one country to residents of another country.

**Unrelated diversification.** Corporate-level strategy that calls for a firm to operate in several unrelated businesses, industries, or markets.

**Uruguay Round.** GATT negotiations (1986–1994) that created the World Trade Organization, slashed tariff rates, and strengthened enforcement of intellectual property rights.

**Value chain.** A breakdown of the firm into its important activities—production, marketing, human resource management, and so forth—to enable its strategists to identify its competitive advantages and disadvantages.

**Values.** The things that people believe to be important.

**Vertical integration.** Extent to which a firm either provides its own resources or obtains them from other sources.

**Voluntary export restraint (VER).** Promise by a country to limit its exports of a good to another country.

**Webb-Pomerene association.** Group of U.S. firms that operate within the same industry and that are allowed by law to coordinate their export activities without fear of violating U.S. antitrust laws.
**Whistle-blowing.** The disclosure by an employee of illegal or unethical conduct by others within the organization.

**With recourse.** Term signifying that should a trade acceptance or banker’s acceptance sold by an exporter to an investor fail to be paid, the exporter will reimburse the investor; the exporter retains the risk of default by the signer of the acceptance.

**Without recourse.** Term signifying that should a trade acceptance or banker’s acceptance sold by an exporter to an investor fail to be paid, the exporter is not obligated to reimburse the investor; the investor retains the risk of default by the signer of the acceptance.

**World Bank.** See International Bank for Reconstruction and Development.


**World Trade Organization (WTO).** Successor organization to the GATT founded in 1995; created by the Uruguay Round negotiations.
Name Index

A
Abacha, Sani, 173
Abe, Shunzo, 104, 209
Abeymanne, Ruwin, 468
Abramovitch, Roman, 37
Adler, Nancy, 113–114, 131, 450
Adler, Paul S., 505
Adorno, T. W., 445
Agée, Bill, 334
Aguilera, Ruth V., 421
Agusti, Filiberto, 527
Ainina, M. Fail, 451
Al Fahim, Sulaiman, 37
Al-Meer, Abdul Rahim A., 446
Allabyre, Baimurat, 109
Alon, Ilan, 127
Alston, John P., 114, 119, 453, 456
Amalean, Malesh, 468
Ambrosio, Neide, 495
Amelio, William, 409–410
Amin, Iddi, 83
Amos, Paal, Bill, and John, 139
Andersen, Arthur, 93, 94, 144
Arnault, Bernard, 355
Arnold, David, 510
Asch, David, 422
Atwater, Bruce, 387

B
Baird, Lloyd, 516
Bakr, Abu, 122
Barling, Julian, 451
Barnes, John W., 488
Baron, Helen, 568
Barrick, M. R., 443
Barry, Norman, 144
Bartlett, Christopher A., 330, 413, 416, 422
Bartmess, Andrew D., 508
Bass, B., 135
Baxerman, Max H., 159
Beamish, Paul W., 390
Beck, John E., 569
Bering, Vitus, 49
Beyoncé, 228
Bezos, Jeff, 420
Bhargava, Swati, 447
Bingham, James, 160
Birdseye, Meg G., 451
Birkenshaw, J. M., 336
Black, J. Stewart, 411, 446, 457, 568
Blaker, Ashley, 490
Block, Stanley, 544
Bloom, Robert, 96
Boddewyn, Jean J., 361
Bodur, Muzzafer, 16452
Bodewyn, Jean J., 361
Bonacina, Luciano, 451
Brouthers, Keith D., 395
Brouthers, Lance Elliot, 395
Bruneel, John, 166
Brundland, Gro, 153
Barnes, Lawton R., 418
Barns, Robert, 341
Bash, George W., 267
Bylsins, Gene, 515
Cabot, John, 49
Caliguiri, Paula M., 568
Cameron, David, 285, 310
Campbell-Hunt, C., 345
Cappelli, Peter, 560
Carroll, Cynthia, 436–437
Cartier, Jacques, 49
Cassini, Oleg, 374
Castro, Fidel, 85
Cavusgil, S. Tamer, 476
Cesan, Patrick, 469
Chadha, Gurinder, 109
Chandler, Alfred Jr., 410
Chandler, Megan M., 448
Chase, Richard B., 513
Chávez, Hugo, 86
Chen, Chao C., 444, 562
Chen, Christine Y., 153
Chen, Ya-Ru, 444, 562
Cherukuri, U. Rao, 545
Cheung, Fanny M., 451
Chihokar, Jagdeep S., 454
Chirac, Jacques, 27
Cho, Fuji, 441
Choi, Frederick D. S., 92, 96
Chouinard, Yvon, 159
Christie, Amy, 451
Christmann, Petra, 153
Chuanzhi, Liu, 409–410
Clintoon, Bill, 294
Collin, James M., 569
Côté, Samuel, 31
Columbus, Christopher, 31, 49
Condon, John C., 114
Contractor, Farok J., 390
Cook, James, 49
Cooper, Cary L., 447, 570
Cooper, S. Kerry, 545
Couandourtotis, George A., 356
Cove, Kevin, 522
Cross, Rob, 516

D
da Gama, Vasco, 49, 122
da Silva, Luiz Inacio Lula, 72
Daley, Lane, 424
Darling, John R., 485
Das, Pravakar, 495
Dau, Luis Alfonso, 330
David, Fred, 338
David, Kenneth, 114, 118
Davidson, William H., 356
de Balboa, Vasco Nunez, 54
de Brabander, Bert, 444
de Cuca, Juan, 49
de Jonquières, Guy, 479
de Lesseps, Ferdinand, 54
de Luque, Mary Sully, 452
De Mayer, Arnould, 359
Déby, Idriiss, 172
DeNisi, Angelo S., 560, 565
Denton, Nicholas, 400
Desmond, Edward W., 363, 369
Dick, Andrew R., 191
Dickerson, Ron, 590
Dieffendoff, James M., 448
Digh, Patricia, 149
DiMeco, Daniel R., 589–591
Distefano, Joseph J., 118
Doktor, Robert H., 451
Donaldson, Thomas, 152
Dorfman, Peter, 452, 454
Douglas, McDonnell, 85
Douglas, Susan, 472
Douppnik, Timothy D., 93, 95
Downey, Jean, 492
Dufey, Gunter, 546
Dumaine, Brian, 516
Dunning, John H., 33, 199–200, 336, 360, 378
Dunung, Sanjyot, 571
Dyer, Jeffrey, 395
Dziubinski, Phil, 167

E
Earle, Beverly, 527
Eaton, Ruth, 335
Eldridge, L., 135
Elis, Max, 532
Engel, Dean W., 572
Ensign, P. C., 336
Erëz, Miriam, 442, 560
Erikson, Warren J., 513
Errumilli, M. Krishna, 359, 363
Esty, Daniel C., 153

F
Fawcett, Stanley E., 511
Fein, Adam J., 512
Ferdows, Kasra, 329
Ferraro, Gary P., 119, 124, 130–131, 569
Ferreil, O. C., 482
Ferriola, John J., 590
Ferris, Gerald R., 569
Fiernan, Paul, 584–585
Fisher, Joseph, 423
Fiske, Susan T., 455
Flickinger, Burt P. III, 522
Fort, Monique, 410
Fortuño, Jaime, 487
Fossey, Dian, 153
Franklin, Ben, 228
Frayne, Colette A., 444
Freeman, R. Edward, 152
Frenkel-Brunswick, E., 445
Friedman, Milton, 235
Friedman, Thomas L., 34, 467–468
Frohboise, Martin, 49
Frost, Carol Ann, 92
Frost, T. S., 336
Fucini, Joseph J., 449
Fucini, Suzi, 449
Fuglister, Jayne, 96
Fung, Shirley, 574

G
Gaismaier, Wolfgang, 455
Garten, Jeffrey, 38
George, Jennifer, 442
George, William, 442
Geringer, J. Michael, 344, 395, 444
Ghemawat, Pankaj, 29
Ghoshal, Sumanta, 330, 363, 422
Ghosh, Carlos, 465–467
Ghoshal, Sumanta, 416
Giddy, Ian H., 546
Gigerenzer, Gerd, 455
Gimenez, Mark, 433
Gist, Marilyn E., 444
Goldberg, L. R., 443
Goldberg, Linda S., 526
Goldofsky, Barbara, 505
Gomes, Dian, 468

606
Company Index

A
Aalsmeer, 177
ABC, 344, 345
AB Electrolux, 514
Abercrombie & Fitch, 347, 500
Aber, 321
Abu Dhabi Investment Authority, 195
Abu Dhabi United Group for Development and Investment, 37
Accor SA also, 344
Acer, 27
Adam Opel AG, 543–544
Adecco S.A., 414
Adidas, 480
Advanced Micro Devices, 191
Advanxic, 388
AES Hausergeräte, 324
Aeon, 104
Aerolot, 393
Aeromexico, 54, 393
Aeroxon, 57
Aetna, 411
AFLAC Inc., 138–140, 537
Africa Development Bank, 214
Airbus, 190, 281, 291, 322–323, 365
Air Canada, 270, 281, 393
Air China, 393
Air France, 376, 393, 525
Air Liquide, 116
Ajas Alarms, 494–495
Akbono Brake Industry, 291
Alcon Labs, 425
Aldi, 347, 428
All-China Federation of Trade Unions (ACFTU), 559
All Nippon Airways, 104, 390
Amazon, 190–191, 420, 495
American Airlines, 254, 388, 393, 525
American Arbitration Association, 89
American Eagle Outfitters, 418
American Express, 530, 572
American Family Life Assurance Company, 139
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 93
American International Group (AIG), 139, 488
American Motors, 400
Amway, 488
Apple Computer, 64, 79, 143, 158, 187–188, 189,
204, 321, 329, 342, 369, 409, 421, 482, 485,
513, 549, 555, 559
Aquafina, 157
Aramco, 392, 482, 587
Arcelor Mittal, 116
Archer Daniels Midland, 143, 273
Arctic Council, 49
Areva, 265
Ashai Glass, 396
Ashai Video Products Company, 396
ASDA, 328
Ascaso, 116
ASL 555
Asian Development Bank, 214, 215
Association of Guatemalan Coffee Producers, 365
Astra, 156, 157
AstraZeneca, 552
AST Research, 409
Austek, 180
Atma Global, 571
AT&T, 402, 568
Audi, 359
Avon, 542
Axafrán, 487
B
BAE, 532
Ballantine Strong, 337
Bally of Switzerland, 572
Banco Bilbao Vizcaya, 116
Banco Central Hispano, 116
Banco Excel Economico, 389–390
Banco Santander, 116
Bandra, 393
Bang & Olufsen, 347, 359
Bank of China, 493
Barclays Bank, 123, 195, 211, 241, 537
BASF, 75
Baskin-Robbins, 366, 375, 378
Baxter International, 85, 513
Bayer AG, 394
Bectol, 377
Bedrest, 404
Beijing Automotive Works, 400
Beijing Jeep, 400
Belgian Lace Products (BLP), 553–554
BellSouth, 351
Benetton, 506, 507
Benetton and Loblaws, 376
Benetton Group SpA, 499–500
Ben & Jerry’s Homemade Inc., 157, 469
Bershka, 499
Best Buy, 158, 245, 368, 379
Betamax, 390
Bethlehem Steel, 588, 589
BHP Billiton, 436
Bick’s Pickle, 237
Bic Pen Company, 346–347, 473, 487
Big Boy, 479
BlackBerry, 447
Blackstone Group, 195
BMW, 505
BMW, 189–190, 192, 330, 340–341, 394, 472, 485,
503, 505, 538
Body Shop, 157
Boeing, 118, 150, 186, 190, 199, 281, 291,
322–323, 339, 365, 390, 393, 400, 427, 531
Bosch Siemens Hausergeräte, 291, 324, 325, 510
B & Q, 368
Bridgestone Corporation, 375
Brink’s, 80
Britannia Industries Ltd., 406
British Airport Authority, 86
British Airways, 86, 225, 234, 376, 388–389, 393,
414, 416, 433, 500, 513, 525
British American Tobacco, 489
British Commonwealth, 211
British East India Company, 31
British Petroleum (BP), 86, 150–151, 153, 158,
166–167, 366, 489, 500, 504, 505–506, 508,
513
British Telecom, 86, 350, 516
Brunner Mond Group, 383
BSkyB, 110
Buenavista, 345
Buicks, 396
Burberry’s, 38
Businessweek, 465
C
C&A, 468
Cadbury PLC, 32, 225, 380, 522
Caimens Group, 309
Caxia Economica Federal, 72
Calpis, 490
Calvin Klein, 346
Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, 564
Canadian International Trade Tribunal, 281–282
Canal Plus, 276
Canon, 369, 388, 518
CARE, 163
Cargill, 143
Carlyle Group, 195
Carnation, 421
Carrefour, 87, 275, 328, 522
Cartoon Network, 328
Casabella, 511
Casino Computer Company, 344
Caterpillar, 81, 95, 118, 179, 190, 199, 200, 262,
340, 399, 474, 479, 549
Cathay Pacific, 339, 393, 525
CCTV, 27
Cendsris BSC, 377
Central Asia Regional Economic Co-operation, 215
Central Reserve Bank of El Salvador, 228
Cephalon, 226
Cereal Partners Worldwide (CPW), 387, 388
Cesky Telecom, 351
Chang International Airport Services, 358
Charles of the Ritz, 484
Chateau Lafite Rothschild, 194
Chateau Montelena, 194
Chamet, 355
Cheesecake Factory, The, 418
Chevron, 99, 151, 172, 174, 587
Chevron Phillips Chemical Company, 75
Chicago Food and Beverage Company (CFB Co.),
584–585
Chicago Mercantile Exchange, 245
China Cheng Xin International Credit Rating
Company, 390
China Daily, 104
China Eastern, 393
China Investment Corporation (CIC), 195, 209
ChinaOne, 390
China Mobile, 261, 401
China Movie Channel, 392
China National Aero-Technology Import and
Export Company, 85
China National Petroleum Company, 201
China Newcom, 351
China Telecom, 261, 401
Chiat/Day, 531
China West Airport Group, 358
China Unicom, 261, 351, 401
Chinese National Offshore Oil Company (CNOOC),
104
Chittagong University, 588
Chivas Regal, 484
Chobani, 486
Christian Dior, 360
Chrysler, 228, 272, 299, 422, 429
Cigna, 389–390
Cisco, 64, 143, 261
Citicorp, 255
Citigroup, 163, 195, 377
Citrovita, 201
Clairol, 79
Clinique, 484
CNN, 135
Coca-Cola Company, 27, 28, 36, 67, 327, 346, 374,
399–400, 471, 472, 474–477, 481, 484, 485,
487, 493, 567
Colgate-Palmolive Company, 36, 90–91, 471,
486, 488
Collins & Aikman, 237
Collin Street Bakery, 273
Colombia Telecommunicaciones, 350
Compagnie Générale des Eaux, 377
Compania de Telefonos de Chile, 350
Conservation Alliance, 150
Conservation Corporation of Africa, 153
Constellation Brands, 365
Cooperacor, 398
Hyatt Corporation, 153
Hycrete Inc., 365
Hynix, 191, 337, 347
Hyundai Group, 64, 331, 347, 367, 377
IESB Business School, 29
IGE Botánica SA, 79
IHP, 418
Ikea, 201, 321, 333, 334–335, 337, 398, 461–462
IMAX, 389
Imperial Chemical Industries PLC, 469
Indian Rare Earths Ltd., 276
Inditex, 148, 499
Indo-Rama Synthetic Fibers, 536–537
Industrial Development Agency Ireland, 545–555
Infiniti, 420
Ingersoll-Rand, 201
Inland Revenue, 551
Institutes of Chartered Accountants, 93
Intel, 64, 187, 191, 337, 510, 564
Inter-American Development Bank, 214
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, 213, 232
International Computers, Ltd. (ICL), 403
International Development Association (IDA), 213, 214
International Finance Corporation (IFC), 213, 214, 377
International Labor Organization, 468
International Monetary Fund (IMF), 75, 104, 196, 213, 215, 299, 538
International Olympic Committee (IOC), 27, 33
International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 516
International Red Cross, 33, 163
International Trade Administration (ITA), 493
International Trade Administration (ITA), 281
Inmate Brands, 468
ITT, 345
J
J. Crew, 484
Jaguar, 226, 510
Jaguar Land Rover, 383
JAL, 500
Japan Airlines, 226, 390, 393, 525
Japanese Coast Guard, 104
Japan Marketing Services, 492
Jardine Matheson Holdings, Ltd., 31, 210
J.C. Penney, 92, 376, 509
Jiangsu Five Star Appliance Co., 379
Johnson & Johnson, 471, 572
J. Crew, 484
Japo, 508
Madame Tussauds’ Wax Museum, 109
Maersk Line, 502
Magnat International, 507
Manchester City, Premier League team, 37
Mantrax, 423
Manufacturing Marvel, 511
Marc Rich & Co., 532
Marks & Spencer, 205, 275, 346, 467, 468, 492
Marriott International, 33, 393
Mars, Inc., 481
Marvel Comics, 481
MAS Holdings Ltd., 467, 468
Massimo Dutti, 499
MasterCard, 530
Mast Industries, 467, 468
Matsushita Electric, 191, 255, 335, 394, 421, 577
Mattel, 393
Max Hospital, 447
Maxus Energy Corporation, 380
Mazda, 104, 272, 402, 421, 449, 482, 509
McKinsey & Company, 476
Médecins Sans Fronteries, 163
Mengui, 405
Mercedes-Benz, 224, 329, 332, 337, 359, 378, 485, 538, 564
Merkel, 158–159, 362, 484
Merrill Lynch, 253, 255, 545, 580
MetaLife, 159
Metro, 328, 522
Michelin, 432, 503
Microsoft, 202, 336, 555
Midrex Technologies Inc., 76
Midas Corporation, 377
Millennium Pharmaceuticals, 394
Ministry of Economy, Trade, and Industry, 266–267
Ministry of Finance, 125
Ministry of International Trade and Industry (MITI), 266–267
Minnesota Mining & Manufacturing (3M), 577
Minolta, 368, 388
Minute Maid, 143
Mitac International, 189
Mitsubishi, 158, 204, 390, 394, 400, 493, 532
Mittelstand, 57
Mobil Oil, 162, 587
Molycorp, 276
Monsanto, 190
Montblanc, 472
Moorfield, 394
Motel 30, 344
Motorola, 90, 148, 151, 261, 350, 409, 572
Movistar, 350
MTV, 135
MultiChoice, 110
Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (MIGA), 213, 214
N
Naa-dwijk, 177
Nanfang South China Motor Corporation, 399
Nasdaq Stock Market, 195
National Assembly of Vietnam, 104
National Bank of Ethiopia, 277
National Basketball Association, 485
National Football League, 492
National Geographic, 495
National Hockey League, 237
National Institute for Mental Health and Neurosciences (NIMHANS), 447
National Institute of Industrial Property, 79
National Resource Defense Council, 398
National Semiconductor, 187
National Trade Data Bank, 493
NatSteel, 383
NBC, 27
Nestlé Corporation, 87, 143, 144, 156, 202, 254, 335, 387, 390, 391, 395, 402, 403, 421, 425, 471, 486, 502, 564
Nestlé-Ráwntre, 425
New Balance, 399
New United Motor Manufacturing, Inc. (NUMMI), 392, 396
New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), 97
New York Times, 148
Nike, 123, 363, 376, 398, 467, 472, 474, 475, 480
Nikon, 346, 388
Nintendo Company, 372
Nippon Steel, 291
Nippon Telephone and Telegraph, 394
Nokia Corporation, 64, 201, 341, 342
Nomura Securities, 253, 545, 567
Nordstrom, 508
Novica, 495–496
Nucor Corp., 73
Nucor Steel, 589–591
O
OAO AvtoVAZ, 401
OAO Lebedyansky, 226, 379
OAO Yukos, 83
OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION (OSHA), 166
Office of the U. S. Trade Representative, 285
Old Navy, 473
Oleg Cassini, 374
Olivetti, 402
Olympus, 160
Omnicom, 358
OMX AB, 195
ONGC Videsh, 104
Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), 44
Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), 220–221
Oriental Land Company, 327
Oxfam, 280
P
P. F. Chang, 418
Pace, Inc., 365
Pacific Enterprises, Inc., 405
Pan Am, 389
Panasonic, 27, 28, 204, 343
Pantene, 471
Paramount Pictures, 392, 393
Parc Asterix, 328
Paris Air Show, 489
Paragonia, 157, 159
Peerless Manufacturing, 506
Pemex, 482
Pentagon, 340
People’s Liberation Army (PLA), 261
PepsiCo, 36, 373, 374, 379, 391, 427, 480, 493, 544, 572
PETRONAS of Malaysia, 172
Petron Corporation, 379
Pitzer, 537
Philadelphia Exchange, 245
Philip Morris, 489
Philips, 97, 116, 149, 500, 564
Philips Electronics, 516
Philips Industries, 324
Philips Petroleum, 577
Pilkington PLC, 85
Pilsbury, 118
Pinkberry, 418
Pioneer Corporation, 343
Pirelli SpA, 291, 344, 356
Piexar, 345
Pizza Hut, 167–169, 375
PKL of Switzerland, 531
Plant-Tech Concrete Solutions, 101
Plaza Hotel, 219
Poland Springs, 425
Polar SA, 324
Porsche, 192, 195, 501
Pottery Barn, 418
PPG, 396
Prada, 321
PriceWaterhouseCooper, 513
Procter & Gamble (P&G), 36, 114, 153, 190, 202, 283, 357, 469, 471, 479–480, 491–492, 537
ProMark Associates, 365
ProQuest, 136
Proview Technology, 79
Province of Ontario, 255
Prudential Insurance, 300, 571
Pulbicis Groupe SA, 358
Q
Qantas, 393, 514, 525
Qatar Investment Authority, 195
Qatar Petroleum International, 391
Quaker Oats, 567
Quality Cosis, 580
R
R. J. Reynolds, 489
Raba, 400
Rainforest Alliance, 398
Ralph Lauren, 468
Range Rover, 510
Raychem, 572
Regal Springs Tilapia, 157
Renault, 299, 465–466
Restez, Inc., 404
Retail Council of Canada, 237
Rewe Zentral AG, 305
Rijnsburg, 177
Rio Tinto, 390, 436
RMC Group, 379
Rockefeller Center, 234
Rollex, 321, 346, 472, 474, 501, 535, 536
Rolls-Royce, 79
Round Island One Ltd., 555
Royal Ahold NV, 144
Royal Dutch Shell, 31, 52, 75, 99, 152, 161, 163, 174, 377, 424, 455–456, 500
Rubbermaid, 402
Sadara Chemical Company, 392
Safeway, 491
Salt Group, 403
Saks Fifth Avenue, 372, 474, 508, 535–536
Samhs Hotels Pvt Ltd., 393
Samsung Group, 27, 28, 36, 64, 191, 202, 262, 291, 299, 337, 342, 378, 396, 409, 412, 541
Sanula, 401
Sanrio, 253
São Paulo, 350
Sara Lee, 468
SAS, 393
Saturn, 396
Satyam Computer Services, 144
Saudi Arabian Oil Company, 392
Saadi Aramco, 377
Schlumberger, 565
Seagate Technology, 291
Sears, 507
Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 150
7–Eleven, 432
Shanghai Automotive Industry Corporation (SAIC), 87, 396, 397
Sharp Corporation, 337, 392
Sherriett Corporation, 85
Shin Corporation, 195
Showa Shell Sekiyu KK, 424
Siam Cement, 361
Siemens, 150, 162, 237, 261, 299, 400, 458, 563
SI Group, 148
Singapore Airlines, 36, 344, 393, 525, 534
Six Flags, 339
Sky Television, 403
SlimFast Foods Company, 469
Slimline, Ltd., 467–468
Softel, 344
Sony, 33, 64, 143, 158, 191, 195, 204, 245, 291, 335, 343, 368, 390, 392, 409, 450, 453, 459, 500, 505, 545, 577
Sony Records, 505
Sorbonne, 224
Source Perrier SA, 517
South African Airways, 393
Sports Illustrated, 201
Swangyong Oil Refining Company, 64, 379
Starbucks, 92, 201, 359, 361, 418
State Trading Corporation of India, 531
St. Suisse Microelectromechanique et d’Horlogerie SA (SMH), 473–474, 492
Stetson, 485
Subway, 321
Suning, 368
Suzuki, 401
Swatch, 474
Swiss National Bank, 209
Symantec, 261
Synclayer, 45
Sysco, 157
Target, 270–271, 346, 472, 474, 507
Tata Consultancy Services, 377, 382
Tata Global Beverages, 383
Tata Group, 382–383, 471
Tata Motors, 226
Tate & Lyle, 542–543
Tatung, 189
Teletarus, 350
Telecom Italia, 351
Telefónica de España, 349–350
Telefónica del Peru, 350
Telefónica SA, 349–351, 358
Telefonos de Mexico, 54
Telemundo, 114
Temasek Holdings of Singapore, 195
Terra Networks SA, 350
Tesco, 148, 205, 522
Teva Pharmaceutical Industries, 226, 362
Textco, 151, 587
Texas Instruments (TI), 92, 337, 417, 519
Texas Roadhouse, 418
Texttron, 345
TF1, 276
Thomas Cook, 211
Thomas J. Lipton Co., 391
3Com Communications, 261
Tianjin Datian W Group, 403
Tiffany & Co., 80
Timberland, 157
Time, 201
Time Warner, 328
Timex, 347, 472, 473, 474, 508
TNT, 340
Tokyo Auto Mart, 489
Tokyo Disneyland, 327, 328, 337, 374
Tokyo Stock Exchange, 139
Tokyo University, 124
Toll Dnata Airport Services (TDAS), 358
Toll Holdings, 358
Tommy Hilfiger, 468
Toon Disney, 328
Toshiba, 143, 191, 204, 265–266, 409, 458
Total, 99, 116, 195
Touchstone, 345
Toyota Tsusho Corporation, 276
Toys ‘R’ Us, 334, 481, 582
Trader Joe’s, 522
Transcom Worldwide SA, 377
Transparency International, 172
TRESemme, 471
Tri-Union Seafood, 423
Tropicana, 143
TRW Steering Systems, 510
Tsinghua Tongfang, 322
Turkish Airlines, 393
20th Century Fox, 109, 393
Twinng & Company, 210
Twitter, 191
Tyco, 94, 144
Tyson Foods, 329–330
COMPANY INDEX

U
Umicro, 158
Unilever, 31, 36, 190, 202, 299, 335, 357, 391, 399, 422–423, 468–469, 471–472, 492
Unilever N.V., 471
Unilever PLC, 471
United Airlines, 388–389, 393, 500, 525, 582
United Distillers PLC, 425
United Nations General Assembly, 53
U.S. Air, 389
U.S. Central Intelligence Agency, 74
U.S. Court of Appeals, 163
U.S. Customs Service, 271, 285
U.S. Department of Commerce, 273, 281, 489, 492, 526
U.S. Department of Defense, 323
U.S. Department of Energy, 104, 166
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 158
U.S. Federal Reserve Bank, 209, 217, 228
U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 84–85, 90–91, 274
U.S. Internal Revenue Service (IRS), 96, 552, 555, 587
U.S. International Trade Commission (ITC), 281, 286
U.S. Justice Department, 150
U.S. Small Business Association, 486
U.S. Supreme Court, 163
U.S. Tax Court, 587
U.S. Treasury, 209, 228
United Steelworkers, 283
Universal Studios, 339
Univision, 114
Upjohn and Pharmacia, 567

V
Vale, 276, 436
Vale Canada, Ltd., 360
Van Camp Seafood, 423
Vectis, 388
Verizon, 567
Veuve Clicquot, 355
Victoria’s Secret, 376, 418, 467, 468
VISA, 530
Vizio, 64, 291, 347
Voestalpine, 76
Volkswagen, 195, 262, 331, 358
Volvo, 30
Vox Africa, 110

W
Wall Street Journal, 367
Walmart, 148, 205, 275, 398, 474, 481, 510, 522
Walt Disney World, 327
Wanda Cinema Line, 389
Waterford Wedgwood, 346
Weyerhaeuser, 397
Wharton, 468
Whirlpool Corporation, 149, 237, 323–325, 356, 477, 567
Whistler Radar, 433
Whole Foods, 522
Wickes, 152

Wicresoft, 322
Williams-Sonoma, 418
WorldCom, 94, 144
World Health Organization, 144
World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), 80
World Trade Center, 340
World Trade Organization (WTO), 28, 37, 274, 309, 514
World Wildlife Foundation, 157
World Wildlife Fund, 398
WPP, 358

X
Xerox, 160, 187, 518
Xi’an Dnata Aviation Services Co. Ltd., 358
Xstrata, 158, 436–437

Y
Yafod International, 475
Yahoo! Inc., 80
Yale University, 217, 251, 310
Yamaha, 91–92
Yamauchi Securities, 580
Yili, 27
Yoplait, 486
YouTube, 109, 139
YPF SA, 380
Yum Brands, 167–169, 258

Z
Zara, 499–501, 513
Zojirushi, 45
Subject Index

A
absolute advantage, 180–181
acceptance, 133, 528
accommodative stance, 157
Accord on Fire and Building, 165
accounting. See also balance of payments (BOP) accounting system capital markets and, impact on, 97–98
Chinese, 95
control, systems for, 432
environment of, 92–98
reserves of, use of, 96–97
Accounting Standards Board, 93
accounts
balance of, 225
capital, 225–226
clearinghouse, 532
official reserves, 226–227
opening, 527
records of, 223–225
acculturation, 136, 569, 569f
All-China Federation of Trade Unions (ACFTU), 559
Alien Tort Claims Act, 163, 164
Alliance for Bangladesh Worker Safety, 165
alliances. See also international strategic alliances comprehensive, 391–392
financial, 393
importance of, 398
learning potential of, 396
marketing, 392–393
OneWorld, 393
partners with, relative safeness of, 395–396
production, 392
research & development, 394
SkyTeam, 393
strategic, 388
alternatives evaluating, 457
foreign markets, 356–359
identifying, 456
to international strategic management, 332–336
selecting, 457
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 93
American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, 276, 286, 318
analysis of foreign markets, 356–360
public choice, 267–269
SWOT, 338–341
Andean Community, 313
Anglo-Saxon approach, 161
Anti-Bribery Convention of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, 163
antidumping regulations, 282–283
ANZCERTA, See Australia–New Zealand Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement (ANZCERTA)
Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) agreement
advantage, 180
comparative, 181–184
competitive, 191, 202, 391
home field, 363
internationalization, 200, 361–362
location, 200, 360–361
ownership, 199–200, 336, 360
advertising
foreign, 487
global, 487
local, 487
medium of, 486
message of, 485
promotion and, 485–487
advised letter of credit, 529
affiliated banks, 253
Africa
marketplaces in, 68
regional trading blocs, initiatives for establishing, 315–316
AFTA. See ASEAN Free Trade Area (AFTA)
age, attitudes towards, 124
agglomeration economies, 194
aggressive goal behaviors, 134
agreeableness, 443
Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights, 296
agreements
advance pricing, 552
boundaries of, 373
duration of, 373–374
free trade, 311–315
international licensing, boundaries of, 373
Jamaica, 218
shared management, 399
Trade-Related Investment Measures, 296
Alien Tort Claims Act, 163, 164
All-China Federation of Trade Unions (ACFTU), 559
Alliance for Bangladesh Worker Safety, 165
alliances. See also international strategic alliances comprehensive, 391–392
financial, 393
importance of, 398
learning potential of, 396
marketing, 392–393
OneWorld, 393
partners with, relative safeness of, 395–396
production, 392
research & development, 394
SkyTeam, 393
strategic, 388
alternatives evaluating, 457
foreign markets, 356–359
identifying, 456
to international strategic management, 332–336
selecting, 457
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 93
American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, 276, 286, 318
analysis of foreign markets, 356–360
public choice, 267–269
SWOT, 338–341
Andean Community, 313
Anglo-Saxon approach, 161
Anti-Bribery Convention of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, 163
antidumping regulations, 282–283
ANZCERTA, See Australia–New Zealand Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement (ANZCERTA)
APA. See advance pricing agreement (APA)
APEC. See Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) arbitrage, 246
covered-interest, 250
geographic, 249
of goods, 246–247
markets, 246–251
of money, 247–251
three-point, 249
two-point, 249
arbitrageurs, 243
arbitration, 88–89
area, organizational design of, 413–414
arguments
industry-level, 263–266
infant industry, 264
national defense, 263
Arms Control Export Act, 85
arm’s length test, 551
ASEAN, See Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN)
ASEAN Free Trade Area (AFTA), 314
Asia
corporate social responsibility, approach to, 161
marketplaces in, 61–67
Asian contagion, 221
Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC), 315
Asia-Pacific region, free trade agreements in, 313–315
assets
foreign, 33, 226
offsetting, 536–537
ownership of, 226
revaluation of, 95–96
valuation of, 95–96
assigned arrangement, 400
Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN), 310, 314–315
attitudes, 123–125
about education, 124–125
about time, 124
culture and, 123–125, 445–446
defined, 445
towards age, 124
towards status, 125
Australia marketplace, 61–63
Australia–New Zealand Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement (ANZCERTA), 314
authoritarianism, 445
autonomous leadership, 454
autonomy, loss of, 402–403
Auto Pact, 228
B
backtranslation, 118
Baker Plan, 221
balance of payments (BOP) accounting system, 210, 222–232, 246
capital account in, 225–226
current account records in, 223–225
deficits in, 230–232
ersors and omissions in, 227
major components of, 223–227
official reserves account in, 226–227
standards for, 225
surpluses and, 230–232
United States, 234–235, in 227–230
balances on merchandise, 224
official settlements, 231
on services, 224
of working capital, 540–541
balance sheet
expatriate, 575, 576f
hedge, 537
banker’s acceptance, 528
banks/banking
affiliated, 253
branch, 253
commercial, 253
foreign exchange market, role in, 241–244
international, 252–253
investment, 253
regional development, 214–215
subsidiary, 253
barter, 531
beggar-thy-neighbor policies, 213
behaviors
adaptive, 111
aggressive goal, 134
ethical, 144
individual, 442–448
international control, aspects of, 433–434
learned, 110
passive goal, 134
unethical, 144
benchmarking, 518
benefits packages, 246
Benelux nations, 300
Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works, 90
“Big Five” personality traits, 442–444
Big Ten countries, 38
bilateral netting, 541
bill of exchange, 527
bill of lading, 527
board of managers, 582
boards of directors, 420–421
Bollywood, 109–110
Bolsa Família, 72–73
border tax adjustments (BTAs), 286
B-O-T project, 377
boundaryless global economy, 29
bounded rationality, 456
BPO. See business process outsourcing (BPO)
Brady Plan, 221
branch banks, 253
brand names, 481
Breton Woods system, 213–218
dollar-based gold standard and, 216
end of, 216–218
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and, 213–215
International Monetary Fund and, 215
restoring, 222
Bribery Act, 164
BRIC countries, 38
brokers, 370
brown goods, 323
BSA. See Business Software Alliance (BSA)
BTAs. See border tax adjustments (BTAs)
Buddhism, 120
budgeting for international capital, 543–545
bunkering, 174
bureaucratic laws, 83–84
business. See international business
business activity, international, 31–34
business process outsourcing (BPO), 377, 447
Business Software Alliance (BSA), 90, 321
business strategies
for international marketing, 472–474
for international strategic management, 345–347
buy-back, 531
C
CAFTA-DR. See Central America-Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR)
Cairns Group, 295
call centers, 447
call option, 245
Canada marketplaces, 52–53
Canadian dollar, 237–238
CAP. See Common Agricultural Policy (CAP)
capacity planning, 513
capital
export of the services of, 224
flight, 52, 227
import of the services of, 225
international, 543–545
international investment, 545–552
working, 540–543
capital account, 225–226
capital budgeting, 543–545
capitalization, 97
capital markets, 97–98
Caribbean Basin Initiative (CBI), 311
Caribbean Community and Common Market, 311
Caribbean marketplaces, 54
carry trade, 252
Casino de Dijon case, 303
Caterpillar Fundamental English (CFE), 118
Cayman Islands, 550–551, 551m
CBI. See Caribbean Basin Initiative (CBI)
CCP. See Chinese Communist Party (CCP)
CCTs. See conditional cash transfers (CCTs)
CEMAC. See Economic and Monetary Community of Central Africa (CEMAC)
Central America-Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR), 311
Central America marketplaces, 54
Central American Common Market, 311
Central Asia marketplaces, 58–60
compensation, 420, 563
centralized cash management, 540
Central Powers, 211
CEO. See chief executive officer (CEO)
certificates, 529
CFC. See controlled foreign corporation (CFC)
CFE. See Caterpillar Fundamental English (CFE)
CFO. See chief financial officer (CFO)
chaebol, 64, 215, 382, 412
dechanging circumstances, 402–403
demand, 191
factor, 191
channels of distribution, 491–493
charismatic leadership, 454
chief executive officer (CEO), 94, 130, 331, 409, 511
chief financial officer (CFO), 94
China
accounting in, 95
Japanese competing in markets in, 331
manufacturing in, 258–259
marketplace in, 65–66
Chinese Communist Party (CCP), 401
Christianity, 120
Christian theology, 123
CIS. See Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS)
civilization, cradle of, 68
civil wars, 82
civil society, 161
classical country-based trade theories, 179–186
absolute advantage, 180–181
comparative advantage, 181–184
mercantilism, 179–180
relative factor endowments, 185–187
Clean Water Act, 166
clearinghouse accounts, 532
cluster/clustering, 126, 194
co-decision procedure, 303
code of ethics, 149–150
codetermination, 582–583
cohesion funds, 307
collective bargaining, 582
collectivism, 129
comity, principle of, 88
commercial banking, 253
commercial customers, 241
commitment, organizational, 446
commodity chips, 191
Common Agricultural Policy (CAP), 302
common laws, 82
common markets, 298, 305–309
Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS), 60
communication, 118–120
culture and, 118–120
gift-giving as form of, 119–120
hostility as form of, 119–120
nonverbal, 118–119
communism, 401
comparative advantage, 181–184
with money, 182–184
theory of, 181
comparative labor relations, 581–582
compatibility of partners, 395
compensation, 573–577
determining, 373
equity in, 576–577
for expatriate managers, 573–574
in international business, 573–577
for nonmanagerial employees, 580–581
competition
language as, weapon as, 114–116
within markets, 358
national, 110
with rivals, 36
competitive advantage
exploitation of, 202
international strategic alliances and, 391
theory of, 191
compliance
ethical, 158
legal, 157–158
managing, 157–159
social responsibility and, 157–159
compound tariffs, 270
cost-of-living allowance, 574
comprehensive alliances, 391–392
conditional cash transfers (CCTs), 72
costs and, trade-offs between, 505
decentralization of, 563
defined, 422
esential techniques for, 432–433
external locus of, 444
framework for, 342
generic organizational, 425
internal locus of, 444
international, 428–431, 433–434
international managerial staffing needs and, 563
international strategic management, 425
formulation for, 342
locus of, 444
managing, 428–434
numerical export, 273–274
operations, 427–428
organizational, 425–427
organizational design, function in, 422–434
performance, standards for, 428
planning process, 425
regulatory, 277
resistance to, 433–434
responsibility center, 425
statistical process, 517
strategic, 422–425
ternational strategic management, 425
controlled foreign corporation (CFC), 549
convergence criteria, 307
conversion costs, 541–542
corporate social responsibility (CSR), 151–156
Anglo-Saxon approach to, 161
Asian approach to, 161
Continental European approach to, 161–162
cross-cultural contexts of, 151–156
economic mission and, 152
general social welfare and, 154
international contexts of, 151–156
managing, 161–162
natural environment and, 152–153
sustainability and, 152–153
private sector, 343–345
individual, 252
nuclear, 277
Anglo-Saxon approach to, 161
Asian approach to, 161
Continental European approach to, 161–162
cross-cultural contexts of, 151–156
economic mission and, 152
general social welfare and, 154
international contexts of, 151–156
managing, 161–162
natural environment and, 152–153
sustainability and, 152–153
prime agency, 252
private sector, 343–345
costs
control and trade-offs between, 505
conversion, 541–542
flexibility and trade-off between, 506–507
of foreign markets, 359
opportunity, 181
production, 201
risks and trade-offs between, 505–506
of market, 199
cotton subsidies, 280
Council of the European Union, 301–302
counterpurchase, 531
countertrade, 530–533, 532f
countervailing duty (CVD), 282
countries
Big Ten, 38
BRIC, 38
developing, 53
funds, 255
home, 32
host, 32
location, influence on decision about, 507–510
tax-income, 53
newly industrialized, 63
country similarity theory, 189
Country Studies, 136
country similarity theory, 189
countries
countervailing duty (CVD), 282
countries
countervailing duty (CVD), 282
countries
cultural cluster approach, 126
See corporate social responsibility (CSR)
cross rate, 249
cross-cultural teams, managing, 459
cross-cultural literacy, 136
credit cards, 530
credit
credit checking, 526
credit cards, 530
cross-cultural literacy, 136
cross-cultural teams, managing, 459
cross rate, 249
CSR. See corporate social responsibility (CSR)
cultural cluster approach, 126
cultural distance, 29
cultural multinational corporations, 87
culture
attitudes across, 123–125, 445–446
characteristics of, 110–111
communication and, 118–120
convergence of, 135
corporate, 151
cultural cluster approach to, 126
defined, 110
descriptive model across, 457
dimensions of, 127–135
elements of, 111–125
high-context, 125–126
international management, differences in, 135–137
Internet, impact on, 110
interrelated, 111
in Japan, 112
language and, 114–118
low-context, 125–126
motivational processes across, 449
need-based models across, 449–450
new, understanding, 135–136
normative model across, 456–457
perception across, 446–447
personality differences across, 442–445
process-based models across, 450
product policy, influences of, 479–480
reinforcement model across, 451
religion and, 120–123
role of, 108–137
shared, 111
shock of, 569
social responsibility and, 159
social structure of, 111–114
stress across, 447
values across, 123–125, 448–449
currency, 136
currency. See also money
choice of, 526
conversion costs of, 541–542
convertible, 216, 243
government, 228
future, 245
global, 209–210
hard, 243
inconvertible, 244
invoicing, 52
markets, 246–251
nontariff barriers, controls as, 277
options for, 245
soft, 244
Swiss francs, 535–536
transaction, 241
value of, 243, 538, 539m
current account balance, 225
current account records, 223–225
customers
access to, 201
commercial, 241
mobility of, 202
organizational design for, 416
services, role in, 514
customized/customization
in international marketing, 475–478
products, 479
customs union, 298
cultural cluster approach to, 126
CVD. See countervailing duty (CVD)
cybersquatters, 80

D
date draft, 528
debt crisis, 220–222
decentralization, 420, 563
decision making, 455–458. See also culture; decisions
defined, 455
descriptive model of, 455
demographic, 455
deferral rules, 549
defensive stance, 156–157
See also decisions.
decisions
of banks, 214–215
deflection of trade, 297
deferral rules, 549
degressed
conditions for, 191
curve for, 239
derived, 238
factors for, 201–202
demography, 43–46
development, 570–572
demurrage, 529
deployment of resources, 337
derived demand, 238
descriptive model, 455, 457
designed. See also organizational design
area, 413–414
customer, 416
functional, 414–416
global matrix, 416–418
H-form, 412
M-form, 412
product, 412–413
developing countries, 53
development, 570–572
defined, 570
economic, 27
of nonmanagerial employees, 580
sustainable, 153
deviations, responding to, 430–431
differences/differentiation, 345–346
diff of goods, 185, 189
in legal environments, systems of, 80–84
direct exchange rates, 239
direct exporting, 365–366
direct quote, 239
direct sales, 491
dirty float, 218
dispute resolution, 88–89
dissatisfaction of jobs, 445
distance, 29
distinctive competence, 336
distribution, 490–493
defined, 490
domestic orientation, 84–85
domestic sales requirement, 296
doubly Irish, 555
drafts
date, 528
defined, 527
shift, 528, 528f
sign, 528
time, 528
dual-use products, 85
dumping, 282
Dunning’s eclectic theory, 199–200
Dutch Sandwich, 555
E
earnings, distribution of, 402
Eastern Europe marketplaces, 58–60
Eastern Orthodox, 120
EC. See European Community (EC)
economic and monetary union (EMU), 307
Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS), 315
economic development programs, 266
economic distance, 29
economy
agglomeration, 194
development of, 202
exposure in, 537–539
growth in, 57
integration into, 297–299
mission in, 152
multinational corporations, impact on host
countries, 87
newly industrialized, 63
product policy, factors of, 480
restructuring of, 58
size of, 189–190, 329
of scope, 190–191, 329
union, 298
world, 178–179
ECOWAS. See Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS)
education, attitudes about, 124–125
EEC. See European Economic Community (EEC)
EEZ. See exclusive economic zone (EEZ)
electronic waste, 158
Emancipation of the Niger Delta (MEND), 174
embargo, 85, 274
| Exchange rates, 210 |
| Exchange rate mechanism (ERM), 219 |
| Exchange-endangered species protection, 293–294 |
| Energy, 185–187 |
| Green, 285–287 |
| Energy market, 75–77 |

**European Community (EC)**, 300

**European Commission**, 302

**Eurodollars**, 254

**Eurocurrency**, 254

**ethnocentric staffing model**, 564–565

**Ethics**, 144–146

**Errors and omissions**, 227

**European Central Bank, 308**

**European Commission, 302**

**European Economic Area, 310**

**European Economic Community (EEC), 300**

**European Council, 301**

**European Court of Justice, 302–303**

**European Economic Area, 310**

**European Economic Community (EEC), 300**

**European Free Trade Association, 310**

**European Monetary System (EMS)**, 219

**European Parliament, 302**

**European Union, 299–310**

**Challenges of, 318–319**

**Common market in, 305–309**

**Council of the, 301–302**

**European Commission of, 302**

**European Court of, 301**

**European Court of Justice of, 302–303**

**European Parliament of, 302**

**governing, 301–305**

**legislative process of, 303–305**

**lobbying, 306**

**evaluations, 457**

**exchange, 158**

**bill of, 527**

**foreign, 534–539**

**exchange rate mechanism (ERM), 219**

**Exchange rates, 210, 219**

**Flexible, 218–219**

**Direct, 239**

**Exclusive economic zone (EEZ), 49, 103**

**Exit interview, 579**

**Exon-Florio Act, 196**

**Expatriate managers, 573–576**

**Benefits packages for, 574–576**

**Compensations, 573–574**

**Expatriates, 564**

**Balance sheet and, 575, 576f**

**Failure of, 568**

**Expropriation, 569–570**

**Experience curve, 191**

**Exploitation of competitive advantages, 202**

**Export brokers, 370**

**Export department, 411, 562**

**Export/exporting, 364–370**

**Defined, 32**

**Direct, 365–366**

**Distribution issues with, 368–369**

**Financing programs for, 281**

**To foreign markets, 364–370**

**Forms of, 365–367**

**Government policies on, 367**

**Indirect, 365**

**Intermediaries for, 369–370**

**International business activity and, 32**

**Licensing for, 529**

**Logistical considerations for, 368**

**Marketing concerns with, 367**

**Merchandise, 224**

**Numerical controls of, 273–274**

**Promotion and, 72**

**Ratios of, 275–276**

**Services of capital, 224**

**Tariffs on, 270**

**Export-Import Bank of the United States (Eximbank), 281**

**Export management company (EMC), 369**

**Export Trade Act, 369**

**Exposure, 357–359**

**Transaction, 534–537, 536t**

**Translation, 537**

**Expropriation, 86**

**External locus of control, 444**

**Extraterritoriality, 85**

**Extraversion, 444**

**F**

**Facilities, 325**

**International banking, 254**

**Investments in, 506**

**Factor conditions, 191**

**Factor endowments, 185**

**Factors/factoring, 527**

**Demand, 201–202**

**Influencing foreign direct investment, 200–202**

**Political, 202**

**Supply, 200–201**

**Fair trade, 262**

**Families, 113**

**Nuclear, 113**

**Social structure of, 113**

**FASB. See U.S. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)**

**FCPA. See Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)**

**FDI. See Foreign direct investment (FDI)**

**FIFO. See First in, first out (FIFO)**

**Filing, 109–110**

**Finances/financing**

**Exporting, programs for, 281**

**International, management of, 524–525**

**International trade, issues in, 525–534**

**Financial alliances, 393**

**Financial leases, 97**

**Flexible, 218–219**

**Direct, 239**

**Fixed, 210, 219**

**Rivalry of, 192–193**

**Structure of, 192–193**

**First in, first out (FIFO), 96**

**First-tier suppliers, 507**

**Fixed exchange rates, 210, 219**

**Flexibility, 192–193**

**Costs and, trade-off between, 506–507**

**Multinational, 329–330**

**Flexible exchange rates, 218–219**

**Flight capital, 52, 227**

**Float, 211, 218**

**Floating exchange rates, 218**

**Flows of payments, without netting, 541, 541f**

**Focus strategy, 347**

**Follow-ups, 457**

**Foreign advertising, 487**

**Foreign assets, 226**

**Foreign bonds, 254**

**Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), 150, 162, 164**

**Foreign direct investment (FDI), 31, 83, 209, 225, 291, 388**

**Acquisition strategy for, 379–380**

**Defined, 32, 195**

**Factors influencing, 200–202**

**In foreign markets, 378–380**

**Greenfield strategy for, 378–379**

**Growth of, 196–197**

**Joint ventures for, 380**

**United States and, 197–198**

**Foreign exchange, 534–539**

**Defined, 238**

**Economic exposure and, 537–539**

**Economics of, 238–240**

**Rates of, 296**

**Risks of, 534–539, 542–543**

**Transaction exposure and, 534–537, 536t**

**Translation exposure and, 537**

**Foreign exchange market. See also foreign markets; markets**

**Banks role in, 241–244**

**Structure of, 241–245**

**Foreign financial assets, 33**

**Foreign firms, laws directly against, 86–87**

**Foreign markets. See also markets**

**Alternative, 356–359**

**Analysis of, 356–360**

**Benefits of, 359**

**Costs of, 359**

**Exporting to, 364–370**

**Foreign direct investment in, 378–380**

**International franchising in, 375–376**

**International licensing for, 370–374**

**Mode of entry into, 360–363**

**Risks of, 360**

**Specialized entry modes for, 376–377**

**Foreign ownership, constraints of, 86–87**

**Foreign portfolio investment (FPI), 33, 195, 225**

**Foreign-service premium, 574**

**Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act, 102**

**Foreign subsidiary income, 549**

**Foreign trade zone (FTZ), 279, 509**

**Forum shopping, 88**

**Forward discount, 245**

**Forward markets, 244–246**

**Forward premium, 33, 195**

**Four Tigers marketplace, 63–65**

**FPL. See Foreign portfolio investment (FPI)**

**Fracking, 75–76**

**Franchisee, 375**

**Franchising, 33, 136**

**Advantages of, 375–376**

**Basic issues with, 375**

**Defined, 375**
franchising (continued)
disadvantages of, 375–376
in foreign markets, 375–376
international, 33, 375–376
free trade, 262, 285–287
free trade agreements, 311–315
in Americas, 311–313
in Asia-Pacific region, 313–315
free trade area, 297
freight forwarders, 370
FTZ. See foreign trade zone (FTZ)
functional alliances, 392–394
functional organizational design, 414–416
functional skills, 563
functional strategy, 347
funds
cohesion, 307
country, 255
sovereign wealth, 70, 195–196
future currency, 245
G
GAAP. See generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)
GATT. See General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)
GDP. See gross domestic product (GDP)
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), 37, 292–295, 296
defined, 270
role of, 292–295
General Agreement on Trade in Services, 296
generalized system of preferences (GSP), 294
generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), 93, 283
general social welfare, 154
generic organizational control, 425
generic staffing model, 565
generic public goods, 249
generic workforce, 289
goodwill, 97
governing/government in European Union, 301–305
taxation by, 549
regulations of, 367, 509
policies of, 367, 509
supranational, 301
taxation by, 549
gray markets, 484
Greek yogurt, 486
green energy, 285–287
greenfield investments, 126
greenfield strategy, 378–379
gross domestic product (GDP), 32, 53, 151, 173, 178, 356
gross national income (GNI), 53
groups, 458–459
defined, 458
social structure of, 113
groups, 382
GSP. See generalized system of preferences (GSP)

H
card currencies, 243
hard loan policy, 214
hardship premium, 574
harmonization, 305
harmonized tariff schedule (HTS), 271
HCNs. See host country nationals (HCNs)
Hecksher-Ohlin theory, 185
hedges, 537–538
Helms-Burton Act, 85–86
H-form design, 412
high-context culture, 125–126
Hinduism, 120
Hiring locally, 563
Hollywood movies, 109–110
home countries, 32
home field advantage, 363
Hong Kong marketplace, 65
hospitality, 119–120
host countries, 32, 87
host country nationals (HCNs), 564
HR. See human resources (HR)
HRM. See human resource management (HRM)
HTS. See harmonized tariff schedule (HTS)
Humean-oriented leadership, 454
human resource management (HRM), 560
human resource management (HRM), 560, 561f
hydro, 418–420
issues related to, 420–422
matrix of, 416–418
of projects, 412–413
of global organizations, 562
product design, 412–413
Global Recession, 318
GLOBE leadership project, 454
GNI. See gross national income (GNI)
internal markets, 305
international rate of return, 544
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD), 213–215
International banking facility (IBF), 254
international banks, 252–253
international bond market, 254–255
international business. See also globalization
international compensation systems in, 573–577
decision making in, 455–458
defined, 28–29, 33
dispute resolution in, 88–89
early era of, 31
ethics in, 144–146
groups in, 458–459
individual behavior in, 442–448
information management in, 518–519
leadership in, 451–454
motivation in, 448–451
overview of, 26–41
performance appraisal in, 573
productivity management in, 515–516
quality management in, 516–518
reasons for studying, 29–30
social responsibility in, 144–146
specialized entry modes for, 376–377
teams in, 458–459
international business activity, 31–34
exporting, 32
importing, 32
international investments, 32–33
other forms of, 33–34
international business transactions, 85–86
international capital budgeting for, 543–545
international rate of return and, 544
markets and, 251–256
net present value and, 543–544
payback period and, 544–545
international capital budgeting, 543–545
international capital market, 251–256
Eurocurrency market and, 254
global equity market and, 255
international banks and, 252–253
international bond market and, 254–255
offshore financial centers and, 255–256
international control, 428–431, 433–434
behavioral aspects of, 433–434
establishing systems of, 428–431
International Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property Rights, 90
international cooperation, 290–316
corporate, 388–389
economic integration and, 297–299
European Union and, 299–310
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, 292–295
regional trading blocs and, 310–316
World Trade Organization, 295–297
international debt crisis, 220–222
International Development Association (IDA), 214
international distribution, 490
international division, 411, 562
international ethics, 162–163
International Finance Corporation (IFC), 214
international financial management, 524–552
foreign exchange and, 534–539
international capital budgeting and, 543–545
international investment capital and, 545–552
international trade and, 525–534
working capital management and, 540–543
international Fisher effect, 251
international franchising. See franchising
international human resource management.
See human resource management (HRM)
international investment, 32–33. See also foreign direct investment (FDI)
defined, 32
overview of, 195–198
theories of, 199–200
types of, 195
international investment capital, 545–552
external sources of, 545–546
internal sources of, 546, 547f
tax havens and, 550–552
transfer pricing and, 547–549
internationalization
scope of, 562–563
International Labor Organization (ILO), 163
international licensing, 33, 370–374
advantages of, 374
agreement boundaries of, 373
basic issues with, 373–374
disadvantages of, 374
international logistics, 510–513
international management, 33, 135–137
of contract, 33
cultural differences and, 135–137
international managerial staffing needs, 562–566
control and, 563
internationalization and, 562–563
staffing philosophy in, 564–565
international managers, developing, 572
international marketing, 470–493
business strategies for, 472–474
customization in, 475–478
distribution in, 490–493
management of, 472–478
marketing mix in, 474
pricing in, 481–484
product policy in, 478–481
promotion in, 485–489
standardization in, 475–478
International Monetary Fund (IMF), 215
international monetary system
Bretton Woods system and, 213–218
defined, 209–210
gold standard and, 210–213
history of, 210–222
international debt crisis and, 220–222
performance of, 218–222
post-World War II conferences on, 219–220
international operations management, 498–519, 501f
complexity of, 502–504
information management and, 518–519
of international service operations, 513–515
nature of, 500–503
production management and, 503–513
productivity management and, 515–516
quality management and, 516–518
strategic context of, 501–502
international order cycle time, 490
international organizational design, 410–411
international service business, 513
international service operations, 513–515
characteristics of, 513–514
international services trade, role of government in, 514
managing, 514–515
international services trade, 514
international strategic alliances, 386–403
international strategic alliances, 386–403
autonomy of, 402–403
benefits of, 389–391
changing circumstances of, 403
international strategic alliances, 386–403
competition and, 391–392
distribution of earnings for, 392–394
implementation of, 395–400
information for, 403
international corporate cooperation and, 388–389
joint management considerations for, 399–400
ownership and, forms of, 396–399
partners for, 395–396, 400–402
pitfalls of, 400–403
scope of, 391–394
international strategic management, 326–347
alternatives to, 332–336
corporate strategy for, 345–347
challenges of, 328–331
components of, 336–337
control framework for, 342
corporate strategy for, 343–345
defined, 328
developing, 338–342
distinctive competence and, 336
environmental scanning and, 338–341
functional strategy for, 347
goals of, 341
levels of, 343–347
mission statement and, 338
resource deployment and, 337
scope of operations and, 337
SWOT analysis and, 338–341
synergy and, 337
tactics of, 341
international strategy implementation, 348
international trade. See also trade/trading barriers to, 270–278
classical country-based theories of, 179–186
defined, 178
export financing programs for, 281
financial issues in, 525–534
foreign trade zones for, 279
growth of, 177–178
modem firm-based theories of, 187–194
Porter’s theory of national competitive advantage and, 191–194
promotion of, 278–281
subsides for, 278–279
tax theory of, 187
world economy and, 178–179
international trading company, 369–370
Internet
culture, impact on, 110
laws of, 80
related culture, 111
interview, 579
intra corporate transfers, 366–367
intra industry trade, 187, 189
investments, 96
investments. See also foreign direct investment (FDI)
banking, 253
in facilities, 506
foreign portfolio, 33, 195, 225
greenfield, 126
international, 32–33, 195–200
long-term foreign portfolio, 225
nontariff barriers, controls as, 277–278
in people, 506
short-term foreign portfolio, 225
in technology, 506
invisible trade, 32, 224
 invoicing currencies, 52
iPhone, 79
IPR. See intellectual property rights (IPR)
irrevocable letter of credit, 529
Islam, 120, 122
Islamic finance, 122
ISO 9000, 516–517
ISO 14000, 516
J
Jamaica Agreement, 218
Japan
China, competing in markets in, 331
culture in, 112
demography in, 112
marketplace in, 61
SUBJECT INDEX 619
Middle East marketplaces, 68–70
MIGA. See Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency
(MIGA)
mining new organizational design, 436–437
mission, in economy, 152
mission statement, 338
MNCs. See multinational corporations (MNCs)
MNE. See multinational enterprises (MNE)
MNO. See multinational organization (MNO)
mobility of customers, 202
social, 113–114
models of decision making, 455–456
descriptive, 455, 457
ethnocentric staffing, 564–565
gEoeconomic staffing, 565
need-based, 449–450
normative, 456–457
polycentric staffing, 565
process-based, 449–450
reinforcement, 449, 451
shareholder, 152
stakeholder, 152
modern firm-based trade theories, 187–194
country similarity theory, 189
new trade theory, 189–191
product life cycle theory, 187–189
money. See also currency
arbitrage of, 247–251
comparative advantage with, 182–184
most favored nation (MFN) principle, 292, 294
motivations, 448–451. See also culture
culture, processes across, 449
defined, 448
need-based models of, 449
proactive, 365
process-based models of, 449
reinforcement models of, 449
pluralism, 82
Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency
(MIGA), 101, 214
multilateral netting, 541
multinational corporations (MNCs), 31, 42
defined, 33
host countries, impact on, 87
legitimate environments, impacts of, 87
multinational enterprises (MNE), 33
multinational flexibility, 329–330
multinational organization (MNO), 33
mutual recognition, 305

N
NAFTA. See North American Free Trade Agreement
(NAFTA)
National Commission on the BP Deepwater Oil
Spill and Offshore Drilling, 166
national competitive advantage theory, 191–194
national competitiveness, 110
national defense argument, 263
nationalization, 86
national trade policies for economic development programs, 266
formulation of, 260–284
industrial, 266–267
industry-level arguments for, 263–266
public choice analysis of, 267–269
rationales for, 262–269
national treatment, 296
National Wool Act, 263
natural environment, 152–153
natural hedge, 538
natural resources, availability of, 201
NaviGation Act, 180
need-based models, 449–450
needs across culture, 448–449
defined, 448
managerial staffing, 562–566
for training, 570–571
neomercantilists, 180
net present value, 543–544
netting, 541
network for distribution, 274–276
informal management, 422
new culture, understanding, 135–136
Newly Independent States (NIS), 60
newly industrialized countries (NICs), 63
newly industrialized economies (NIEs), 63
new product stage, 187
new trade theory, 189–191
defined, 189
economies of scope, achieving, 190–191
experience curve, exploiting of, 191
intellectual property rights, owning, 190
modern firm-based trade theories, 189–191
research & development, investing in, 190
New Zealand marketplace, 61–63
NGOs. See nongovernmental organizations (NGOs)
NICS. See newly industrialized countries (NICs)
NIEs. See newly industrialized economies (NIEs)
NS. See Newly Independent States (NIS)
no,” saying, 118
Nollywood, 109–110
nongovernmental organizations (NGOs), 152, 280, 398
nonmanagerial employees compensation for, 580–581
development of, 580
human resource issues for, 579–581
performance appraisals for, 580–581
recruitment of, 579–580
selection of, 579–580
training of, 580
nonmarket-based transfer pricing, 547–549, 548
non tariff barriers (NTB), 272–278, 292, 367
currency controls as, 277
defined, 272
distribution networks as, restricted access to, 274–276
investment controls as, 277–279
local-purchase requirements as, 276–277
numerical export controls as, 273–274
product and testing standards as, 274
public-sector procurement policies as, 276
quotas as, 272–273
regulatory controls as, 277
types of other, 274
nonverbal communication, 118–119
normal trade relations (NTR), 294
normative models, 456–457
North America marketplaces, 50–55
regional trading blocs and, 310–311
Northwest Passage, 49–50
NTB. See nontariff barriers (NTB)
NTR. See normal trade relations (NTR)
nuclear family, 113
numerical export controls, 273–274
obstructionist stance, 156
OECD. See Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD)
OEM. See original equipment manufacturer (OEM)
official reserves account, 226–227
Official Secrets Act, 82
official settlements balance, 231
offset purchases, 531
offsetting assets, 536–537
offshore financial centers, 255–256
oligarchs, 83
Olympics, 27–28
OneWorld alliance, 393
opening accounts, 527
openness, 58, 444
operating risks, 98
operational hedge, 538
operations controlling, 427–428
management of, 498–519, 501
service, 503, 513–515
OPIC. See Overseas Private Investment Corporation (OPIC)
opportunity cost, 181
options, 245
organizational commitment, 446
organizational control, 425–427
organizational design control in, 422–434
defined, 410
global, 411–422
international, 410–411
mining new, 436–437
organizational practices, 151
organizational structure. See organizational design
Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), 518
organization leadership, 159
organizations economic agents, treatment of, 148–149
employees, treatment of, 146–148
global, 562
location, influence on decision about, 510
multinational, 33
nongovernmental, 152, 280, 398
U-form, 414
orientation goal, 134–135
power, 130–132
social, 127–130
time, 135
uncertainty, 133–134
origin, rules of, 297–298
original equipment manufacturer (OEM), 356
Our Common Future, 153
outsourcing, 377, 447
overall cost leadership strategy, 346–347
Overseas Private Investment Corporation (OPIC), 101, 281
ownership advantage, 199–200, 336, 360
of assets, 226
foreign, 86–87
forms of, 396–399
risks of, 98
P
Panama Canal, 54
paper gold, 217
parallel barter, 531
parallel importing, 484
parent country nationals (PCNs), 101, 281
participative leadership, 454
partners
with alliances, relative safeness of, 395–396
compatibility of, 395
incompatibility of, 400–402
for international strategic alliances, 395–396,
400–402
products and services of, nature of potential, 395
paternalism, 210
passive goal behaviors, 134
patent flooding, 91
payback period, 544–545
payments advanced, 526–527
### Subject Index

**Payments (continued)**
- Flows of, without netting, 541, 541f
- Methods of, 526–533, 533t
- PCNs. See parent country nationals (PCNs)
- Peg, adjustable, 216
- Pegged, defined, 210
- People, investments in, 506
- People’s Republic of China (PRC), 359
- Per capita income, 53
- Perception, 446–447
- Perestroika, 58
- Performance
  - Control, standards for, 428
  - Of international monetary system, 218–222
  - Measuring actual, 430
- Ratios of, 432–433
- Standards and, comparing against, 430
- Performance appraisal
  - Defined, 573
  - In international business, 573
  - For nonmanagerial employees, 580–581
- Personality
  - Culture, differences across, 442–445
  - Cultures, differences across, 442–445
  - Defined, 442
  - Traits of, 442–445
  - Personal selling, 488
  - Petro-states, 70
- Philanthropic giving, 158–159
- Petro-states, 70
- Philips, 19
- Phillips curve, 210

**Purchasing power parity (PPP)**
- See PPP.

**Power tolerance, 130–131**

**Power respect, 130**

**Power orientation, 130–132**

**Poverty, 280**

**Post-World War II conferences, 219–220**

**Porter’s theory of national competitive advantage, 219–220**

**Polycentric staffing model, 565**

**Polycentric approach, 475, 476**

**Political union, 298**

**Political risk assessment, 98**

**Political multinational corporations, 87**

**Political risk assessment, 98**

**Political risks, 98**

**Political union, 298**

**Polycentric approach, 475, 476**

**Polycentric staffing model, 565**

**Porter’s theory of national competitive advantage, 219–220**

**Post-World War II conferences, 219–220**

**Poverty, 280**

**Power orientation, 130–132**

**Power tolerance, 130–131**

**PPP. See purchasing power parity (PPP)**

**Practices/practicing**

**Accounting, differences in, 95–97**

**Organizational, 151**

**Unfair, of trade, 281–284**

**PRC. See People’s Republic of China (PRC)**

**Premiums, 245, 574**

**Price/pricing, 481–484**

**Defined, 481**

**Market, 483–484**

**Policies on, 482–483**

**Transfer, 547–549**

**Tie-one, 482**

**Primary stakeholders, 152**

**Principles**

- Of comity, 88
- Generally accepted accounting, 93, 283
- Most favored nation, 292, 294
- Privatization, 86
- Privileges, establishing, 373
- Proactive motivations, 365
- Proactive stance, 157
- Problems, recognition of, 456
- Procedures
  - Co-decision, 303
  - Controlling, techniques for, 432
  - For training, 571–572
- Process-based models, 449–450
- Procuring, 520.
  - See also supply chains
- Production
  - Cost of, 201
  - Production management, 503–513
  - International logistics and, 510–513
  - Location decisions and, 507–510
  - Materials management and, 510–513
  - Supply chain management and, 503–507
  - Vertical integration and, 503–507
- Productivity, 515–516
- Product life cycle theory, 187–189
- Product policy, 478–481
- On brand names, 481
- Cultural influences of, 479–480
- Economic factors of, 480
- Legal forces in, 479
- Products
  - Certificates of origin of, 529
  - Customized, 479
  - Dual-use, 85
  - Global organizational design of, 412–413
  - Gross domestic, 32, 53, 151, 173, 178, 356
  - Line of, 562
  - Location, influence on decision about, 508–509
  - Non tariff barriers, standards of, 274
  - Partners, nature of potential, 395
  - Services, tied with purchases of, 514
  - Stages of, 187–188
  - Standardized, 189, 479
  - Product-support services, 514
- Promotion, 485–489
- Advertising and, 485–487
- Defined, 485
- Export, 72
- Of international trade, 278–281
- Personal selling and, 488
- Public relations and, 489
- Sales, 488–489
- Promotion mix, 485
- Prosperity, 291–292
- Protectionists, 180
- Protestant ethics, 120
- Protestants, 120
- Protocols, 120
- Public choice analysis, 267–269
- Public Companionship Reform and Investor Protection Act, 94
- Public-private venture, 397–399
- Public Procurement and Disposal Act, 276
- Public relations, 489
- Public-sector procurement policies, 276
- Purchasing power parity (PPP), 246–247, 358
- Put option, 245

**Quality**

- Defined, 516
- Management of, 516–518
- Quota, 215
- Defined, 272
- As non-tariff barriers, 272–273
- Tariff rate, 272–273, 295
- Quote, 239–240

**R**

**Radio frequency identification (RFID), 522**

**Modern earth rights, 275–276**

**Rates**

- Cross, 249
- Of discount, 543
- Exchange, 210, 218–219, 239
- Foreign exchange, 296
- Hurdle, 544
- Of return, 544

**Rationality/rationales**

- Bounded, 456
- For national trade policies, 262–269

**R&D. See research & development (R&D)**

**Recruitment, 566–570, 566t**

**Regulatory controls, 277**

**Reinforcement models, 449, 451**

**Related diversification, 344**

**Related industries, 191**

**Religious laws, 82–83**

**Religion, 120–123**

**Regional clustering, 194**

**Regional development of banks, 214–215**

**Regional economic integration, 297–299**

**Regional trading blocs, 310–316**

**African initiatives for establishing, 315–316**

**Free trade agreements in, 311–315**

**North American Free Trade Agreement, 310–311**

**Regulations**

- Antidumping, 282–283
- Government, 502
- Regulatory controls, 277
- Reinforcement models, 449, 451
- Related diversification, 344
- Related industries, 191
- Relative factor endowments, 185–187
- Religion, 120–123
- Religious laws, 82–83
- Repatriate/reparation, 87, 569–570
- Republic of China (ROC), 359
- Research & development (R&D) alliances and, 394
- Capitalization of, 97
- Consortium of, 394
- New trade theory, investing in, 190
- Resource deployment, 337
- Resources
  - Acquiring, 36
  - Complex issues with, 502
  - Natural, availability of, 201
  - Retention, 578–579
  - Revaluation of assets, 95–96
  - Revocable letter of credit, 529

**RFID. See radio frequency identification (RFID)**

**Rights**

- Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property, 296
- Establishing, 373
- Intellectual property, 190, 321, 322
- Special drawing, 217
- Trade-Related Intellectual Property, 90
- Ringisho, 456
- Rings system, 456

**Risks**

- Costs and, trade-offs between, 505–506
- Foreign exchange, 534–539, 542–543
- Of foreign markets, 360
- Macropolitical, 98
- Micropolitical, 98
- Operating, 98
- Ownership, 98
- In political environment, 98–101
- Shared, 390
- Transfer, 98
rivals/rivalry
- competition with, 36
- of firm, 192–193

ROC. See Republic of China (ROC)

Roman Catholics, 120

royalty, 373

rules
- deferral, 540
- of laws, 83–84
- of origin, 297–298
- trade-balancing, 296

S

SADC. See Southern African Development Community (SADC)

safety/safeguards
- within environment, 143

for trade, 283

Salah, 122

sales
- direct, 491
- domestic, requirements for, 296
- promotion, 488–489
- sanctions, 85

SAR. See special administrative region (SAR)

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 94, 97

satisfaction of jobs, 445–446

satisficing, 456

satisfaction of needs, 456

self-esteem, 445

self-reference criterion, 135–136

self-regulation, 465

self-esteem, 445

service delivery, 445

service orientation, 127–130

services
- economies of, 329
- of internationalization, 562–563
- of international strategic alliances, 391–394
- of operations, 337
- screwdriver plant, 311
- SDRs. See special drawing rights (SDRs)
- secondary stakeholders, 152
- selecting/selection, 566–570, 566f
- of alternatives, 457
- of managers, 568–569
- of nonmanagerial employees, 579–580
- self-efficacy, 444
- self-esteem, 445
- self-protective leadership, 454
- self-reference criterion, 135–136
- service business, 513
- service operations, 513–515
- management of, 503
- services
- customer’s role in, 514
- exporting, 32, 224
- importing, 32, 224
- intangible, 513
- of partners, nature of potential, 395
- products, tied with purchases of, 514
- storable, 513
- trade, 32, 514
- services trade, 514
- shared culture, 111
- shared expertise, 390
- shared knowledge, 390
- shared management agreement, 399
- shared risks, 390
- shareholder model, 152
- short-term foreign portfolio investments, 225
- sight draft, 528
- silver democracy, 112
- Singapore marketplace, 64–65
- single-business strategy, 343–344
- Single European Act, 305–306, 317, 323
- SkyTeam alliance, 393
- Smithsonian Conference, 217
- Smoot-Hawley Tariff Act, 292
- social charter, 583

social mobility, 113–114

social orientation, 127–130

social policy, 583

social responsibility
- accommodative stance to, 157
- approaches to, 156–157
- compliance and, 157–159
- corporate, 151–156
- culture, and, 159
- defensive stance to, 156–157
- evaluating, 160
- informal dimensions of, 159–160
- in international business, 144–146
- international ethics and, regulating of, 162–163
- managing, 156–160
- obstructionist stance to, 156
- organization leadership and, 159
- proactive stance to, 157
- whistle-blowing and, 159–160

social stratification, 113–114

social structure
- of culture, 111–114
- of families, 113
- of groups, 113
- of individuals, 113
- social welfare, general, 154
- sociocultural influences, 359
- SOE. See state-owned enterprise (SOE)

soft currencies, 244

sourcing, 520. See supply chains

South America marketplaces, 70–73

South China Sea, 103–105

Southeast Asia marketplace, 67

Southern African Development Community (SADC), 315

South Korea marketplace, 63–64

sovereign wealth funds (SWFs)
- defined, 270
- special administrative region (SAR), 65
- special drawing rights (SDRs), 217
- specialized entry modes, 376–377
- specific tariffs, 270
- speculators, 241–242
- spot markets, 244–246
- Stability and Growth Pact, 308
- staffing
- needs of, 562–566
- philosophy of, 564–566
- stakeholders, 152
- standardization, 475–478
- standardized products, 189, 479
- standards
- for BOP accounting system, 225
- performance and, comparing against, 430
- for pricing, policies on, 482
- Star Alliance, 393, 394

state, policy formulation process, role in, 161

state-owned enterprise (SOE), 261

statistical process control, 517

status, attitudes towards, 125

statutory laws, 82

stereotyping, 446

sterilizing, 546

sterling-based gold standard, 211

storable, 513

strategic alliances, 388. See also international strategic alliances

strategic business units (SBUs), 345

strategic control, 422–425

strategic goals, 341

strategic imperatives for globalization, 36

strategic management, 326–347. See also strategic business units (SBUs), 345

strategic goals, 341

strategic management, 326–347. See also strategic business units (SBUs), 345

strategic planning, 328–329

strategic trade theory, 264–266

strategies
- acquisition, 378
- brownfield, 378

business, 345–347, 472–474
- corporate, 343–345
- differentiation, 345–346
- diversification, 343
- export promotion, 266
- of firm, 192–193

focus, 347

formulation of, 338
- functional, 347
- global, 333, 563

greenfield, 378–379

home replication, 332

implementation of, 338

import substitution, 266

international, 329, 348

international financial, 347

international human resource, 347

international marketing, 347

international operations, 347

leads and lags, 542

multidomestic, 332–333

overhead cost leadership, 346–347

single-business, 343–344

transnational, 333

unrelated diversification, 343

stratification
- social, 113–114

stress, 447

stressor, 447

studying international business, reasons for, 29–30

subpart F income, 549

subprime meltdown, 222

subsidiary banks, 253

subsidiary boards of directors, 420–421

subsidies

- cotton, 280

- for international trade, 278–279

Suez Canal, 54

suppliers, first-tier, 507

supplies
- acquiring, 36
- factors for, 200–201

supply chains, 522

management of, 503–507

supply curve, 239

supporting industries, 191

supranational government, 301

surpluses, 230–232

sustainability, 152–153

sustainable development, 153

sustainable development, 153

tax equalization system, 574

tax authorities, 96

tariff rate quota (TRQ), 272–273, 295

tariffs, 270–272

ad valorem, 270

compound, 270

defined, 270

export, 270

import, 270, 286

specific, 270

transit, 270

tax authorities, 96

tax equalization system, 574

taxes/taxation
- on foreign subsidiary income, 549
- by government, 549

TAFTA. See Transatlantic Free Trade Agreement (TAFTA)

Taiwan marketplace, 64

tariff rate quota (TRQ), 272–273, 295

TAFTA. See Transatlantic Free Trade Agreement (TAFTA)

Taiwan marketplace, 64

tariff rate quota (TRQ), 272–273, 295

tariffs, 270–272

ad valorem, 270

compound, 270

defined, 270

export, 270

import, 270, 286

specific, 270

transit, 270

tax authorities, 96

tax equalization system, 574

taxes/taxation
- on foreign subsidiary income, 549
- by government, 549
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAXES/TAXATION (CONTINUED)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>havens for, 550–552, 554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobin, 310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCNs. See third-country nationals (TCNs) team-oriented leadership, 454 teams, 458–459</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>